BF BOT MANAGER

User Manual

Rade Jaramaz

Tom Whitaker

BF BOT MANAGER

User Manual Edition 3.1.24
(Last Updated 7-2-2024)

By Rade Jaramaz and Tom Whitaker

© 2021 Sodens Ltd. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents 3
PART I USER GUIDE 22
1 Software Overview 22
1.1 What does the bot do? 22
1.2 Versions for Betfair, Betdaq or Matchbook 23
1.3 Installation and Setup 23
2 Software Guide 25
2.1 Demonstration and Explanation of Example Strategies 25
2.1.1 Example strategies: How strategies are put together 25
2.1.2 Bet on My Selections 26
2.1.3 Football – Lay The Draw 43
2.1.4 Horses - Lay 1st Favorite with recovery 51
2.1.5 Horses - Trade before in-play 59
2.1.6 Greyhounds – Dutching 2nd, 3rd and 4th favorite 70
2.1.7 Bet on all Imported Tips – Automated betting on a 3rd party service 77
2.1.8 Manual Betting and Exchange Trading - Ladder View 88
2.2 A 10 Step method to creating strategies 93
3 Key Concepts 98
3.1 Running the Bot 98
3.2 The Main Screens 98
3.3 Loading Markets 100
3.3.1 Manual Loading of Markets – Quick Load Buttons 100
3.3.2 Manual – Tree Navigation 101
3.3.3 Auto-loading of Markets – Auto Load 101
3.3.4 Auto-loading of Markets – Imported Tips 103
3.4 Monitoring markets 104
3.5 Strategy Rules/Conditions 109
3.5.1 Create basic strategy 110
3.5.2 Setting bet type for selections to bet on 113

3.6 Bet types 114
3.6.1 Bet type by favorite position 115
3.6.2 Bet type by runner position 118
3.6.3 Default bet type 120
3.6.4 Bet on “My Selections” only 123
3.6.5 Manual bet type 125
3.6.6 Bet type by handicap 125
3.6.7 Bet type by market 126
3.6.8 Bet type on random selection(s) 127
3.6.9 Overall sequence of bet types 127
3.6.10 Bet on imported selections/tips be type 128
3.7 Video tutorials 129
3.7.1 Software overview 129
3.7.2 Market autoloading 129
3.7.3 Strategies 129
3.7.4 Bet and result history 129
3.7.5 Ladder and Manual Bets Strategy 129
3.7.6 Automated Tipping on Tipster Tips 129
3.7.7 Setting bet type 129
3.7.8 Football rules 129
3.7.9 Racing rules 129
3.7.10 Staking plans 129
3.7.11 Creating 3 popular strategies 129
3.7.12 Tennis in play strategies 129
4 More Example Strategies 130
4.1 [EXAMPLE] - DOBBING - Double Or Bust 130
4.2 [EXAMPLE] - Little Acorns 132
4.3 [EXAMPLE] – ATM 134
4.4 [EXAMPLE] - Greyhounds - Lay Trap 1 with recovery 136
5 Troubleshooting 137

5.1 Troubleshooting Checklist 137
5.1.1 Check markets 137
5.1.2 Check strategy reports 137
5.1.3 Check strategy rules 140
5.1.4 Check bet process 140
5.1.5 Check the forum or Knowledge Base 140
5.1.6 Contact us 141
5.2 Betfair Outages 141
5.3 Help Resources 142
6 VPS Hosting 143
6.1 VPS server specification choice 143
6.2 Initial Setup 144
6.3 Regular Access 147
6.4 VPS considerations 147
6.4.1 Limit of 2 for Betfair API connections 147
6.4.2 Location of your VPS 147
6.4.3 Countries where Betfair is currently allowed/banned 147
PART II TECHNICAL MANUAL 149
7 Main Controls Ribbon 149
7.1 Home 149
7.1.1 Betfair Balance & Refresh 149
7.1.2 Auto Load 150
7.1.3 Smart auto load 152
7.1.4 Simulation/Real Mode 153
7.1.5 Logout & Exit 155
7.1.6 Minimize the ribbon toggle 155
7.2 Events and Markets 156
7.2.1 Auto Load 156
7.2.2 Tree navigation 156
7.2.3 Ladder 156

7.2.4 Quick loading of markets 156
7.2.5 Export “My S.” to tips file 157
7.2.6 Move “My S.” to manage tips form 160
7.2.7 Export markets 161
7.2.8 Export all visible data 161
7.2.9 Import markets 162
7.2.10 Filters 163
7.2.11 Select/deselect markets/selections 164
7.3 Strategies 165
7.3.1 Add new 165
7.3.2 Duplicate selected 167
7.3.3 Start all 167
7.3.4 Pause all 168
7.3.5 Start selected 168
7.3.6 Restart selected 168
7.3.7 Pause selected 169
7.3.8 Select all strategies 169
7.3.9 Restart all strategies 170
7.3.10 Deselect all strategies 170
7.3.11 Import strategies 171
7.3.12 Import from auto backup file 171
7.3.13 Import private strategy 172
7.3.14 Restore examples 172
7.3.15 Export selected strategies 173
7.3.16 Export all strategies 173
7.3.17 Export as private strategy 174
7.3.18 Import tips from file 174
7.3.19 Download tips from URL 176
7.3.20 TippingSports.com 177
7.3.21 Manage tips 177

7.3.22 Tips auto loading 178
7.3.23 Automated betting on selections from Betaminic big data strategies 179
7.3.24 Automated betting on selections from Predictology 182
7.3.25 Automated betting on selections from Proform systems 183
7.3.26 Export tips to file 186
7.3.27 (Manage tips) Settings 186
7.3.28 Checking if tips imported correctly 187
7.3.29 Delete selected 188
7.4 History 189
7.4.1 Select strategy for Steamers/drifters 189
7.4.2 Settings 189
7.4.3 Update bets 190
7.4.4 Save bets now 190
7.4.5 Export bets 190
7.4.6 Removed selected bets 191
7.4.7 Remove all bets 191
7.4.8 Save results now 191
7.4.9 Export results 192
7.4.10 Remove selected results 192
7.4.11 Remove all results 192
7.4.12 View statistics 193
7.5 Tools & Settings 194
7.5.1 General settings - General 194
7.5.2 General settings – Strategies 195
7.5.3 General settings - Notifications 196
7.5.4 General Settings - Bets 197
7.5.5 General settings - Results 198
7.5.6 Third Party Integrations – TPD Zone (Total Performance Data) (BF Bot Manager only) 200
7.5.7 Third Party Integrations – Football – in play statistics 203
7.5.8 Third Party Integrations – Twitter integration 204

7.5.9 Third Party Integrations – Telegram integration 206
7.5.10 Third Party Integrations – RSS feed integration 208
7.5.11 Monitoring settings 209
7.5.12 Application style 217
7.5.13 View log file 217
7.5.14 Common Log File Errors 218
7.5.15 Configuration Editor 219
7.6 Help 220
7.6.1 Video Tutorials 220
7.6.2 Knowledge base 220
7.6.3 Manuals 220
7.6.4 Football information 221
7.6.5 Forum 221
7.6.6 Licenses 221
7.6.7 Check for update 221
7.6.8 About BF Bot Manager 221
7.6.9 TippingSports.com 221
7.7 Main Screen Header and Footer 221
7.7.1 Auto load settings 221
7.7.2 Tree navigation 221
7.7.3 Ladder view 221
7.7.4 Start all strategies 221
7.7.5 Pause all strategies 221
7.7.6 Real/Simulation mode 222
7.7.7 Betfair balance and refresh button 222
7.7.8 Bot time and date 222
7.7.9 Strategies running and Total P/L 222
7.7.10 Save screenshot 222
7.7.11 Betfair data status 222
7.7.12 Software running time 222

7.7.13 API requests report ... 223
7.7.14 Betfair service status ... 223
7.7.15 BF Bot Manager Version details ... 223
8 Markets Screen ... 224
8.1 Markets grid view ... 224
8.1.1 Show button ... 224
8.1.2 Select market “S.” check box ... 225
8.1.3 Remove market “R.” button ... 225
8.1.4 In-Play status “IP” icon ... 226
8.1.5 Event type icon ... 226
8.1.6 Market status ... 226
8.1.7 Start time ... 227
8.1.8 Market Information button ... 227
8.1.9 Live video button ... 228
8.1.10 Event/market ... 228
8.1.11 Race status ... 228
8.1.12 Live score ... 229
8.1.13 Time ... 229
8.1.14 Weather report ... 229
8.1.15 Detailed information button ... 230
8.1.16 My selections ... 231
8.1.17 1st favorite ... 231
8.1.18 Winner(s) ... 232
8.1.19 P/L ... 232
8.1.20 Bets button ... 232
8.1.21 Back book percentage ... 233
8.1.22 Lay book percentage ... 233
8.1.23 Total matched on market ... 233
8.2 Markets grid view column header options ... 234
8.2.1 Sort ascending ... 234

8.2.2 Sort descending 234
8.2.3 Hide this column 234
8.2.4 Markets grid view column chooser 234
8.2.5 2nd favorite and 3rd favorite columns 235
8.2.6 Back and Lay button columns 235
8.2.7 Bet delay 235
8.2.8 Country Code and Competition 236
8.2.9 HT Score 236
8.2.10 Inplaytrading statistics 236
8.2.11 My favorite by position 237
8.2.12 Race Type, Venue and NOR (Number of Selections) 238
8.2.13 Rolling P/L 239
8.2.14 Pitch 239
8.2.15 Unmatched/Matched 239
8.2.16 Best fit 240
8.2.17 Best fit (all columns) 240
8.2.18 Show find panel 240
8.2.19 Show auto filter row 240
8.3 Selections grid view 242
8.3.1 Selections grid view Selections tab 242
8.3.2 “My S.” check box 242
8.3.3 Price/volume over time 243
8.3.4 Silks 244
8.3.5 Selection name 244
8.3.6 Form 245
8.3.7 Jockey and trainer 245
8.3.8 Ladder button 245
8.3.9 If hedge now 247
8.3.10 Hedge button 247
8.3.11 Matched 247

8.3.12 Status 247
8.3.13 Chance 248
8.3.14 Back offer and Lay offer 248
8.3.15 BSP – Betfair Start Price 248
8.3.16 LPM – Last Price Matched 248
8.3.17 Selections grid view Column header options 248
8.3.18 Sort ascending / Sort descending 249
8.3.19 Hide this column 249
8.3.20 Selections grid view Column chooser options 249
8.3.21 2nd Back offer, 2nd Lay offer, 3rd Back offer, 3rd Lay offer 249
8.3.22 Age, Days since last run, Weight, Official rating & Reduction factor 250
8.3.23 “Back” & “Lay” Bet Buttons 250
8.3.24 “My Price” & “Stake” 251
8.3.25 “Max price” and “Min price” 252
8.3.26 “Back” & “Lay" Bet Type Checkboxes 252
8.3.27 If close now 253
8.3.28 Close 253
8.3.29 FP (Far Price) & NP (Near Price) 253
8.3.30 Position and Formation 253
8.3.31 Selections grid view Bets tab 254
8.3.32 Event/market/selection 254
8.3.33 Status – bet status 254
8.3.34 Matched – matched amount 254
8.3.35 Unmatched – unmatched amount 254
8.3.36 Cancelled – cancelled amount 254
8.3.37 Loss rec. – Loss recover part of bet size 254
8.3.38 Type – Bet type 254
8.3.39 Avg. – Average price matched 254
8.3.40 Price – Price requested 254
8.3.41 P/L 254

8.3.42 Cancel bet 255
8.3.43 Strategy 255
8.3.44 Placed date 255
8.3.45 Bet ID 255
8.3.46 Selections grid view Reports tab 255
8.3.47 Date and time 255
8.3.48 Type 256
8.3.49 Success 256
8.3.50 Description 256
9 Bots/Strategies screen 257
9.1 Main View 257
9.1.1 Show button 257
9.1.2 Remove strategy button 258
9.1.3 Select strategy check box 258
9.1.4 Name 258
9.1.5 Start/Pause button 260
9.1.6 Add rule button 260
9.1.7 Edit button 261
9.1.8 Restart counter and Restart button 265
9.1.9 P/L 265
9.1.10 Wins/Total and Strike rate 266
9.1.11 Market wins and Markets strike rate 267
9.1.12 Description 267
9.1.13 All time P/L 267
9.1.14 Group by 268
9.1.15 Strategy ID 270
9.2 Bots/Strategies screen Column header options 271
9.2.1 Sort ascending / Sort descending 271
9.2.2 Group by this column 271
9.2.3 Show group by box 272

9.2.4 Bots/Strategies screen Column chooser option - Strategy expire date 272
9.2.5 Bots/Strategies screen Column chooser option – Unmatched/Matched 273
9.2.6 Example strategies 273
9.2.7 Manual bets strategy 274
10 Steamers/Drifters screen 275
10.1 Main View 275
10.1.1 Strategy name 276
10.1.2 Sport 276
10.1.3 Start time 276
10.1.4 Event/market name 276
10.1.5 Selection name 276
10.1.6 Min chance % 276
10.1.7 Min back price 276
10.1.8 Min trade price 276
10.1.9 Min lay price 276
10.1.10 Chance % 276
10.1.11 Back price 277
10.1.12 Lay price 277
10.1.13 Max chance % 277
10.1.14 Max back price 277
10.1.15 Max trade price 277
10.1.16 Max lay price 277
10.1.17 Steamer % 277
10.1.18 Drifter % 277
10.2 Steamers/Drifters screen Column header options 278
10.2.1 Sort ascending / Sort descending 278
10.2.2 Hide this column 278
10.2.3 Steamers/Drifters screen Column chooser options 279
10.2.4 Maximum matched amount 279
10.2.5 Minimum matched amount 279

10.2.6 Difference matched amount 279
10.2.7 Best fit 279
10.2.8 Best fit (all columns) 279
10.2.9 Filter editor 279
10.2.10 Show find panel 279
10.2.11 Show auto filter row 279
11 Bets screen 280
11.1 Main View 280
11.1.1 Description 280
11.1.2 Selection 280
11.1.3 Bet Id 280
11.1.4 Bet type 281
11.1.5 Matched amount 281
11.1.6 Loss rec. amount 281
11.1.7 Avg. price matched 281
11.1.8 Status 281
11.1.9 P/L 281
11.1.10 Strategy 281
11.1.11 Short description 281
11.1.12 Tipster 282
11.1.13 Placed date 282
11.1.14 Matched date 282
11.1.15 Settled date 282
11.2 Bets screen Column chooser options 282
11.2.1 BSP 282
11.2.2 Competition 282
11.2.3 Competition ID 282
11.2.4 Country code 283
11.2.5 Currency 283
11.2.6 Detailed market name 283

11.2.7 Event and Event ID ... 283
11.2.8 Favorite position ... 283
11.2.9 Handicap ... 283
11.2.10 Market and Market ID ... 283
11.2.11 Market type and Market type variant ... 283
11.2.12 Number of selections ... 284
11.2.13 Order type ... 284
11.2.14 Persistence ... 284
11.2.15 Price reduced ... 284
11.2.16 Price requested ... 284
11.2.17 Runner position ... 284
11.2.18 Selection ID ... 284
11.2.19 Settle as loss, Settle as win and Void bet ... 284
11.2.20 Simulated bet? ... 285
11.2.21 Size cancelled and Size lapsed ... 285
11.2.22 Size settled ... 286
11.2.23 Start time ... 286
11.2.24 Strategy ID ... 286
11.2.25 Total matched on market ... 286
11.2.26 Total matched on each runner ... 286
11.2.27 Unmatched amount ... 286
11.2.28 Betting bank ... 286
11.2.29 % of betting bank ... 286
11.2.30 P/L as % of betting bank ... 286
12 Results screen ... 288
12.1 Main View ... 288
12.1.1 Start time ... 288
12.1.2 Market name ... 288
12.1.3 Winners ... 288
12.1.4 Winners prices ... 288

12.1.5 Winner favorite position 288
12.1.6 Winner runner position 288
12.1.7 Number 288
12.1.8 Currency 289
12.1.9 Total matched 289
12.1.10 Sport type 289
12.2 Results screen Column chooser options 289
12.2.1 Betting type 289
12.2.2 Market ID 289
12.2.3 Market type 289
13 News screen 290
14 Strategy Rules 291
14.1 Market conditions 294
14.1.1 Events filter 296
14.1.2 Markets filter 297
14.1.3 Country Filter 299
14.1.4 Competitions filter 300
14.1.5 Clear favourites 301
14.1.6 Skip if favourite difference is not satisfied 302
14.1.7 Min/max number of runners 303
14.1.8 Min/max required price for selection on market 303
14.1.9 Overrounds 305
14.1.10 Time to bet 307
14.1.11 Traded volume 308
14.1.12 Unsettled markets 309
14.1.13 Number of winners 310
14.1.14 Runner by position favourite condition 310
14.1.15 Bet after Xth favourite wins or loses 312
14.1.16 Skip market if my selection is non-runner 313
14.1.17 Only if selected strategies have bets 313

14.1.18 Min delay between initial bets 315
14.1.19 Football conditions and Football in-play data and livescores 316
14.1.20 Football - Bet when score 317
14.1.21 Football - filter matches by team form 319
14.1.22 Football - filter matches by scored/conceded goals in each match 321
14.1.23 Football - filter matches by team number of points 322
14.1.24 Football - filter matches by team total goals in last X matches 323
14.1.25 Football – weather type 324
14.1.26 Football – Match minute 324
14.1.27 Football – Pitch condition 325
14.1.28 Football – Team formation 326
14.1.29 Football – Team position 326
14.1.30 Football – Match status 328
14.1.31 Football – Only if live scores are available 328
14.1.32 Football – In play statistics 329
14.1.33 Football – In play statistics (inplaytrading.com) 335
14.1.34 Football – Match events 339
14.1.35 Football – Home/away team odds ratio 339
14.1.36 Football – Bet on next over/under market 340
14.1.37 Racing conditions 341
14.1.38 Racing - Removed runners 341
14.1.39 Racing - Race in play time 342
14.1.40 Racing - Going – track condition 343
14.1.41 Racing - Race status 343
14.1.42 Racing - Min/max race distance 344
14.1.43 Racing – Venues filter 345
14.1.44 Racing – Class filter 346
14.1.45 Racing – Race type filter 346
14.1.46 Tennis rules 347
14.1.47 Tennis – Bet when fifteen score 347

14.1.48 Tennis – Bet when game score 348
14.1.49 Tennis – Bet when set score 349
14.1.50 Tennis – In play statistics 349
14.1.51 Tennis – Only when selected player 350
14.1.52 Market status change delay 351
14.1.53 Tips – filtering rules for imported tips 351
14.1.54 Only if selected strategy has profit/loss in range 353
14.1.55 Only if selected strategy has X wins/losses 353
14.1.56 Greyhounds – Skip race if there is a reserve runner 354
14.1.57 Do not bet on markets where selections are picked by using “My S.” column 354
14.1.58 Skip market(s) after winning/losing market(s) 355
14.1.59 Bet only on markets for which tips are imported 355
14.2 Selection conditions 357
14.2.1 Bet type rules 358
14.2.2 Bet type by favorite position 360
14.2.3 Bet type by runner position 362
14.2.4 Default bet type 364
14.2.5 Bet on “My Selections” only 367
14.2.6 Manual bet type 369
14.2.7 Bet type by handicap 370
14.2.8 Bet type by market 370
14.2.9 Bet type on random selection(s) 371
14.2.10 Overall sequence of bet types 372
14.2.11 Bet on imported selections/tips be type 372
14.2.12 Back and Lay price ratio 373
14.2.13 Min/max selection price 376
14.2.14 Price change – Steamers and Drifters 377
14.2.15 Max number of unmatched bets per runner 381
14.2.16 Weight of money 382
14.2.17 Bet if specific market selection is in price range 384

14.2.18 Max number of Matched bets per runner 385
14.2.19 Selections filter 386
14.2.20 Selection by highest/lowest 388
14.2.21 Sequence of favourite positions 389
14.2.22 Only if specified strategy has bets on same selection 389
14.2.23 Racing conditions 391
14.2.24 Racing - Filter horses by detailed information 391
14.2.25 Racing - Filter horses by (BF) – beaten favourite, (C) – course winner, (D) –distance winner and (CD) 393
14.2.26 Racing - Days since last run (horses) 393
14.2.27 Racing – Runner at win/place market favourite/price rule 393
14.2.28 Min/max selection traded volume 394
14.2.29 Only when price at min/max 395
14.2.30 Most traded selections 396
14.2.31 Compare prices 398
14.2.32 Only if available amount >/< 399
14.2.33 TPD Zone Filter (Total Performance Data) (BF Bot Manager only) 399
14.3 Price settings (pre-stake) conditions 404
14.3.1 Default price 404
14.3.2 Price rules 405
14.4 Staking Plans 407
14.4.1 Level/initial stake 408
14.4.2 Bets persistence 409
14.4.3 Liability or amount to win (ending) 410
14.4.4 Percent of betting bank and ratchet staking 413
14.4.5 Max number of Matched/Unmatched bets per market 414
14.4.6 Odds Staking Ladder 416
14.4.7 Bet on imported selections/tips 417
14.4.8 Square root 426
14.4.9 Overall P/L Parlay 427

14.4.10 Reversed recovery staking plan 428
14.4.11 Dutching for target profit (Back bets) 429
14.4.12 Dutching over multiple markets for target profit (Back bets) 430
14.4.13 Min/max number of qualified selections (ending) 431
14.4.14 Min/max overround of qualified selection 432
14.4.15 Combined liability of odds 432
14.4.16 Dutching for target profit (Lay bets) 433
14.4.17 Target overround 434
14.4.18 Moving average staking plan 435
14.4.19 Coup master staking plan 437
14.4.20 Bookies bank staking plan 438
14.4.21 Overall loss recovery 440
14.4.22 D'Alembert 444
14.4.23 Lay Up Down Staking Plan 445
14.4.24 Lay % Up Down Staking Plan 446
14.4.25 Kelly staking plan 447
14.4.26 Maria staking plan 448
14.4.27 Overall P/L Simple Sequence 449
14.4.28 Lay 1-4 451
14.4.29 First and last recovery 452
14.4.30 Step staking plan 453
14.4.31 Sweeper – the six point plan 456
14.4.32 Retirement staking plan 457
14.4.33 Labouchere 458
14.4.34 Reverse Labouchere 459
14.4.35 Back 1 point staking plan 460
14.4.36 Lay 1 point staking plan 461
14.4.37 Pro staking plan 462
14.5 After bet rules 463
14.5.1 Cancel bet if unmatched 464

14.5.2 Hedge or close position 466
14.5.3 Place bets when number of Matched/Unmatched bets on market is in range 475
14.5.4 Cancel all unmatched bets when X bets get matched 476
14.5.5 Trade out (second) bet 477
14.5.6 First in the queue 481
14.6 Safety rules 483
14.6.1 Max profit/loss 483
14.6.2 Max profit and loss for selected strategies 484
14.6.3 Pause/restart after wins/loses 485
14.6.4 Wallet limit 486
14.6.5 Auto restart 487
14.6.6 Hedge All 488
14.6.7 Tweet placed bets 489
14.6.8 Telegram integration 492
14.6.9 TippingSports - publish placed bets as tips (BF Bot Manager only) 495
14.7 Bets 497
14.8 Strategy Reports Tab - Fail/success of conditions/rules 497
15 Hardware - System Requirements 501
16 Glossary of Terms 502
17 Resources 508

Note: This manual is provided as an aid to users and as much effort as possible has been put into making sure there are no errors in it, however the software is constantly being updated in response to user requests. We do our best to update the manual when we make changes to the software, but it is still possible that some explanations or features might not be fully accurate and up to date in the manual.

PART I USER GUIDE

1 Software Overview

1.1 What does the bot do?

The Bf Bot Manager V3 is software for automated and manual trading and betting on the Betfair, Betdaq and Matchbook betting exchanges. The software has been approved and certified by each betting exchange security team, which means that it has passed all exchange API requirements and is an official Betfair NG-API, Betdaq API and Matchbook API solution.

To use the software you must have a Betfair, Betdaq or Matchbook account. If you do not have an account, then you can create one by using following links and get a free bonus:

Betfair: http://ads.betfair.com/redirect.aspx?pid=18688&bid=8298

Betdaq: https://affiliate.cdn.betdaqaffiliates.com/redirect.aspx?pid=3331&bid=2059

Matchbook: http://affiliate.matchbook.com/processing/clickthrgh.asp?btag=a_755b_1&aid=site_header

To run the software you must have a Windows operating system with Microsoft .Net Framework 4.7 (all newer systems have that), a reliable internet connection and at least 2GB of RAM memory. **For the software to work, your computer must be up and running all the time. It must not go into sleep mode, standby mode or hibernate. Your computer must also be connected to the internet at all times.**

You can use the software to load any exchange market, place Back or Lay bets manually or create your own bot/strategy that will automatically place bets by your own rules. There is no limit on the number of strategies that you can create. The only limit is your computer power, network connection speed and exchange API limits. Home computers or laptops are, in most cases, a good solution to run our bots, but if you are on the move and want to access your bot from anywhere, then we recommend using SimplyHosting.cloud (Formely Tagadab) VPS servers.

This manual is split into two parts. Part one is a user guide to help you understand how the software works and how bot strategies can be created and used. Part two is a technical manual with information about every screen, button, strategy rule and feature in the software.

1.2 Versions for Betfair, Betdaq or Matchbook

In the following chapters we will explain and demonstrate the software using screenshots from the Bf Bot Manager V3 for Betfair. Versions for Betdaq and Matchbook have an almost identical layout. Functionality is the same where each exchange API allows it. There are differences between the Betfair, Betdaq and Matchbook APIs, and because of that there are small differences between the V3 versions for those exchanges. Please read this manual carefully, and if you have any questions after that, then please contact us by using the contact form on our web site.

1.3 Installation and Setup

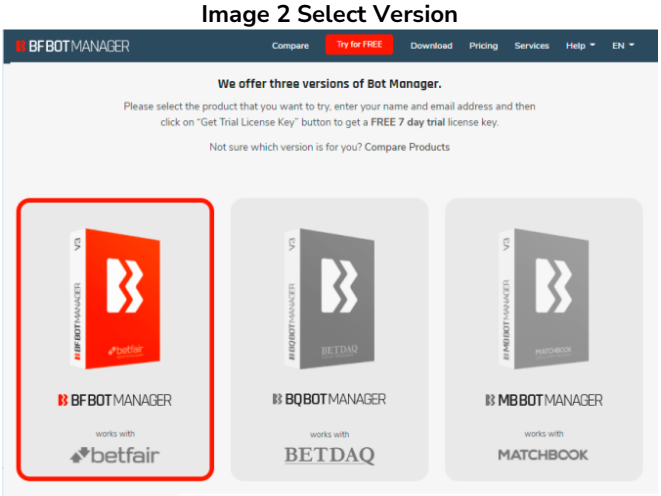
Download and install the BF Bot Manager software.

A) Click on the link and select “Try for FREE” or “Buy” the BF Bot Manager software.

Image 1 Try for FREE

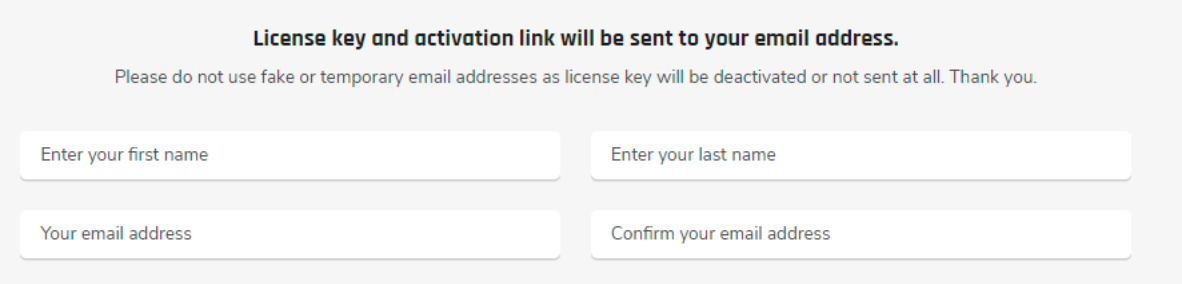
B) Select the version of the BF Bot Manager according to the betting exchange that you use: Betfair, Betdaq or Matchbook.

Image 2 Select Version



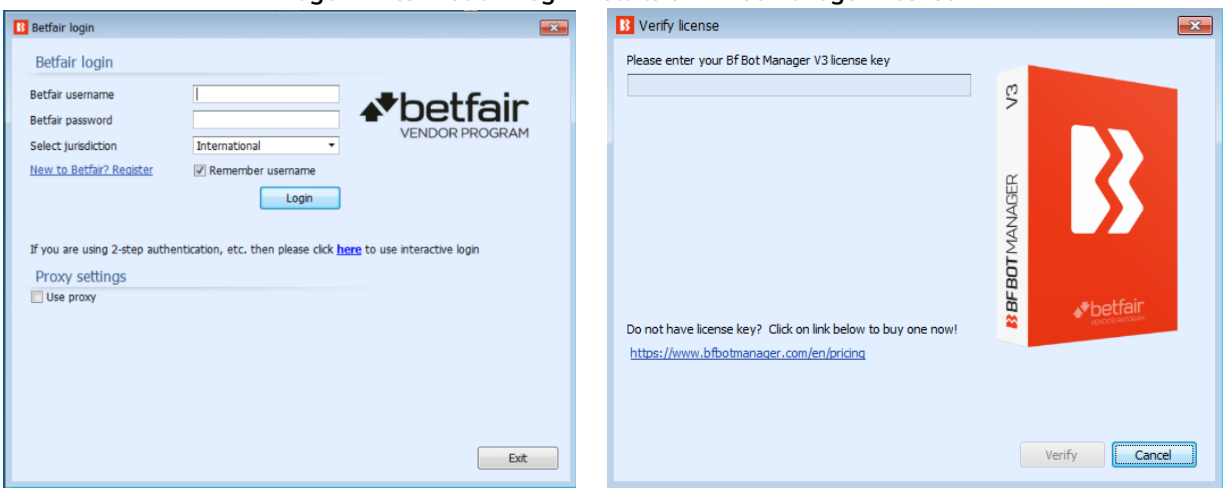
If you want to try the software first, enter your name and email address to receive a free 7-day trial license.

Image 3 Trial License



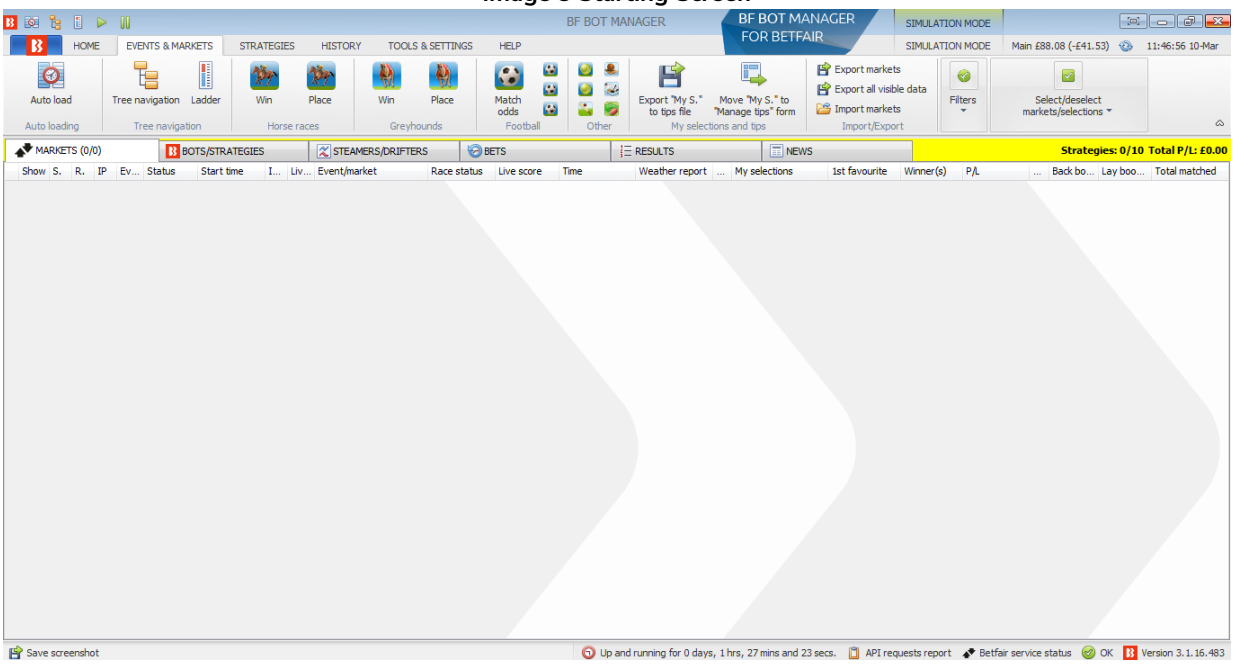
C) Download and install the software. Enter your Betfair login details and BF Bot Manager license key when you start the software.

Image 4 Enter Betfair Login Details & Bf Bot Manager License



When the software starts, you will see a screen like this.

Image 5 Starting Screen



Congratulations! You have successfully installed the software.

2 Software Guide

2.1 Demonstration and Explanation of Example Strategies

2.1.1 Example strategies: How strategies are put together

A good way to understand the software is to see how some example strategies have been made and why each rule has been selected. Then the more advanced settings will be easier. Each of these example strategies comes with the software so you can see how various strategy rules look. It is best to start by explaining how we would manually run the strategy, and then setting rules for automating that.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create and automate your own strategies.

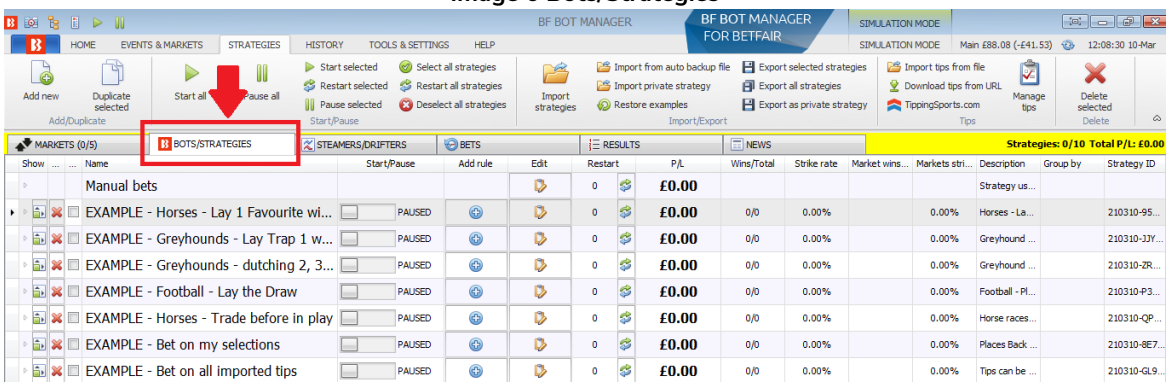
Example Strategy	Description
Bet on my selections	Bets on manually chosen selections at 5 minutes before the event starts if the market has qualifying odds.
Football - Lay the Draw	Lays the draw for major football matches, then trades out for +25% or more profit if there is a goal or trades out at a loss if it is still a draw late in the game.
Horses - Lay 1st Favorite with recovery	Lays the favorite in horse races. If a favorite wins, then the bot will try to recover all losses in the next race up to a maximum of 5 losses in a row.
Horses – Trade before in-play	Back horses whose odds have drifted up by 20% since the 5 minute before the race mark, but still have odds under 10. When a bet is matched, the bot places a 2nd bet to trade out for profit at a better price by 5 ticks. The bot will then hedge the entire market for equal profit or loss at 5 seconds before the race starts.
Greyhounds – Dutching 2nd,3rd and 4th favorite	Back the 2nd, 3rd and 4th favorite by dutching for equal profit if any of them win. Place bets 10 seconds before the race starts. Increase stakes after a loss and decrease stakes after a win.
Bet on all imported tips	Bets on imported tips from 3rd party tipping services 5 minutes before the event starts.
Betting Exchange Trading - Ladder View (Manual Bets)	View the Betfair market in ladder view to see the order book. See what bets have been placed, the volume, where unmatched orders are, and use this information to predict where the prices are heading and position your trades to take advantage.

2.1.2 Bet on My Selections

Let's imagine the most basic of automated strategies. We want to select our bets for the day all at once in the morning, but we want to place the bets at odds closer to the starting time. We can do this automatically with the example strategy "**EXAMPLE - Bet on my selections**" so that we don't have to sit and wait for each event's starting time to manually place bets.

Let's look at how this strategy has been set up. First, click on the "**BOTS/STRATEGIES**" main tab. This is the screen where the strategies are kept. Each strategy can be thought of as an individual bot. So the Bf Bot Manager actually enables you to run multiple bots from one piece of software. The software comes with some example strategies that you will see here. You can duplicate, edit and use these example strategies as a base for your own strategies. You can create your own new strategies. And you can import strategies.

Image 6 Bots/Strategies



Scan down the list of pre-installed example strategies and find the "**EXAMPLE – Bet on my selections**".

There are 2 main areas where the strategy rules are: the **Strategy Details Form** and the individual **Strategy Tabs**. This **"EXAMPLE – Bet on my selections"** strategy has been set up like this:

Strategy Details Form	Instructions
General	Only 1 bet by this strategy per runner allowed. Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed. Up to 10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tabs	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Place bets 5 minutes before event starts. Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Only bet if price is between 1-20 odds. Place back bets on "My S." manually selected runners. Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
Price settings	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Stake £2 on each bet. Take the SP if available.

Click on the "**Edit**" clipboard icon to view the strategy details form of this strategy.

Image 7 EXAMPLE - Bet on my selections

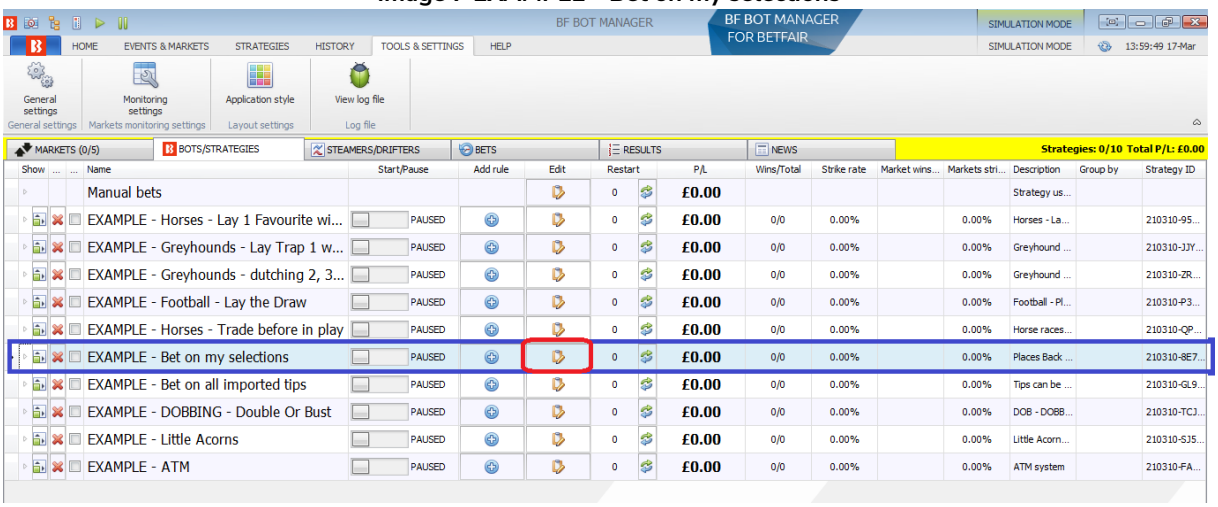
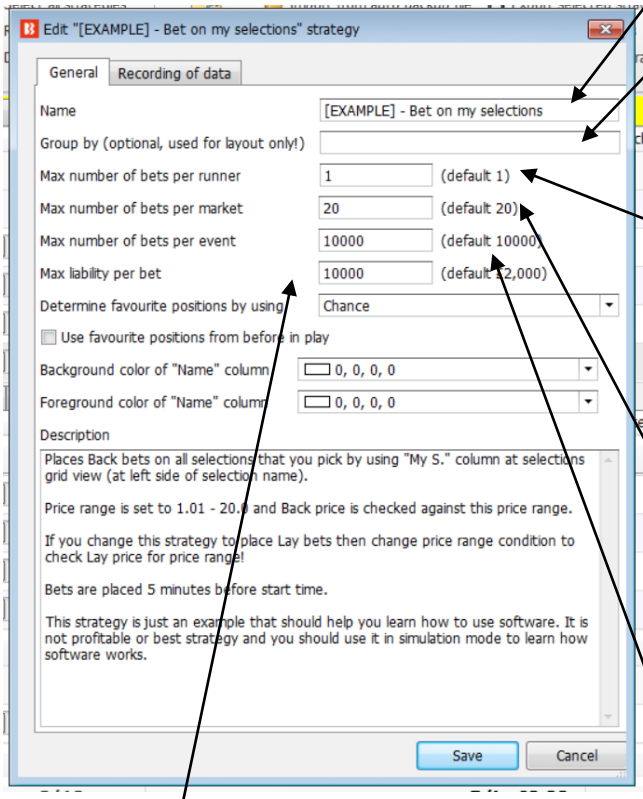


Image 8 Edit Strategy



This is the **strategy name** that will appear on the Bots/Strategies screen.

This is the Group that the strategy is in. Read more on this layout feature in the 9.1.14 Group by section.

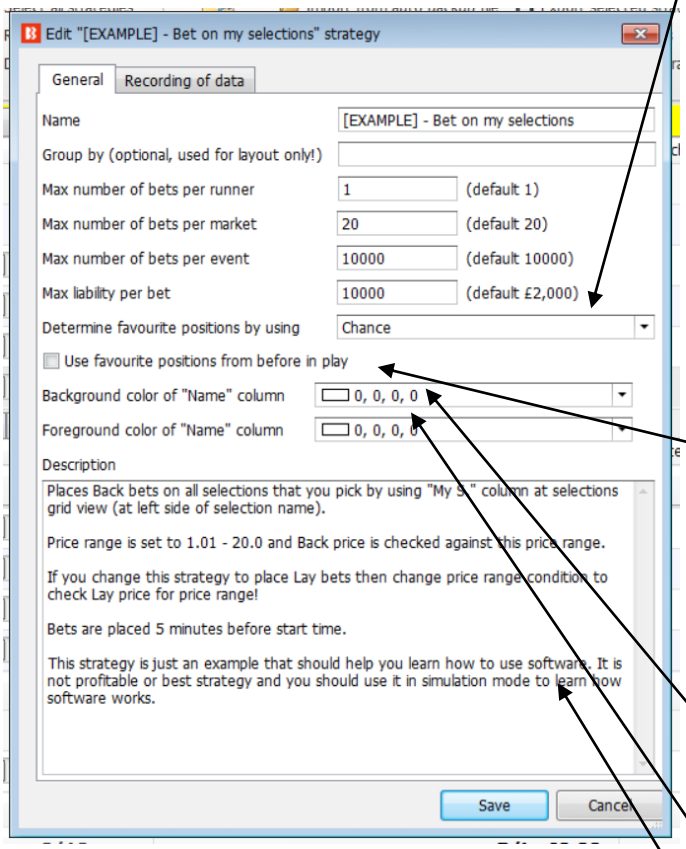
This sets **the number of bets that can be placed on one market selection** by this strategy. Football Match Odds usually have 3 runners (Home, Away or Draw). Horseracing Win markets usually have a lot more runners (Horse 1, Horse 2, Horse 3, Horse 4, etc.) Tennis Match Odds usually have 2 runners (Player 1 or Player 2). So 'runner' means the betting selection available. (For example, the home team in football.)

This sets **the number of bets that can be placed in this market** by this strategy. The default setting of 20 means that if multiple runners are selected in one market, then bets can be placed on all of them. (For example if 2 or 3 horses were selected in the same race or if 3 or 4 correct scores were selected in a football correct score market.)

This sets **the maximum number of bets that can be placed on this event** by this strategy. This can be useful if your strategy bets on multiple markets associated with the same event. i.e. Football Match Odds, Over/Under markets, Half Time result, etc.

Max liability per bet sets the maximum amount risked on one bet. For the default setting of £2,000 that means the largest possible back bet would be £2,000 and the largest possible lay bet liability would be £2,000. (So if the odds were 3.00, then the maximum lay stake would be £1,000.) This strategy is set to £10,000. For level staking, the stake is controlled elsewhere, but as more complicated staking rules are added, it can be a good safety feature to set a maximum liability to match your risk level.

Image 10 Edit Strategy

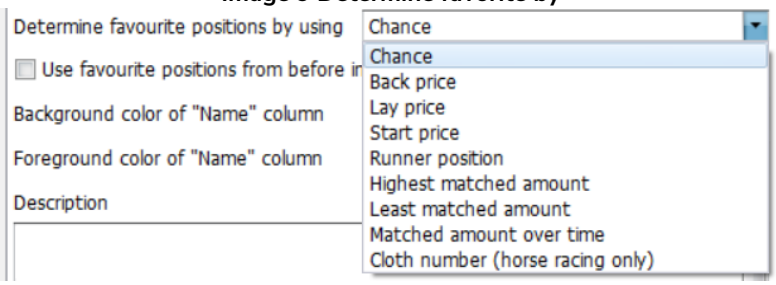


This sets **how the favorite is decided**. By using "chance" means the runner with the highest probability of winning is the favorite. The "chance" value is calculated by using the currently available back and lay price.

chance value = (1 / ((back price + lay price) / 2.0))

If one of the prices is not available then the chance is 0%.

Image 9 Determine favorite by



This setting has a number of advanced options in a drop down menu, but we do not need to change this.

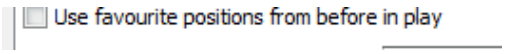
If unchecked, the bot will look at the currently available odds to determine the favorite. If checked, the bot will look at the **recorded prices with the best overround near the start of the event** to determine the favorite*. (By default, the best overround from 5 minutes before the event to the start time.) The default setting is unchecked.

This **changes the background color of the name cell**, and is useful to make the names of your active strategies stand out.

This **changes the text color of the name cell.** It is another way to make the names of your active strategies stand out and be recognized.

This is a **text box** where you can add information and notes relating to the strategy. It can be useful to put key information about what the strategy does so you can quickly remember if returning to it later.

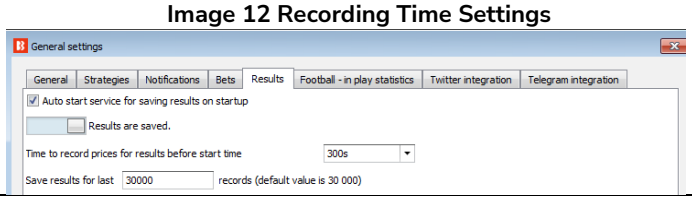
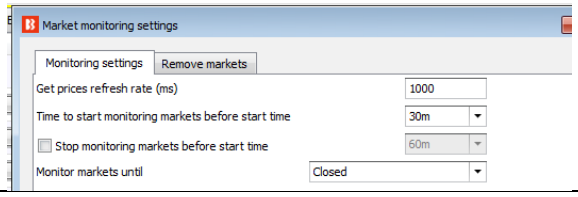
Image 11 Use favourite positions from before in play



***Software Logic used for determining favorite for "Use favourite positions from before in play" checkbox.**

Time	Check Box	Prices used to determine favorite positions
Before in play	Unchecked	Current prices
Before in play	Checked	The prices with the best overround recorded by software. Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings-> Results" 300s is default setting) If no prices have been recorded yet, then it will use the current prices.
In play	Unchecked	Current prices
In play	checked	The prices with the best overround recorded by software. Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings-> Results" 300s is default setting)

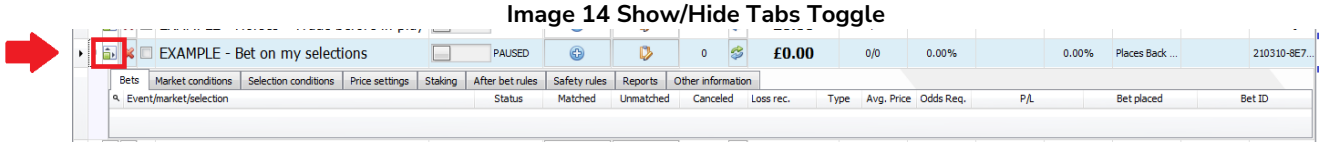
Notes about recording time settings for the prices used to decide favourite positions from before in play.

Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings->Results" 300s is default setting)	**Image 12 Recording Time Settings** 
The "Tools & Settings->Monitoring settings" - "Time to start monitoring markets before start time" default setting of 30 minutes is **not** used to determine the favorite. This is for other rules such as the steamer/drifter rule.	**Image 13 Monitoring Settings** 

For most users betting on their own selections, there will be no need to change any of the settings here. Click "Cancel" to close the box without making any changes.

Next, let's look at more detailed rules of the strategy.
Click on the "**Show/Hide Tabs**" toggle on the far left of the strategy name.

Image 14 Show/Hide Tabs Toggle



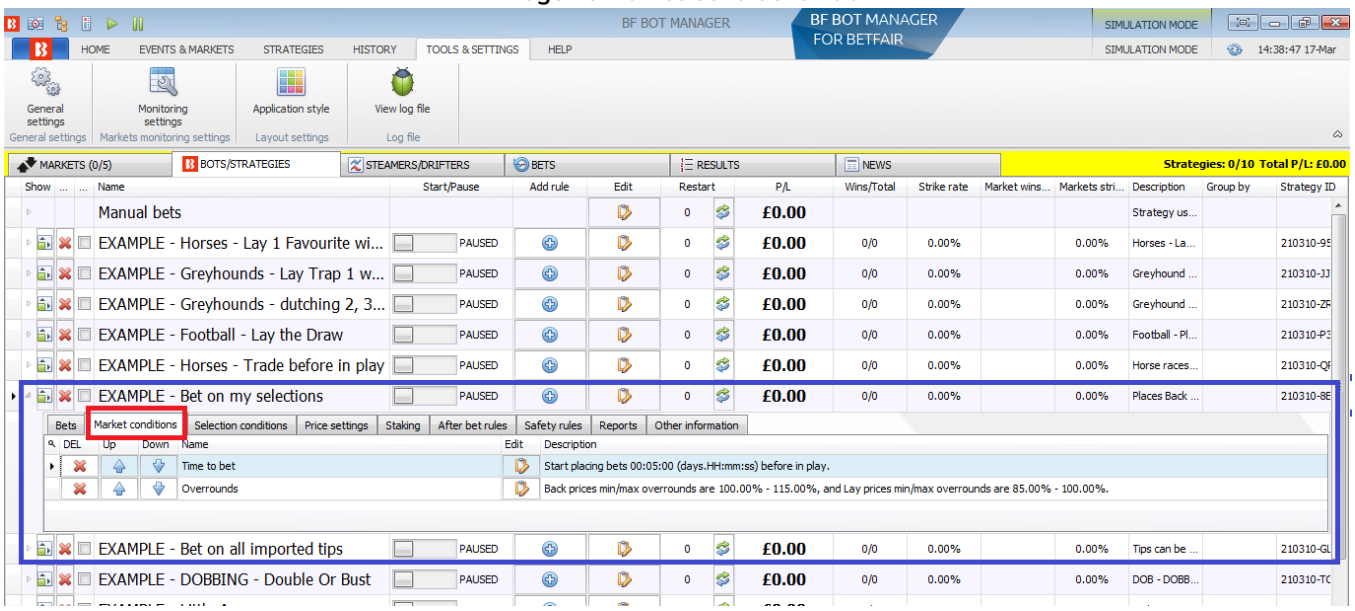
This will open up the individual strategy's set of rules, with 9 tabs to view the different types of rules that make up the strategy and has other reports and bot activity information.

Tab	Function
Bets	**Tells us what bets have been placed by the strategy bot.**
Market conditions	**Sets rules to allow or prevent betting on a market.**
Selection conditions	**Sets rules to allow or prevent betting on a selection.**
Price settings	**Tells the bot what price to ask for.**
Staking	**Tells the bot how much to bet and at what persistence setting.**
After bet rules	**To set hedge, 2nd bet or unmatched bet rules.**
Safety rules	**To set loss limits and other safety features**
Reports	**Tells us what actions the bot is doing.**
Other information	**Has information such as when the bot was started, paused or restarted.**

The **Bets** tab is currently empty as there have been no bets placed by this strategy.

Click on the "**Market Conditions**" tab.

Image 15 Market Conditions Tab



This shows two rules that have been set, **"Time to Bet"** and **"Overrounds".**
If we click on the "Edit" button for **Time to Bet**, we can see the detailed settings possible for this rule.

Image 16 Time to Bet

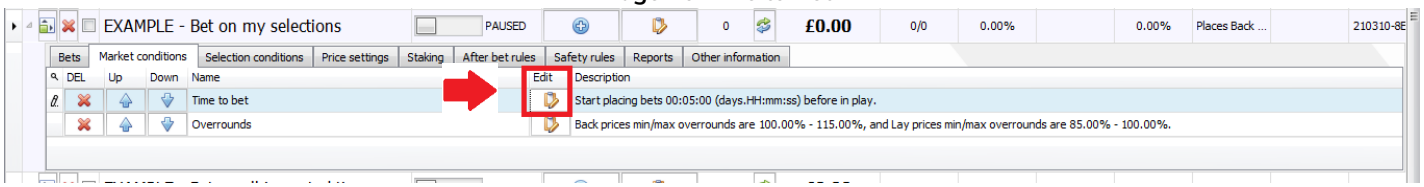
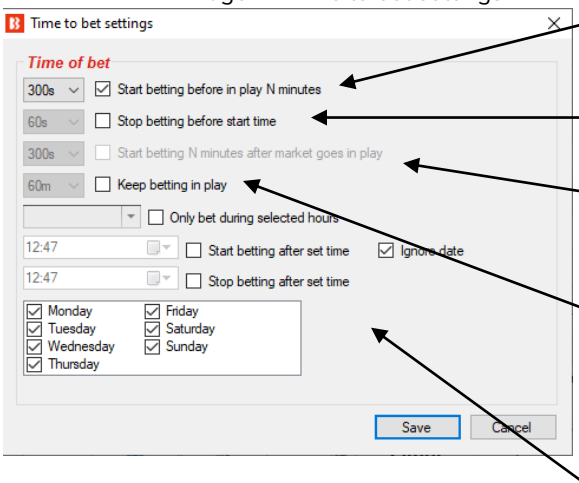


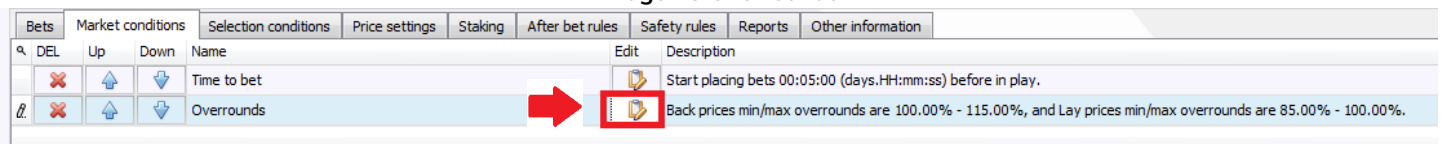
Image 17 Time to bet settings



This tells the strategy to **start placing its bets at 300s (5 minutes) before the event starts.** This can be changed with the drop down menu to a time that you want.
If this box is checked, we can **set a time to stop betting before the start time.**
If this box is checked, we can tell the strategy to **start betting at a certain point after the event has started** and gone in-play. This option is currently greyed out because the bot has been set to start betting before in-play. If the first box is unchecked, then this option becomes available.
If this box is checked, the bot will be allowed **to place bets in-play** if the strategy conditions are met until the time set here.
These options **limit bot activity to specific times of day or days of week.** This is useful if we only want the bot active at specific times.

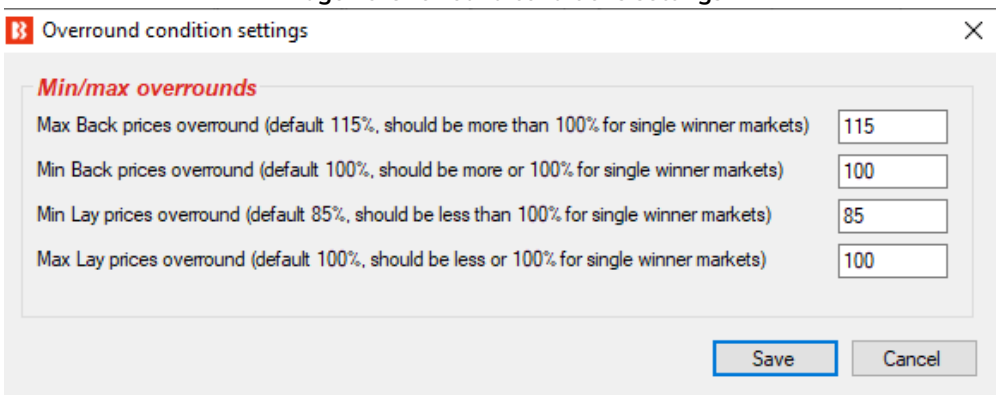
If we click on the "Edit" button for **Overrounds**, we can see the detailed settings possible for this rule.

Image 18 Overrounds



This rule is extremely important in order to make sure bets are placed at **valid prices**.

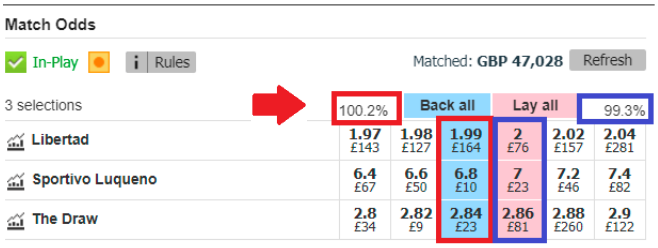
Image 19 Overround conditions settings



The current rule states that it will not place bets unless the **"back prices overround are between 100%-115% or the lay prices overround are between 85%-100%".** But what does this mean?

The easiest way to think of the overround number is as **a measure of how developed a market is** as a whole. It is a sum of either the back or lay odds after being converted to their percentage probability. Another way to view the overround is to look at a Betfair market.

Image 20 A Developed Market



1.99 back odds = a 50.3% implied chance
6.80 back odds = a 14.7% implied chance
2.84 back odds = a 35.2% implied chance
Total implied chance of back odds= 100.2%

2.00 lay odds = a 50% implied chance
7.00 lay odds = a 14.3% implied chance
2.86 lay odds = a 35% implied chance
Total implied chance of lay odds= 99.3%

In Image 20 we can see at a glance that this market is **developed** and we would be happy to bet on this market. The odds are close together and if we convert the odds to an aggregated probability in percentage, we get 100.2% for the back odds and 99.3% for the lay odds

The overround is a way to quantify in numbers if the odds add up to near 100%. No market will be 100% and bookmakers often run overrounds of 102.5%-110% or more which make up their "margin" where they try to guarantee their profit. So the closer to 100%, the better.

This market clears the bot's overround rule of 100%-115% for back odds and 85%-100% for lay odds.

Image 21 A semi-developed market

3.20 back odds = a 31.3% implied chance
2.30 back odds = a 43.5% implied chance
3.20 back odds = a 31.3% implied chance
Total implied chance of back odds= 106.1%

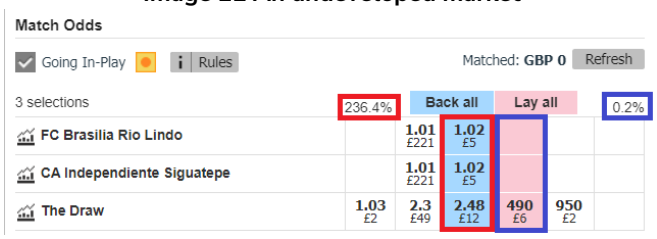
3.95 lay odds = a 25.3% implied chance
2.56 lay odds = a 39.1% implied chance
3.80 lay odds = a 26.3% implied chance
Total implied chance of lay odds= 90.7%

In image 21, we see a **semi-developed market** where the back and lay odds available are not so close together yet. If we add up the back odds implied probability we get an overround of 106%. This is not great for a major market before the event start, but for in-play markets or minor markets pre-start, there are occasions when being too strict with overrounds can lead to bets not getting placed.

This market still clears the bot's overround rule of 100%-115% for back odds and 85%-100% for lay odds.

If you want to change your overrounds, it can be a good idea to manually check the Betfair site for the expected overround levels that occur for the markets you want to bet on. Too strict and bets might not get placed, too loose and you might get poor odds.

Image 22 An undeveloped market



1.02 back odds = a 98% implied chance
1.02 back odds = a 98% implied chance
2.48 back odds = a 40.4% implied chance
Total implied chance of lay odds= 236.4%

490 lay odds = a 0.2% implied chance

In image 22, we see a **very undeveloped market** that we would definitely not want to place bets on.

If we add up the back odds implied probability we get an overround of 236.4%. Only one of the selections has lay odds giving an overround of 0.2%.

This market would not clear the bot's overround rule of 100%-115% for back odds and 85%-100% for lay odds.

So we can see that the **Overrounds** rule in the **Market Conditions** area is there to avoid betting on undeveloped markets and invalid prices. One thing to note is that these overrounds are for single winner markets. Markets with multiple winners, such as place markets in horse racing, will have higher overrounds even if they are a developed market.

Another rule that helps the bot get valid prices is the **Back and Lay Price Ratio rule** in **the Selection Conditions** area.

Image 23 Back and Lay Price Ratio rule

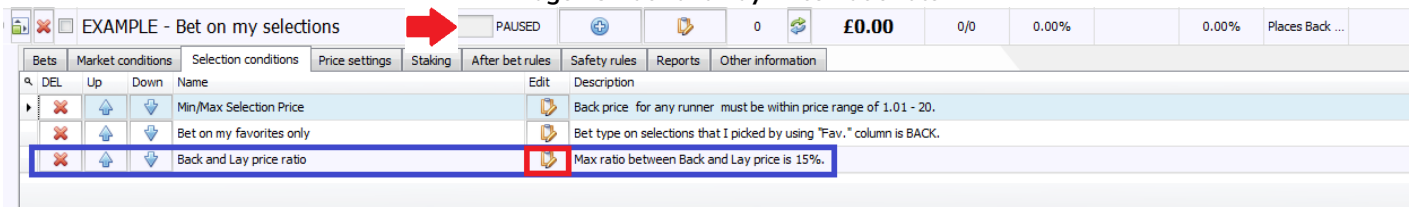
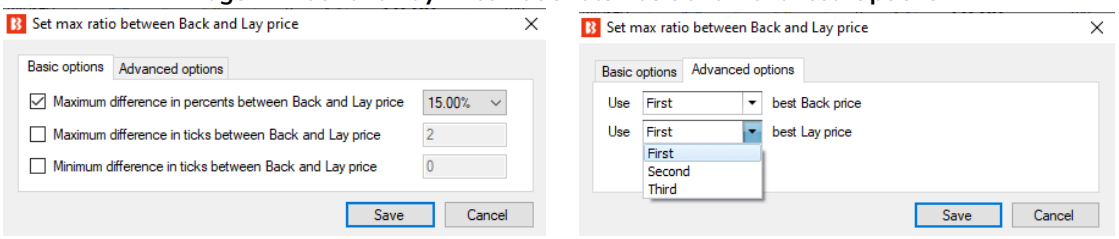


Image 24 Back and Lay Price Ratio rule Basic and Advanced Options



The **Back and Lay Price Ratio** rule looks at the odds gap between back and lay odds for each individual selection. It then checks the rule to see if the strategy is allowed to bet based on the percentage or tick difference. The percentage value is calculated by dividing the lay odds by the back odds, then subtracting 1.

Odds ratio = (lay odds / back odds) – 1

The bigger the percentage, the larger the gap between the odds.
We can also set the maximum ratio by ticks. Ticks are the Betfair allowed intervals between odds.
For example 1.33 to 1.34 is 1 tick. But 2.00 to 2.02 is also 1 tick since 2.01 is not allowed. So 5 ticks up from 1.50 is 1.55, but 5 ticks up from 50 is 75.

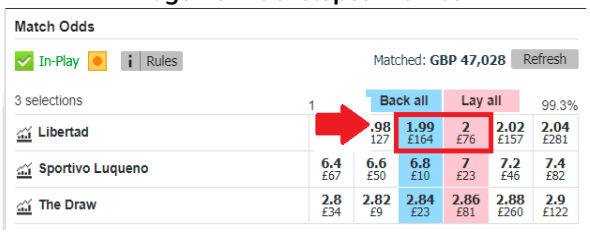
Odds Range	Betfair Tick Interval	Ticks in this Odds Range
1.01-2.00	0.01	100
2.02-3.00	0.02	50
3.05-4.00	0.05	20
4.10-6.00	0.10	20
6.20-10.00	0.20	20
10.50-20.00	0.50	20
21-30	1	10
32-50	2	10
55-100	5	10
110-1,000	10	90

Image 25 1st, 2nd & 3rd Best Prices

By default the rule looks at the first best back odds and the first best lay odds, but in the advanced options, this can be changed to the second or third best odds.

If we look at a Betfair market screens we can see how this rule protects us from bad odds.

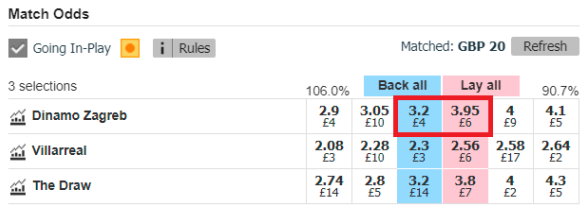
Image 26 A developed market



1.99 to 2.00 = a 0.5% or 1 tick difference
6.8 to 7 = a 2.9% or 1 tick difference
2.84 to 2.86 = a 0.7% or 1 tick difference

In this image the market is **developed** and we would be happy to bet on this market. The odds are very close together. All odds are 1 tick apart and the biggest ratio is 2.9% for the away team bet. All selections in this market clear the bot's back and lay ratio rule of 15%.

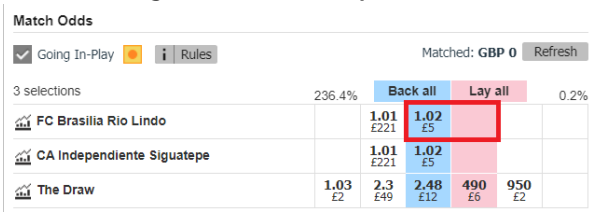
Image 27 A semi-developed market



3.2 to 3.95 = a 23% or 15 tick difference
2.3 to 2.56 = a 13% or 13 tick difference
3.2 to 3.8 = 18.75% or 12 tick difference

In image 27, we see a **semi-developed market** where the back and lay odds available are not so close together yet. Here the home win and draw odds would not be bet on because they do not satisfy the 15% ratio rule, but the away bet would be bet on since its 13% is under the 15% rule set. **It is important to remember that the back and lay odds ratio rule is a selection condition and not a market condition.** This means that it will only consider the selection that the bot is trying to bet on, If the bot is betting on home wins, it would not place a bet here since the home win selection's ratio is over 15%. But if the strategy was set to bet on away wins, it would bet here since the odds ratio of that selection is under 15%.

Image 28 An undeveloped market

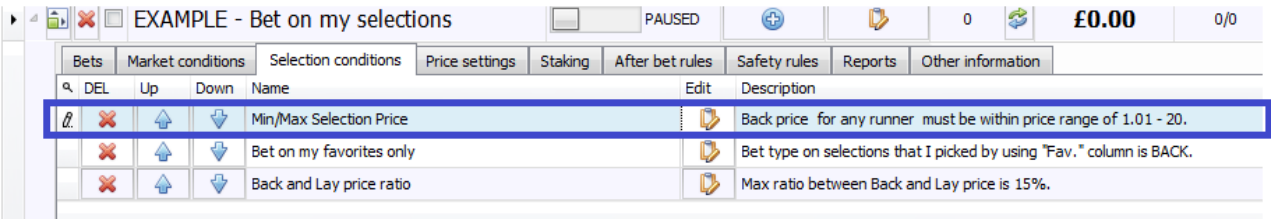


There are no home win or away win odds to divide the back odds by. So no ratio can be calculated.
2.48 to 490 = 198% or 175 tick difference

In image 28, we see a very **undeveloped market** that we would definitely not want to place bets on.
No selections in this market would clear the back and lay price ratio limit of 15%. The home and away bets don't have lay odds to calculate a figure with. The draw odds are over the ratio limit of 15%.

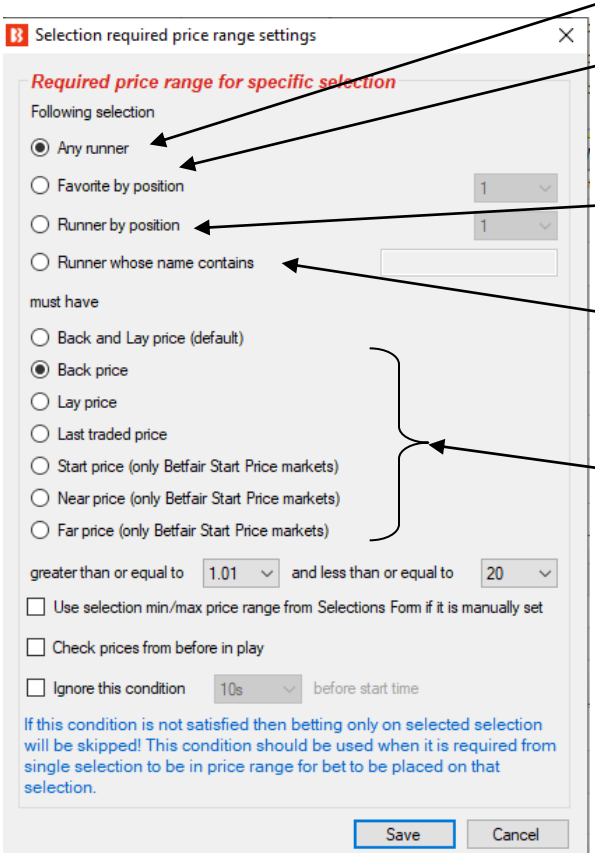
In this way we can see how both the **market conditions Overrounds rule** and the **selection conditions Back and Lay Price Ratio rule** are important to stop the bot betting on poor odds.

Image 29 Min/Max Selection Price



Another rule in the "Bet on my selections" strategy is the "**Min/Max Selection Price**" rule. This is a way to allow or disallow betting based on the available odds.

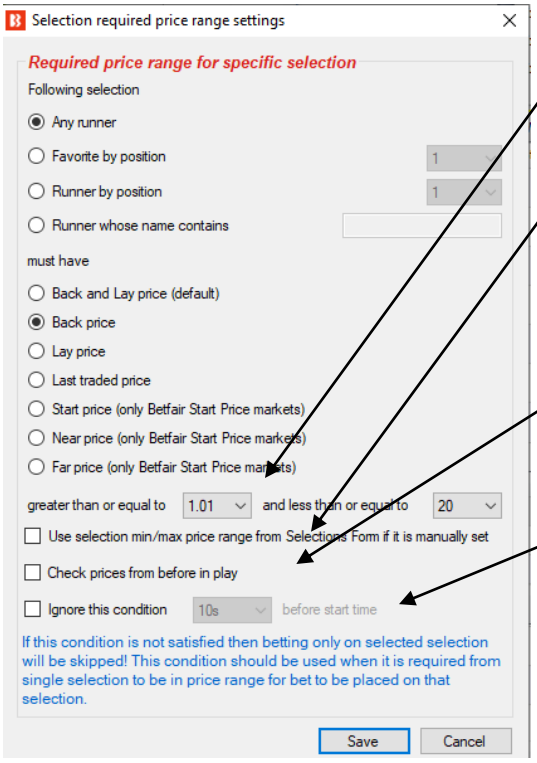
Image 30 Min/Max Selection Price



Any runner tells the bot to look at the price of the selection that the strategy rules are allowed to bet on.
Favorite by position tells the bot to look at the price of a favorite by position to allow betting.
Runner by position tells the bot to look at the runner by position price to allow betting.
Runner whose name contains tells the bot to look at the price of a runner whose name contains the following text to allow betting.
These settings tell the bot **which price to use**:
Back and Lay price option means that both the back price and the lay price must be within the set odds range.
Back price is the currently available 1st best back price.
Lay price is the currently available 1st best lay price.
Last traded price is the last price that a bet was matched at.
Start price is the Betfair Start Price (BSP). This price is only available for markets that have a BSP.
Near price* is the projected starting price (SP) if the market were to suspend now.
The Far price* is calculated by using only the SP bets and assumes that there will be no Exchange market at the time the market is determined.

*The Near Price and Far Price are advanced pricing concepts, mainly used for horse racing, and it is not really necessary to understand them unless you want to use them.

Image 31 Min/Max Selection Price



These drop down menus **select the required price minimums and maximums.**
This tells the strategy to **use manually entered min/max prices** for that selection if they were set in the markets grid screen in that selection grid view.
This option tells the strategy to **use prices from before in-play**. This is very useful for in-play betting when we want to use the starting odds, not the current odds. The prices before in-play will be the **recorded prices with the best overround in the 5 minutes before the start of the event** by default. It will look at the odds of the type selected in the section above (Back and Lay, Back, Lay, etc.)
This option tells the bot to **ignore the price rule at a certain point before the start time.** This is useful if you are trying to get better odds, but will accept the available market odds at the start time to make sure the bet is placed.

The next important rule that all strategies need is a bet type. This strategy has the bet type **Bet on "My Selections" only**.

Image 32 Bet on "My Selections" only

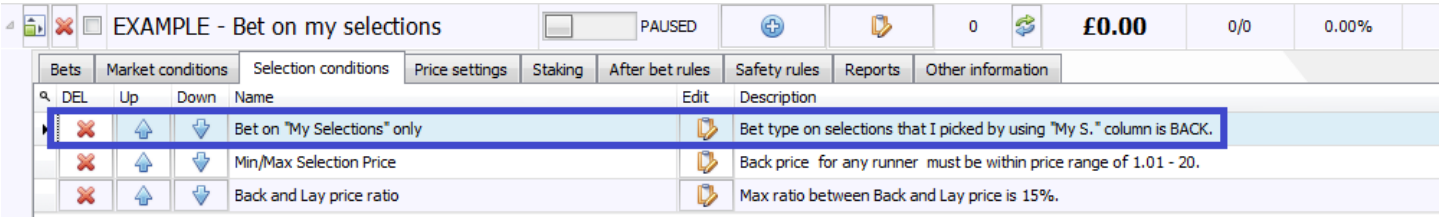
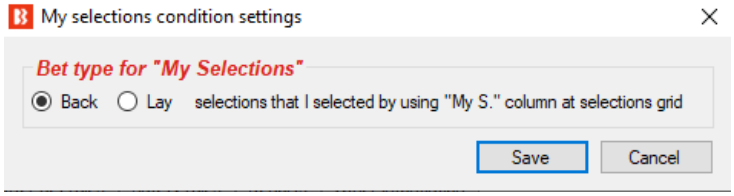
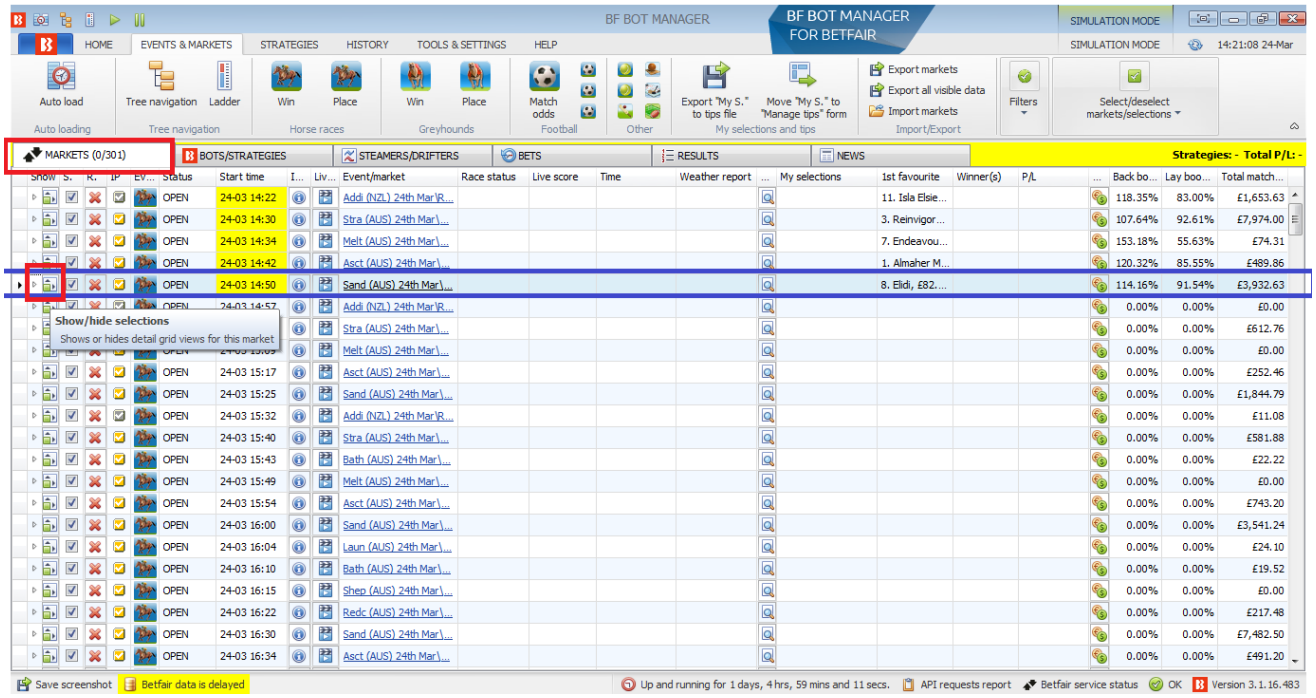


Image 33 My selections condition settings



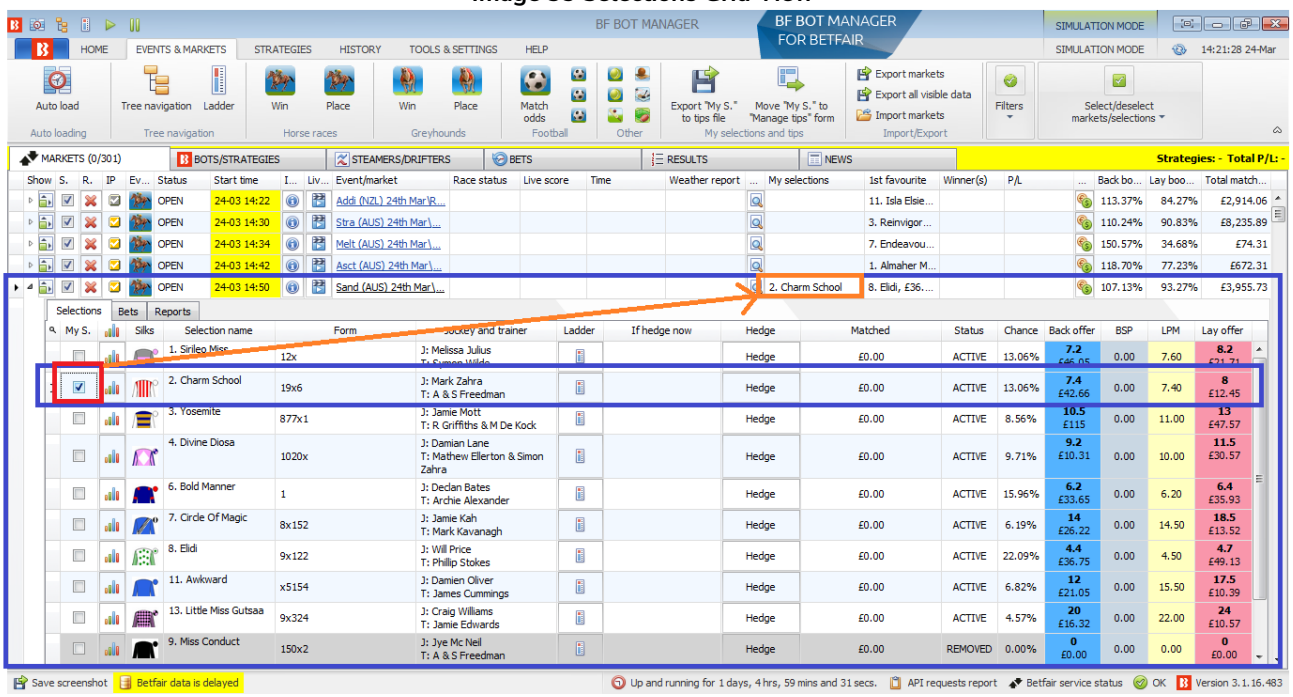
The bet type rule tells the bot strategy what to bet on. All strategies must have a bet type. In this strategy we want the bot to place back bets on "My selections". These are selections that have been manually checked by the user in the markets grid screen.

Image 34 Market Grid View



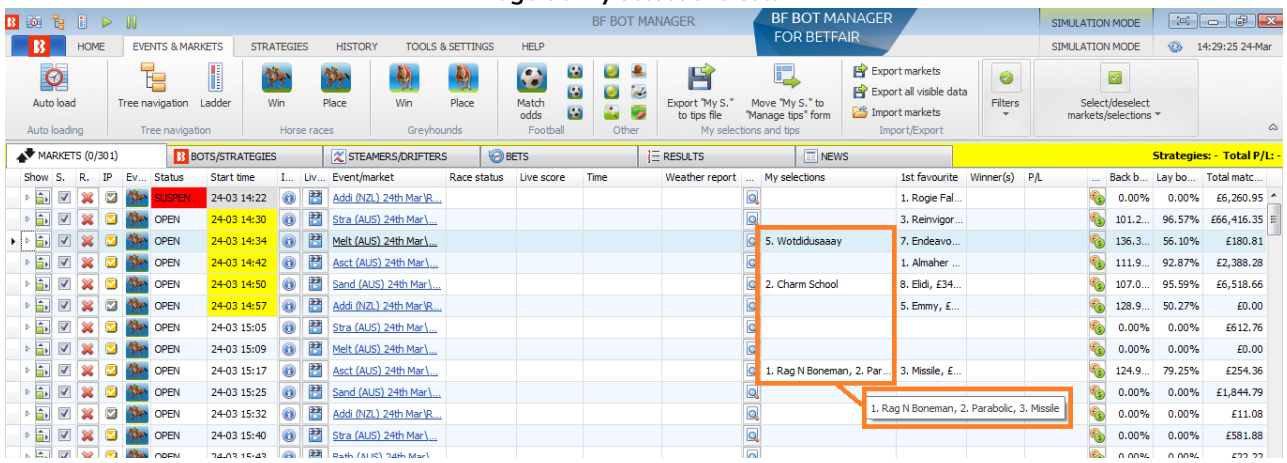
If we go to the MARKETS tab and click on the Show/Hide selections toggle, it will open the selections grid view for an event.

Image 35 Selections Grid View



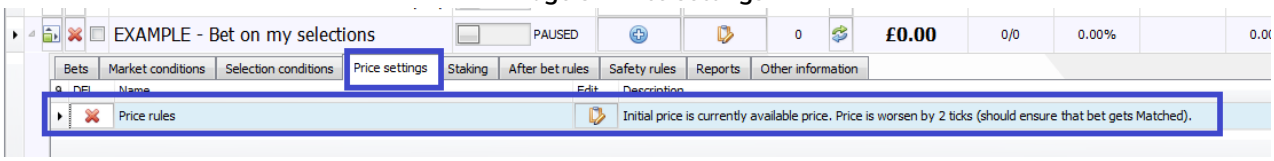
Here, if we click on the **"My S."** check box (red) on the left of the selection we want, this will add the selection to the "My selections" column (orange). The "Bet on My selections" strategy will only look at these selections when trying to place bets.

Image 36 My selections column



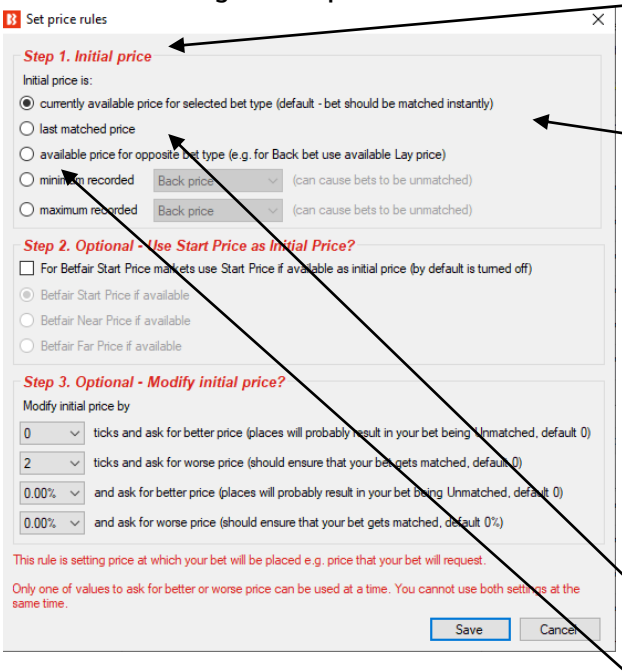
You can make multiple selections and even multiple selections in the same market. In this way you can tell the bot strategy what bets you want placed, at what time and with what conditions, and then do not need to manually place those bets. We must also tell the bot how we want our bets placed with **Price rules**.

Image 37 Price settings



In the Price Settings tab of the strategy rules, there are the **Price rules**. These tell the strategy what price it should try to place bets at. For example, to take the current price or to ask for a better price and so on.

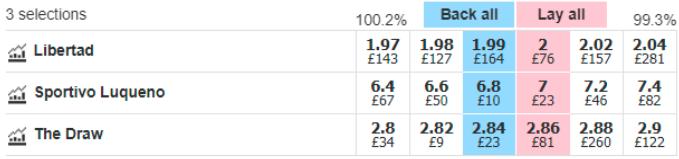
Image 38 Set price rules



Step 1: Initial price tells the bot what price to use as the base price.

If we select **the currently available price for the selected bet type**, it will place bets at the current back price for back bets and the current lay price for lay bets. Most bets will be matched immediately, but if there is not enough money offered at that odds level, then part of the bet may remain unmatched. In the image below, the away bet has £10 available at 6.8 so a £20 bet would only be partially matched.

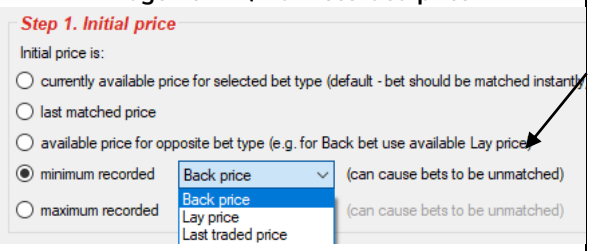
Image 39



Last matched price will use the odds of the most recently placed bet that was matched.

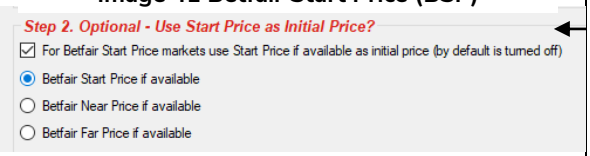
Available price for the opposite bet type for back bets would use the current 1st best lay price. For lay bets it would use the current 1st best back price for the price to request.

Image 40 Min/Max recorded price



Minimum and maximum recorded price looks at all the data recorded by this strategy to find the highest or lowest back price, lay price or last traded price. The recorded data depends on the time period that the market was monitored from.

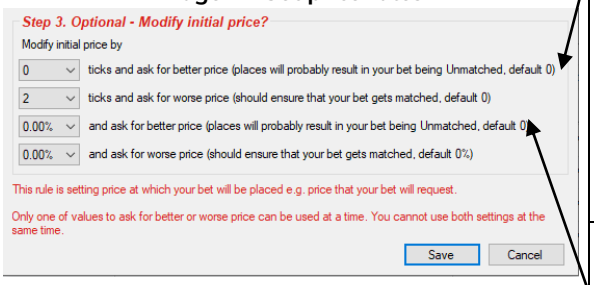
Image 41 Betfair Start Price (BSP)



Step 2 is an optional setting if you want the bot to use the **Betfair Start Price (BSP)** if available. It is possible to select the Start Price, Near Price of Far Price. If the market is not a Betfair Start Price market, then the strategy will follow the rule set in Step 1.

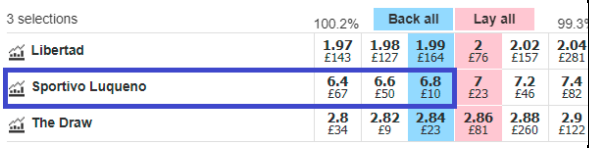
Step 3 is an optional setting that modifies the price to ask for a better or worse price by a number of ticks or by a percentage.

Image 42 Set price rules



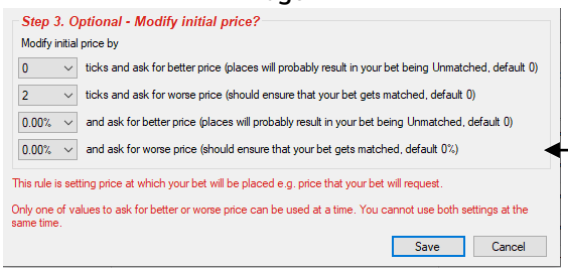
Asking for a better price by 2 ticks on a back bet which has odds of 1.35 currently available would instruct the bot to place a bet at 1.37. Asking for a better price on a lay bet which has odds of 1.35 currently available would instruct the bot to place a lay bet of 1.33**. Only one of these 4 rules can be set in one strategy.** You cannot ask for 2 prices on one bet. That would require 2 bots with different instructions. By asking for a price better than the currently available one, the bot will place an unmatched bet.

Image 43



Asking for a worse price by 2 ticks on a back bet which has odds of 1.35 available would instruct the bot to place a bet at 1.33. This would increase the chance of the entire stake being matched. In the case of the away team in image 43 which has current odds of 6.8, if asked for a £100 bet with the price modified to ask for a worse price by 2 ticks of 6.4, it would first get matched at the higher odds of 6.8, then 6.6 and the remainder at 6.4. So £10 would be matched at 6.8. £50 would be matched at 6.6. The remaining £40 would be matched at 6.4. By asking for a worse price by 2 ticks, it increases the chances of the entire stake getting matched, especially for in-play events when the 1st best currently available odds are sometimes smaller amounts.

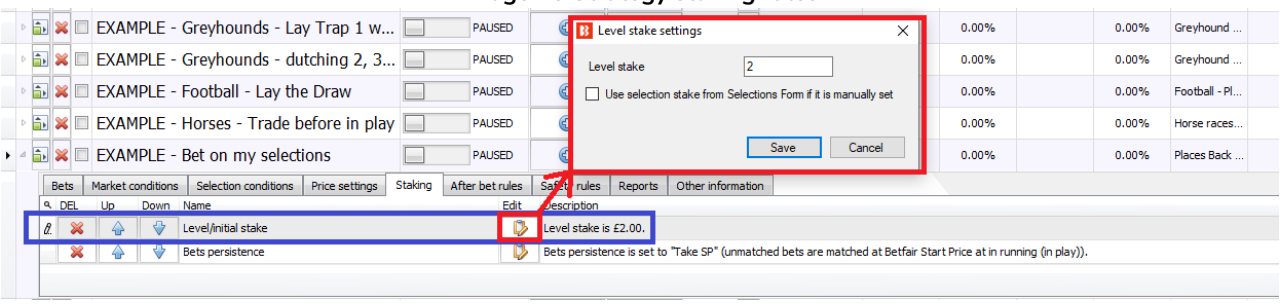
Image 44



Modifying the price can also be done as a **percentage** of the currently available price. For example, asking for a 10% worse price on 6.8 would ask for odds of 6.2. (6.8 - (6.8 - 1.0) x (1.0 - 0.90) = 6.8 - 5.8 * 0.1 = 6.8 - 0.58 = 6.22 but those odds are not permitted on Betfair, so it would be rounded to the nearest permitted interval which is 6.2.)

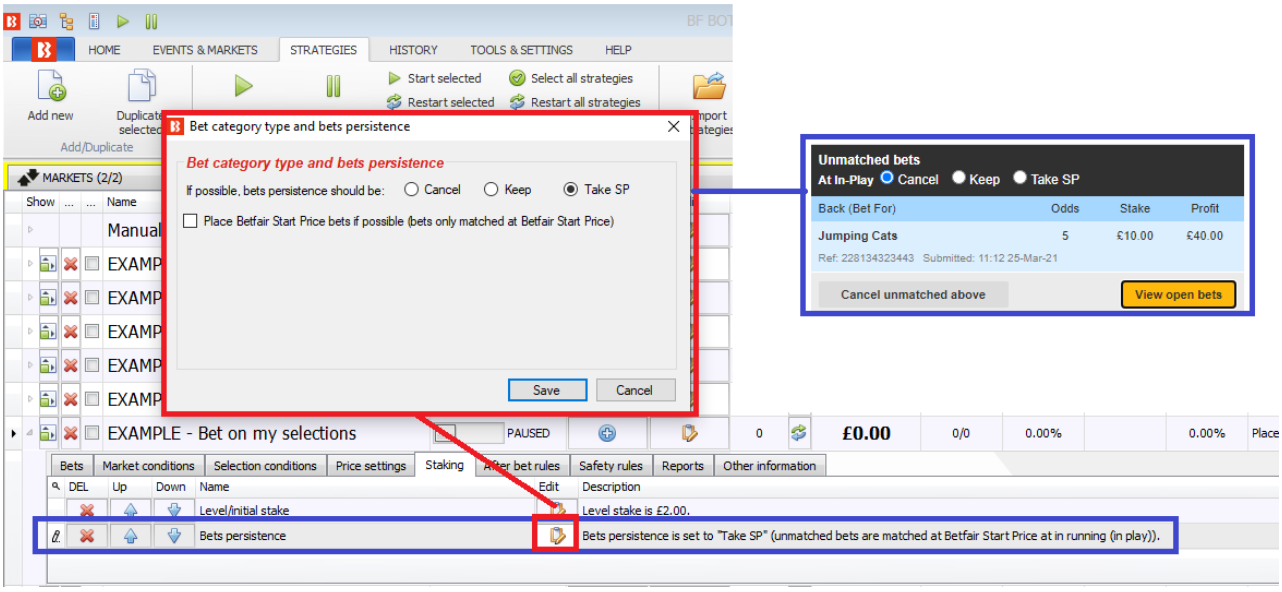
This **"Bet on my selections"** strategy is set to ask for a worse price by 2 ticks in order to increase the chances of the stake getting matched.

Image 45 Strategy staking rules



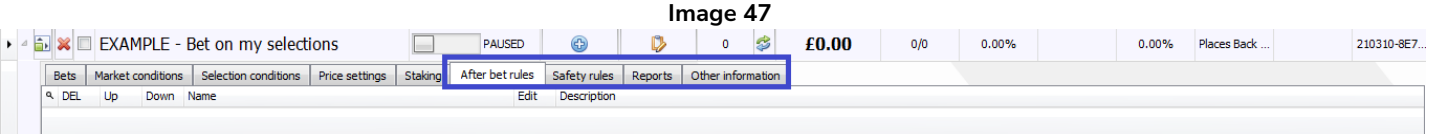
In the staking rules tab we set how much to bet. There are a wide variety of staking plans to choose from. This strategy is using a level/initial stake of £2. This means it will bet £2 on every back bet, and lay to win £2 on every lay bet.

Image 46 Bets persistence rule



The **bets persistence** rule lets you place a bet that will be cancelled at in-play if unmatched, kept at in-play if unmatched or will take the Betfair Start Price (SP) if available on that market. This strategy is set to take the Starting Price. These settings work as they do on the Betfair website.

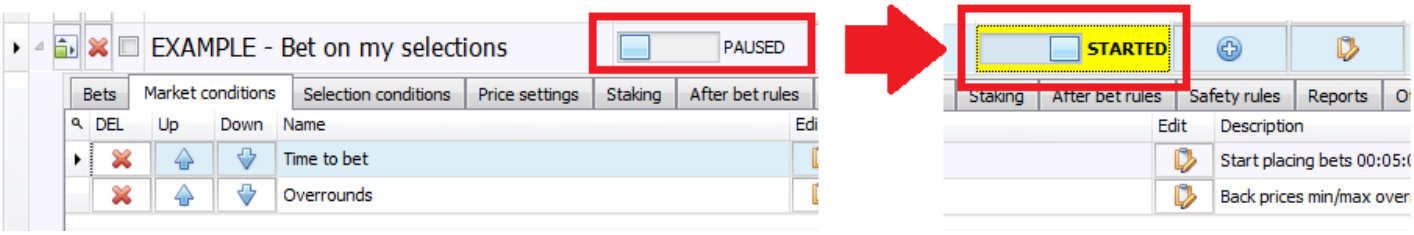
Image 47



The "EXAMPLE – Bet on my selections" strategy has no After bet rules or Safety rules set.
There are no Reports or Other information yet, since the bot has not been started.

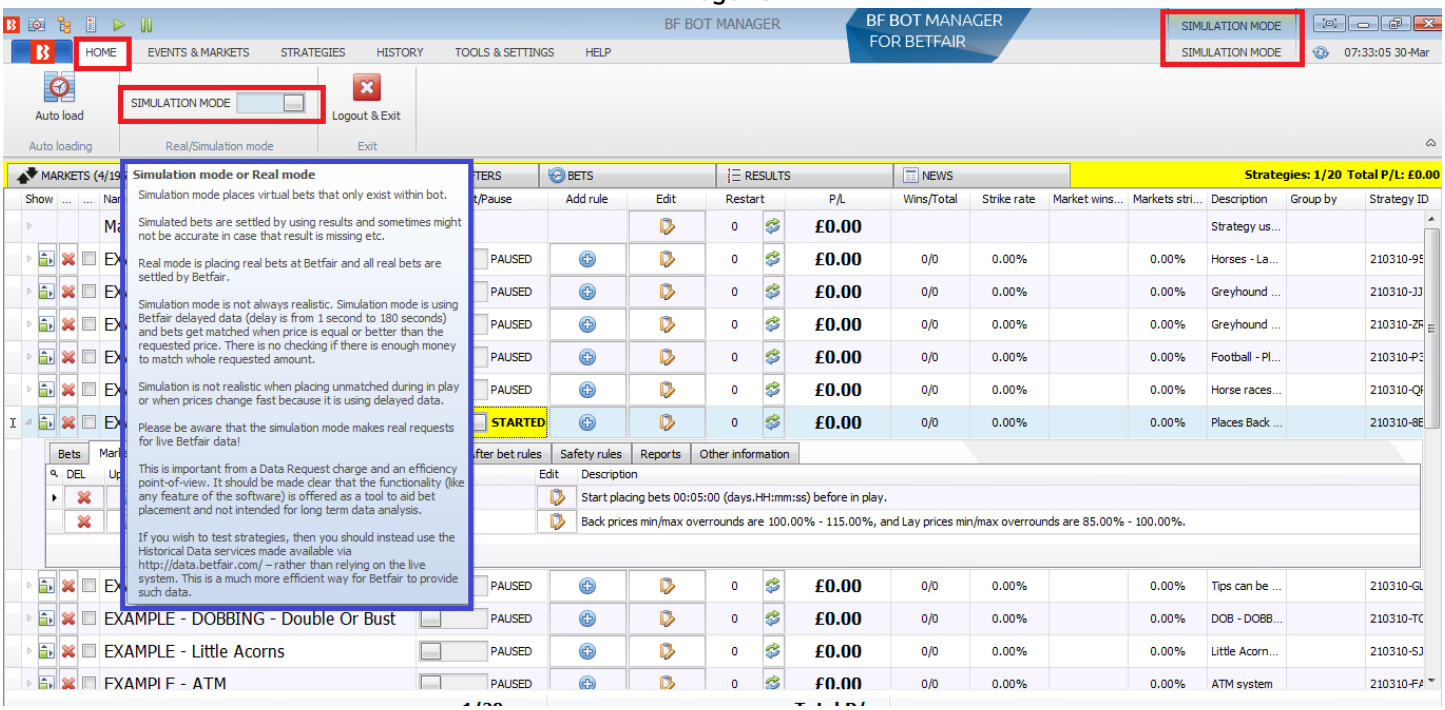
To start the strategy, click on the **Start/Pause** button.

Image 48



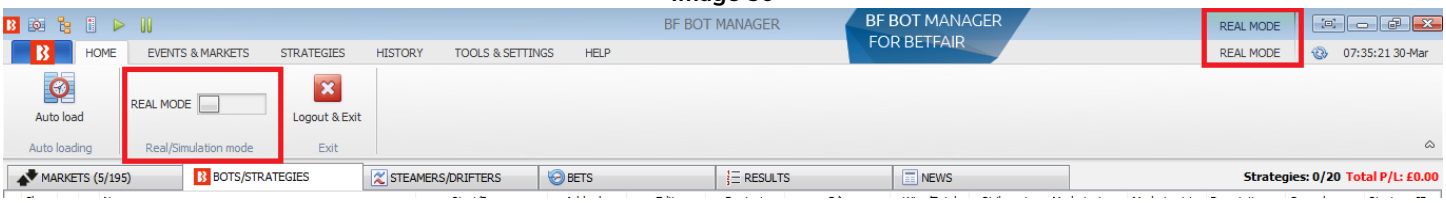
When trying new strategies for the first time, always run them in simulation mode first, then with small stakes in real mode, and then slowly increase the stakes to your desired level. This is to make sure the bot is running exactly as you want it, because small errors in settings can sometimes lead to big losses. The software starts up in simulation mode by default. You can change to real mode in the HOME screen by clicking the SIMULATION MODE button.

Image 49



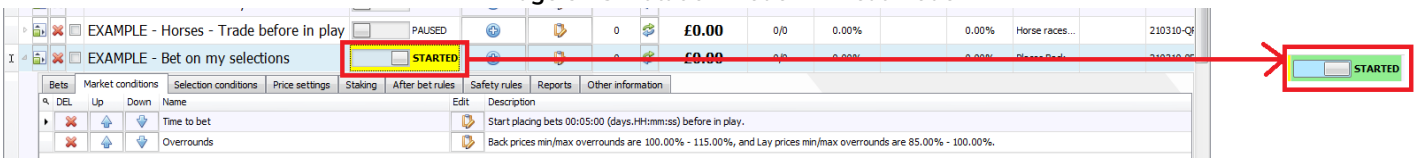
The Real/Simulation mode button will now change to say REAL MODE and the top right hand corner status will also change to REAL MODE.

Image 50



We can also know that the software is in real mode because the strategy STARTED button will be in green for real mode and yellow for simulation mode.

Image 51 Simulation Mode --> Real Mode



In summary, the Strategy Details Form and Strategy Tabs tell the bot what to do.

Rule Summary for Example – Bet on my selections

Strategy Details Form	Strategy Rule	Instructions
General	Max number of bets per runner	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
	Max number of bets per market	20 bets by this strategy per market allowed.
	Max number of bets per event	10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tabs	**Strategy Rule**	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Time to bet	Place bets 5 minutes before event starts.
	Overrounds	Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Bet on "My Selections" only	Place back bets on "My S." manually selected runners.
	Back and Lay price ratio	Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
	Min/Max Selection Price	Only bet if price is between 1-20 odds.
Price settings	Price rules	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Level/initial stake	Stake £2 on each bet. Take the SP if available.

Now we have seen how a simple strategy is made, next let's look at a slightly more complicated one where the strategy will find and bet on events by itself and also automatically make post-bet trade outs when desired.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

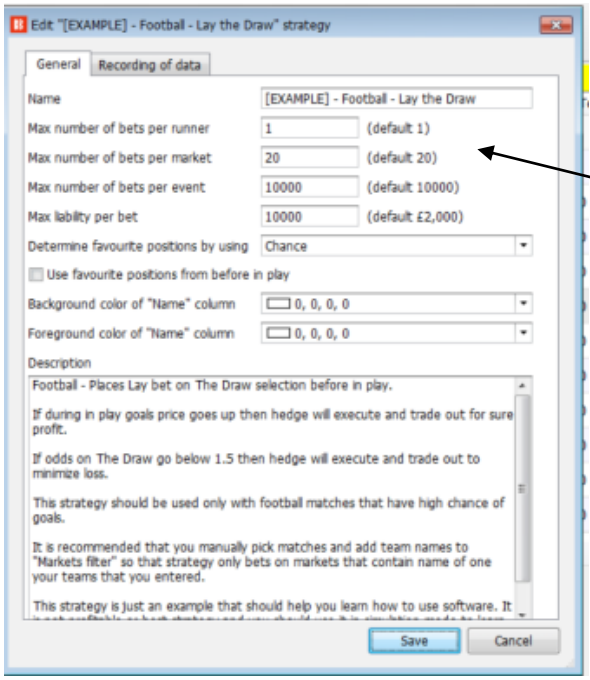
2.1.3 Football - Lay The Draw

In the previous strategy, we had to manually select the events that the bot would automatically bet on later. In this "**EXAMPLE – Football – Lay the draw**" strategy, we will set the strategy to do everything itself: find selections, place bets and trade out in-play if needed. There are many different versions of the lay the draw method and these are just example settings of how the bot can be set up to be used for this method. In this version we will lay the draw in all major matches, place bets pre-game, and then trade out automatically if there is a goal scored and the price goes up 25% or more or to trade out for a loss if it is still a draw late on in the game and the draw odds go under 1.5.

The **strategy details form** and its **tabs** show us the example strategy's settings.

Strategy Details Form	Instructions
General	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
Strategy Tabs	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Only bet on soccer Only bet on Match Odds markets that will go in-play Place bets 5 minutes before event starts. Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets. Skip the market if the traded volume is less than £30,000
Selection conditions	Place lay bets on the draw (Runner position 3). Only 1 bet per runner allowed. Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
Price settings	Place bets 2 ticks higher than available lay price.
Staking	Lay to win £5 on each bet.
After bet rules	Hedge if the draw price goes up 25%. Hedge if the draw price goes below 1.5

Image 52



The Strategy Details Form settings are the same default settings as the previous "EXAMPLE – Bet on my selections" strategy.

Even though the Max number of bets per market is set to 20, this setting does not need to be changed because the bet type in the Selection Conditions tab bets on only runner 3 and only 1 bet per runner.

Image 53 EXAMPLE – Football – Lay the draw: Market conditions

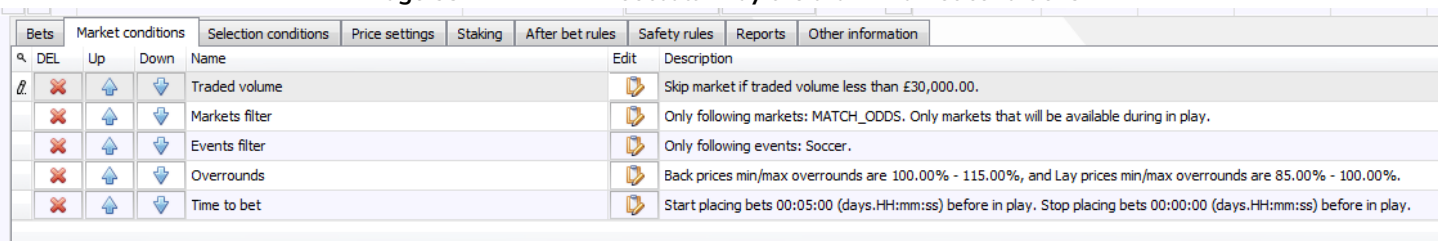
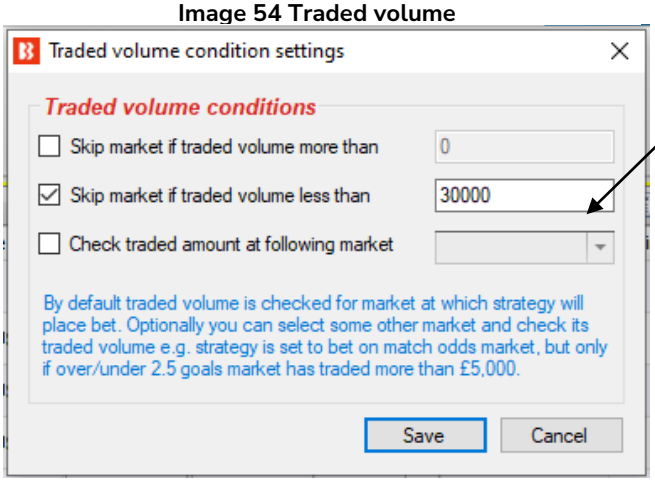


Image 54 Traded volume



The **traded volume** condition tells the strategy to skip markets that have less than £30,000. This is a way of telling the bot to only bet on major markets. The example below shows a market with over £88,000 matched. Major markets are more likely to have good liquidity for in-play trading.

Image 55 Traded volume as shown on Betfair site

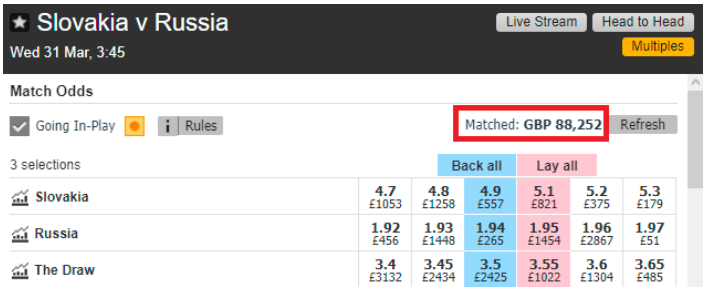
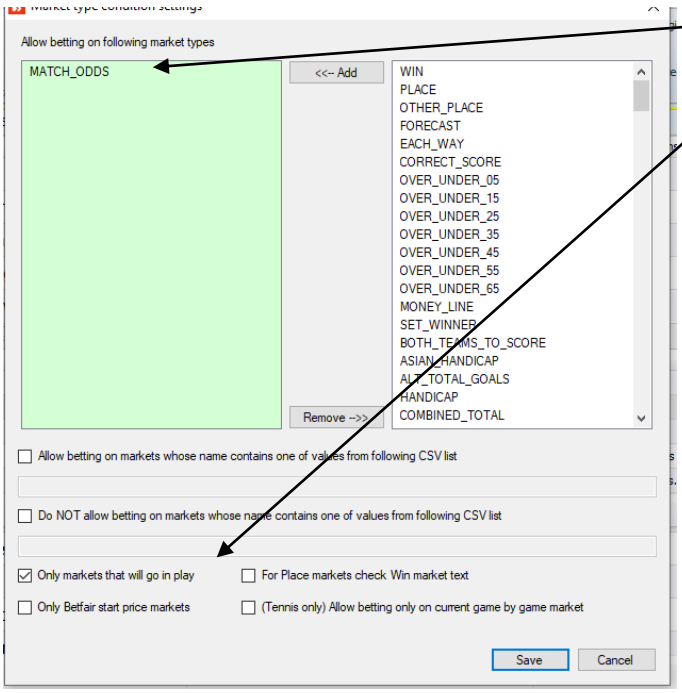


Image 56 Markets filter

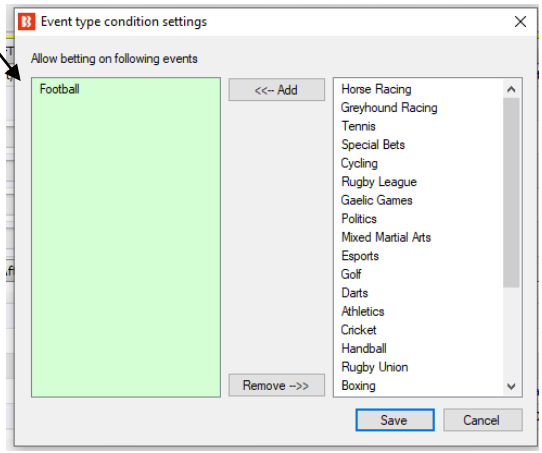


The **markets filter** condition tells the strategy to look at only Match Odds markets.

It also tells it to **only use markets that will go in-play** so that trading out will be possible.

Since Match Odds markets include other sports such as rugby or tennis, we need to specify the sport with an **Events filter**, and select Football.

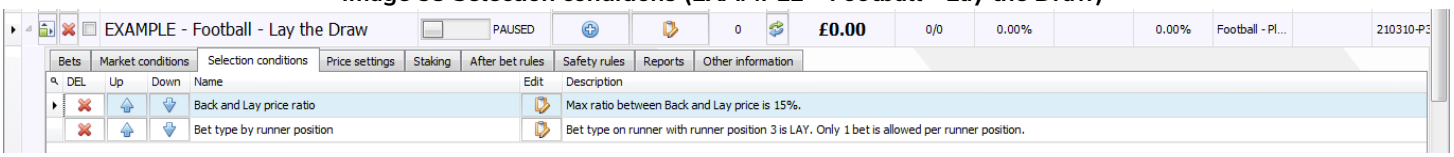
Image 57 Events filter



When creating strategies it is important to use a **Markets filter** and an Events filter as a set to ensure the correct sports market is being selected.

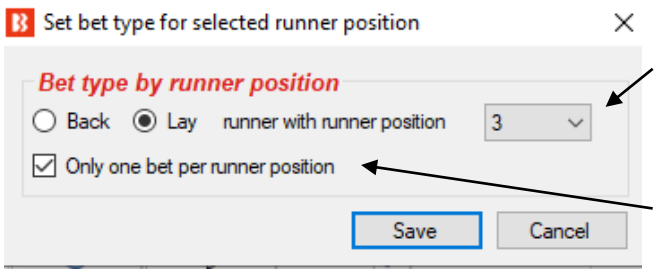
The **Overrounds** and **Time to bet** rules are the same default settings as in the previous example strategy.

Image 58 Selection conditions (EXAMPLE – Football - Lay the Draw)



The **Back and Lay price ratio** rules are the same default settings as in the previous example strategy.

Image 59 Bet type by runner positon



The **bet type** for this strategy is **Bet type by runner position**. For football match odds markets, the draw is always runner position 3, so we want to lay the runner in position 3. This means we are laying the draw.

Only one bet per runner position is ticked to make sure only one lay bet per draw is made.

Image 60 Price settings (EXAMPLE – Football - Lay the Draw)

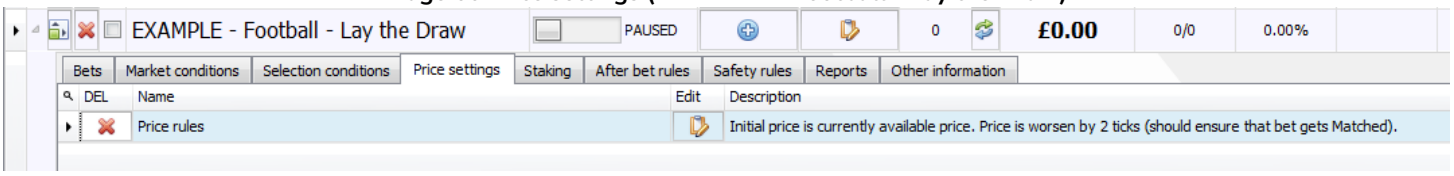
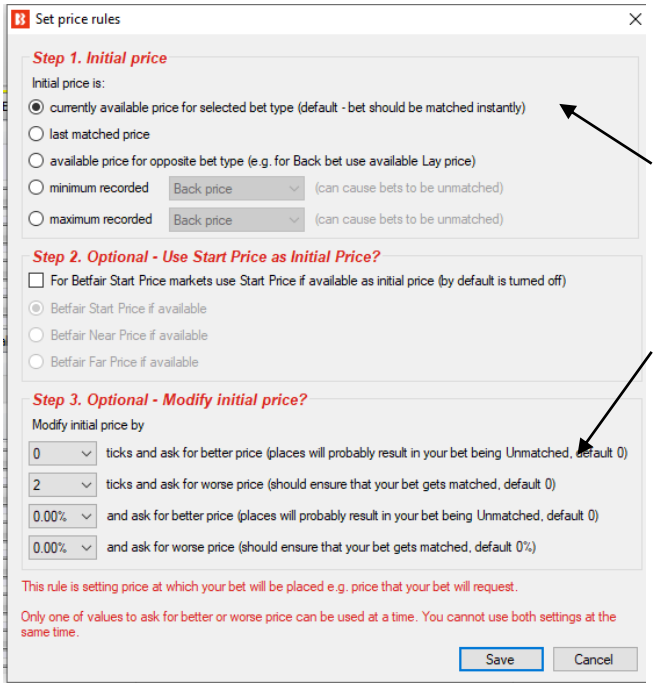


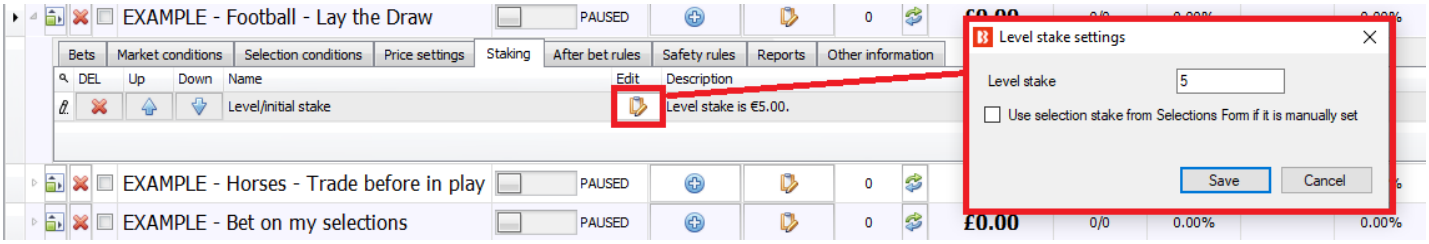
Image 61 Price rules



The **price rules** use currently available price. Since we are making lay bets, that will mean the currently available 1st best lay price will be the initial price.

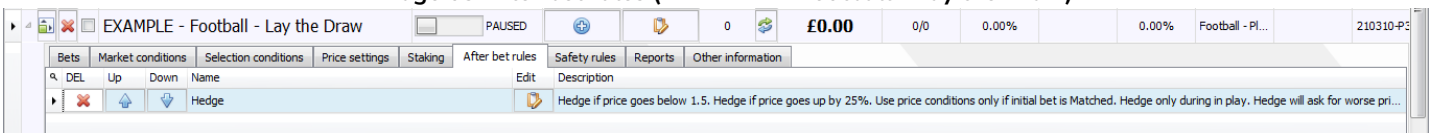
The **price requested is worsened by 2 ticks to ensure the bet gets matched**. For lay odds, that means a lay bet with initial odds of 3.4 would be offered as a 3.5 odds bet. (3.45 and 3.5 being the 2 tick intervals up.) If there is enough money at 3.4 to match the bet, those odds will be layed first, then 3.45 and 3.5 if needed.

Image 62 Staking (EXAMPLE – Football - Lay the Draw)



The **Level/initial stake** rule sets the level stake at £5. This means lay bets are made to win £5. If the odds are 3.00, then the liability for the £5 stake will be £10. If the odds are 4.00, then the liability for the £5 stake will be £15. When creating lay bet strategies, it can be a good idea to add maximum liability or maximum price rules to ensure that you do not have large liabilities for high odds runners. In the current example strategy, there is no maximum price and the maximum liability is 10,000 which would mean a £5 lay bet at odds of 100 would lead to a £495 liability. Unlikely for a football match odds market with over £30,000 matched, but it is important to understand the logic of the software.

Image 63 After bet rules (EXAMPLE – Football - Lay the Draw)



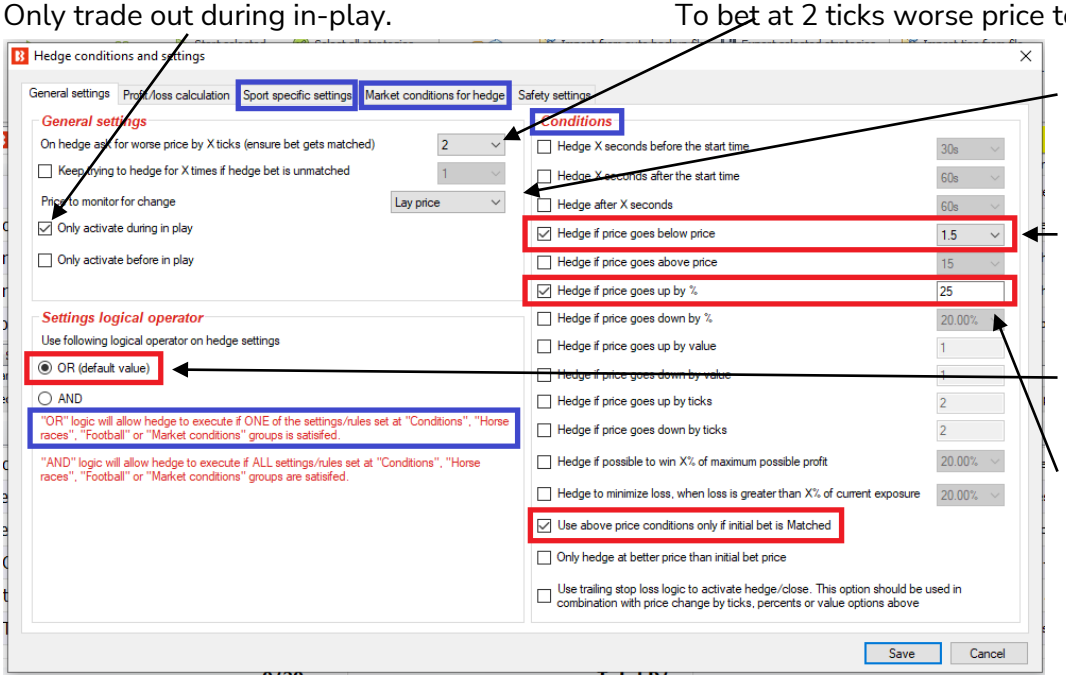
The **hedge** rule in the Bf Bot Manager is one of the most useful tools for automated strategies. It is this rule that controls what the strategy will do after it has placed its initial bet. In this example strategy, we want the bot to only trade out during in-play, to bet at a price worse by 2 ticks to help get matched, to follow the lay price, to trade out at a loss if the draw price goes down to 1.5 or to trade out for profit if the draw price goes up by 25% or more.

Image 64 Hedge rule

In this example strategy, we want the bot to:

Only trade out during in-play.

To bet at 2 ticks worse price to help get matched.



To follow the lay price.

to trade out at a loss if the draw price goes down to 1.5

or

to trade out for profit if the draw price goes up by 25% or more. (Most likely triggered by a goal being scored.)

The hedge rule is very useful, so let's look at it in more detail.

Image 65 Hedge rule – General Settings

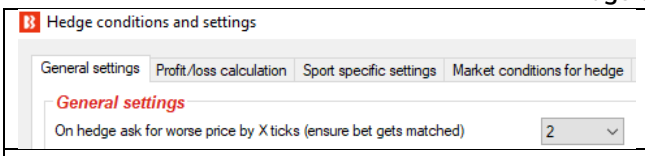
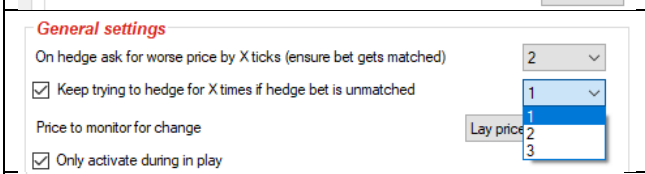
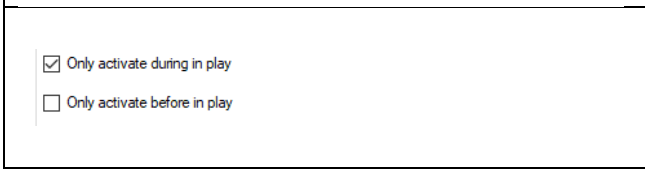
	**On hedge ask for worse price** is to help ensure bets get matched.
	**Keep trying to hedge for X times if hedge bet is unmatched** can be set to instruct the strategy to cancel and replace the bet up to 3 times at the current available price (with worsened price if selected).
	Price to monitor for change allows the price used by the hedge bet to be set.
	**Only activate during in-play** and **Only activate before in-play** allow the timing of the hedge function to be limited. If neither of these two boxes are checked, the hedge rule will be active at all times.

Image 66 Hedge rule – Settings logical operator

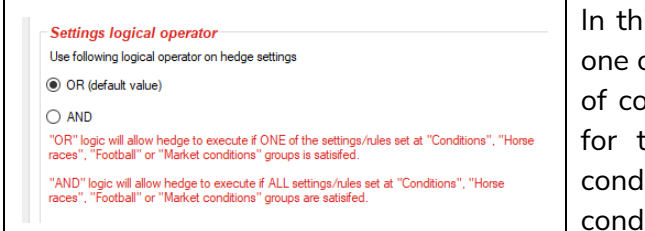
	The **logical operator** lets us set **AND/OR** for the hedge conditions. In this way we can create a number of triggers that only require one of them to activate the hedge (OR), or we can create a number of connected conditions that require all the conditions to be met for the hedge to be activated (AND). There are 4 areas of conditions that are linked to this, conditions, sport specific conditions (Horse races and Football) and market conditions for hedge.

Image 67

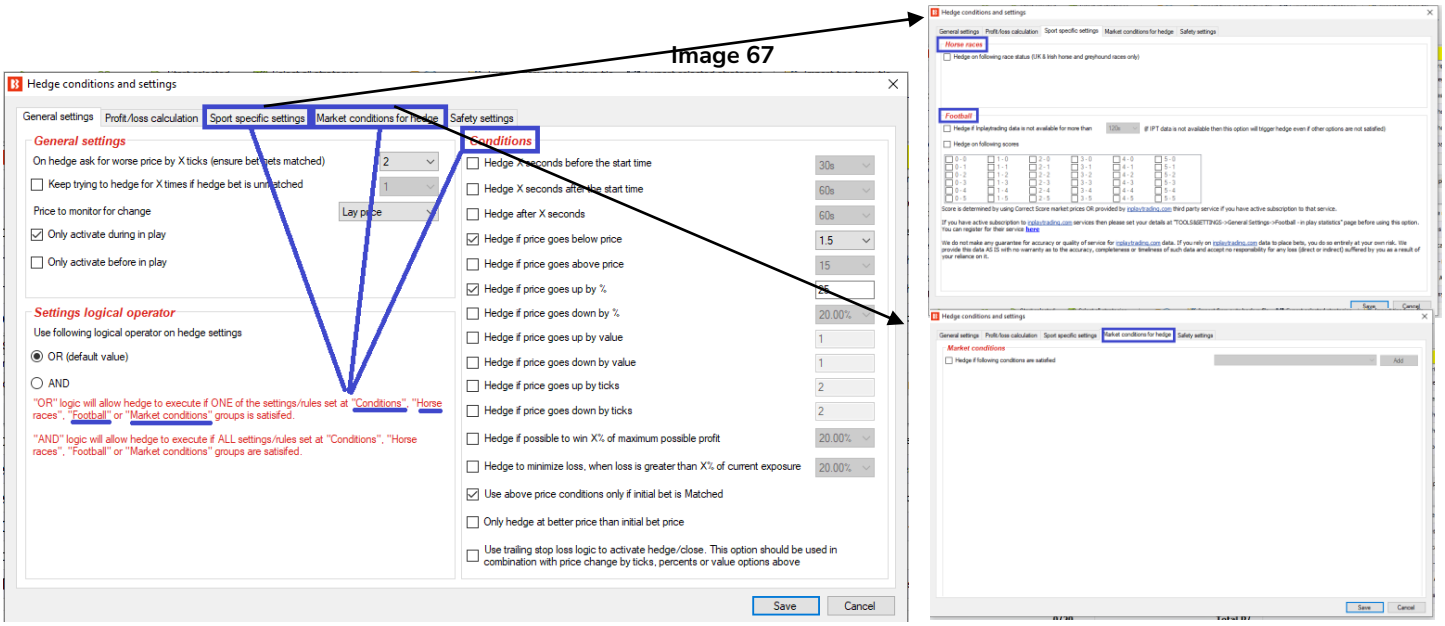


Image 68 Hedge rule – Conditions

Conditions ☐ Hedge X seconds before the start time 30s ☐ Hedge X seconds after the start time 60s ☐ Hedge after X seconds 60s	These 3 boxes allow you to **set precise times to hedge**. If the logic setting is set to OR, then the bot will hedge at that time regardless of other conditions. If the logic setting is set to AND, then it will try to hedge at that time if the other conditions are also met. **Hedge after X seconds** means it will hedge a certain amount of time after the initial bet has been made.
☑ Hedge if price goes below price 1.5 ☐ Hedge if price goes above price 15	These 2 options can set the hedge trigger for **if the odds go above or below a certain value.** For this Lay the Draw example strategy, the hedge will be triggered if the odds go below 1.5. This is generally when the match is in the late stages and it is still a draw.
☑ Hedge if price goes up by % 25 ☐ Hedge if price goes down by % 20.00% ☐ Hedge if price goes up by value 1 ☐ Hedge if price goes down by value 1 ☐ Hedge if price goes up by ticks 2 ☐ Hedge if price goes down by ticks 2	These 6 options can set the hedge trigger to activate on **price changes up or down.** The price change can be measured in **percentage, value** or **by ticks**. In this Lay the Draw example, the hedge will trigger if the price (the odds) go up by 25%. This usually happens when a goal is scored.
☐ Hedge if possible to win X% of maximum possible profit 20.00%	This option **hedges if a percentage of the potential profit can be achieved**. For example, if the initial bet of £10 at odds of 5.00 can win £40, then if this was set to 25%, and we can trade out to win £10 regardless of the outcome, then the hedge would be triggered.
☐ Hedge to minimize loss, when loss is greater than X% of current exposure 20.00%	This option hedges **if a percentage of potential loss is reached.** If our liability is £100, but we want to trade out before all is lost, then this option can be used. For Lay the Draw traders, it would be a way to base the loss making trade out on the liability and not on specific odds drops.
☑ Use above price conditions only if initial bet is Matched	This function is to make sure that it **hedges only if the initial bet was matched**.
☐ Only hedge at better price than initial bet price	This option **prevents hedging out at a worse price**.
☐ Use trailing stop loss logic to activate hedge/close. This option should be used in combination with price change by ticks, percents or value options above	The trailing stop loss option will activate **the hedge if the price changes by a set percentage, ticks or value based on the in-play monitored prices, not the initial bet price.** This rule will monitor price change and it will not hedge if the price is moving in your favour, instead it will record minimum and maximum prices, and then, if the price starts moving against you, it will use those minimum and maximum recorded price values to calculate price change. For example, if you have Back bet £10 at odds of 5.0 and you set to execute hedge when price goes up by an odds value of 0.5 (to limit losses), but the price goes down to 4.0 and then it goes down again to 3.25. After that price moves up to 3.9. At this point, the price changed by +0.65 (3.9 – 3.25) and the hedge will execute as the price change is more than 0.5. The

☐ Use trailing stop loss logic to activate hedge/close. This option should be used in combination with price change by ticks, percents or value options above	trailing stop loss function will not wait for the price to go up to 5.5 (5.0 + 0.5) to execute. It will execute at a lower price and save some of the profit.

Image 69 Hedge rule – Sport Specific Settings

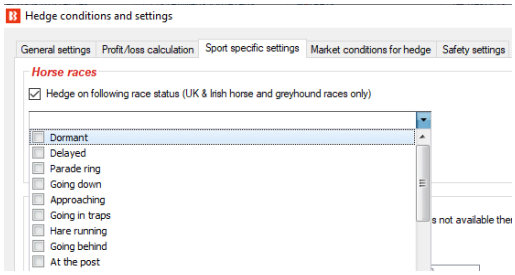
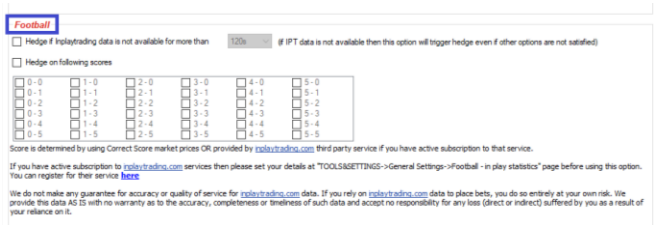
	The Horse races specific sports settings allow the **hedge to be triggered based on the race status** (but this only applies to UK & Irish horse and greyhound races only).
	The Football specific sports settings allow the hedge function to be triggered: if **live data is not available for a specific period of time** or if there are **specified scorelines**.

Image 70 Hedge rule – Market Conditions for Hedge

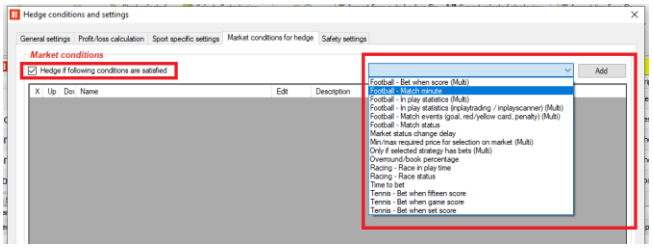
	This function allows a variety of **Market Conditions rules** to be used for the hedge settings. This is very useful when trying to create very specific hedge rules connected to in-play events, scores, data and so on.

Image 71 Hedge rule – Market Conditions for Hedge

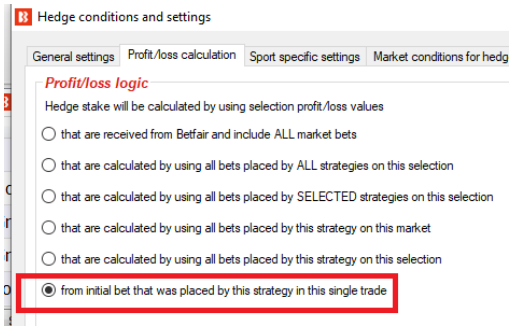
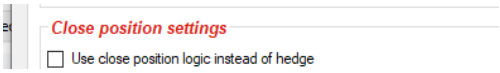
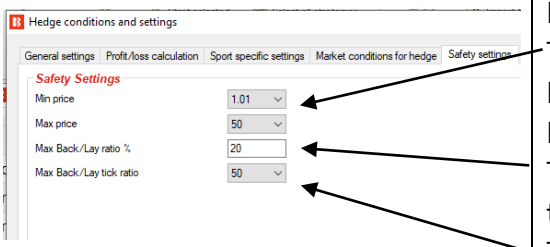
	The **Profit/loss calculation** tab is important for making sure what the hedge bet is based on is clearly specified. By default the setting is **"Hedge stake will be calculated by using selection profit/loss values from initial bet that was placed by the strategy in this single trade."** This means the hedge is based on the first bet placed by this strategy. It is possible to use more advanced settings **where the hedge will be based on all this market's bets, all this selection's bets, selected strategies bets on this selection, all of this strategy's bets on this market, or all of this strategy's bets on this selection.**
	The **close position** option **changes the hedge trade** (trade out with equal profit on all outcomes) **to a close trade** (trade out for profit on this selection and zero profit on other outcomes).

Image 72 Hedge rule – Safety Settings for Hedge



The **Safety Settings** tab is there for extra control over what kind of hedge bets can be made.

The **Min price** and **Max Price** limit the odds at which hedge bets can be made. When bets are being placed in-play, it can be important to be specific about what odds are acceptable.

The **Max Back/Lay ratio %** is to make sure the odds are close together in terms of percentages.

The **Max Back/Lay tick ratio** is to make sure the odds are close together in terms of ticks.

In summary, the Lay the Draw example strategy shows how **market conditions** and **selection conditions** can be used to tell the bot to find and place bets by itself. And **hedge rules** can be added to enable automatic post-bet trading based on a variety of factors.

Rule Summary of Example Strategy – Lay the Draw Settings

Strategy Details Form	Strategy Rule	Instructions
General	Max number of bets per runner	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
Strategy Tabs	**Strategy Rule**	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Events filter	Only bet on soccer
	Markets filter	Only bet on Match Odds markets that will go in-play
	Time to bet	Place bets 5 minutes before event starts.
	Overrounds	Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
	Traded volume	Skip the market if the traded volume is less than £30,000
Selection conditions	Bet type by runner position	Place lay bets on the draw (Runner position 3). Only 1 bet per runner allowed.
	Back and Lay price ratio	Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
	Min/Max Selection Price	Lay price for 1st favorite must be between 1.01-4.50.
Price settings	Price rules	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Level/initial stake	Lay to win £5 on each bet.
After bet rules	Hedge	Hedge if the draw price goes up 25%. Hedge if the draw price goes below 1.5

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

Next, let's see how we can add staking plans into strategies.

2.1.4 Horses - Lay 1st Favorite with recovery

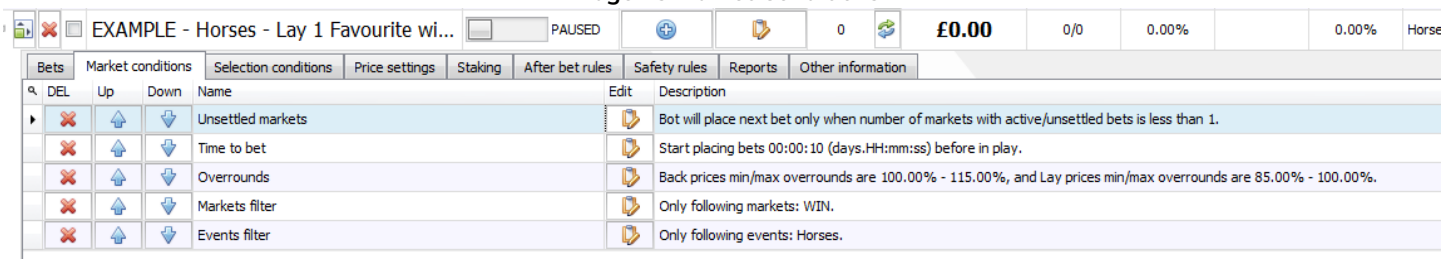
Let's imagine that we want to lay the favorite in horseraces with odds less than 4.5, but if the horse wins, we want to recover all that loss on the next lay bet, and keep trying to recover losses on up to a maximum of 5 races in a row.

Example – Horses - Lay 1 Favorite with recovery

Strategy Details Form	Instructions
General	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
Strategy Tabs	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Only bet on horses Only bet on win markets Place bets 10 seconds before event starts. Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets. Don't place next bet until previous bet has been settled.
Selection conditions	Place lay bets on the 1st Favorite. Only 1 bet per favorite position allowed. Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%. Lay price for 1st favorite must be between 1.01-4.50.
Price settings	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Lay to win £1 on each bet. Recovery Staking – Try to recover 100% of losses on next bet
Safety rules	Restart strategy after 5 losses in a row

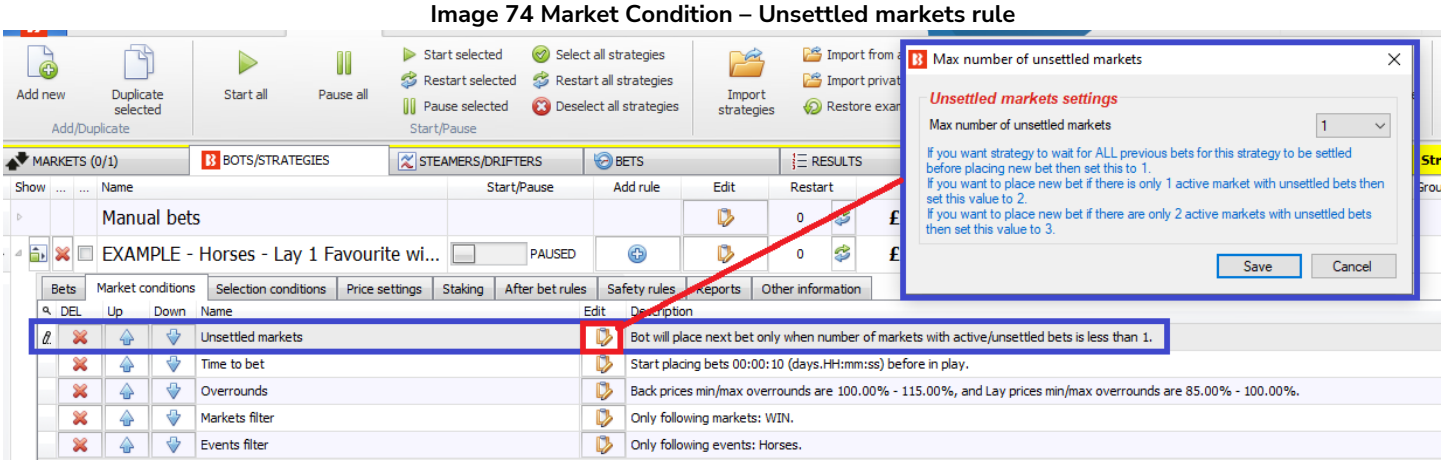
The strategy details form has the same default settings of the previous two example strategies.

Image 73 Market Conditions



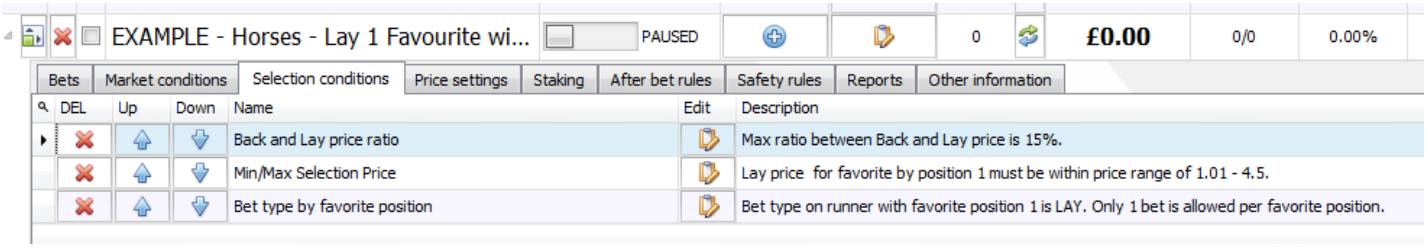
The **Events filter** tells the strategy to bet only on Horse races. (Not other sports that have Win markets, such as greyhound events.) The **Markets filter** tells the strategy to only bet on Win markets. (Not other horse markets, such as Place markets.). The **Time to Bet** rule tells the strategy to place bets at 10 seconds before the event is scheduled to begin. The **Overrounds rule** has the default settings.

Image 74 Market Condition – Unsettled markets rule



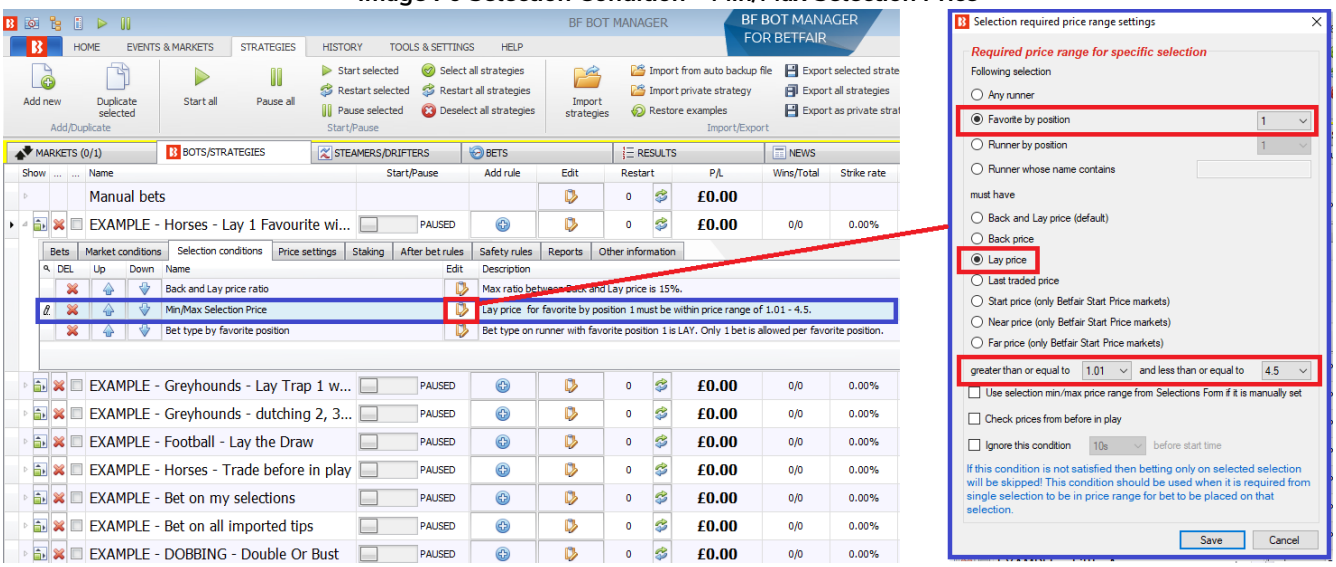
The **Unsettled markets rule** is very important when using staking plans that involve using previous bet results to calculate the next bet stakes. For staking plans such as recovery staking, we need to wait until each bet has been settled so that we know if the previous bet won or lost. This Unsettled markets rule limits how many unsettled markets for this strategy are permitted before the next bet can be placed.

Image 75 Selection Conditions



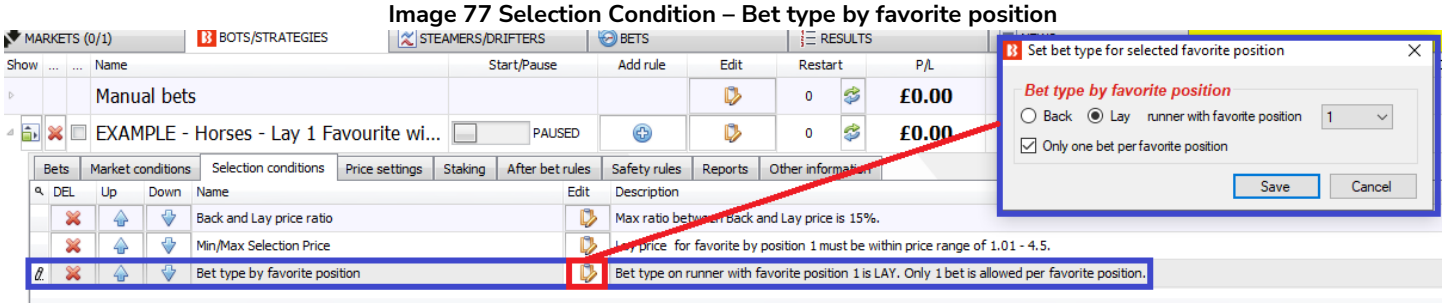
The **Back and Lay price ratio rule** has the default settings.

Image 76 Selection Condition – Min/Max Selection Price



The **Min/Max Selection Price** is set to look at **the Favorite by position 1**, which means the selection in that market with the lowest odds. It is set to look at the **lay price**. And it is set to only allow betting on odds of **1.01-4.50**.

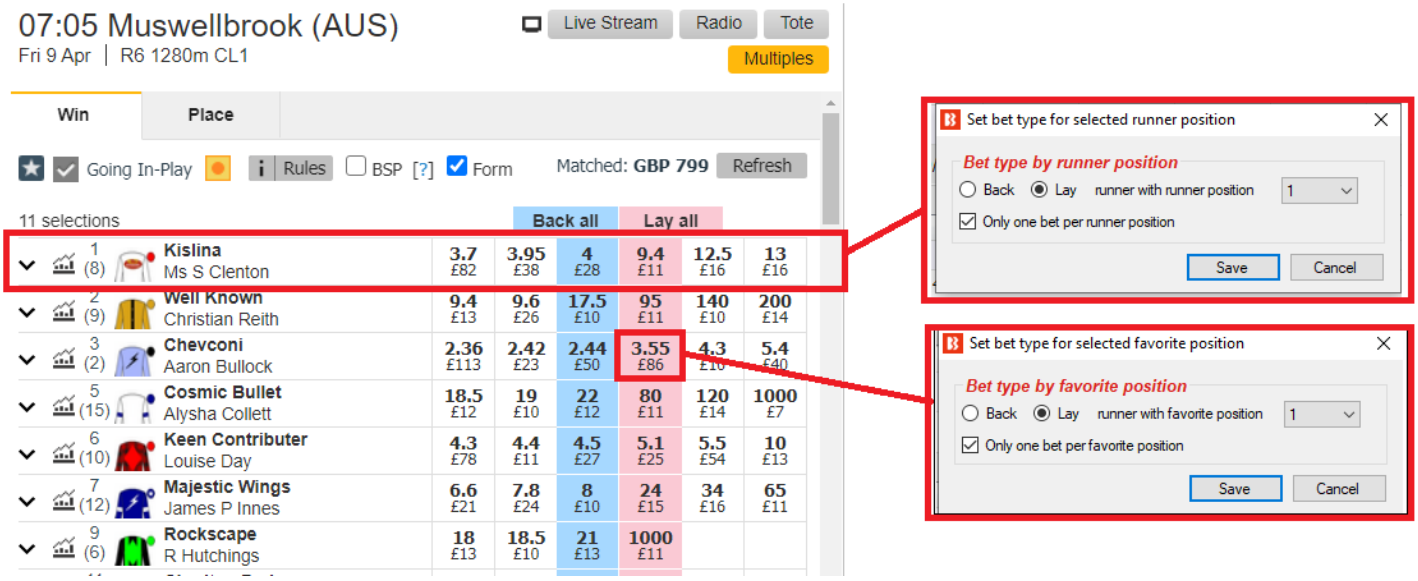
Image 77 Selection Condition – Bet type by favorite position



The **Bet type by favorite position** tells the strategy to place a lay **bet on the runner with favorite position 1.** (Please note that this is different to betting on the runner in *position* 1, which is just the first runner in the list.) The runner with *favorite* position 1 is the selection in the market with the lowest odds. In the same way, the runner with favorite position 2 would be the selection in the market with the second lowest odds, the second favorite, and so on.

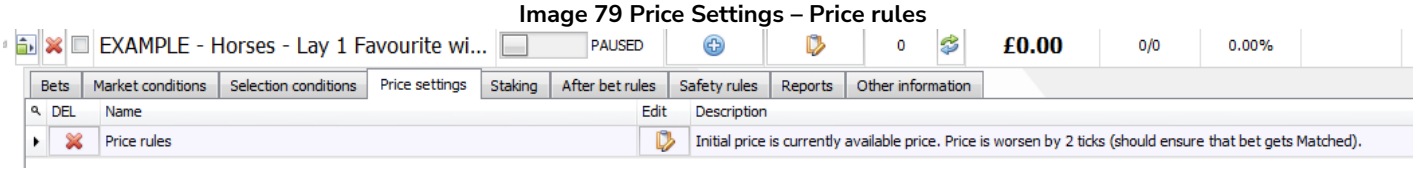
It is important not to confuse these two bet types.

Image 78 Bet type by favorite position vs Bet type by runner position (LAY)



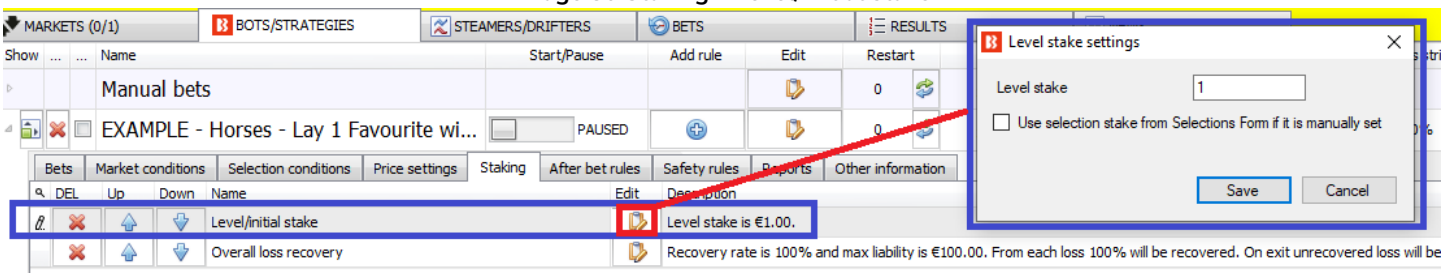
In this example, we see how laying the runner with **runner position 1** would be a 9.4 odds lay on "Kislina". Laying the runner with **favorite position 1** would be a 3.55 odds lay on "Chevconi". So it is important to be aware of whether you are **backing** or **laying** the runner with **runner position 1** or **favorite position 1** in your strategy settings.

Image 79 Price Settings – Price rules



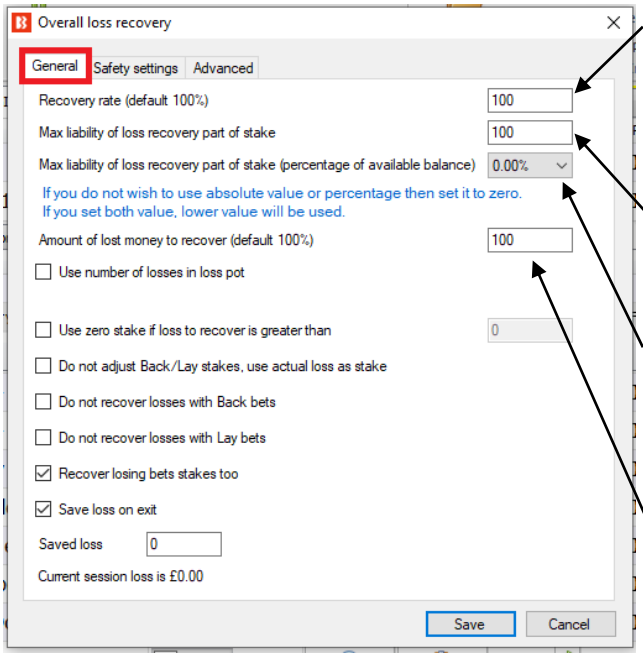
The Price rules have the default settings.

Image 80 Staking – Level/Initial stake



A **Level/initial stake** of 1 is set. The Bet type was set as a lay bet, so this means the strategy will lay to win £1. So the total liability will depend on the odds of the lay bet.

Image 81 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery



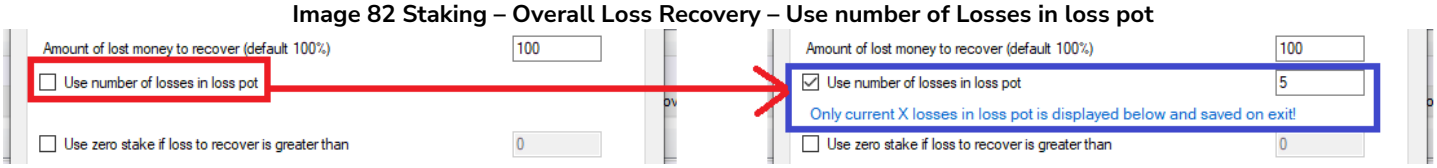
The **Recovery rate** sets how much of the loss is to be recovered on the next market. If you set 100%, then it will recover 100% of the desired amount on the next 1 market. If you set 50%, then it will recover 50% on the next market and 50% on the market after that.

The **Max liability of the loss recovery part of stake** is a stake size limit, so 100 would mean a maximum stake of £100 for the recovery part of the bet.

The **Max liability of loss recovery part of stake (percentage of available balance)** is alternative to the previous option where we can select a percentage of the available balance as an upper limit to the recovery part of the bet instead of an absolute amount.

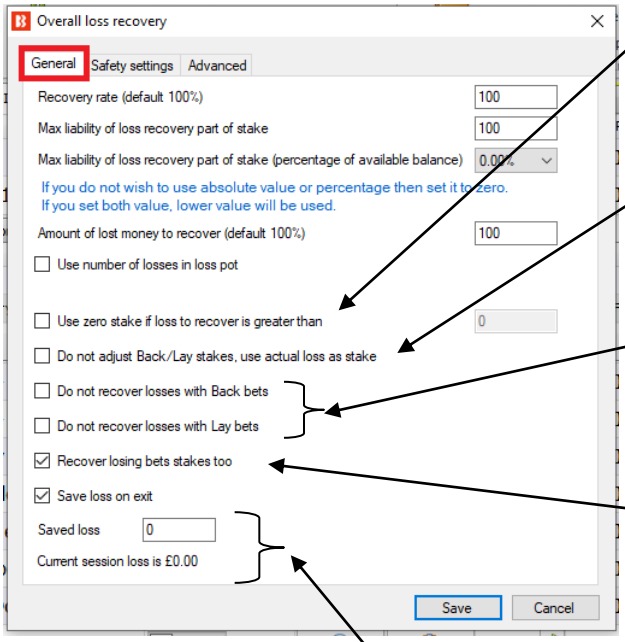
The **Amount of lost money to recover (default 100%)** defines how much of the loss is to be aimed for as a percentage.

Image 82 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery – Use number of Losses in loss pot



By ticking the checkbox for **Use number of losses in loss pot** it enables the number of losses recovered per recovery set to be limited. For example, a setting of 5 would mean losses would be recovered in pots of 5 (a set of 5 losses). The strategy would recover the first 5 losses, then after those are recovered, it would recover the next 5 losses. All the losses will be recovered, but not in one set, but split into pots of 5.

Image 83 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery



Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than allows the strategy to focus only on the recovery bets and not risk anymore stakes on new bets. Once the recovery target is greater than the amount set here, it will only bet to recover lost stakes.

Do not adjust Back/Lay stakes, use actual loss as stake tells the strategy not to adjust the stakes to the price in order to win the loss amount, but to use the loss amount as the stake for the next selection.

Do not recover losses with Back bets and **Do not recover losses with lay bets** are used if a strategy is placing both back and lay bets and you want to restrict one of those for the recovery bets.

Recover losing bets stakes too is used if you also want the strategy to recover lost potential profit of Lay bets, not just lost liabilities. (And this will add the stake on a second time to the total loss for Back bets.) Use this setting with caution.

Save loss on exit tells the strategy to remember the loss pot when the software is switched off. This will save only the current, active loss pot. If the option "Use number of losses in loss pot" is ticked, then only the current loss pot will be saved. It will not save the other loss pots. For example, if we have 10 losing markets and the number of losses in loss pot is set to 2, then first loss pot is made up of the first two losing markets and it will be saved, but the other four loss pots that are made up of loss 3&4, 5&6, 7&8 and 9&10 will not be saved on exit. If the option "Use number of losses in loss pot" is turned off, then there is only a single loss pot made up of all 10 losses and is saved on exit.

How Two Key Settings for Overall Loss Recovery Work Together

It is easier to understand this rule when you clearly separate in your mind the difference of meaning of the word “stakes” for Lay bets and Back bets. **Stakes for Back bets are the liability. Stakes for Lay bets are the potential profit,** the liability is how much you risk to win the backer’s stake. So the meaning of “stakes” in these settings change depending on if your strategy is placing back bets, lays bets or both.

Image 84 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery Settings – Only recover losses

☑ Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than 10 ☐ Recover losing bets stakes too	Only bet to recover **losses**, don’t place new bet stakes, if loss is over 10.

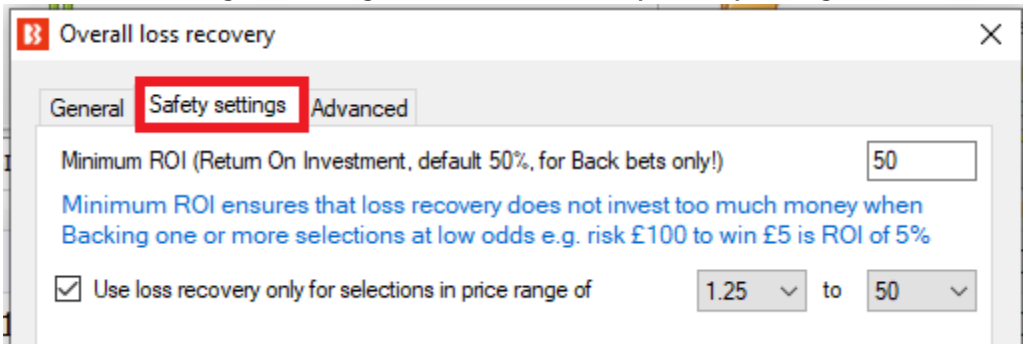
Image 85 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery Settings – Recover losses and place regular bets

☐ Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than 5 ☐ Recover losing bets stakes too	Bet to recover **losses** and continue to place strategy **regular bet stakes**.

Image 86 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery Settings – Recover losses, place regular bets and recover lost stakes

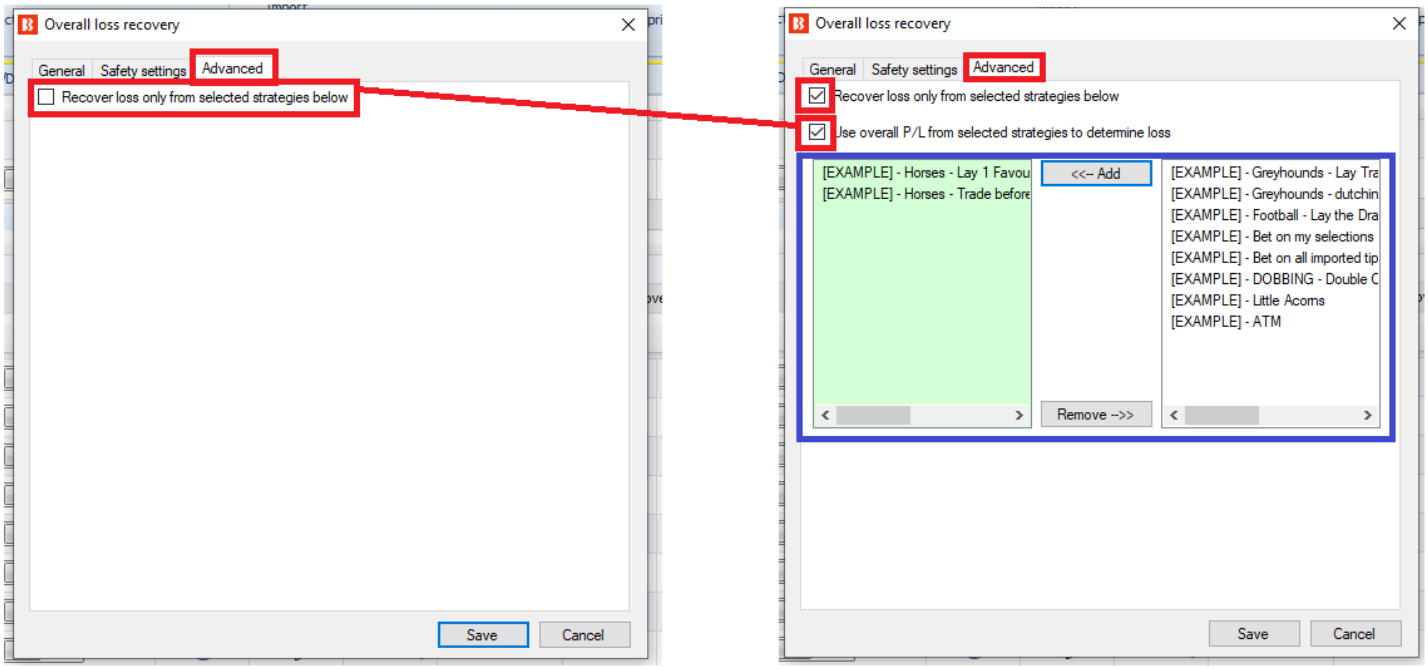
☐ Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than 5 ☑ Recover losing bets stakes too *For **Lay** bets, if you ask to recover losing stakes, you add the lost potential profit from the backer's stake. It **was not your actual money that was lost.** *For **Back** bets, if you ask to recover losing stakes, you add a 2nd "lost" stake for back bets that **was not actually lost.**	Bet to recover **losses**, continue to place strategy **regular bet stakes** and bet to recover **lost potential profits of lay bets** (the stake part of lay bets) and recover **a second stake bet for back bets.**

Image 87 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery – Safety Settings



Since the recovery staking plan uses a target profit to regain losses, lower odds would require large stakes. For this reason, **safety settings** can limit the ROI and odds required for recovery bets to be allowed. A minimum ROI of 50% would mean that only bets with odds of 1.50 or higher would be used for back recovery bets. The minimum ROI function only applies to back bets. For lay bets the odds limit range can be used. Similarly, with high odds, it can lead to a high liability for lay bets, too. So limiting the odds can be a good idea. The odds limit also applies to back bets.

Image 88 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery – Advanced

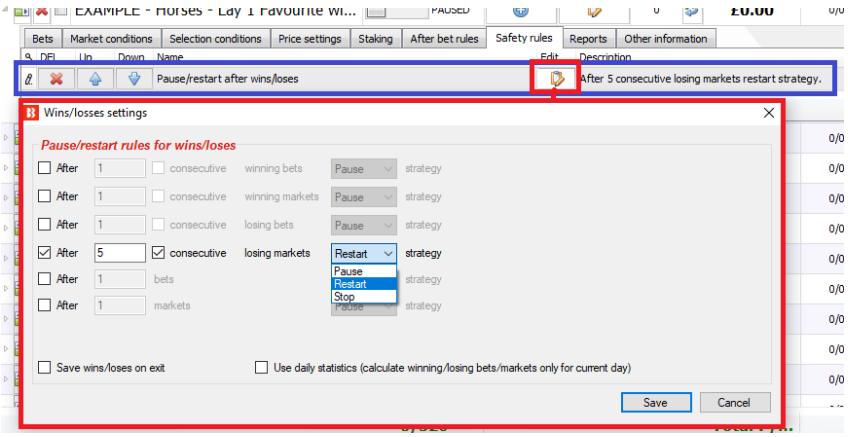


It is also possible to **add the profit/loss from other strategies** to THIS strategy's loss amount to recover. If

another selected strategy is in profit, the overall amount to be recovered by this strategy will decrease. If another selected strategy has a loss, the overall amount to be recovered will increase. Please note that if another strategy is also doing its own recovery staking, this strategy will not factor that into its calculations and could result in two strategies placing recovery bets for the same loss. This rule simply adds the P/L from another strategy to this strategy's loss amount to recover (without knowing what the other strategy is doing). This enables one strategy to recover the overall loss of a number of strategies. By clicking the check box, a list of strategies will appear. Each one needs to be selected individually.

Note: If you only want the strategy to recover losses from this strategy, then leave this option unchecked. The default setting of the rule is for the strategy only to recover its own losses.

Image 89 Safety Rules – Pause/restart after wins/losses



Recovery staking plans should be treated with care as they can quickly lead to stakes increasing to very high levels. This is another reason to set safety limits. The Pause/restart after wins/losses rule allows the strategy to be set to pause, restart or stop when it reaches a total or consecutive number of winning bets, winning markets, losing bets, losing markets, bets or markets. These statistics can be counted for this bot session, or saved on exit, or only counted as daily figures.

Summary of Rules - Example –Horses - Lay 1 Favorite with recovery

Strategy Details Form	Strategy Rule	Instructions
General	Max number of bets per runner	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
Strategy Tabs	**Strategy Rule**	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Events filter	Only bet on horses
	Markets filter	Only bet on win markets
	Time to bet	Place bets 10 seconds before event starts.
	Overrounds	Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
	Unsettled markets	Don't place next bet until previous bet has been settled.
Selection conditions	Bet type by favorite position	Place lay bets on the 1st Favorite. Only 1 bet per favorite position allowed.
	Back and Lay price ratio	Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
	Min/Max Selection Price	Lay price for 1st favorite must be between 1.01-4.50.
Price settings	Price rules	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Level/initial stake	Lay to win £1 on each bet.

	Overall loss recovery	Recovery Staking – Try to recover 100% of losses on next bet
Safety rules	Pause/restart after wins/losses	Restart strategy after 5 losses in a row

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

With this strategy we saw how we can add staking plans and safety rules to create even more complex bots. Next let's look at how we can create bots that can do multiple bets, trades and calculations at a volume and speed that a manual bettor would find very hard to do on steamers and drifters.

2.1.5 Horses - Trade before in-play

Let's imagine that we want to place bets on all horses in a race with odds of 10 or under whose prices have drifted out slightly in the last 5 minutes before the off. We want to place bets at odds slightly higher than the currently available odds. Then, if a bet is matched, we want to place a second lay bet at a lower price to try and lock in a profit as the odds fluctuate pre-off and possibly come back in again. Then, just before the race starts, we want to close our positions to make the biggest profit possible, or smallest loss, regardless of the race result. To do this manually would be a very challenging task. We would have to monitor several markets pre-off, and monitor multiple selections in each market, place bets and second bets as soon as bets are matched. It would be impossible to do that for an extended period of time manually, but with automated betting software, it can be done 24-7 on all available horse races. This is another key advantage of betting bots. They can perform many checks on multiple markets and selections and also make the right calculations to place the hedge bets at the right moment. Please remember these are example settings to demonstrate the abilities of the software and users need to find their own best settings to use for strategies.

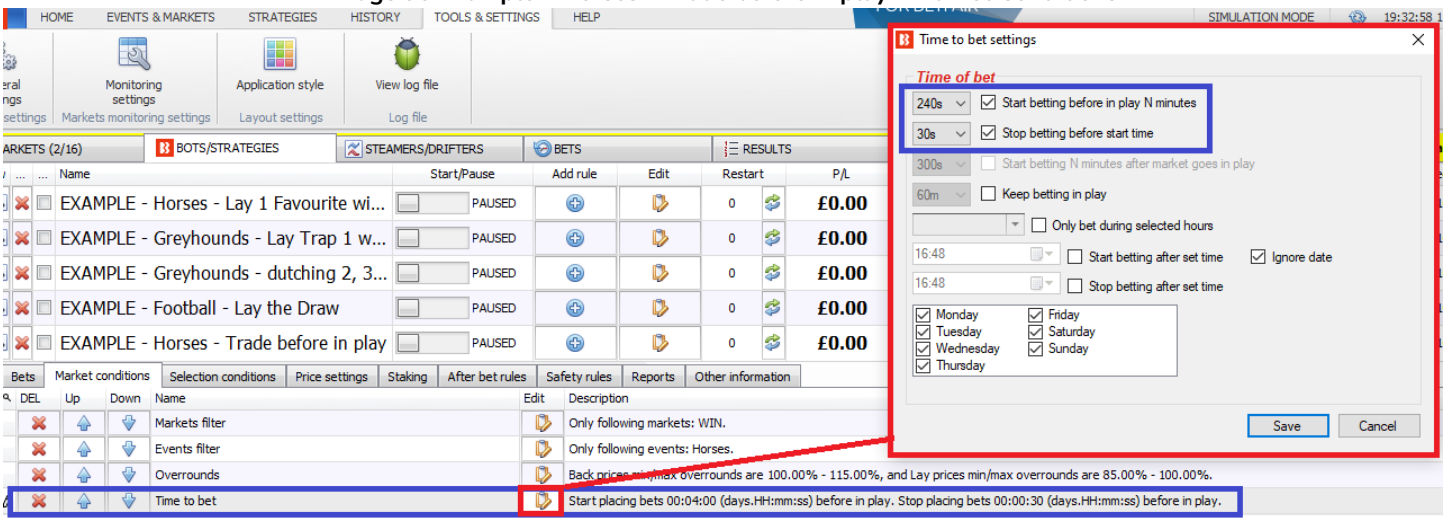
Example – Horses – Trade before in play

Strategy Details Form	Instructions
General	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy) Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed. Up to 10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tabs	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Only bet on horses Only bet on win markets Place bets 4 minutes before event starts. Stop placing bets 30 second before the event starts. Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Place back bets on selections satisfying all conditions. Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%. Back price for selection must be between 1.01-10. Bet on selections whose price has gone up by 20% or 5 ticks during the 5 minutes before the race starts
Price settings	Place bets 2 ticks higher than available back price.
Staking	Bet 10% of this strategy's betting bank.
After bet rules	If a bet is matched, place a second bet at a better price by 5 picks. Hedge out of each matched selection 5 seconds before event start.

The strategy details form has the same default general settings as the previous example strategies.

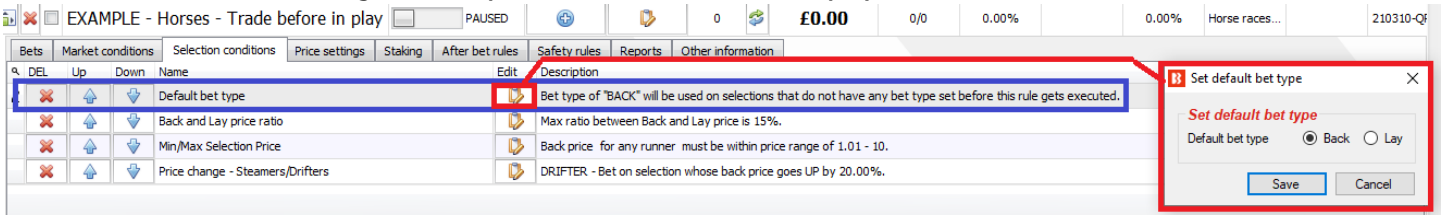
IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

Image 90 Example – Horses – Trade before in play – Market Conditions



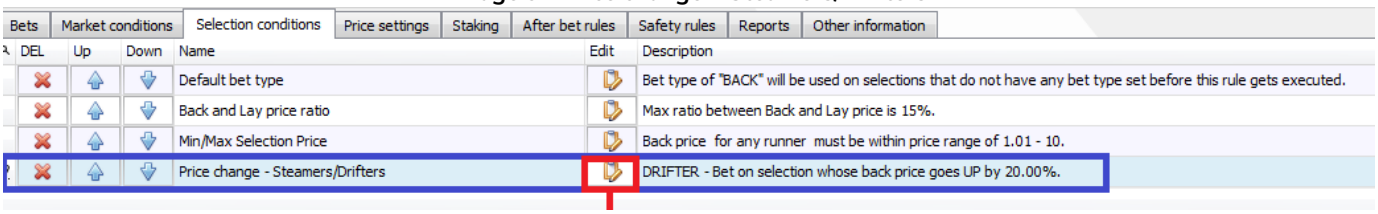
The **Markets filter** is set to bet on WIN markets. The **Events filter** is set to bet on Horse racing. The **Overrounds** are at the default settings. The **Time to bet** is set to start betting from 240 seconds (4 minutes) before the start of the event and to stop betting 30 seconds before the event start time.

Image 91 Example – Horses – Trade before in play – Selection Conditions



In the Selection conditions a **Default bet type** is used that allows Back bets on any selection that satisfies all the other rules in the strategy. The **Back and Lay price ratio** is at the default settings of 15%. The **Min/Max Selection Price** rule only allows betting if the Back price for any runner is between 1.01- 10.

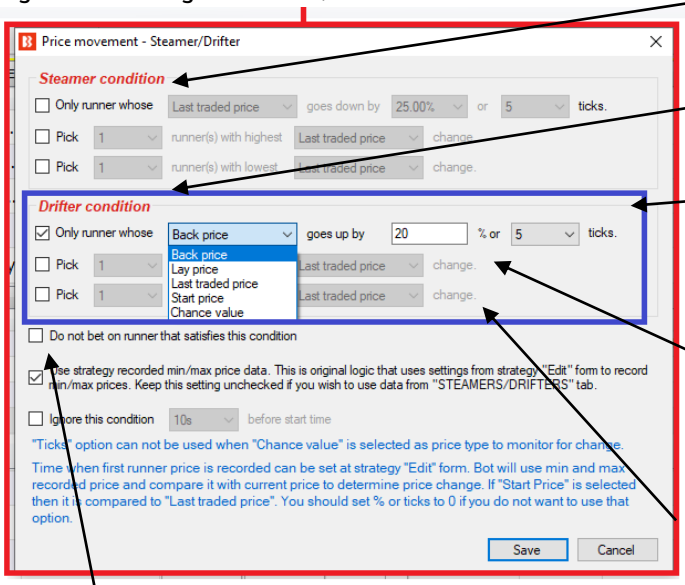
Image 92 Price change – Steamers/Drifters



The **Price change – Steamers/Drifters** rule is a very useful tool that allows the bot to monitor markets for price changes for each selection. If a selection's price goes up, it is called a Drifter, because the odds are drifting out. If a selection's price goes down, it is called a Steamer, because the odds are steaming in. It is possible to set which odds to monitor (back, lay, last traded price, start price, chance value). It is also possible to set the time period to monitor. This can be set to bet on all, some or just one runner meeting the steamer/drifter settings set.

The **steamer condition** looks at runners whose price

Image 93 Price change – Steamers/Drifters form



has gone down by a percentage level or number of ticks.

The **drifter condition** looks at runners whose price has gone up by a percentage level or number of ticks.

Only runner whose *Back* price goes up by *20%* or *5* ticks would only allow betting on selections that meet these filters.

Pick *1* runner with the highest *Back* price change would only allow 1 bet on qualifying selections in that market which would be the one with the highest change.

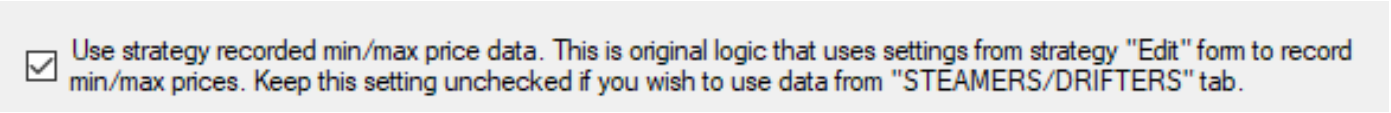
Pick *3* runners with the lowest *Back* price change would allow 3 bets on 3 qualifying selections in that market which would be the one with the lowest change.

Do not bet on runner that satisfies this condition allows this rule to be used in reverse. For example, if we want to add a function to a strategy so that it does not bet on selections who have drifted too much before the off, which is sometimes an indication of new, adverse information entering the market.

These rules can be used alone or together. It is important to understand the logic of using them together.

- **Using only Only runner whose Back price goes up by 20% or 5 ticks would allow multiple bets on all qualifying selections.**
- **Using only Pick 1 runner with the highest Back price change would allow only 1 bet on the biggest drifter (even if it did not increase by 20%).**
- **Using both Only runner whose Back price goes up by 20% or 5 ticks and Pick 1 runner with the highest Back price change would allow only 1 bet on the biggest drifter if its price had gone up by 20% or 5 ticks.**

Image 94 Steamers/Drifters price data monitoring check box



Which prices are being monitored is very important to understand. There are 2 options for how strategies can monitor price data.

1. **Tell the strategy to use the price data from the Steamers/Drifters tab. (Above box unticked.)**
2. **Tell the strategy to collect its own price data. (Above box ticked.)**

Steamers/Drifters Price Data Monitoring

Price data	Price data from Steamers/Drifters tab	Strategy collects its own price data
Markets monitored	User set **Match Odds markets** (default) **Win markets** (default)	Fixed setting **All loaded markets**
Time	User set *Default setting:* From **30 minutes before event start** until market close**.** (i.e. after the event has finished and bets are settled)	User set *Default setting for this example strategy:* From **5 minutes before event start** until event start time.

	This can be edited in the "Tools&Settings->Monitoring settings". If you set to start monitoring markets 2 hours before the start time then the steamers/drifters tab will start recording prices 2 hours before the start time.	*(Default setting for new strategies:* From 30 minutes before event start until event start time.)
Qualifying price data	User set *Default:* **Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 15%**	User set *Default:* **Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 25%**

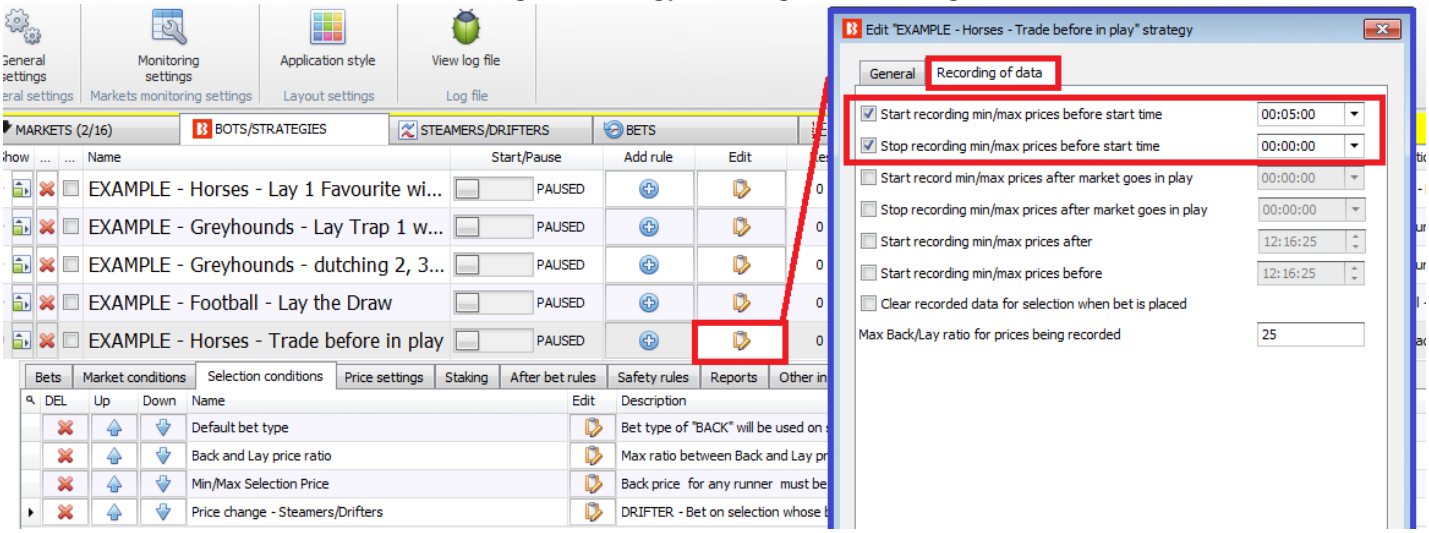
In this strategy, we only want to judge drifters by the price data from 5 minutes before the event starts. If we do not check the Use strategy recorded min/max price data box and instead use the price data from the Steamers/Drifters tab, then the drifters would be judged by the price data from 30 minutes before the event starts.

Other cases where it would be useful to use the strategy recorded price data instead of the Steamers/Drifters tab recorded data:.

Specify a different back/lay price ratio only for this strategy. For when you want a different recording ratio for a specified strategy but don't want to change the general steamers/drifters settings that will affect all strategies using steamers/drifters tab data.

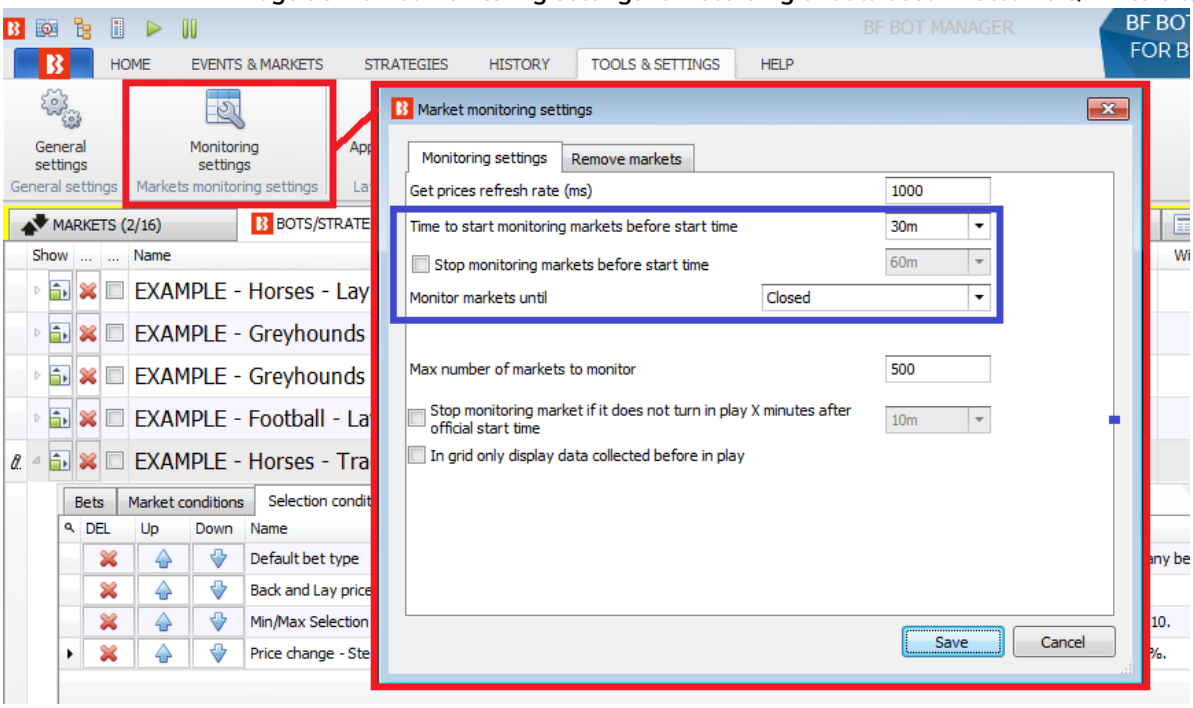
Specify a longer/shorter recording time only for this strategy. For when you want a different recording time for a specified strategy but don't want to change the general steamers/drifters settings that will affect all strategies using steamers/drifters tab data.

Image 95 Strategy recording of data settings



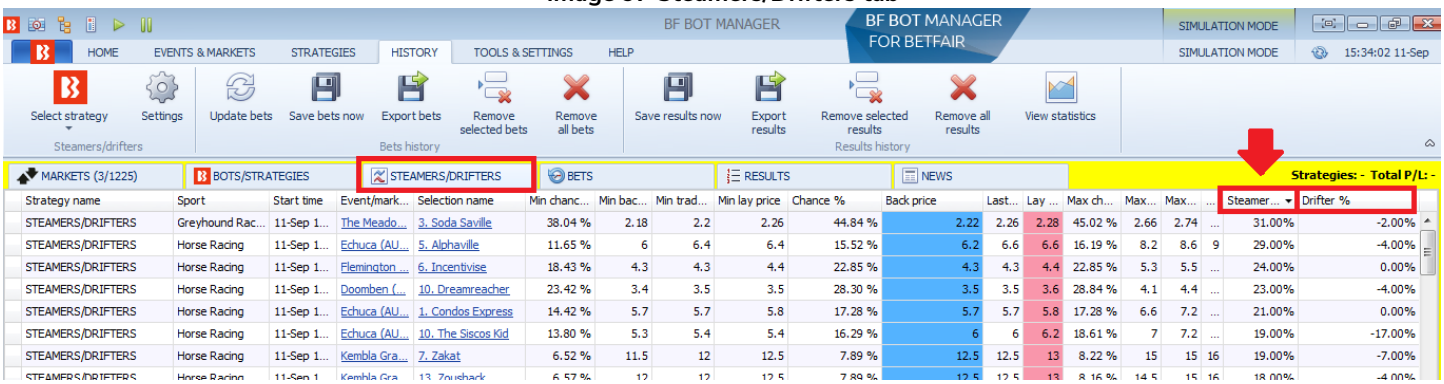
To edit the default settings of each strategy's price recording of data, click on the strategy Edit icon, and then on the secondary Recording of data tab. There we can adjust the settings to required values.

Image 96 Market monitoring settings for recording of data used in Steamers/Drifters tab



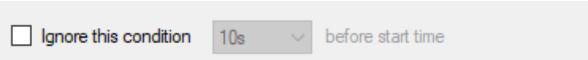
To edit the **general market monitoring settings that are used to set the times for recording price data and the Steamers/Drifters tab,** click on the Tools & Settings ribbon > Monitoring settings form.

Image 97 Steamers/Drifters tab



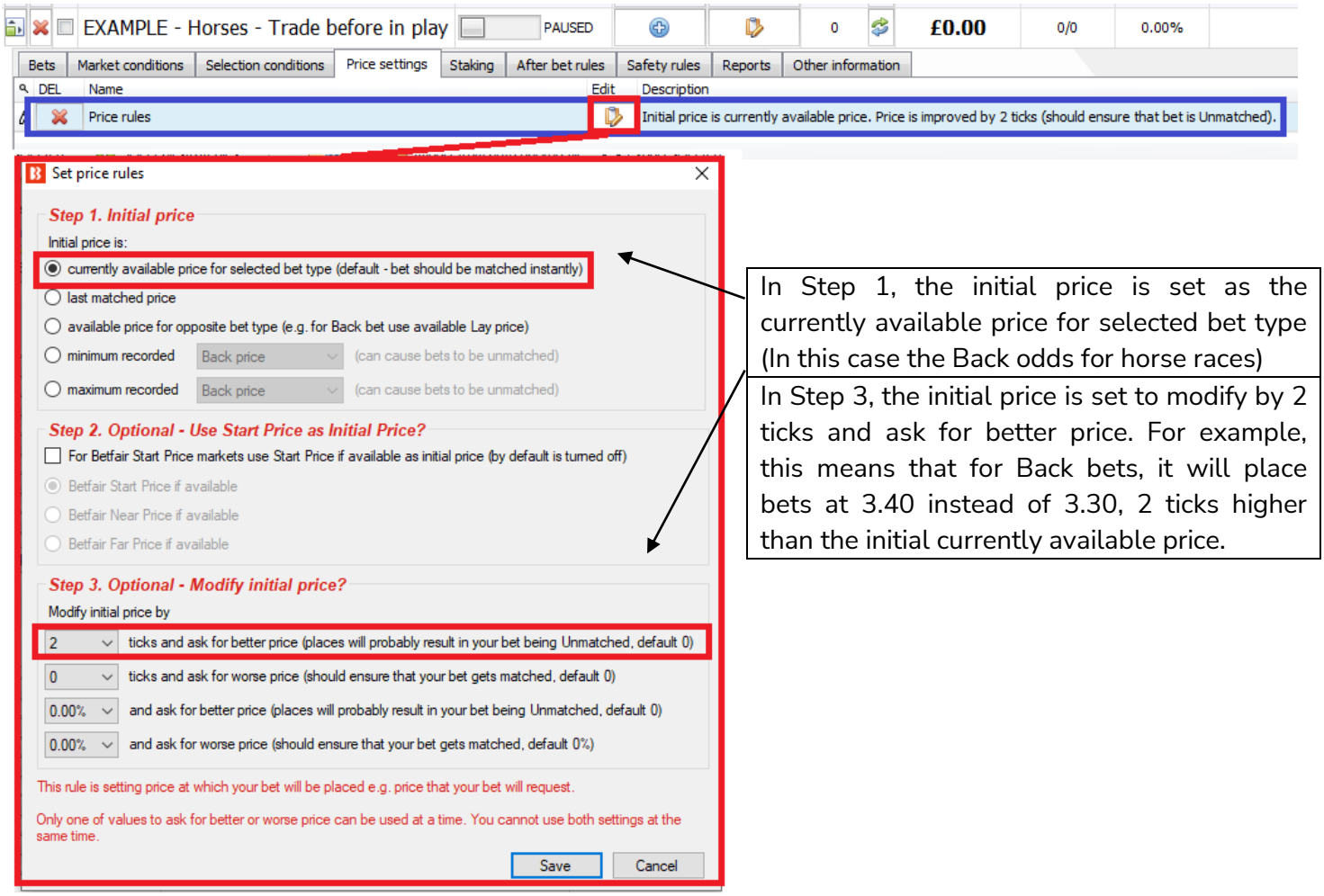
The **Steamers/Drifters tab** shows the steamer/drifter percentages for all active markets loaded in the Markets page for the set monitoring period. By clicking on the header of any column, it will rank the selections. In this way, it is also possible to manually browse and view the current top steamers and drifters of monitored markets in the 30 minutes before event start. (Unless the general monitoring settings are changed,)

Image 98 Selection Conditions - Price change – Steamers/Drifters form



At the bottom of the Price change – Steamers/Drifters rule, there is the option to **ignore the rule at a set time** before the event starts. This can be very useful if you wish to bet on your runners early if their price goes up by X%, but if that does not happen, then take whatever price is available just before start time.

Image 99 Price Rules



In Step 1, the initial price is set as the currently available price for selected bet type (In this case the Back odds for horse races)

In Step 3, the initial price is set to modify by 2 ticks and ask for better price. For example, this means that for Back bets, it will place bets at 3.40 instead of 3.30, 2 ticks higher than the initial currently available price.

Since this strategy is trying to place bets and trade out in the 4 minutes before the event starts, it makes sense to try and get higher odds for the first bet so that there is less movement needed to get the trade out bet matched at 5 ticks lower.

Staking - Percentage of betting bank

This previous example strategy used an Overall loss recovery staking plan. This example strategy uses a Percentage of betting bank staking plan. A betting bank size is set at the start, then each bet is placed as a percentage of the current strategy's betting bank after settled bets profit and loss has been added. **It is important to understand that the current betting bank balance <u>excludes unsettled bets.</u>** This means that if several bets are placed at one time, they will place all bets at that initial 10% level excluding unsettled bets. If we are betting 10% of the bank on each bet, that means if 15 bets are placed, 150% of the bank will have been used. As each bet is settled, the betting bank balance will be recalculated.

Image 100 Staking – Percentage of betting bank

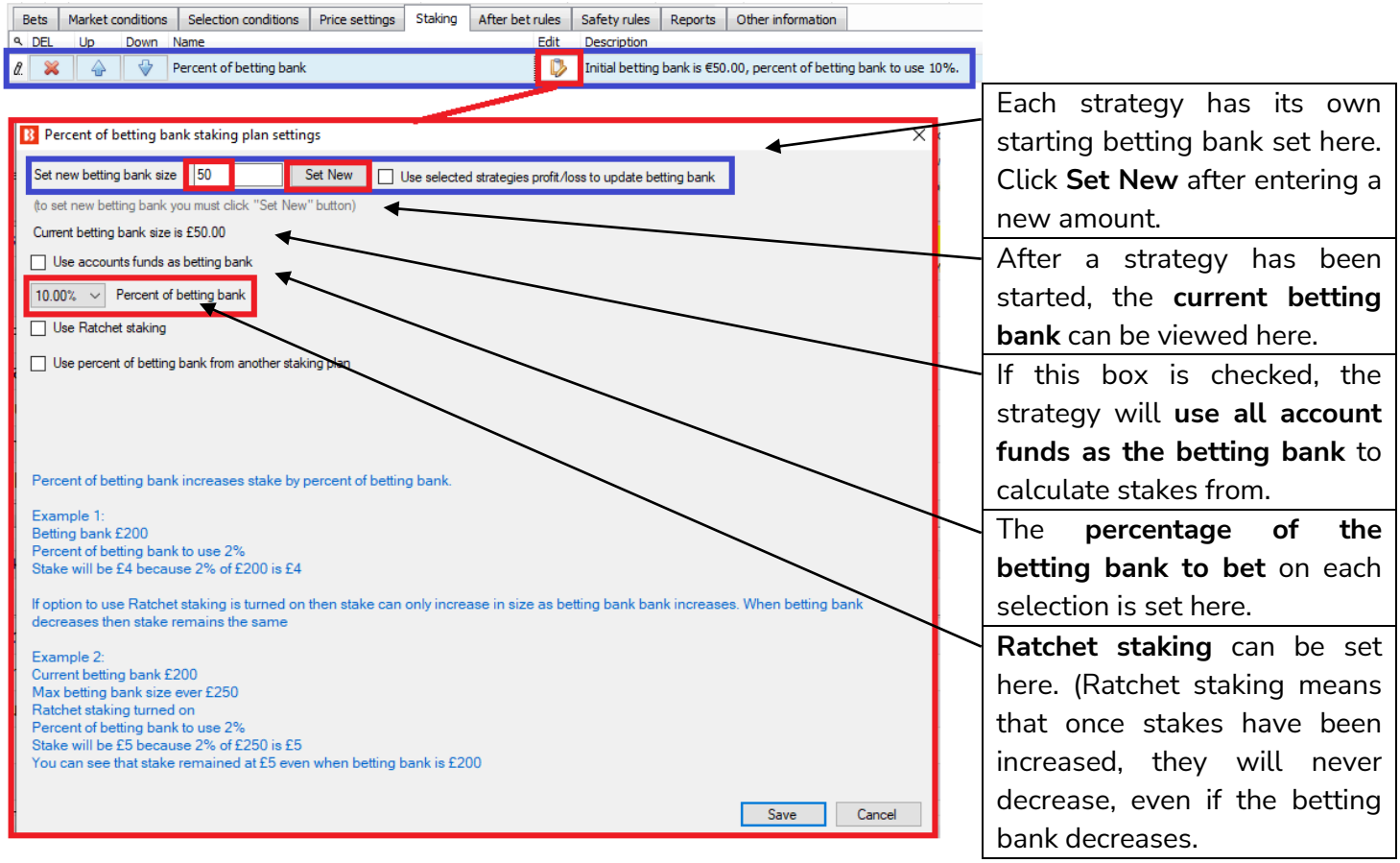
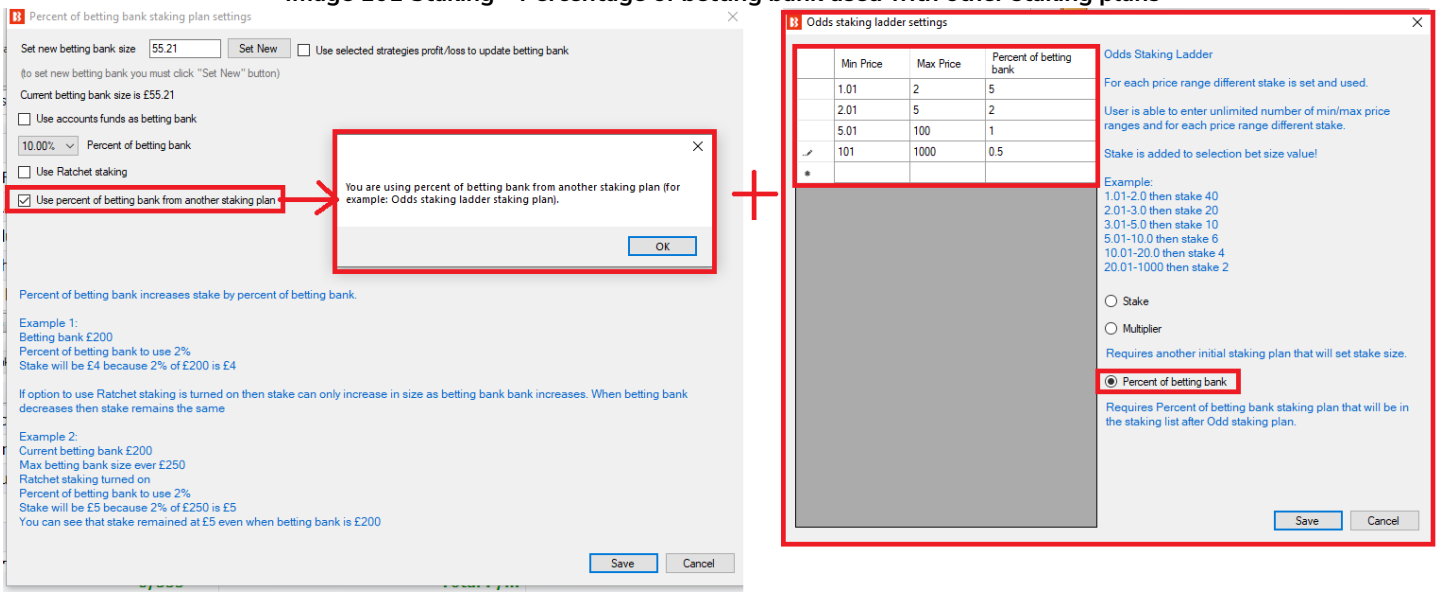


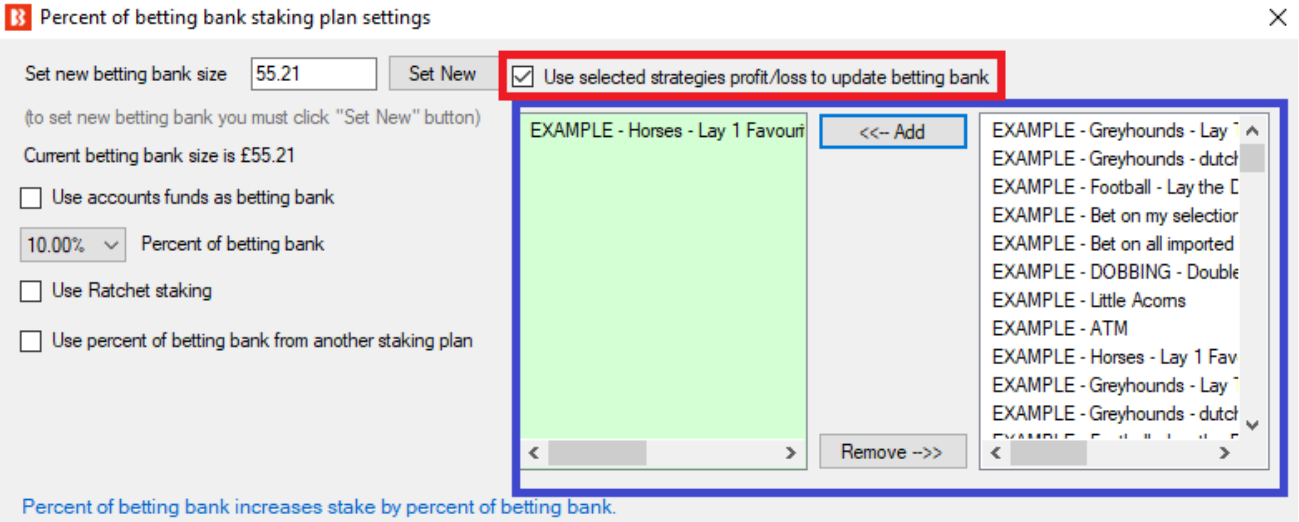
Image 101 Staking – Percentage of betting bank used with other staking plans



If you want other strategies to operate betting on percentages of a betting bank**, the Percentage of betting bank staking rule can be used together with other staking plan rules**. For example, the Odds Staking Ladder allows different stake sizes to be set for different odds ranges. Using this with the Percentage of betting bank rule allows a different percentage of the betting bank to be used for different odds ranges. When combining the percentage plan with other staking plans, the order that they appear on the staking tab is very important because the bot executes rules in that logical order from top to bottom. So for the Odds

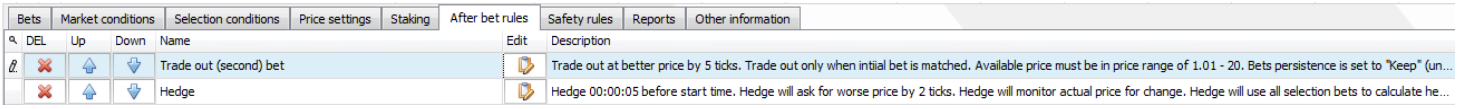
Staking Ladder rule, it must appear in the list BEFORE the Percentage of Betting Bank rule.

Image 102 Staking – Percentage of betting bank used with other strategies



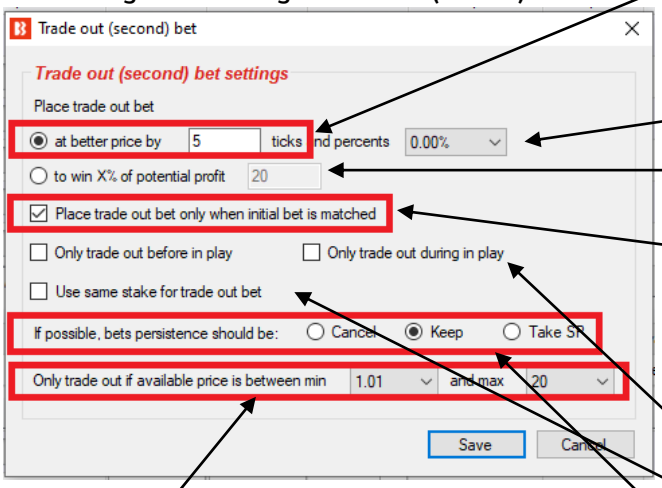
It is also possible to set up the betting bank so that the percentage used is not just of this strategy's betting bank, but the combined profit/loss of selected strategies together.

Image 103 Staking – After bet rules



The strategy is now set up to place a bet on drifters with 10% of the betting bank. Next we need to set up the 2nd trade out bet which will be placed at lower odds than the first Back bet.

Image 104 Staking – Trade out (second) bet



For this example strategy, 4 settings in this rule are active. It tells the strategy to **Place a trade out bet at better price by 5 ticks**. For initial Back bets, this means a lay bet 5 ticks lower. For initial Lay bets, this means a back bet 5 ticks higher. It is also possible to set the better price in terms of a percentage of the initial bet odds or to win a certain percentage of the potential profit of the initial bet.

This tells the bot to **Place trade out bet only when initial bet is matched**, otherwise if the initial bet by this strategy is not matched, a second trade out bet could be placed based on the unmatched bet.

The timing of the rule can also be set, for example, only trading out before in play or only during in play.

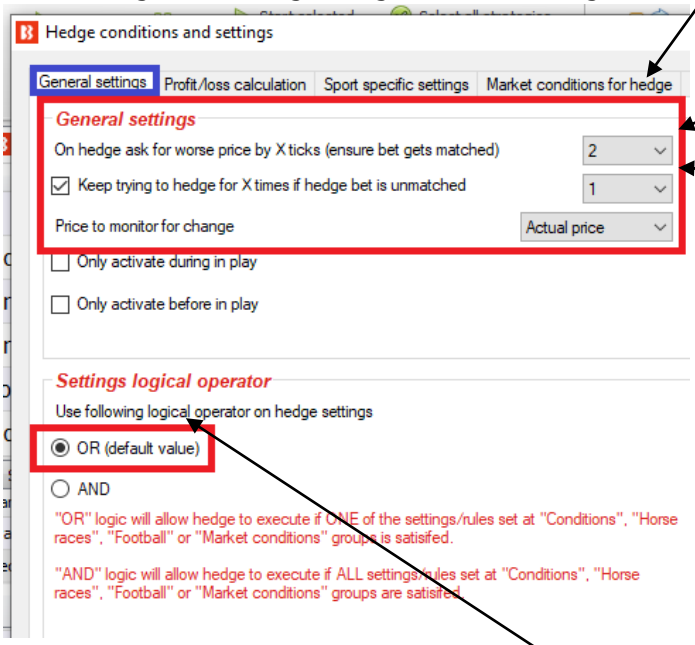
The stake can also be copied from the initial bet.

The trade out bet **persistence** can be set.

The **price range** permitted for trade out bets can also be set.

The first bet has been set up, and the second trade out bet has been set up. Finally we need to set a hedge bet to hedge positions 5 seconds before the event starts. The hedge rule has 5 active settings in the General settings and 1 active setting in the Profit/loss calculation.

Image 105 Staking – Hedge – General settings



This strategy is set to **ask for a worse price by 2 ticks**. This is to try and make sure the bets have a good chance of getting matched.

If the first hedge attempt is unmatched, the bot will try again one time.

The strategy will **use the Actual price** when monitoring price change. The actual price means the relevant price for the bet the hedge will place. If the hedge is going to place a lay bet, it will monitor lay bets, if the hedge is going to place a back bet, it will monitor back prices. In this example strategy, in order to balance out multiple bets on multiple selections, such as back bets that did not have their second trade out lay bets matched or back bets that did have their second trade out lay bets matched or even partially matched, then back or lay bets may be placed by the hedge rule, in which case it needs to look at the Actual price for each bet type.

This hedge rule only has 1 trigger rule set, so the OR or AND rule for the logical operator would work fine. The hedge condition is set to hedge 5 seconds before the start time. So it will hedge regardless of anything.

Image 106 Staking - Hedge - General Settings

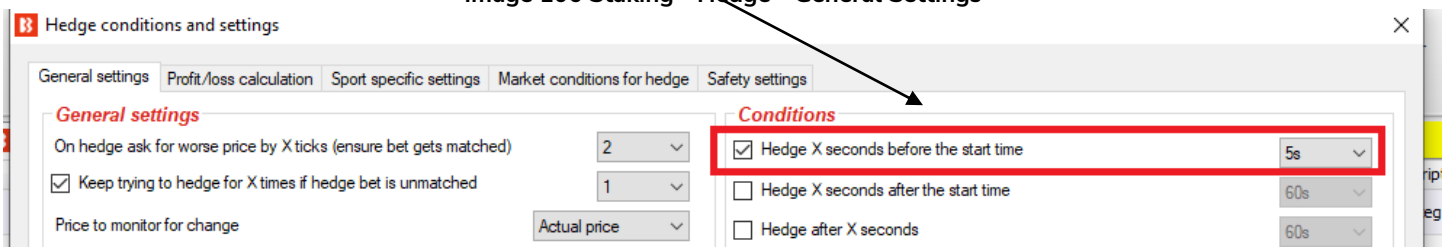
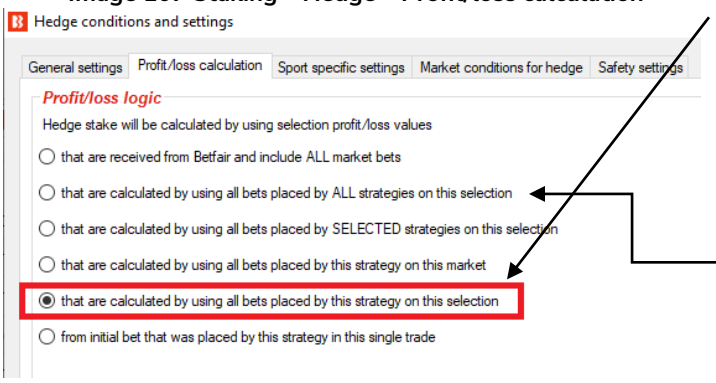


Image 107 Staking – Hedge – Profit/loss calculation



The **Profit/loss calculation** is changed from the default setting so the hedge will be calculated using all bets placed by this strategy on this selection. This is so the hedge will include the second trade out bet for each selection in each selection's hedge calculations.

Note that if there are bets on multiple selections in the market, the overall market profit will not be equal regardless of the event result. To do that would require the option above being selected, using all bets placed by this strategy on this market.*

*The Using all bets placed by this strategy on this market option does not guarantee that equal P/L will be achieved in all cases. It just tells the bot to place bets to get equal P/L. If the other hedge conditions are met and the hedge is triggered for each of the selections, then hedge bets will be placed to get equal P/L regardless of the outcome. But if any of those hedge bets are not matched, then the final potential P/L will be

different for each selection. Also, if the hedge is triggered for some selections, but not others, then the final P/L will not be equal.

For this example strategy "Horses – Trade before in-play", the hedge rule is triggered by time. (5 seconds before the race starts.) So if we selected the Using all bets placed by this strategy on this market option, then hedge bets will be placed to get equal P/L regardless of the outcome, and there is a good chance that an equal P/L can be achieved.

For example, consider a race where initial bets were placed on Runners 1, 2 and 3.

Selection	Initial Bet and Second Trade Out Bet Status	Pre-hedge P/L
Runner 1	Back bet matched, Second Trade out matched	+£5/+£5
Runner 2	Back bet matched, Second Trade out unmatched	+£20/-£10
Runner 3	Back bet matched, Second Trade out partially matched	+£15/-£7

With the current hedge setting for this example strategy, the hedge stake will be calculated by using the selection profit/loss values "**using all bets placed by this strategy on this selection**" This will result in each selection gets different post-hedge P/L (if the hedge bet is matched).

Selection	Initial Bet and Second Trade Out Bet Status	Pre-hedge P/L	Post-hedge P/L
Runner 1	Back bet matched, Second Trade out matched	+£5/+£5	+£5/+£5
Runner 2	Back bet matched, Second Trade out unmatched	+£20/-£10	+£2/+£2
Runner 3	Back bet matched, Second Trade out partially matched	+£15/-£7	-£1/-£1

However, if we choose the hedge setting "**using all bets placed by this strategy on this market**", then each selection aims to get the same post-hedge P/L (if the hedge bet is matched).

Selection	Initial Bet and Second Trade Out Bet Status	Pre-hedge P/L	Post-hedge P/L
Runner 1	Back bet matched, Second Trade out matched	+£5/+£5	+£1/+£1
Runner 2	Back bet matched, Second Trade out unmatched	+£20/-£10	+£1/+£1
Runner 3	Back bet matched, Second Trade out partially matched	+£15/-£7	+£1/+£1

The hedge out bets are not placed at the same time, but executed separately for each initial bet and second trade bet placed by that strategy. If we have three bets on Runners 1, 2 and 3, then hedge rule would place three separate hedge bets. The first hedge bet would use only matched initial and matched second trade out bets P/L, the second hedge bet would use initial bets, second trade out bets and the first hedge bet P/L, while the third hedge bet would use initial bets, second trade out bets and the first and second hedge bets to calculate market profit loss.

For this example horse strategy, all hedge bets will be triggered since it is a time based trigger 5 seconds before the event starts.

But if the hedge trigger is based on other variables, such as price change, there is a possibility that not 3 hedge bets would be triggered. For example, if the hedge rule was triggered by the selection odds increasing by 5%, and we have 3 selections in the market with bets on, then there is a higher chance of unequal P/L after the hedge. This is because if 1 of the selections goes on to win the race and its odds never go up 5%, then its hedge will never be triggered. But the other 2 selections would have been. When creating strategies using this function, it is highly recommended to run them in simulation mode and check carefully that the

hedge is executing as you intend.

Summary
The strategy is now set up to check multiple selections in multiple markets looking for drifters of 20% / 5 ticks or more in the 4 minutes before the off. It will then try to place Back bets at higher odds and, when matched, place second lay bets to trade out at better odds by 5 ticks. It will hedge each active selection 5 seconds before the race starts. It can monitor, bet, trade and hedge automatically in a way that would be almost impossible to do manually. This is where betting software bots really show their unique abilities.

Rule Summary of Example Strategy – Horses – Trade before in play

Strategy Details Form	Strategy Rule	Instructions
General	Max number of bets per runner	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
	Max number of bets per market	Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed.
	Max number of bets per event	10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tab	**Strategy Rule**	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Events filter	Only bet on horses
	Markets filter	Only bet on win markets
	Time to bet	Place bets 4 minutes before event starts. Stop placing bets 30 second before the event starts.
	Overrounds	Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Default bet type	Place back bets on selections satisfying all conditions.
	Back and Lay price ratio	Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
	Min/Max Selection Price	Back price for selection must be between 1.01-10.
	Price change – Steamers/Drifters	Bet on selections whose price has gone up by 20% or 5 ticks during the 5 minutes before the race starts
Price setting	Price rules	Place bets 2 ticks higher than available back price.
Staking	Percentage of betting bank	Bet 10% of this strategy's betting bank.
After bet rules	Trade out (second) bet	If a bet is matched, place a second bet at a better price by 5 picks.
	Hedge	Hedge out of each matched selection 5 seconds before event start.

In summary, the example strategy Horses – Trade before in play, we see how **After bet rules** such as **Trade out (second) bet** and **Hedge** can be used together to create complex value scalping strategies. We also see how the **Percentage of betting bank** staking plan can be used by itself or in combination with other staking plans.

2.1.6 Greyhounds - Dutching 2nd, 3rd and 4th favorite

Next, let's see how we can **automate dutching on multiple selections** with different odds to achieve the same profit regardless of which selection wins. And let's look at another staking plan '**Simple Sequence Overall P/L**" which can be used to create the **Fibonacci staking plan** that increases the next stake or restarts the sequence depending on the previous bet being a win or a loss.

Example – Greyhounds - Dutching 2, 3 and 4 fav.

Strategy Details Form	Instructions
General	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy) Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed. Up to 10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tabs	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Only bet on greyhounds Only bet on win markets Place bets 30 seconds before event starts. Don't place next bet until previous bet has been settled. Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Place Back bets on the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Favorite. Only 1 bet per favorite position allowed. Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 25%.
Price settings	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Dutch the 3 selections with a total exposure of £2 on each market. Only bet if all 3 selections meet the strategy conditions. Increase the exposure by a multiple of the Fibonacci sequence after each loss. Restart the sequence after a win or after 7 losses.

The strategy details form has the default settings that allow only 1 bet per runner and up to 20 bets per market by this strategy.

Image 108 Market Conditions for Example - Greyhounds - Dutching 2, 3 and 4 fav.

The rules here have all been introduced in the previous example strategies.
The **Overround/book percentage** rule is at default settings to ensure valid odds are there.
The **Time to bet** rule tells the strategy to place bets 30 seconds before the race starts.
The **Markets filter** tells the strategy to only bet on Win markets.
The **Events filter** tells the strategy to only bet on Greyhound events.
The **Unsettled markets** rule tells the strategy to not place any new bets until the previous bets have been settled. This is necessary because the staking plan is based on the results of the last bet, so if the previous bet has not been settled, the strategy cannot correctly calculate the next stake. (If the Unsettled market rule was not used here, the strategy would calculate stakes based on the last settled market.)

Image 109 Selection Conditions – Back and Lay price ratio

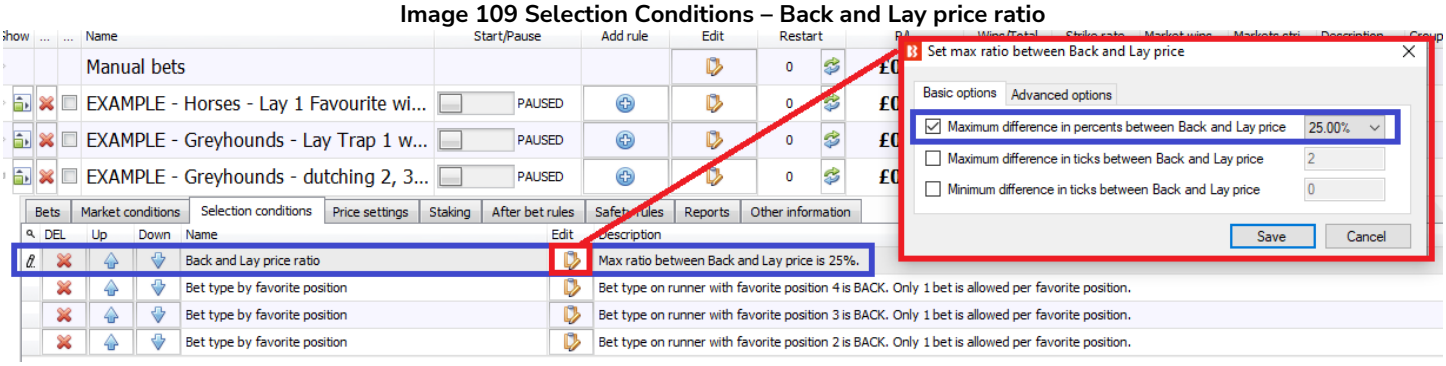
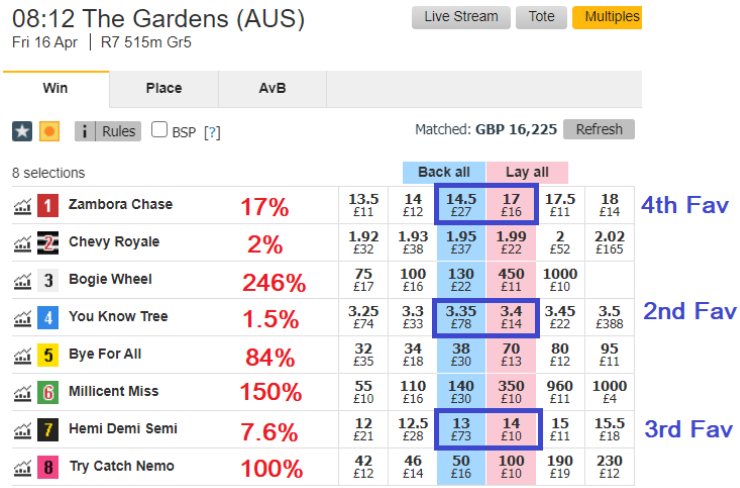


Image 110 Greyhound Back/Lay Odds Ratios

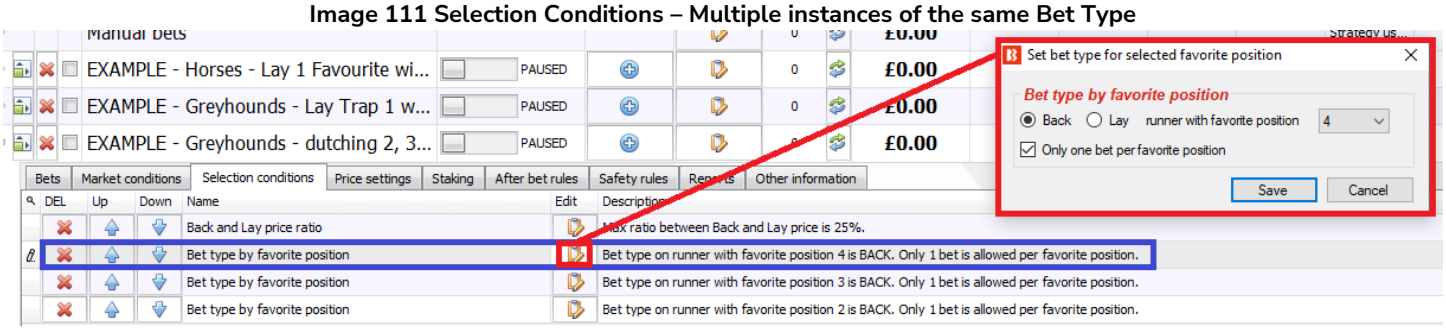


-

In the **Back and Lay price ratio rule**, the default setting of 15% has been increased to 25%. One of the reasons for this is that in greyhounds markets, the odds for the 3rd and 4th favorites are sometimes not as close as 1st favorites. If we use the default 15% setting, it might result in a number of markets being skipped. In this example Image, a screenshot is taken from an Australian Greyhounds race 30 seconds before the event starts. Here, the 4th favorite has a Back/Lay odds ratio of 17%. By using a setting of 25% for this example strategy, we give a little more leeway for our strategy to find acceptable markets.

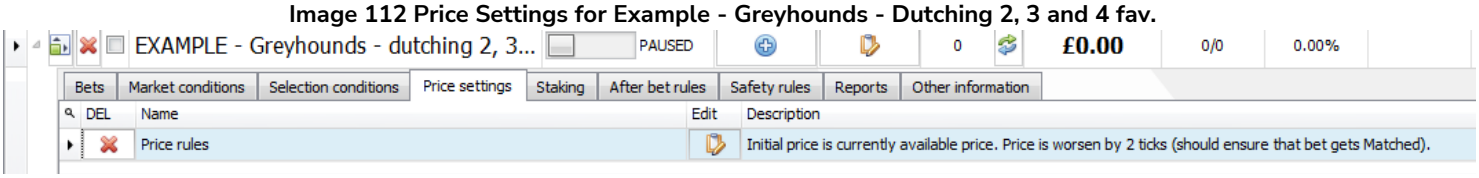
If you create your own strategy, and you find that bets are not being placed, the Back and Lay price ratio rule can sometimes be an issue for some markets. So it is important to check a few of the Betfair markets that you want your strategy to bet on and check not only that their Back and Lay price ratios will be OK, but also that the Overrounds will be ok, too. Fast paced or less popular markets can sometimes require their settings to be loosened.

Image 111 Selection Conditions – Multiple instances of the same Bet Type



In this strategy, we want to place bets on the 2nd, 3rd and 4th favorite. To do this we can use 3 instances of the same bet type. In this case, we use 3 instances of the Bet type by favorite position. It is set to bet on the favorite with position 2, the favorite with position 3 and the favorite with positon 4. It is important to note here that it is set to place Only one bet per favorite position. This is important because if this box is not checked, and the odds change so that the favorite order changes, the bot would place new bets. This is because in its logic, the "new" 4th favorite does not have a bet on it, so it would bet on it.

Image 112 Price Settings for Example - Greyhounds - Dutching 2, 3 and 4 fav.

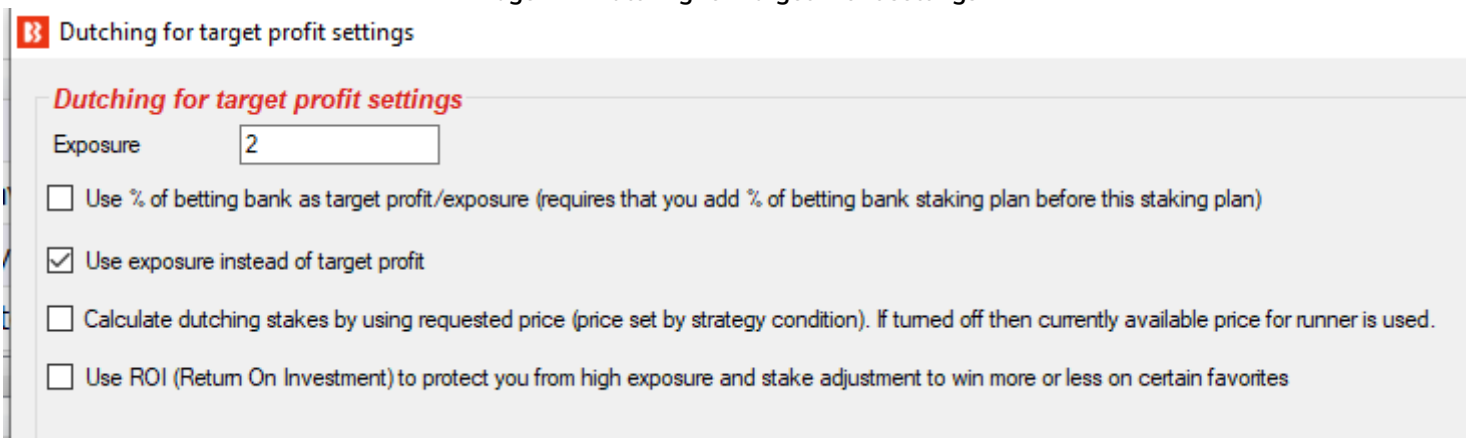


The **Price rules** are the default settings of asking for a price 2 ticks worse than the current available price in order to increase the chances of the bet being matched.

Image 113 Staking for Example - Greyhounds - Dutching 2, 3 and 4 fav.

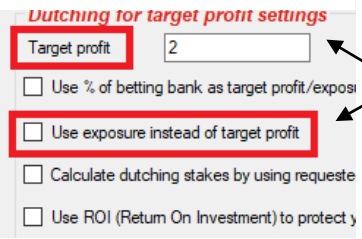
The Staking tab of the strategy has 3 rules in it. A **Dutching rule** to tell it how much to bet. A **Simple Sequence Overall P/L rule** to tell it when to change the stakes. And a **Min/max number of qualified selections rule** to tell it to place all 3 bets as a set together or not at all.

Image 114 Dutching for Target Profit settings



This example strategy dutching rule is set to place bets on qualifying selections that add up to **a total exposure** of 2.

Image 115



The **Exposure** of 2 means that the dutching Back stakes will calculated to add up to 2.
If the **Use exposure instead of target profit** box is not checked, the top Exposure setting will change to Target Profit, meaning that the dutching Back stakes would be calculate to win 2.

The **Use % of betting bank as target profit/exposure** option would allow you to make the 2 a percentage of a betting bank and not an absolute value. For this, a Percentage of betting bank rule would have to be added BEFORE this staking plan in the order of rules. The reason for this is because the bot follows rules in the logical order they are found in the strategy. So it needs to be told there is a betting bank to take calculate

percentages from before it tries to calculate the dutching stakes. The logical order of rules for the betting bot is the order you see on the screen. Market conditions → Selection Conditions → Price settings → Staking → After bet rules → Safety rules

The **Calculate dutching stakes by using requested price** (price set by strategy condition) option tells the bot to look for other price setting rules when calculating the stakes.

The **Use ROI (Return On Investment) to protect you from high exposure and stake adjustment to win more or less on certain favorites** can be a useful addition. It is not set for this example strategy, but if the box is checked, a new table appears where different ROI limits and different target profit amounts (or exposure amounts) can be set for each favorite by positon.

Image 116 Dutching for Target Profit settings – Use ROI to protect from high exposure

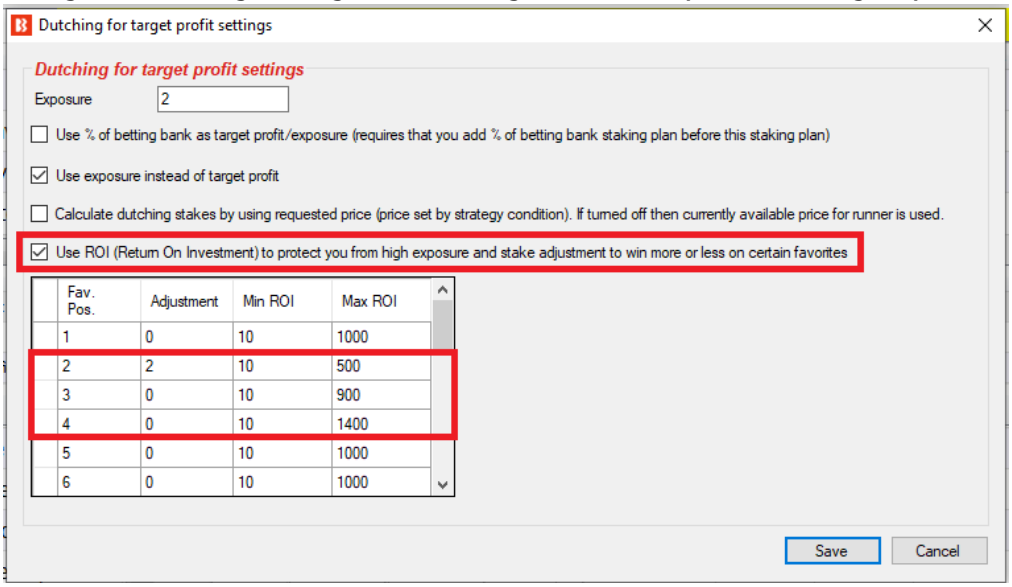
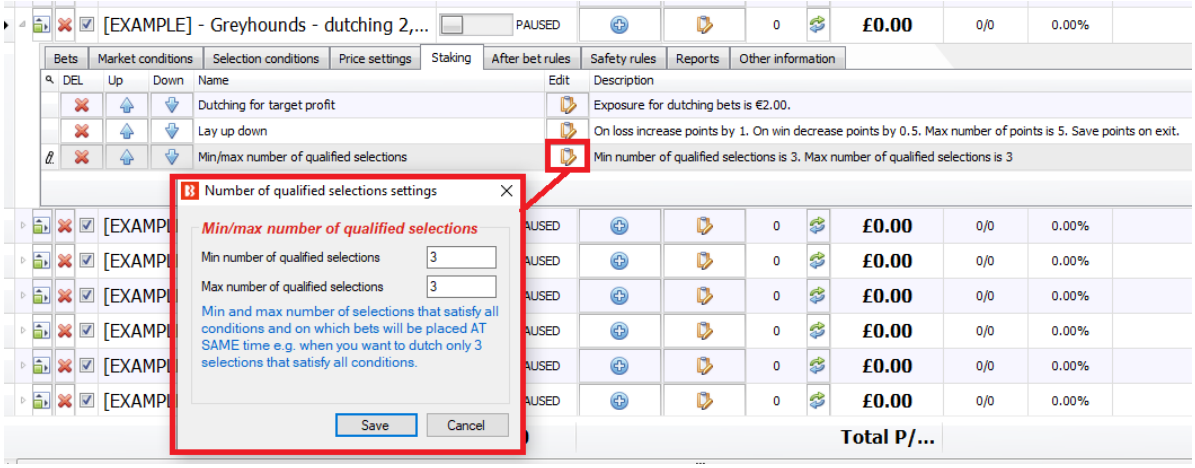


Image 117 Number of qualified selections settings

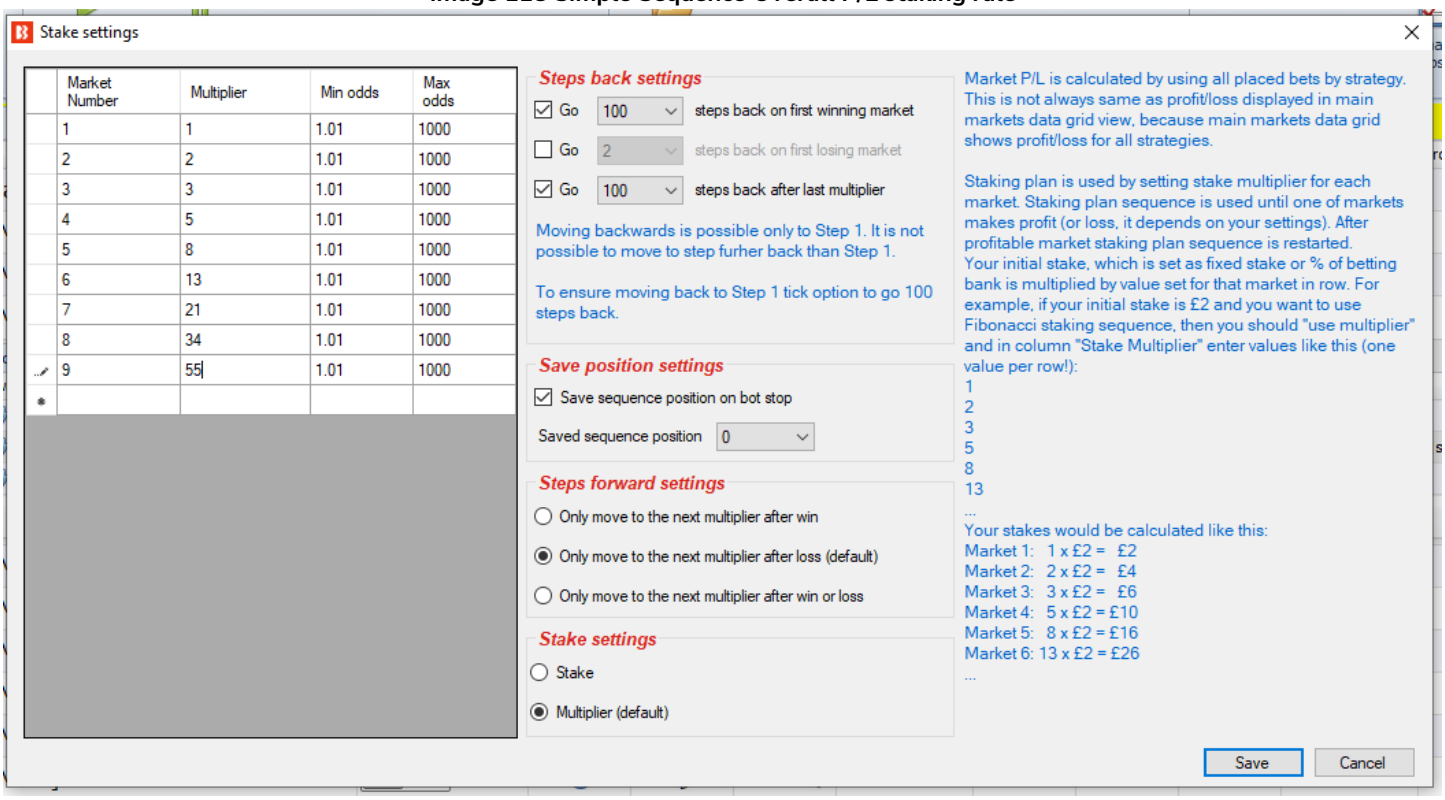


The **Number of qualified selections** rule is very important for dutching. It tells the bot to only place bets when your desired number of selections all fit your conditions. In this example setting the Minimum number of qualified selections and the Maximum number of qualified selections is 3. This means that the bot will only place its bet when the other selection conditions are satisfied. i.e. Those 3 selections all have valid back/lay price ratios. If we did not have this rule, then the strategy could end up placing just one bet on one selection

with exposure 2 (if the other favourites had poor back/lay price ratios).

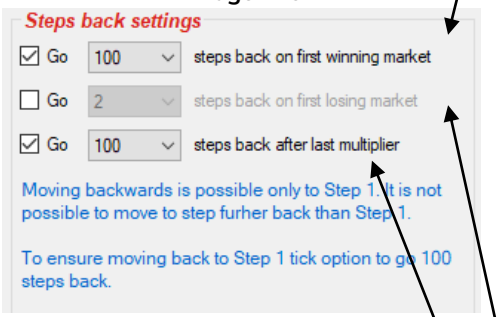
The **Simple Sequence Overall P/L staking rule** tells the strategy to change the stake size according to a sequence of numbers. This sequence can be set to any set of numbers you choose. The staking plan can be set to move forward and backward along the sequence in connection with winning markets, losing markets or either. The sequence can set the stake size or set a multiplier of the stake as set by another rule such as the Percent of betting bank rule. The Minimum and Maximum odds for a selection can be set for each step in the sequence. This is useful if you want to have different odds limits for higher staking levels.

Image 118 Simple Sequence Overall P/L staking rule



In this example strategy, the sequence has been set up as the **Fibonacci sequence**. After each losing market, the staking plan moves up one step in the sequence. If a winning market comes, the sequence will restart. It will also restart if the sequence ends. In the image below, this is the 9th market when the stake multiple is 55. That 55 multiple would be the 9th bet in the sequence after 8 consecutive losing markets.

Image 119



Go 100 steps back on first winning market tells the staking plan to go back to the beginning after a winning market. Even if there are only 9 steps in the sequence, it will go back to step 1. So leaving it on 100 is a sure way to make sure it goes back to the start of the sequence. If you want to change it to go back just 1 or 2 steps, that can be done here, Please be aware that a "winning market" is calculated based on all bets on one market by this strategy only. In the Markets Grid View, the market P/L might include bets from other strategies and the P/L there might not reflect the actual market P/L of this strategy. If there are bets on multiple markets by this strategy at the same time, then they will be counted separately. So 3 concurrent losing markets would result in the sequence moving forward 3 steps. To force the strategy to bet on markets one by one, then we can use the Unsettled Markets rule.

Go 2 steps back on first losing market is not used here, but if checked will make the staking plan move back in the sequence after a losing market. For this, the previous "Go 100 steps back on first winning market" option should not be ticked at the same time.

Go 100 steps back after the last multiplier ensures that the staking plan goes back to the start of the sequence after it reaches the end. If this option is not checked, the staking plan would stay at the end of the sequence until a step back is triggered by another option, such as a winning market.

Image 120

The strategy can be told to save its positon in the sequence if the software is exited. You can see and edit its current position with the drop down menu.

The Steps forward settings default is to go 1 step up in the sequence after each losing market. This can be edited to go 1 step up after a winning market and also to go up 1 step after each market regardless of it being a winning or losing market.

The stake settings can be set as absolute stake values (stake amount) or as a multiplier of the initial stake as set by another strategy. It is set to Multiplier by default.

This strategy has no after bet rules or safety rules. The strategy now has all the settings it needs to dutch the 2nd, 3rd and 4th favourites in Greyhound races. It will place 3 back bets with different stakes to win the same amount regardless of which of the 3 selections win. If none of them win, the stakes are lost of course. It will place those bets so that the total liability is 2, but this level will increase or decrease based on winning and losing markets following the Fibonacci sequence.

Rule Summary of Example – Greyhounds - Dutching 2, 3 and 4 fav.

Strategy Details Form	Strategy Rule	Instructions
General	Max number of bets per runner	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
	Max number of bets per market	Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed.
	Max number of bets per event	10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tab	**Strategy Rule**	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Events filter	Only bet on greyhounds
	Markets filter	Only bet on win markets
	Time to bet	Place bets 30 seconds before event starts.
	Unsettled markets	Don't place next bet until previous bet has been settled.
	Overrounds	Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Bet type by favorite position	Place Back bets on the 2nd Favorite. Only 1 bet per favorite position allowed.
	Bet type by favorite position	Place Back bets on the 3rd Favorite. Only 1 bet per favorite position allowed.
	Bet type by favorite position	Place Back bets on the 4th Favorite. Only 1 bet per favorite position allowed.
	Back and Lay price ratio	Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 25%.
Price setting	Price rules	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Dutching for target profit	Dutch the 3 selections with a total liability of £2 on each market.
	Simple Sequence Overall P/L	Go 1 step up the Fibonacci sequence (1,2,3,5,8,13,21,55) after each losing market. Restart after a winning market or 9 losing markets. The sequence number will multiply the "Dutching for target profit" rule £2 liability.
	Min/Max number of qualified selections	Only bet if all 3 selections meet the strategy conditions.

In summary, in the example Greyhounds - Dutching 2, 3 and 4 fav., we see how **dutching can be implemented either for a target profit or to a target liability**. We see how this **dutching target can be linked to other staking plans**. We also see how important **the Unsettled Markets rule is for strategies that change their stakes depending on the results of the previous market**, otherwise the staking levels may not work as expected. We also see how it is sometimes necessary to use **multiple incidences of the same bet type** when instructing the bot to make bets on different selections in one market.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

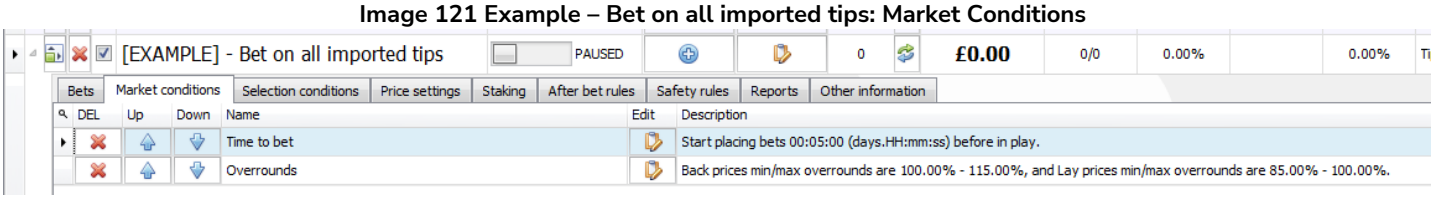
2.1.7 Bet on all Imported Tips - Automated betting on a 3rd party service

This example strategy can be used in 3 ways to bet on tips.
1. Use it to bet on sets of selections that you have created yourself.
2. Use it to bet on sets of selections that another person has given to you as a Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV file and you manually import.
3. Use it to bet on automatically imported tips from a 3rd party such as Betaminic, Proform, Predictology or any other 3rd party that can provide a URL with Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV data.

Example – Bet on all imported tips

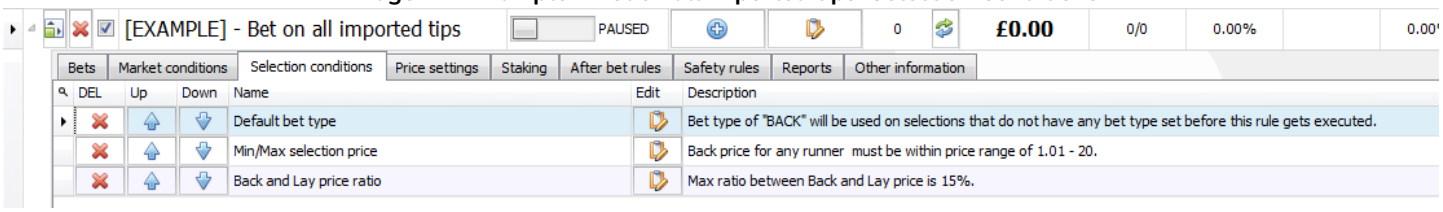
Strategy Details Form	Instructions
General	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy) Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed. Up to 10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tabs	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Place bets 5 minutes before event starts. Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Place Back bets Only place bets if the odds are between 1.01 - 20 Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 5%.
Price settings	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Use level stakes of £2 per tip Bet on all imported tips or selections

Image 121 Example – Bet on all imported tips: Market Conditions



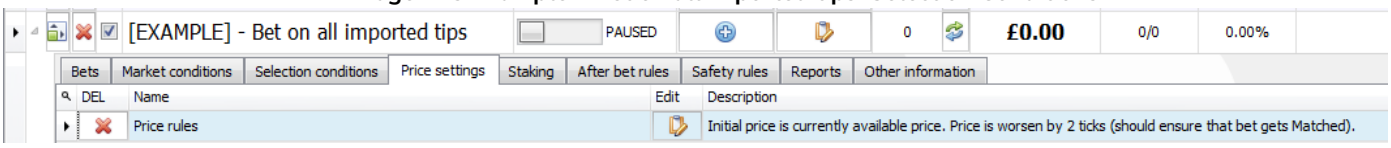
The rules in the market conditions have been explained previously. Here the **Time to bet** is set to 5 minutes before the event starts. You can change this to the time you require. The **Overrounds** rule is at its default setting.

Image 122 Example – Bet on all imported tips: Selection Conditions



The **Default bet type** is set to place Back bets. If you want to place lay bets on tips, you can change that here.
The **Min/Max selection price** tells the bot not to bet on any odds over 20 in its default setting. So if your tips include high odds events, then it may need changing.
The **Back and Lay price ratio** are at the default setting of 15%.

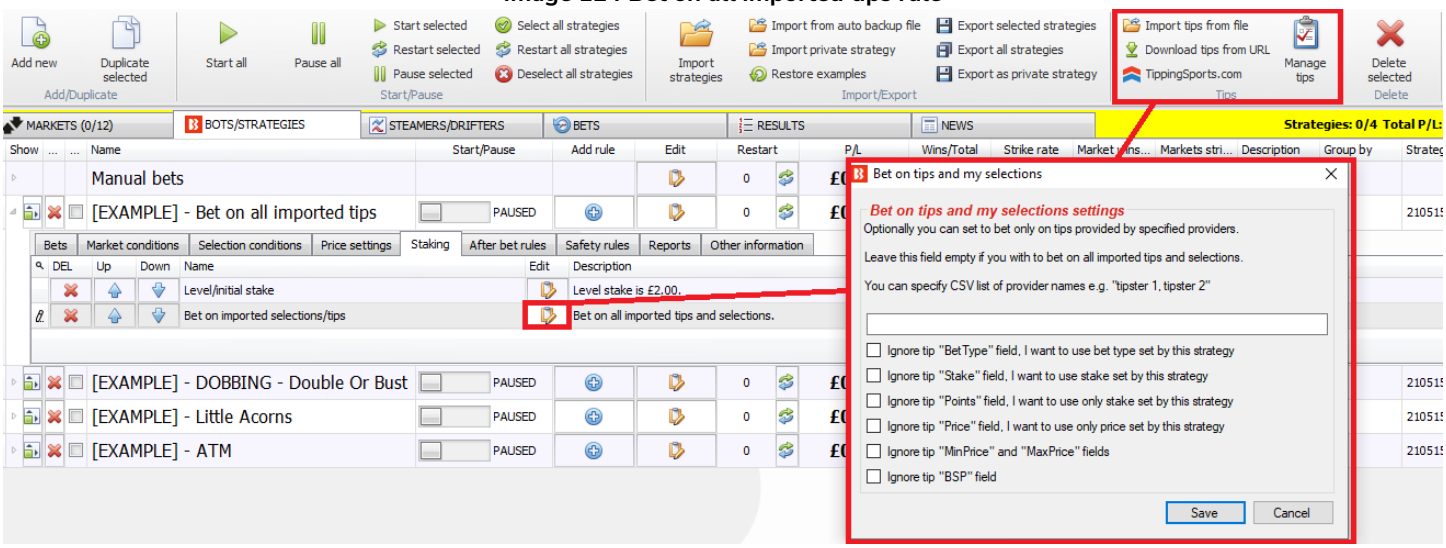
Image 123 Example – Bet on all imported tips: Selection Conditions



The **price rules** tell the strategy to ask for odds 2 ticks under the currently available price. This means that it will try to get more of the stake matched at lower odds if it cannot be matched at the higher initial odds. This is useful since for smaller markets, sometimes there can be just a little liquidity available on the 1st best price available, with the larger amounts on the 2nd and 3rd best prices.

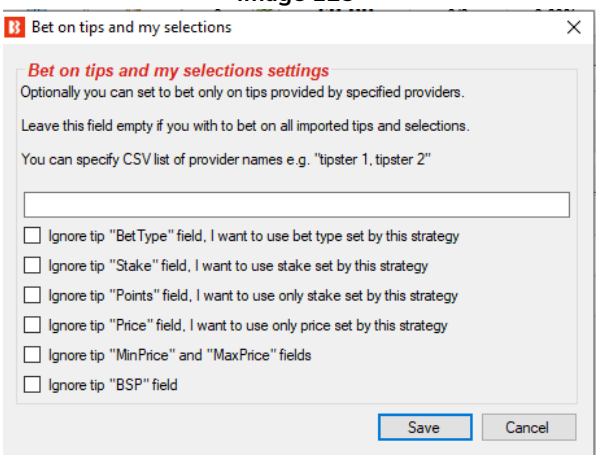
The example strategy is set with a default **Level/Initial stake** of £2. You can edit this to use another stake or preferred staking plan.

Image 124 Bet on all imported tips rule

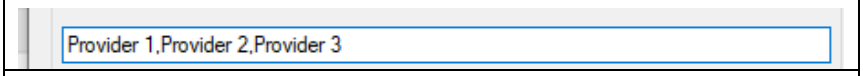


The **Bet on imported selections/tips** rule gets its tips from the Manage tips form. These have been exported as a My Selections set, imported from a file or downloaded from a URL.

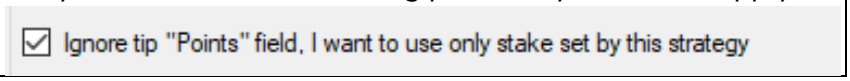
Image 125



This **provider name field** allows the tipster or selection set name to be specified. If you leave this field blank, it will bet on all tips that are in the Manage Tips form. This is useful if you want to apply different settings such as staking plans to different tip sets. Each provider name must be separated by a comma.



These **ignore field** settings allow the user to tell the strategy to ignore some of the data fields imported with the tips. For example, the provider may specify the points to be bet with, but you have a different staking plan that you want to apply.

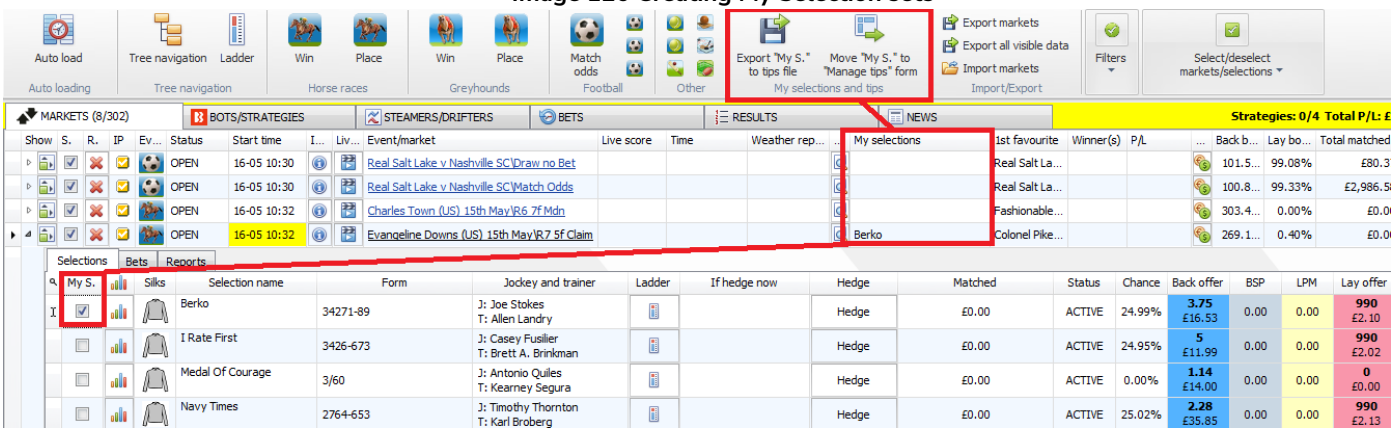


Next, let's look at the 3 main ways we can import tip sets.

1. Use selection sets that you have created yourself in the markets screen and exported as “My Selections”.
2. Manually import a selection set as a Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV file.
3. Automatically import tips from a 3rd party such as Betaminic, Proform, Predictology or any other 3rd party that can provide a URL with Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV data.

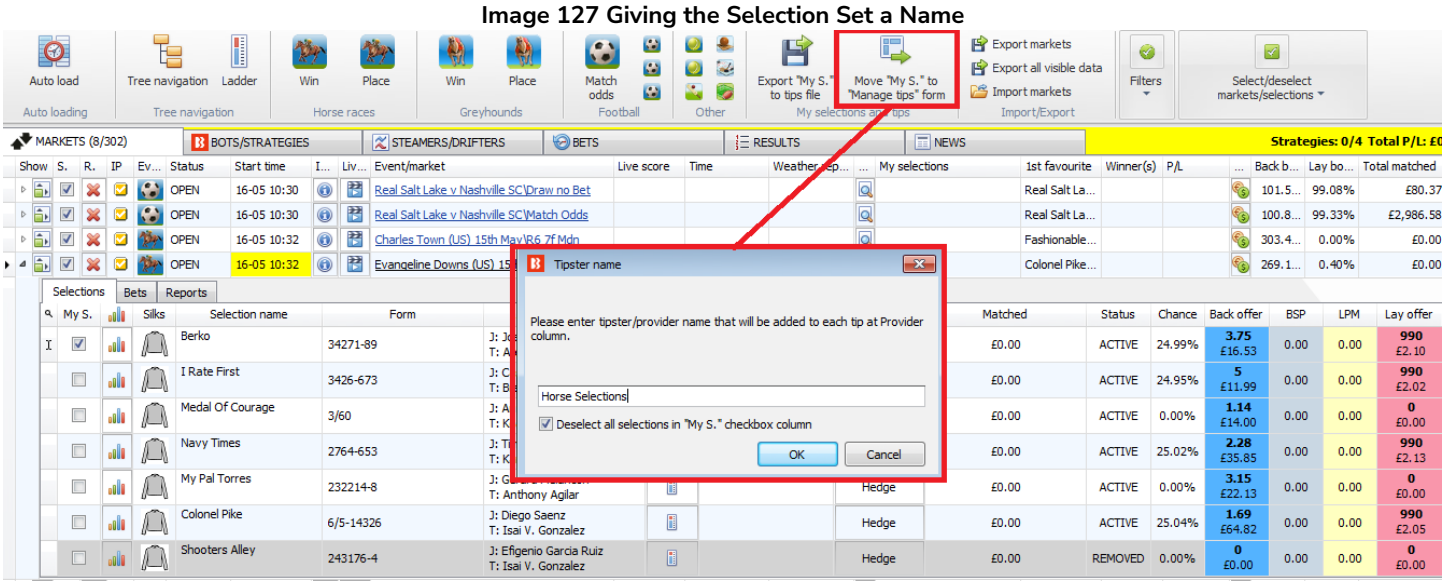
1. Use selection sets that you created yourself in the markets screen and exported as “My Selections”.
This function is useful if you want to apply a variety of different bot strategies to different selection sets. For example, football bets, horse racing bets, greyhounds and so on.

Image 126 Creating My Selection sets



In the markets tab, in the selections grid view, you can check the **“My. S” box** next to each selection that you want to include in the set. It will then appear in the “My selections” column on the Markets grid view. Then, you have the option to export those to a file or to move them to the “Manage tips” form.

Image 127 Giving the Selection Set a Name



If we click on the **Move “My. S.” to “Manage tips” form** button, we will be prompted to enter a name. This becomes the provider name in the Manage Tips form. This is also the name you will need to specify in the “Bet on imported tips” provider name field if you want to specify a strategy to bet on these selections.
It is a good idea to leave the **Deselect all selections in “My S.” checkbox column** checked so that you do not have to manually deselect items before creating your next set.

Image 128 The Manage tips form

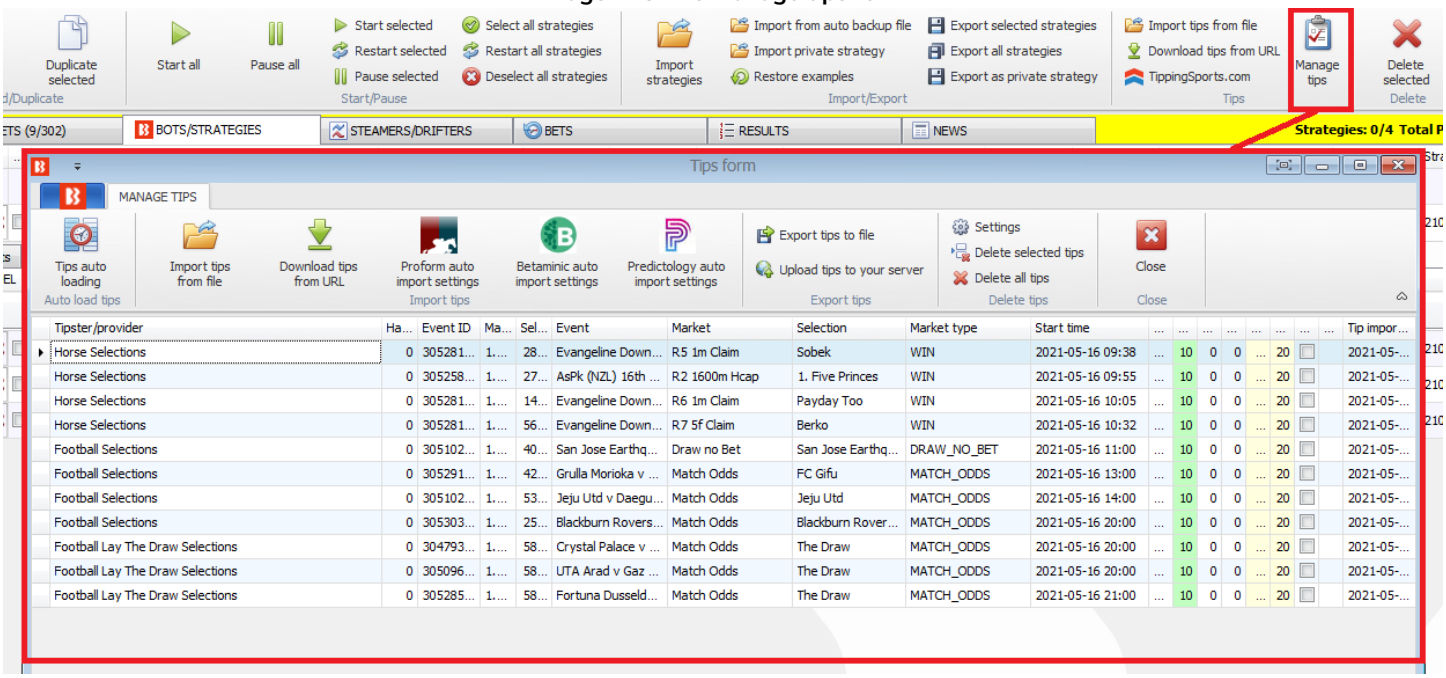
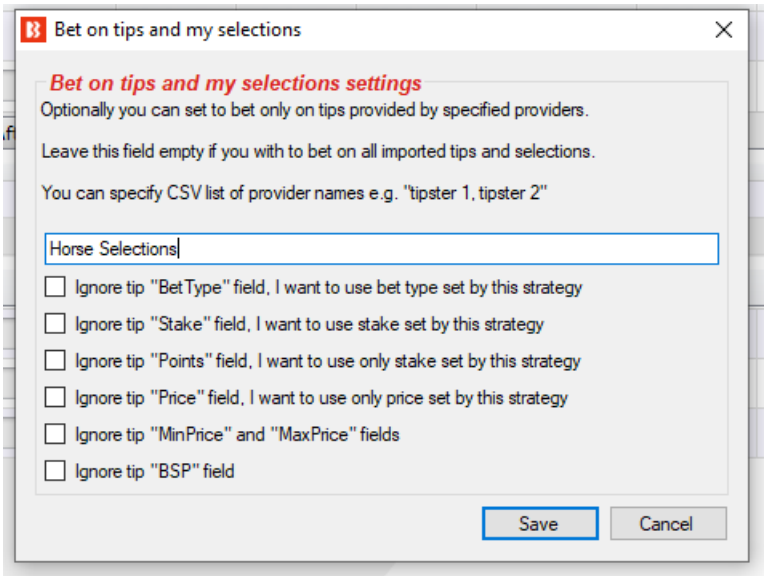


Image 129 Specifying the Provider/Tipster



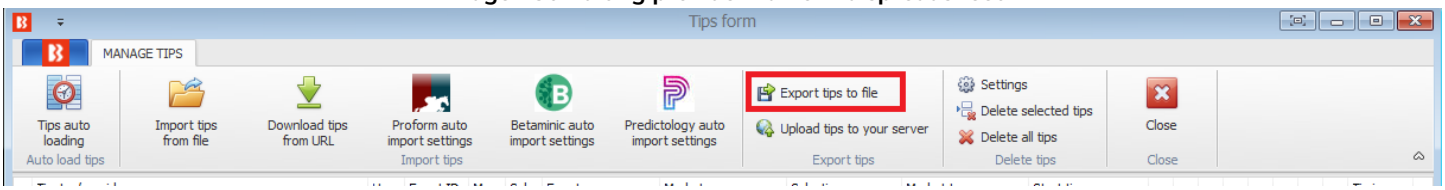
After we have created and moved a few "My S." sets of selections, we can see those by clicking on the Manage tips button in the Bots/Strategies tab. We can then create strategies that only bet on the Horse Selections, by going to the Bet on tips and my selections rule in a strategy, and we add "Horse Selections" to the provider field. If the provider field is left blank, it will bet on all selections in the Manage tips form.

IMPORTANT NOTE: 1 tip = 1 bet

It is very important to be aware that **<u>each tip/selection can only be bet on once</u>**. If you wanted two strategies to bet on the Horse Selections, you would need to save the selections twice with 2 different provider names (i.e. Horse Selections and Horse Selections 2) or to Export tips to file and rename the selection set there by copying/pasting the original set and changing the 2nd version's name.

Click on Export tips to file

Image 130 Editing provider name in a spreadsheet



Edit in a spreadsheet. (Note: Excel sometimes converts the MarketIDs to number format and cuts off the ending zeroes. To avoid this, do not open the file directly with Excel, but instead, after exporting from the Bf Bot Manager, import it into a fresh spreadsheet "from text" and specifically tell Excel to import the columns "as text". This can avoid MarketID errors when reloading those tips into the Bf Bot Manager.)

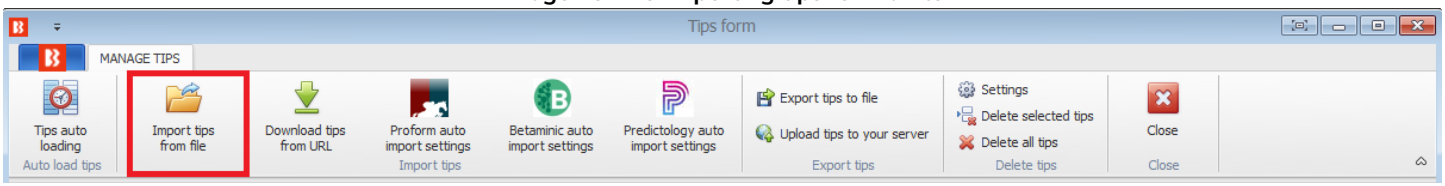
Image 131 Export to spreadsheet

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
1	Provider	Handicap	SelectionI	MarketId	EventId	SelectionI	MarketNa	EventNam	MarketTy	StartTime	BetType	Size	Points	Price	MinPrice	MaxPrice	BSP
2	horse selections	0	28168059	1.183426	30528182	Sobek	R5 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 00:38	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
3	horse selections	0	27366585	1.183396	30525894	1. Five Pri	R2 1600m	AsPk (NZL	WIN	16/05/2021 00:55	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
4	horse selections	0	14752984	1.183426	30528182	Payday To	R6 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:05	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
5	horse selections	0	5659220	1.183426	30528182	Berko	R7 5f Clair	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:32	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
6	football selections	0	408102	1.183215	30510231	San Jose E	Draw no B	San Jose E	DRAW_NC	16/05/2021 02:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
7	football selections	0	4270387	1.183455	30529106	FC Gifu	Match Odi	Grulla Mo	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 04:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
8	football selections	0	5342583	1.183222	30510203	Jeju Utd	Match Odi	Jeju Utd v	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 05:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
9	football selections	0	25556728	1.183468	30530348	Blackburn	Match Odi	Blackburn	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 11:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
10	football lay the draw selections	0	58805	1.182874	30479365	The Draw	Match Odi	Crystal Pa	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 11:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
11	football lay the draw selections	0	58805	1.183207	30509674	The Draw	Match Odi	UTA Arad	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 11:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
12	football lay the draw selections	0	58805	1.183464	30528545	The Draw	Match Odi	Fortuna D	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 12:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
13	horse selections 2	0	28168059	1.183426	30528182	Sobek	R5 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 00:38	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
14	horse selections 2	0	27366585	1.183396	30525894	1. Five Pri	R2 1600m	AsPk (NZL	WIN	16/05/2021 00:55	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
15	horse selections 2	0	14752984	1.183426	30528182	Payday To	R6 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:05	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
16	horse selections 2	0	5659220	1.183426	30528182	Berko	R7 5f Clair	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:32	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0

Note that you must save it in CSV format.

Click on Import tips from file. (Note: Excel locks files that are currently open. Before importing a CSV file back into the Bf Bot Manager software, it will need to be closed in Excel. Otherwise the bot will not be able to read the file and import the tips.)

Image 132 Re-importing tips form a file



When you import the file, you will see the two sets of tips with different names.

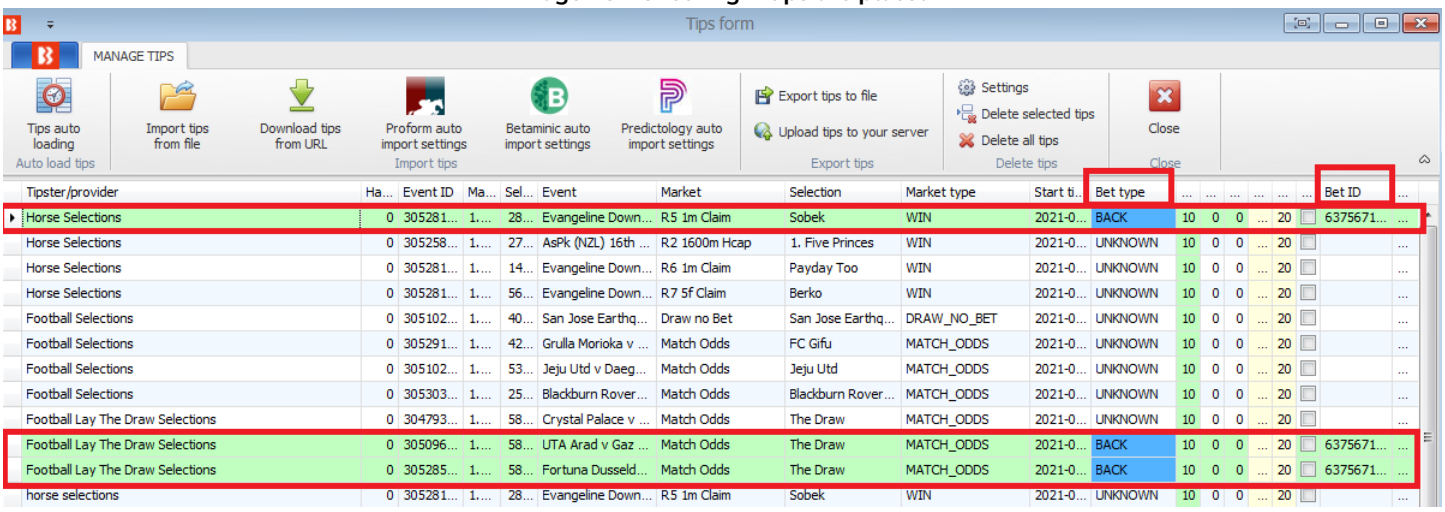
Image 133

Only the same tips with different tipster/provider names can be imported. If a duplicate tip is imported, the software will not accept it and a second instance of the same tip will not appear in the "Manage Tips" form.

Know when tips have been bet on

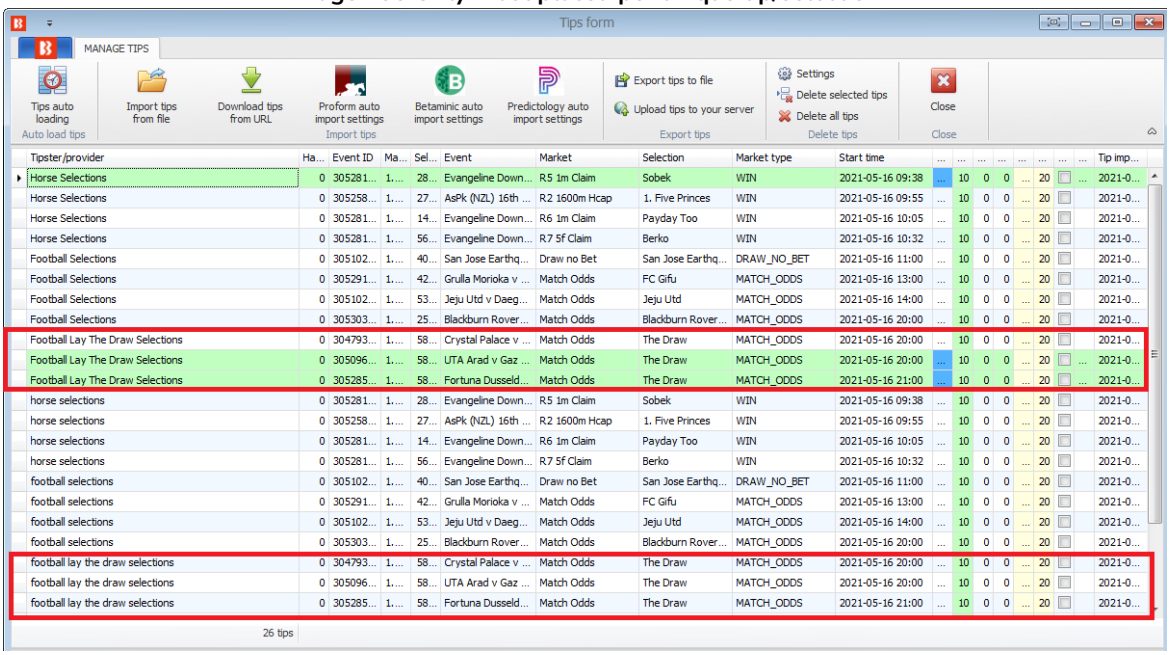
When a tip has had a bet placed on it, the background will change to green and it will get a bet ID. It will also update the bet type if it was previously unknown.

Image 134 Checking if tips are placed



As stated previously, only 1 bet will be placed per tip, so even if the same tip appears twice with the same provider name, only 1 of those tips will be bet on. (For example. when re-importing tips from a file, some duplicate tips may appear, but will only be bet on once.)

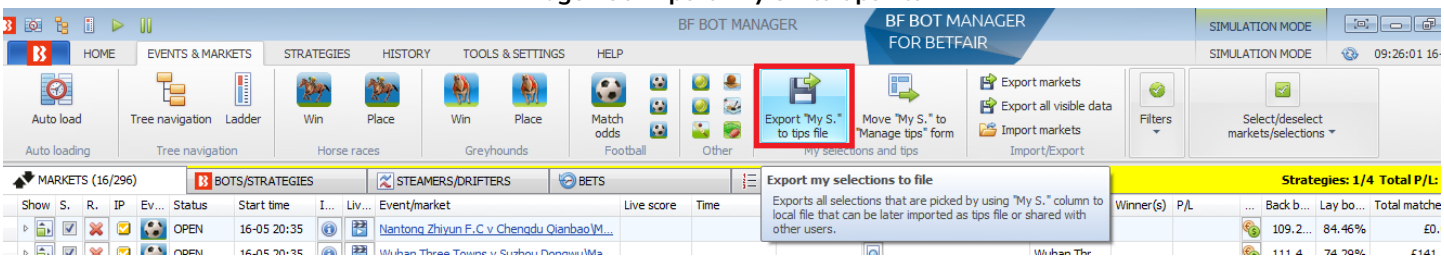
Image 135 Only 1 bet placed per unique tip/selection



2. Manually import a selection set as a Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV file.

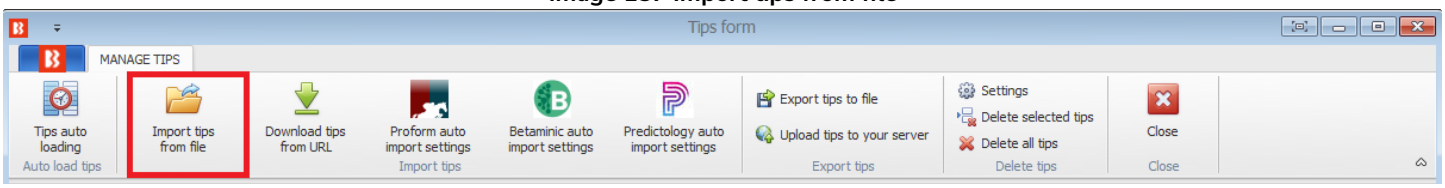
It is also possible to export selections directly from the Markets tab to a file for editing there. That file can also be shared with other BF Bot Manager users or imported into another instance of a Bf Bot Manager if you are running multiple instances. Similarly, you can import tip files received from other users.

Image 136 Export "My S." to tips file.



The file can then be imported via the Manage Tips form

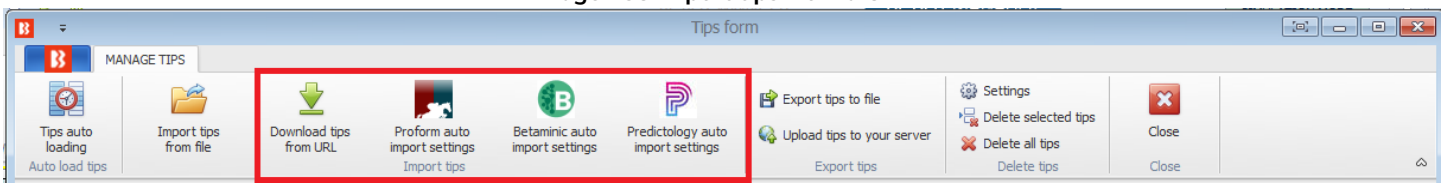
Image 137 Import tips from file



3. Automatically import tips from a 3rd party such as Betaminic, Proform, Predictology or any other 3rd party that can provide a URL with Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV data.

Bf Bot Manager also has the function to import tips directly from a 3rd party.

Image 138 Import tips from a URL



For Betaminic and Predictology. You need to enter the URL they provide you with into the auto import settings form. For more information on those services, please refer to their websites.

Image 139 Import tips from Betaminic auto import settings

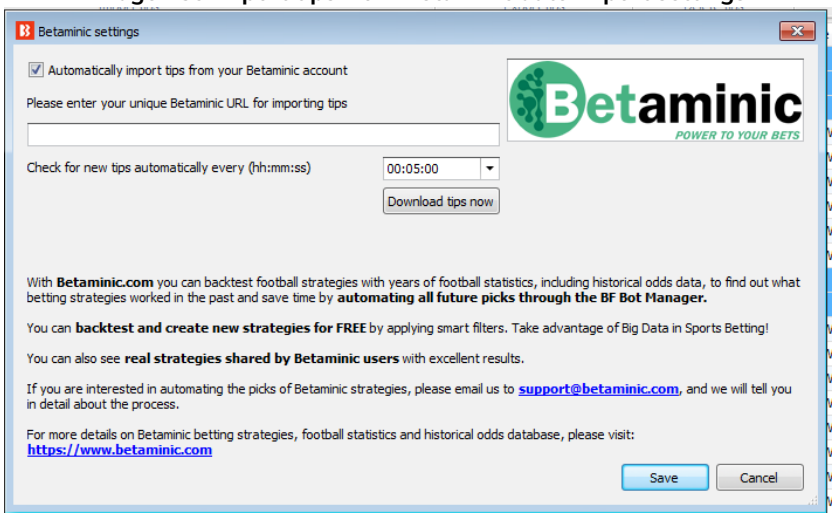
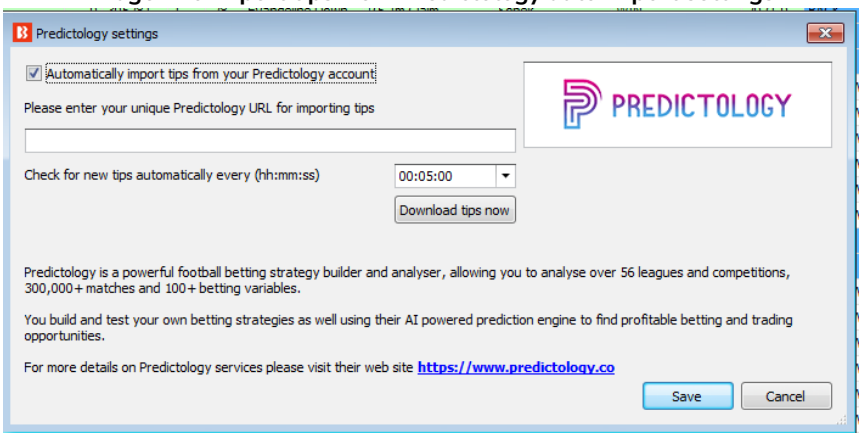


Image 140 Import tips from Predictology auto import settings



For the Proform tips, there is no URL. You need to have their software running on your computer.

Image 141 Import tips from Proform auto import settings

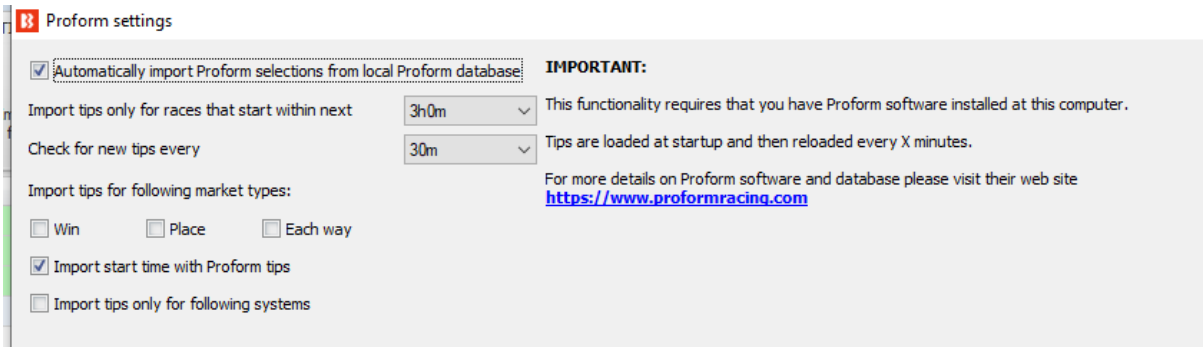
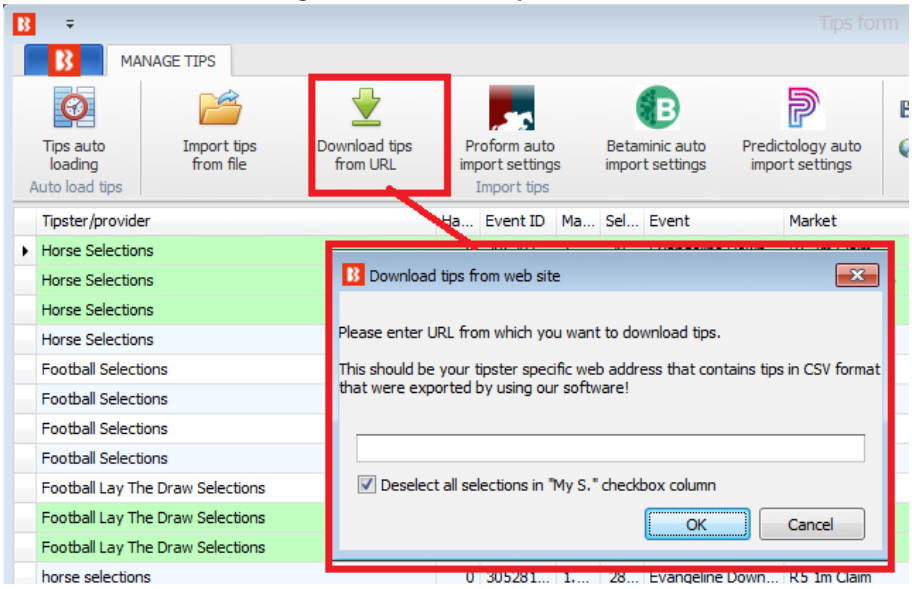


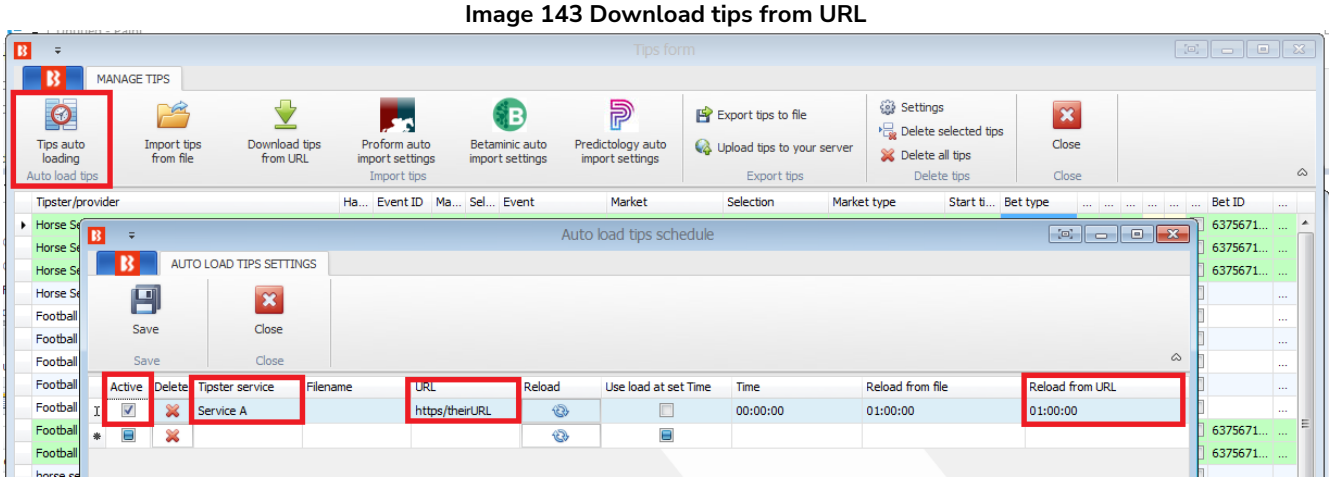
Image 142 Download tips from URL



You can also download tips from a website if they offer their tips in a CSV format that were exported by using the Bf Bot Manager software. This can also be automated by using the Tips auto loading feature.

Tips auto loading from a URL

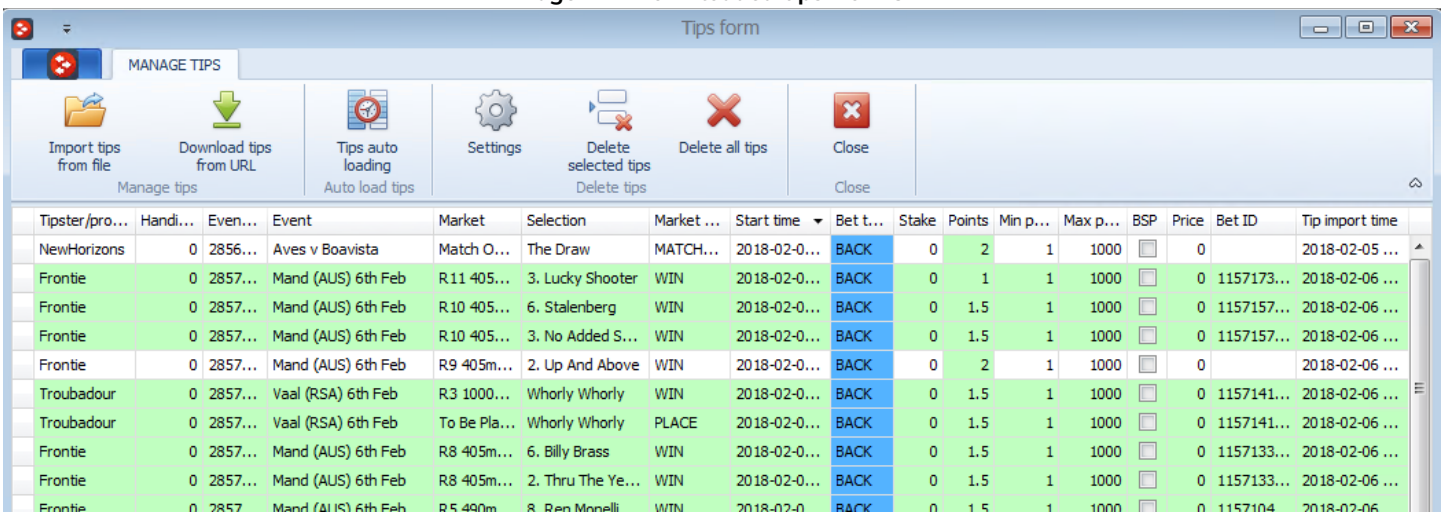
Image 143 Download tips from URL



You can set the software to auto import tips from a URL (such as from www.tippingsports.com) by clicking on the active checkbox, entering a Tipster service name (anything for your reference is fine) and entering the URL in the URL field. You can also set how often you want the tips imported. The default setting is every hour.

You can import tips from TippingSports by using your unique link that is available at your profile page. This unique link will contain tips from the tipsters that you decide to follow or subscribe to and the tips will be in a format that Bf Bot Manager V3 supports. In this case the markets will be loaded automatically as the TippingSports unique link provides Betfair market IDs with tips.

Image 144 Downloaded tips from URL



Once you have the tips loaded properly to the tips form you can set the strategy to bet on those tips. This can be done by using the example strategy that comes with the software and it is already set up to bet on all imported tips. It is best that you duplicate that example strategy and then modify it to your own needs.

The main rule in the strategy is the "**Staking->Bet on imported selections/tips**" rule. This rule is the one that will make your strategy bet only on imported tips. All other rules in your strategy still must also be satisfied before bets can be placed e.g. Back/Lay Ratio, Overrounds, Time to bet, Price ranges etc.

Your strategy should in most cases have the "Bet on imported tips" rule at the top of rules in the Staking tab, so that it executes first in the Staking tab (Use up/down arrows to move it to first place). The only exceptions are "Level/initial stake" and "Percent of betting bank" staking that should be first set in the Staking tab.

The tips can contain bet type, price, price range, stake, points data that will be used by your strategy betting on those tips. For example, if you specify a min and max price range with your tips, then the strategy will automatically check if the price at which will place bet is within this tip min/max price range. In the same way, if you set the bet type with your tips then the strategy will use that bet type when placing bets.

Usually tipsters provide a number of "points" with their tips. This is used to tell you how much to stake on that tip, if they are confident that the tip will win, then they stake more points (e.g. 2.0) and if it is risky tip then they stake less (e.g. 0.25). The number of points is multiplied by the stake that you set in the Staking tab. For example, if you set a "Level/initial stake" of £10 in the Staking tab and the imported tip has 5 points, then the actual stake size of your bet will be 5 x £10 = £50!

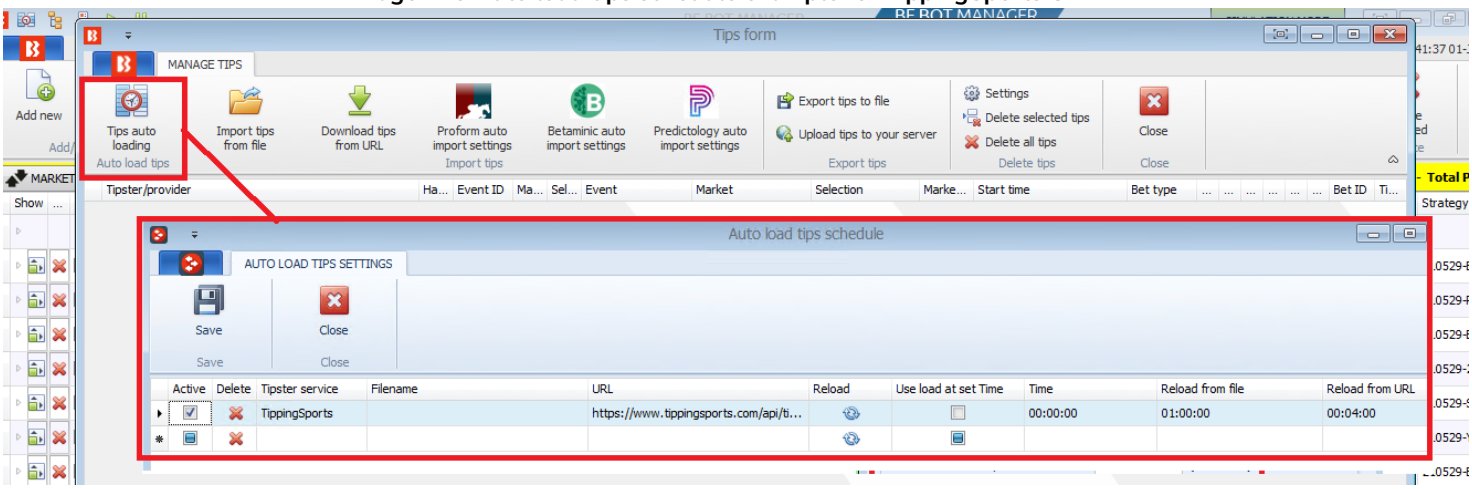
It is always best that you test your strategy in simulation mode to ensure you have set it all properly.

If your tips file contains a "Provider" column, which is usually set to a tipster name, then you can create a separate strategy for each tipster and set different rules, stakes, price ranges etc. In that case, in the "Bet on imported selections/tips" rule you can specify the provider (tipster) name that is supplied with your tips and the strategy will bet only on tips from that provider/tipster.

Only 1 bet can be placed for each imported tip. If you plan on having more than one strategy that will bet on the same tips then you should create tips with different provider names for each strategy.

In the "Tips auto loading" form you can set the automatic loading of tips e.g. every few minutes/hours. This will allow you to leave the bot working 24/7 and betting on imported tips without any interaction from you. Once you have set it up, you will have a fully automated solution that can work for days, betting on your tips or tips from your tipsters.

Image 145 Auto load tips schedule example for TippingSports URL



Rule Summary of Example Strategy – Bet on all imported tips

Strategy Details Form	Strategy Rule	Instructions
General	Max number of bets per runner	Only 1 bet per runner allowed (by this strategy)
	Max number of bets per market	Up to 20 bets by this strategy per market allowed.
	Max number of bets per event	10,000 bets by this strategy per event allowed.
Strategy Tab	**Strategy Rule**	**Instructions**
Market conditions	Time to bet	Place bets 5 minutes before event starts.
	Overrounds	Prevent betting if market overround is not 100%-115% for back bets or 85%-100% for lay bets.
Selection conditions	Default bet type	Place back bets on selections satisfying all conditions.
	Back and Lay price ratio	Prevent betting if selection back/lay odds ratio is over 15%.
	Min/Max Selection Price	Back price for selection must be between 1.01-20.
Price setting	Price rules	Place bets 2 ticks lower than available back price.
Staking	Level/Initial stake	Use level stakes of £2 per tip
	Bet on imported selections/tips	Bet on all imported tips or selections

In summary, we can see how we can use the **Bet on imported selections/tips** rule to bet on selection sets we create ourselves and apply to strategies or to bet on imported tips from a 3rd party.

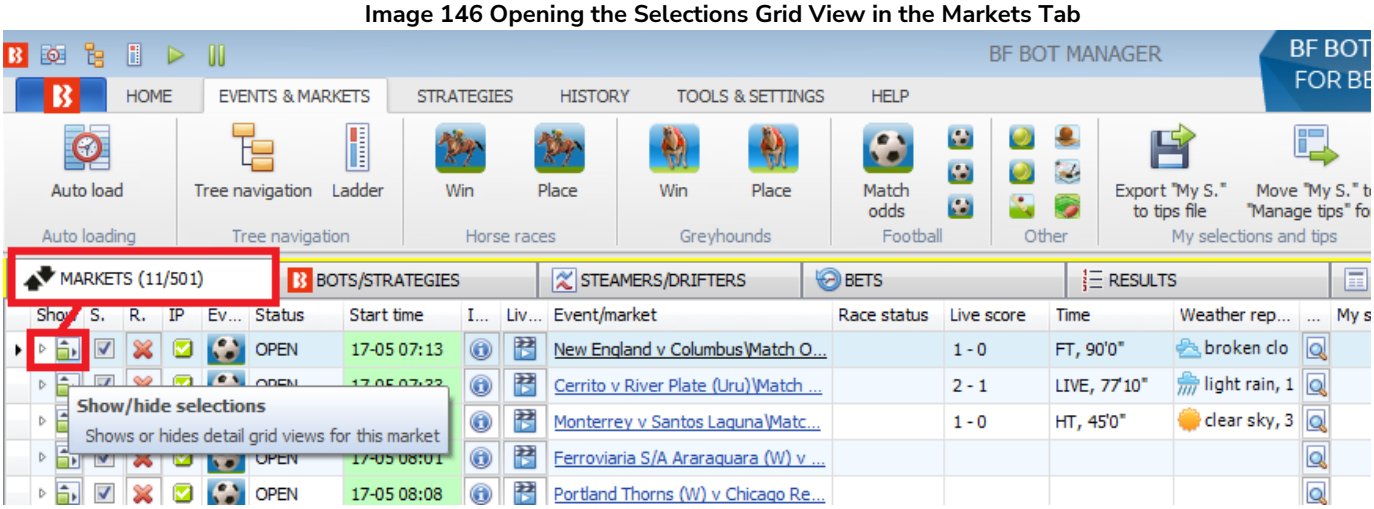
IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

2.1.8 Manual Betting and Exchange Trading - Ladder View

It is also possible to place bets manually from the markets tab in the **selections grid view** or in the **ladder view**. The ladder view is often used by exchange traders. The ladder view makes it easier to see the weight of money on different odds and react quickly to market movements.

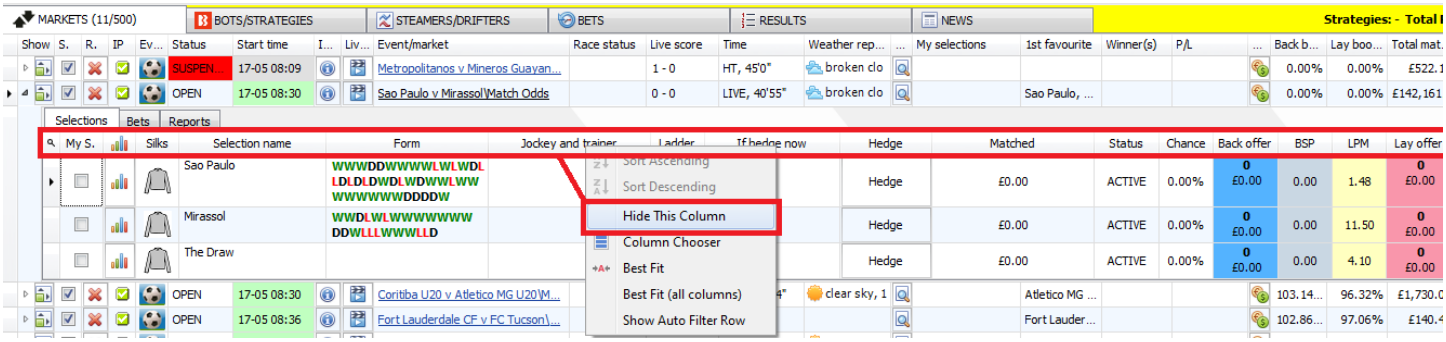
Manual Betting with the Selections Grid View

Image 146 Opening the Selections Grid View in the Markets Tab



In the markets tab, click on the **Show/hide selections** toggle to reveal the selections grid view.

Image 147 Hiding Unrequired Columns



You can right click on any column header and select **Hide This Column** to remove columns with information that you do not require. For example, some bettors may not require Jockey and Trainer information.

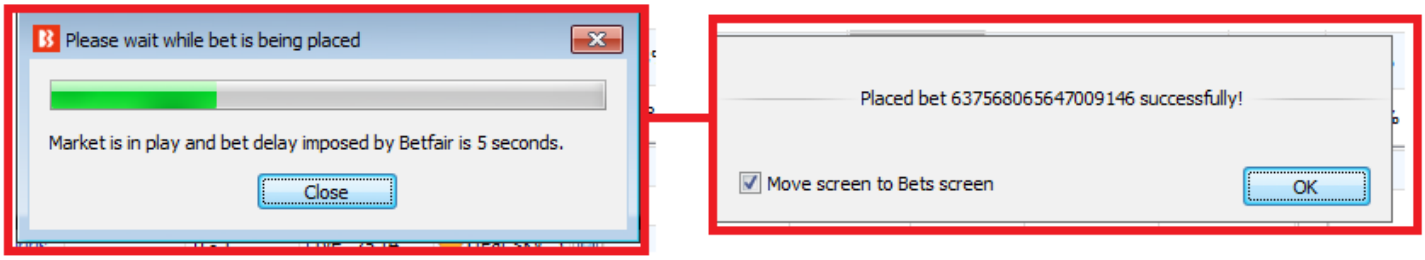
In the same way you can add columns that will help manual betting by right clicking on any selection grid column header and clicking on **Column Chooser**. A pop-up Customization menu will appear with a list of columns that can be added. For manual betting it is useful to double-click on **My Price, Stake, Back** and **Lay**. This will add those four columns to the right side of the selections grid view. These column positions can be moved by click-and-holding on the column header and dragging it to your preferred position in the grid.

Image 148 Adding Useful Columns for Manual Betting

In this example, if we want to place a back bet, we can left click on the **My Price** cell and enter the odds we want to place the bet at. Then we can enter the desired **Stake**. Next, click **Back** (or Lay depending on what bet type you want). As Image 131 shows, we then get a confirmation message which has a checkbox "Do not show this message again" if we want to enable one-click betting for future bets.

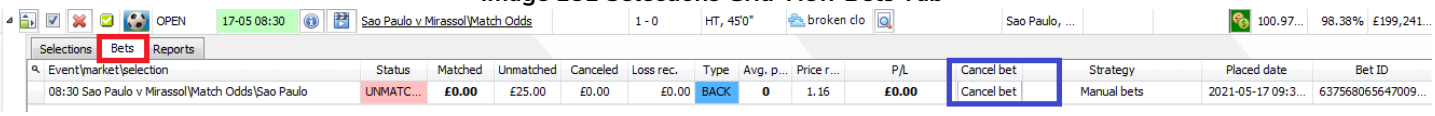
Image 149 Placing a Manual Back Bet

Image 150 Manual Bet delay and bet ID confirmation



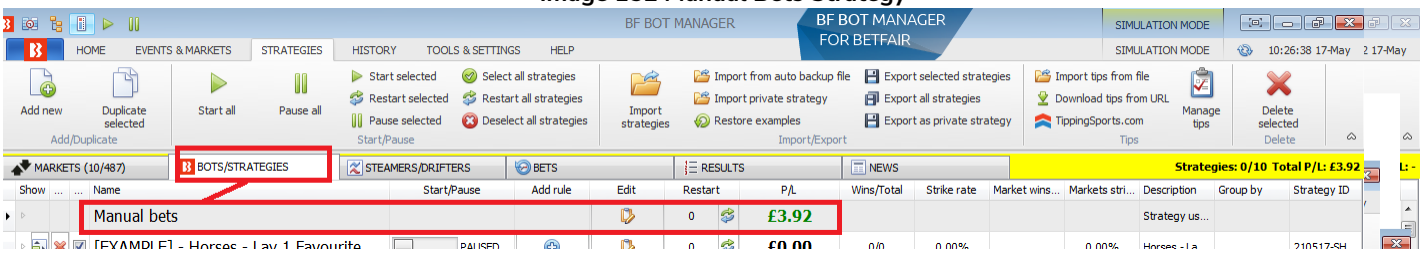
After clicking confirm to place the bet, the delay will be shown if there is a Betfair delay for in-play bets in that market, then the placed bet ID will be shown to confirm the bet.

Image 151 Selections Grid View Bets Tab



The screen will then show the Bets tab for that selection. There is a **Cancel bet** button here if you need to quickly cancel the bet just placed. The bets tab will show the status of the bet.

Image 152 Manual Bets Strategy

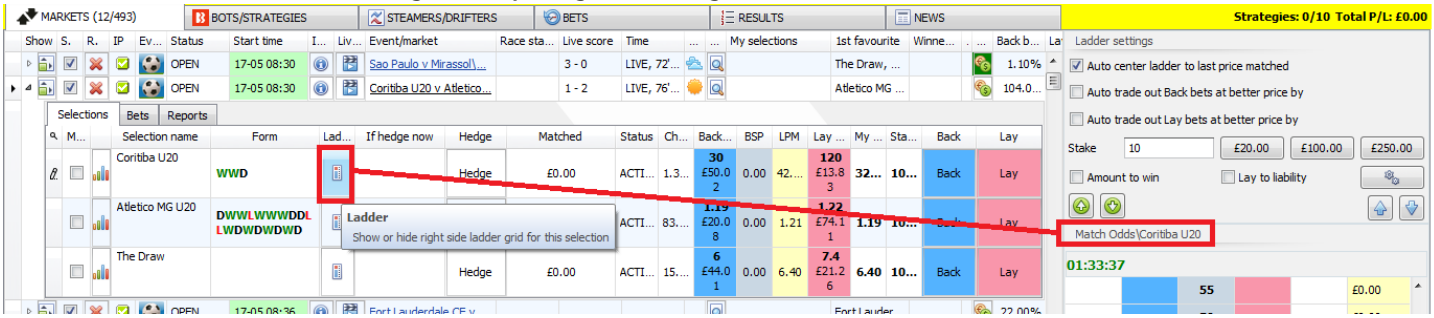


After this market is settled, the total Profit/Loss for manual bets is shown on the Strategies Tab as the **Manual Bets** strategy.

Manual betting and trading with the Ladder View

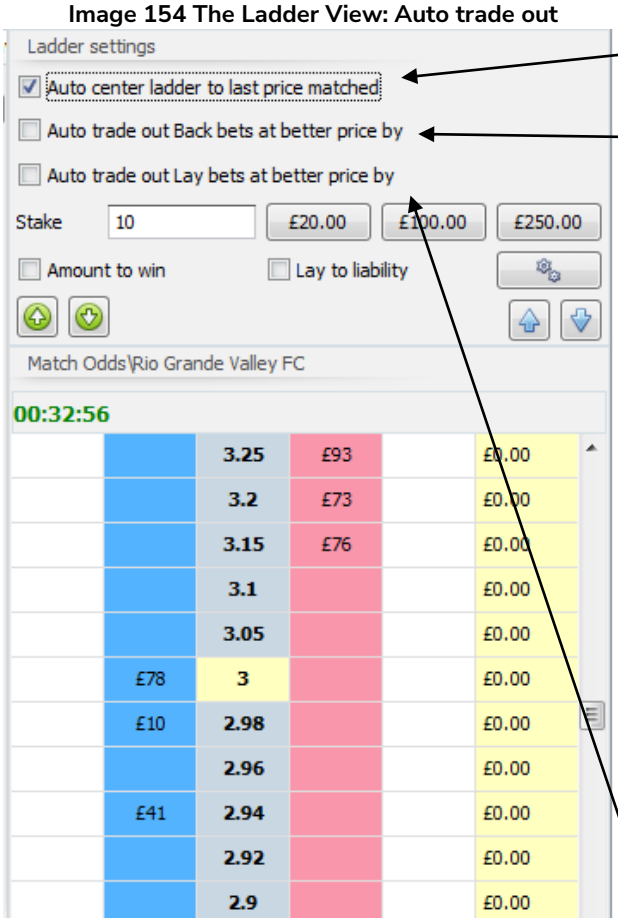
It is also possible to place manual bets by using the ladder view.

Image 153 Opening and closing the Ladder View for a selection



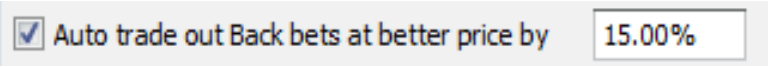
To open the ladder view, left-click on the ladder icon for that selection in the selections grid view. The ladder grid view shows only one selection at a time. So make sure the correct selection is being displayed by checking the selection name that appears above the odds in the ladder view. To close the ladder view, left-click on the ladder button in the selections grid view again.

Image 154 The Ladder View: Auto trade out

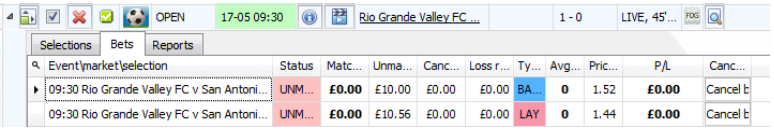


This will **auto center the ladder on the last price matched**. This is useful to move the focus of the ladder to where the most recent action is occurring.

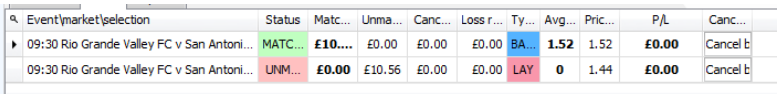
Checking this tickbox will bring up a field on the right.



With this setting enabled, the software will **automatically place a lay bet** at 15% better odds. This % can be adjusted.



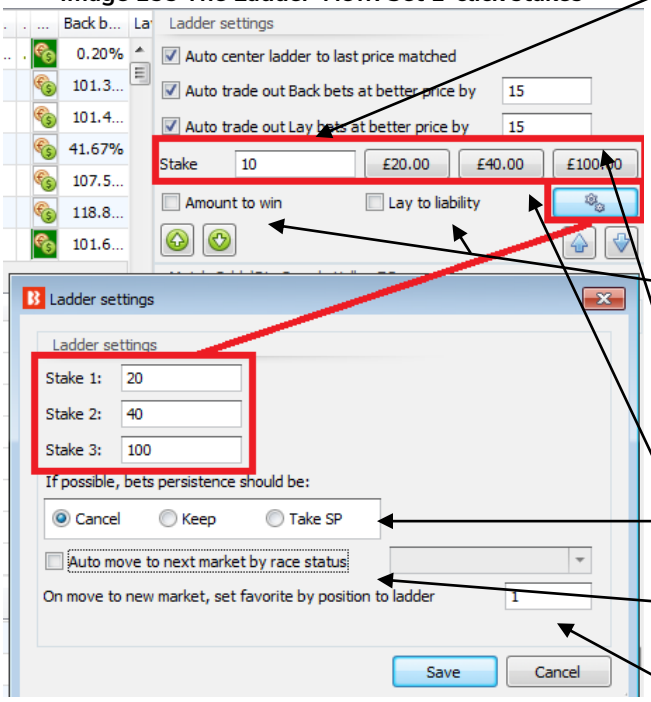
For back bets, that means a lay bet will be placed straight away at lower odds. In this above example the back bet is at 1.52 and the lay bet is at 1.44. Both bets are still unmatched. As the bets get matched, the bets tab will update itself.



The cancel bet button is available on the bets tab in the section girds view to allow easy cancelling of bets.

The same function can be done with lay bets. But the second bet will be a back bet at higher odds than the lay bet.

Image 155 The Ladder View: Set 1-click stakes



The **Stake** field sets the amount that will be placed by one-click betting on the ladder grid itself. If we enter £10 in the stake field and then left-click on a blue cell, it will place a £10 back bet at that price. If the placed Back bet is unmatched, it will show up on the Lay side in the white cell. If we left-click on that £10 in the white cell, it will cancel the unmatched bet.

Instead of being a regular **Stake**, it can be edited to be an **Amount to win** or a **Lay to liability** figure.

The £20, £100, £250 buttons enable **quick stake changes** without having to type in the numbers. For in-play trading, speed is important.

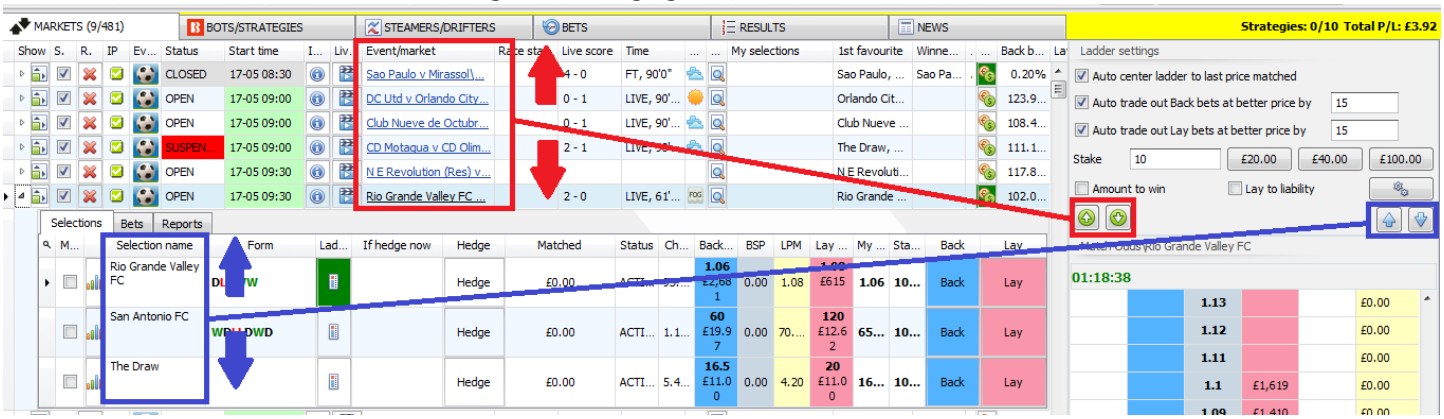
The cog button allows the settings of those **quick stake buttons to be customized**.

The **persistence** of those bets can also be customized. The default setting is Cancel.

For Horse Traders, the ladder can be set to **auto move to the next market based on race status**.

The next **Selection to be viewed** when auto move takes place can also be **set by favorite position**.

Image 156 Changing Market or Selection Buttons



The green up/down arrows allow quick changing of markets. The blue up/down arrows allow quick changing between the selections in the currently selected market.

Summary of Manual Betting and the Ladder View

With these functions it is possible to have more control over your manual betting than using the Betfair website. You can switch between markets quickly, use ladder view to see the weight of money and have preset trade out settings ready for 1-click betting with normal stakes, amount to win or lay to liability.

IMPORTANT: The Bf Bot Software is a tool for users to apply their own betting methods to. You should always practice in Simulation mode to make sure you are familiar with how the software works and that the bets are placed as you expect them before betting with real money. Simulation mode data is delayed, so when switching to real mode, always try new betting methods with small amounts first before increasing stakes.

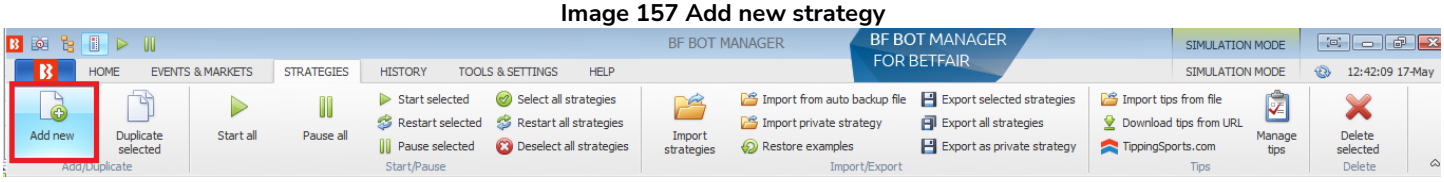
2.2 A 10 Step method to creating strategies

The example strategies are all to demonstrate the functions and abilities of the software. Users can then create their own strategies or duplicate and customize the example strategies.

Standard 10 Step process for making most strategies:

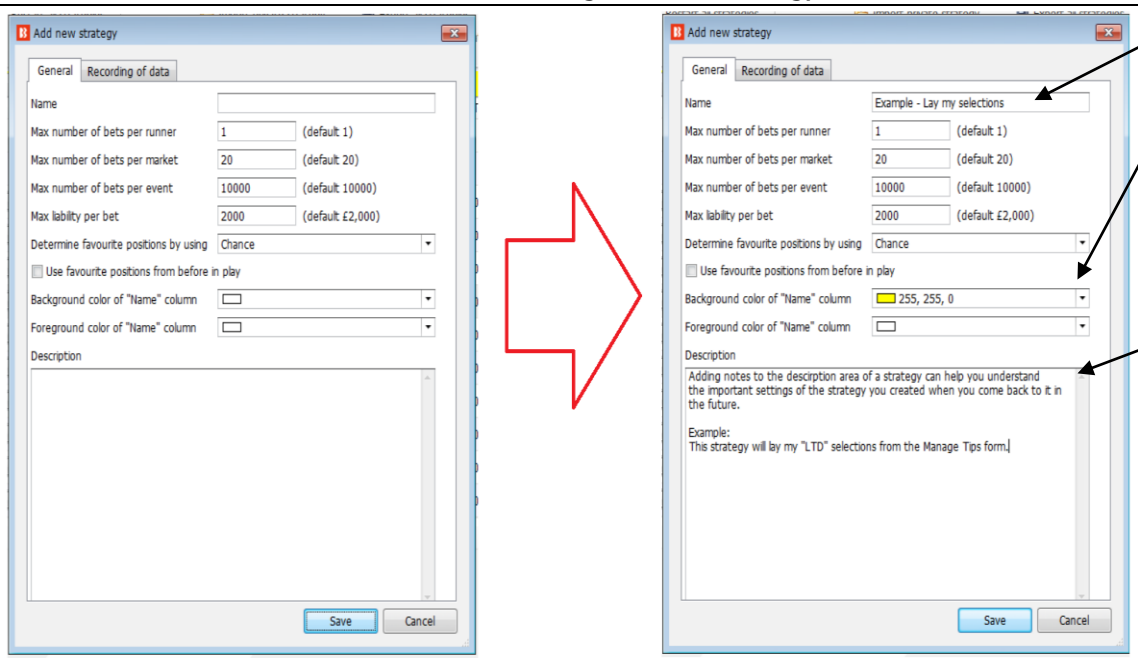
1. Add new (strategy)
2. Name the strategy and make notes so you can remember what strategy you have made. (Optional but useful.)
3. Add events filter
4. Add markets filter (and check your chosen markets are being auto-loaded if necessary)
5. Add extra market conditions and selection conditions as needed by the strategy
6. Add Bet Type
7. Edit Stake
8. Add After Bet rules and safety rules if required.
9. When finished, talk yourself through the rules again to check if it all makes sense.
10. Run in simulation mode, then real mode with small stakes and a safety stop loss to be sure.

Image 157 Add new strategy



1. A standard way to create a new strategy is to go to the strategies tab and click **Add new** strategy,

Image 158 New strategy details

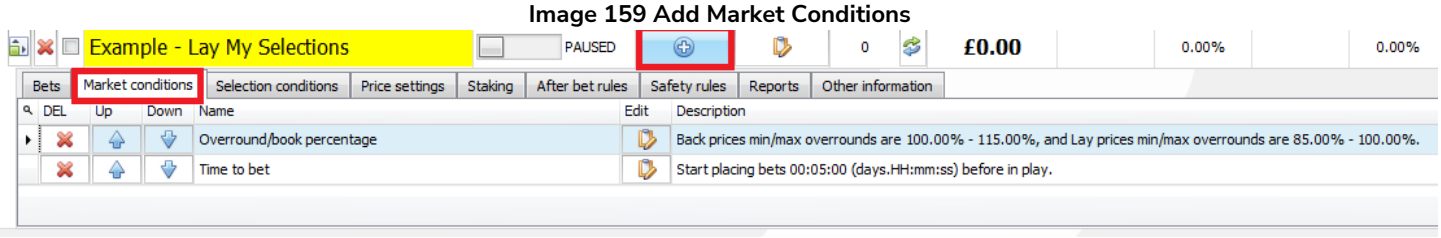


2. Add a **name** for your strategy.

Add a **background color** if you want to make your strategy stand out from the others. (Optional but useful.)

Add **notes** to refer to later. (Optional but useful.)

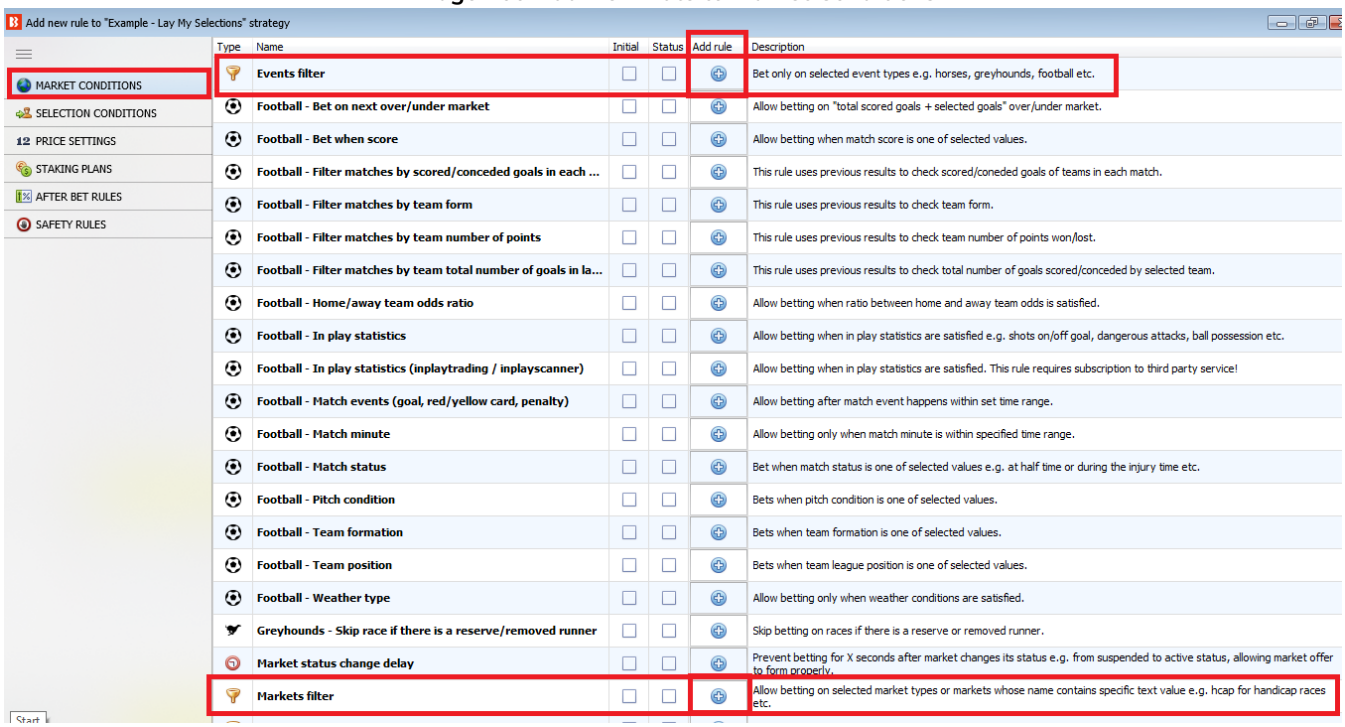
Image 159 Add Market Conditions



3. Then open the strategy tabs view. **Add rules** by clicking on the blue plus button. In the Market Conditions, you can **Add event filters**.

4. And **Add market filters.**

Image 160 Add New Rule to Market Conditions



Event filters and **Market filters** are important so that your strategy only bets on the events that you want.

Image 161 Events filter

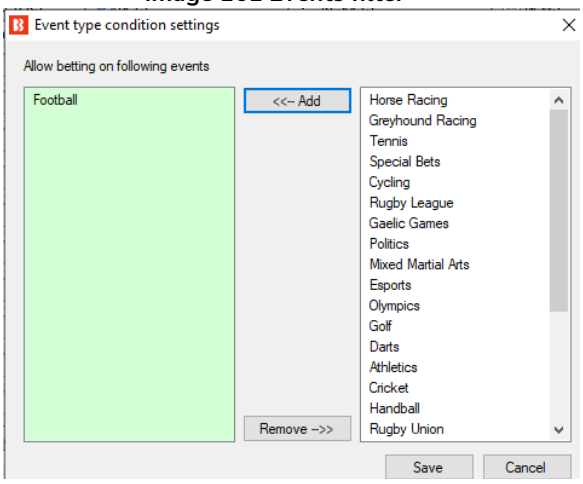
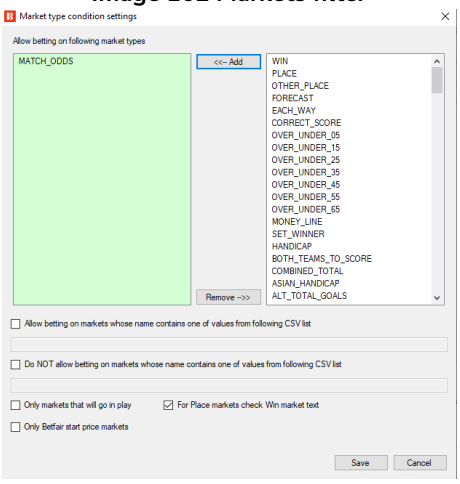
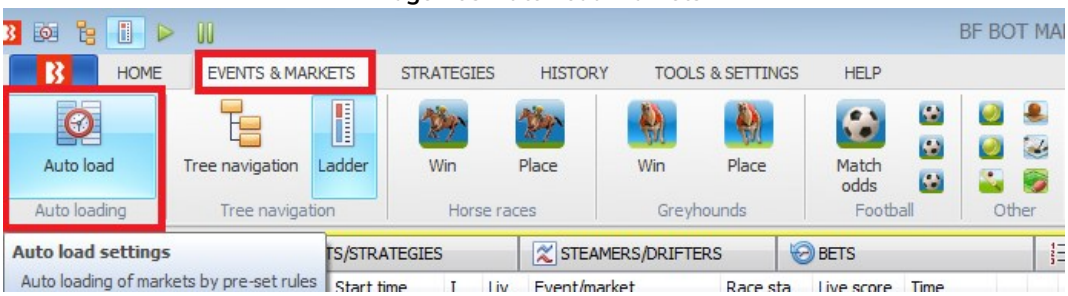


Image 162 Markets filter



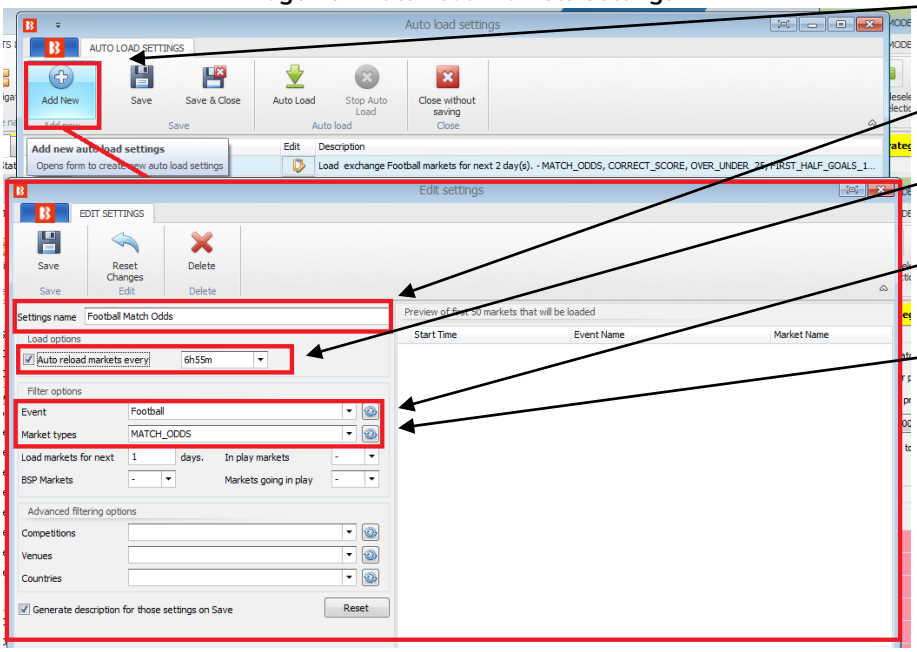
If your strategy needs football match odds markets, then also make sure your software is **auto-loading those markets.**

Image 163 Auto Load markets



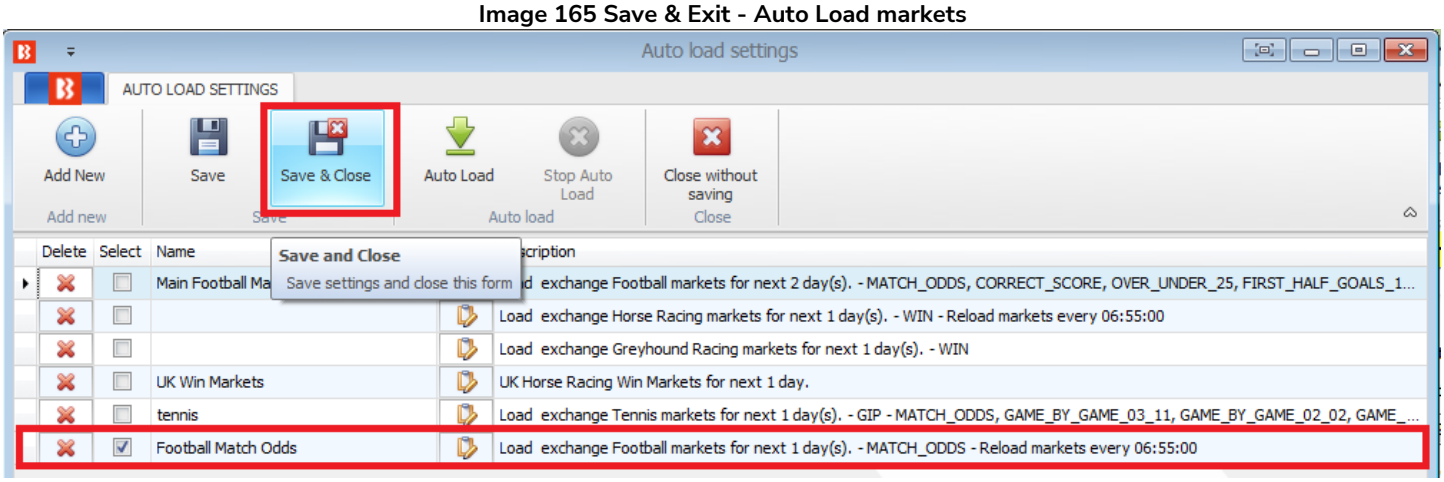
Click on the **Auto load** button on the Events & Markets screen.

Image 164 Auto Load Markets Settings



Click on add New.
Give the settings set a name.
Choose how often to reload the markets.
Choose the event.
Choose the markets.
Save the settings.

Image 165 Save & Exit - Auto Load markets



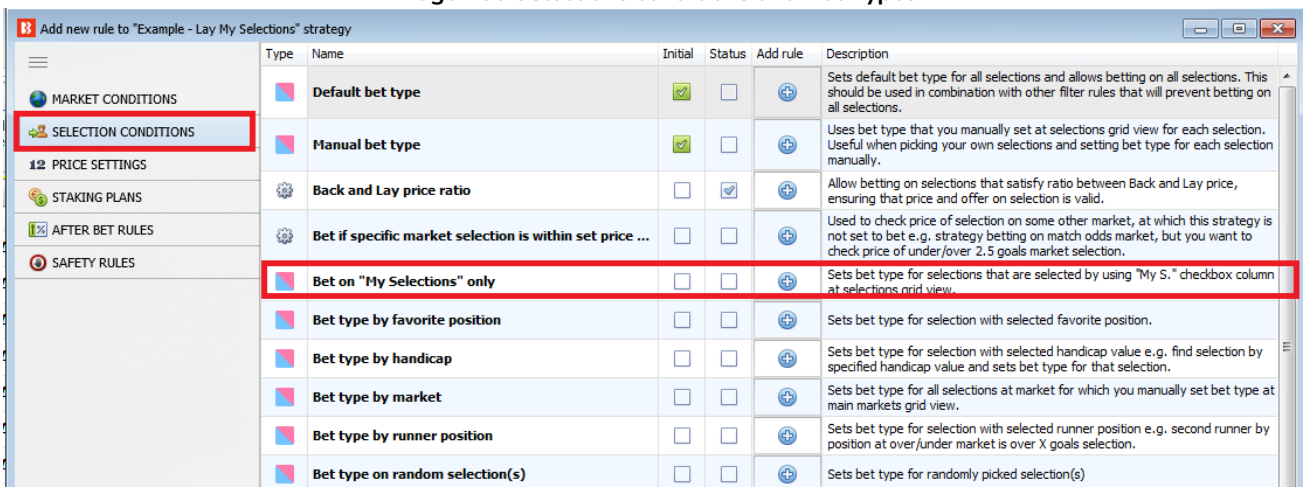
Make sure to **Save & Close** again.

Not all strategies need markets auto loading, only those that find their own selections.

Imported tips will automatically load those required markets.

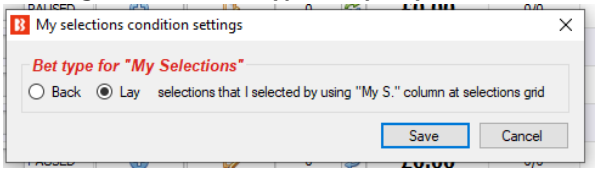
5. You can then edit or **Add extra market conditions and selection conditions** as needed by the strategy.

Image 166 Selections conditions and Bet Types



6. Then **Add a Bet Type**,

Image 167 Add Bet type – Lay "My Selections"



7. **Edit the Stake** or change the staking plan.

Image 168 Staking Plans

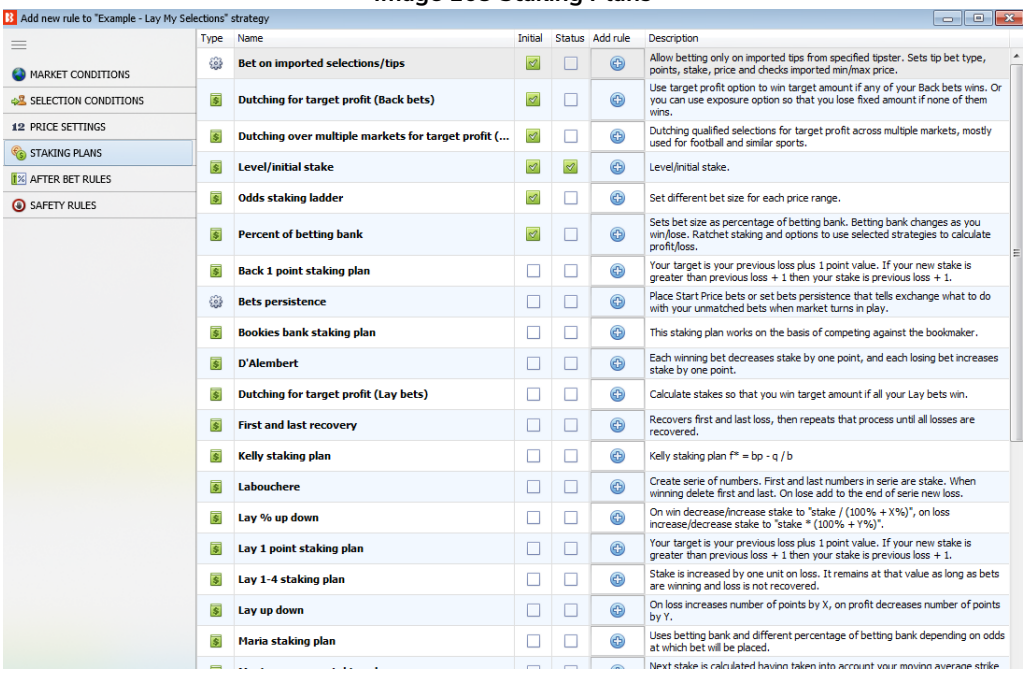
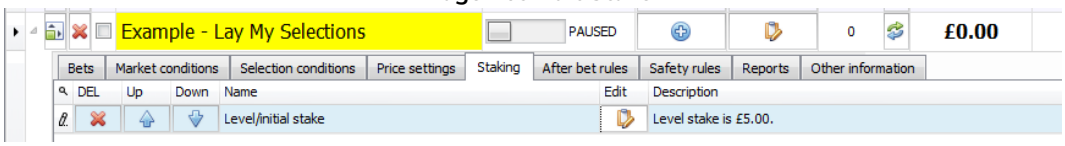


Image 169 Edit Stake



8. Add **After Bet rules** and **Safety rules** if required.

Image 170 After Bet Rules

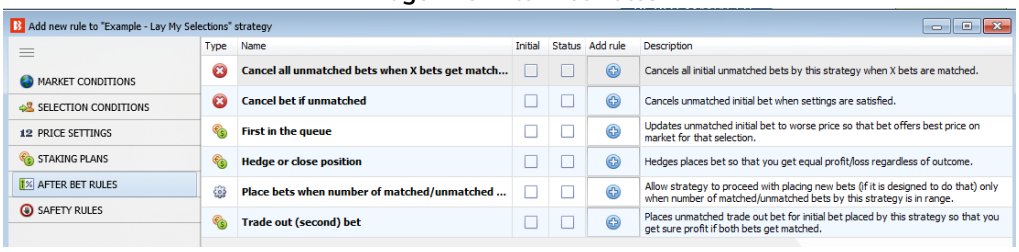
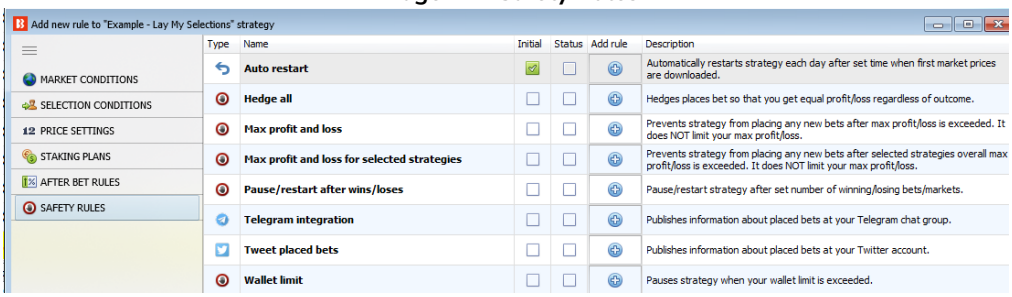
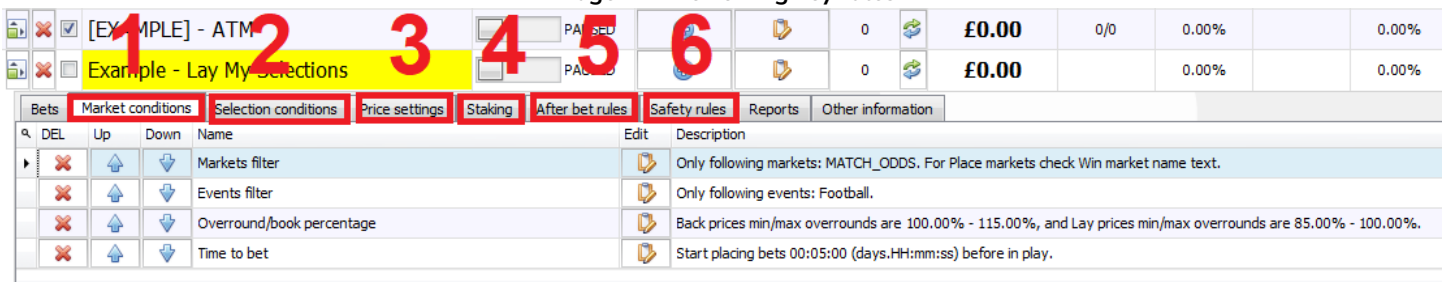


Image 171 Safety Rules



9. When finished, go through the rules again to check if it all makes sense.

Image 172 Reviewing key rules



10. Finally, Run it in simulation mode, then real mode with small stakes and a safety stop loss to be sure the strategy is working as intended.

Image 173 Test New Strategies in Simulation Mode

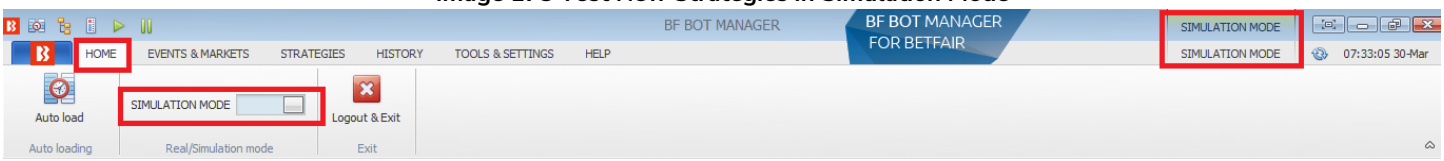
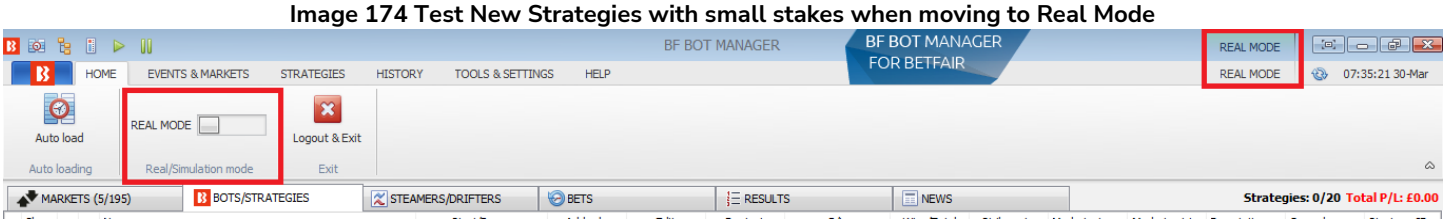


Image 174 Test New Strategies with small stakes when moving to Real Mode



3 Key Concepts

The Bf Bot Manager is very versatile software with many functions and settings. It becomes much simpler when you know what kind of strategy you are trying to create. Are you betting on your own selections or imported selections according to set rules and staking plans? Do you want the bot to automatically find and bet on its own selections according to your strategy rules? Are you betting pre-match or in-play? Do you need second bets or hedge rules? When you know those things, it becomes clearer. After that, once you have created your strategies, there are some key concepts to keep in mind when using the software.

3.1 Running the Bot

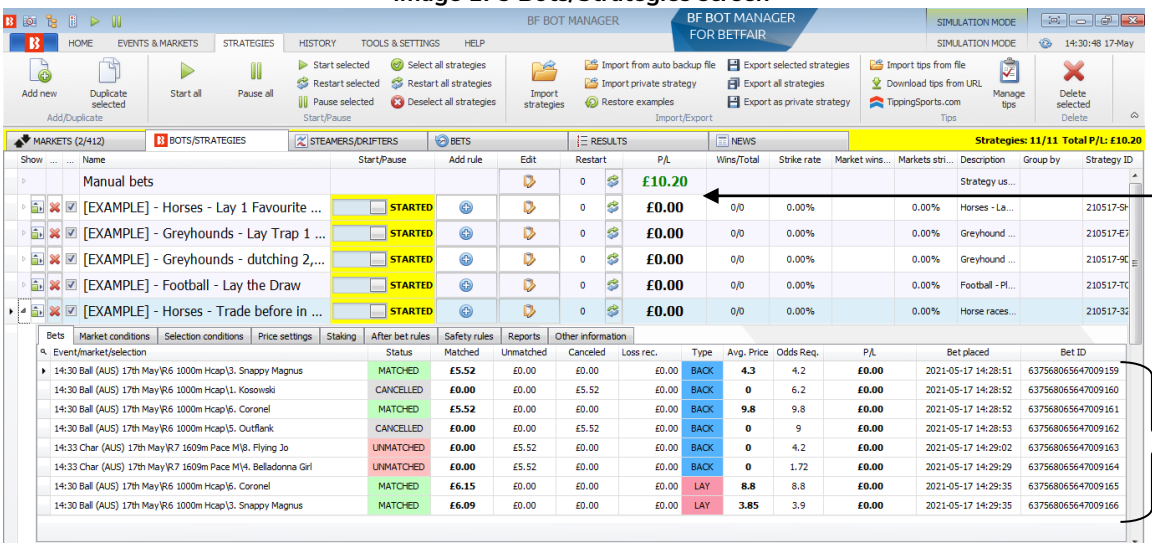
The Bf Bot Manager software needs to be switched on and connected to the internet in order to place bets. This does not mean you need it to be running 24/7, but it does mean that you need it to be switched on in order to place any bets. If you want the bot to be always looking for bets, then it does need to be switched on 24/7. If you only want to use it on weekends, then it just needs to be switched on then. But when the software is not switched on or not connected to the internet, it will not place bets. Some users avoid the worry of internet problems or PC troubles by using a Virtual Private Server. This is when you rent a physical part of a computer from a VPS provider and that will run 24/7 and you can connect to when you need from anywhere in the world that you have an internet connection and a PC.

The Bf Bot Manager software always starts in Simulation Mode for safety. Even if you were in real mode when you switched off the software, it will restart in the Simulation Mode again. So each time you restart the software, you need to manually change it to Real Mode. (This can be changed in the General Settings.)

3.2 The Main Screens

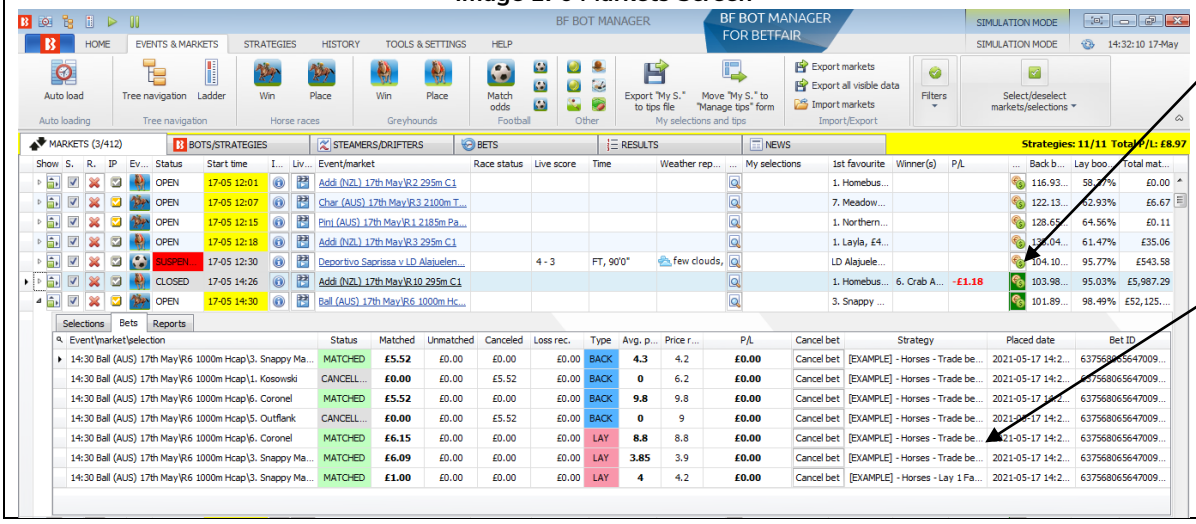
The **Bots/Strategies** screen and the **Markets** screen are the two main screens that get used the most.
On the Bots/Strategies screen, you can see which strategies are running and what their current Profit and Loss is. You can open strategies up and view their bets tab to see what each has bet on.

Image 175 Bots/Strategies screen



On the Markets screen you can see which markets are loaded. Only loaded markets can be bet on. You can see which markets have bets on, see the bets of all strategies on each market and check the current potential profit and loss for unsettled markets.

Image 176 Markets Screen

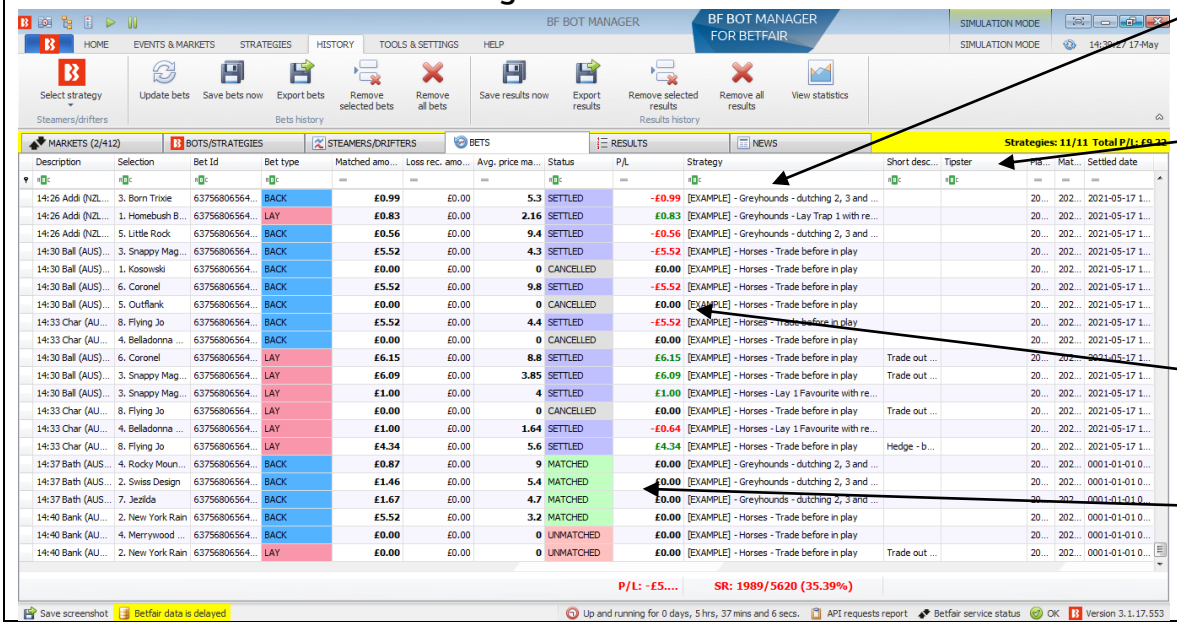


If this cog has a **dark green** background, then it means it has placed bets on it.

The bets tab in the markets screen in the selection grids view shows the bets on that market by all strategies.

The **Bets** screen is also a useful place to see all bets placed by all strategies on all markets.

Image 177 Bets Screen



You can see which strategy has placed bets.

If it is an imported tip, you can see which tipster/provider this bet was from.

You can see the result of the individual bet (not *the market*).

You can see the status of the bet.

3.3 Loading Markets

The software can only bet on markets that are loaded into the markets screen. The software can only record price data from markets that are loaded in the markets screen. If you do not load a market to the MARKETS grid view, then the bot will not be able to monitor it, get prices or bet on it. For this reason it is important to make sure that the markets that you want to use are loaded manually or automatically into the software.

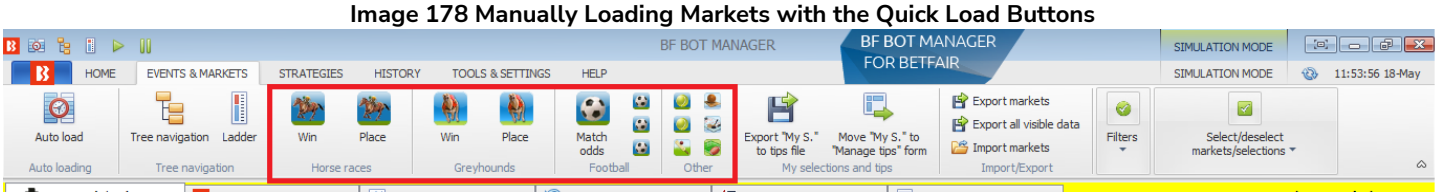
For example, your strategy might be set to bet on the Match Odds market, but one of your strategy rules could be set to check the Over/Under 2.5 Goals market price before placing a bet. In this case you would need to load both markets, Match odds and Over/Under 2.5 Goals, to the markets grid view. A similar situation can happen for horse races, where you want a strategy to bet on the Place market when a horse is within a certain price range in the Win market. In this case you would need to auto load the Win and the Place markets to MARKETS grid view.

The four ways to load markets into the software.
1. Manual – Quick Load Buttons
2. Manual – Tree Navigation
3. Automatic – Auto Load
4. Automatic - Imported Tips

3.3.1 Manual Loading of Markets - Quick Load Buttons

Some users choose which markets they want to use when they start-up.
This can be done by clicking on the **quick load** buttons on the Markets screen.

Image 178 Manually Loading Markets with the Quick Load Buttons



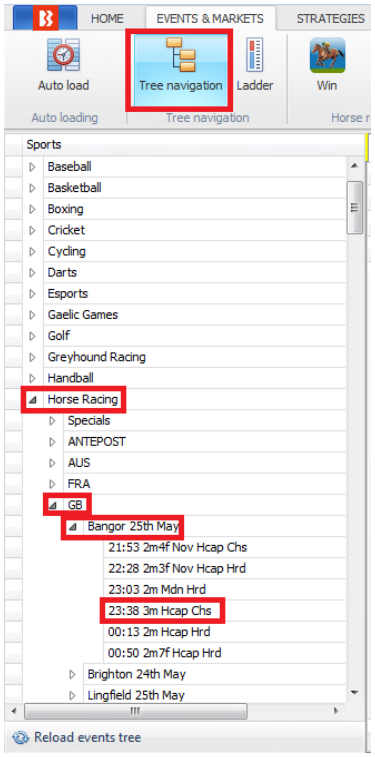
There are quick load buttons for:

Horses – Win markets
Horses – Place markets
Greyhounds – Win markets
Greyhounds – Place markets
Football – Match odds markets
Football – Over/Under 2.5 goal markets
Football – Over/Under 1.5 goal markets
Football – Correct score markets
Tennis – Match odds markets
Tennis – Set betting markets
Cricket – Match odds markets
Basketball – Match odds markets
Ice hockey – Match odds markets
American football and rugby league markets

The quick load buttons will load the next 100 markets for horse/greyhound races and the next 200 markets for football and other events. To load more than this, you need to setup auto-loading. Those markets will not be reloaded automatically, which means that if you want to load new markets when they are available then you will need to use those quick load icons again or set up auto load settings.

3.3.2 Manual - Tree Navigation

Image 179



It is also possible to manually **add markets individually**.

By clicking on the **Tree Navigation** button in the Events & Markets tab, we can open the navigation tree for each sport and find the individual markets that we want to load from there. Tree navigation is commonly used when you want the bot to bet only on markets/selections that you manually pick or when you use the ladder/grid interface for manual trading/betting.

Left-click on the triangles to open their sub-trees.

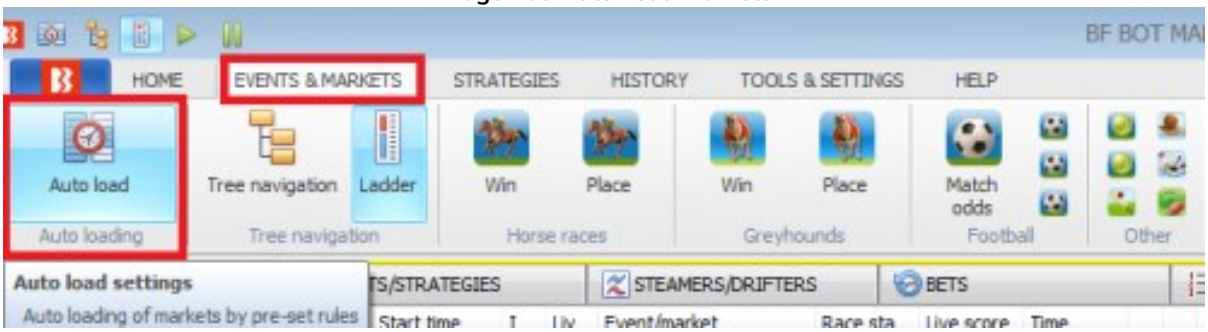
Then left-click once on a market to load it to the markets screen.

The navigation tree is automatically refreshed each hour, but you can refresh it any time you like by clicking on the Reload events tree button at the bottom of the Tree navigation pane.

3.3.3 Auto-loading of Markets - Auto Load

It is also possible to set up auto-loading of specified markets so that they are updated at set intervals. This allows the software to run 24/7 without manual market loading.

Image 180 Auto Load markets



Click on the **Auto load** button on the Events & Markets screen.

Click on add New.

Save the settings.

Give the settings set a name.

Choose how often to reload the markets.

Choose the event.

Choose the markets.

Image 181 Auto Load Markets Settings

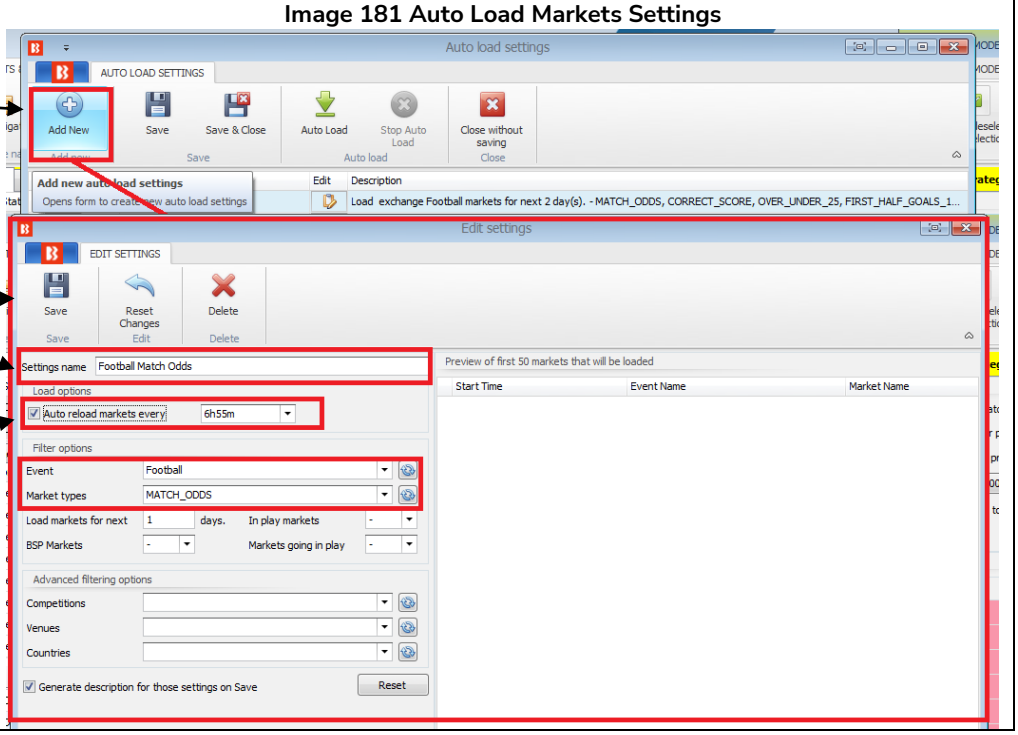
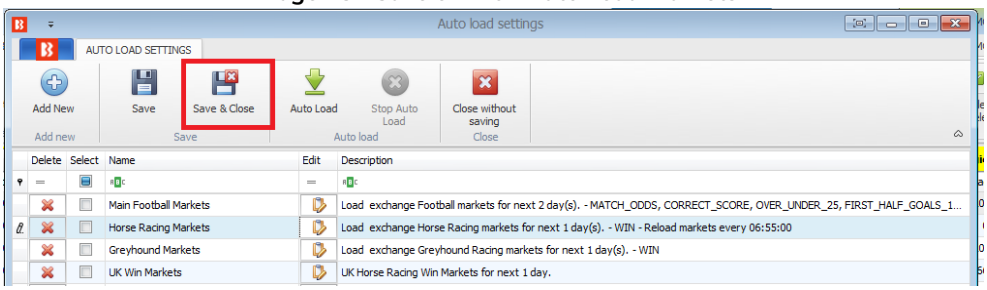


Image 182 Save & Exit - Auto Load markets

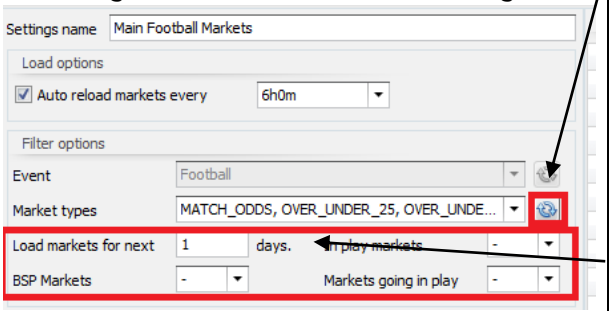


Make sure to **Save & Close** again.

Not all strategies need markets auto loading, only those that find their own selections.

Imported tips will automatically load their required markets.

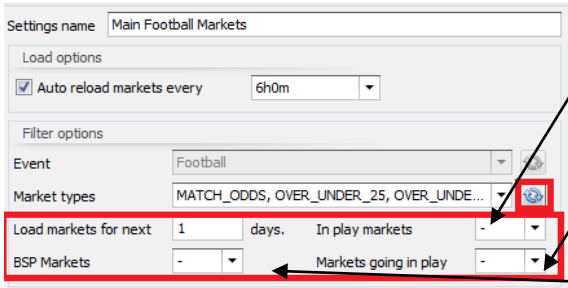
Image 183 Advanced Auto Load Settings



The **refresh** button will populate the list box on the left of it by using the currently set criteria in this form. If you set to load markets for the next 1 day and click refresh next to the market types list box, then the market types list box will ONLY list market types that are available within the next 1 day and satisfy all other criteria that you have set in this form.

The **load markets for next X days** default setting is 1 (to load markets for the next 24 hours), but if you want to load markets for more than one day then change this to a higher value. If you do not see any market types, competitions, venues or countries available in the list boxes after you have clicked "refresh" button for them, then change this to a higher value, as it is possible that there are not any events within next X days for the set criteria.

Image 184 Advanced Auto Load Settings

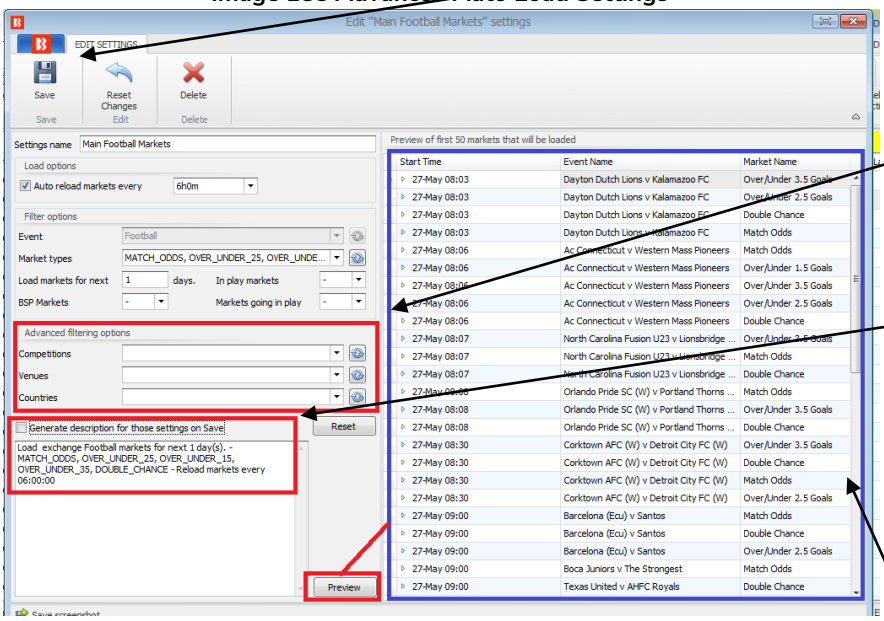


The **in play markets** option would load only markets in play NOW. In most cases you should NOT use this setting as it will ONLY allow loading of markets that are currently in play. It will prevent loading of markets that will go in play later.

The **markets going in play** option will load markets that will be available for betting in play, but are not currently in play

The **BSP markets** option will allow loading of Betfair Start Price markets only

Image 185 Advanced Auto Load Settings



At the end make sure you click **Save** button at this form and in the previous form. Otherwise your settings might not be saved and used if you have made changes.

Competitions, venues and countries filters allow you to filter loaded markets in more detail and load only markets that satisfy those extra rules. Make sure that you use the "refresh" button to populate those list boxes.

For each set of settings you can set your own description or simply let bot **generate description** by using your set settings.

The **Preview** button will load markets using your auto load settings in the right hand grid. This way you can check which markets will be loaded by using your settings without adding them to the MARKETS grid view yet.

3.3.4 Auto-loading of Markets - Imported Tips

The markets for imported tips will be automatically loaded if they have a Betfair market ID. In those cases, there is no need to manually load markets for them or to add any extra auto load settings.

For auto-loading of imported tip markets to work, the tips must have a column with the Betfair market ID. If this data is unavailable, then the bot will not be able to automatically load the required market and you will need to manually load it into the MARKETS grid view if you wish your strategy that is set to bet on imported tips to be able to bet on that tip.

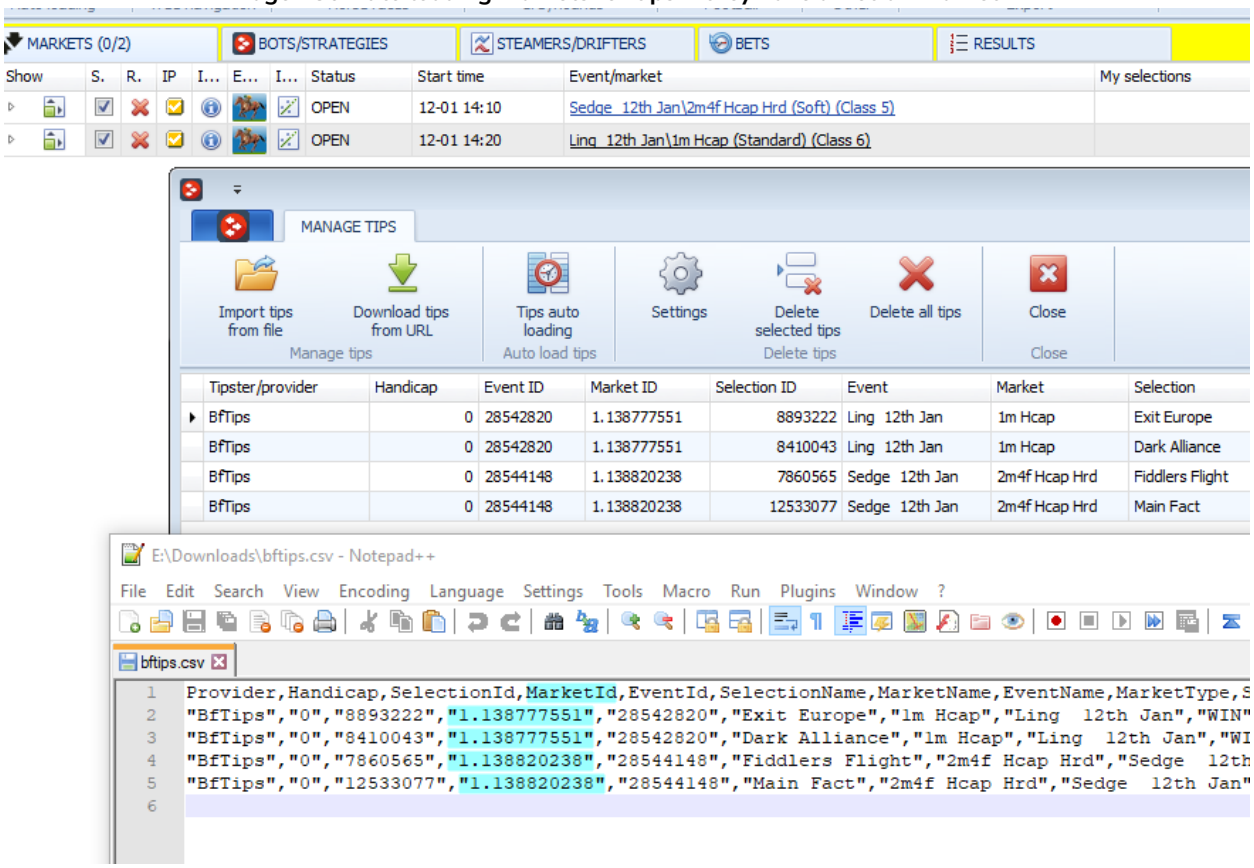
If you are importing tips from a file that was created by Bf Bot Manager when exporting selections as tips, then markets will be loaded automatically, as such a file will contain Betfair market IDs.

Also, if you are importing tips that you received from some other user or tipping service that created their tips file by using the Bf Bot Manager V3, then the markets will be loaded automatically, too, as such a file will contain Betfair market IDs.

Imported tips from the TippingSports web site will also allow the bot to load markets automatically.

Here is an example of a tips file that was created by one Bf Bot Manager V3 and imported into another Bf Bot Manager V3 by using the "MANAGE TIPS" form. You can see that the tip file has 4 selections on 2 markets. Only two markets were loaded by the software, and those are the markets whose market IDs were imported with the tips data.

Image 186 Auto loading markets for tips if they have a Betfair Market ID



3.4 Monitoring markets

For loaded markets, prices will be downloaded according to the settings in the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings form. When markets are first loaded, the prices might not be displayed yet on the Markets screen, but when the event start time comes closer and comes within the monitoring time set by your Monitoring settings, then the bot will start downloading prices.

Loading of markets is the first part in automating your strategy. Once you have loaded the markets on which you want to bet, then you should also check the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings and make sure that markets will be monitored at the times when your strategy is set to place bets. Always test new strategies in simulation mode.

The bot tries to execute strategies and place bets when the market prices are downloaded. If market prices are not being downloaded then your strategies will not execute or try to place bets. Market prices are downloaded according to the Monitoring settings. By default, the bot is set to start monitoring markets 30 minutes before the event start time and to keep monitoring markets until they are closed. In most cases you will not need to change those settings, but if you decide to place bets early or need to monitor a large number of markets at the same time then you will need to make some changes to optimize those settings to your needs.

Image 187 Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings

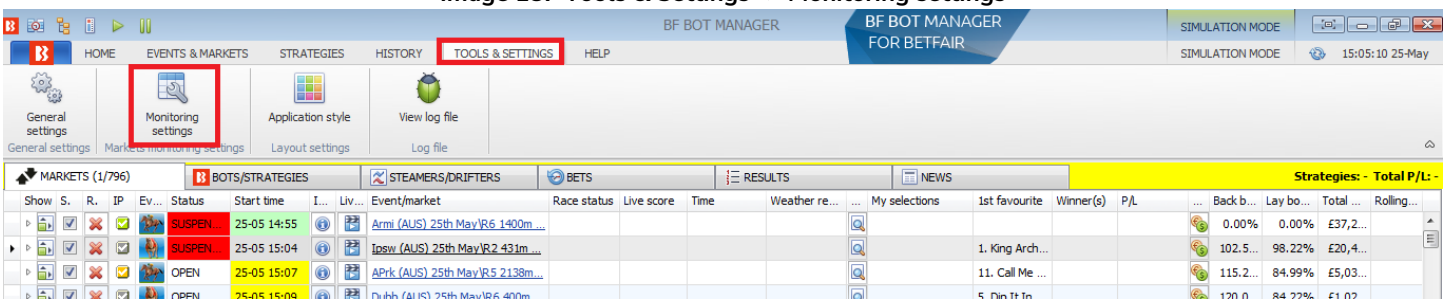
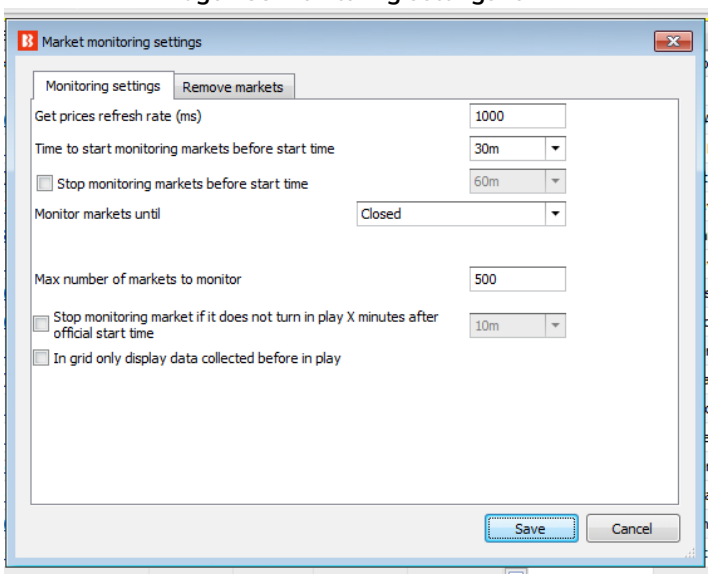


Image 188 Monitoring settings form



The default monitoring time is set at 30 minutes before event start. Prices will start being downloaded from this point. No bet activity can take place without the price data. By default market prices will be downloaded and monitored until the markets is closed. If you want to get price information from before the default 30m, you need to change this setting. The minimum time it can be set is 2 minutes before event start to ensure that market prices before in play get downloaded at least once.

The first option in the form is the **refresh rate** for getting market prices. The default value is 1,000ms (1 second) and it can be set low as 300ms. This means that every 1 second, the bot makes one request to get prices for 5 different markets. Then next second it gets prices for the next 5 markets loaded in the markets screen that are being monitored, and so on. With a refresh rate of 1 second, the bot will be able to get prices for 300 markets each minute (60s x 5 = 300).

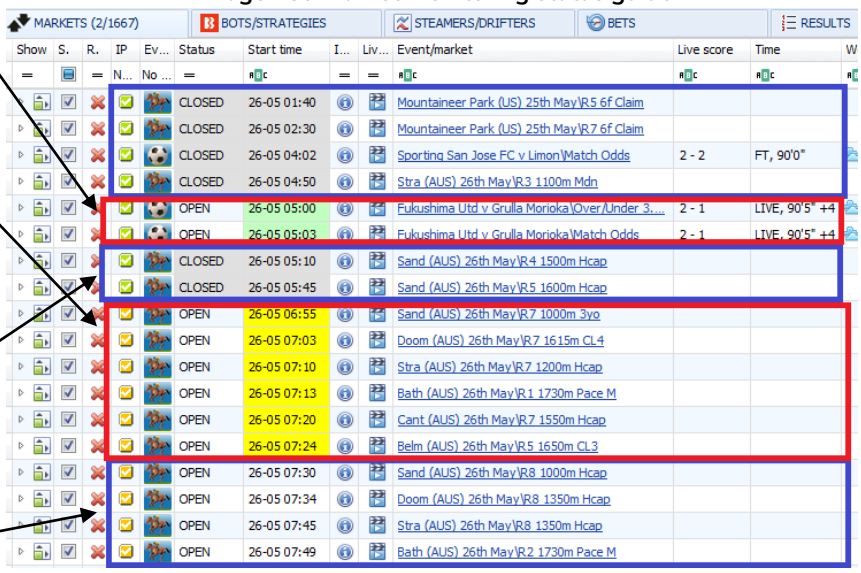
Start times with a GREEN background are in-play and currently being monitored.

Start times with a YELLOW background have not started yet but are currently being monitored because their start time is within the time set by the monitor markets form. (default 30m)

Start times with a GRAY background are closed and are no longer being monitored.

Start times with no background shading have not started yet and are not being monitored yet because their start times are outside the time set by the monitor markets form.

Image 189 Market monitoring status guide



There are currently 8 markets being monitored in this image.

In this example Image 186, there are 8 markets being monitored.
With a refresh rate setting of 1,000ms, that means that every second it gets the prices for 5 markets. So it will take at least 2 seconds to be able to completely refresh the prices for all 8 markets. And it will be able to refresh the prices for these markets 37 times in a minute (300 price checks per minute / 8 markets = 37.5 checks for each market per minute)

If you were monitoring all football markets then this might not be fast enough, especially during the weekends when there are many matches that start at same or similar time. If the software was set to monitor 100 matches kicking off at 3pm, and is already monitoring 100 matches that kicked off at 2pm and 2:30pm, and also it was monitoring the Match odds, Over/under 0.5, 1.5, 2.5, 3.5, 4.5 goals markets, Draw no bet, Correct score, Both teams to score and Half time result. That is 10 markets for each match, making 2,000 markets. A setting of 1,000ms would allow 300 price checks per minute, so it would take over 6 minutes to refresh the prices for all of the 2,000 markets. (2,000 markets / 300 price checks per minute = 6.6 minutes to refresh all market prices) Depending on the type of strategy you are using, that might not be fast enough.

In that case, you can set a faster refresh rate. A refresh rate of 500ms, for example, would allow the bot to get twice as many prices per second (600 market prices per minute). Below is a table that shows how many market prices a bot can get per second/per minute for different refresh rates.

Image 190

Refresh rate interval	Market prices per second	Market prices per minute
300ms	15-20	1,000
500ms	10	600
1,000ms	5	300
2,000ms	0-5	150
5,000ms	0-5	60

Higher refresh rates will allow the bot to get prices faster, but it will also require a faster processor to consume all those prices and execute your strategies. **Each downloaded price must be checked against each strategy** so that the strategy can decide if it should take any action for those downloaded prices or not. This requires a very fast processor (CPU). If you are running a large number of strategies at the same time, you should check the minimum configurations for hardware that we recommend. If your CPU is not fast enough then the bot might not work properly, become unreliable or crash. It is always best to test your settings in simulation mode before using real money and see how the bot performs over the course of a few days.

Minimum configuration to run the bot

The Bf Bot Manager V3 software will work on almost all newer computers, that is, computers produced since 2014. So generally you should be fine, but if you are running a large number of strategies, placing many bets at the same time or using some of the extra features provided by a third party, then you should consider using a VPS or a dedicated server to run the bot.

Minimum configuration to run V3 version	Recommended configuration to run V3 version
Intel i3, i5 or i7 CPU 2GB of RAM 1280px screen resolution width 20Mbps cable internet connection or faster 200MB of HD space to install the bot and use it	Intel i5 or i7 CPU, the faster the better 4GB of RAM 1920px screen resolution width 50Mbps cable internet connection 400MB of HD space to install and run the bot. If possible use a SSD, as your computer will work faster and it will not slow down the bot in case you use it for something else and not just to run the bot

If you plan on running 50 or more strategies with a single bot, then you should consider splitting those strategies and running another bot instance on a second computer. That will make the bot faster and more reliable.

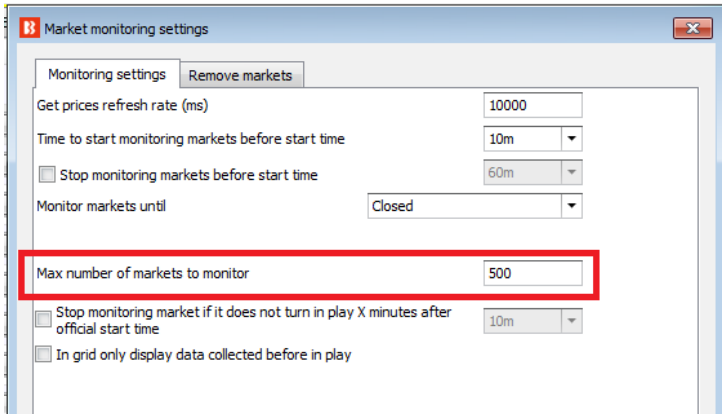
Also, if you are running other programs connected with your Betfair account then you should check those other program refresh rates, too. Make sure that your account is not making more than 5 requests per second in total to get market prices, as that is the Betfair API limit. If you exceed Betfair API limits then you might get blocked by the API or charged additional fees for API use. The 5 requests do not mean 5 prices. Each of the 5 requests can get up to 5 prices, which means up to 25 prices per second, but Betfair has a slightly complex point system of price weighting so that some prices take more points than others and there is a 200 point limit for each of the 5 requests allowed per second. **The Bf Bot Manager manages this point system for you so that you do not go over the 200 point limit**. But if you are using other methods to request data from Betfair that the Bot does not know about, it could go over the limit. It is in those cases that you need to make sure you are not going over the Betfair API limit. You can read more on the details of this in the Technical Section on Monitoring Markets.

Other options at the monitoring settings form can help you optimize the time to start monitoring markets. If your strategies are placing bets only a few minutes before the start time, then set the time to start monitoring markets to 2 minutes before that time. There is no need to monitor markets a few hours before the start time when your strategies will only attempt to place bets just before start time.

The same goes with the time to stop monitoring markets. If you do not have any strategies that will attempt to place bets during in-play, then there is no need to monitor markets until they are Closed, so you can set this to monitor markets until Start Time or In Running. **Even if you stop monitoring markets before they are closed, the bot will still get other non-price information such as the event results to calculate profit and loss.** Live score and in-play statistics information will also still be downloaded since this is not coming from Betfair, but from another 3rd party provider that does not affect the Betfair API requests limit.

The number of markets that the bot is allowed to monitor is by default set to 500. This is more than enough to cover all horse and greyhound racing markets. It will also be enough if you plan on loading a single football market type e.g. Match odds. In the case that you will load more than one market type per football match then you should increase this to a higher value e.g. 1,000 or 2,000.

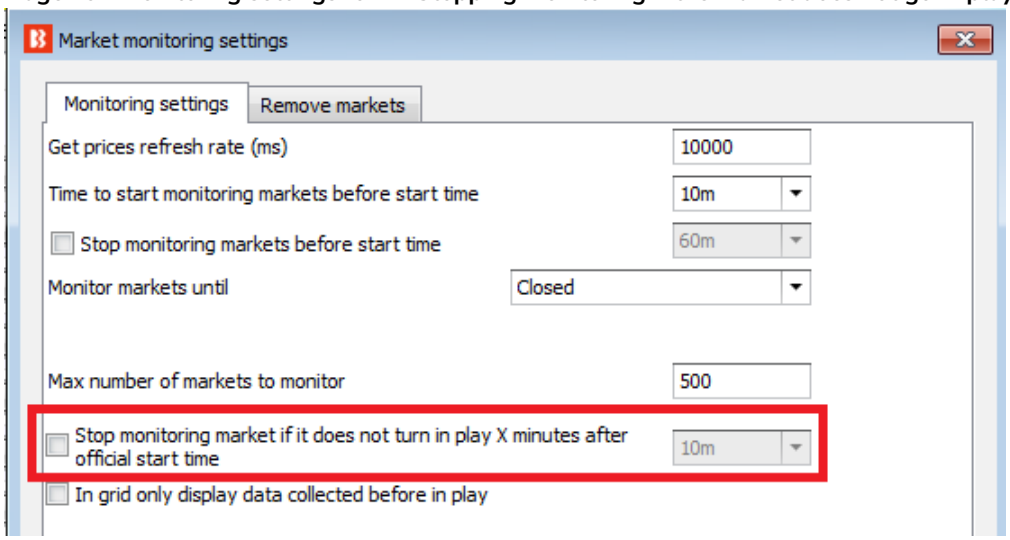
Image 191 Monitoring settings form –Number of markets to monitor



The fewer markets that the bot monitors at the same time allows a higher refresh rate of prices for those markets. If you have only 5 markets that start at the same time, and they are monitored with refresh rate of 500ms, then that means that each market's prices will be downloaded 120 times each minute! The bot will be able to get prices for each market twice each second. So if your strategy relies on speed in the market, then reducing the number of actively monitored markets (green and yellow background in the markets screen) can improve the bot speed.

There is also the option to stop monitoring markets that do not turn in play, this allows the bot to move on to other markets in cases when there is a delay on some events.

Image 192 Monitoring settings form –Stopping monitoring if the market does not go in play



If you are only betting before in play then you might want to display only prices from before in play at the main MARKETS grid view. This can be useful if you wish to check favorite prices at a later time by referring to the main MARKETS grid view.

Other settings include the removing of markets from the MARKETS grid view so that they are no longer monitored or maintained. Removing market from the MARKETS grid view will free memory and improve bot speed, but it will also prevent the bot from betting on that market. **By default the bot is set to remove closed markets without any bets, deselected markets and all markets 24 hours after their start time.**

You should be careful with removing markets as this can have an effect on some staking plans. When a market is removed, then all its details are removed from the bot and a staking sequence can be effected in some cases. So it is best to keep markets for 24 hours or longer in the MARKETS grid view if you are using staking plans or loss recovery.

3.5 Strategy Rules/Conditions

Each strategy is made up of conditions and rules that all need to be satisfied for bets to be placed. Basic strategies can have just one or two conditions, while some other more complex strategies can have dozens of rules. **The software will check all strategies and all conditions every time market prices are downloaded from the Betfair server.** When all conditions for one strategy are satisfied, then bets will be placed by that strategy. The software will only check a market price against the strategy's conditions until it finds a condition that prevents the strategy betting on that market or all the selections in that market. Then it will move onto the next market with downloaded prices. If you have loaded a lot of markets and are running a lot of strategies, the resources of your PC become the only limiting factor. The Bf Bot Manager has no limit on how many markets you can monitor or strategies you can run.

Strategy conditions and rules are divided into the following groups:

• **Market conditions** are applied to the whole market, and if they are not satisfied then betting on the market is skipped. For example, the **time to bet** market condition will prevent a strategy from

placing bets on the market if the time to place bets is not correct.

• **Selection conditions** are applied to each selection individually. Selections in that market that do not satisfy selection conditions will be excluded from possible betting, while other selections in the market remain possible. For example, the **Back and Lay Price Ratio** rule will exclude selections from possible betting that do not meet the price ratio.

• **Price settings** are applied to selections that satisfied market and selection conditions. For example, the **price rules** will set the price at which bet should be placed, whether it be at the available price or modified higher or lower.

• **Staking plans** calculate the stake size for each selection that satisfied market conditions, selection conditions and price settings. Staking plans expect that the price and bet type have already been determined by the previous selection conditions and price settings and then those are used to determine the stake for each selection. Once the stake is decided for each selection, then bets can be placed.

• **After bet rules** are used for monitoring and managing bets placed by the strategy. Once a bet has been placed by a strategy, we can use after bet rules to place second trade out bets or hedge bets during in-play. For example, with a Lay the Draw strategy, we want the strategy to hedge the position if a goal is scored. We can do that with after bet rules.

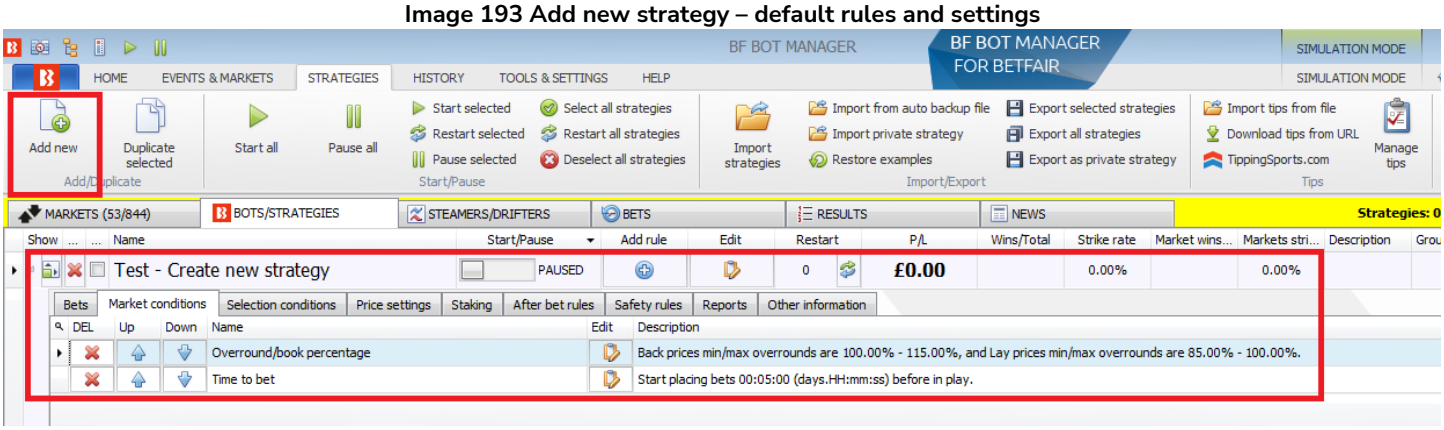
• **Safety rules** are used in various ways to limit strategy activity. For example, **Max profit and loss** prevents a strategy from make new bets once a limit is exceeded.

3.5.1 Create basic strategy

Creating a strategy in the Bf Bot Manager V3 takes only a few minutes, but fine tuning it to work exactly as you want it to can take some time. We have a video tutorial on our website in the Help > Video Tutorials section that explains step by step how to create a strategy. If you are new to V3 and this is your first time creating a strategy, then please make sure you watch that video, too.

When you click the "Add new" button, a new form will open where you can enter a strategy name and description. At this time you should not use or change any other settings in this "Edit" form. Next, click the “Save” button and the strategy will get added to the list of available strategies. Default rules will be added automatically to your strategy when you create it. **In most cases you should never remove those rules as they ensure that strategy places bets only when prices are valid.**

Image 193 Add new strategy – default rules and settings



Your strategy can only place bets if it has at least the following information:

- **Market** on which it will bet (Market conditions)
- **Selection/runner** to bet on (Selection conditions)
- **Bet type** (Back or Lay) (Selection conditions)
- **Price** at which the bet will be placed (Price settings)
- **Stake** (Staking)

When creating a strategy, you must add conditions and rules that will give this information to your strategy. The strategy will apply those conditions to all downloaded market prices. The strategy will filter the possible selections down to get only few selections for which the bet type, price and stake is then set. Only on such runners that have all the details set, and satisfy all your conditions and rules, can bets be placed.

It is important to understand that all rules execute from top to bottom in each rules tab. You can use the up/down arrows to change the order of rules. As stated previously, each time prices are downloaded, the strategy will check the rules from those tabs in the following order:

The bot strategy logic checks conditions in this order before placing bets:

1. **Safety rules** – Checks the rules that will prevent a strategy from placing further bets if one of the safety rules is not satisfied e.g. max profit/loss exceeded, auto restart required etc.
2. **After bet rules** – Checks the rules to execute after an initial bet is placed and they are usually used to hedge or trade out your position. It checks if there is no rule preventing new bets due to a previous bet.
3. **Market conditions** - Filters markets to bet on
4. **Selection conditions** - Filters selections to bet on
5. **Price settings** - Sets the price at which bets should be placed
6. **Staking** - Sets the stake and places the initial bet. (If the strategy has placed a bet, then the after bet rules will be checked.)

Some rules can appear in any order in the strategy tab, but some rules must be in the correct order to function properly. Those will have notes on them that state that information. For example, the event filter and the market filter can come in any order on the market conditions screen. But using percentage staking and the odds staking ladder together require the percentage staking rule to come AFTER the odds staking ladder in order for the rule to work correctly. This is stated in that rule's settings form. So it is important to understand and read the notes on each form.

Conditions are executed from top to bottom. To move conditions up or down you can use the up/down arrows on the left side of a condition.

Some rules can only appear once in a strategy while others can appear multiple times with different settings. For example, the **Level/initial stake** rule can only appear once in a strategy because there can only be one initial stake like in the example strategy "Bet on all imported tips". But the **Bet type by runner position** can be used multiple times in one strategy if we want to place bets on multiple runners in a market like in the example strategy "Greyhounds – Dutching 2nd, 3rd and 4th favorite".

When reviewing strategy rules, it is good to review them in the logical order that the software itself will

check the rules and conditions.

In the **market conditions** tab you need to add rules that will tell the strategy **which markets** to try to bet on**.** There are many market conditions that you can add here, but the most common ones are rules that filter markets by event type (horses/greyhounds/football etc.), market type (win, place, match odds etc.), country (UK, Ireland, Germany etc.), venue (used by racing events mostly e.g. Lingfield, Newcastle, Southwell etc.) and competition (used by football events e.g. English Premier league, Bundesliga, Primera etc.). Those **rules will prevent or allow betting on a market as a whole, so if one of the rules is not satisfied then that market will be skipped.**

Selection conditions allow you to **filter selections/runners individually** and to **set the bet type** (Back or Lay). This is very important, if you set the **bet type** rule or **the min/max price range** rule for the wrong selection, then the strategy will place bets on the wrong selections and you could lose your money. The bet type needs to be set ONLY for the selection on which you want your strategy to bet on. For example, if you wish to bet on the 1st favorite then use the "Bet type by favorite" rule and do not use any other bet type rule in this strategy. A common mistake is adding more than one bet type rule, so make sure you do not add more than one bet type rule where needed.

Another important rule is the "**Min/max selection price**" which checks the selection price for a min/max price range that you set. Make sure you set this to check the same selection for the price range for which you have set the bet type rule. If you are setting the bet type for 1st favorite then set the price range rule to check the price of the 1st favorite for the price range.

By default, the strategy is set to bet at the currently available price (Back price for Back bets, Lay price for Lay bets) and this is set in the Price settings tab by the **Price rules**. This rule sets the price at which bets will be placed and it is best that you do not change it unless you know exactly why you are doing so. If you change this rule then it might set it to bet at a different price than the price that you checked for in the price range, which could be very dangerous. For example, if you check “Back price for price range” but set to bet at “Lay price”, then the strategy could be placing bets outside your price range and at very high or very low prices.

The last setting that will finally allow your strategy to place bets is the one that will set bet size. This is done at the Staking tab. Here you can use a level stake or use a more complex staking plan, dutching rule or loss recovery plan. It is always best to use the "**Level/initial stake**" to test your strategy settings and make sure it is picking the right selections to bet on. Then, once that part is working, you can add or change to other staking rules.

By following those above instructions you will be able to create your first strategy. After that, all you need to do is load the markets and test this strategy in simulation mode.

Once you understand those basic principles on how a strategy works, you will be able to add other rules and make it more complex until it works exactly like your desired betting strategy.

3.5.2 Setting bet type for selections to bet on

There are several ways to set your strategy to bet only on the selections that you want. Here are the most popular ones:

- Pick selections by their favourite position
- Pick selections by their runner/index position in the list of all market selections
- Use selections that you manually selected by using the markets and selections grid view
- Bet on all selections that satisfy your filtering rules
- Bet on imported tips/selections

Finding individual selections on which bets will be placed is done by using the Selection conditions. In the Selection conditions tab, you need to set a bet type (Back or Lay) only for selections on which you want your strategy to bet. It is good to start with the Bet type and then use other rules to filter selections by price range, form, jockey, trainer, price movement, available amounts for betting and so on.

In almost all cases you should always add the following 3 Selection conditions to your strategy:

1. **Back/Lay Ratio** - to ensure the price is valid for the selection at which bets will be placed
2. **Min/max selection price** - to check "Any runner" or specific “favorite/runner by position” is in your price range. You should always set this to check the same price that will be set for your bet by "Price settings->Price rules" rule
3. **One bet type condition** that will set a Back or Lay bet type

If you add those three rules properly, then your strategy will bet only when the price is valid and in your min/max price range. You can easily test this in simulation mode and once you are confident that it is working like you want it to, then you can add other selection conditions that will filter your selections down further.

It is important to understand the various bet types available, since they are the key rule that executes the bets.

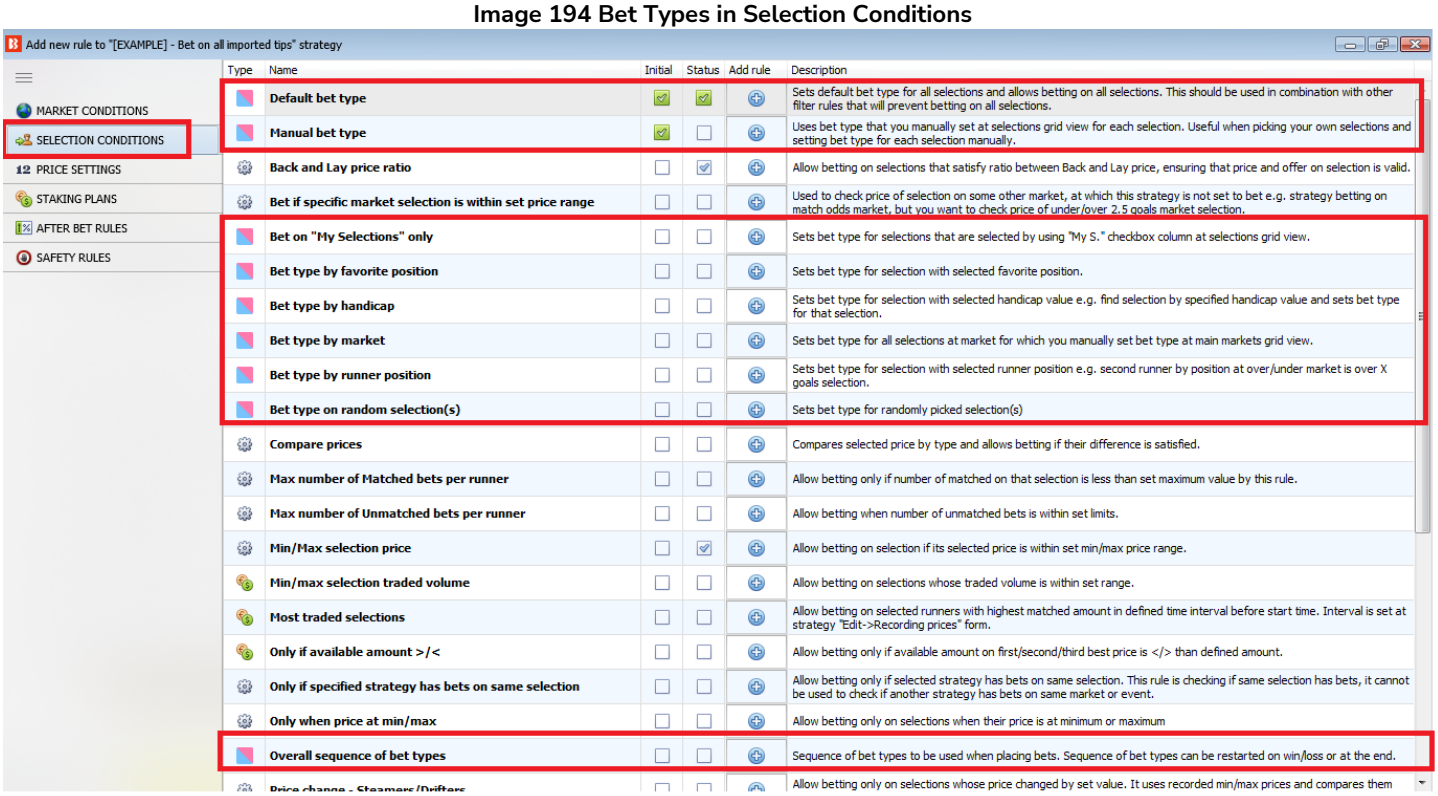
3.6 Bet types

The bet type is a very important rule to understand. **This is the rule that tells the strategy to place bets.** Some bet types can be used only once in a strategy. Some bet types can be used multiple times in one strategy. **Without this rule, it will not place bets.** In most cases, only one bet type rule is necessary for each strategy.

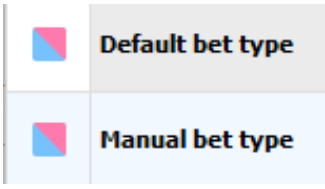
There are ten bet types available in total. Nine of them are found in the Selections Conditions tab and one of them is found in the Staking Plans tab.

The most commonly used bet types are:
1. Bet type by favorite position
2. Bet type by runner position
3. Default bet type
4. Bet on "My Selections" only
Oher bet types available are:
5. Manual bet type
6. Bet type by handicap
7. Bet type by market
8. Bet type on random selection(s)
9. Overall sequence of bet types
10. Bet on imported selections/tips (The last bet type "Bet on imported selections/tips" is the only bet type rule not found in the Selection Conditions tab. It is found in the Staking Plans tab and used together with the Default bet type to enable betting on imported tips.)

Image 194 Bet Types in Selection Conditions



You will notice that the bet type rules have a blue and pink icon on the "add new rule" form, like this.



The Default bet type is meant to be used in conjunction with other conditions that limit betting. One of the common errors that can be made is using the "Default bet type" rule combined with other bet types rules when it is not necessary.

For example. the **"Default bet type" and the "Bet type by favorite position" rules**
If both of these rules are selected, it will allow betting on all selections. This is because the default bet type rule will set the bet type on all selections.

To bet only on the favorite by position we need to only use the "Bet type by favorite position" rule.
That means

Default bet type	=	Bet on **all** selections unless others rules are used
Default bet type + Bet type by favorite position	=	Bet on **all** selections unless others rules are used.
Bet type by favorite positon	=	Bet **only** on selections matching this condition

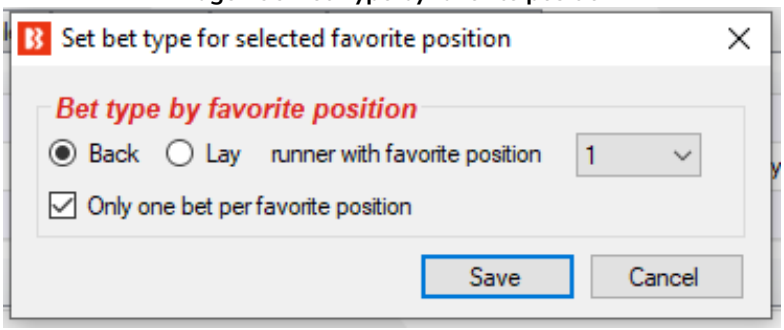
When we use the Default Bet type, we must also use Selection Conditions that specify which selections to allow betting on, otherwise then strategy could end up betting on all selections.

Let's take a closer look at each bet type.

3.6.1 Bet type by favorite position

The "Bet type by favorite position" will place bets on selections based on their odds. Add "Bet type by favorite position" to make it bet on favorites.

Image 195 Bet Type by favorite position



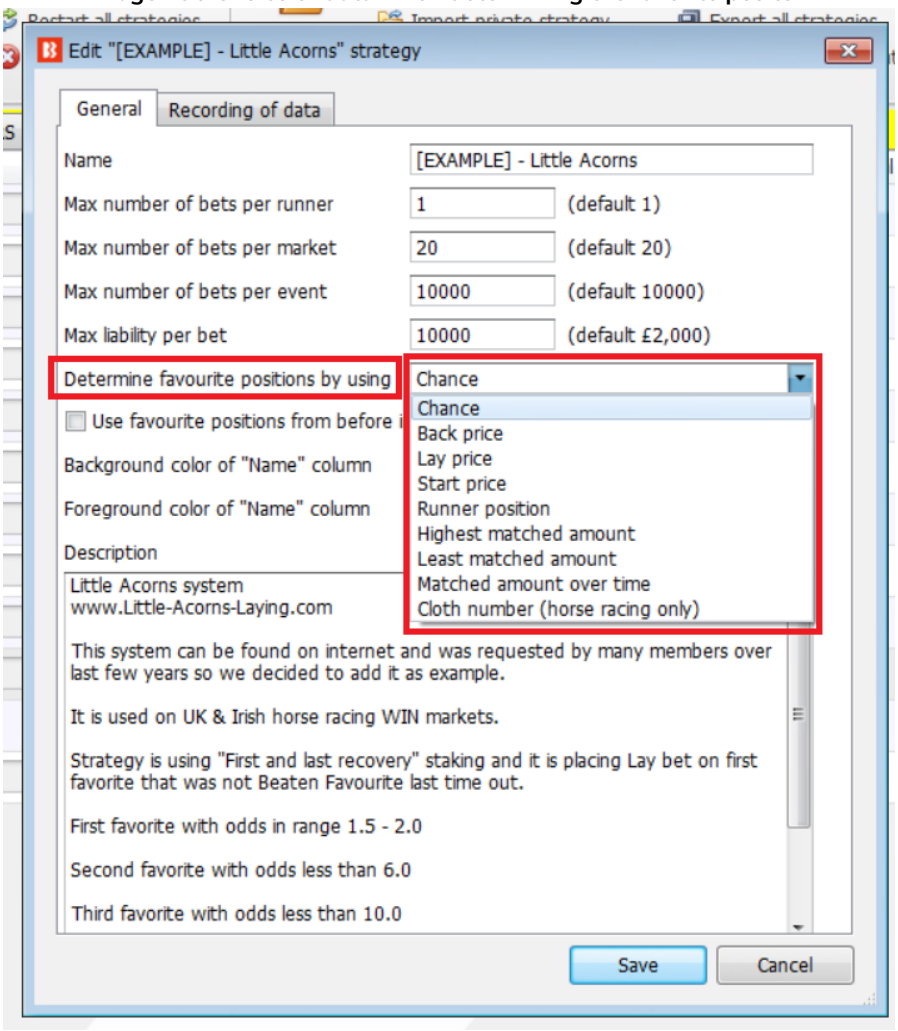
"Back runner with favorite position 1" tells the bot to bet on the runner that has the lowest odds in that market, the favorite. "Back runner with favorite position 2" would tell the bot to bet on the runner with the 2nd lowest odds in that market, the 2nd favorite. You can also select "Lay runner with favorite position 1" which would tell the bot to place a lay bet on the favorite. Keep the "Only one bet per favorite position" box checked to ensure only 1 bet is placed on a runner. Only uncheck this box if you are making a more advanced strategy that requires multiple bets on the same runner. This also stops the bot from placing extra bets on the same market if the odds change and a "new" 1st favorite emerges.

You should not use any other bet type rule when you want to bet on a specific favourite by position. Adding other bet type rules would make your strategy bet on other selections as well. In most cases it is always best that you create a separate strategy for each selection that you want to bet on.

One exception is if you want to place dutching bets (for target profit or set exposure) on two or more favourites by position then you need to add a "Bet type by favorite position" rule for each favourite by position and set a dutching staking plan at Staking tab.

The way the favorite is determined can be changed in the main strategy edit form.

Image 196 Choice of data when determining the favorite positon



Favourite positions are determined by using the market data that the bot receives from the exchange. Favourite positions can be decided by using one of following parameters:

Chance value (default) - This is calculated by using the currently available runner's Back and Lay price. We recommend that you do not change this value unless you are certain that you fully understand how strategies and rules work or unless we instruct you to do so in order to make the strategy work as you want it to
Back price – The runner with the smallest Back price is first favourite and runner with highest Back price is outsider
Lay price – The runner with the smallest Lay price is first favourite and runner with highest Lay price is the outsider
Start price (BSP) – The runner with the smallest Betfair Start Price is first favourite and the runner with the highest Betfair Start Price is the outsider
Runner position – The first favourite will be the first runner in the list of selections received from the exchange. For example, the first runner in the match odds market is the home team, the second is the away team and the third is the draw. For greyhound markets, the first runner is trap 1, the second one is trap 2 etc. For Under/over markets, the first runner is Under X goals selection and the second runner is Over X goals selection.
Highest matched amount – The first favourite is the runner with the highest amount matched and the outsider is the selection with the lowest amount matched
Lowest matched amount – The first favourite is the runner with the lowest amount matched and the outsider is the selection with the highest amount matched
Matched amount over time – The first favorite is the runner with the highest amount matched over time and the outsider is the selection with the lowest amount matched over time. The Matched amount over time uses the "Recording of data" settings to compare matched amounts over that time period. If the software is set to record prices from 5 minutes before the start time and to stop recording prices at 1 minute before the start time, then the strategy will record the minimum and maximum traded volume for each runner. This allows it to calculate the difference between the min and max recorded value for traded amounts and then to sort the runners by that difference. The selection with the highest difference is the one that was traded the most during that time interval that the "Recording of data" is set to. It is like ranking the selections based on which has had the most betting activity on them in the time period selected for monitoring.
For example, if the 4th favorite by odds had £4,000 traded on it in the 5 minutes before the start, but the 1st favorite by odds only had £100 traded on it, then the 4th favorite by odds would be the 1st favorite by Matched amount over time.
Cloth number (Horse Racing only) – The first favourite is the runner with cloth number 1 and the outsider is the runner with the highest cloth number.

The way favourite positions are determined will have an effect on all the conditions in your strategy that use favourite positions. It is recommended to leave the "Determine favorite positions by using" setting on the "chance" option as this is the most commonly used setting. Only change this if you know exactly what you are doing and will test it thoroughly in simulation mode.

When betting during in play you might want to **use the favourite positions from before in play** instead of determining those by using in play prices. In that case, you would tick option "Use favourite positions from before in play". If you are not betting during in play and placing bets only before in play then make sure you do not tick this option, so that strategy can determine favourite positions at the time of bet before in play.

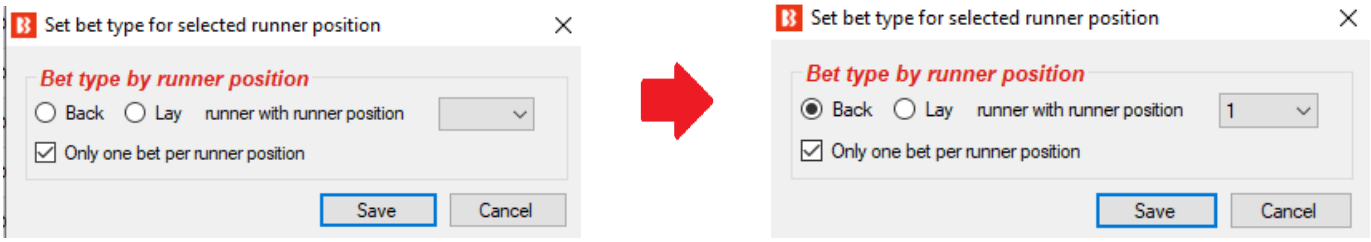
3.6.2 Bet type by runner position

This tells the bot to place bets on selections based on their positon on the Betfair market screen.

Image 197 Selection conditions - Bet type by runner position

If we select the “Back” option and choose “1” from the dropdown menu.

Image 198 Bet type by runner position settings



This means the bot will only bet on the runner with position 1 on the markets screen.
Some Betfair markets always have the same selection in the same runner position, for example Match Odds for tennis, football, rugby, etc, Over/Under goals markets, Correct Score markets and so on. Some markets runners depend on the order Betfair added the runners, for example Horseracing, politics or special bets.

Football Match Odds Markets

Runner 1 is always the home team.
Runner 2 is always the away team.
Runner 3 is always the draw.

Image 199

Football Over/Under 2.5 Goals Market

Runner 1 is always the under option
Runner 2 is always the over option.

Image 200

Greyhound Win Markets

Runners 1-8 always equal the Trap numbers 1-8.

Image 201

Tennis Match Odds Markets

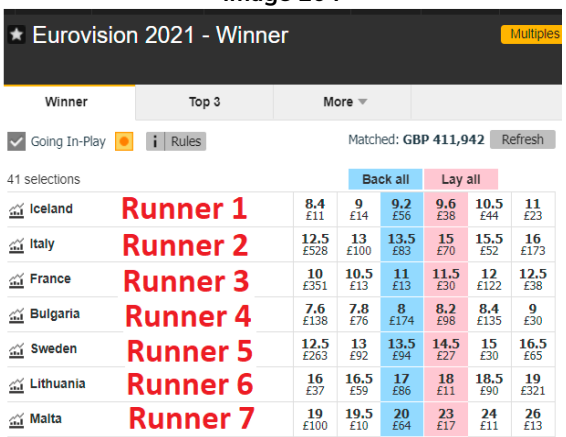
Runner 1 is always Player 1
Runner 2 is always Player 2

Image 202

Horse Racing	Special Markets
But for Horse Racing, the saddlecloth number and the horse stall do not always match the Runner number. The Runner number reflects the order of the horses on the Betfair market screen. The Betfair initial order is often in expected odds order from low to high, but these odds change over time so it is not always that order.	And of course, special markets are irregular by their nature, so the runners are in the order Betfair chooses. Again, the Betfair initial order is often in expected odds order from low to high, but these odds change over time so it is not always that order.

Image 203

Image 204



If you are not sure if your market has fixed runner positions or variable runner positions, try comparing several markets and look for if there is a pattern.

The selection condition "Bet type by RUNNER position" should always be used in combination with the market condition "Markets filter" that will allow strategy only to execute on the selected market types.

For example, if you set the markets filter to allow betting on match odds markets and use the bet type by runner position to set the bet type for 1st runner by position. This would allow the strategy to bet on home teams (runner by position 1) in the match odds markets. In this example, if you decided to select over/under 2.5 goals market at markets filter then strategy would bet on under 2.5 goals selection (runner by position 1). It is the combination of these two rules that identifies selection on which bets will be placed. You need to first use the markets filter to identify which market on which the strategy will bet and then you use the bet type by runner position to identify the selection on which the strategy will bet.

If you only set Runner by positon 1 and did not select any market filters, then the strategy would bet on every runner in 1st position in every loaded market i.e Home teams in Match Odds, the under bet in Over/under markets, 0-0 in the Correct Score markets, and so on. So the markets filter is an essential condition to be used with this bet type. If you are loading only markets of one market type to the MARKETS grid view, then in that case the markets filter might not be needed, but to be on the safe side it is always best that you add a markets filter to ALL of your strategies.

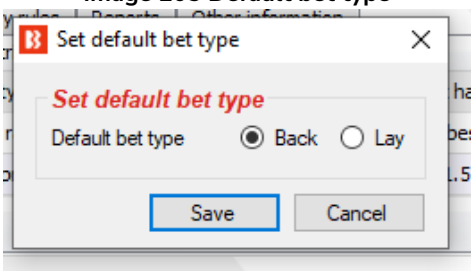
A key thing to remember here is that the difference between “Bet type by favorite position” and “Bet type by runner position” is that “Bet type by favorite position” is done by odds and “Bet type by runner position” is done by the market screen order. Also, make sure that if you set the bet type by using runner position that you also **check the min/max price for the same runner by position**. If you set the bet type by favourite position then you should also check the min/max price for the same favourite by position.

3.6.3 Default bet type

This is always used in combination with other selection filters when you want a strategy to place bets on selections that match your specific criteria.

For example, if you only want to bet on horses that have won on a ground before, or football teams that have scored in their last 3 home games, or greyhounds that have come first or second in their last races, and so on. **Another way to think of this bet type is as "Bet on any selections that satisfies my rules".** That means if you do not add any limiting selection filters, it becomes "Bet on everything".

Image 205 Default bet type



When using the "Default bet type" rule, it is important that you understand that this rule **will set the bet type to Back or Lay on ALL selections.** This will allow strategy to bet on **ALL** selections in the market. This means that **you must use other filtering rules** that will filter selections and prevent betting on selections if they do not satisfy your rules.

The example strategy "Example – Horses – Trade before in play" uses this default bet type rule together with the Drifters rule and Price rule to limit selections.

Even with filters, it is possible that all the runners satisfy all the rules and that bets get placed on all of them. Because of this it is important to be careful when using "Default bet type" rule and **to test your settings in simulation mode** before using real mode.

There are many situations where we do not know on which selection we want to bet on, but we do know that that selection must satisfy our specific rules. For example, if we want to bet on horses that are course or distance winners, that is, horses that have won at that racecourse or at that race distance. In such situations we would use the selection condition "Default bet type" rule in combination with other selection conditions that would filter horses by our rules so that only horses that satisfy all our rules are left for betting.

Here is an example, let's say that we want to bet on horses that:

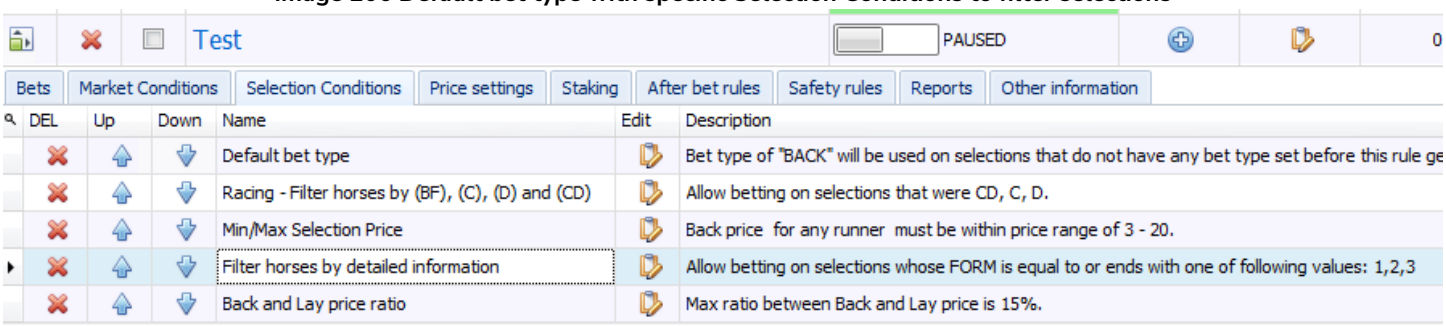
- are course or distance winners
- are in the price range of 3.0 - 20.0
- finished the last race in one of the first three positions

Obviously there can be more than one horse that satisfies these criteria, but there can also be no horses that satisfy all those rules. To bet on all horses that satisfy those rules we would use following selection conditions:

- **Default bet type** - to bet Back/Lay bet type for all horses
- **Racing - Filter horses by (BF), (C), (D), (CD)** – to set it to allow betting on (C), (D) and (CD) horses
- **Min/max selection price** – to set it to check "Any runner" Back/Lay price for the price range of 3.0 - 20.0
- **Filter horses by detailed information** – to set it to allow betting on horses whose FORM ends with "1, 2, 3", which means that horse finished in one of the first three places in the last race

Here is a screenshot of those rules.

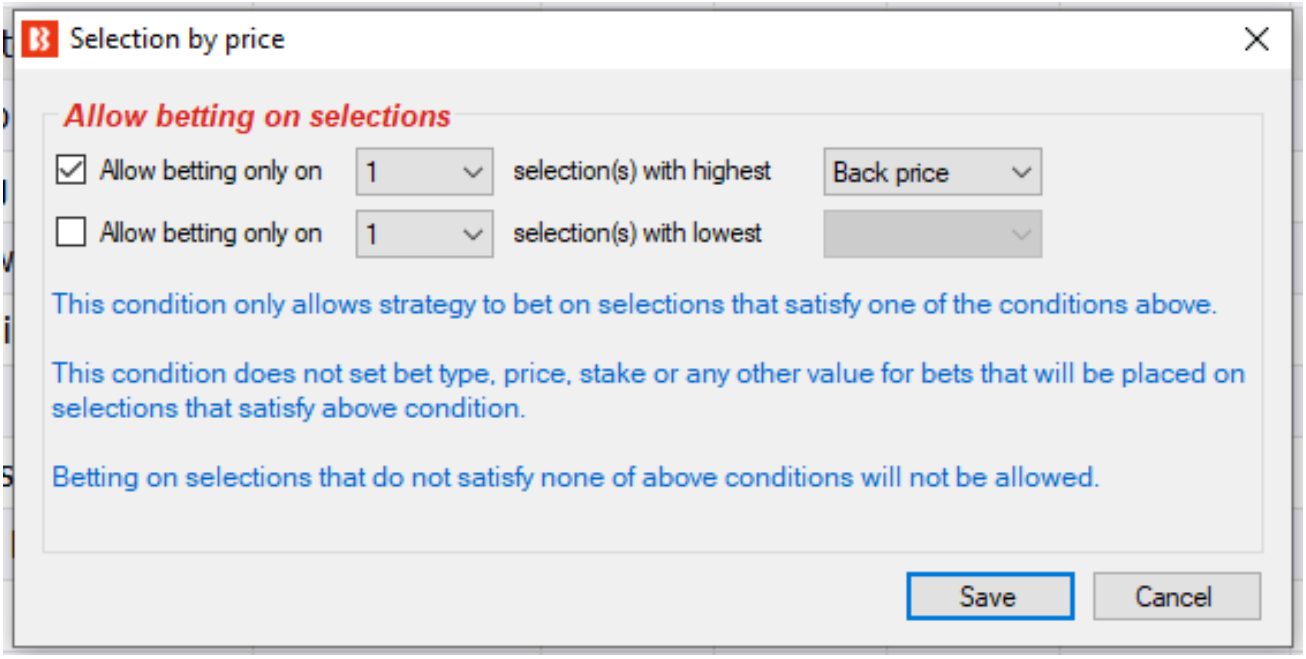
Image 206 Default bet type with specific Selection Conditions to filter selections



Those rules are not very strict and it is possible that all the runners satisfy all the rules and that bets get placed on all of them. Because of this, it is important to be very careful when using the "Default bet type" rule and to test your settings in simulation mode before using real mode.

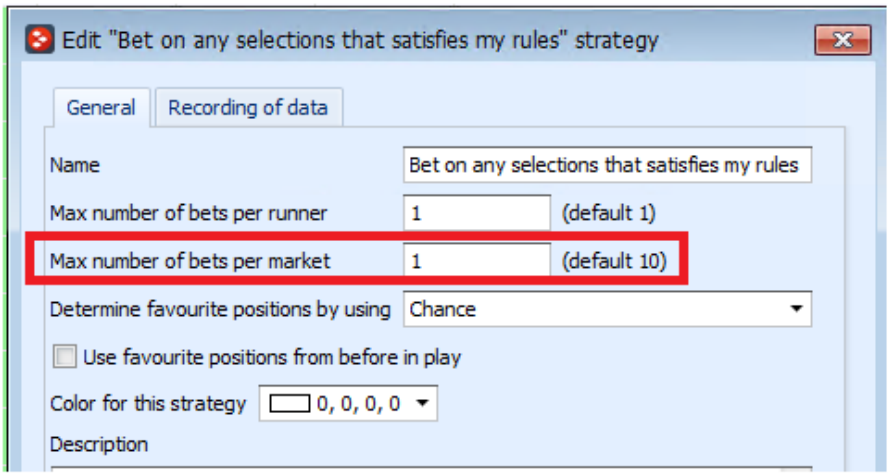
Also, if you only want to bet on the highest or lowest priced horse from the ones that satisfy your rules then you could add the rule "Selection by highest/lowest price" and move it to the last place so that it executes last when only horses that satisfy all the other rules are left for betting. Like in the screenshot below:

Image 207 Selection Condition - Selection by price



Now we know that the strategy will be able to place one bet at a time, and that is on the highest priced selection that satisfies our rules. But what will happen if prices change and our selection is no longer the highest priced selection? In that case, another bet would be placed on some other runner that newly satisfies all the rules. To prevent that, you would also need to edit the strategy details and set the maximum number of bets per market to 1. Here is screenshot of those settings.

Image 208 Strategy Edit Form – Max number of bets per market



Now, all that is left to do with the strategy is to add standard market conditions that will allow it to bet on horse racing WIN markets, set the time to bet, the stake and to try out the strategy in simulation mode.

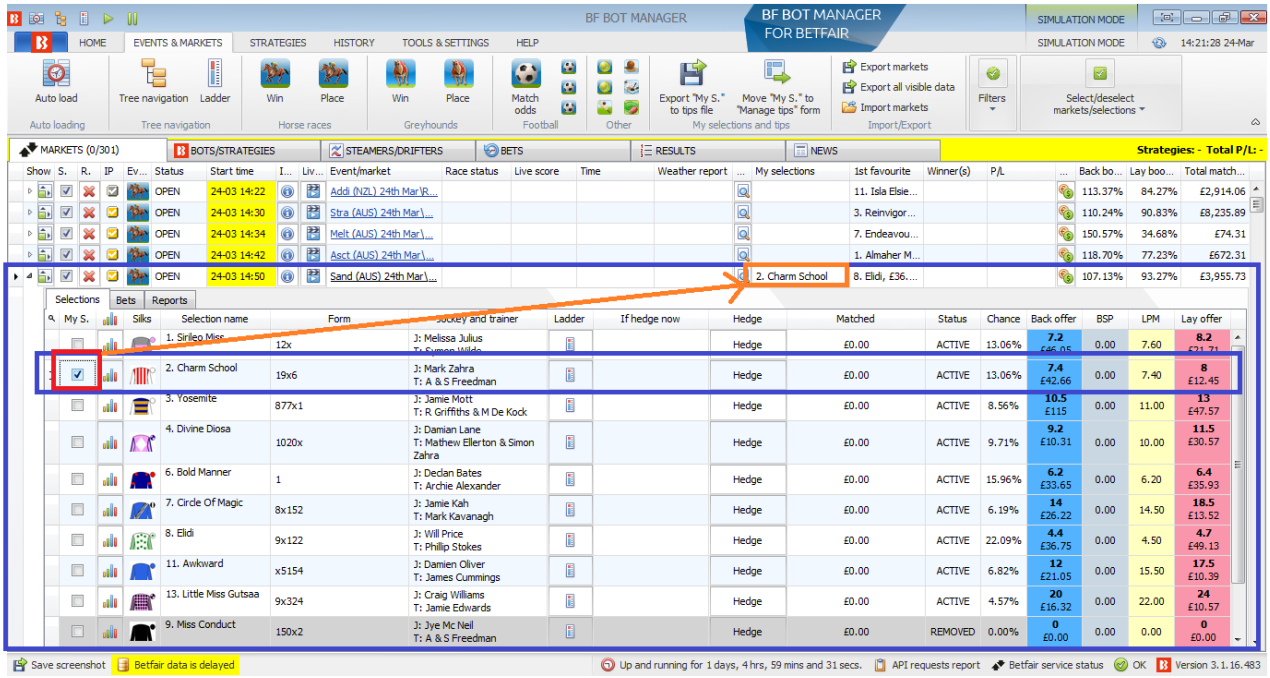
This example shows how initial settings can allow betting on all runners that satisfy the rules and then we can make it stricter so that it only bets on one runner with the highest price that satisfies all the rules. We can make any combination of rules we like, but make sure to always test the settings in simulation mode.

3.6.4 Bet on "My Selections" only

With the bet type **Bet on "My Selections" only** you can

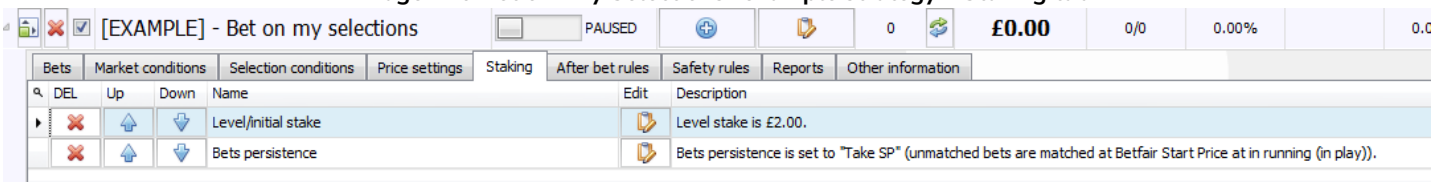
- Set the bot to automatically bet on manual selections at a specified time.
- Apply a strategy to manual selections, such as staking plans.
- Apply a strategy to manual selections and also add special rules to some selections.

Image 209 Bet on "My Selections" bet type – My S. checkbox in Market Selections Grid View



You can place bets at a set time before the start without having to wait in front of a computer using the "My S." check box in the Market Selections grid view together with a "Bet on my selections" strategy. This can be good for your own liquidity, since if you place all your bets too far in advance, you betting balance is tied up until those events finish, so you can do more with your betting bank when it is only exposed at the time of the event.

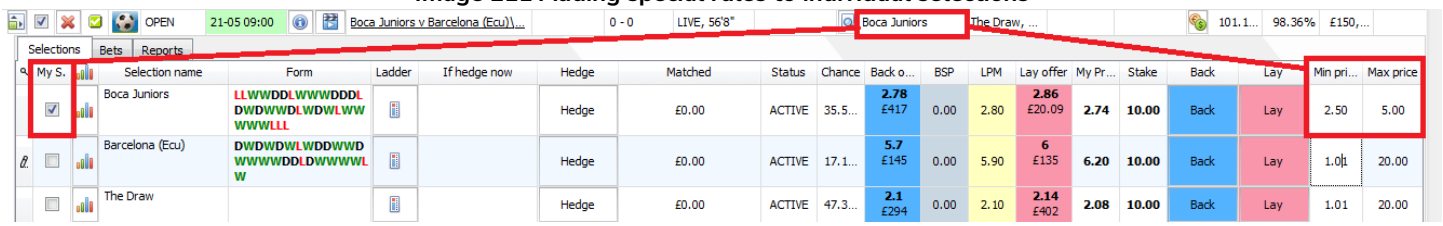
Image 210 Bet on "My Selections" example strategy – Staking tab



You can apply a strategy to manual selections, such as applying staking plans. You can manually select the runners that you want to apply a strategy to that may include price rules, a staking plan, and so on. You can use the "Bet on my selections" strategy to apply general rules to all of your bets. For example, if you only want to bet if the odds are 2.00 or more, then in the strategy "Selection Conditions" you can change the "Min/Max Selection Price" setting to 2.00-20. Or if you want to apply a staking plan to your bets, you can add it in the Staking Plans tab, there are many staking plans available, D'Alambert, Odds staking ladder, Recovery and many more. Here I will add the Percent staking plan to my strategy and set it to bet 3% of the betting bank on each bet. Or if you want to do more advanced strategies, you can tell the strategy to hedge your

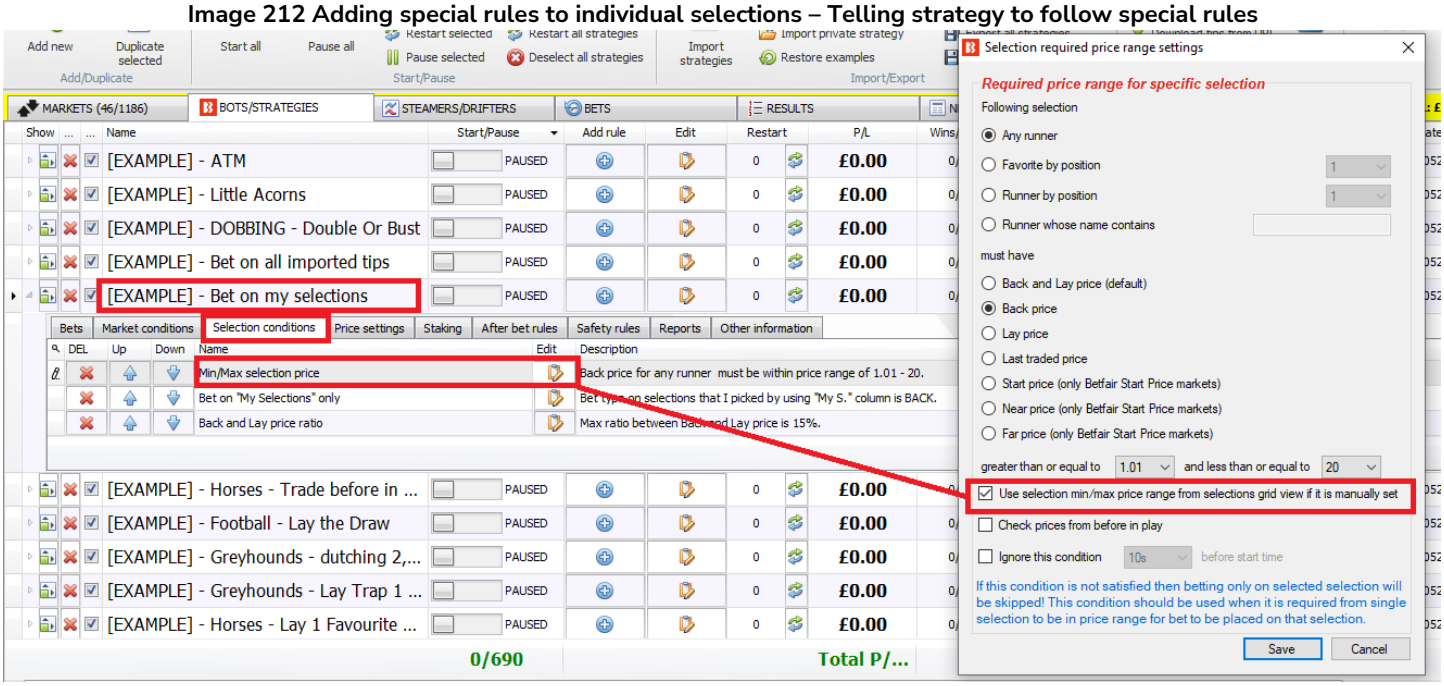
selections in specified situations from the After Bet Rules tab by adding a “Hedge or Close Position” rule.

Image 211 Adding special rules to individual selections



You can apply a strategy to manual selections and also add special rules to some selections by adding columns in the Selections Grid View. For example, you may have a general strategy set up, but for a specific selection you think the odds are not value and you do not want to place a bet unless the odds are above a certain level. We are able to do this by adding special rules to individual selections. In the main Markets tab we open the selections grid view and then right click on any column header and select the “Column Chooser” option and then double-click on “Min price” and “Max price” to add minimum and maximum price columns. Then we set a minimum price.

Image 212 Adding special rules to individual selections – Telling strategy to follow special rules



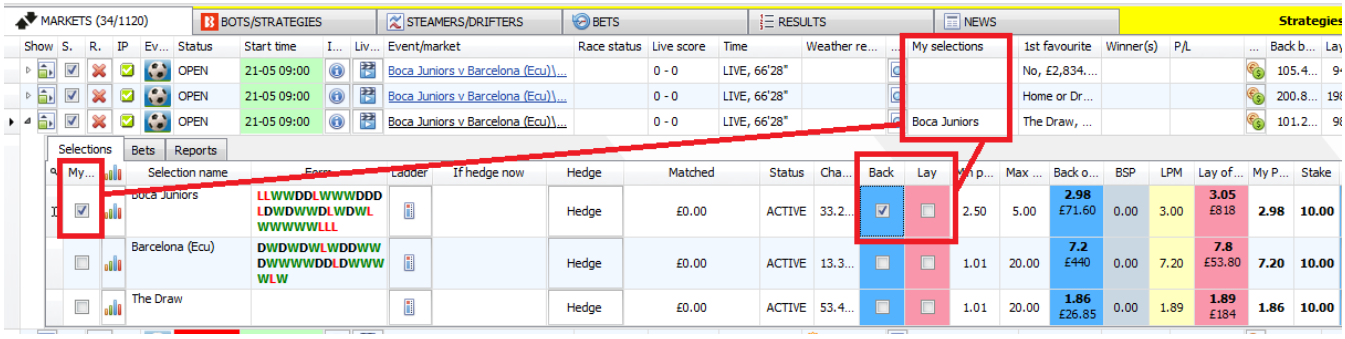
If you want your strategy to follow these special rules, then make sure in the Strategy Tab under the Selection Conditions rules, edit the “Min/Max Selection Price” rule to **“Use selection min/max price range from selections grid view if it is manually set”** by checking that box. You can use these extra columns to manually add selection specific stakes and even bet types.

In this way the **Bet on “My Selections” only** bet type is very useful in allowing users to manually select events and then apply strategies to them, for enabling automatic placing of bets closer to the start time, or for applying staking plans to a set of selections, or for applying complex hedging and dutching rules to selections.

3.6.5 Manual bet type

With this bet type set, the strategy follows the manually selected bet type, BACK or LAY, from the Markets selection grid view columns if set. This bet type is used if you want to select to BACK or LAY a selection manually for each event.
To do this, we need to add a back and lay check box column in the markets selections grid view by right clicking any column header, select "Column Chooser", double-click to add back and lay boxes, and then check the bet type we want for that selection. Remember also to check the "My S." box so that the selection is set.

Image 213 Add Back and Lay checkboxes to Selections Grid View for Manual bet type

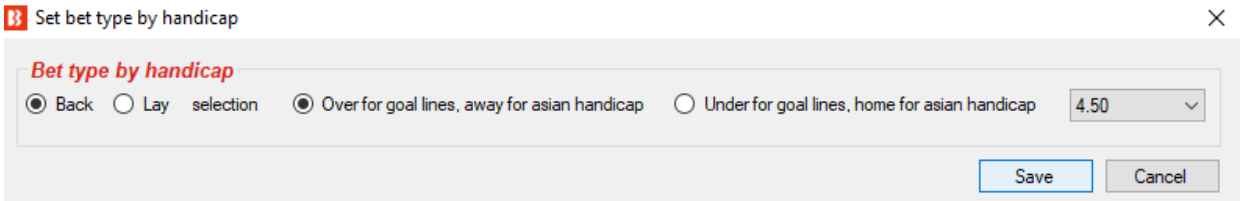


Note: If another bet type such as the Default Bet Type is also set in the same strategy, the Manual Bet Type rule will not prevent betting on other selections according to the bet type set by that 2nd bet type rule.

3.6.6 Bet type by handicap

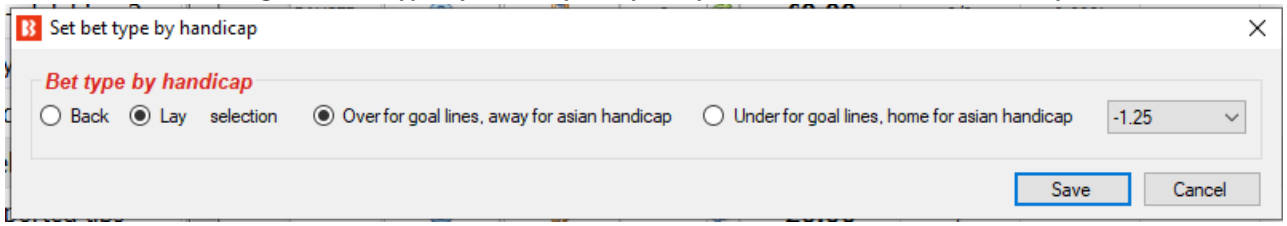
For goal lines and Asian handicap markets the bet type needs to be set by using a handicap value. You select Back or Lay bet type, then the selection you want to bet on, and then the handicap value.
If you want to place a BACK bet on the Over 4.5 goals markets that match your criteria, then select "back" the "Over for goal lines, away for Asian handicap" option and "4.5" in the handicap drop-down menu.

Image 214 Bet type by handicap – Back over 4.5 goals



If you want to place a LAY bet on the away team with a handicap of -1.25, then select "lay" the "Over for goal lines, away for Asian handicap option" and "-1.25" in the handicap drop-down menu.

Image 215 Bet type by handicap – Lay away team with -1.25 Asian handicap

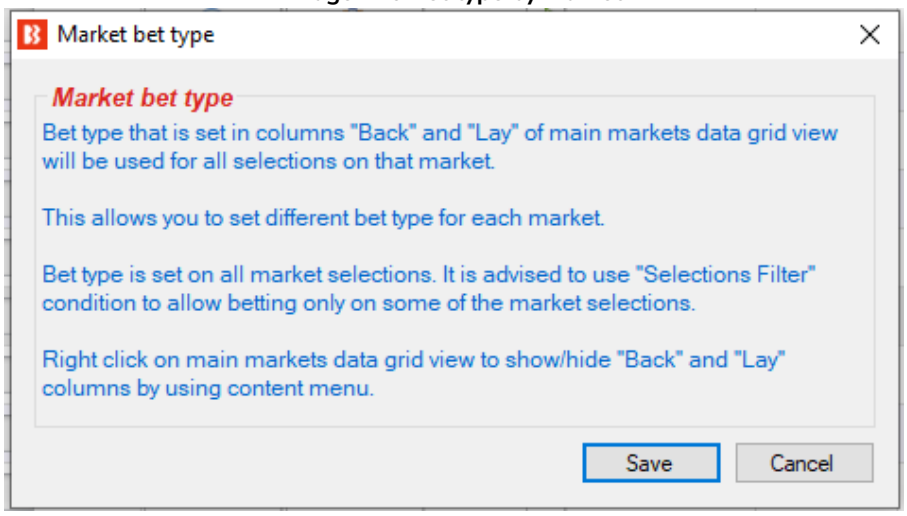


Note that you need to set more filtering rules for the strategy to work. You need to set market filters, event filters, and so on in the market conditions tab, and also price rules and other selection filters in the selection conditions tab.

3.6.7 Bet type by market

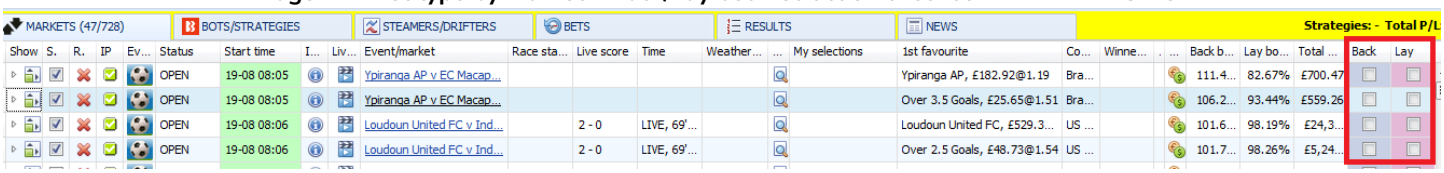
With this bet type, the bet type set in the main **markets grid** will set the bet type for **all selections** in that market. Note that this is different to the manual bet type which sets the bets type for each selection in the Markets selection grid view.

Image 216 Bet type by market



If you right click on any column header in the MARKETS view, select “Column Chooser” and double click to add back and lay columns, then the main markets data grid view will show checkbox columns “Back” and “Lay” that will allow you to select one of those bet types for each market. This is so that if this market contains a selection that matches the filters of the strategy, it will then look at the bet type set for that market for the type of bet to make on it.

Image 217 Bet type by market – Back/Lay bet instruction checkbox in MARKETS view



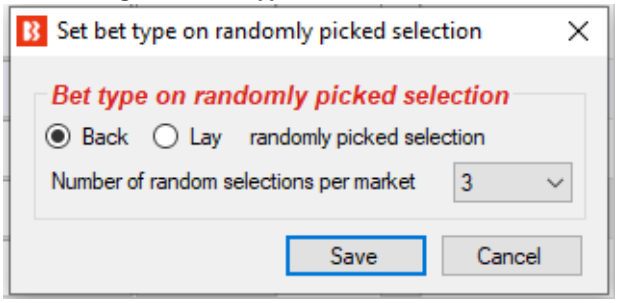
The example strategy “Bet on My selections” will bet on your tips and can have its own rules that will check the min/max price range, set bet type, set price and set the stake at which bets will be placed on your selections. But if you want, you can set a different price range, stake, price and bet type for each selection by using the custom columns in selections grid view. These can be accessed by right clicking on any column header in the selections grid view and clicking on Column chooser. If you decide to set different details for each selection, then make sure that in the strategy that will bet on those selections (i.e. Bet on My selections), you also tick the options in the separate rules to use manually set price range (Min/max selection price rule), stake (Level/initial stake rule), price (Default price rule) and so on.

The Selections grid view also contains button columns for Back and Lay that allow you to place bets immediately at a set stake and price. This is usually used when you want to prepare your bets, monitor markets during or before in play and then to place bets quickly at your preset values.

3.6.8 Bet type on random selection(s)

This bet type will place random bets on markets that match the filters set in the strategy. You can set the bet type, Back or Lay, and the number of runners that can be bet on in each market.

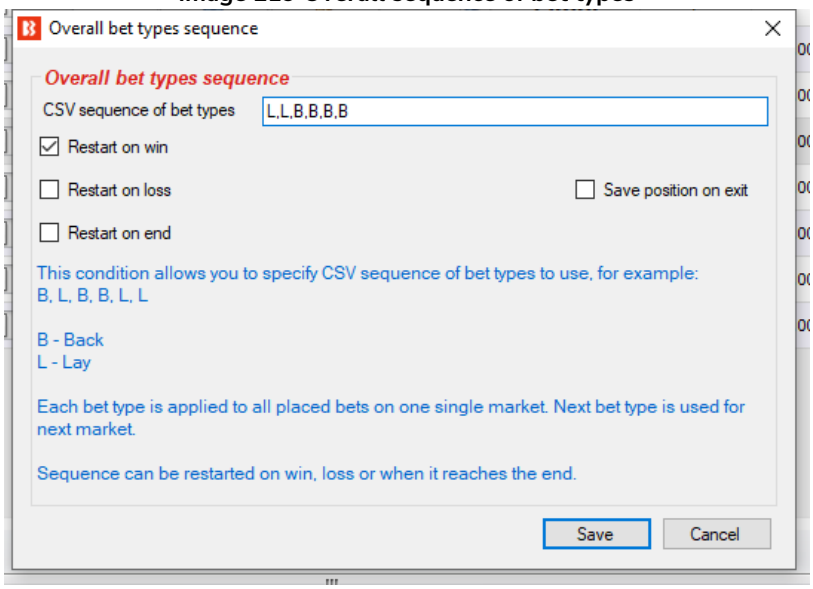
Image 218 Bet type on random selections



3.6.9 Overall sequence of bet types

This condition allows you to set the sequence of bet types to be used on bets that will be placed by the strategy. You can specify any sequence of bet types as a CSV sequence (separated by commas).

Image 219 Overall sequence of bet types



To get the correct sequence that will restart on win/loss/end you should also add to your strategy “Unsettled markets” condition with number of allowed unsettled markets set to 1.

The sequence of bet types is specified as a CSV list, for example, “B,B,L,L,B” for “Back, Back, Lay, Lay, Back” which means the first bet will be a Back bet type, the second a Back bet type, the third a Lay bet type, the fourth a Lay bet type and the fifth a Back bet type.

You can also set the strategy to restart the sequence after a win, a loss or when the series ends.

For example, if you were following a system where you thought there was a low chance of a winner coming on the next two selections after a win, then you could set the bet type to lay those selections instead of backing them for the first two bets after a win, and then revert to normal back bets until another winner resets the system. If the “Restart on end” checkbox is not ticked, then the bet type will remain on the type set by the final entry in the series. For “L,L,B,B,B” in Image 216, it would remain on Back bets until a win occurs to restart the series.

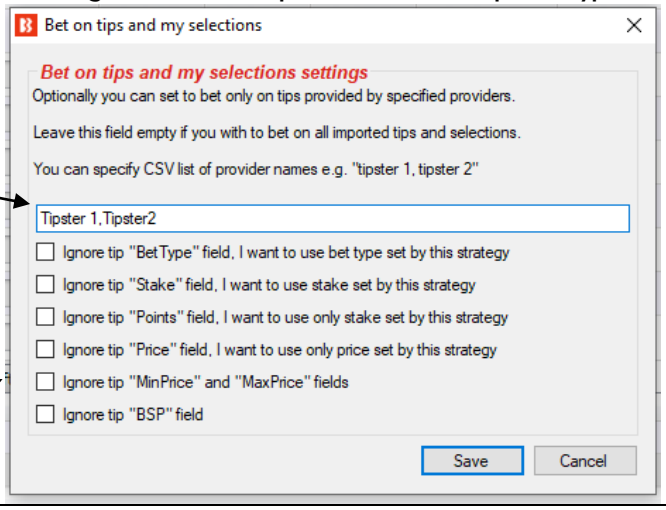
3.6.10 Bet on imported selections/tips be type

This last bet type "**Bet on imported selections/tips**" is the only bet type rule not found in the Selection Conditions tab. It is found in the Staking Plans tab. But it is also classed as a bet type because if the imported tips also specify the bet type, then this rule alone can execute bets.
This is used for betting on imported tips from files or URLs or for betting on sets of selections manually created by using the "My S." my selections check box and exporting selections to the "manage tips" form.
If there is no bet type set by the imported selections, then another bet type is necessary to set the bet type. For example, the **Default bet type** is used to tell the bot to place Back bets on all imported tips.

Leave the tipster field blank to bet on all imported tips, or enter the name of the tipster/selection set to specify the tip set to be bet on. For specifying multiple tip sets, separate them by a comma.

If the imported selection set/tips have fields that you want to ignore, such as stake size or MinPrice and MaxPrice field, then you can select which fields to ignore.

Image 220 Bet on imported selections/tips bet type



See this manual section [2.1.7 Bet on all imported tips](#) for a detailed demonstration of how to use this bet type.

3.7 Video tutorials

We have a number of very useful video tutorials available. They can be useful as an introduction before you read the manual or as a good review after you have read the manual. All video tutorials are available at our YouTube channel. It is highly recommended for new users to watch these videos to get a better understanding of the software in a short space of time.

We update video tutorials when we add new functionality, so please subscribe to our YouTube channel if you wish to be updated when new videos are available.

https://www.youtube.com/user/BfBotManager/videos

Current Video List (As of June 1st 2021)

3.7.1 **Software overview**

3.7.2 **Market autoloading**

3.7.3 **Strategies**

3.7.4 **Bet and result history**

3.7.5 **Ladder and Manual Bets Strategy**

3.7.6 **Automated Tipping on Tipster Tips**

3.7.7 **Setting bet type**

3.7.8 **Football rules**

3.7.9 **Racing rules**

3.7.10 **Staking plans**

3.7.11 **Creating 3 popular strategies**

3.7.12 **Tennis in play strategies**

4 More Example Strategies

We include these example strategies here to show **how the wide choice of conditions and rules in the Bf Bot Manager software can be used to turn a user's own strategy into an automated bot strategy**. Some of these are betting systems available on the internet that have become well known and people try to automate these or their own strategies with the software.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works, how the rules are used together and help you understand how to automate your own strategies.

4.1 [EXAMPLE] - DOBBING - Double Or Bust

DOBBING is about betting on price movement rather than the actual race result. We either double the stake or lose it all.

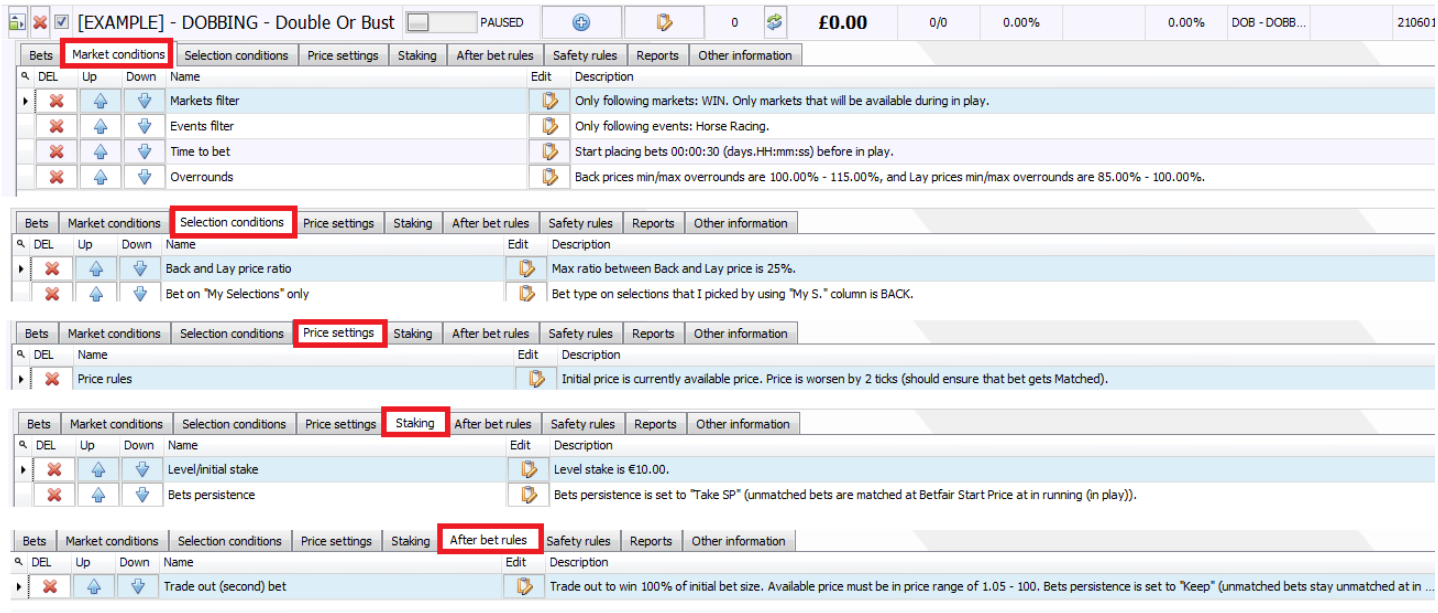
This strategy requires that you select your own selections by using the "My S." column in the selections grid on the left side of a selection name. The strategy only works with horse racing WIN markets that will be available for betting during in play. The user looks for a selection that they expect will run a good race near the front even if they do not win. It aims to back a horse at a price over odds of 2 and then lay it in-play so that if it has its in-play lay bet matched or if it wins the race, the initial stake is doubled. But if the horse never runs well enough in-play to have its odds decrease to the lay bet price, then the stakes is lost. Hence the name, double or bust. This strategy relies on manual selections, so it requires more research and understanding.

Examples and more details on this strategy are available on our forum:
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/phpbb3/viewtopic.php?f=25&t=2092

NOTE: Simulation mode is not realistic for this strategy because the strategy is designed to place an unmatched second bet, and in simulation mode all bets get matched instantly at the requested price. So you should try it out with real bets and small stakes after you used simulation mode to confirm that the settings are acting as you want them to. The latest version of the software has some ability to simulate unmatched bets. You can read more about the accuracy of simulation mode here.

From the strategy setup, we can see which Market conditions, Selection conditions, Price settings, Staking and After bet rules are used.

Image 221 [EXAMPLE] - DOBBING - Double Or Bust Settings



We include this example strategy here to show how **the wide choice of conditions and rules in the Bf Bot Manager software can be used to turn a user's own strategy into an automated bot strategy.**

Key rules in this strategy:

Rule Name	Details	Purpose
Markets filter	Only WIN markets that will go in-play	The strategy only wants to allow betting on markets that will go in-play so that it can place second trades.
Bets persistence	Take SP	This tells the bot to take the Betfair Start Price if it is available when there are unmatched bets at the event start time.
Trade out (second) bet	Trade out to win 100% of the initial bet size. Persistence set to keep.	This places a second bet that will double the stake if matched. If the second bet was placed before the market went in-play, then it will be kept when the market goes in-play.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

4.2 [EXAMPLE] - Little Acorns

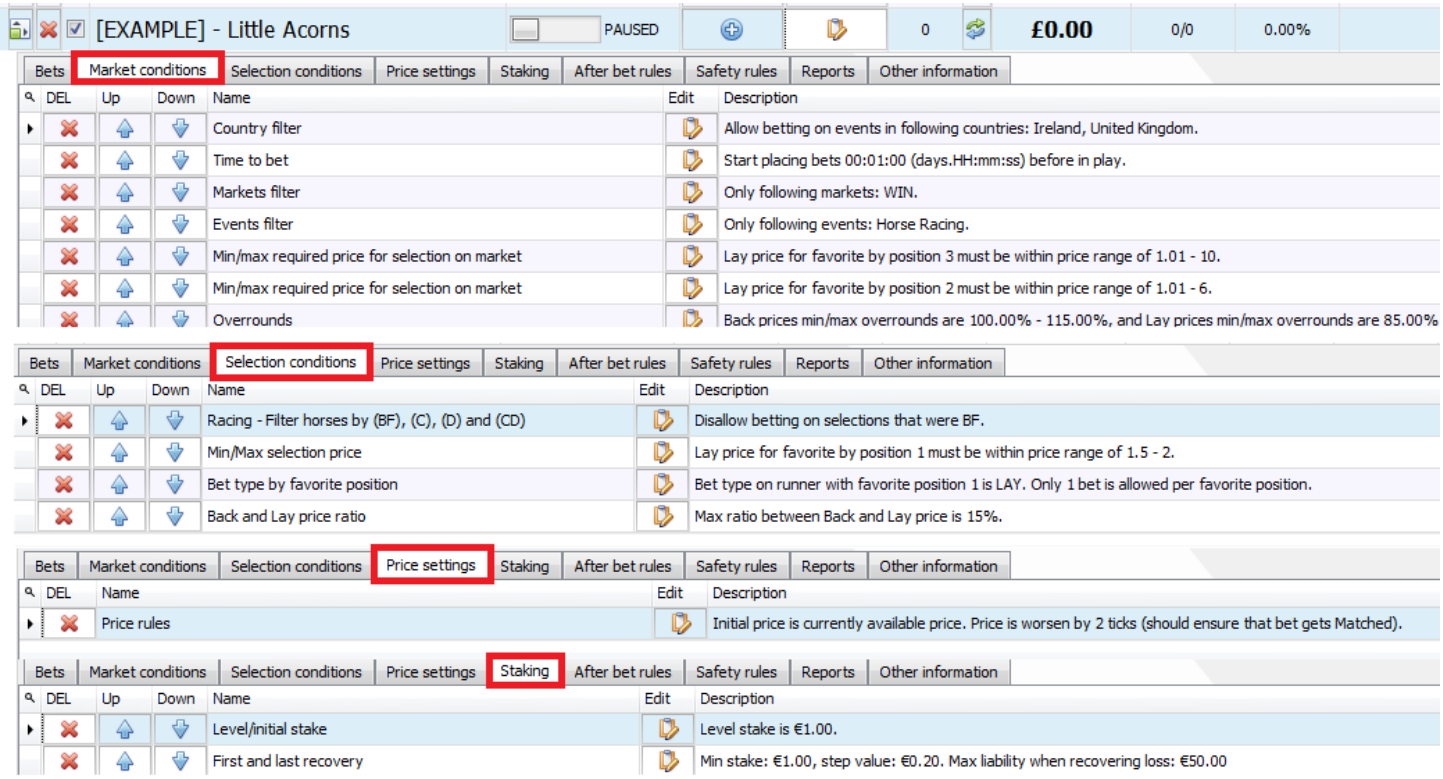
This system comes from www.Little-Acorns-Laying.com This system can be found on the internet and was requested by many members over last few years so we decided to add it as an example strategy.

It is used on UK & Irish horse racing WIN markets. The strategy is using "First and last recovery" staking and it is placing a Lay bet on the first favorite that was not a Beaten Favourite last time out.

Key Market Filters
First favorite with odds in range 1.5 - 2.0
Second favorite with odds less than 6.0
Third favorite with odds less than 10.0
Favorite must not be Beaten Favourite

From the strategy setup, we can see which Market conditions, Selection conditions, Price settings and Staking rules are used.

Image 222 [EXAMPLE] - Little Acorns - Settings



Key rules in this strategy:

Rule Name	Details	Purpose
Country filter	Ireland & UK only	Restricts the markets bet on to Ireland & UK.
Min/max required price for selection on market (x2)	2nd Fav 1.01-6 3rd Fav 1.01-10	This skips markets that do not have a 2nd and 3rd favorite within these odds. This is to make the bot match how the user manually selected their markets.

Racing – Filter horses by (BF), (C), (D) and (CD)	Don't bet on beaten favorites.	This strategy is laying the 1st favorite and this rule stops betting on beaten favorites, possibly because the creator of this system feels that a beaten favorite is less likely to lose twice in a row,
First and last recovery	Minimum stake £1 Step value £0.20 Max liability £50	This recovery plan tries to recover the first lost bet and the most recent loss bet plus the step value. Since recovery stakes increase as losses continue, a max liability is added as a safety.

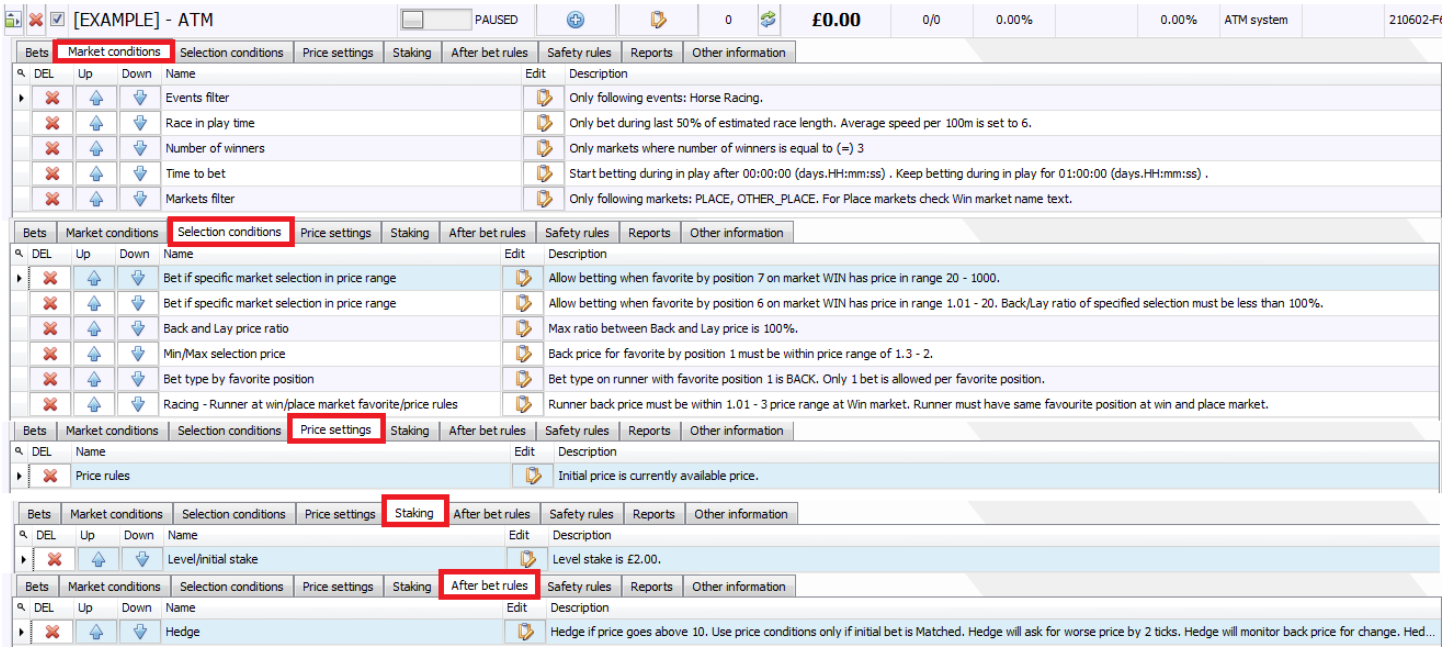
IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

4.3 [EXAMPLE] – ATM

This is a popular system on the internet and is used on UK/Irish horse racing Place markets, but it also checks the price of the favorite on the Win market which means that you must auto load both Win and Place markets.

A bet is placed on the first favorite in the Place market if it is in a price range of 1.3 - 2.0 AND if its price in the Win market is in a price range 1.01 - 3.0. Bets are only placed on the last 50% of estimated race length. At the time of bet, the Win market's first 6 favorites must have prices less than 20 and all other runners must have higher prices than 20. Betting is only done on Place markets with 3 winners, so make sure you auto load Win, Place and Other Place markets to the MARKETS grid view. A Stop loss (a hedge) is added in case the Back price on the first favorite goes above 10.

Image 223 [EXAMPLE] - ATM - Settings



Key rules in this strategy:

Rule Name	Details	Purpose
Race in play time	Only bet during the last 50% of estimated race length.	The aim of this ATM system is to back the lead horse when there are just 5 other horses effectively in the race after the race has had time to develop and it is clearer who is running well. It is trying to automate the watch, wait and bet in-play style of betting. When is the race developed enough to make that call? In this example setting, the user set the halfway point. It is important to note that the bot does not really know if the race is halfway through, it just estimates it based on the length of the race and the expected speed of the horses. Here the setting "100m is set to 6" means every 6 seconds is considered to be 100m run by the bot, so a 1,200m race would take 36 seconds to reach the halfway point. 1 furlong is 201.168m, so 1,200m is about a 6f race.

Number of winners	Only bet if the place market has 3 winners.	For this, the market conditions must have a market filter that tells it to look at the PLACE and OTHER PLACE markets. This only allows betting on races with 3 places paid out.
Bet if specific market selection is in price range	6th favorite has odds of 1.01-20	If the 6th favorite by odds has a price of less than 20, then all other favorites before 6th will also have lower odds, so just this condition is needed to check that the front 6 horses have odds under 20.
Bet if specific market selection is in price range	7th favorite has odds of 20-1,000.	If the 7th favorite by odds has a price of 20, then all other favorites after the 7th will also have higher odds, so just this condition is needed to check that other horses have higher odds than 20.
Min/Max selection price	1st favorite has odds of 1.3-2.00	This means that while 5 other horses are still in the race, the 1st favorite is now odds on to get 1st, 2nd or 3rd place. The Market condition – Markets filter, is allowing betting only on PLACE markets or OTHER PLACE markets. So this odds range is for the placing 1st to 3rd. It is not the odds to win the race.
Runner at win/place market favorite/price rules	Our horse must have odds of 1.01-3.00 in the WIN market. It must be the 1st favorite in both the win and place markets.	While the min/max selection price rule was looking at the PLACE market odds, this rule looks at both. It checks that the odds in the WIN market for this horse are 1.01-3.00, And it also makes sure that this horse is the 1st favorite in the WIN market and the PLACE markets.
Hedge	Hedge if price goes above 10.	This hedge acts as a safety stop loss. If we backed the horse at 2.50, but then its odds go over 10, it has obviously dropped back from the front of the race and is unlikely to even get a place. Then the bot can try to reduce losses by trading out.

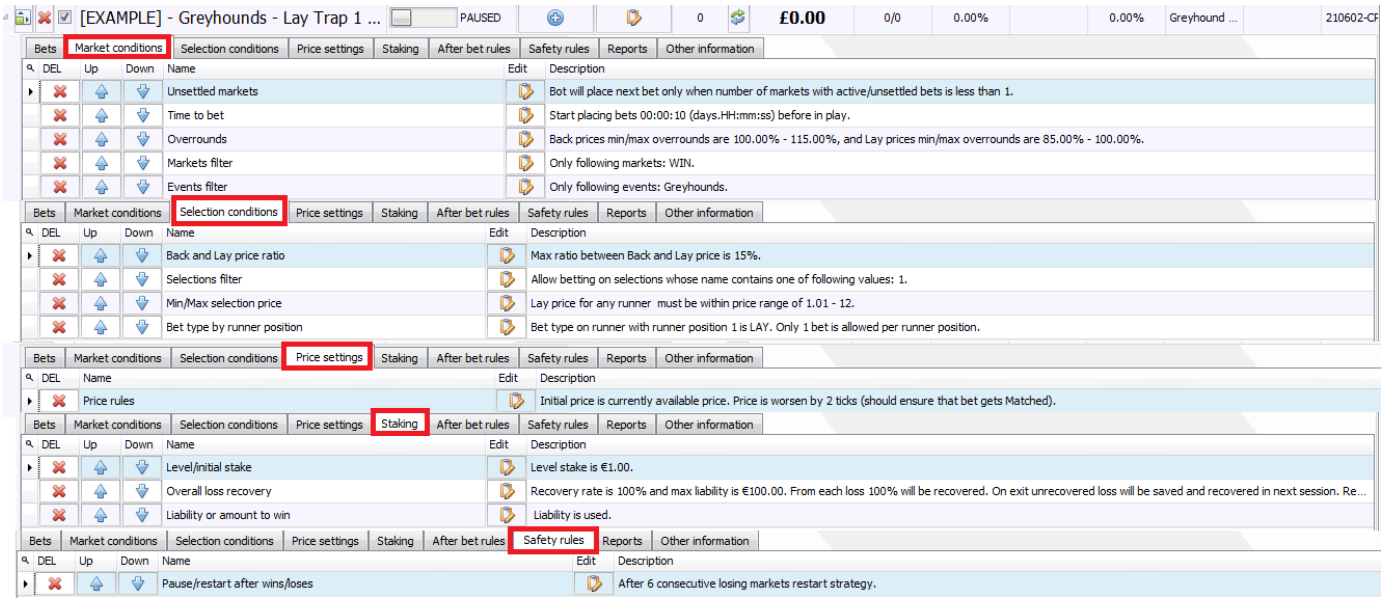
This ATM example is a great demonstration of how a system that would be very time consuming and stressful to run manually can be automated by the Bf Bot Manager software once you have found you own ideal settings.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

4.4 [EXAMPLE] - Greyhounds - Lay Trap 1 with recovery

This strategy is similar to the Example- Horses – lay 1st favorite, but in this case it is laying trap 1 and not the favorite by odds. It uses a recovery staking plan with an auto restart after 6 consecutive losing markets. It also places its next bet only when all bets are settled.

Image 224 [EXAMPLE] - Greyhounds - Lay Trap 1 with recovery



Key rules in this strategy:

Rule Name	Details	Purpose
Unsettled markets	Only bet when previous bet has been settled	This is an important rule when using recovery staking plans or any staking plan that uses the previous result to calculate the next stake. It makes the bot bet one by one instead of simultaneously on multiple markets.
Bet type by runner position	LAY runner in position 1	Position 1 is almost always Trap 1
Selections filter	Bet if the runner has "1" in their name	This is a failsafe to make sure Runner in position 1 is also "Trap 1" and contains the number 1 in their selection name.
Liability or amount to win	Liability is used	This rule changes the £1 stake to a £1 liability. (If amount to win was selected, it would change the £1 stake to a £1 target profit.)
Overall loss recover	Recover 100% of losses up to a maximum liability of £100.	This means that it will try to recover ALL (100%) losses on each bet. This means the amount risked can increase rapidly. This staking rule should be used very carefully. The maximum liability adds a limit to how much risk can be increased.
Pause/restart after wins/losses	Restart after 6 losing markets	This is a safety setting so that after 6 consecutive losing markets, it will not keep increasing its loss recovery amounts. The whole strategy will restart and the P/L will be reset.

This strategy is just an example that should help you learn how to use software. It is not profitable or best strategy and you should use it in simulation mode to learn how software works.

5 Troubleshooting

It is important to always test strategies in simulation mode first to make sure the strategy works as intended. If a strategy is not placing bets the way you want, it can be helpful to go through the following check list to troubleshoot the problem.

5.1 Troubleshooting Checklist

1. **Make sure the necessary markets are being loaded** by the bot.
2. **Check the strategy reports tab** to see why the bot is not placing bets.
3. **Re-read the strategy rules** to check if they make sense.
4. **Follow the bet process manually** on Betfair to see if it exposes the issue.
5. Do a quick **search on the Bf Bot Manager forum** to see if another user has experienced a similar problem and had it solved.
6. **Contact us** and we will do our best to help you. Sending the exported strategy and/or screenshots such as the markets grid page can help us find issues quicker.

5.1.1 Check markets

1. Make sure the necessary markets are being loaded by the bot.
A common problem is simply that the markets necessary for the strategy to place bets are not being loaded. This usually happens when a strategy relies on multiple markets to get its information for betting.
If the strategy is betting on the PLACE markets but is also getting price data from the WIN markets, then both need to be loaded. Check the strategy rules for which markets it needs. See 3.3.3 Auto-Loading markets

5.1.2 Check strategy reports

2. Check the strategy reports tab to see why the bot is not placing bets.
In the strategy information, there is a tab called “Reports”. You can check this to see why a strategy is or is not placing bets. If you find a market that you intended the strategy to bet on, but it is not, you can check that here.

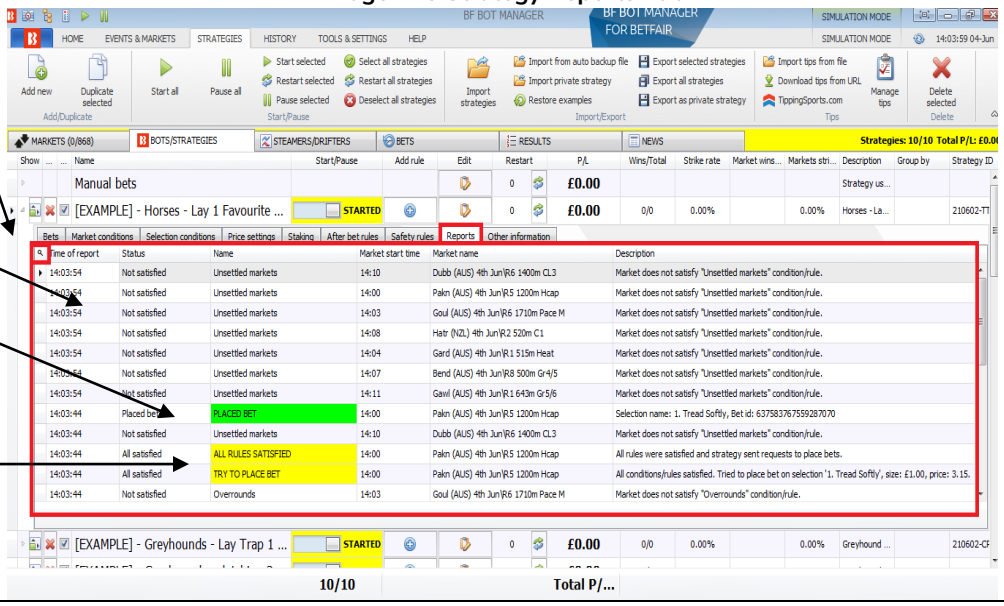
This magnifying glass button will enlarge the Reports screen of this strategy to full screen.

This shows the reasons why a bet is not being placed.

This shows a bet confirmed as being placed.

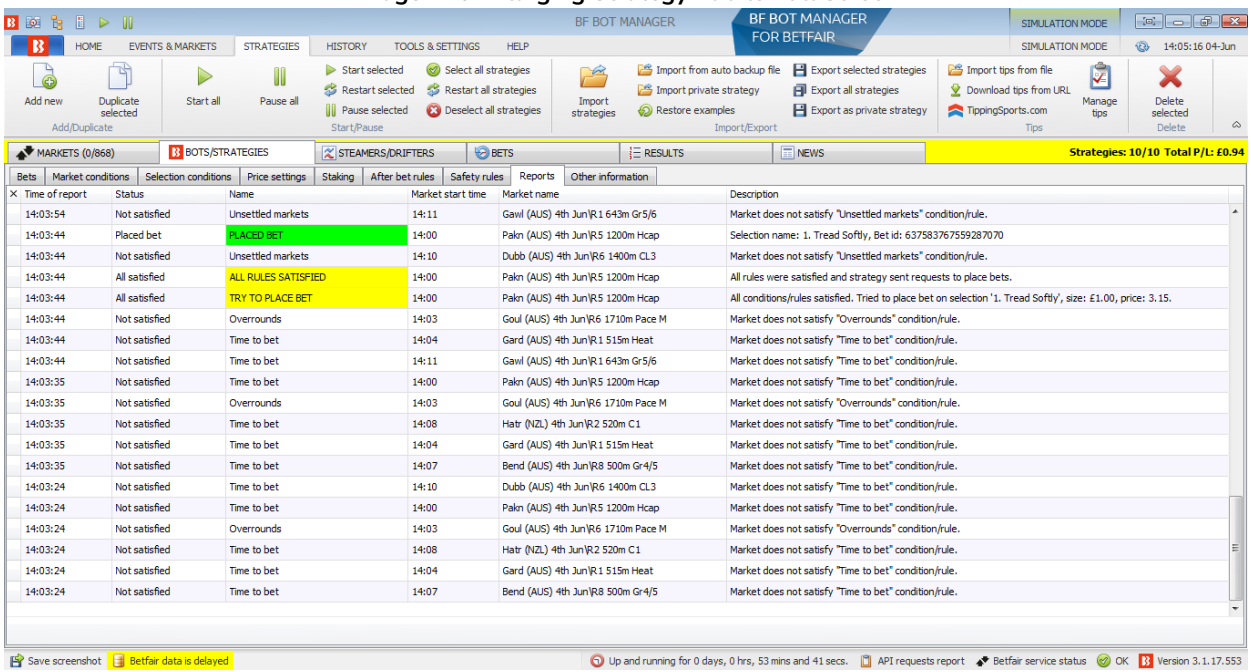
This shows the conditions for a strategy being met and the bot trying to place a bet.

Image 225 Strategy Reports Tab



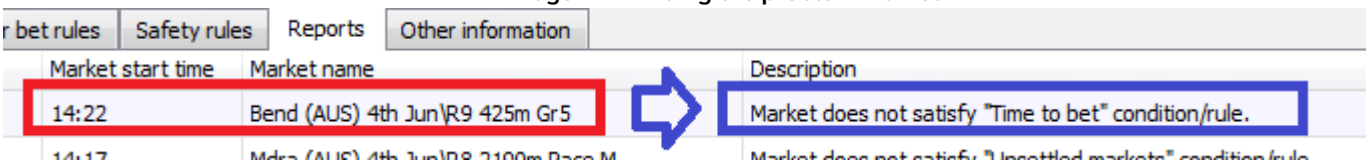
You can click on the magnifying glass mark at the top left of each strategy tab to enlarge it to full screen. You can then click on the black cross at the top left to return it to its normal size.

Image 226 Enlarging Strategy Tab to Full Screen



When you are watching a Betfair market that you know you strategy should be betting on, but is not, it is good to watch for that market name in the reports tab and see why the strategy is not betting on that market. <u>You can also right click a column header to add the **"auto-filter" row** and enter the market name you want to focus on, then it will only show you reports from that market.</u>

Image 227 Finding the problem market

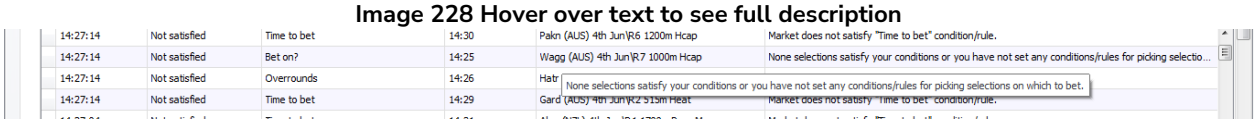


For example, if we wanted the strategy to bet on the "Bend (AUS) 4th Jun/R9 425m Gr 5" race, but it does not. We can see that the strategy is skipping it because the "Time to bet" rule is stopping it. You can then check the strategy rules for what the current "Time to bet" is set at, and change it if needed.

If the reports screen is scrolling too quickly to read the line of information that you want, then you can pause the strategy for a moment, this will also pause the strategy from checking more rules against new prices and gives you a chance to view the current reports. You can then start the strategy again.

If you cannot see the entire report description, you can hover the mouse over the report and a text bubble will pop-up with the full description.

Image 228 Hover over text to see full description



Common report form descriptions and what you can do about them.
Specific Reports: Most reports specify which rule is preventing betting.

Report Name	Report Description	Possible Solutions
Time to bet	Market does not satisfy "Time to bet" condition/rule.	Change the time to bet to match your intended time. Also check if your monitoring settings allow prices to be downloaded at the time to bet.
Overrounds	Market does not satisfy "Overrounds" condition/rule.	This usually means the odds are not valid. But, if you view the market manually and decide the strategy should be betting on those markets, then you can try loosening the value range for the Overrounds rule. This is sometimes necessary for in-play markets that change rapidly.
Back and lay price ratio	Market does not satisfy "Back and lay price ratio" condition/rule.	Similar to the Overround rule, this usually means the odds are not valid. But, if you view the market manually and decide the strategy should be betting on those markets, then you can try loosening the value range for the Back and lay price ratio rule. This is sometimes necessary for in-play markets that change rapidly.
Unsettled markets	Market does not satisfy "Unsettled markets" condition/rule.	If this rule is set to "1" then it means the strategy already has 1 unsettled bet. This is preventing any new bets being placed. If this is not intended, adjust or remove this rule. This rule, however, is usually necessary for strategies that use staking plans which base stakes on the previous bet result.
Min/Max Selection Price	Market does not satisfy "Min/Mix Selection Price" condition/rule.	If you check the Betfair market manually and see that the selection you intend to bet on is within the intended price range, check the price rules to see if the strategy is checking the correct selection price. Sometimes we might be intending to check the price for the 2nd favorite, but the Price rules settings were set to check the price for the runner by position 2. Also check if it is checking the correct back or lay prices as intended. Note that there is both a Market Condition and a Selection condition for price rules.
Bet on imported tips/selections	Market does not satisfy "Bet on imported tips/selections" condition/rule.	If your bot is supposed to bet on this match because of an imported tip, check the tipster/provider name has been entered correctly in the tipster/provider name field in the Bet on imported tips/selections rule. Check the Manage tips form to see if the tip has been accepted by the software. It will have an Event ID, Market ID and Selection ID number if it has been successfully linked with a Betfair market. If a tip has not been successfully imported then it may also appear in red writing. In this case, check that the event details (start time, team names, etc.) are correct. Check if the tip has already been bet on by another strategy if you are running multiple strategies that bet on imported tips. It will have a green background and a Bet ID if it has already been bet on. Only one bet can be placed per imported tip. Also if the imported tip does not contain a market ID number auto loading of markets for those tips will need to be set up.

Non-Specific Reports: Most reports are easy to understand, but some are not specific.

Report Name	Report Description	Possible Solutions
Bet on?	None selections satisfy your conditions or you have not set any condition/rules for picking selections on which to bet	This could be caused by a number of reasons. 1. You have not set a bet type. 2. The conditions do not find any selections in that market
Staking	Stake not set for any selection.	This could be caused by a number of reasons. 1. You have not set the stake 2. You have not set a bet type. 3. The conditions do not find any selections in that market.*

*Note: If bet type is not set for any selection or there is no selection that satisfies all the strategy rules then sometimes the Reports tab might report that the last checked rule is not satisfied. In most cases that is the "Staking" tab last rule at the bottom. In this case, after checking staking rules, also check strategy "Selection conditions" to ensure that bet type is satisfied and that there is at least one selection that satisfies all the rules.

5.1.3 Check strategy rules

3. Re-read the strategy rules to check if they make sense.
If your bot is placing bets, but on the wrong selections or with the wrong stakes, try going through the strategy rules in the order that the bot will check them.

The bot strategy logic checks conditions in this order before placing bets:
Safety rules – checks the rules that will prevent a strategy from placing further bets if one of the safety rules is not satisfied e.g. max profit/loss exceeded, auto restart required etc.
After bet rules – checks the rules to execute after the initial bet is placed and they are usually used to hedge or trade out your position
Market conditions - filters markets to bet on
Selection conditions - filters selections to bet on
Price settings - sets the price at which bets should be placed
Staking - sets the stake and places the initial bet. (If the strategy has placed a bet, then the after bet rules will be checked.)

5.1.4 Check bet process

4. Follow the bet process manually on Betfair to see if it exposes the issue.
It can also help to try to follow the strategy rules logic while also looking at an actual market and selection on the Betfair site that the bot should be placing bets on. Try to imagine how you would tell a friend to follow your strategy and if those instructions are present in the strategy rules.

5.1.5 Check the forum or Knowledge Base

5. Do a quick search on the Bf Bot Manager forum to see if another user has experienced a similar problem and had it solved.

Sometimes the problem has been encountered before by others users and the solution found on the Bf Bot Manager forum. www.bfbotmanager.com/phpbb3/index.php
Or the topic is a common issue that has been covered in the Knowledge Base.
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/en/help/knowledge_base
Another way to search the entire site is in a search engine such as Google by entering "Bf bot manager" + the specific query you have. For example," bf bot manager not placing 2nd trade out bet"

5.1.6 Contact us

6. Contact us and we will do our best to help you.
Contact us using the form on the site to open a customer service ticket. Sending files such as the bot strategy, related screenshots (Markets screen, autoload settings, monitoring settings, etc.) and log file can help us find issues quicker.
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/en/contact

5.2 Betfair Outages

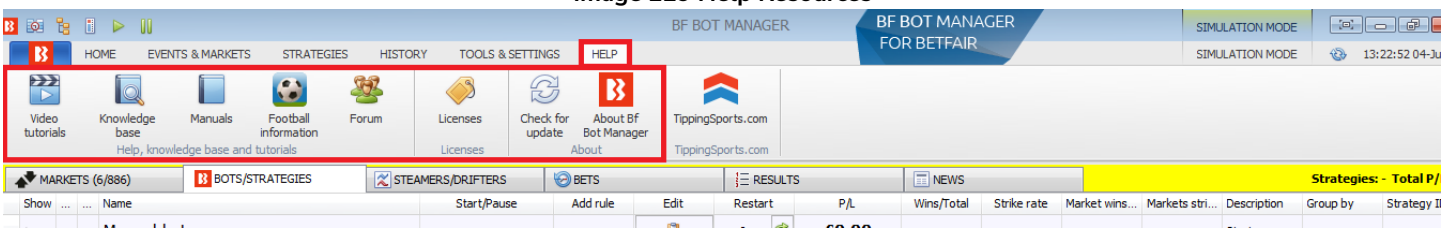
In the case of a Betfair outage, we recommend stopping and closing the software. Wait for 30 minutes after the outage has been resolved and you are sure that the Betfair systems are running normally.

WARNING: Running the bot during Betfair outages can lead to losses since hedges may not happen, positions may not be closed and bets may not be placed properly when Betfair outages occur.

5.3 Help Resources

There are a number of resources to help you.
Many of them can be accessed from the HELP tab of the main screen ribbon.

Image 229 Help Resources



1, **Video tutorials** – These give a very clear overview of how to use the bot. They are a good place to start.
2. **Knowledge base** – These have articles on specific topics.
3. **Manuals** – You can access the manual from here.
4. **Football information** – This displays what football competitions are covered by the 3rd party live score and in-play statistics service.
5. **Forum** – This is a very useful area for discussing Bf Bot Manager related topics and finding the solutions to problems that other users have already had and resolved.
6. **Licenses** – You can find your license key here and also buttons to buy a new license.
7. **Check for update** –You can check if you have the latest version.
8. **About BF Bot Manager** – You can check what version you are currently using. This is also displayed at the bottom right of the main screen.

6 VPS Hosting

Since the software requires the computer to be running and have a constant internet connection, some users may find it easier to use a Virtual Private Server (VPS).

What is a VPS?
A VPS is a physical part of a computer. If you rent a VPS, you are renting a part of a computer from a host. If the hosting server PC has an 8 core CPU, and you rent a 2 core package, then you get exclusive access to 2 of those cores. No other user can use them. So you are not sharing any computing resources with other users. When you log into your VPS, it will appear as a Windows desktop layout. You can then download and install the Bf Bot Manager software onto your VPS. It is as simple as using Windows on your home PC. You can copy files from your PC to the VPS by simply copying from your PC folder and pasting into a VPS folder. It is like having 2 PCs, just that your second PC is physically in a different place. When you close your connection to the VPS, it will continue to run 24/7.

Note: A VPS is not a VPN. A VPN is a Virtual Private Network. A VPN encrypts your data and just routes your internet access through another server so that your home IP address and the details of what websites you view are not known to others as all the data is encrypted by the VPN provider. A VPN has no physical form. It is not running in another location and thus cannot run the Bf Bot Manager remotely. A VPS is needed for this.

6.1 VPS server specification choice

We recommend SimplyHosting/Tagadab VPS as the best solution to run the bot because it is designed to run 24/7 and the hosting provider usually offer a 99.9% up time guarantee, which means that it is very unlikely that your server will lose internet connection or be unavailable.
You can connect to the VPS from any device (laptop, desktop, mobile, tablet etc.) and control the bot.
We recommend that you use the SimplyHosting/Tagadab SVS3000 or better server to run the bot as we have been using their servers since 2012. They are fast, reliable and their customer support will help you with any problems that you might get with your server.

Image 230 Recommended Simply Hosting Package – SVS3000

	SVS1000	SVS2000	SVS3000	SVS4000
Processor	1 core	2 core	3 core	4 core
Memory	1 GB	2 GB	3 GB	4 GB
Storage	35 GB	70 GB	100 GB	125 GB
Data transfer	300 GB	600 GB	900 GB	1200 GB

If you use another VPS, it must satisfy the minimum hardware requirements.

Minimum configuration to run V3 version	Recommended configuration to run V3 version
Intel i3, i5 or i7 CPU 2GB of RAM 1280px screen resolution width 20Mbps cable internet connection or faster 200MB of HD space to install the bot and use it	Intel i5 or i7 CPU, the faster the better 4GB of RAM 1920px screen resolution width 50Mbps cable internet connection 400MB of HD space to install and run the bot. If possible use a SSD, as your computer will work faster and it will not slow down the bot in case you use it for something else and not just to run the bot

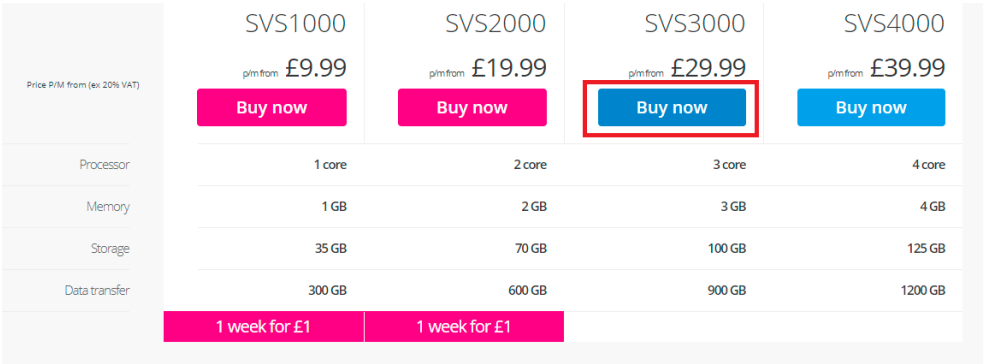
If you plan on running 50 or more strategies with a single bot, then you should consider splitting those strategies and running another bot instance on a second VPS. That will make the bot faster and more reliable.

6.2 Initial Setup

If you want to use Simply Hosting, here is a guide for how to set it up.

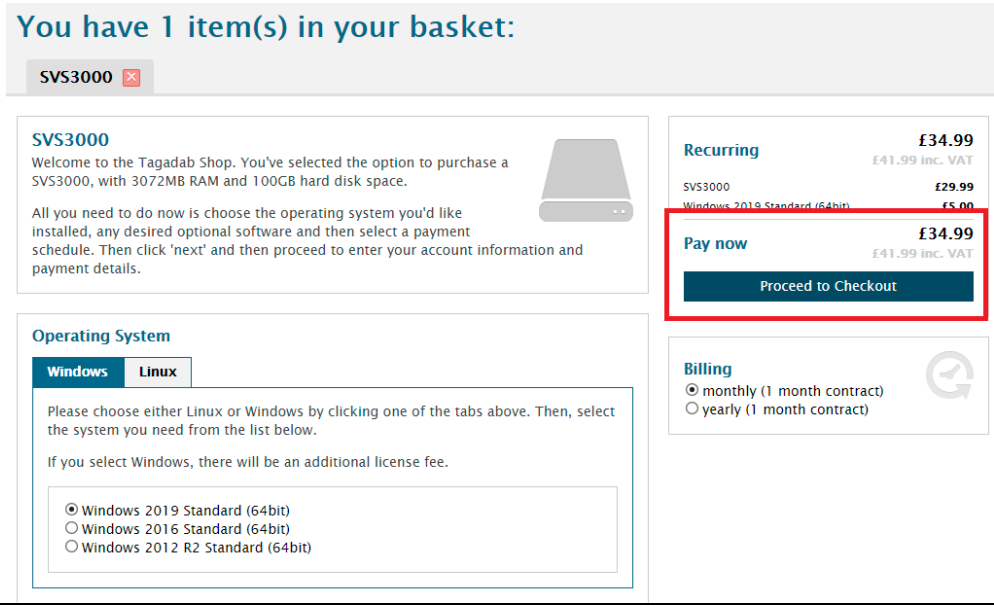
Step 1: Select the package that you want to use. We recommend the SVS3000 with 3 cores and 3GB of RAM.

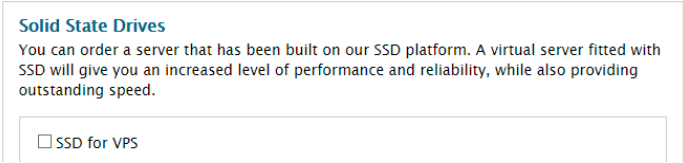
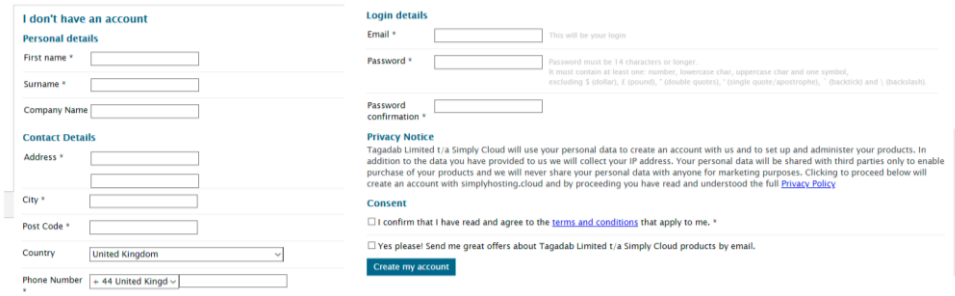
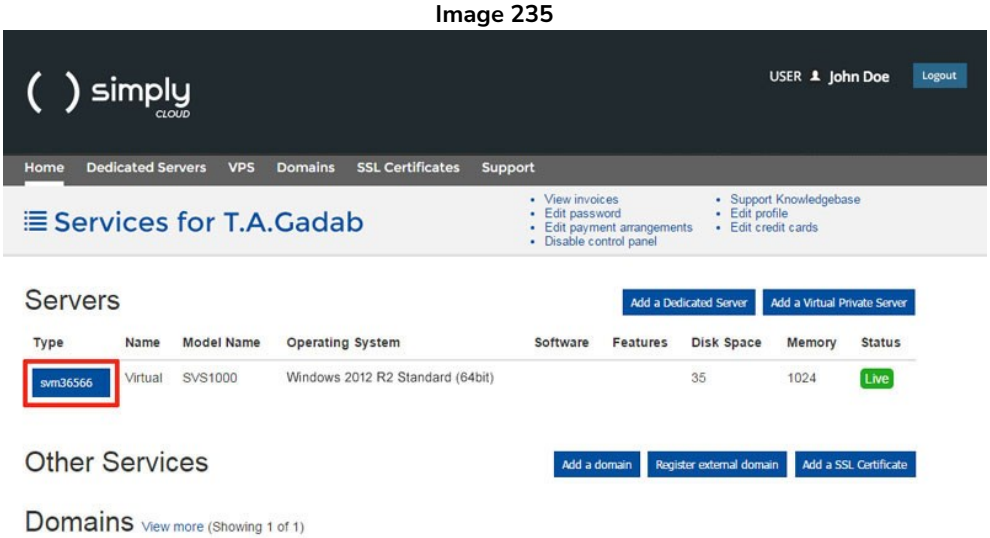
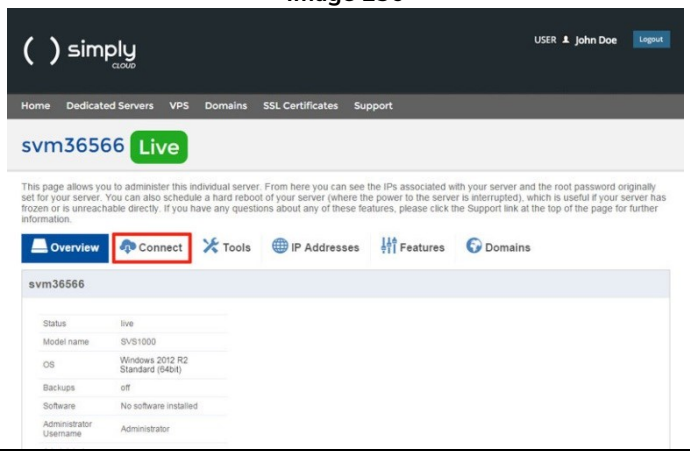
Image 231

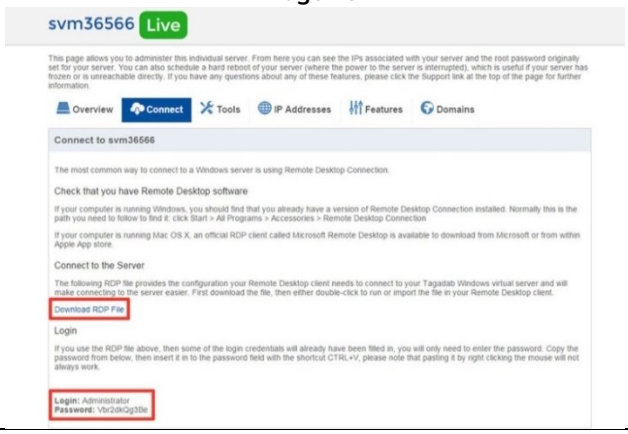
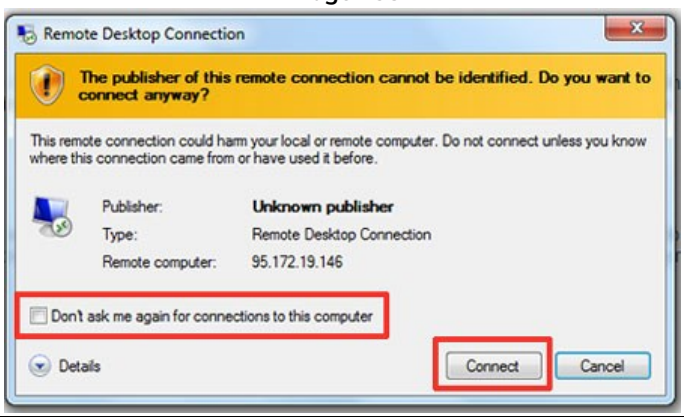
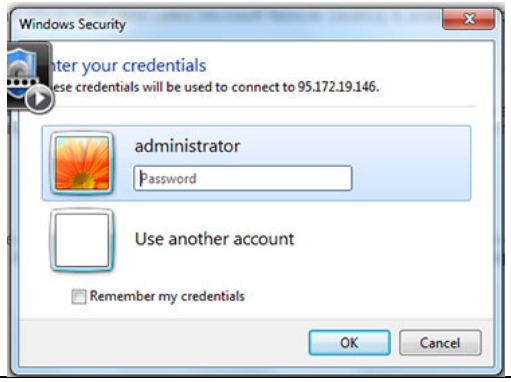


Step 2: Select any options that you might want. The basic package is fine. **Click on proceed to checkout.**

Image 232



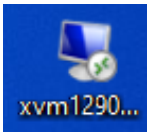
If you were considering an additional option, then an **SSD drive** would improve the speed of the bot.	**Image 233**  Solid State Drives You can order a server that has been built on our SSD platform. A virtual server fitted with SSD will give you an increased level of performance and reliability, while also providing outstanding speed. ☐ SSD for VPS
Step 3: Register your details to create an account or enter your login details if you already have an account. Then complete your purchase. You will need to activate your account by clicking on the activation link they send you.	**Image 234**  I don't have an account Personal details First name * Surname * Company Name Contact Details Address * City * Post Code * Country United Kingdom Phone Number + 44 United Kingd Login details Email * Password * Password confirmation * Privacy Notice Consent Create my account
Step 4: Your server will then be setup. You will receive an email telling you when this process is complete. After you've received an email confirmation that your server is ready, you will need to collect some information about your VPS. **Log in to your** [Simply Cloud control panel](#) using your contact email address from the confirmation email and the password you chose when ordering your virtual server. Once you've logged in, **click the name of your Windows VPS to access its Overview page** In this case the name of our example VPS is svm36566.	**Image 235**  simply CLOUD USER John Doe Logout Home Dedicated Servers VPS Domains SSL Certificates Support Services for T.A.Gadab View invoices Edit password Edit payment arrangements Disable control panel Support Knowledgebase Edit profile Edit credit cards Servers Add a Dedicated Server Add a Virtual Private Server Type Name Model Name Operating System Software Features Disk Space Memory Status svm36566 Virtual SVS1000 Windows 2012 R2 Standard (64bit) 35 1024 Live Other Services Add a domain Register external domain Add a SSL Certificate Domains View more (Showing 1 of 1) Log into your Simply Cloud control panel at: https://admin.simplyhosting.cloud/login
Step 5: At the VPS's Overview page. **click the 'Connect' tab**	**Image 236**  simply CLOUD USER John Doe Logout Home Dedicated Servers VPS Domains SSL Certificates Support svm36566 Live Overview Connect Tools IP Addresses Features Domains svm36566 Status live Model name SVS1000 OS Windows 2012 R2 Standard (64bit) Backups off Software No software installed Administrator Username Administrator

Step 6: On the 'Connect' page, **click the link 'Download RDP file'.** Also note the location of the VPS's Administrator password, it will be required later	**Image 237** 
Step 7: After you have clicked the link, you will be prompted to **save the .rdp file** and it will be downloaded to your local machine. Copy or move the file to an easily accessible place on your PC. **This is the important file that will connect to your VPS. Tick 'Don't ask me again for connections to this computer' and click 'Connect'.**	**Image 238** 
Step 8: You will then be prompted to **enter the Administrator password for the server.** You can copy and paste this from your Simply Cloud control panel shown in Step 6.	**Image 239** 
Step 9: After entering your password, you will see the Remote Desktop Connection screen shown. **Tick the box 'Don't ask me again for connections from this computer' and then click the 'Yes' button.**	**Image 240**

Step 10: You will then see your VPS desktop. You can **download the BF Bot Manager** using the internet browser as you would on you home PC.	**Image 241**

6.3 Regular Access

Image 242



You can connect to your VPS anytime by **clicking on the RDP file that you downloaded.** This will open the connection.

6.4 VPS considerations

6.4.1 Limit of 2 for Betfair API connections

The BF Bot Manager has no limit on the number of incidences of the software that can be used. However, Betfair has a limit of 2 API connections per Betfair account. Each Bf Bot Manager license is linked to your Betfair account, so this in effect limits the number of connections to Betfair that you can make with one account to 2. This means that you can run one Bf Bot Manager incidence on your VPS and another on your home PC. Many users often use their home PC for simulation mode and testing, while the VPS is used for Real mode betting. One Bf Bot Manager license can be used for both incidences of the software.

6.4.2 Location of your VPS

If you decide to run the bot on a VPS (Virtual Private Server) then make sure that your VPS is located in a country from which access to Betfair is allowed. You cannot rent a VPS that is located in a country from which access to the Betfair exchange is restricted or forbidden e.g. USA, Germany, Canada, Spain, France, Italy etc.

6.4.3 Countries where Betfair is currently allowed/banned

Be aware that betting laws concerning Betfair often change so always make the final checks yourself. This list was last updated in June 2021.

Countries where Betfair has a license:*

Australia	Gibraltar	Spain (Limited services)
Bulgaria	Italy	UK
Denmark	Malta	USA* (Limited areas)

Countries where Betfair is legal:*
As a result of those above licenses, Betfair is legal in the following countries.

Europe
Belgium
Bosnia-Herzegovina
Bulgaria
Croatia
Czech Republic
Denmark
Estonia
Finland
Germany (no Exchange)
Gibraltar
Hungary
Ireland
Latvia
Lichtenstein
Lithuania
Luxembourg
Macedonia
Malta (no poker or multiples)
Moldova
Montenegro
Norway
Poland
Romania
Russia
Slovakia
Spain (Limited services)
Sweden
Switzerland
UK
Ukraine

Asia
Hong Kong
India
Indonesia
Malaysia
Philippines
Saudi Arabia
Singapore
South Korea

Americas
Argentina
Brazil
Columbia
South America
USA* (*Allowed only within Delware, New Jersey and Nevada via TVG, a Betfair company)

Africa
Egypt
South Africa

Oceania
Australia
New Zealand

*Note: This list is subject to changes in regulations. Also, please bear in mind that certain betting activities like betting exchange or poker may not be available within certain territories. (e.g. Spain, Germany, etc.)

List of Restricted Countries*
Some countries have officially banned Betfair. In many cases, the site will not even load. Be aware that betting laws concerning Betfair often change so always make the final checks yourself. This list was last updated in June 2021.

Europe
Belgium
France
Germany
Greece
Portugal
Slovenia
Turkey

Asia
China
Iran
Iraq
Israel
Japan
Lebanon
North Korea
Thailand

Americas
Canada
Cuba
Greenland
Mexico

Africa
DR Congo
Eritrea
Ivory Coast
Libya
Somalia
Sudan

PART II TECHNICAL MANUAL

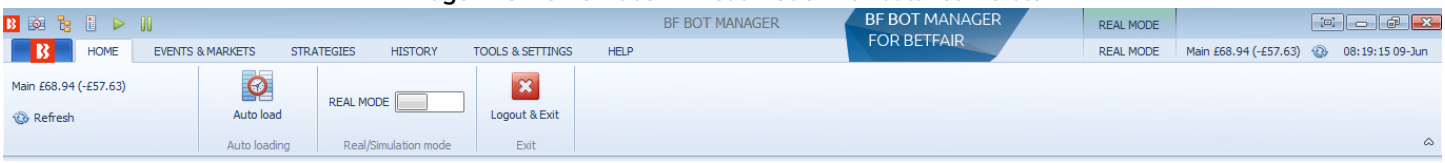
7 Main Controls Ribbon

The main controls ribbon has 6 tabs on it. Home, Events & Markets, Strategies, History, Tools & Settings and Help.

7.1 Home

The Home tab shows key information about your balance, current exposure and control over changing the software mode between Simulation and Real mode.

Image 243 Home ribbon – Real mode with balance visible



7.1.1 Betfair Balance & Refresh

This shows your current balance. The figure in brackets shows the current exposure which is the amount of money that is being used in unsettled bets. Pressing the reset button refreshes the number if you want to check it is up-to-date. It is possible to hide this balance by going to the TOOLS & SETTINGS tab -> General settings and checking the “Hide funds” checkbox.

Image 244 Tools & Settings -> General settings – Hide funds

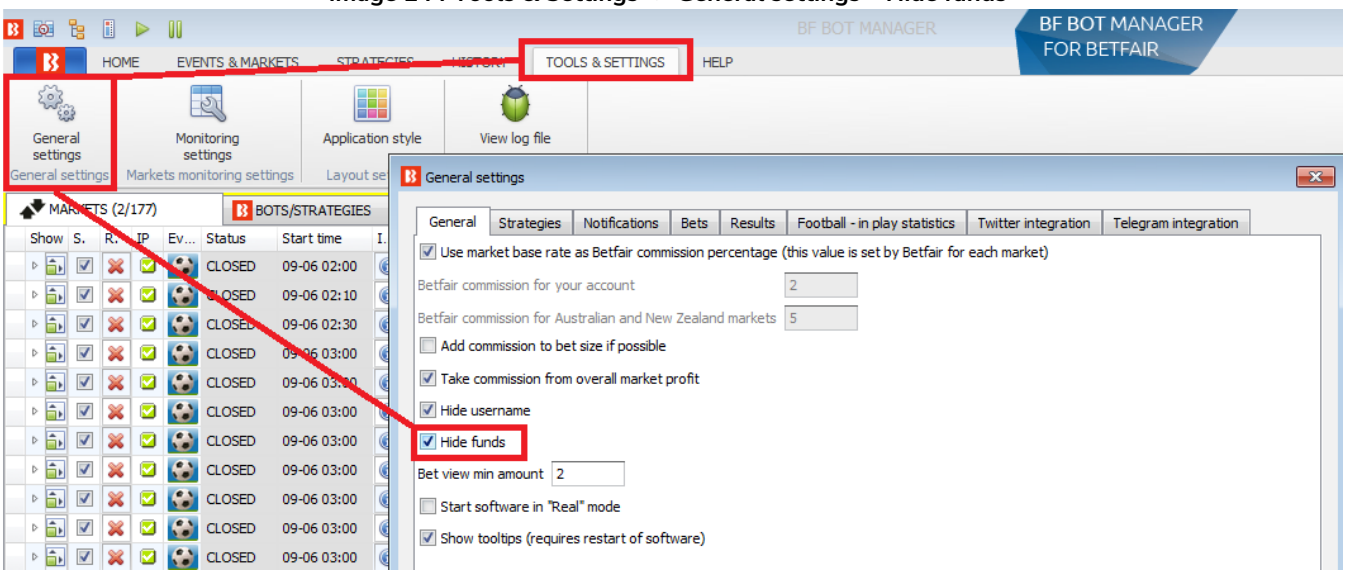
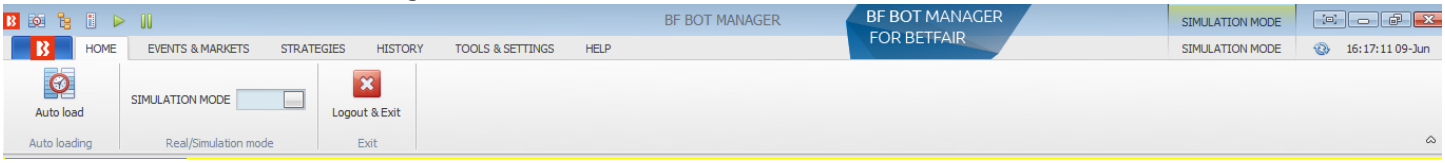
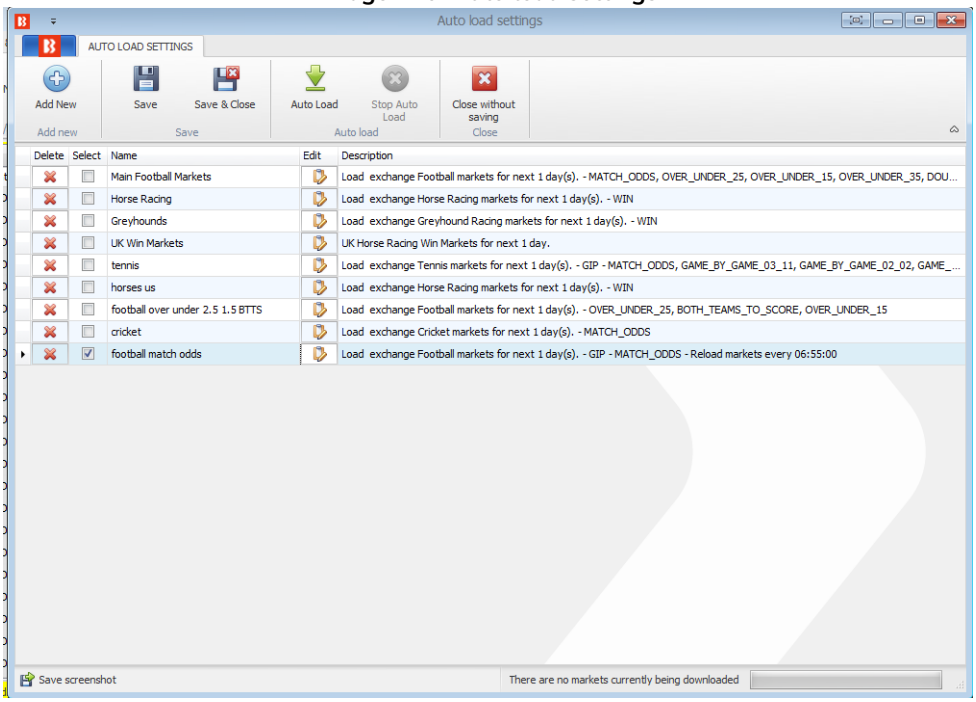


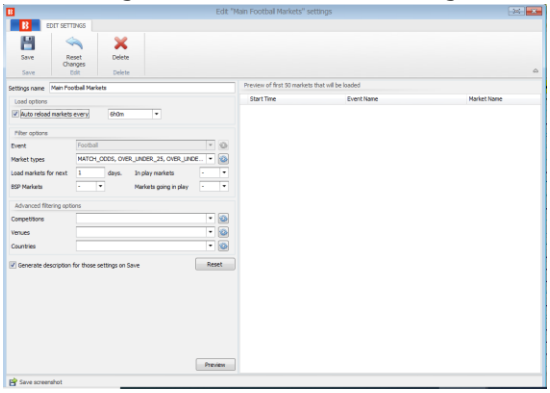
Image 245 Home ribbon – Simulation mode with balance hidden

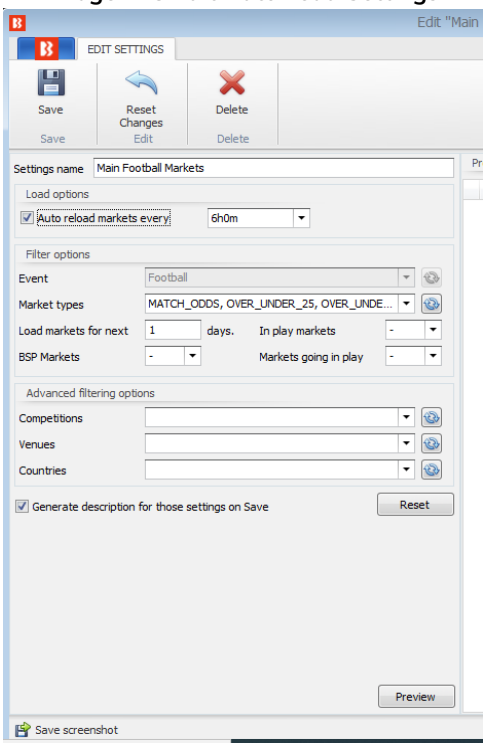


7.1.2 Auto Load

This gives quick access to the auto load settings for loading markets. This button also appears in the Markets tab. Click on the Auto load button to open the auto load settings.

Add New – This will create a new auto load setting.	**Image 246 Auto load settings** 
Save – This will save the current settings without closing the form.	
Save & Close – This will save the current settings and close the form, then returning to the main screen.	
Auto Load – This will load markets according to the current active auto load settings.	
Stop Auto Load – This will stop the current loading of markets.	
Close without saving – This will close the form and return to the previous screen without saving the changes.	
Delete – Click to delete the auto load setting	
Edit – Click to edit the auto load setting.	
Save screenshot – Click to save a screenshot to your hard drive of the current screen.	

Save – Save the current settings	**Image 247 Edit Auto Load Settings** 
Reset changes – Reset any new changes	
Delete – Delete this set of settings	
Settings name – Enter a name for the settings	
Auto load markets every 6h0m – Set how often the markets are loaded. This checkbox must be ticked for the settings to be active.	
***Event** – Set which sport to download	
***Market types** – Set which markets for those sports to download.	

Load markets for next 1 days - Since the monitoring settings are set to 30m before event start by default, it is not usually necessary to download markets for more than 1 day ahead.	
In-play markets – Only load markets that are in-play NOW. This setting should not normally be selected since it will only load currently in-play markets to the exclusion of any markets that are not yet in play even if they are due to go in play later.	**Image 248 Edit Auto Load Settings** 
BSP markets – Only load markets that are scheduled to offer Betfair Start Price.	
Markets going in play – Only load markets that are scheduled to go in play.	
***Competitions** – Only load the specified competitions.	
***Venues** – Only load the specified venues	
***Countries** – Only load the specified countries	
Generate description for those settings on Save – This option saves you time by automatically creating a description based on the settings you have. If you uncheck this box, then you can enter your own custom description.	
Reset – This will reset the settings.	
Preview – This will show a preview in the box on the right of what markets would be loaded if these auto load settings were used.	

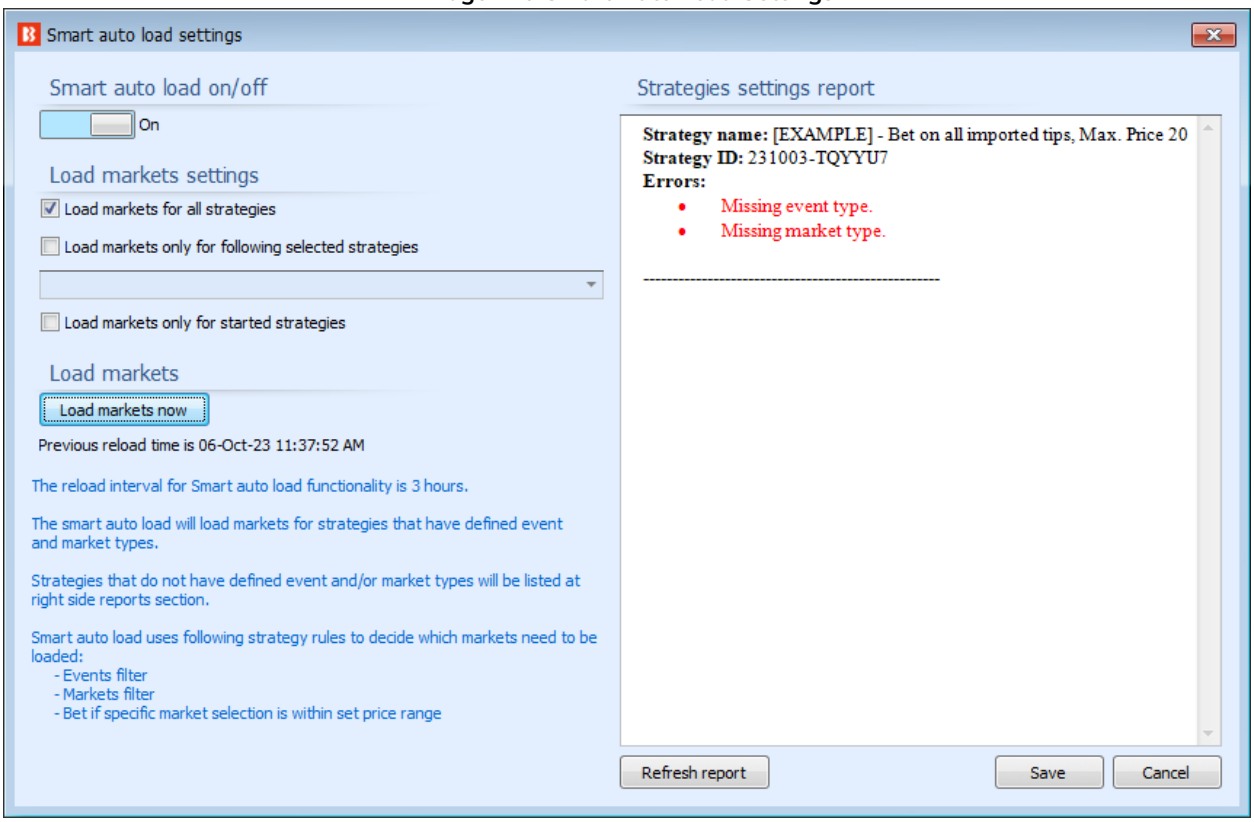
*These drop down menus are dynamic lists that are populated by the currently available data from the Betfair servers. This means that it will only load available events, markets, competitions, venues and countries for the selected sport. If there are no markets up on Betfair for an event, it will not be displayed here. For example, if there are no political election specials available, then it will not show up in the dynamically populated list. To refresh the list, click on the refresh button on the right of each field.

Note that not all strategies need markets auto loading, only those that find their own selections. **Imported tips will automatically load their required markets.**

7.1.3 Smart auto load

The Smart auto load feature enables the software to auto load the markets required by your strategies (BF Bot Manager only)
You can set it to load markets for **all strategies**, for **selected strategies** or only for **started strategies**.

Image 249 Smart Auto Load Settings



Markets are reloaded every **3 hours**.

Markets will only be loaded for strategies that have rules to define the **Event** and **Market**.
Strategies that do no have defined events or markets will be listed on the right-hand side field.
This rule looks to find the event or market based on these rules:
Events Filter rule
Market Filter rule
Bet if specific market selection is within set price range rule

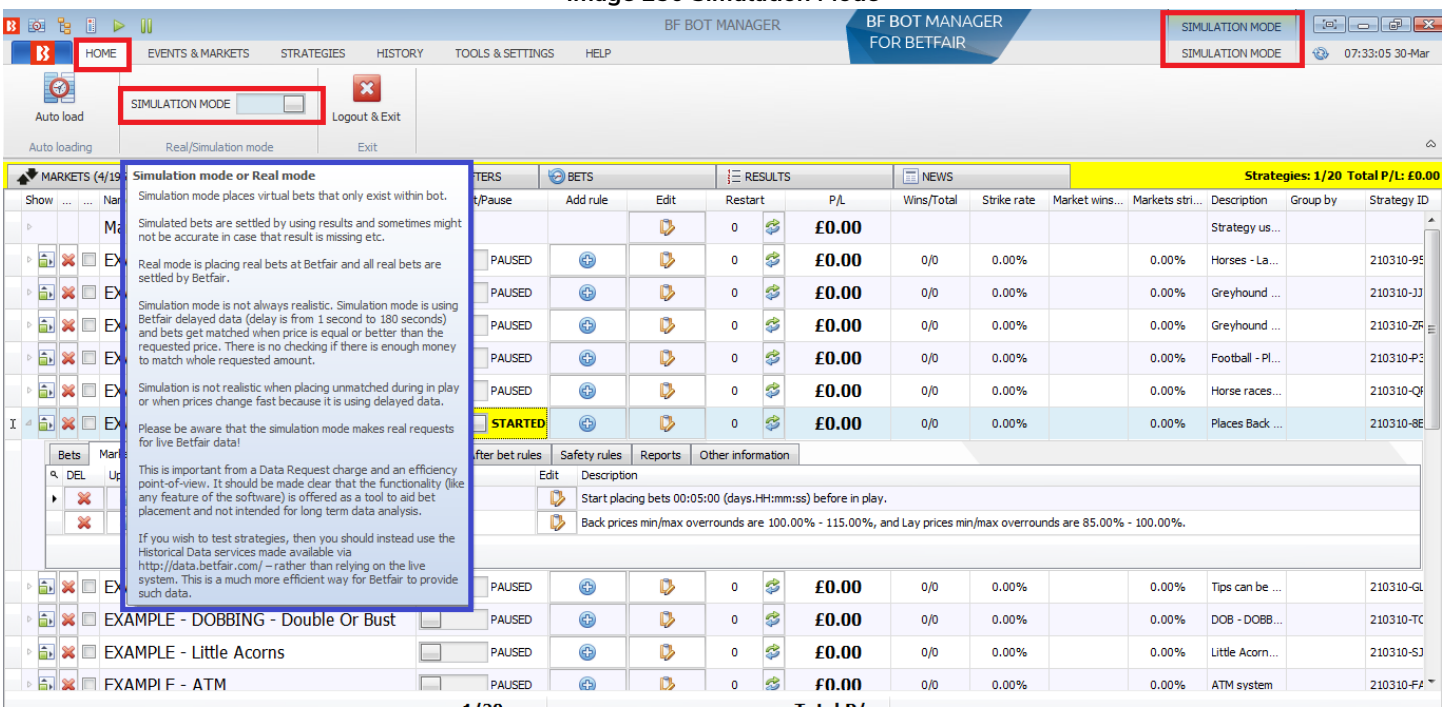
7.1.4 Simulation/Real Mode

In Simulation mode, no real bets are placed. In Real mode, actual bets will be placed. One instance of the software can only run in Simulation mode or Real mode. It cannot run some strategies in simulation mode and others in Real mode. For this, you would need 2 instances of the software running on 2 PCs.

Simulation is meant for testing that strategies follow the rules and try to place bets as intended. But since it uses delayed data (between a 1-180 seconds delay), the results may not be exactly the same as in Real mode. The accuracy of the results in simulation mode depend on the type of strategy that you are testing.

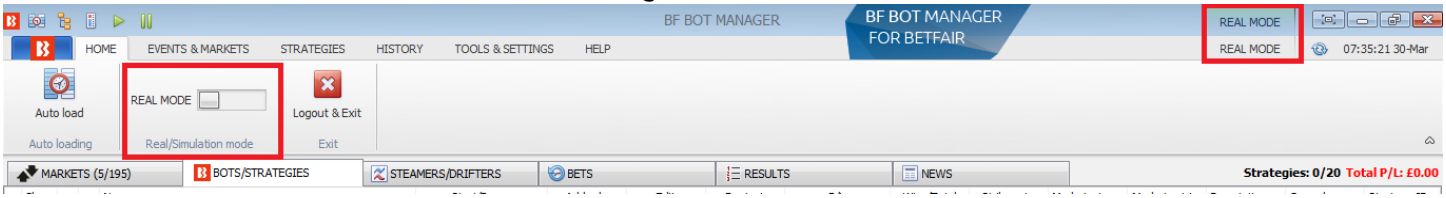
When trying new strategies for the first time, always run them in **simulation mode** first, then with small stakes in **real mode**, and then slowly increase the stakes to your desired level. This is to make sure the bot is running exactly as you want it, because small errors in settings can sometimes lead to big losses. The software starts up in simulation mode by default. You can change to real mode in the **HOME** screen by clicking the **SIMULATION MODE** button.

Image 250 Simulation Mode



The Real/Simulation mode button will now change to say REAL MODE and the top right hand corner status will also change to REAL MODE.

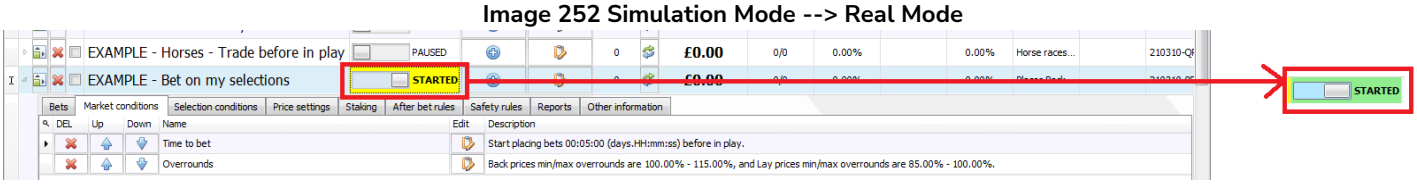
Image 251 Real Mode



We can also know that the software is in real mode because the strategy STARTED button will be in green

for real mode and yellow for simulation mode.

Image 252 Simulation Mode --> Real Mode



Simulation mode is realistic when your strategy is set to place bets at currently available market prices and **while your bet sizes remain small.** If your bet size is large (e.g. £200 or more) then simulation mode is not realistic as your bets could be unmatched in real mode while in simulation mode they would be matched.

Simulation mode in Bf Bot Manager V3 supports Unmatched, Lapsed, Voided and Start Price bets. Bets will be matched only if the requested price is available on the market. Start price bets will be matched at the start price when the market turns in play.

Simulation is not realistic in when:

- Using large stakes, as there might not be enough money to get your bet matched in real mode
- Dutching multiple runners, because in real mode prices would change on all runners as bets get placed and matched
- Forming target overround, as this would result in different offers on real markets because of virtual prices
- Trading, as simulation mode uses delayed data

Simulated bets only exist within bot and are settled by using results provided by exchange API.

If results are not available then the bets will not be settled. If the exchange provides incorrect results then bets might be settled incorrectly.

If your strategy is profitable in simulation mode and you wish to start using it in real mode, then be careful and start with the smallest stakes in real mode. If the strategy keeps performing in real mode like it did in simulation mode and is profitable then increase your stakes gradually. Do not make sudden increases in stakes as your strategy might not perform as well with large stakes as it did with small stakes.

Please note that simulation mode still makes requests for Betfair live data. Simulation mode is meant for checking strategies ***act*** as intended and not meant as a research tool. For data analysis, we recommend using the Betfair Historical Data services. http://data.betfair.com

Delayed data

Simulation mode uses Betfair delayed price data and real mode uses live price data. This functionality is used to protect the live exchange servers from being overloaded by users that keep running bots in simulation mode without placing real bets.

Delayed data is typically delayed from 1 to 180 seconds, but in some cases this can be even more. Real data is not delayed and it always uses current prices.

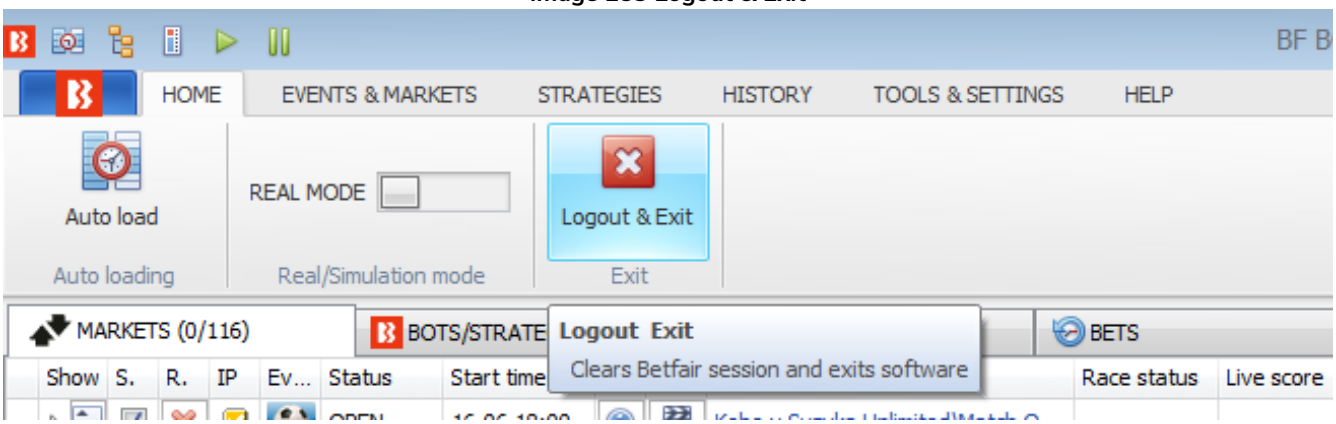
If you keep using simulation mode for long periods of time without placing real bets then it is possible for Betfair to restrict your account and force it to use delayed data all the time, even when you switch to real mode in software. In such cases, the bot will work with delayed data, and in real mode it will place bets by using delayed data. If Betfair restricted your account and you want to start placing real bets then you should contact their support, explain that you want to start placing real bets and ask them to remove the restriction from your account.

If you experience any issues such as missing bets information within a bot, but after few minutes that information appears, then it is most likely that your account has a restriction and that the data is delayed. In which case you should contact Betfair and see if this restriction can be lifted.

7.1.5 Logout & Exit

This tells the software to logout of Betfair and exit. If your software is set to save bet results or bets on exit, then it will perform those actions before shutting down.

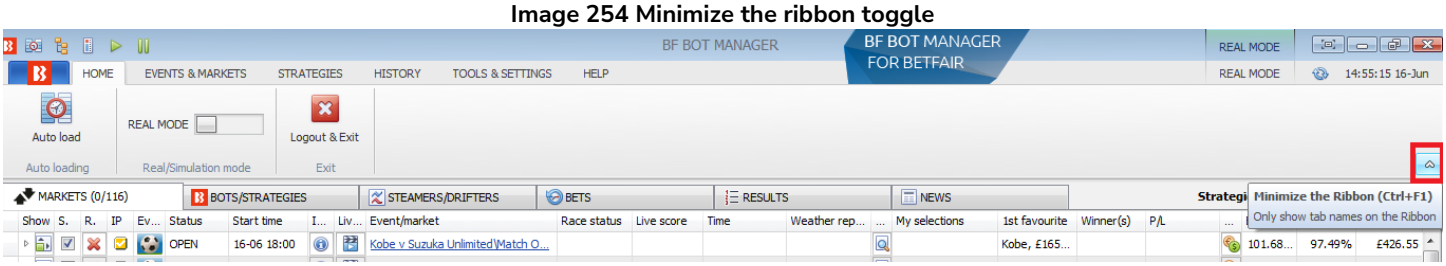
Image 253 Logout & Exit



7.1.6 Minimize the ribbon toggle

To create more space in the main display grid, you can minimize the ribbon with the button on the right. The Main Control Tabs can then be accessed from their headings. Clicking on the button again will re-fix the ribbon in position.

Image 254 Minimize the ribbon toggle



7.2 Events and Markets

The Events and Markets tab is the main screen for managing markets. From here you can set up autoload, open tree navigation, quick load markets, manage “My S.” selection sets and manage the currently loaded markets.

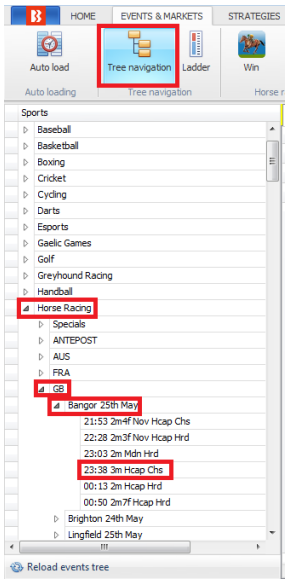
Image 255 Events and Markets Tab

7.2.1 Auto Load

This gives quick access to the auto load settings for loading markets. This button also appears in the Main tab. Click on the Auto load button to open the auto load settings. See Section 7.1.2 Auto Load for more details.

7.2.2 Tree navigation

Image 256



With the tree navigation it is possible to manually add and navigate to markets individually. By clicking on the Tree Navigation button in the Events & Markets tab, we can open the navigation tree for each sport and find the individual markets that we want to load from there. Tree navigation is commonly used when you want the bot to bet only on markets/selections that you manually pick or when you use the ladder/grid interface for manual trading/betting. Left-click on the triangles to open their sub-trees. Then left-click once on a market to load it to the markets screen. The navigation tree is automatically refreshed each hour, but you can refresh it any time you like by clicking on the Reload events tree button at the bottom of the Tree navigation pane.

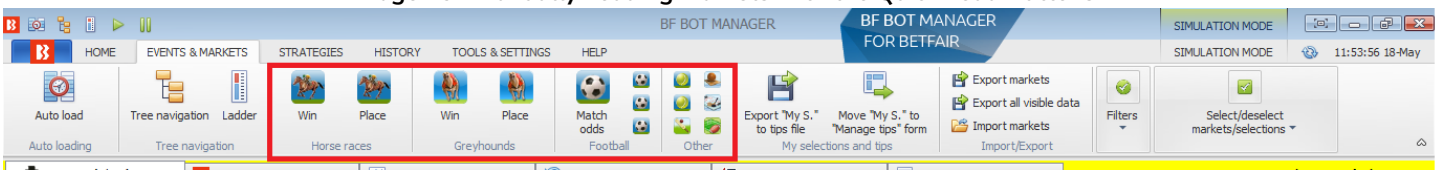
7.2.3 Ladder

The ladder view provides a betting interface that is more familiar to traders.

7.2.4 Quick loading of markets

Quick load buttons allow users to choose which markets they want to use on start-up. This can be done by clicking on the **quick load** buttons on the Markets screen.

Image 257 Manually Loading Markets with the Quick Load Buttons



There are quick load buttons for:

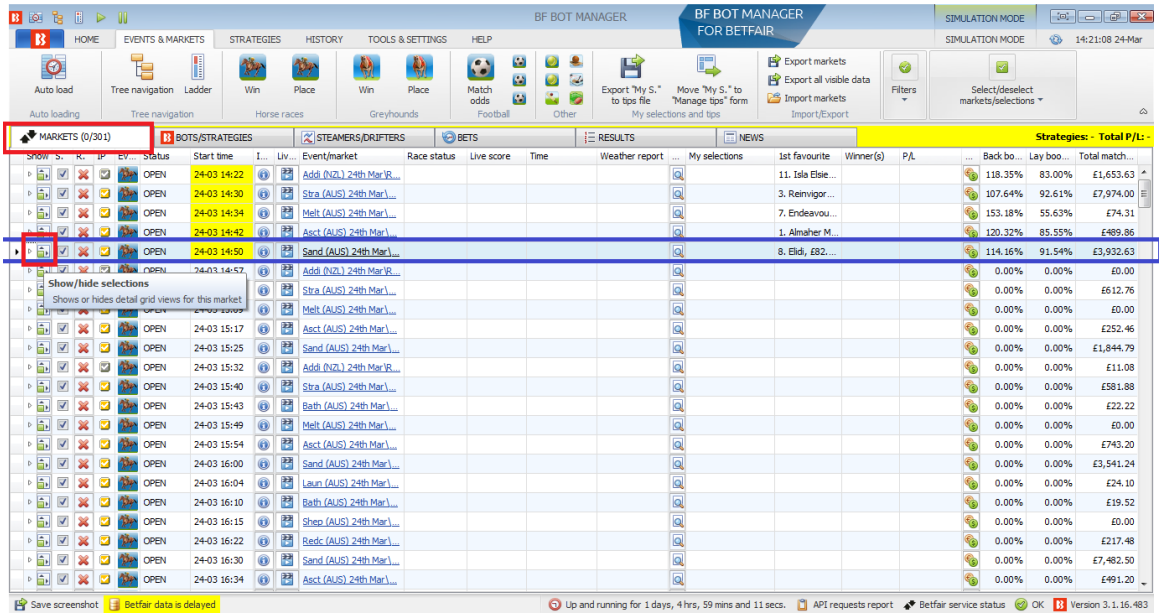
Horses – Win markets
Horses – Place markets
Greyhounds – Win markets
Greyhounds – Place markets
Football – Match odds markets
Football – Over/Under 2.5 goal markets
Football – Over/Under 1.5 goal markets
Football – Correct score markets
Tennis – Match odds markets
Tennis – Set betting markets
Cricket – Match odds markets
Basketball – Match odds markets
Ice hockey – Match odds markets
American football and rugby league markets

The quick load buttons will load the next 100 markets for horse/greyhound races and the next 200 markets for football and other events. To load more than this, you need to setup auto-loading. Those markets will not be reloaded automatically, which means that if you want to load new markets when they are available then you will need to use those quick load icons again or set up auto load settings.

7.2.5 Export "My S." to tips file

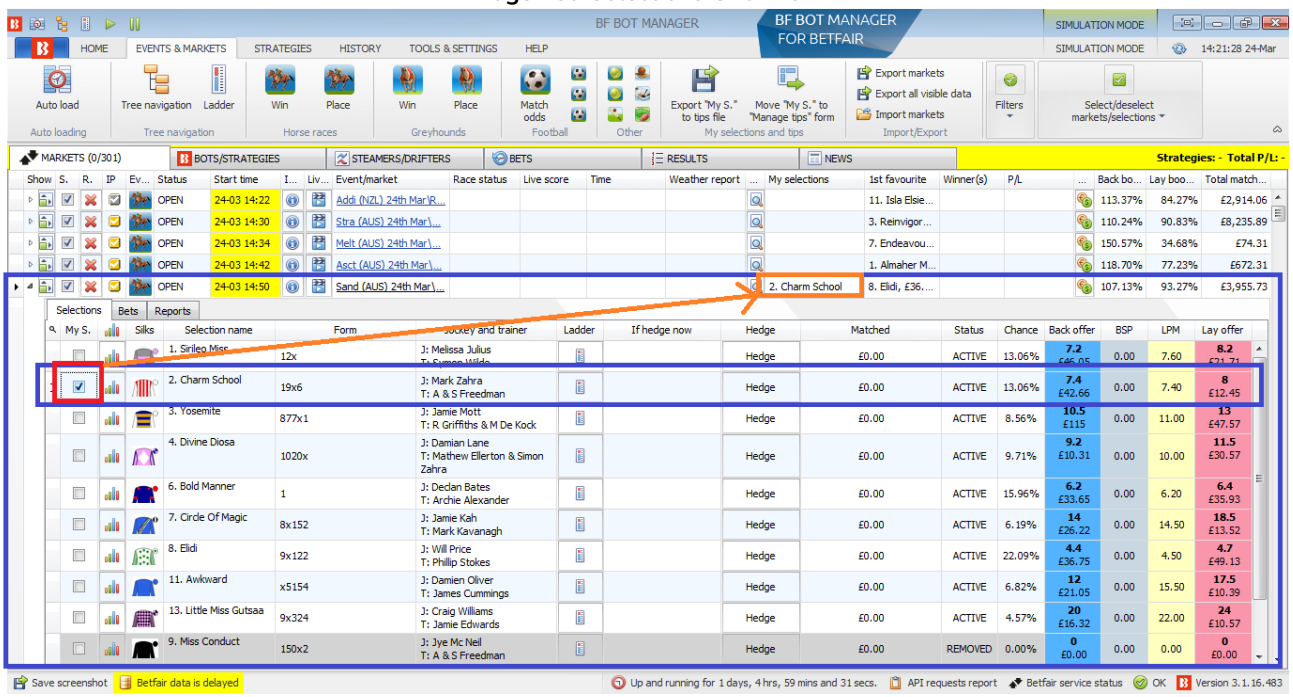
You can create sets of your selections which can be exported as a tips file. These are selections that have been manually ticked by the user in the markets grid screen.

Image 258 Market Grid View



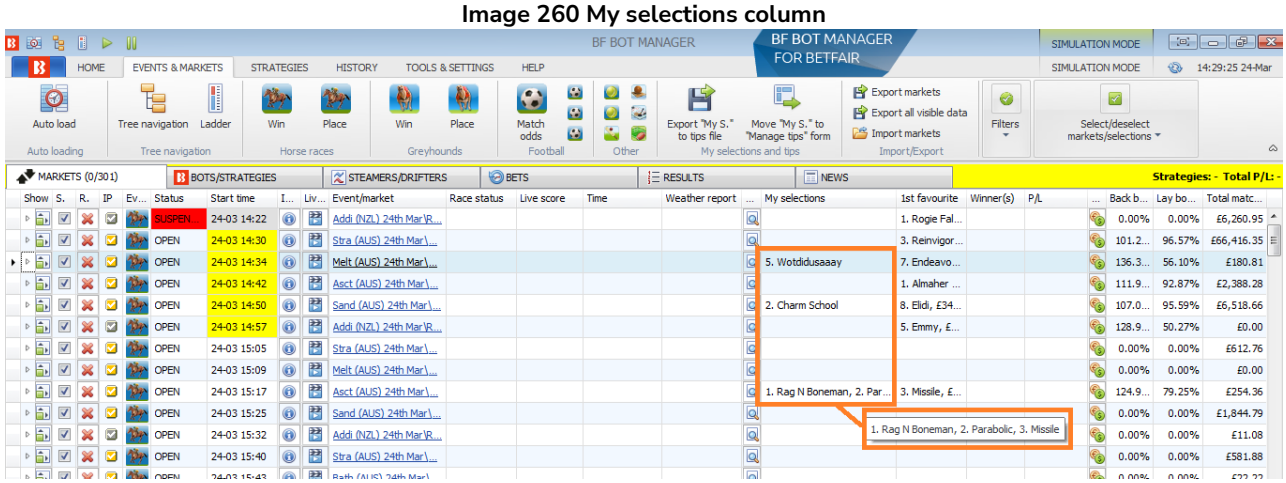
If we go to the **MARKETS** tab and click on the Show/Hide selections toggle, it will open the selections grid view for an event.

Image 259 Selections Grid View



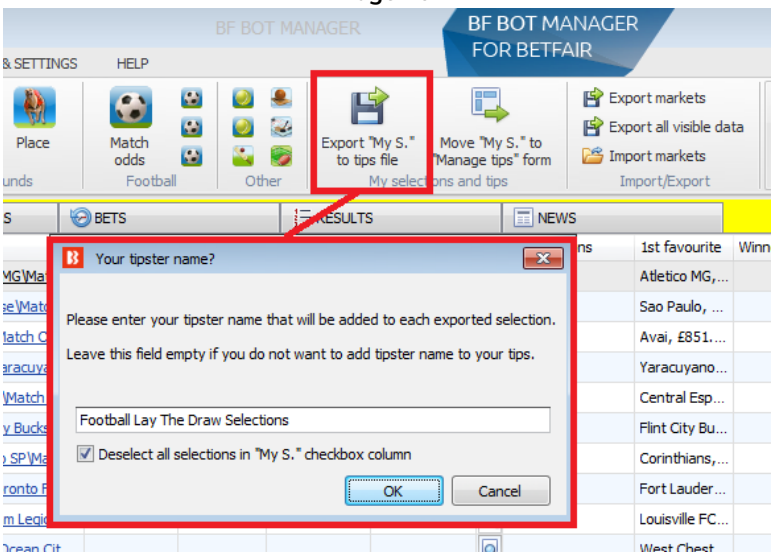
Here, if we click on the "My S." check box (red) on the left of the selection we want, this will add the selection to the "My selections" column (orange). The "Bet on My selections" strategy will only look at these selections when trying to place bets.

Image 260 My selections column



Then we can click on the "Export "My. S" to tips file button. This will export the selection set to a .csv file.

Image 261



You can specify a name for the selection set. This will be added as a tipster/provider name next to each selection in the set. If the checkbox is left checked, it will deselect all the selections in the "My S." checkbox column in the markets grid. This makes it easier to clear the current selections automatically and then create another set of selections. The tipster name is in a .csv file so you should not use quotation marks " or commas , in the tipster/provider name field.

After that select the file to save selections and click the Save button.

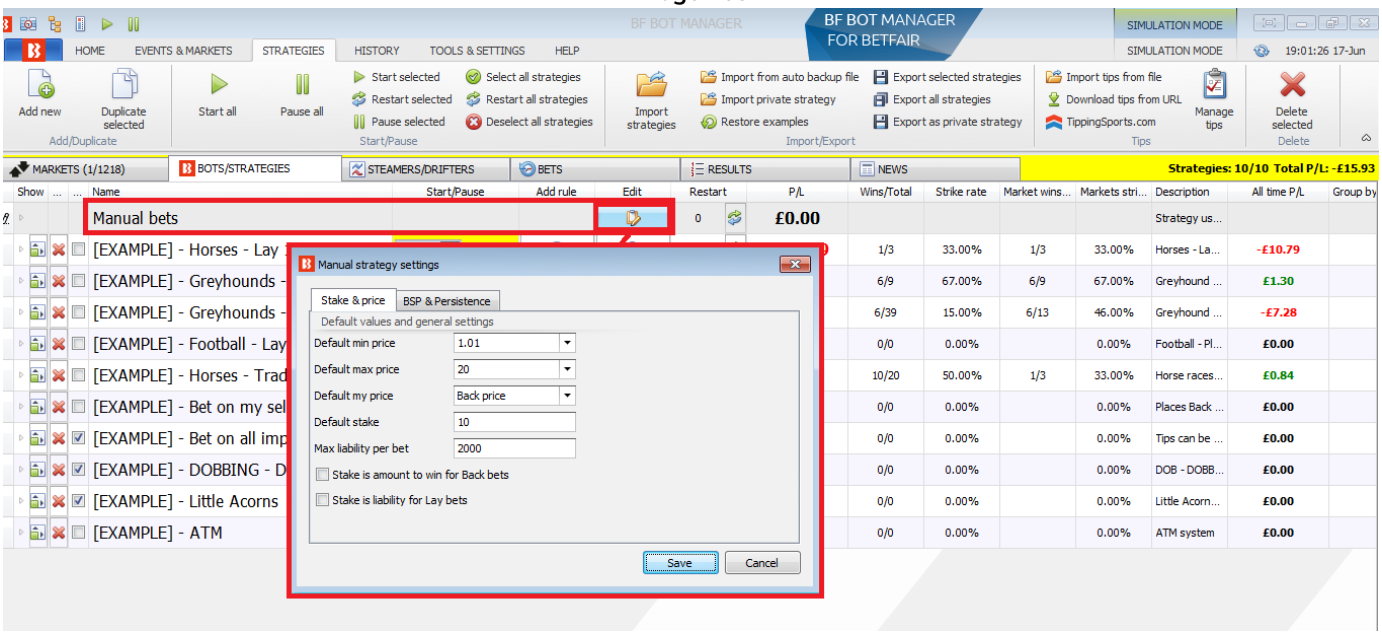
In the Market Screen in the Selections Grid View, you can add columns to specify extra bet settings.
You can also specify the following values for your selections that will be exported:

- Back – to use the Back bet type with selection
- Lay – to use the Lay bet type with selection
- Min price – to only place a bet if the selection has a price higher than the set min price
- Max price – to only place a bet if the selection has a price lower than the set max price
- Stake – the bet amount to be placed on the selection

Image 262

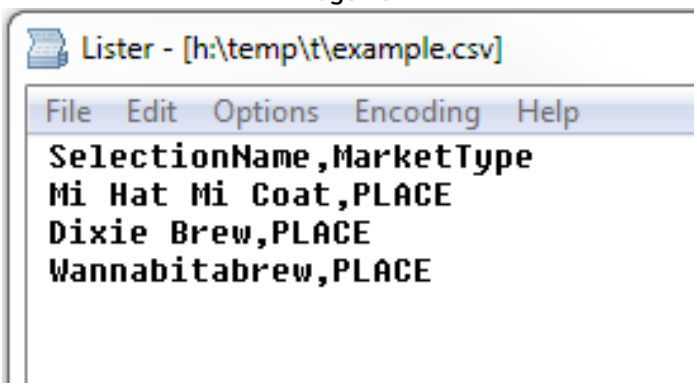
If you do not specify the above values, then default values will be exported to the file. **The default values can be set at the manual strategy settings form.**

Image 263



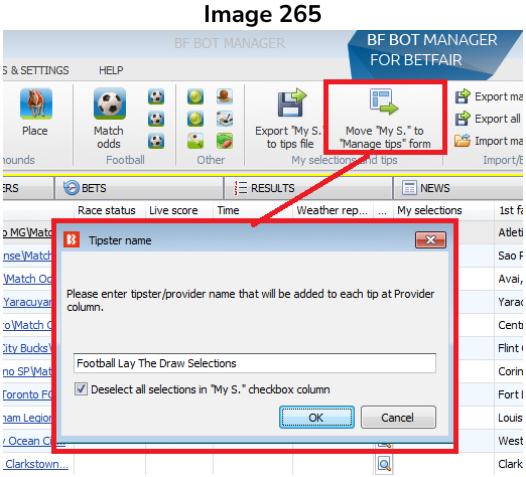
You can also manually create a text file saved in .csv format with your selections and specify only the basic information such as the selection name and the market type (WIN, PLACE, FORECAST, MATCH_ODDS etc.). Here is an example of a CSV file with 2 pieces of basic information (SelectionName and MarketType) for 3 selections that can be imported successfully.

Image 264



7.2.6 Move "My S." to manage tips form

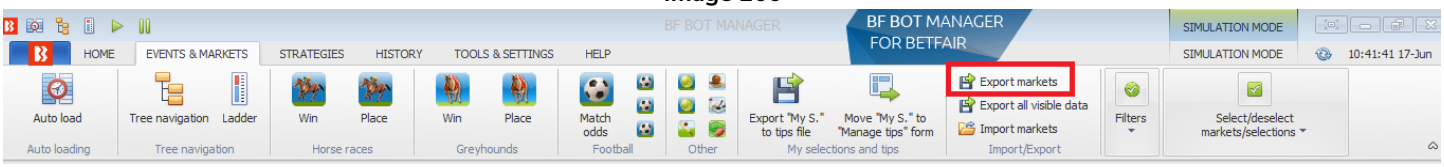
Image 265



This will move the “My S.” selections directly to the Manage tips form. You can set a tipster/provider name which will appear next to each of these selections in the Manage tips from. This tipster/provider name can then be used with the bet on imported tips staking rule to enable a strategy to be applied to this selection set. If the checkbox is left checked, it will deselect all the selections in the “My S.” checkbox column in the markets grid. This makes it easier to clear the current selections automatically and then create another set of selections. The tipster name is in a .csv file so you should not use quotation marks “ or commas , in the tipster/provider name field.

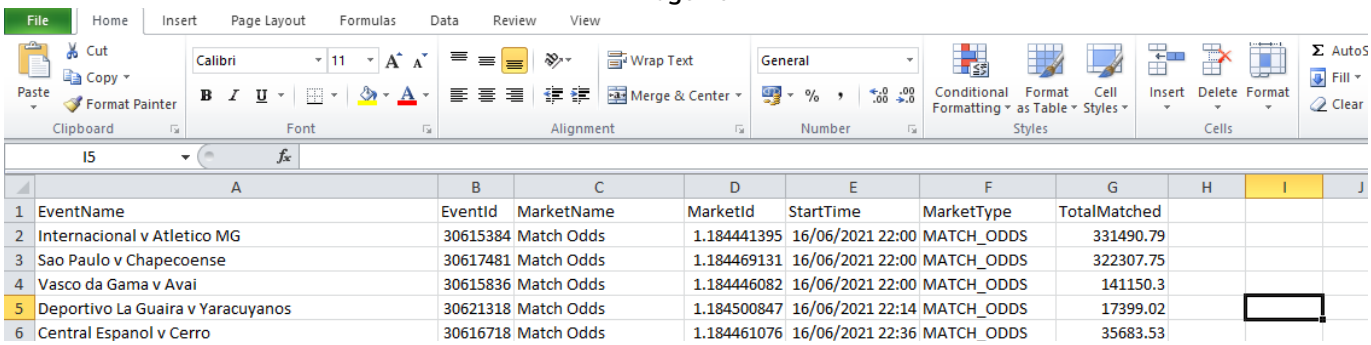
7.2.7 Export markets

Image 266



You can export the current loaded markets to a .CSV file by clicking on this button.
The .CSV file will include the EventName, EventId, MarketName, MarketId, StartTime and TotalMatched.

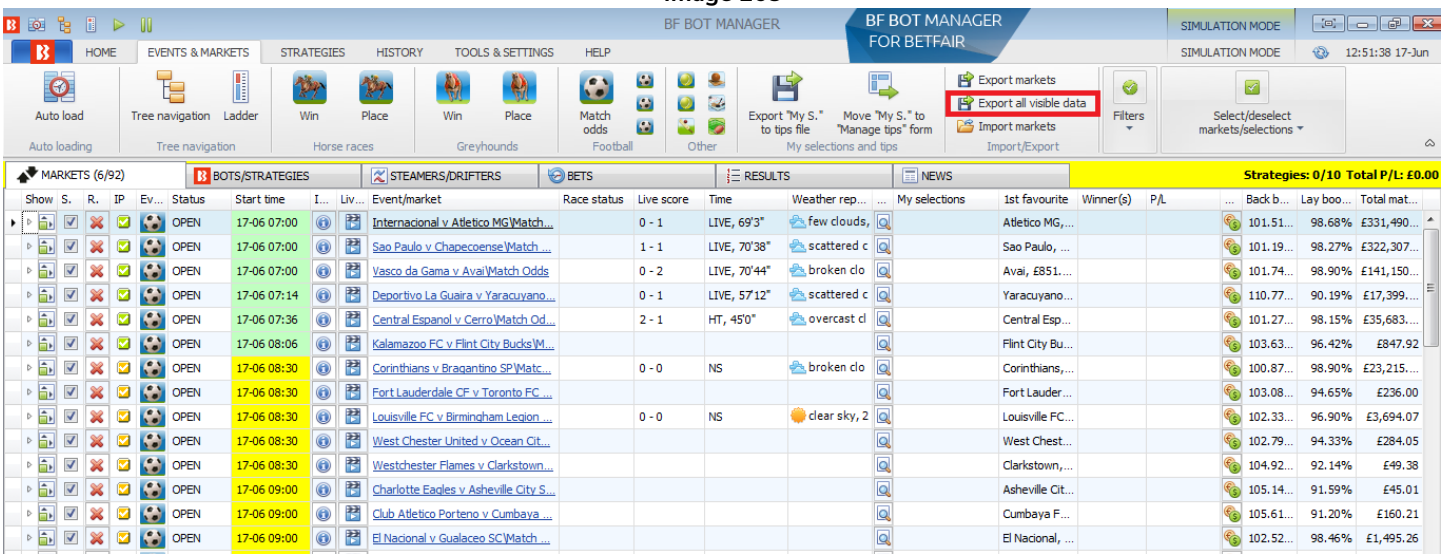
Image 267



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	EventName	EventId	MarketName	MarketId	StartTime	MarketType	TotalMatched
2	Internacional v Atletico MG	30615384	Match Odds	1.184441395	16/06/2021 22:00	MATCH_ODDS	331490.79
3	Sao Paulo v Chapecoense	30617481	Match Odds	1.184469131	16/06/2021 22:00	MATCH_ODDS	322307.75
4	Vasco da Gama v Avai	30615836	Match Odds	1.184446082	16/06/2021 22:00	MATCH_ODDS	141150.3
5	Deportivo La Guaira v Yaracuyanos	30621318	Match Odds	1.184500847	16/06/2021 22:14	MATCH_ODDS	17399.02
6	Central Espanol v Cerro	30616718	Match Odds	1.184461076	16/06/2021 22:36	MATCH_ODDS	35683.53

7.2.8 Export all visible data

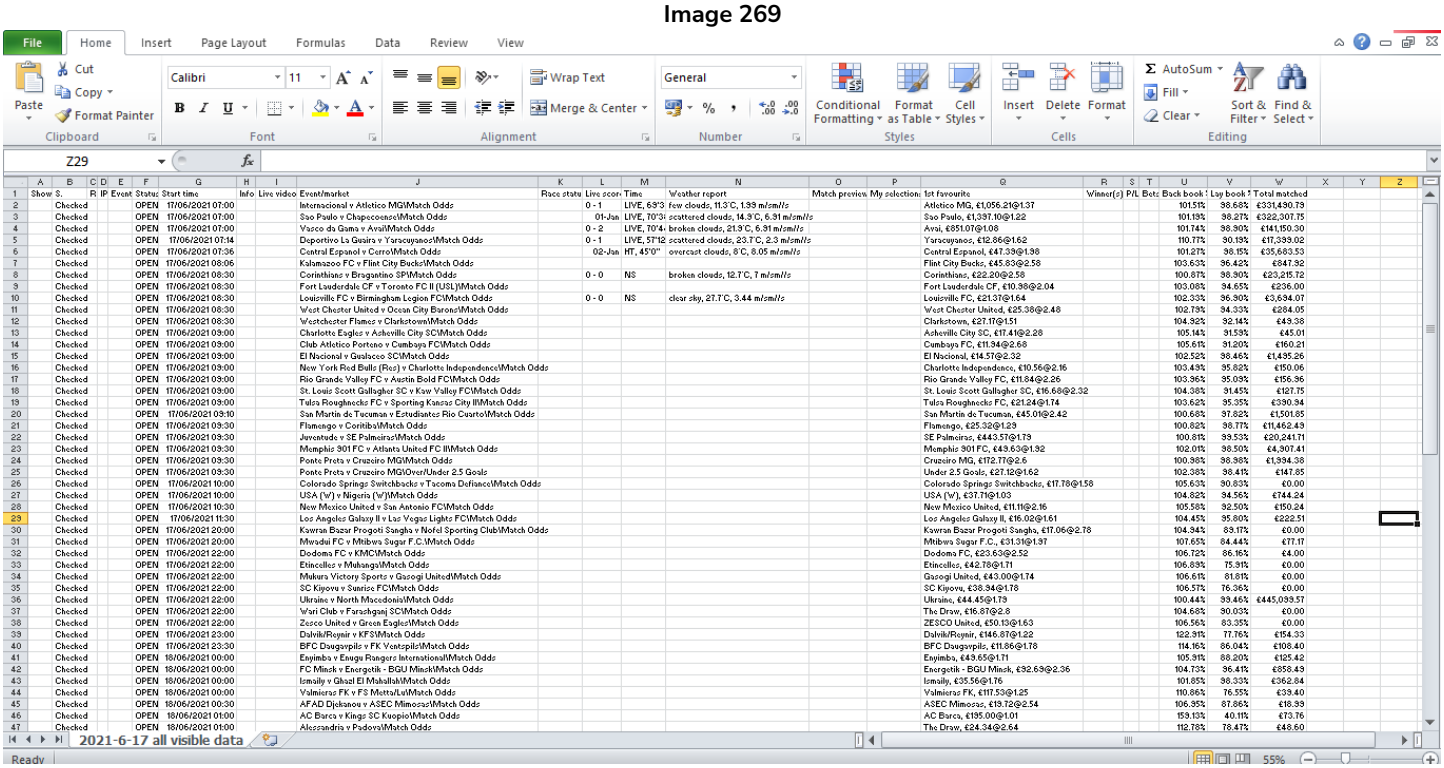
Image 268



7.2.8 Export all visible data

Exporting all visible data will export all the columns that are visible in the markets grid screen. You can add columns by right clicking on any header and selecting **Column Chooser**. You can also remove columns by right clicking that column header and clicking **Hide This Column**.

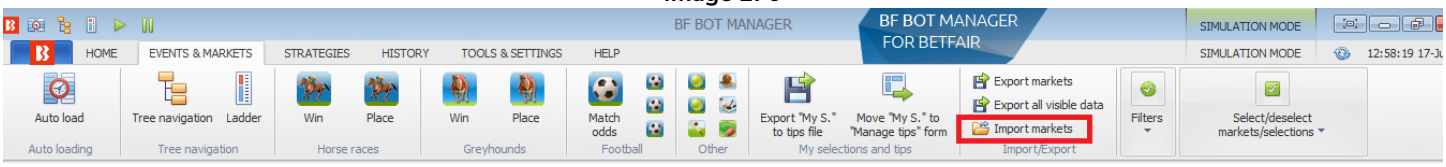
Image 269



It will export all visible columns for all loaded markets, not just the top markets visible on the PC monitor at that moment.

7.2.9 Import markets

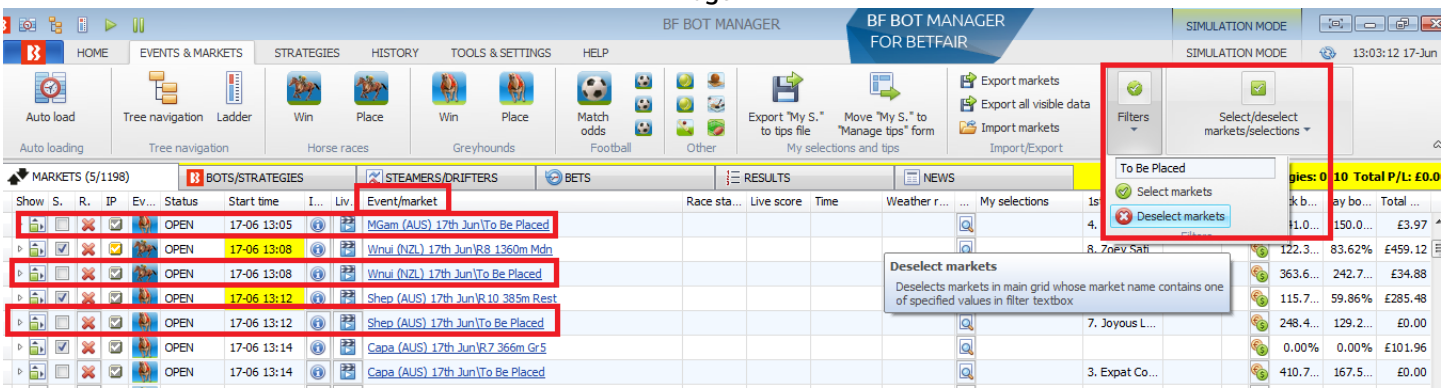
Image 270



You can import markets in .CSV format from a file with this button.

7.2.10 Filters

Image 271



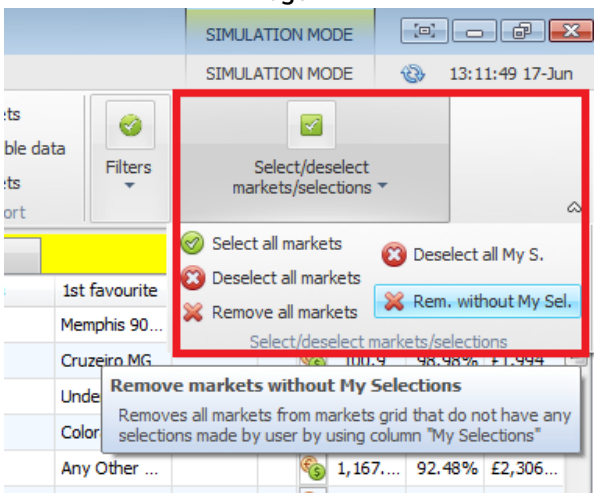
You can select or deselect markets with a specified text in their Market Name using this filter and buttons. For example, if you quick loaded Win and Place horse markets, but decide you only need the Win markets, you can deselect the Place markets by entering “To Be Placed” in the filter field and clicking on “Deselect markets”. You can see in the image how only the Place markets have been deselected. These can be Selected again by clicking on the “Select markets” button.

Deselecting a market means that the software will not monitor these markets or ask for price data for them. This frees up more computing resources for the bot to focus on getting the prices from markets that you do want.

The Market Name column includes items such as the teams playing and the market type for football and the date, race track, country, distance, race type or market type for horse racing.

7.2.11 Select/deselect markets/selections

Image 272

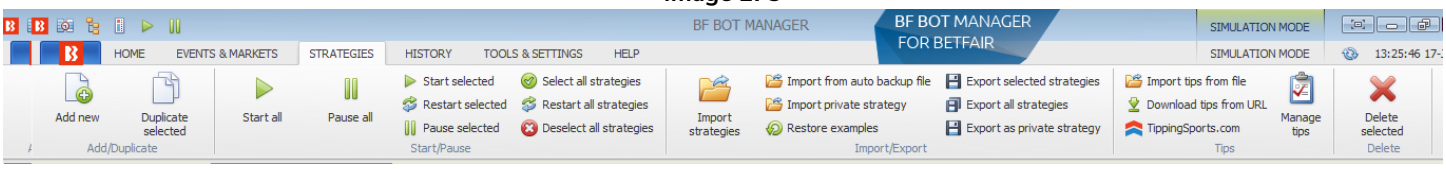


The Select/deselect markets/selections drop down menu offers a number of market management tools.
Note: Remember that "**Select**" means to keep that market monitored. "**Deselect**" means to stop monitoring a market. But even with a market deselected, its results and in-play statistics (if available) will still be updated. Deselect just means that the market will not have any price data requested from Betfair for it. When price data is received, it is checked against all running strategies. The more strategies that are running, and the more markets being monitored, means more strain on the computer resources. So deselecting unwanted markets can improve speed and performance. "**Remove"** means to remove the market entirely from the software, so no more data will be kept from that market. So not even any results will be downloaded for removed markets. Removed markets that have bets on them will not have their strategy P/L updated.

Select all markets	Select all currently loaded markets for monitoring and getting price data.
Deselect all markets	Deselect all currently loaded markets for monitoring and getting price data.
Remove all markets	Remove all currently loaded markets. (This means that even results will not be downloaded or strategy P/L updated if there are bets on these markets.)
Deselect My S.	Deselect markets which have the My S. checkbox ticked.
Rem. Without My Sel.	Remove all markets that DO NOT have the My S. checkbox ticked. (This means that even results will not be downloaded or strategy P/L updated if there are bets on these markets.)

7.3 Strategies

Image 273

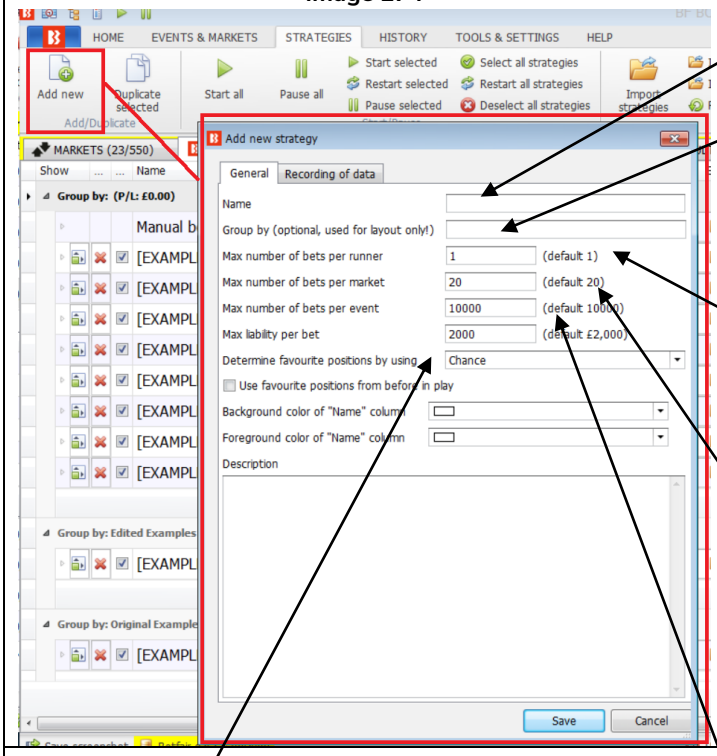


The strategies tab has controls for creating, managing and deleting strategies.

7.3.1 Add new

To create a new strategy, click on "Add new". The general edit form will come up with default settings.

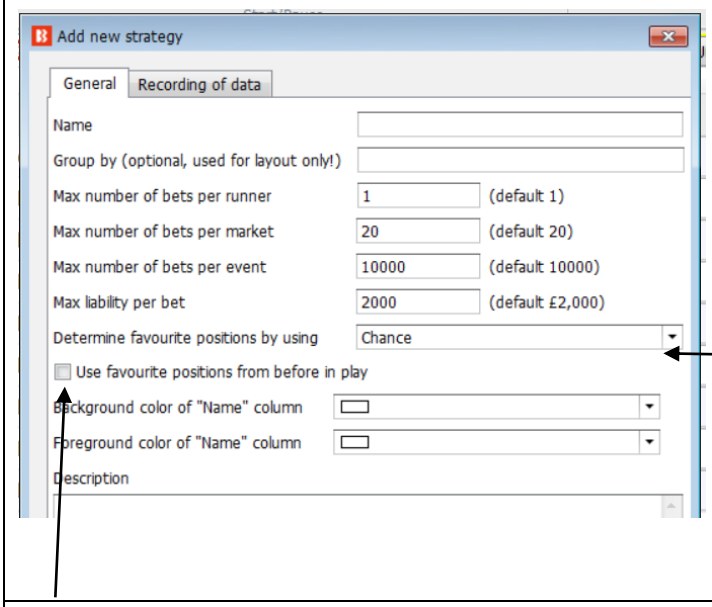
Image 274



Notes
This is the **strategy name** that will appear on the Bots/Strategies screen.
This is the "**Group by**" name that sets which group this strategy will be arranged in if you want to separate strategies into groups for organization. It is only cosmetic for layout purposes and has no practical effect on the bot actions.
This sets **the number of bets that can be placed on one market selection** by this strategy. Football Match Odds usually have 3 runners (Home, Away or Draw). Horseracing Win markets usually have a lot more runners (Horse 1, Horse 2, Horse 3, Horse 4, etc.) Tennis Match Odds usually have 2 runners (Player 1 or Player 2). So 'runner' means the betting selection available. (For example, the home team in football.)
This sets **the number of bets that can be placed in this market** by this strategy. The default setting of 20 means that if multiple runners are selected in one market, then bets can be placed on all of them. (For example if 2 or 3 horses were selected in the same race or if 3 or 4 correct scores were selected in a football correct score market.)
This sets **the maximum number of bets that can be placed on this event** by this strategy. This can be useful if your strategy bets on multiple markets associated with the same event. i.e. Football Match Odds, Over/Under markets, Half Time result, etc.

Max liability per bet sets the maximum amount risked on one bet. For the default setting of £2,000 that means the largest possible back bet would be £2,000 and the largest possible lay bet liability would be £2,000. (So if the odds were 3.00, then the maximum lay stake would be £1,000.) This strategy is set to £10,000. For level staking, the stake is controlled elsewhere, but as more complicated staking rules are added, it can be a good safety feature to set a maximum liability to match your risk level.

Image 275 Edit Strategy

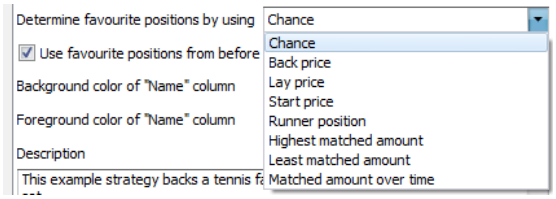


This sets **how the favorite is decided**. By using "chance" means the runner with the highest probability of winning is the favorite. The "chance" value is calculated by using the currently available back and lay price.

chance value = (1 / ((back price + lay price) / 2.0))

If one of the prices is not available then the chance is 0%.

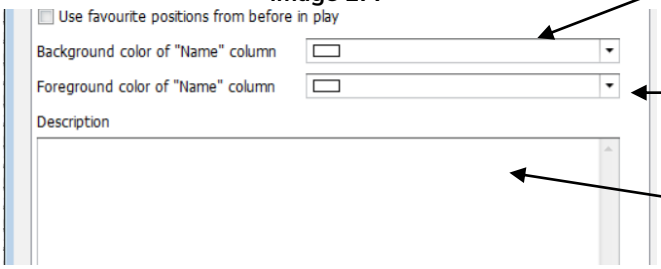
Image 276 Determine favorite by



This setting has a number of options in a drop down menu, but we do not need to change this.

If unchecked, the bot will look at the currently available odds to determine the favorite. If checked, the bot will look at the **recorded prices with the best overround near the start of the event** to determine the favorite*. (By default, the best overround from 5 minutes before event to the start time.) The default setting is unchecked.

Image 277



This **changes the background color of the name cell**, and is useful to make the names of your active strategies stand out.

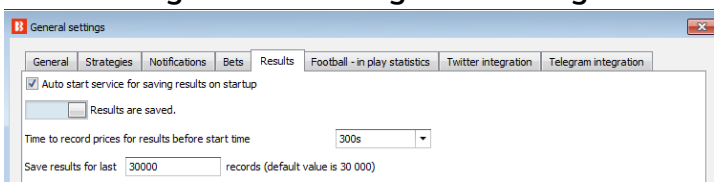
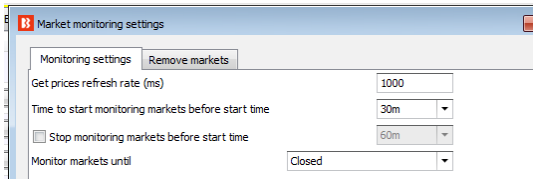
This **changes the text color of the name cell.** It is another way to make the names of your active strategies stand out and be recognized.

This is a **text box** where you can add information and notes relating to the strategy. It can be useful to put key information about what the strategy does so you can quickly remember if returning to it later.

***Software Logic used for determining favorite for "Use favourite positions from before in play" checkbox.**

Time	Check Box	Prices used to determine favorite positions
Before in play	Unchecked	Current prices
Before in play	Checked	The prices with the best overround recorded by software. Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings-> Results" 300s is default setting) If no prices have been recorded yet, then it will use the current prices.
In play	Unchecked	Current prices
In play	Checked	The prices with the best overround recorded by software. Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings-> Results" 300s is default setting)

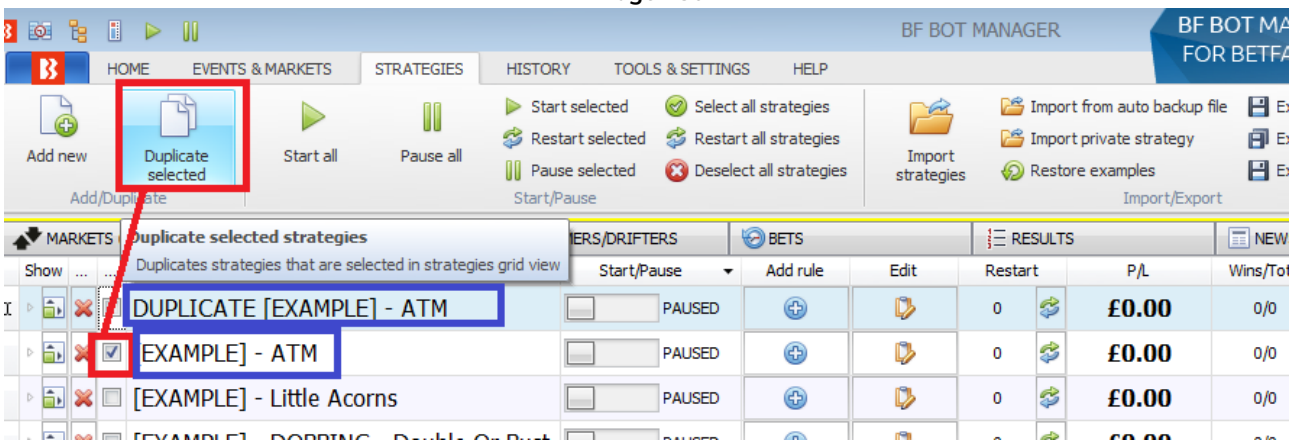
Notes about recording time settings for the prices used to decide favourite positions from before in play.

Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings->Results" 300s is default setting)	**Image 278 Recording Time Settings** 
The "Tools & Settings->Monitoring settings" - "Time to start monitoring markets before start time" default setting of 30 minutes is **not** used to determine the favorite. This is for other rules such as the steamer/drifter rule.	**Image 279 Monitoring Settings** 

For most users betting on their own selections, there will be no need to change any of the settings here. Click "Cancel" to close the box without making any changes. Click "Save" to keep any changes.

7.3.2 Duplicate selected

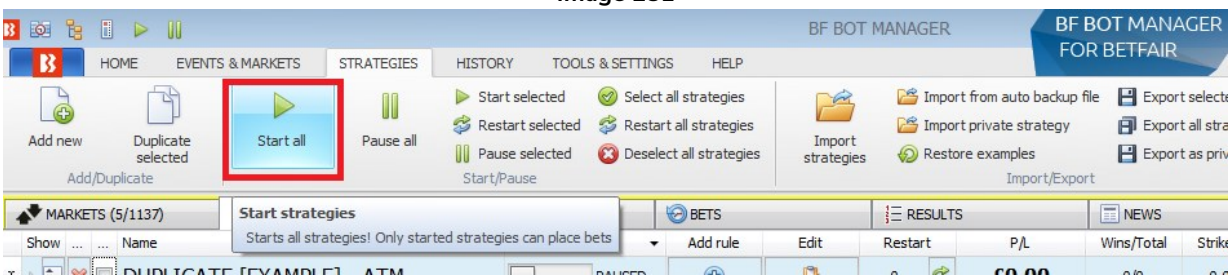
Image 280



If you tick the checkbox on the left of a strategy, then click on "Duplicate selected", then it will create a copy of the selected strategy with "DUPLICATE" added before the name. You can then edit the duplicated strategy as you want. This is useful when you want to adapt an existing strategy. You can duplicate multiple strategies at once if you select many strategies.

7.3.3 Start all

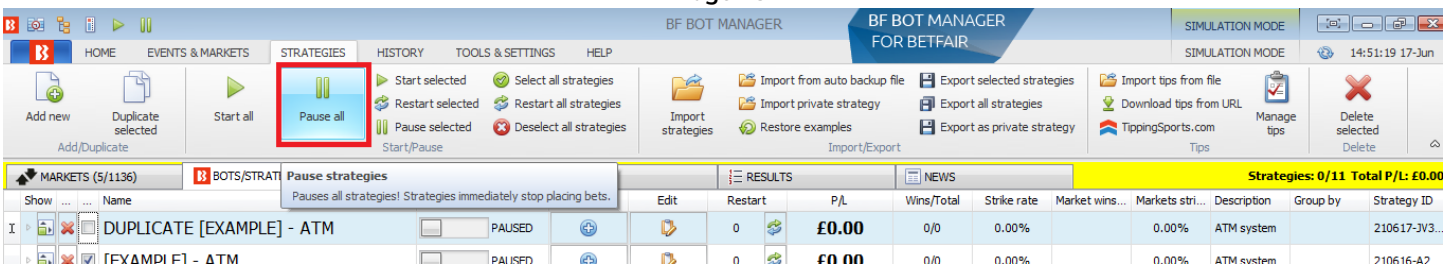
Image 281



This will start all the strategies in the bot. Only started strategies can place bets.

7.3.4 Pause all

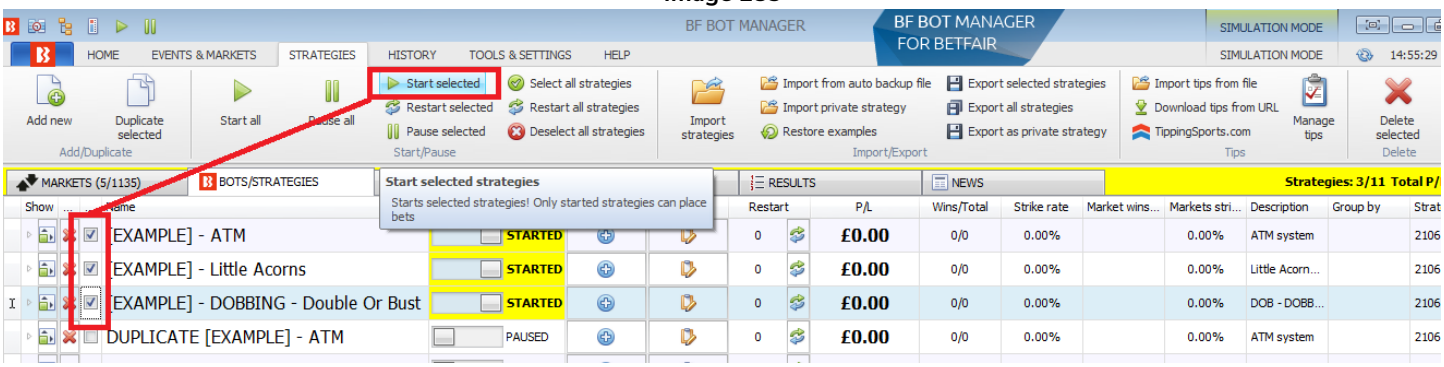
Image 282



This will pause all strategies. Paused strategies will not place any new bets. Matched bets that have not been settled yet will still be active and settled as normal. If a strategy has any hedge rules triggered by in-play events for matched bets, then those hedge bets will NOT be executed when paused.

7.3.5 Start selected

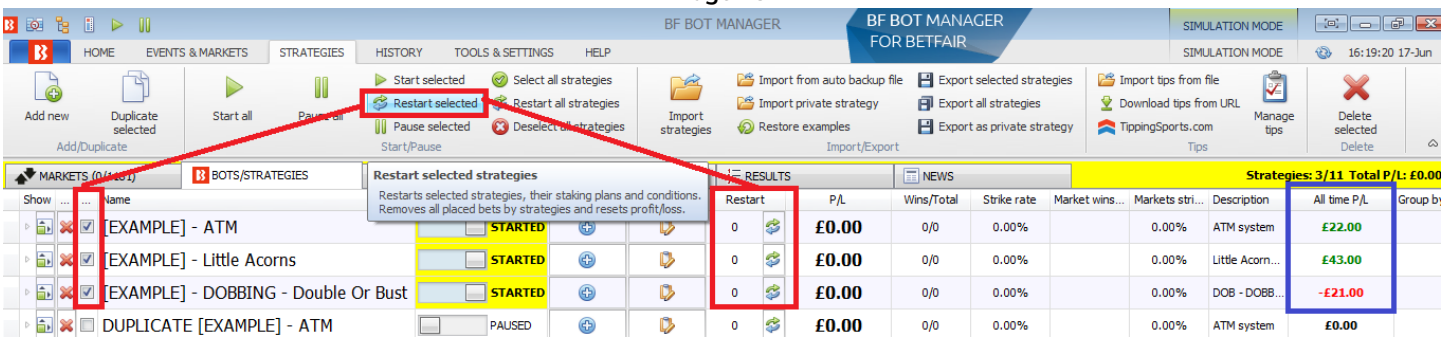
Image 283



This will start only the selected strategies that have the checkbox on the left of their name ticked. This is useful when you want to start a group of selected strategies all at the same moment.

7.3.6 Restart selected

Image 284

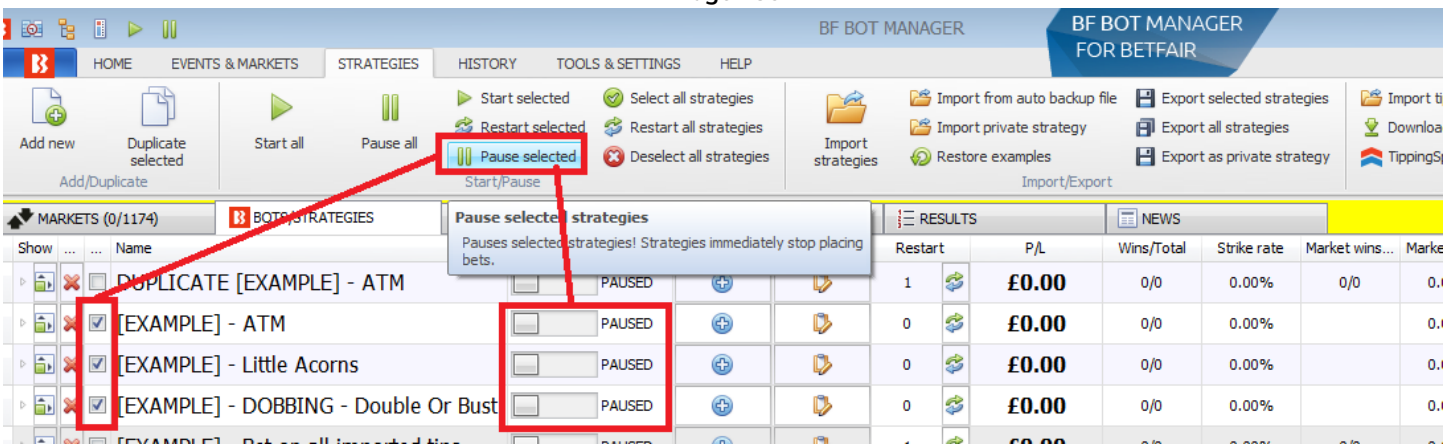


This will reset the selected strategies (those that have the checkbox on the left of their name ticked). **Restarting a strategy removes all placed bets history, results and profit/loss. It also resets its bank if a staking plan has one. The All time P/L column on the right is NOT reset.** So you can see how many times a strategy has been reset in its Restart column and its all time P/L even after it has been restarted. Clicking on "Restart selected" does not change the strategy from "Pause" to "Started". It just resets the strategy P/L and

bet history. You still need to click on “Start all” or “Start selected” or the individual pause/start button to switch on the strategy.

7.3.7 Pause selected

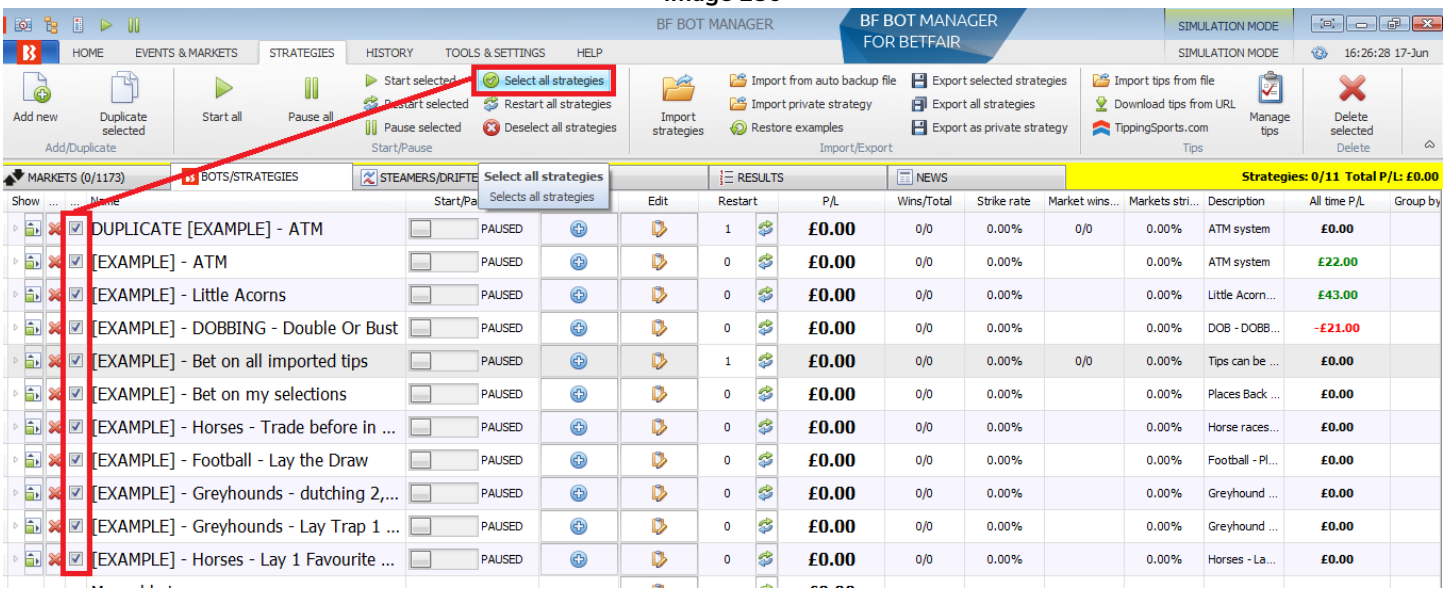
Image 285



This will pause the selected strategies (those that have the checkbox on the left of their name ticked). Paused strategies will not place any new bets. Matched bets that have not been settled yet will still be active and settled as normal. If a strategy has any hedge rules triggered by in-play events for matched bets, then those hedge bets will NOT be executed when paused.

7.3.8 Select all strategies

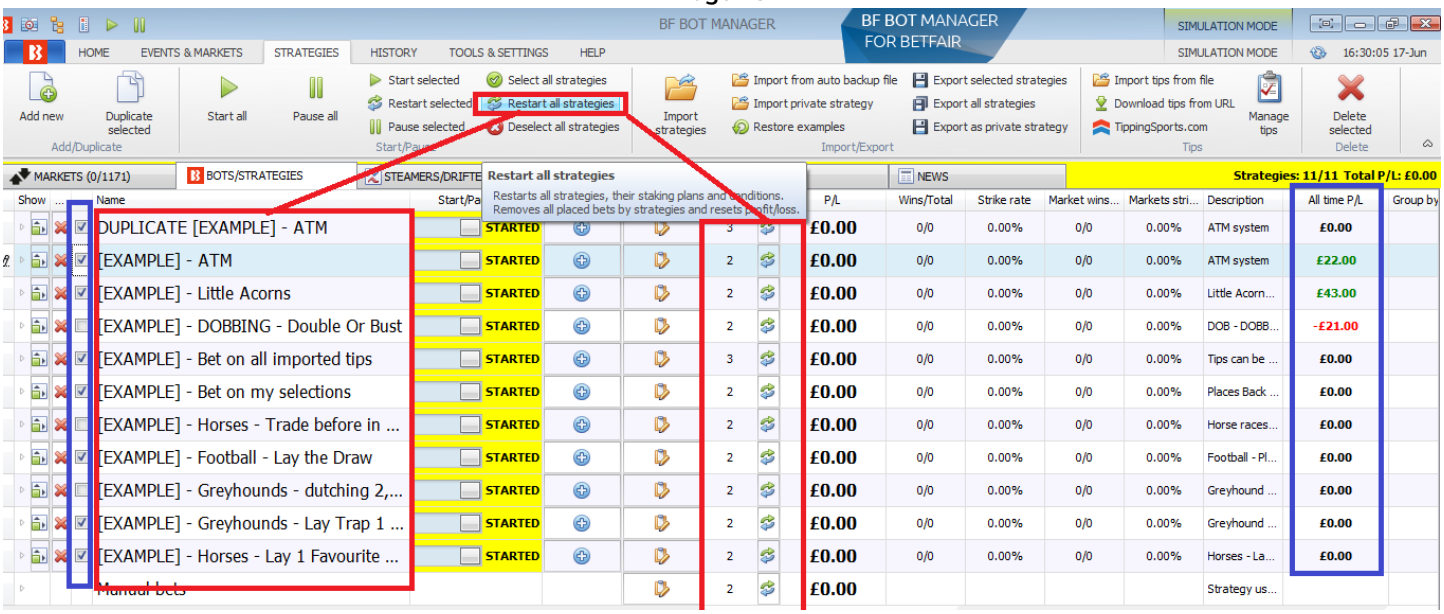
Image 286



This will select all strategies in the bot by adding a tick to all their Select checkboxes.

7.3.9 Restart all strategies

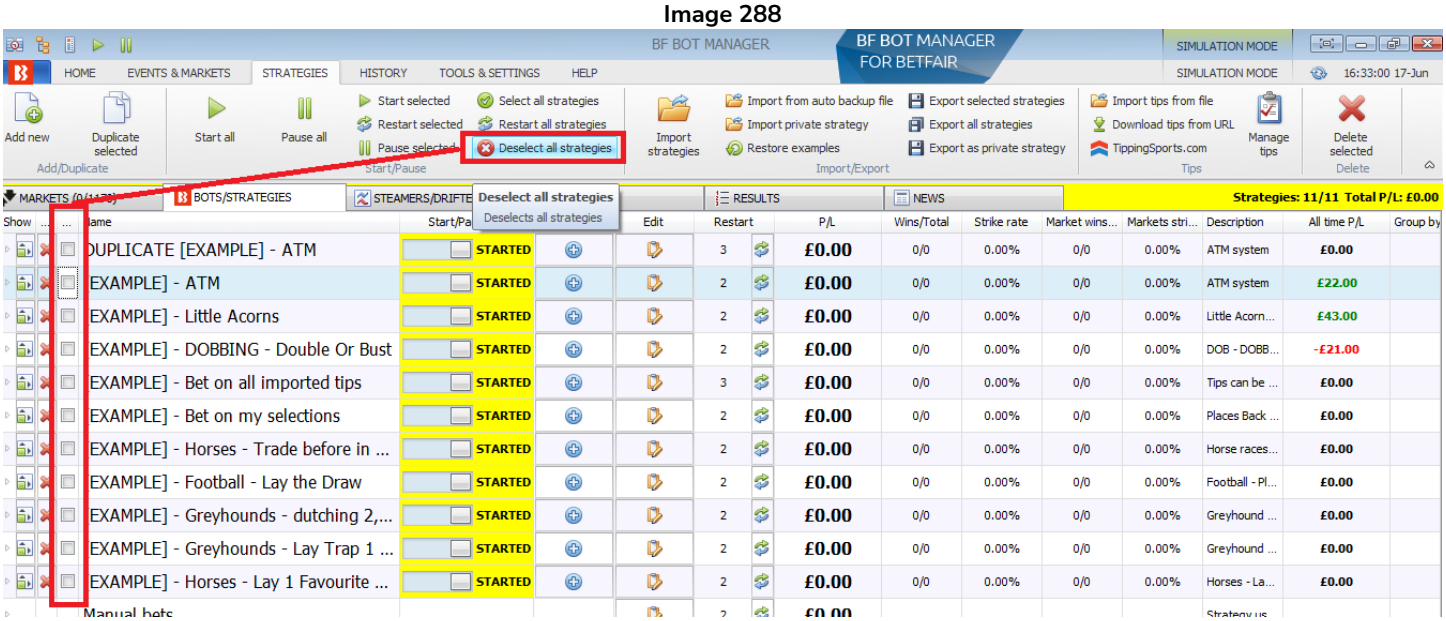
Image 287



This will restart all strategies, regardless of whether they have a tick in the checkbox next to their name or not. **Restarting a strategy removes all placed bets history, results and profit/loss. It also resets its bank if a staking plan has one. The "All time P/L" column on the right is NOT reset.** So you can see how many times a strategy has been reset in its Restart column and its All time P/L even after it has been restarted. Clicking on "Restart selected" does not change the strategy from "Pause" to "Started". It just resets the strategy P/L and bet history. You still need to click on "Start all" or "Start selected" or the individual pause/start button to switch on the strategy.

7.3.10 Deselect all strategies

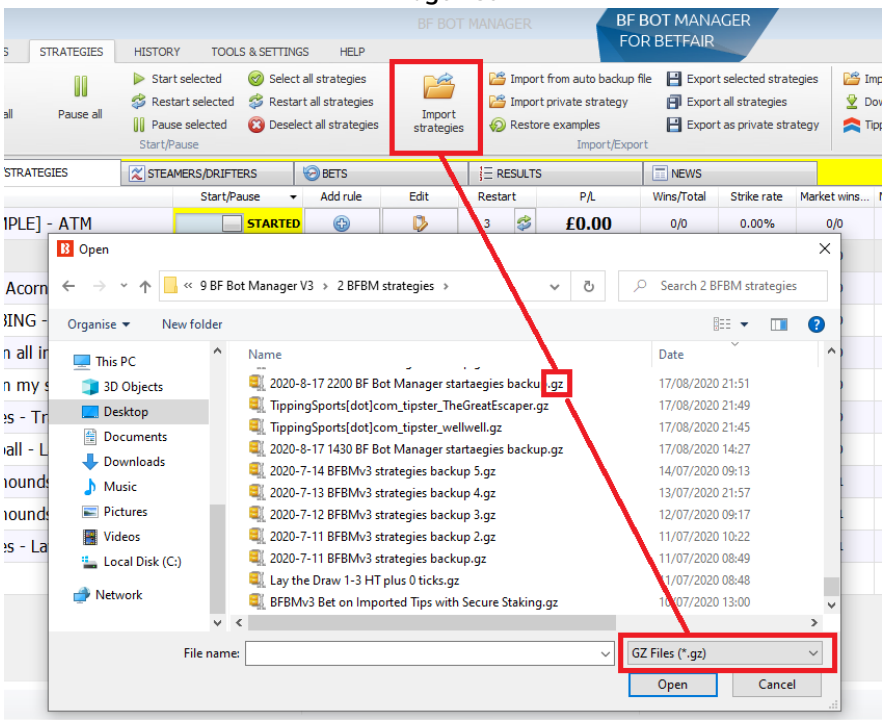
Image 288



This will deselect all strategies by removing the tick in the checkbox on the left of strategy names. This is often a useful thing to do just before duplicating some strategies to make sure you only have your intended strategies selected for duplication.

7.3.11 Import strategies

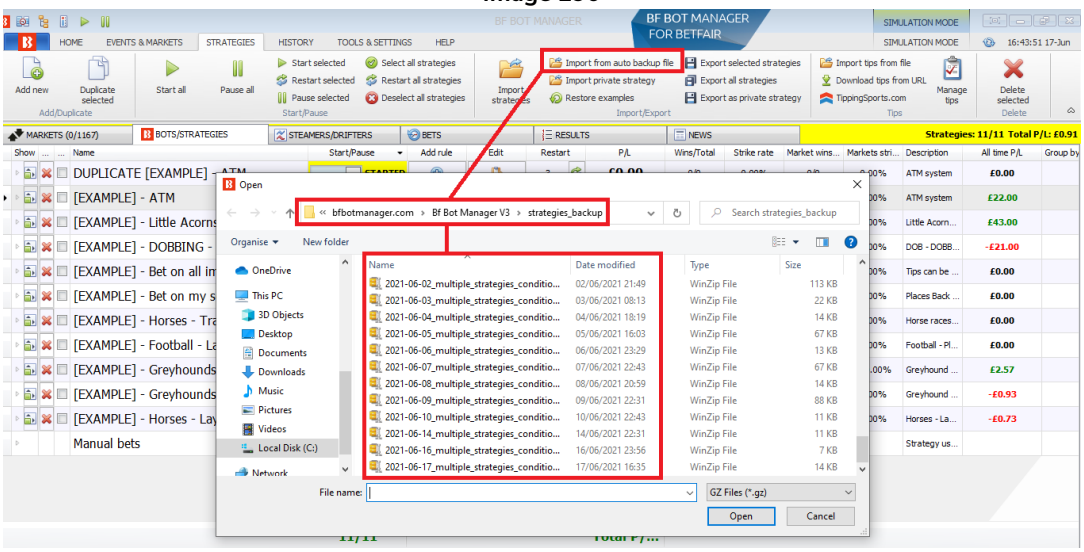
Image 289



You can import strategies that are saved in .gz format.

7.3.12 Import from auto backup file

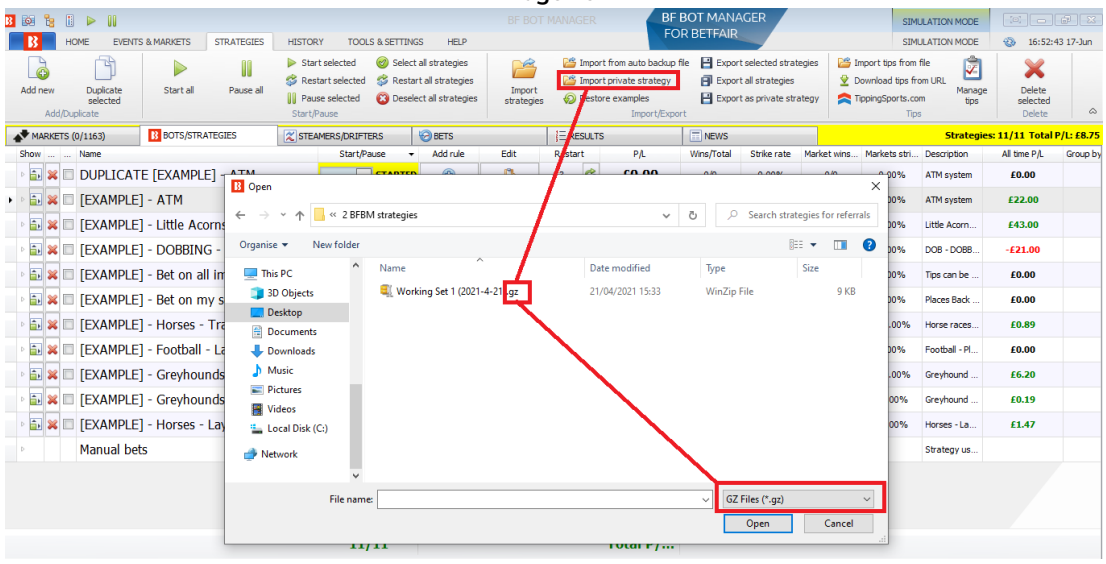
Image 290



The software saves an auto backup file of strategies when the software is shutdown or every day if it is run 24/7 continuously. You can auto import them if you need to.

7.3.13 Import private strategy

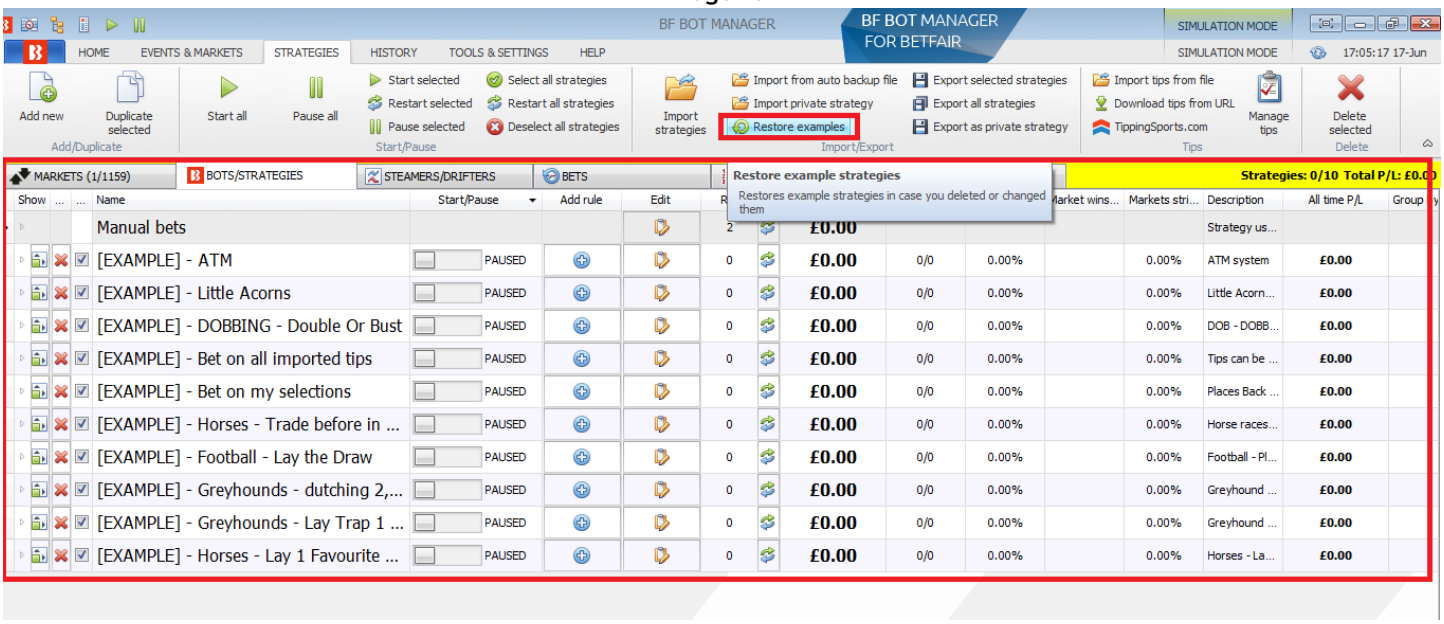
Image 291



You can import private strategies in .gz format with the “Import private strategy” button.

7.3.14 Restore examples

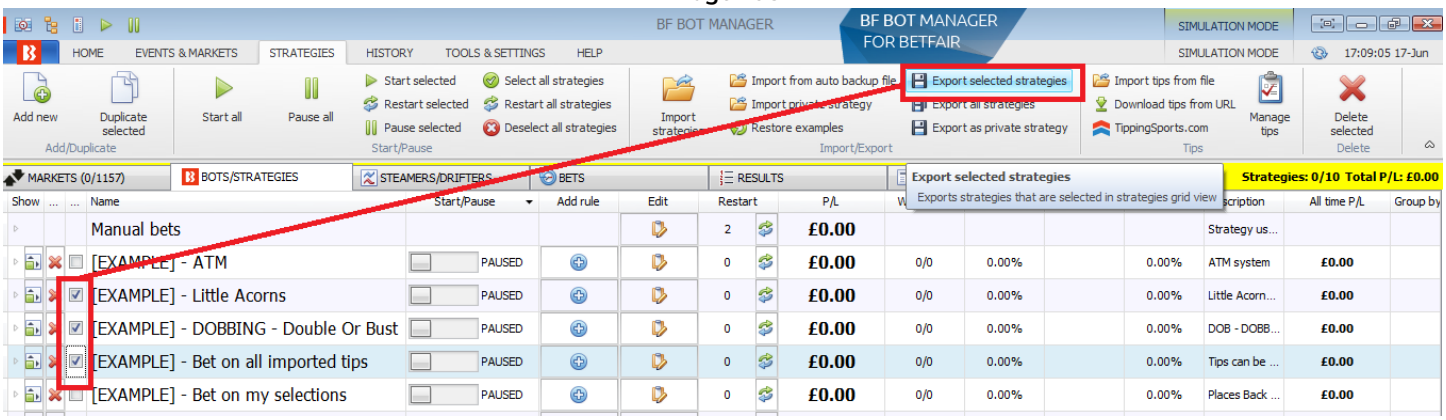
Image 292



You can restore the original example strategies if you have deleted or edited them by clicking on **Restore example strategies**.

7.3.15 Export selected strategies

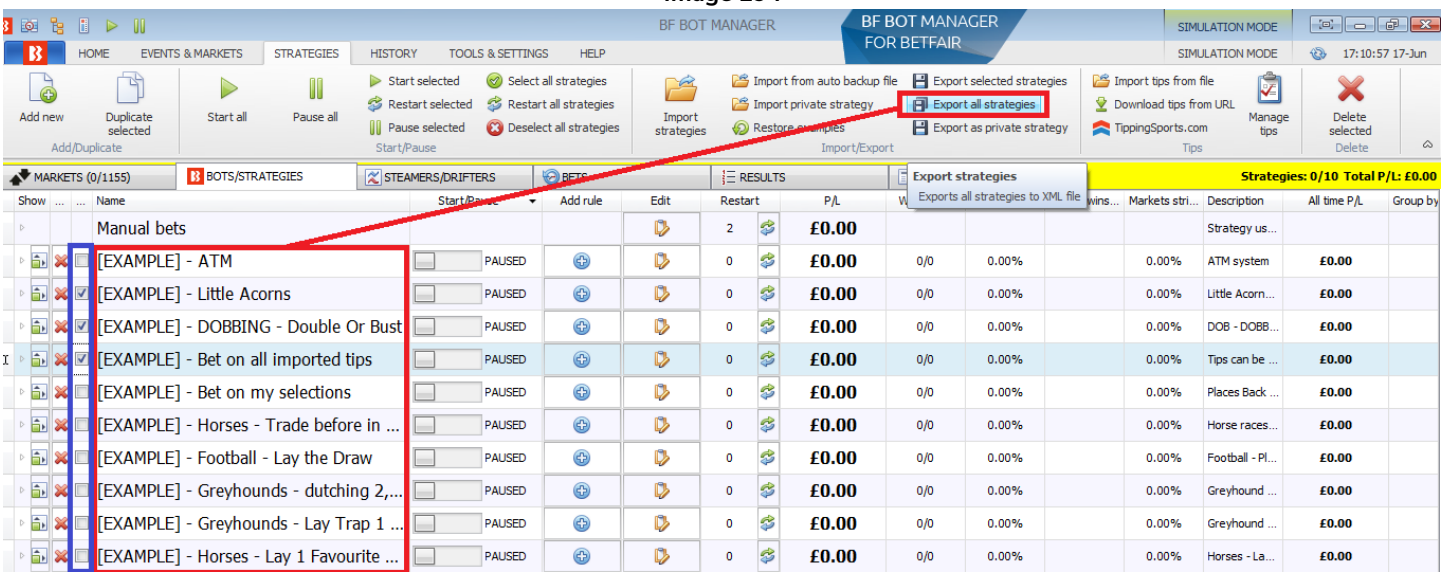
Image 293



You can export selected strategies by putting a tick in their select box on the left and clicking on **Export selected strategies**. They will be save as .gz files.

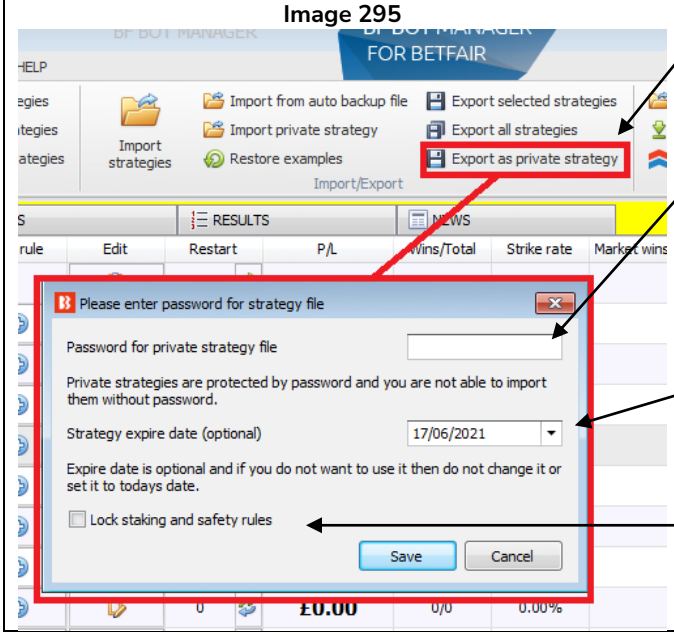
7.3.16 Export all strategies

Image 294



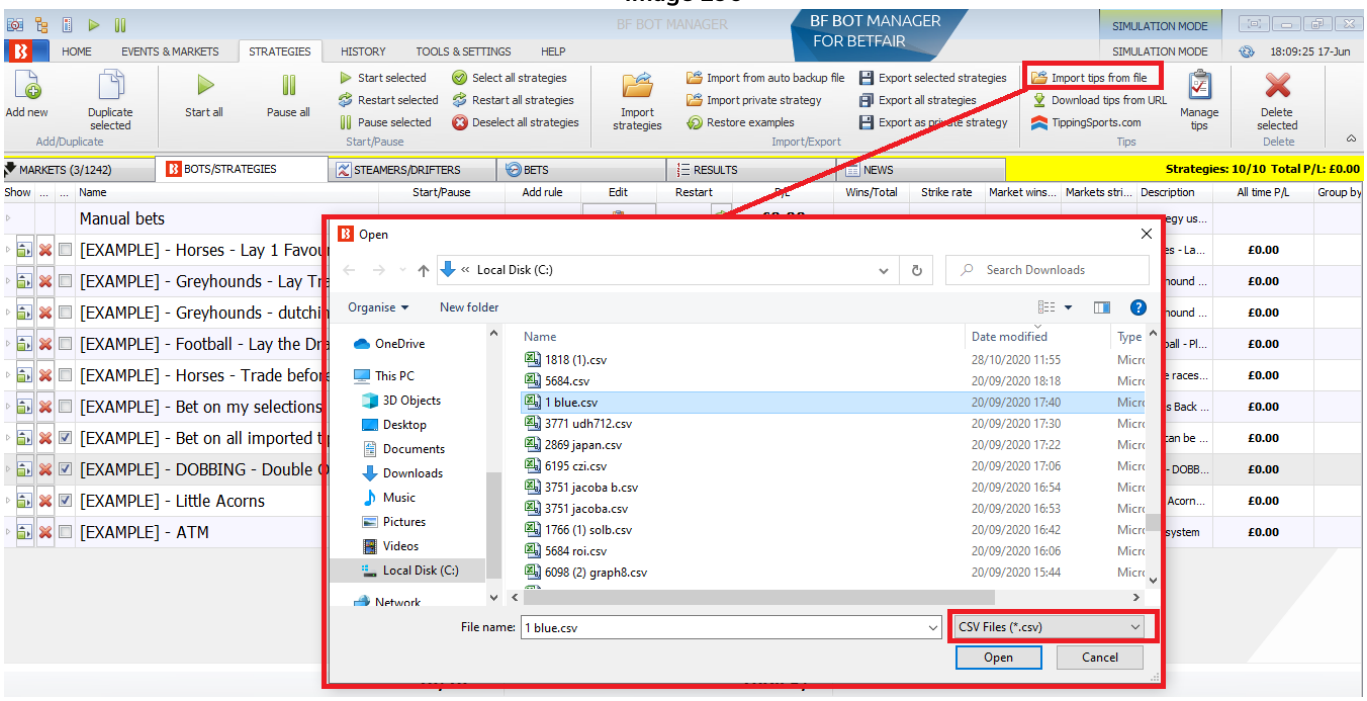
Clicking on **Export all strategies** will export all strategies regardless of if they are selected or not. This is a good way to make a quick manual back-up before editing things.

7.3.17 Export as private strategy

Image 295	
	You can also export strategies as a private strategy which will allow you to set a password on the strategy file.
	You can set a password here.
	You can also set an expiry date if you do not want the strategy to be used after a certain date. If you do not want to use an expiry date, then do not change this setting. By setting today's date it effectively means there is no expiry date. This is the default setting.
	You can lock the staking and safety rules, too. These advance settings can be used by those sharing their strategies with others but want to put limits on these aspects.

7.3.18 Import tips from file

Image 296



You can import tips from a file that is in a .CSV format and match the imported tips format compatible with the Bf Bot Manager. You can import a CSV file that was exported by using the software Export "My S." function or from any other CSV file that satisfies the minimum rules to find correct selections. **The import file can have many columns with data, but only one of the following two items are required: SelectionId OR SelectionName.**

- Provider – (optional) tipster name
- Handicap – (optional) Betfair selection handicap (default 0)
- **SelectionId** – **Betfair selection id, this must be specified unless you specified SelectionName**
- MarketId – (optional) Betfair market id
- EventId – (optional) Betfair event id
- **SelectionName – Betfair selection name, this must be specified unless you specified SelectionId**
- MarketName – (optional) Betfair market name
- EventName – (optional) Betfair event name
- MarketType – (optional) type of market e.g. WIN, PLACE, FORECAST, MATCH_ODDS etc.
- StartTime – (optional) universal time when this market starts
- BetType – (optional) BACK or LAY bet type
- Size – (optional) bet amount for this selection
- Points – (optional) number of points to bet on the selection (requires Level/Initial stake to bet within your strategy)
- Price – (optional) this is the price at which you want to place your bets regardless of the current selection price on market e.g. place all bets at this imported price. This can result in unmatched bets if you request a better price than the one available on the market
- MinPrice – (optional) a min price at which bets can be placed on the selection
- MaxPrice – (optional) a max price at which bets can be placed on the selection
- BSP – (optional) a true/false value indicating if placed bets should be full Betfair Start Price bets
- SportMonksFixtureId – (optional) mostly used by other tipping services that use SportMonks data, but do not have Betfair IDs. In such cases the bot will import tips and automatically find Betfair IDs when live score data becomes available 30 minutes before event start.

SportMonks imported tip format notes
The import tips functionality supports a SportMonksFixtureId column. An imported tips CSV file can have an optional "SportMonksFixtureId" column that has SportMonks fixture ids. This is mostly used by other tipping services that use SportMonks data, but do not have Betfair IDs. In such cases the bot will import tips and automatically find Betfair IDs when live score data becomes available. That is from 30 minutes before the start time. Such imported tips should use the columns SportMonksFixtureId, MarketType, BetType, Provider. The column "SelectionName" must also be used and it should be set to a Betfair selection name which is static for many football markets e.g. score 0 - 0 or Over 2.5 goals. But for match odds, half time, draw no bet or asian handicap markets where the selection name is a team name, they should use HOME or AWAY text which the bot will replace with the Betfair selection name once it finds the right fixture/match.

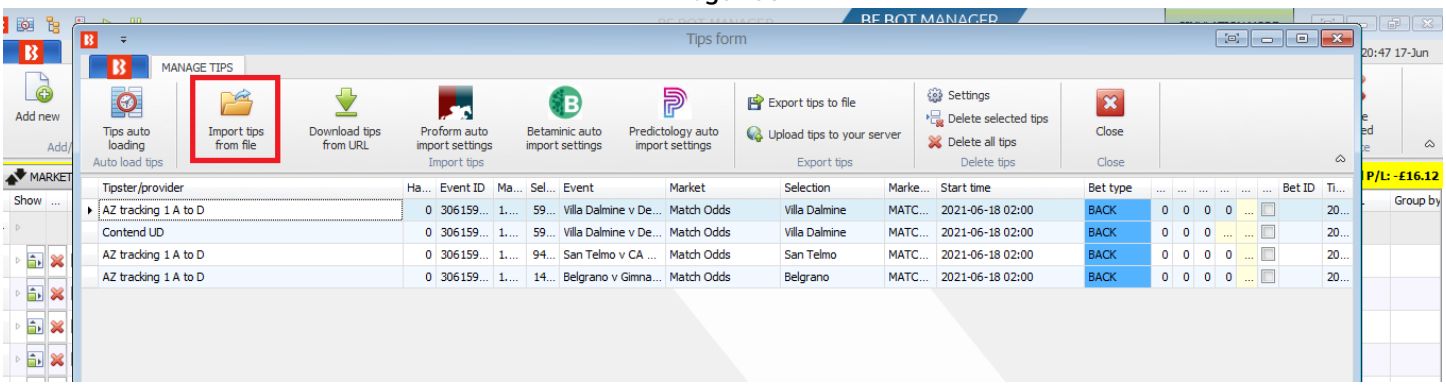
The minimum data that a CSV file can contain is the <u>Betfair selection ID number</u> or the <u>Betfair selection name</u>. One of those parameters must be present in the CSV file for the strategy to be able to find the selection correctly. If you do not specify one of those then the tip will not be imported.

To eliminate any mistakes when finding your selection, it is recommend to specify the market type (WIN/PLACE/FORECAST/MATCH_ODDS etc.). For football events you should also specify an event name to ensure that bets are placed on the correct match. (E.g. The selection “draw” is in every football match odds market, so a specific event name is essential.)

Image 297 An example of a valid CSV file with all columns added.

All imported tips can be viewed at the “Manage tips” form.

Image 298



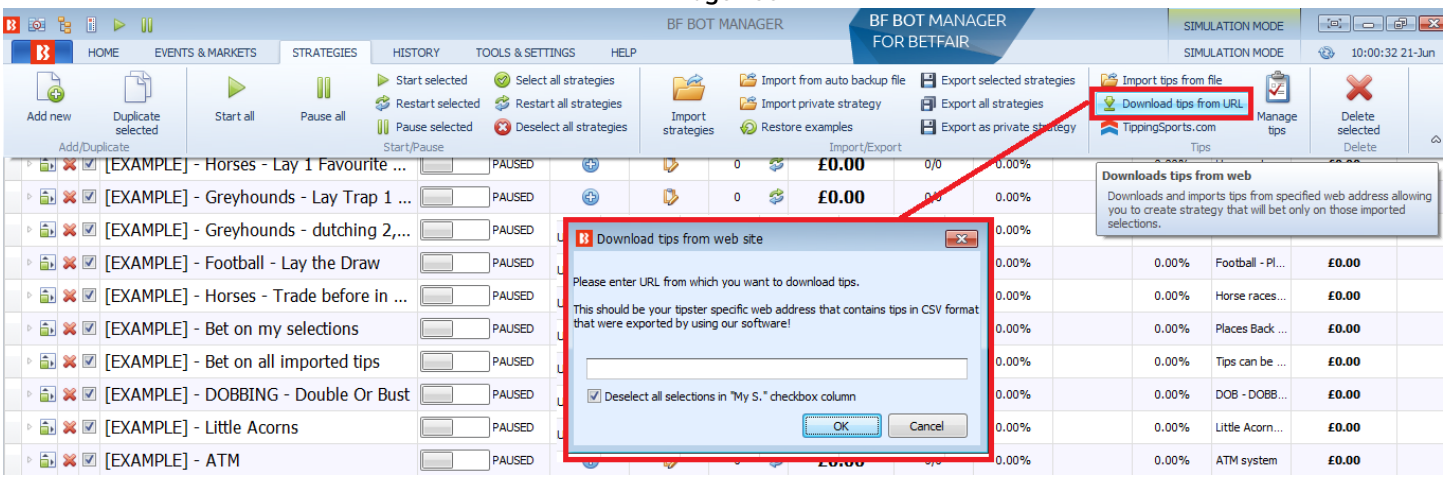
The Manage tips form allows you to import a new CSV file or download CSV tips file from a web address (URL) or from other 3rd party providers. You can also select individual or all imported tips and delete them.

It is not possible to edit tips in this form, but you can set your own settings for each strategy that will bet on imported tips. For a strategy to bet on imported tips you must use the staking rule “Bet on imported selections/tips”. For details on this rule please see the example strategy for betting on imported tips.

You can check if tips are imported correctly in the “Manage Tips” form.

7.3.19 Download tips from URL

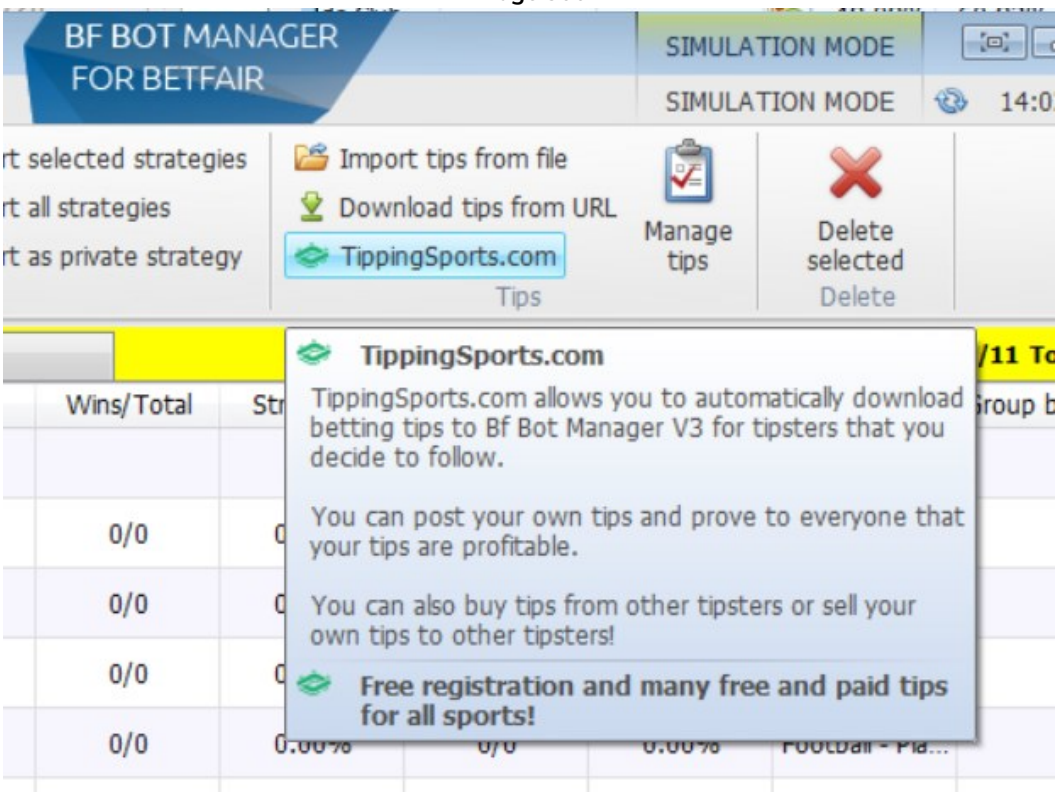
Image 299



It is possible to import tips directly from a URL if they are in the correct Bf Bot Manager compatible format. Auto importing tips from a URL can be setup in the Manage Tips form.

7.3.20 TippingSports.com

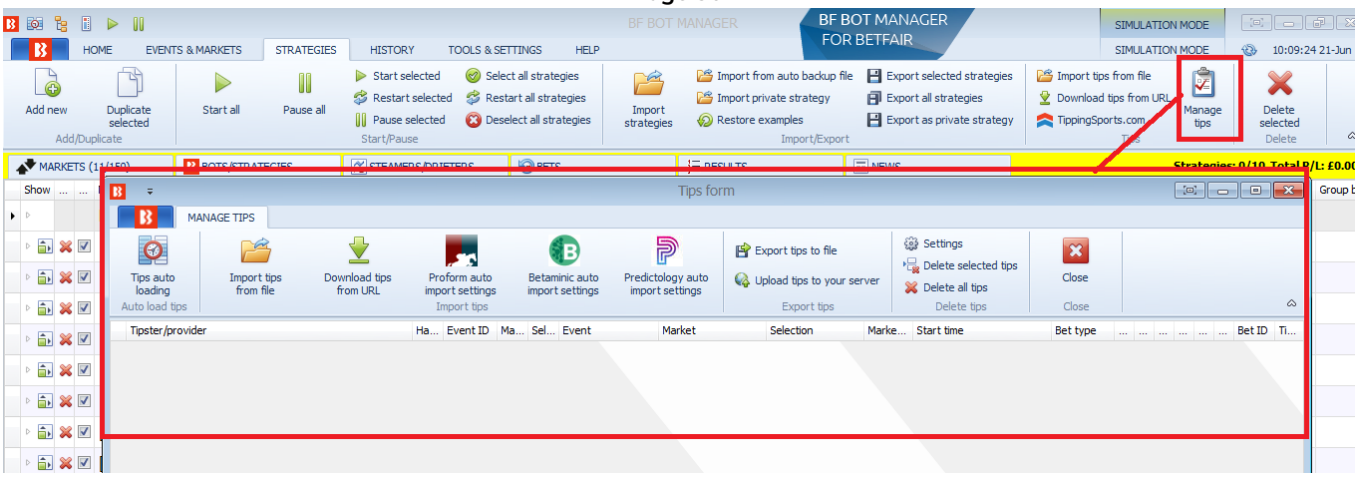
Image 300



Clicking on this button takes you to the website www.tippingsports.com. It is a tipping website that produces BF Bot Manager compatible tips that can be setup to auto load. There are many free tipsters to follow and sometimes paid tipsters. You can even post your own tips that, if proven to be profitable over the long term, may be sold.

7.3.21 Manage tips

Image 301



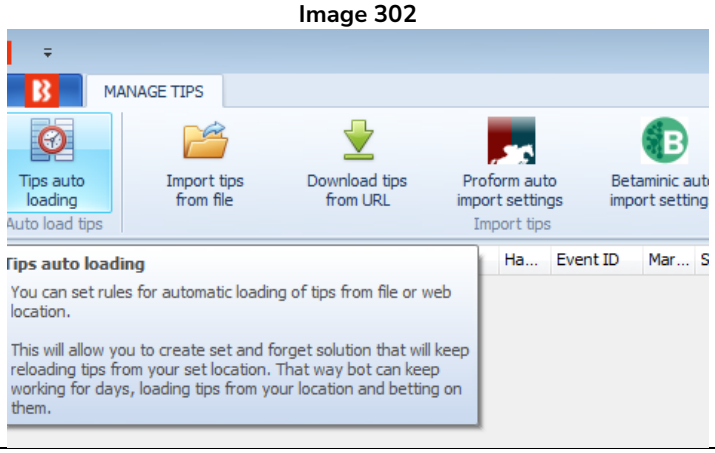
The Manage tips from is a place to check what tips have been imported. You can also set up tips auto loading, import from file, import from URL, import from a third party service, export tips to file, upload tips to your server, adjust tip settings, delete selected tips and delete all tips.

7.3.22 Tips auto loading

You can set up **auto loading from a URL** through the Tips auto loading form.

This is the form you would use if you are following tipsters from the **TippingSports.com** website.

Image 302



As an example, if you signed in to the **TippingSports** site and followed some tipsters, you can receive those tips by using the **unique link** (URL) on your profile page.

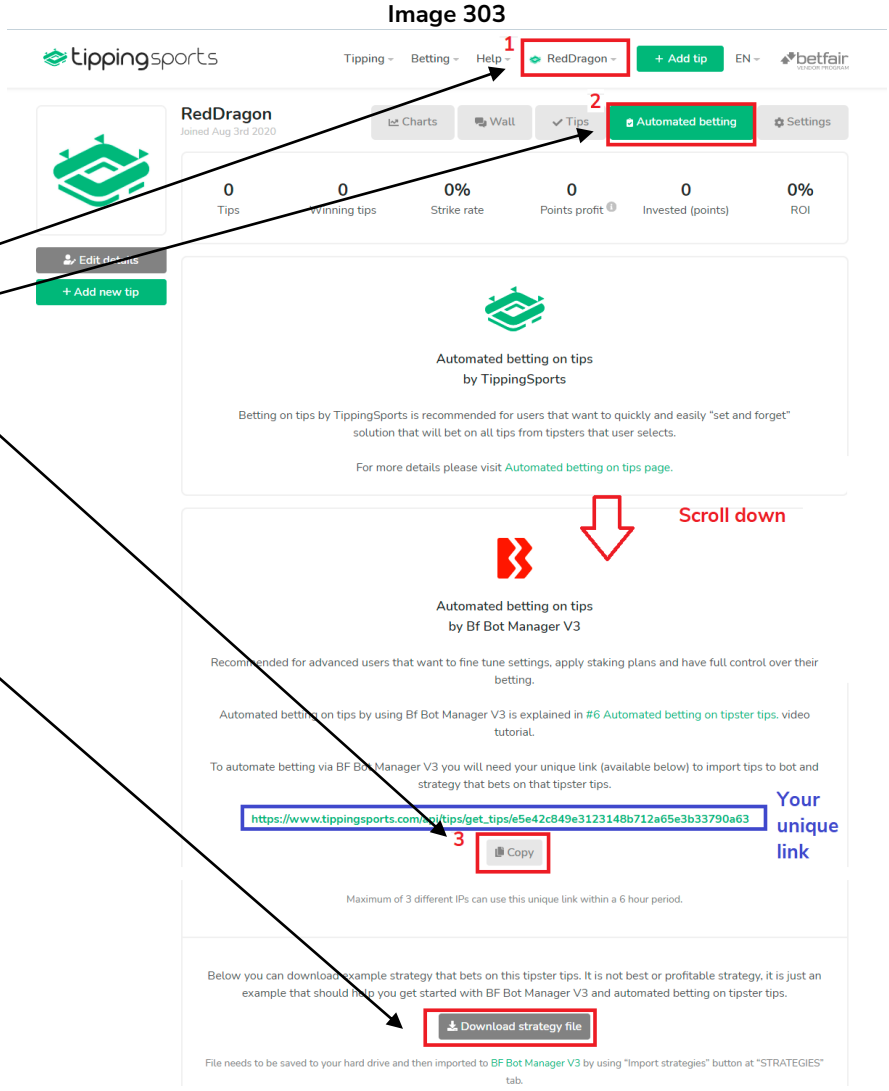
1 Click on your **profile** name.

2 Click on **Automated betting**

3 After scrolling down, you will find the **unique link** for your TippingSports profile. Click the "copy" button to copy the link into your clipboard. Copy and paste this into the Bf Bot manager auto tipping form.

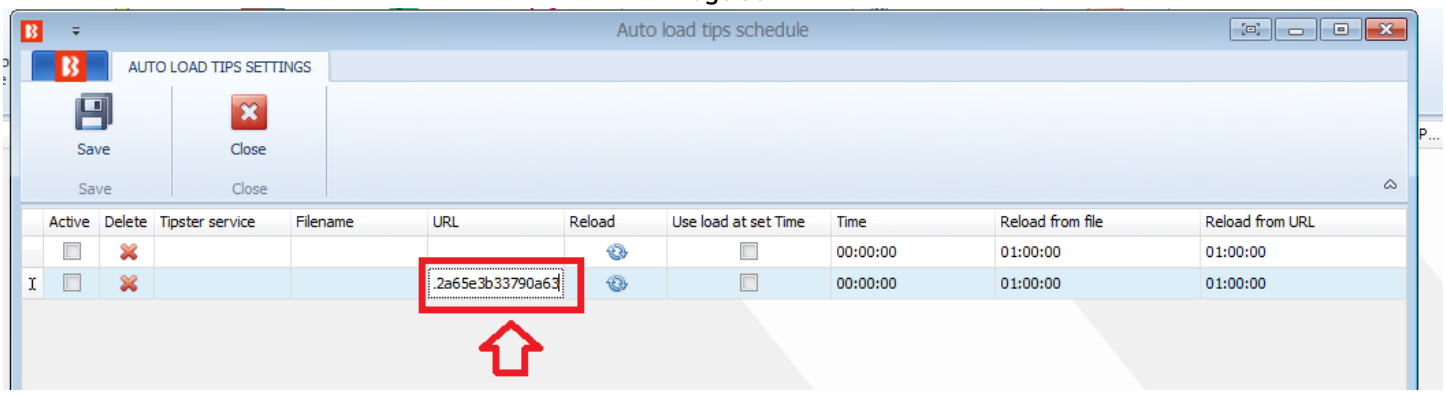
For each tipster on TippingSports it is possible to **download a basic example strategy** that would bet on tips from that user. So the "Download strategy file" from the Profile > Automated Betting page of the user "RedDragon" would only bet on RedDragon's tips. The strategy file from your own profile page would only bet on tips you added to your own profile.

Image 303



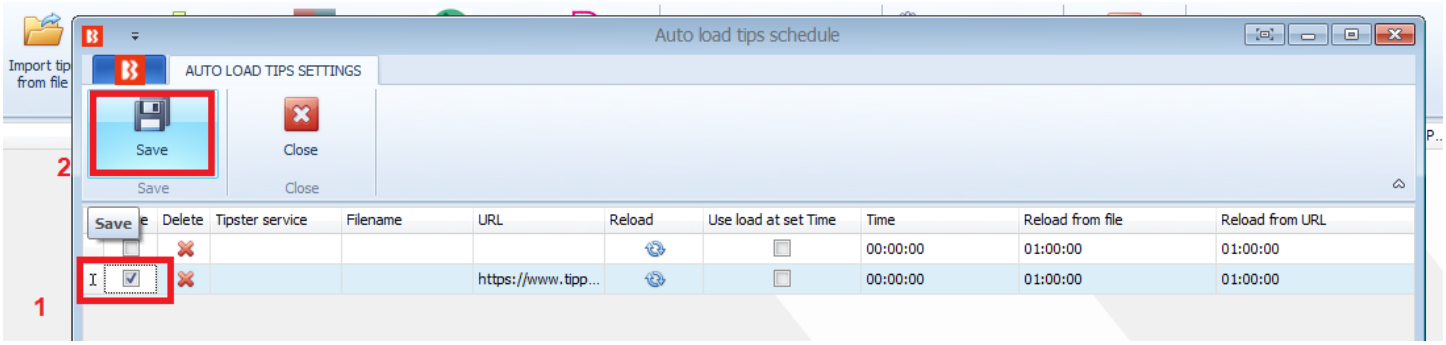
Note: The strategy file is not a best or profitable strategy, it is just an example that should help you get started with BF Bot Manager V3 and automated betting on tipster tips. The downloaded strategy file needs to be saved to your hard drive and then imported into the BF Bot Manager V3 by using the "Import strategies" button in the "STRATEGIES" tab.

Image 304



After pasting the URL into the form, you still need to activate the auto loading of this URL's tips and to save the settings.

Image 305



This can be done with any URL that provides Bf Bot Manager compatible tips in CSV format.

7.3.23 Automated betting on selections from Betaminic big data strategies

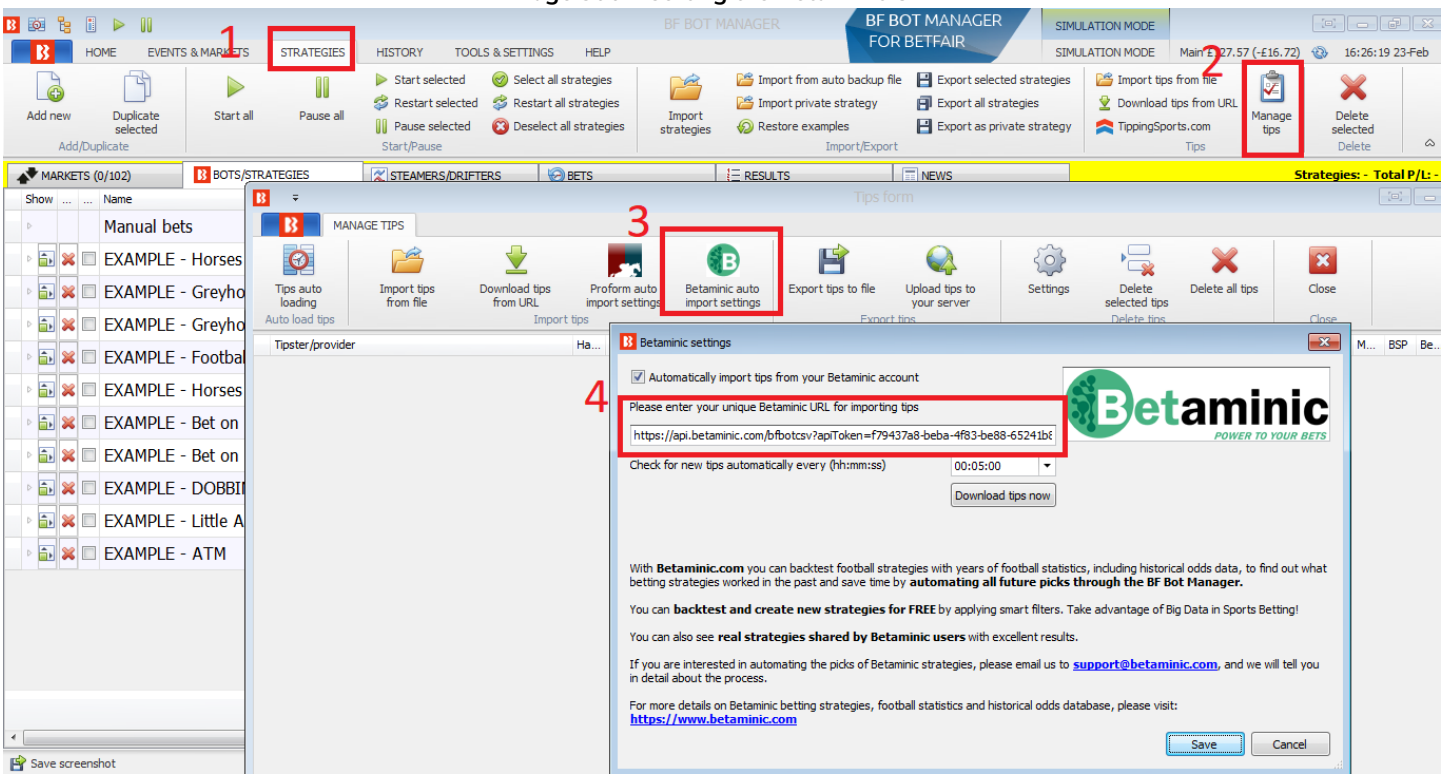
The V3 version of Bf Bot Manager allows users of Betaminic.com to fully automate betting on selections from their Betaminic systems. This functionality is available on the BF Bot Manager for Betfair betting exchanges. **Betaminic offers a free online tool for back testing football statistics and historical bookmaker odds.** You may analyse past data of over 150,000 matches since 2012! Betaminic's tool, the Betamin Builder, allows you to find historical value trends. You can research your own or follow existing strategies that have been publicly shared. You can back test and create new strategies for free by applying smart filters, allowing users to take advantage of big data in sports betting. You can also see real strategies shared by Betaminic users and their results.
You can link your Betaminic account to your Bf Bot Manager software to enable automatic betting on picks from Betaminic strategies that you choose to follow. You can then use staking plans and other add-on in-play trading Bf Bot Manager strategies to leverage even more value out of these historically profitable trends. You can sign up for free and see for yourself.

Access to the football data, historical bookmaker odds, viewing existing strategies, manipulating the data, creating and saving strategies are all free. Only the receiving of future picks from strategies requires a subscription.

Basic setup

Here are the basic steps that you need to do to set automated betting on Betaminic selections with level stakes:

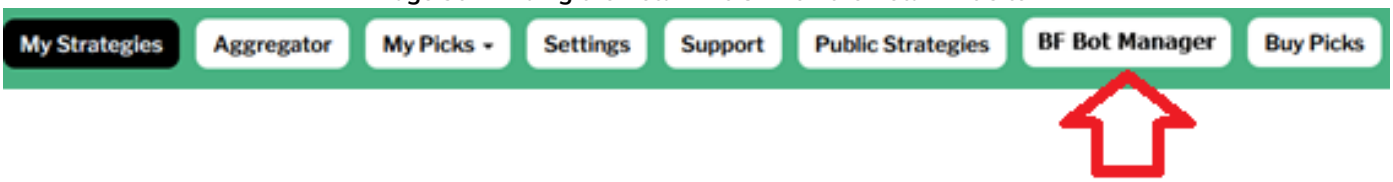
Image 306 Inserting the Betaminic URL



1. Start the Bf Bot Manager and open the "STRATEGIES->Manage tips->**Betaminic auto import settings**" form.

2. Tick the checkbox “Automatically import tips from your Betaminic account” and enter your unique Betaminic Pick URL from the BF Bot Manager tab in the Betamin Builder. Please copy and paste this Betaminic Pick URL into the "Strategies" tab-->"Manage Tips" form --> "Betaminic auto import settings" form of your BF Bot Manager software.

Image 307 Finding the Betaminic URL on the Betaminic site



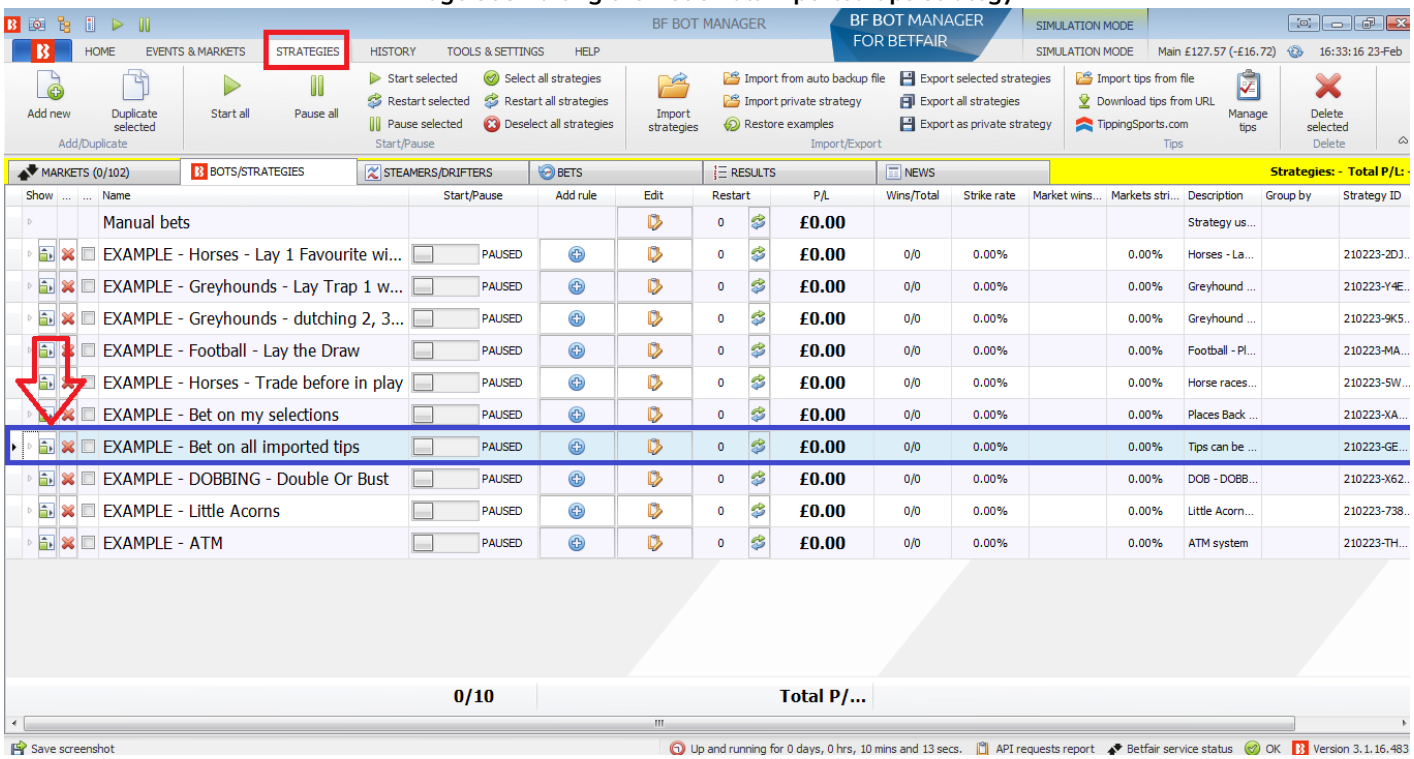
The next option is the interval to check for new tips. This tells the bot how often to download tips from the Betaminic website. There is a limit of one request per minute imposed by Betaminic, as a high refresh rate is not required here at the moment. In most cases default value of 5 minutes should work well. Almost all Betaminic picks are automatically imported hours before the event start time. To test your settings, you can click “Download tips now” button, but please notice that if you click this button twice within the same minute

that you might get blocked by the Betaminic server. In that case just wait 60 seconds and then try again.

The Bf Bot Manager V3 will automatically attempt to load Betfair markets for imported tips. This might take a while, from a few seconds to a minute or two, depending on the number of tips. But this also means that **you do not need to set any auto load settings for loading Betfair markets**. Betfair markets will be loaded automatically by the bot once the tips are imported. This will make the bot much faster as only required markets for imported tips will be loaded. Once tips and markets are loaded then you can start creating strategies that will bet on imported tips.

3. In the strategies tab of the bot. Find the **"EXAMPLE – Bet on all imported tips"** strategy. Click on the toggle view button on the far left to open up its settings. You might want to duplicate this example strategy instead of just editing it if you want to create multiple "Bet on imported tips" strategies that bet on individual Betaminic strategies with different bot rules such as staking plans and safety rules.

Image 308 Editing the Bet on all imported tips strategy



Select the "Staking" tab of that strategy. Click on the arrow in the middle of the **"Level/Initial stake"** rule. The default stake is £2. You can change this to your preferred staking level.

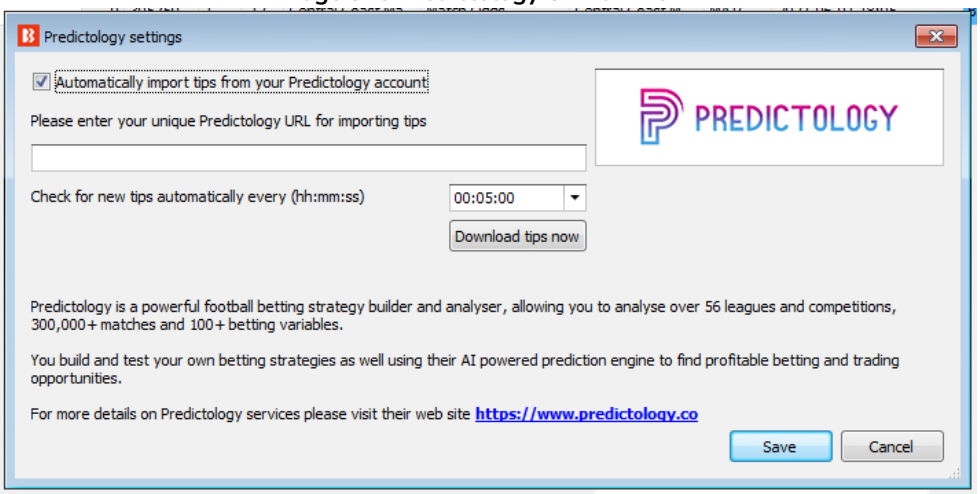
Image 309 Setting the stake on the imported tips strategy

When you are happy with your settings, you can start the strategy! Make sure you run it in simulation mode until you are confident that everything is working as you want it to and that you understand how all the settings work. If you have any questions about using Betaminic strategies with the Bf Bot Manager software, please contact Betaminic support

7.3.24 Automated betting on selections from Predictology

The Predictology settings URL form works in a similar way to the Betaminic settings. A user can enter their URL into the field and then set the reload time for importing tips. The "Bet on all imported tips" strategy can be duplicated and edited to bet on the Predictology system. Please see their website for more details on this service. www.predictology.co

Image 310 Predictology URL link form



7.3.25 Automated betting on selections from Proform systems

The V3 version of the Bf Bot Manager allows users of Proform Racing software to fully automate betting on selections from their Proform systems. **This functionality is available in all three bot versions**, BF Bot Manager for Betfair, BQ Bot Manager for Betdaq and MB Bot Manager Matchbook betting exchanges.

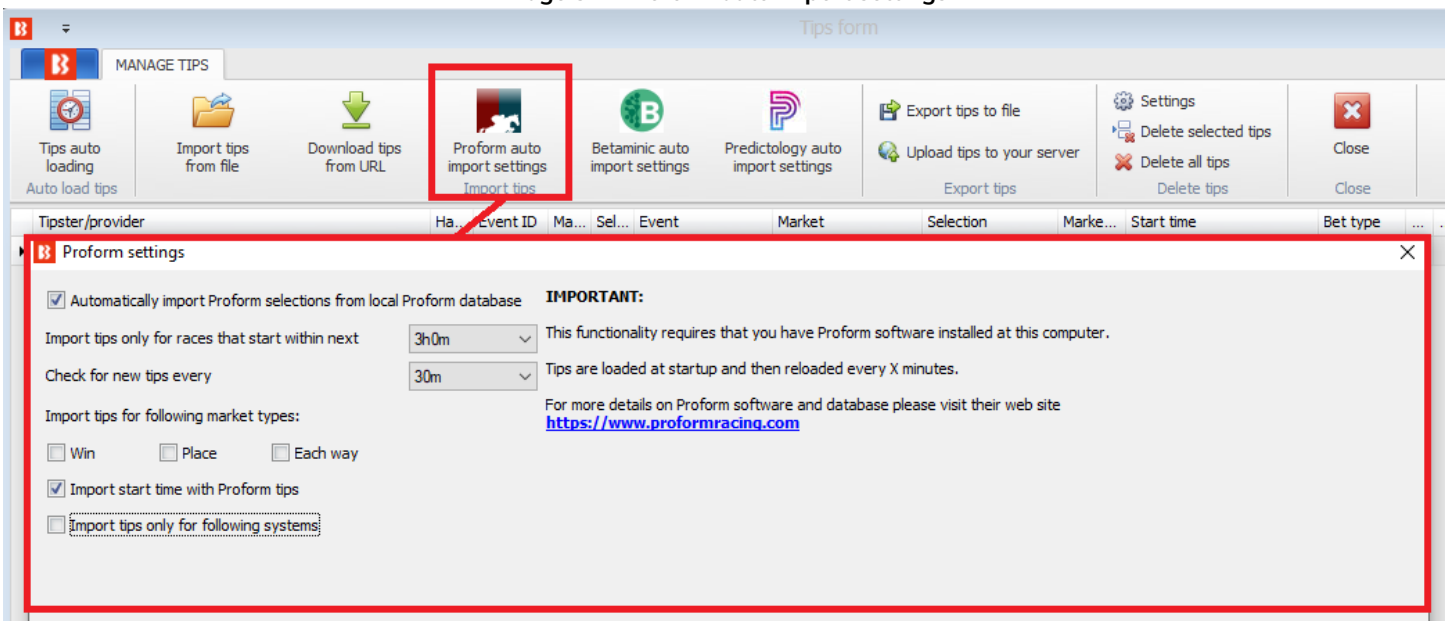
Basic setup

Here are the basic steps that you need to do to setup automated betting on Proform selections with level stakes:

1. Install Bf Bot Manager on the same computer as Proform Racing software

2. Start Bf Bot Manager and open "BOTS/STRATEGIES->Manage tips->Proform auto import settings" form

Image 311 Proform auto import settings



3. Tick the option to automatically import Proform selections, Tick the checkbox for the market type for which your tips are and click "Save and load tips now" button to test the connection with your Proform software. Those basic settings will import selections from the Proform database and display them on the Manage tips form.

4. Use the "Auto load" settings at the "EVENTS & MARKETS" tab to load markets for your tips. This is explained in detail in auto load markets article and auto load of markets video tutorial

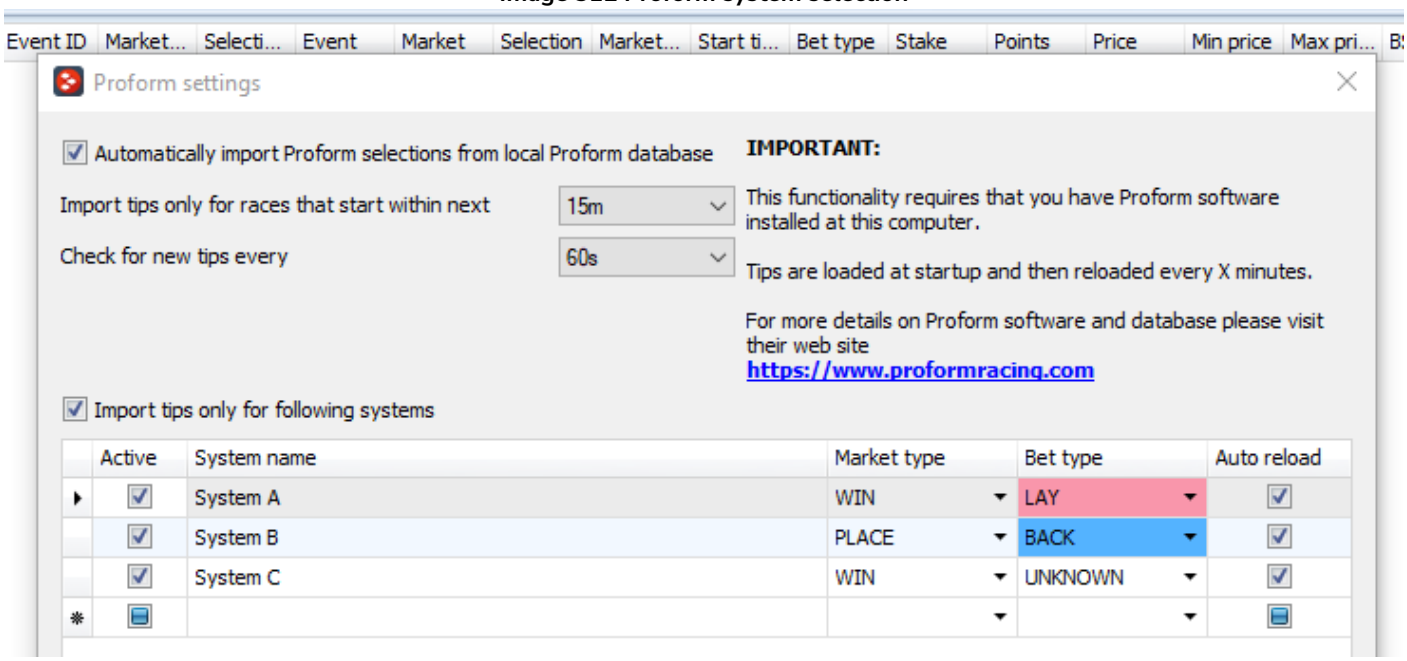
5. The final step is to set your stake in the example strategy "EXAMPLE - Bet on all imported tips" and to start this example strategy. After that, this strategy will bet on all imported tips a few minutes before each race official start time

That is a very basic setup that can be done within a minute or two. It will bet on all imported selections with the same level stake that you have set. You can test it in simulation mode to ensure that you have set everything correctly.

Advanced setup

In your Proform software you could have several systems and thousands of selections, but you might want to bet only on some of them and to use different market and bet types for those systems. By using advanced import options you can import tips only from the systems that you specify and for each system you can set the market and bet type separately. To do this, just tick option "Import tips only for following systems" and then enter system names and set options as you like.

Image 312 Proform system selection

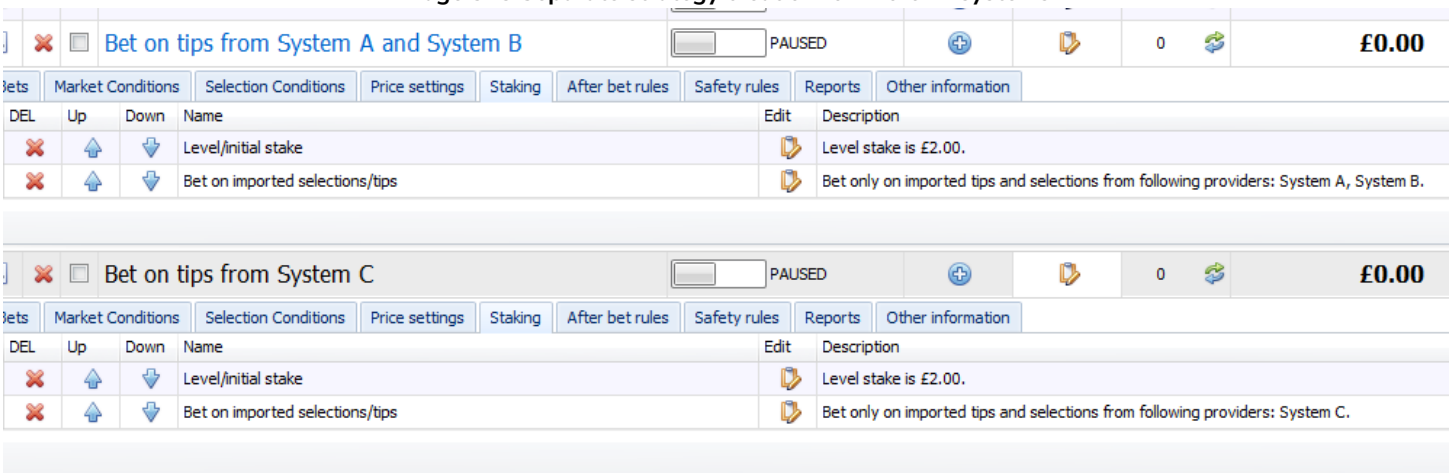


Bf Bot Manager also allows you to have a separate strategy for each Proform system.
To create a strategy for each specific Proform system, you should stop the example strategy "EXAMPLE - Bet on all imported tips" and you should not use it at the same time when using strategies that bet on tips from a specific system. Only one bet can be placed per imported tip, so if you use a strategy that bets on all imported tips, then your strategies that are set to bet only on tips from specific system will be unable to bet, as bets might already have been placed on their tips.

First we will duplicate the "EXAMPLE - Bet on all imported tips" strategy and then modify it to bet on tips from a specific Proform system. Use the "Select" checkbox column on the left side of the strategy name to select only this strategy (Use the "Deselect all strategies" button to deselect all strategies first) and then use the "Duplicate selected" menu button to create a duplicate of this example. Then modify this strategy by editing its "Staking->Bet on imported tips" rule and set it to your Proform system name.

You can use a CSV (Comma Separated Values) list of Proform system names if you wish a strategy to bet on more than one system. You can also change a strategy name by clicking on the "Edit" button at strategy column "Edit".

Image 313 Separate strategy creation for Proform systems



In the screenshot we can see that we created two strategies, those are:
"Bet on tips from System A and System B", a strategy that will bet on tips from the Proform systems "System A" and "System B".
"Bet on tips from System C" strategy will bet on tips from the Proform system "System C"
A version of those two example strategies for Bf Bot Manager V3 for Betfair can be downloaded here. Those examples have some safety rules, like min/max price range of 1.01 - 20.0, back/lay ratio of 15% etc. If you are betting on tips with high odds then you should adjust those settings too.

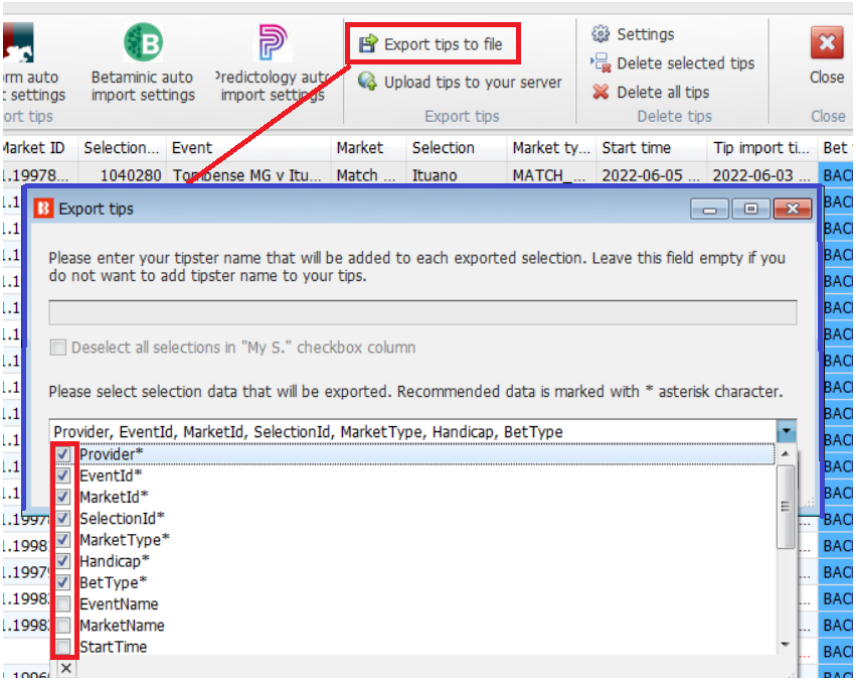
Notice that the description text for "Bet on imported selections/tips" rule has a CSV text of those Proform systems, That is the main rule that decides on which tips a strategy will bet. System names must be identical to the Proform system names and they must not contain comma characters as a comma is used as a separator in this CSV list.

Once strategies are set, they can be left working 24/7 automatically. They will keep reloading new tips from the Proform database, keep reloading markets according to your auto load settings and keep betting on imported tips just before event start times. If you plan on running the bot 24/7 then it is best that you use a VPS server for that. Virtual private servers that we recommend are explained in the VPS article.

All this functionality can be tested in simulation mode without risking any real money. You should use simulation mode to check your settings and to learn how the software works.

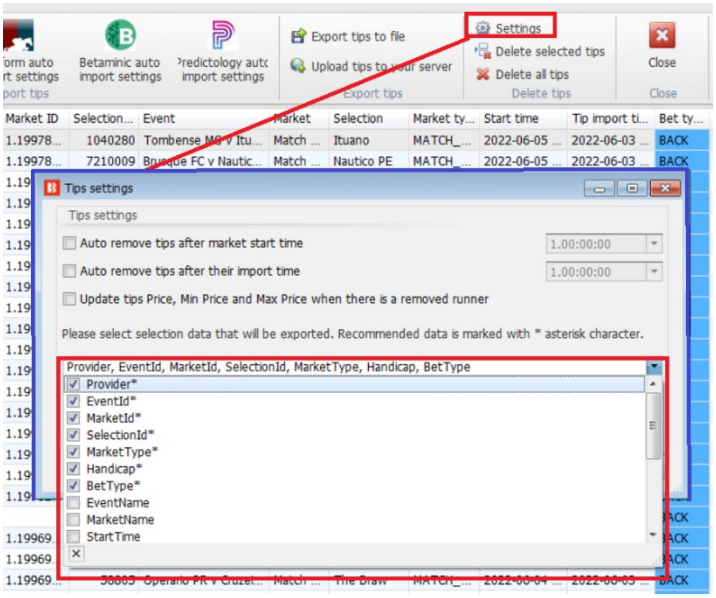
7.3.26 Export tips to file

Image 314 Export tips to file



If you export tips to file, then you can select which columns of information that you would like exported by ticking the checkboxes from the dropdown menu. The asterisked items are the recommended default columns of data to export.

7.3.27 (Manage tips) Settings

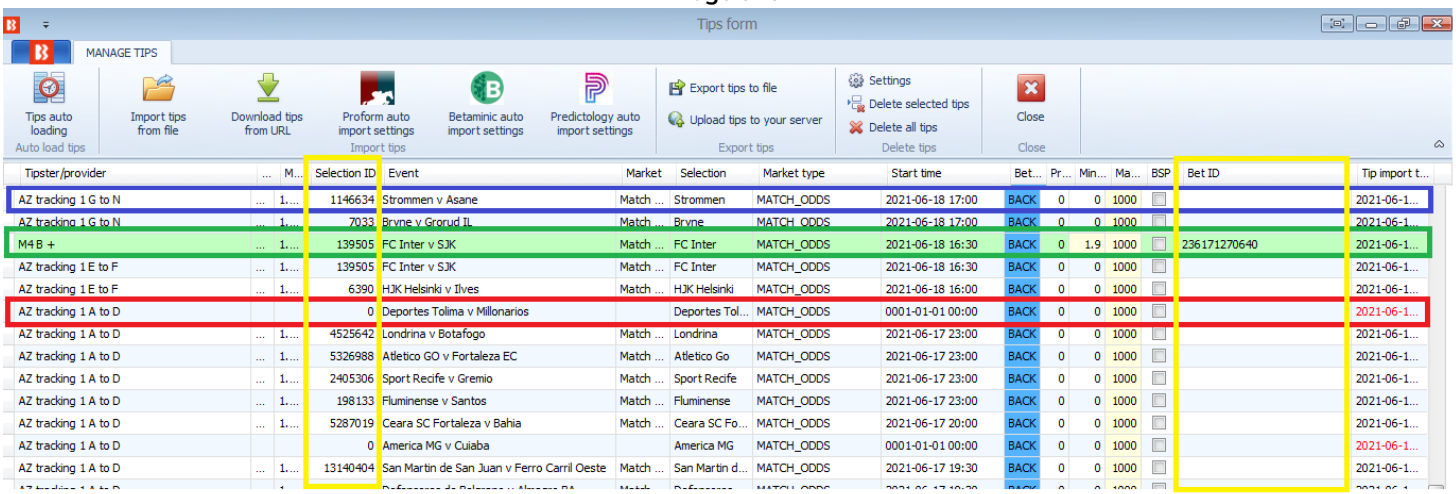


If you want to save your settings for which columns to export, you can do that in a similar way by ticking the checkboxes in the “Tip settings” form. Again, the asterisked items are the recommended default columns of data to export. Selected columns are saved to the “selected_tips_columns.gz” file.

7.3.28 Checking if tips imported correctly

When tips are imported, you will see their provider/tipster name on the left column if provided. This is a good way to know where a tip is coming from.

Image 315



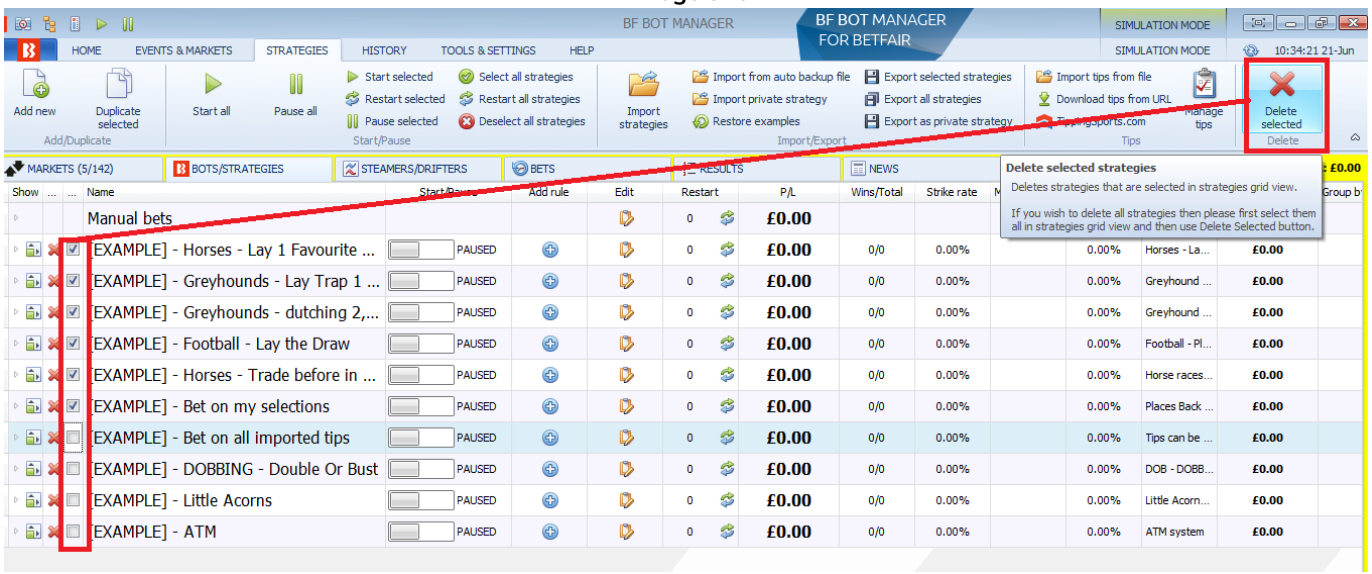
In the Strategies Tab>Manage Tips form you can check if tips have been imported successfully because it will have a **Selection ID**. You know if it has been bet on if it has **a green background** and has a **Bet ID**. You know if a tip has not been imported successfully because it will have **no Selection ID** and the Tip Import Time column will have **red text**. You can also see other signs that a tip has not been imported correctly if it has no market type, or the start time is not properly set.

Tip Status	Indicators
Tip imported correctly	Has Selection ID Has white background
Tip has been bet on	Has Bet ID Has green background
Tip not imported correctly	No Selection ID Tip import time column text in red Event start time not set Market Type column empty Has white background

If a tip has not been imported correctly, it could be for a number of reasons. Check the import file. If the imported tips do not have Betfair Selection IDs and are relying on the Selection Name, then check that the spelling of the Selection Name is correct and matches the name on the Betfair website.

7.3.29 Delete selected

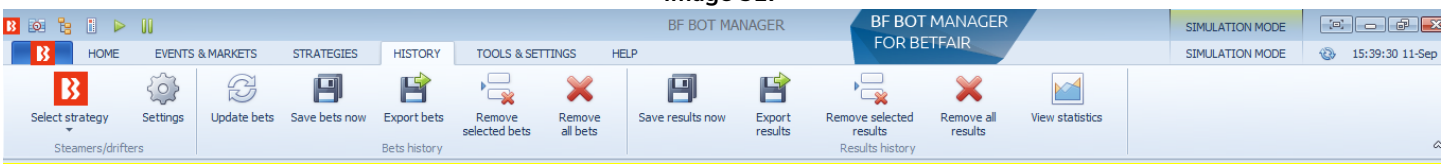
Image 316



This will delete the selected strategies that have a tick in their checkbox.

7.4 History

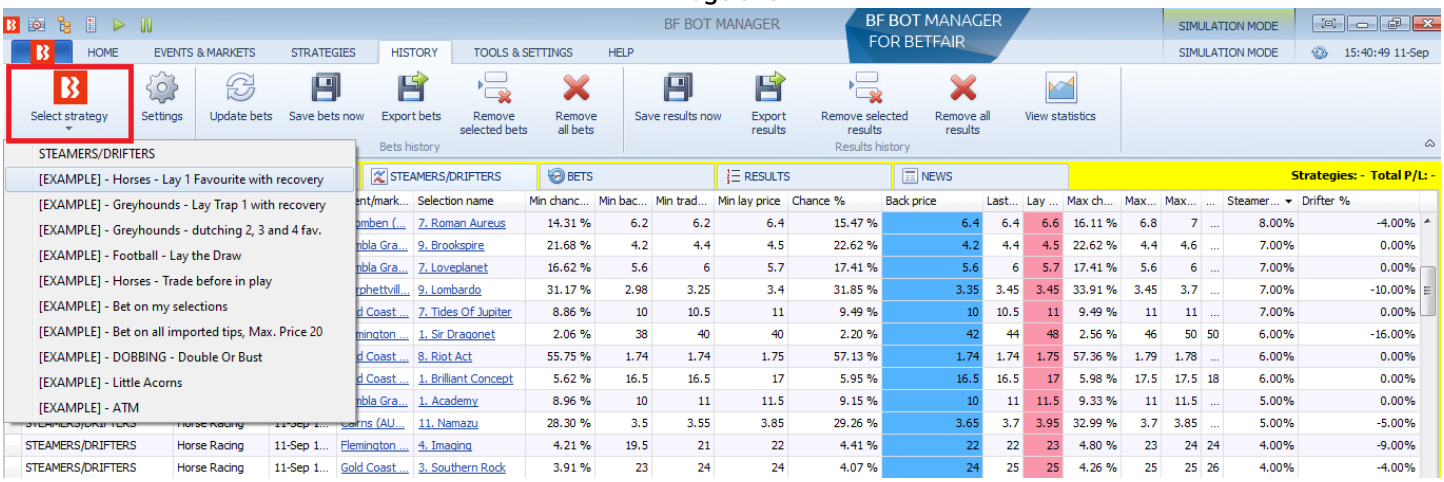
Image 317



The history tab allows historical bets and results to be viewed and managed. It also allows what data to be displayed on the Steamers/Drifters screen to be selected.

7.4.1 Select strategy for Steamers/drifters

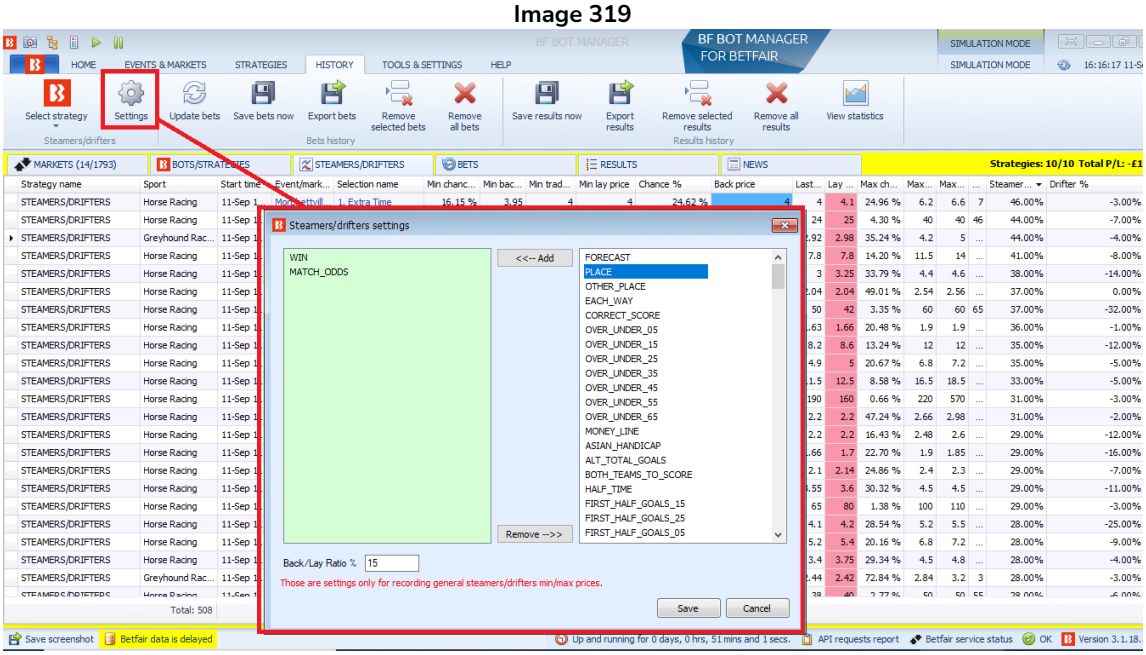
Image 318



The **Select strategy** button allows you to select which steamers/drifters data to be displayed on the Steamers/Drifters screen. The default "Steamers/Drifters" option will display all recorded data, but you can filter this down to individual strategies if you want.

7.4.2 Settings

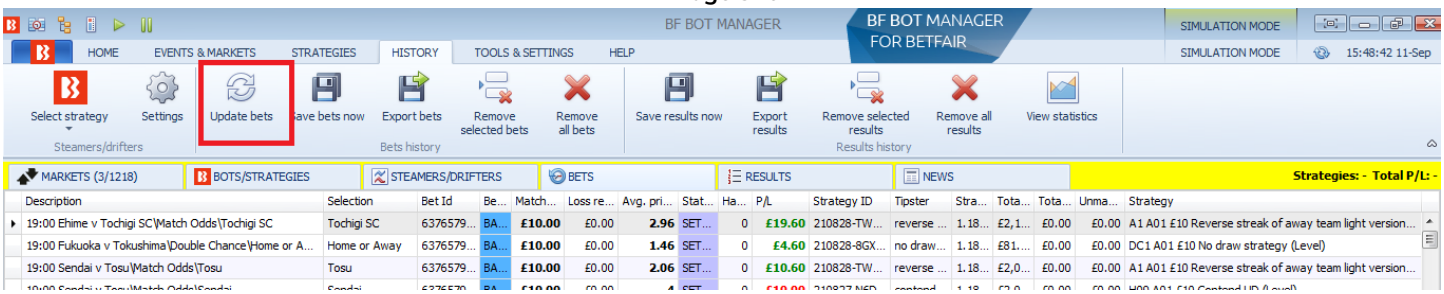
Image 319



The settings form on the History ribbon can set which market data will be recorded for the Steamers/Drifters tab. It records Win and Match Odds markets by default, but you can add or remove market types here. You can also change the Back/Lay ratio which is 15% by default. This means that prices for any selection that has a Back/Lay ratio greater than this number will not be recorded as a valid price.

7.4.3 Update bets

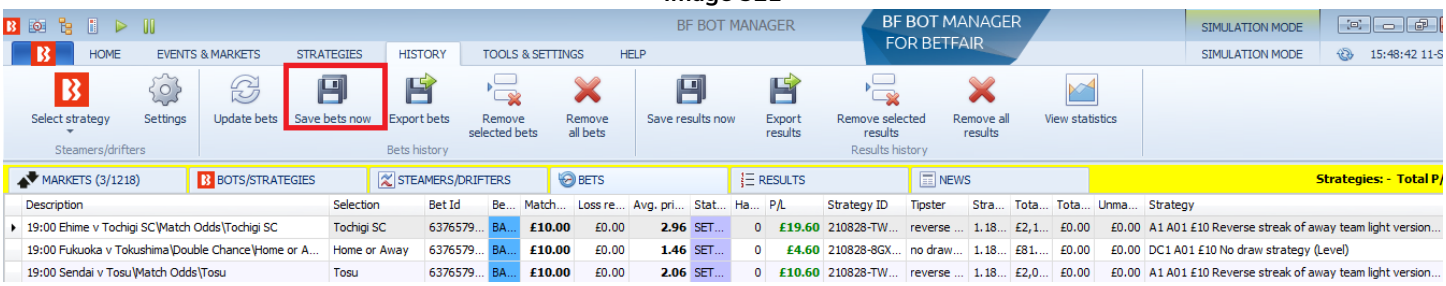
Image 320



Bets are updated automatically, but you can click on the update bets button if you want to be sure all bet status are up to date.

7.4.4 Save bets now

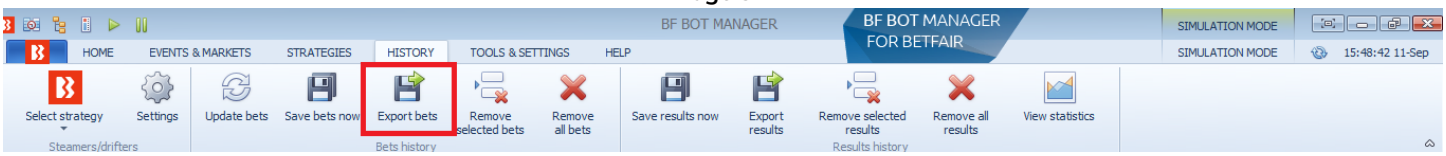
Image 321



Bets are usually saved to the hard drive only when you exit. So if the software is unexpectedly terminated, then the bet history may be lost. If you want to make a manual save, you can click on this button.

7.4.5 Export bets

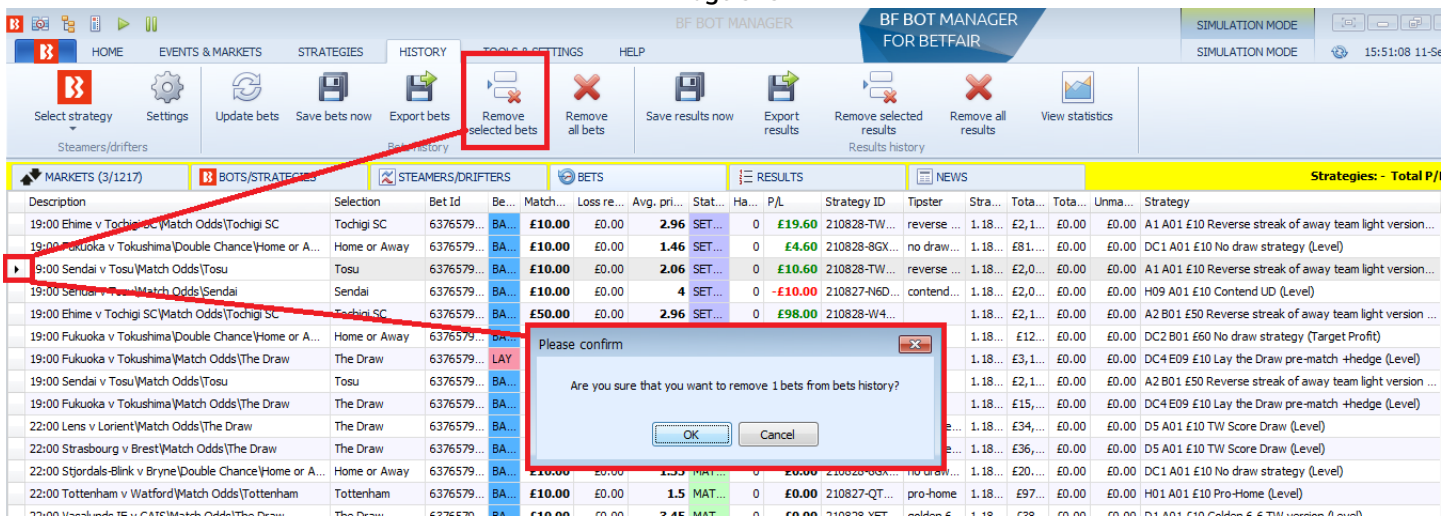
Image 322



Bet history is kept in the software only for the last 30 days. If you want to save your bet history for analysis or reference for periods longer than this, then you need to **export** the data periodically to avoid losing it.

7.4.6 Removed selected bets

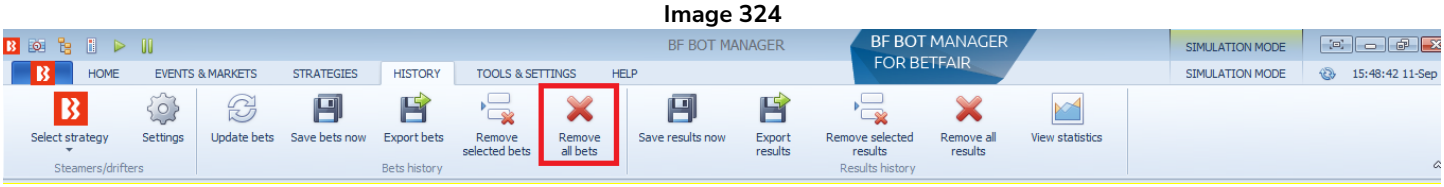
Image 323



If you want to remove a bet, left click on the far left column by its name, then click Remove selected bets. You will get a confirmation box before completing the deletion.

7.4.7 Remove all bets

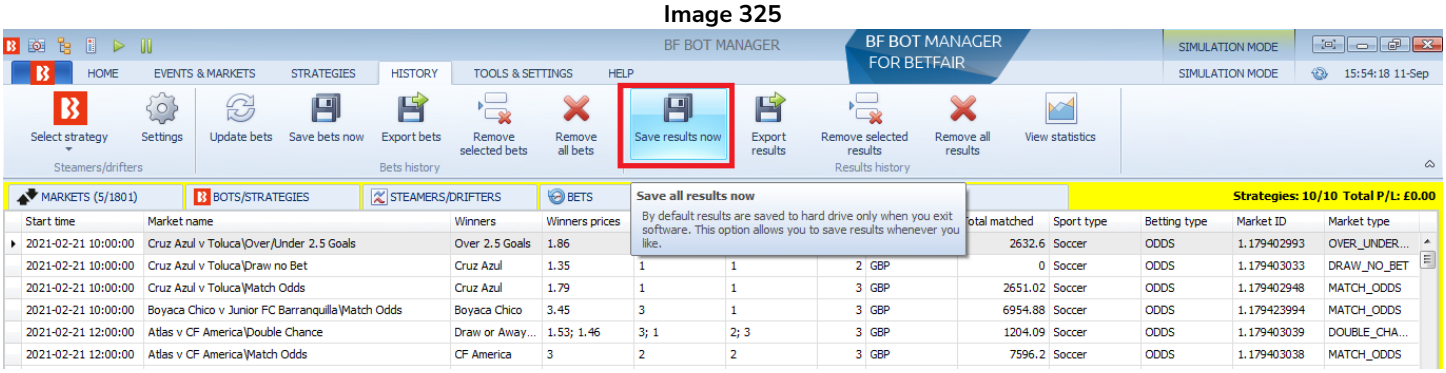
Image 324



This will remove all bet history.

7.4.8 Save results now

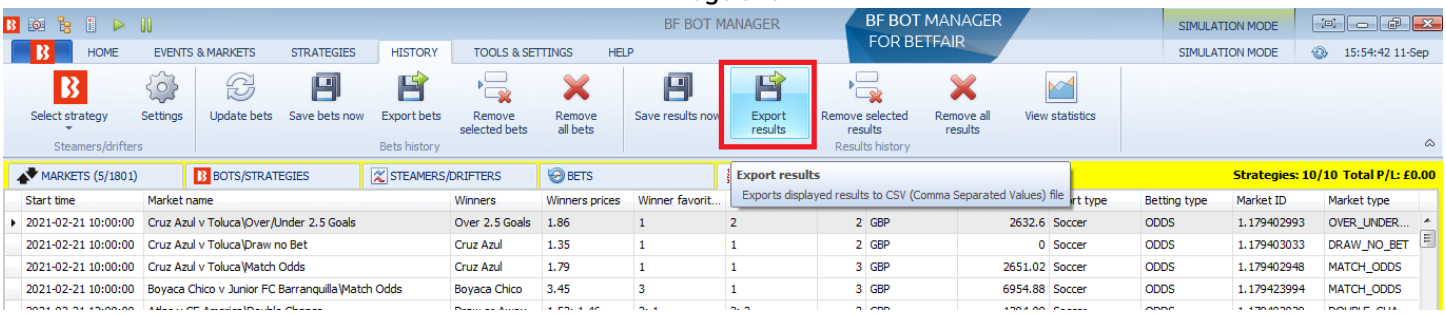
Image 325



Results are usually saved to the hard drive only when you exit. So if the software is unexpectedly terminated, then the results history may be lost. If you want to make a manual save, you can click on this button.

7.4.9 Export results

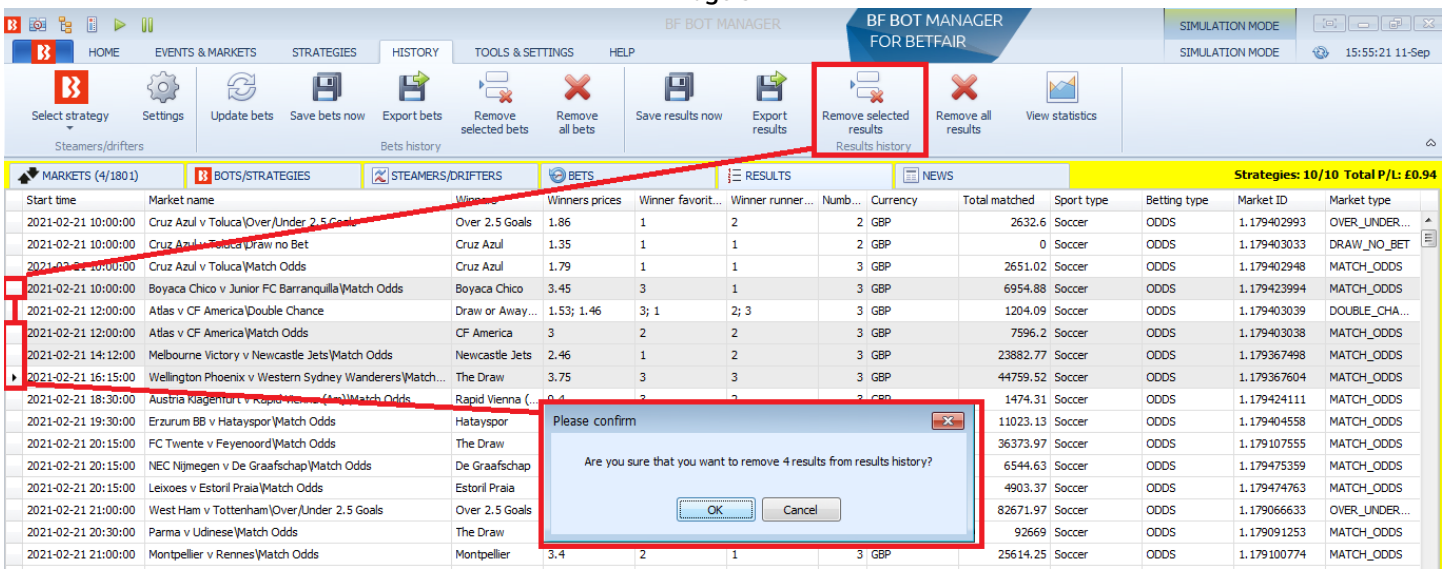
Image 326



Results history is kept in the software only for the last 30 days. If you want to save your results history for analysis or reference for periods longer than this, then you need to **export** the data periodically to avoid losing it.

7.4.10 Remove selected results

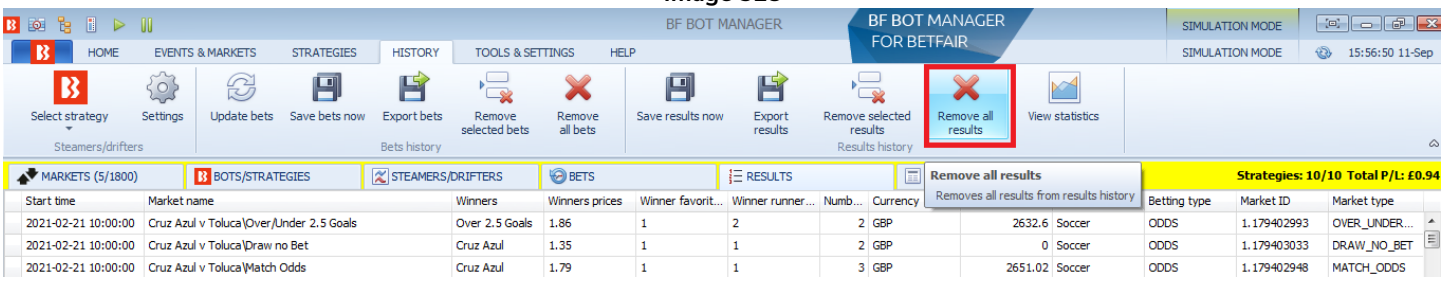
Image 327



If you want to remove a result, left click on the far left column by its name, then click Remove selected results. You will get a confirmation box before completing the deletion. To select multiple results, hold CTRL while selecting multiple results.

7.4.11 Remove all results

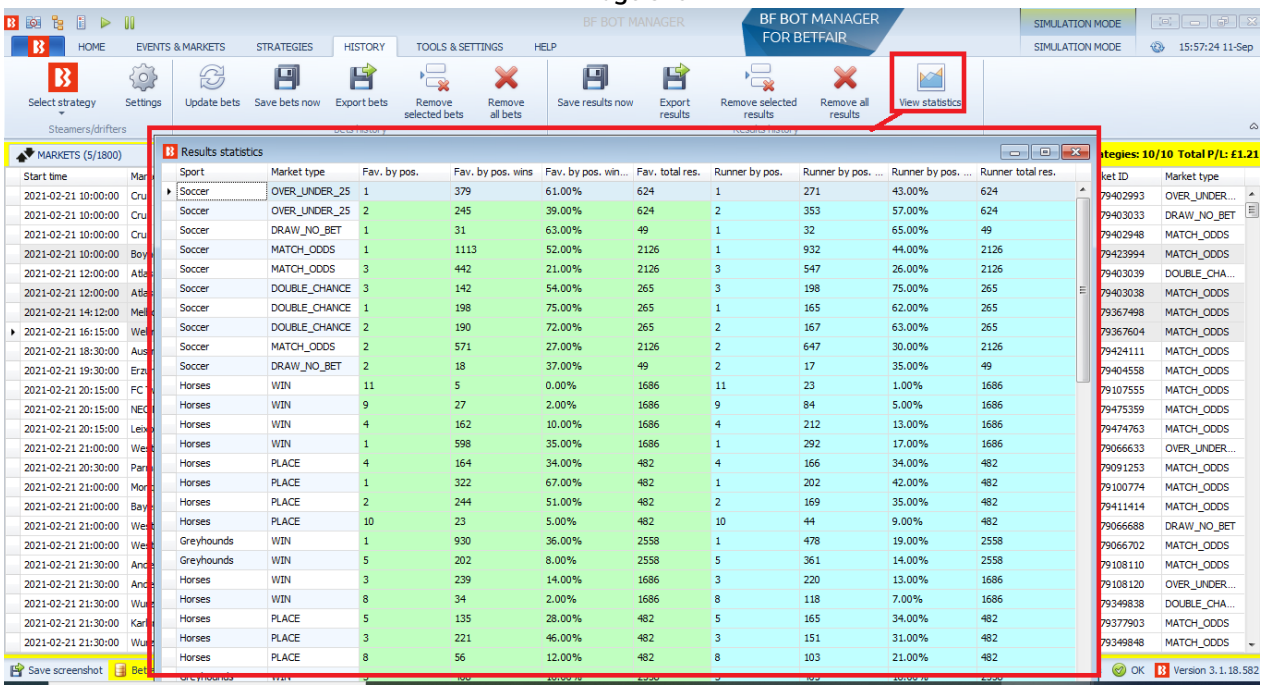
Image 328



This will remove all results history.

7.4.12 View statistics

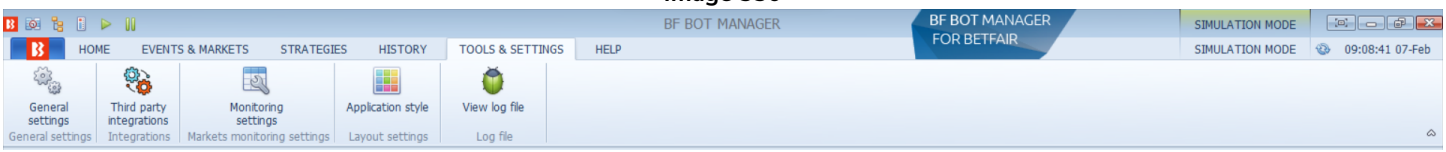
Image 329



The **View statistics** button shows all the results collected so far in a table that allows a level of analysis. We can see how many results of each type were collected, the win rates of favorite by position and of runner by position. For understanding this, it is useful to refer to a market page to check what runner by position equates to. For example, runner by position 1 for Match Odds in football is always the home team, runner by position 2 is the away team and so on.

7.5 Tools & Settings

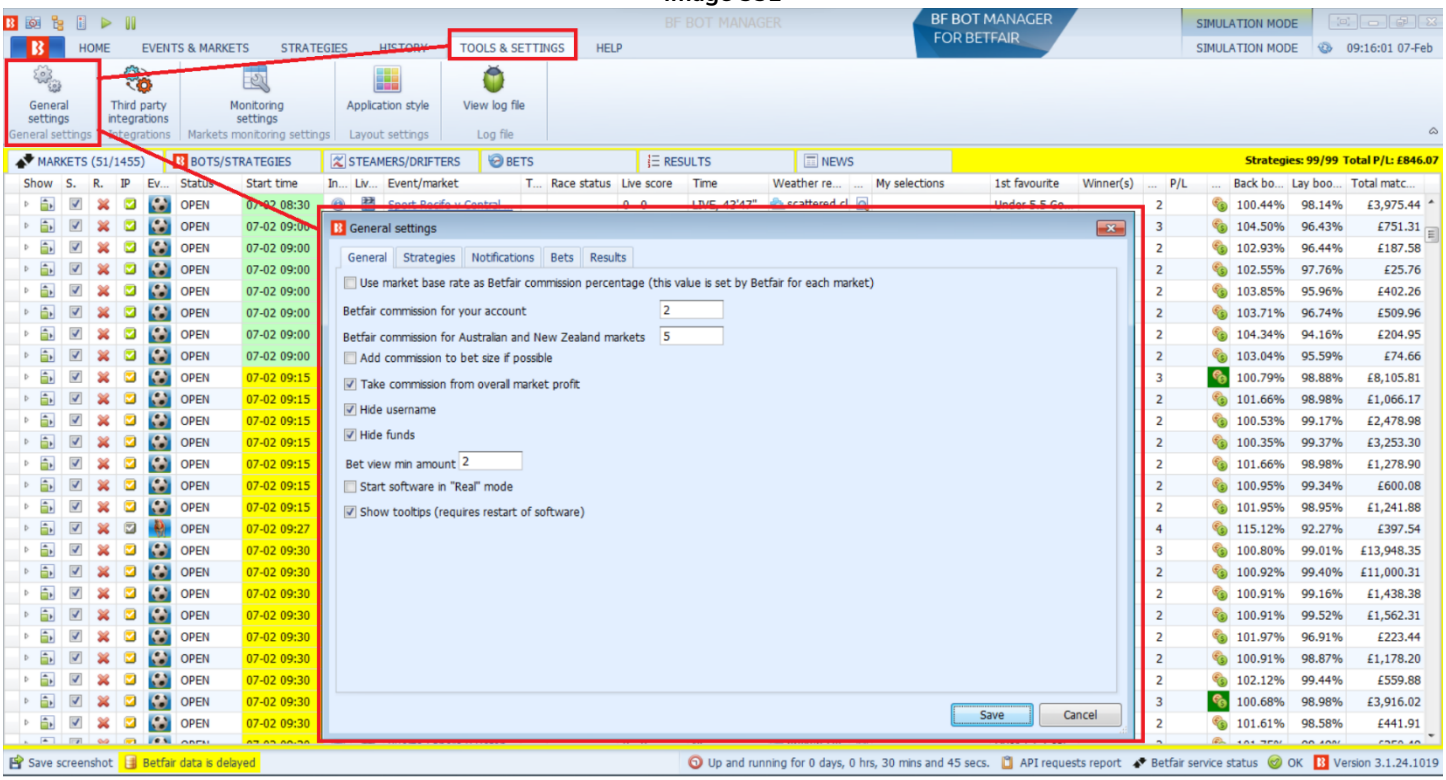
Image 330



The Tools & Settings tab allows access to general settings, third party integrations, monitoring settings, application style settings and the log file.

7.5.1 General settings - General

Image 331



The general settings form has multiple option tabs. General, Strategies, Notifications, Bets, and Results.

Commission - Here you can tell the bot to use the base rate given by Betfair for each market, or you can untick the checkbox and specify a custom commission for your account and for Australian/New Zealand markets.

Add Commission – You can tell the software to add commission to each bet so that it bets with that taken into account. So a target profit bet to win 10 would win 10 after commission is taken out.

Take commission – This box must be ticked for the software results to match your Betfair account results, otherwise commission will not be taken from market profits.

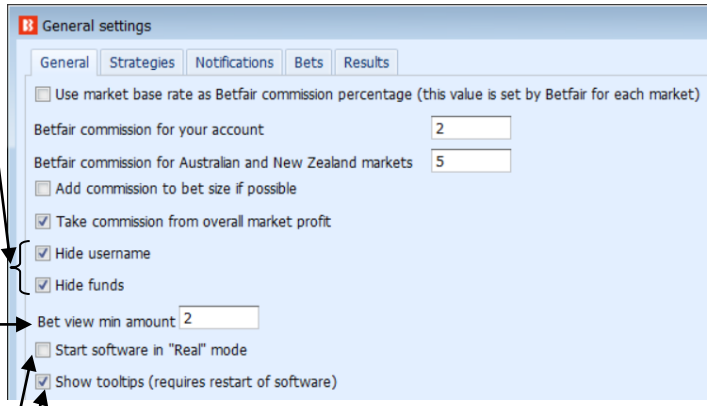
Image 332

Hide username / Hide funds – You can choose not to display your username on startup and not to display your current funds with these checkboxes.

View Min amount – The 1st, 2nd & 3rd best odds fields only display available liquidity of 2 or higher by default. You can change this here. **NOTE: This has effect on downloaded prices, only prices that have more available money than specified here are downloaded.** For example, if you set it to £500, then it would get only a few prices as most selections have less than this amount available**. It will affect ALL your strategies**, as they will receive only the prices that have more than this set value available to bet.

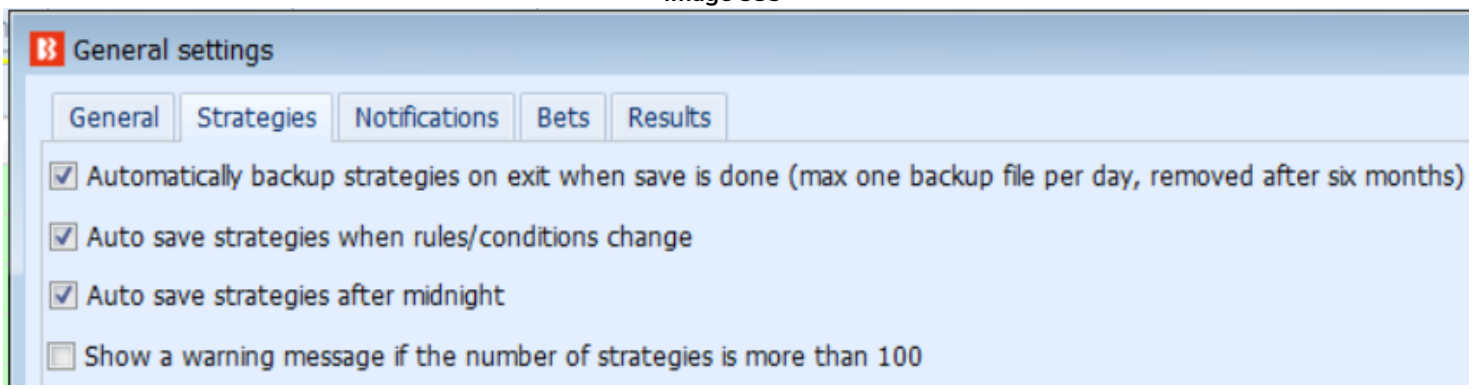
Start in Real mode – The software starts in simulation mode by default for safety. You can change it to start in real mode here.

Show tool tips – If you want to turn off tool tips, you can deselect this box and restart the software.



7.5.2 General settings - Strategies

Image 333



Auto backup strategies on exit – By default strategies are backed up when the software is exited. You can switch this off here. Old saves are removed after 6 months.

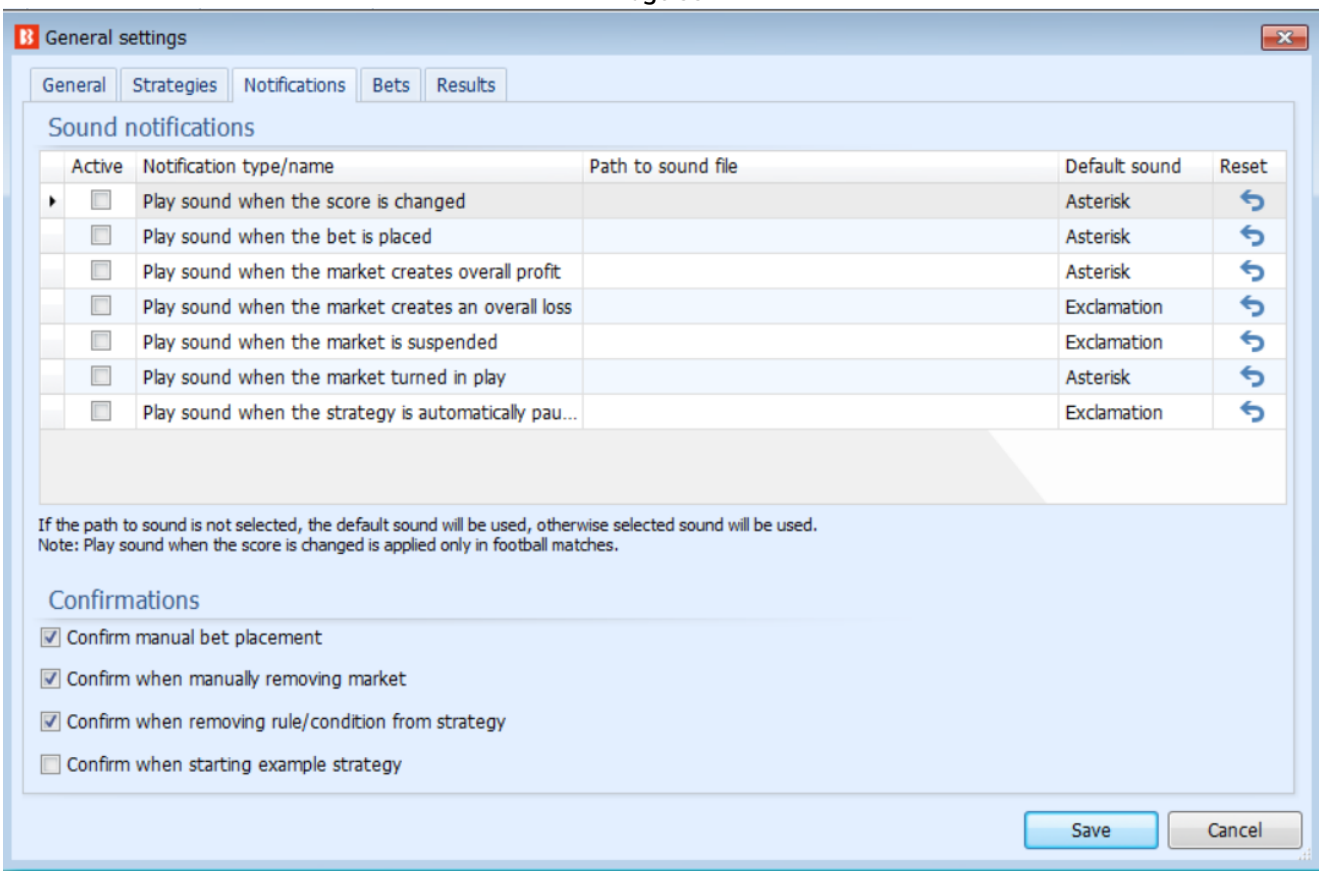
Auto save when strategies changed – By default the strategies are auto-saved when rules are changed. You can switch this off here.

Auto backup strategies daily – By default strategies are backed up once per day. You can switch this off here.

Show a warning message if the number of strategies is more than 100 – The number of strategies that can be run depends on your PC power. In general, runnnig more than 100 strategies at the same time can slow your computer down. If your computer is not fast enough to execute all strategies when market prices are downloaded then the software might become unresponsive or unreliable. If you decide to run more than 100 strategies at the same time, then please do it carefully until you are condfident that your computer can handle that workload.

7.5.3 General settings - Notifications

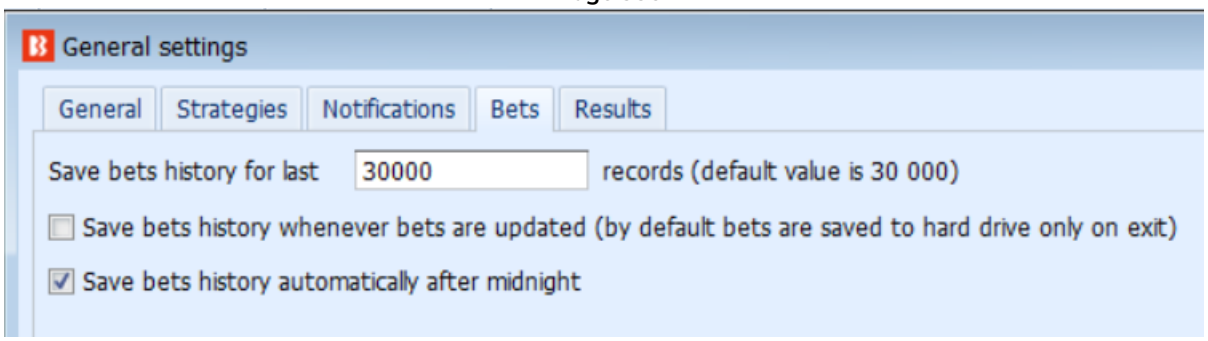
Image 334



By default the software does not make any sounds, but it is possible to add sound notifications when bets are placed, markets change status and so on. You can also add your own custom sound with the “Use my sound” option. It is also possible to disable the confirmation text boxes for certain actions with the right hand checkboxes.

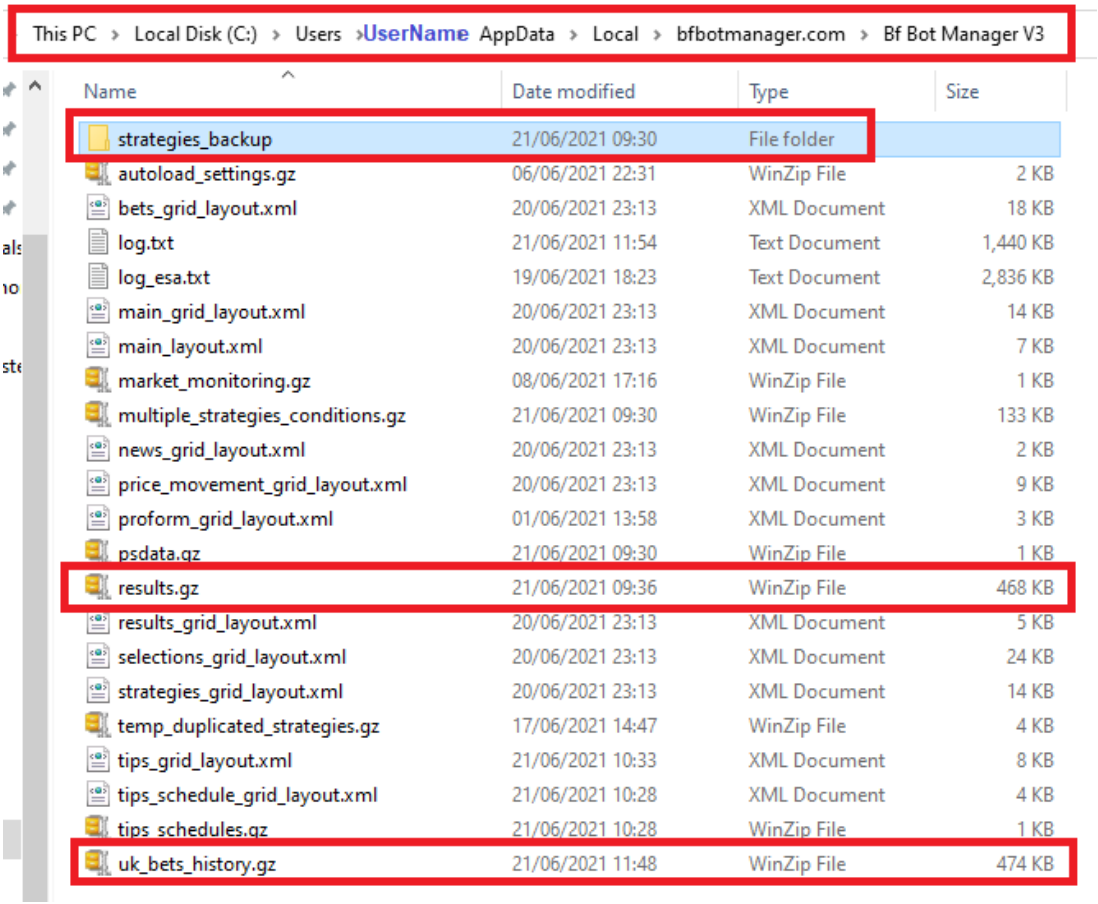
7.5.4 General Settings - Bets

Image 335



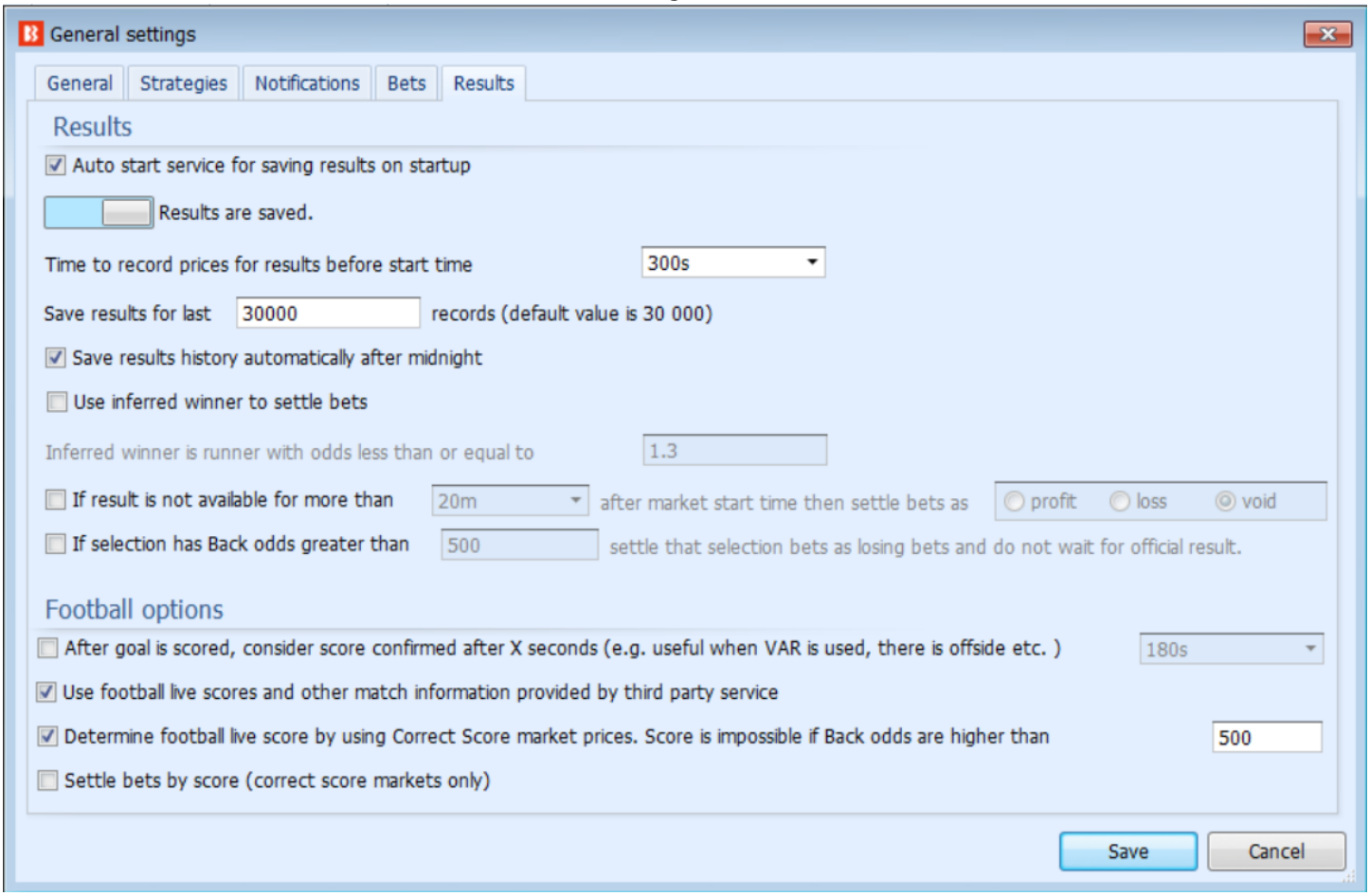
30,000 bets are saved by default, but you can edit that here. Bet history is usually saved each day, but you can change that to save after each bet is updated if you are worried about losing bet history from the software being unexpectedly closed. The bet history is there for if the software or PC is unexpectedly closed. You cannot open or view these autosaved bets history without an instance of Bf Bot manager. To do that, you need to **export** bet history to a CSV file. The autosave files can usually be found in the Local Disk > Users > "Your user name" > AppData > Local > bfbotmanager.com > BF Bot Manager V3 or do a search for "Bf Bot Manager V3" if it is not there. That folder also has the auto backup of strategies and results history,

Image 336



7.5.5 General settings - Results

Image 337



The results settings allow you to change the defaults if needed. It is unlikely that you will need to change these settings unless you are doing a special, advanced strategy and know what you are doing or we have instructed you to do so.

Auto start service for saving results – This software will save results as they come in

Time to record prices for results before start time "300s" – The software will look at **the price with the best overround in the 5 minute period before the start**. These are then recorded as the pre-event price for that selection. Any in-play bets that look at the pre-event price will use this figure. The overrounds a few seconds before event start are sometimes poor, so it is likely that the price taken will be in the few minutes before the event start, not the last few seconds.

Save results for last 30,000 records - It will save results for the last "30,000" records by default. This is similar to the bets history. You can change this number if needed.

Save results history automatically after midnight – This is for safety in case of any problems where the software is unexpectedly stopped.

Use inferred winner to settle bets - An inferred winner means that any odds under a certain level indicate a

winner. The default is 1.3. This may be useful if you want horseracing or greyhound markets settled on the bet quicker so the next bet in a series can be placed. In those cases you might not want to wait until the official result, but just use an inferred result. You can change this 1.3 figure to a lower number if you want. This service does not guarantee finding the winner all the time and it is not always 100% accurate. To use this service you will need to set market monitor type to until "Closed" or until "Suspended for N seconds" so that market gets monitored during in play and until the end.
You can also tell the bot to **settle a market as void, win or loss if the result is not available a specified time after the market started**. This may be useful for some user whose strategies cannot continue until the previous market is settled, in this case they may simply want to arbitrarily settle the market after a certain time.
You can also tell the software to **automatically settle a selection as lost when their odds go over a certain level**. This is another way to speed up the settling of markets when you do not want to wait for the official result.

Football Options
After a goal is scored, consider score confirmed after X seconds (e.g. useful when VAR is used, there is offside, etc.) – This can be set to delay score line triggered actions until the specified time has elapsed. Unconfirmed scores are displayed with a yellow background in the live score column of the MARKETS screen.

Use football live scores and other match information provided by third party service - Football Livescores and other information are used from a Third Party Service "SportMonks". This in-play data is used as is without any guarantees for accuracy. We recommend you keep this checkbox ticked.

WARNING: **Switching this off means you will not receive football live scores, in play statistics etc. and all football rules will stop working.**

Determine football live score by using Correct Score market prices. Score is impossible if Back odds are higher than "500" - This is not a perfect way to judge the score, but it is an option if there is no data feed. It will try to determine the football live score by using the correct score market prices. If the above third party service checkbox is also ticked, the software will use the in-play data service first, and where not available it will use the correct score market second to determine the score. **You can also select what odds in the back amount suggest a score is impossible**. The default is 500. When the 0-0 correct score odds are 500 or more, it usually means a goal has been scored and that scoreline is impossible.

Settle bets by score (correct score markets only) - Correct score bets can be settled by the full time result from the 3rd party data service rather than waiting for the Betfair market to be settled if you choose. Again this is an option for those who want to reduce the amount of time taken before a next bet can be placed if a strategy must wait for previous bets to be settled before placing new bets.

7.5.6 Third Party Integrations – TPD Zone (Total Performance Data) (BF Bot Manager only)

In the Third-Party Integrations form we can setup a connection to **TPD Zone**'s racing data from https://www.tpd.zone/. This feature only works on the Bf Bot Manager version of the software for Betfair. TPD Zone uses the latest GPS positioning technology so that TPD's data stream has live, in-race, real-time positions of the runners within fractions of a second. Speed, stride length, distance, and split time calculations are transmitted while the race is in progress.

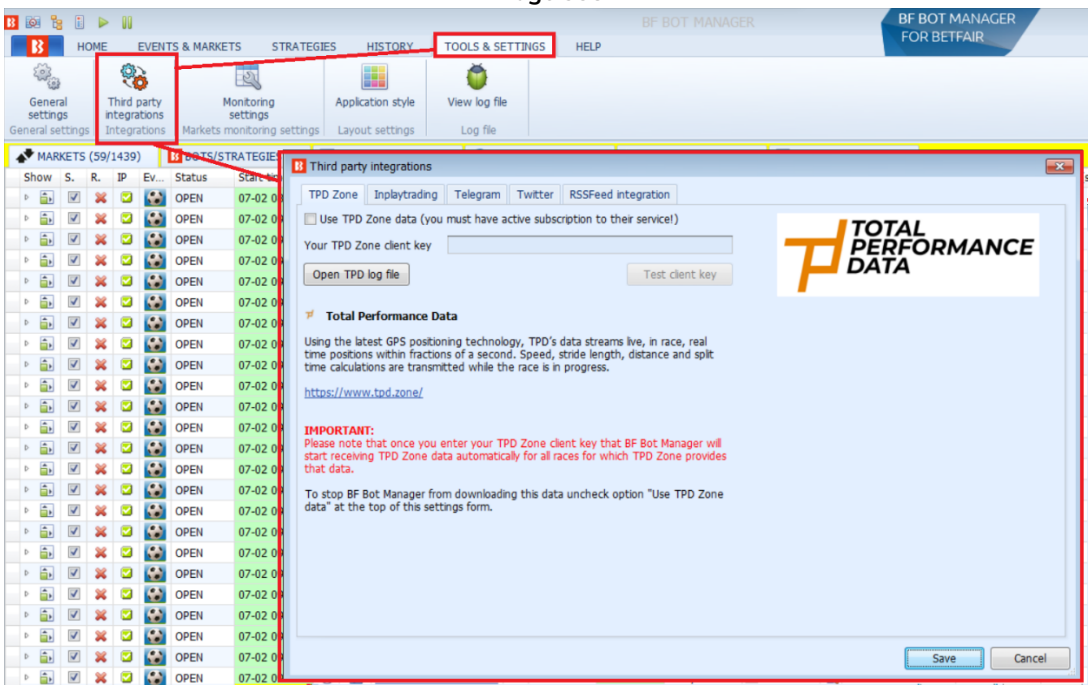
This service requires a separate subscription to TPD Zone. This is separate from Bf Bot Manager and not included for free.

You can add your client key to the TPD Zone form to connect your TPD Zone data to the Bf Bot Manager software.

IMPORTANT: Please note that once you enter you TPD Zone client key, the Bf Bot Manager will start receiving TPD Zone data automatically for all races which TPD Zone provides data for.

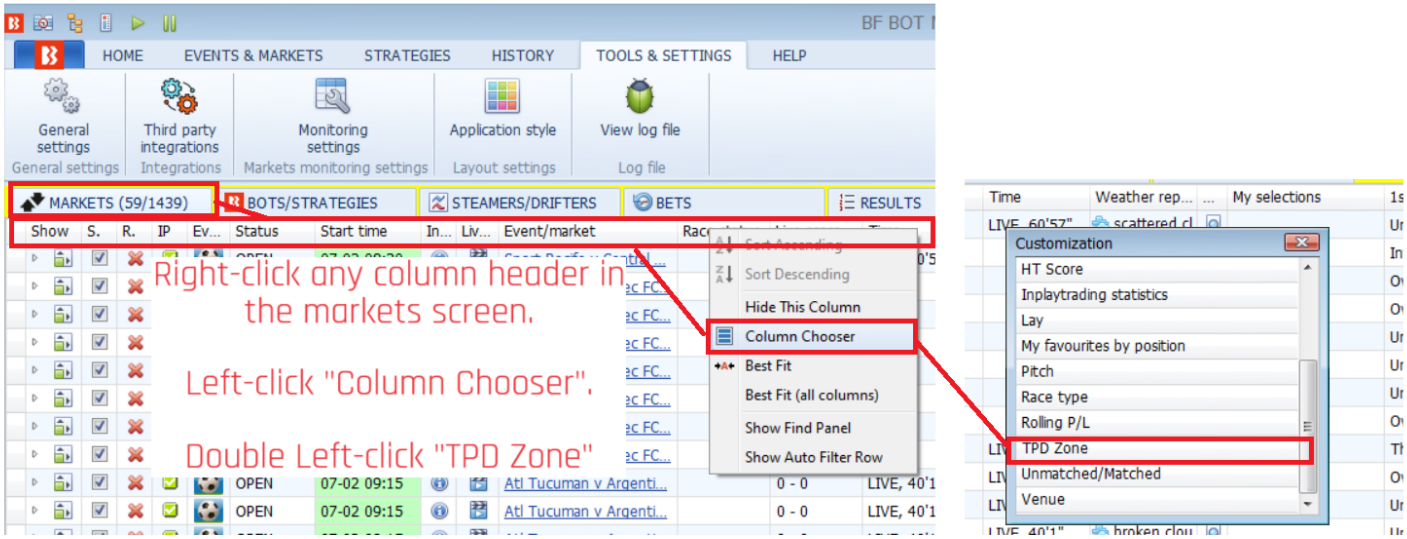
To stop Bf Bot Manager from downloading this data, untick the option "Use TPD Zone data" at the top of the settings form.

Image 338



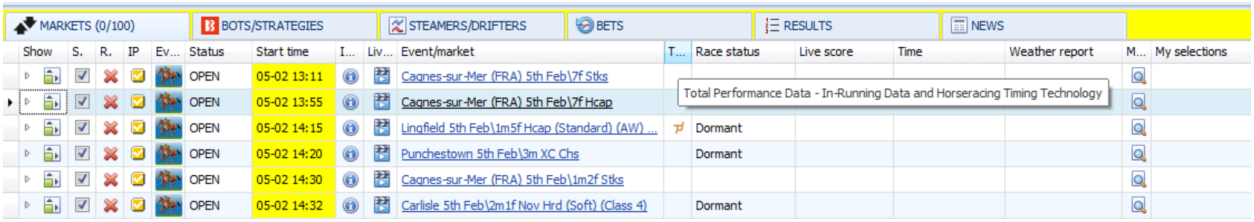
TPD Zone data is available for each selection in the horse market. The column that shows TPD Zone data can be added to the Markets main tab. The name of this column is "TPD zone". To add this column, go to the MARKETS screen and right click on any of the column headers. Then, left-click on "Column Chooser". Next, double left-click on "TPD Zone". This will add the column to your MARKETS screen. If you cannot find it straight away, try scrolling to the right and see if it is the final column on the right. You can move the position of the TPD Zone column by left-click holding the column header. Then you can drag it to your preferred position.

Image 339



If a race has TPD Zone data, then the TPD Zone data icon will appear in the column.

Image 340



By pressing the TPD zone icon , a window with the TPD zone data will open.

Image 341

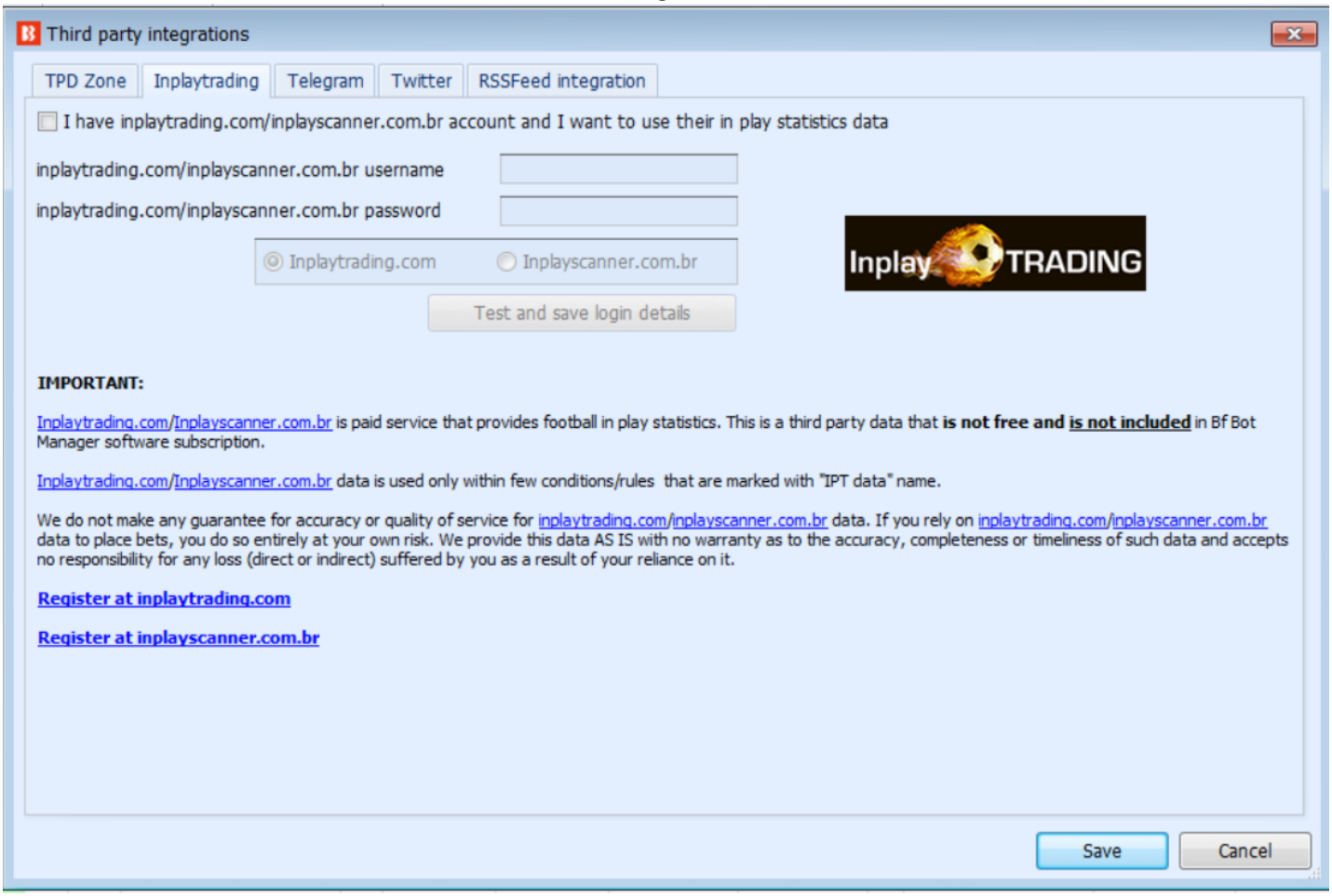
Silks	Selection name	V	VS	DBL	SF	SFS	Progress
	7 Neptune Legend	16.43	0	5.2	2.39	2.4	1316
	12 Time Patrol	15.38	0	11.7	1.99	2.24	1322
	4 Hold The Press	16.34	0	3.9	2.56	2.57	1314
	1 Ajrad	14.7	0	15.6	2.33	2.28	1326
	6 Mcs Wag	15.82	0	14.7	2.63	2.62	1325
	10 Repartee	15.83	0	6.3	1.73	2.01	1317
	8 Pontius	15.57	0	11.7	2.33	2.34	1322
	9 Rebel Redemption	16.35	0	0	2.27	2.34	1310
	2 Button Bay	15.82	0	11.8	2.48	2.51	1322
	11 Ricardo Ofworthing	15.35	0	8.9	2.26	2.27	1319
	3 Gintini	16.23	0	3.9	2.5	2.41	1314
	5 Legal Mind	16.44	0	4.2	2.64	2.63	1315

If the TPD Zone icon is not there, it means that TPD zone data is not available for that market.

Important: This is a third-party data source. Bf Bot Manager does NOT make any guarantee for the accuracy or quality of the service of TPD Zone data. If you rely on TPD Zone data to place bets, you do so entirely at your own risk. We provide the data AS IS with no warranty as to its accuracy, completeness or timeliness. We accept no responsibility for any loss (direct or indirect) suffered by you as a result of your reliance on TPD Zone data.

7.5.7 Third Party Integrations - Football - in play statistics

Image 342



The Bf Bot Manager currently has the option of receiving in-play football statistics from 2 separate providers.
1) Inplay Trading (Requires an extra subscription)
2) Bf Bot Manager's 3rd party service (Included with the Bf Bot Manager subscription)
It is also possible to setup strategies to infer the match score using the correct score market if neither service offers in-play statistics for a match.

If you want to use the InplayTrading statistics, you need to sign up with them, pay for their subscription and then enter your details in this form. You also need to tick the checkbox to use the InplayTrading.com statistics.

If you are using the InplayTrading statistics, Bot Manager 3rd party statistics and the infer score from correct score market options at the same time, then the software will look for data in this order.
1. InplayTrading statistics
2. Bot Manager 3rd party statistics (If 1. Is not available for that match.)
3. Infer score from correct score market (If 1 and 2 are not available for that match.)

Bot Manager does not make any guarantee regarding the accuracy of the InplayTrading, the 3rd party or the correct score market inferred scorelines and data. They are used at your own risk.

7.5.8 Third Party Integrations - Twitter integration

Image 343

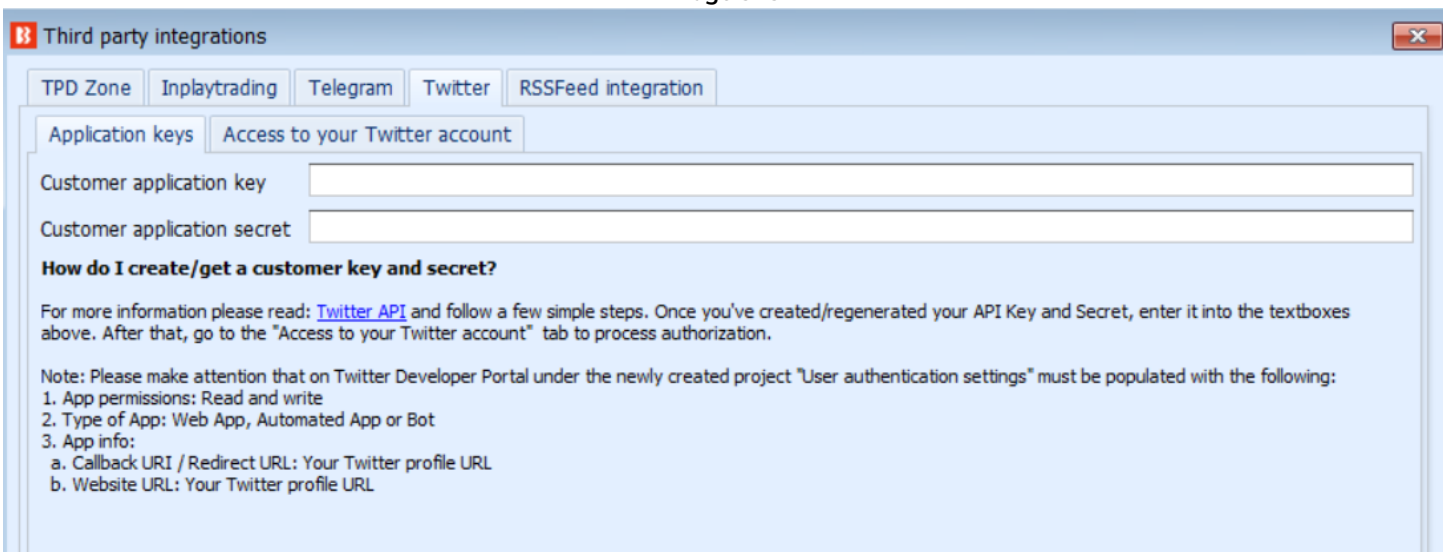
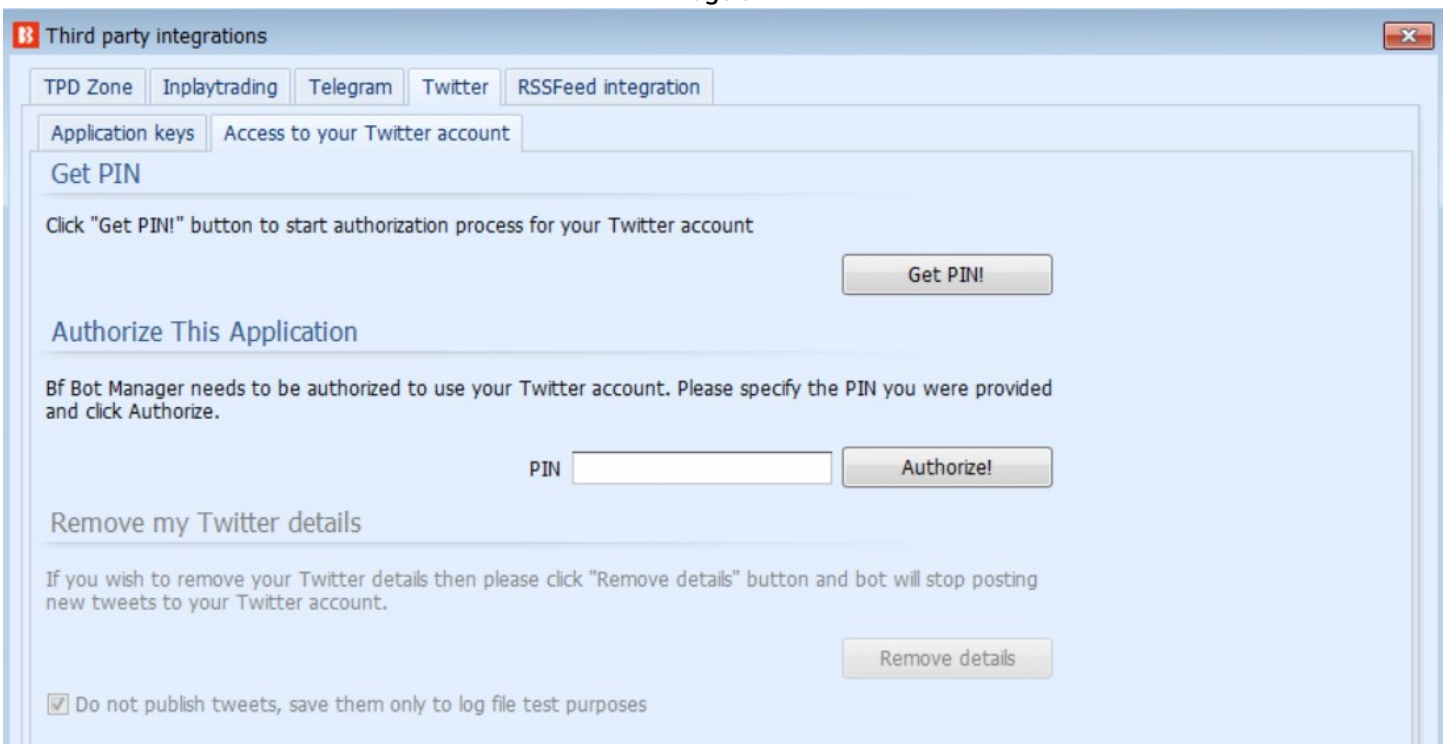


Image 344



It is possible to link your Bot Manager software to your Twitter account. You will need to follow the instructions here to get a PIN, then enter that in the Bot Manager software to authorize it. Then you need to add a rule to each strategy that you want to use Twitter with. The rule is in the Safety rules>Tweet placed bets. The checkbox at the bottom allows you to prevent the publishing of tweets and instead keep them as a log file for test purposes.

Image 345

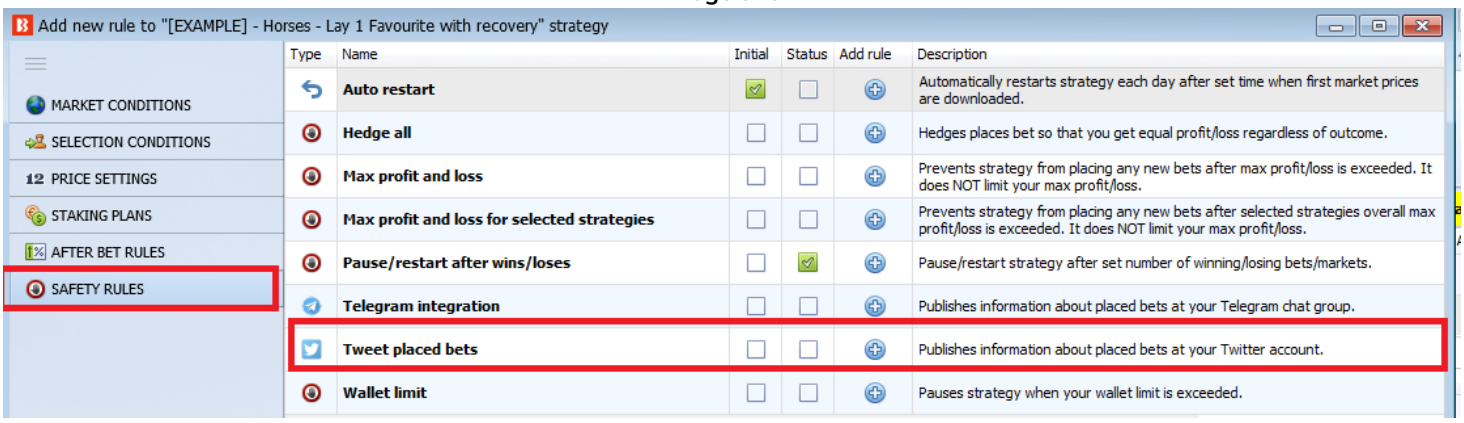
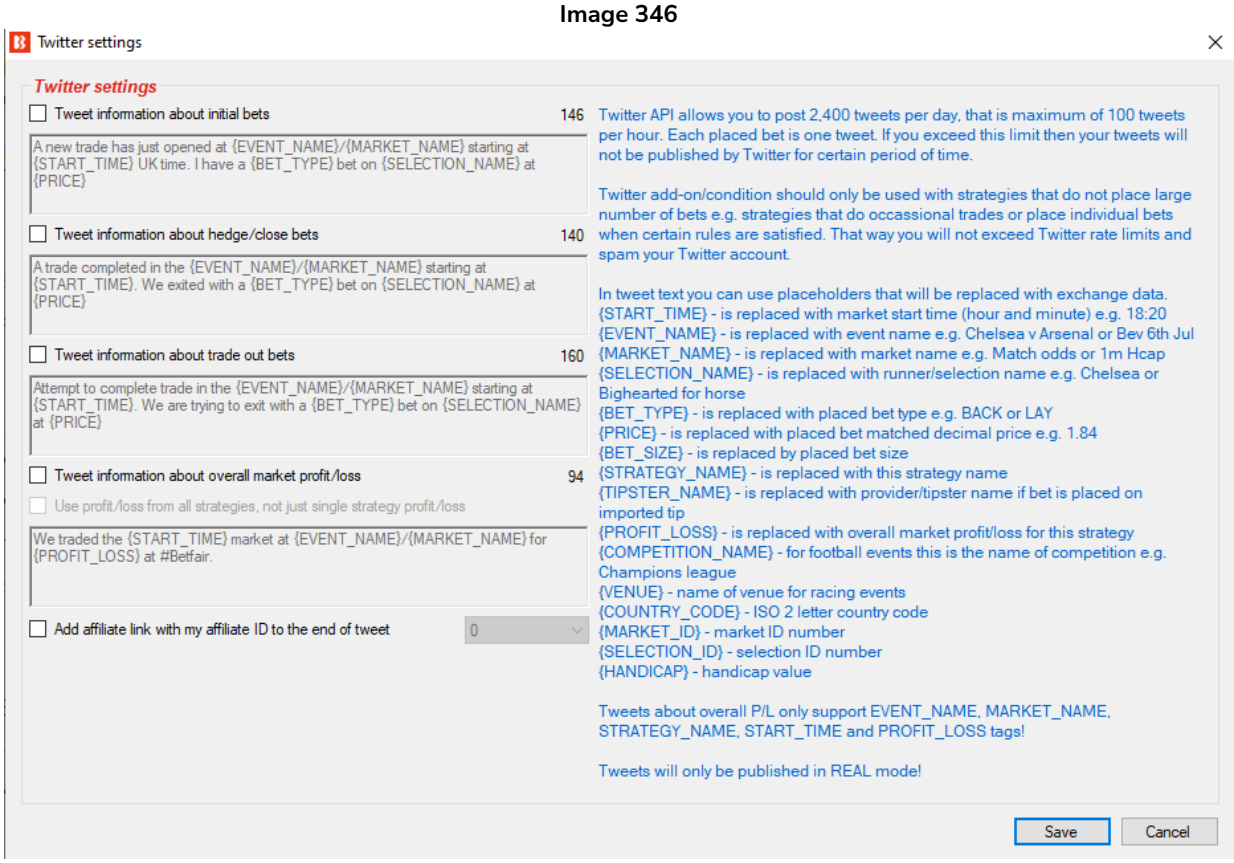


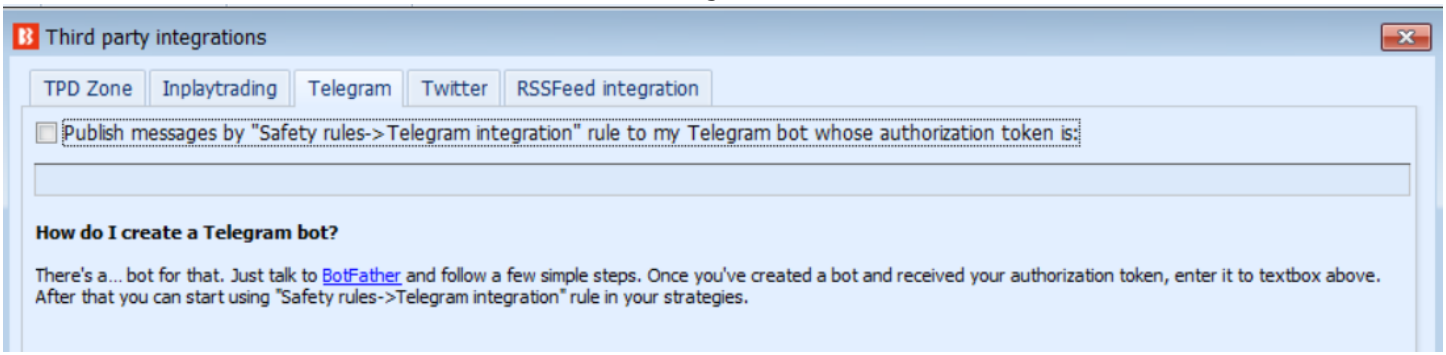
Image 346



Then you can use the Twitter settings to create the tweet instructions that you want to use. Please note the restrictions that Twitter places on the number of tweets per day (2,400) and per hour (100). Four tweet templates are included in the rule as examples of how to use the function. You can also add your Bot Manager affiliate link to the bottom of each tweet if you want. To become an affiliate, you can sign up on the Bot Manager website. Note: Tweets can only be sent in Real Mode. Simulated bets cannot be tweeted.

7.5.9 Third Party Integrations - Telegram integration

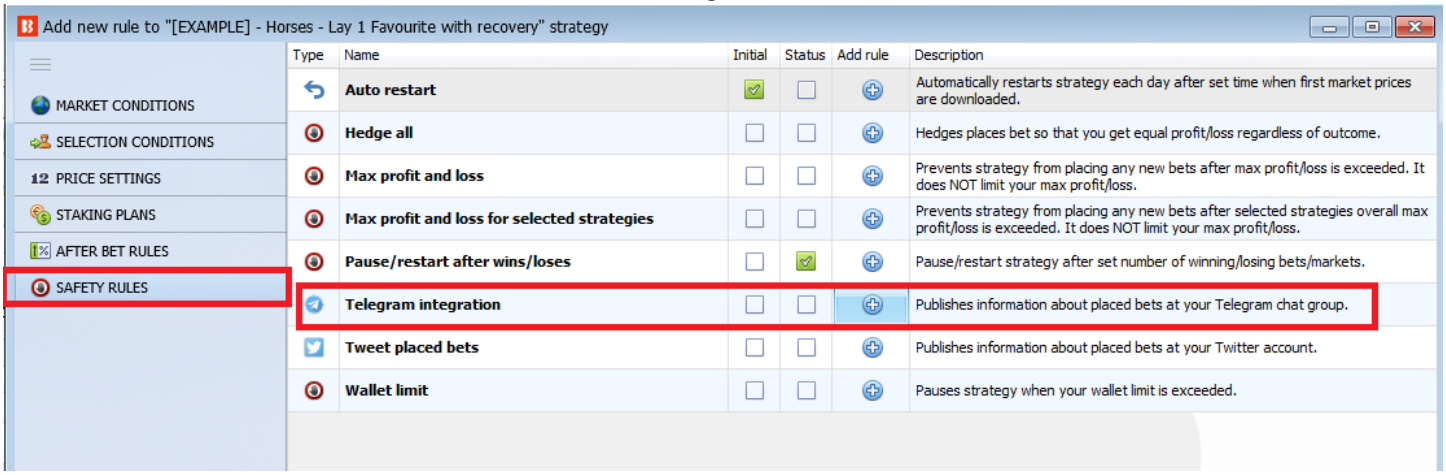
Image 347



Telegram is a messaging platform where you can set up a Telegram bot that will message you each time a strategy does activities that you want to be informed about. These messages can be private or shared with other Telegram users. To set it up, you need to create a Telegram account and then enter its authorization token in this general settings form.

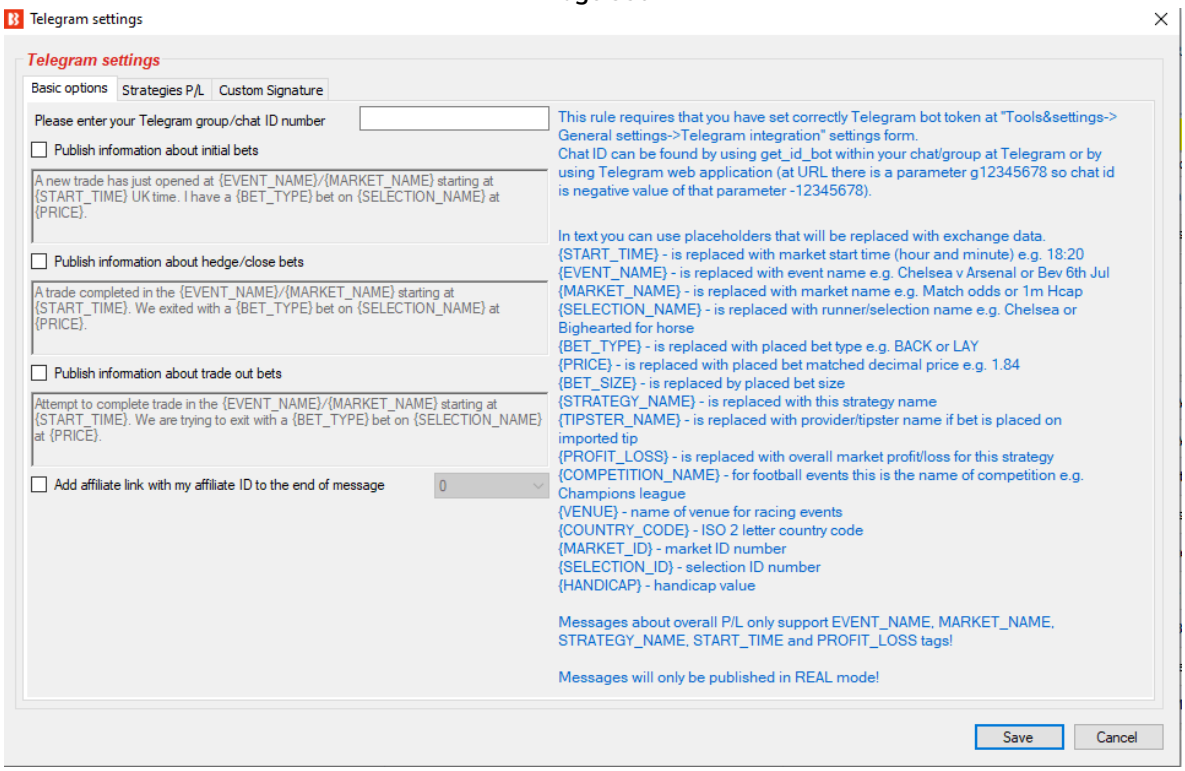
Once you have a Telegram account, you will need to create a Telegram bot. There is a Telegram bot that will help you do that. Just click on the link and follow the instructions at https://t.me/botfather	**Image 348**

Image 349



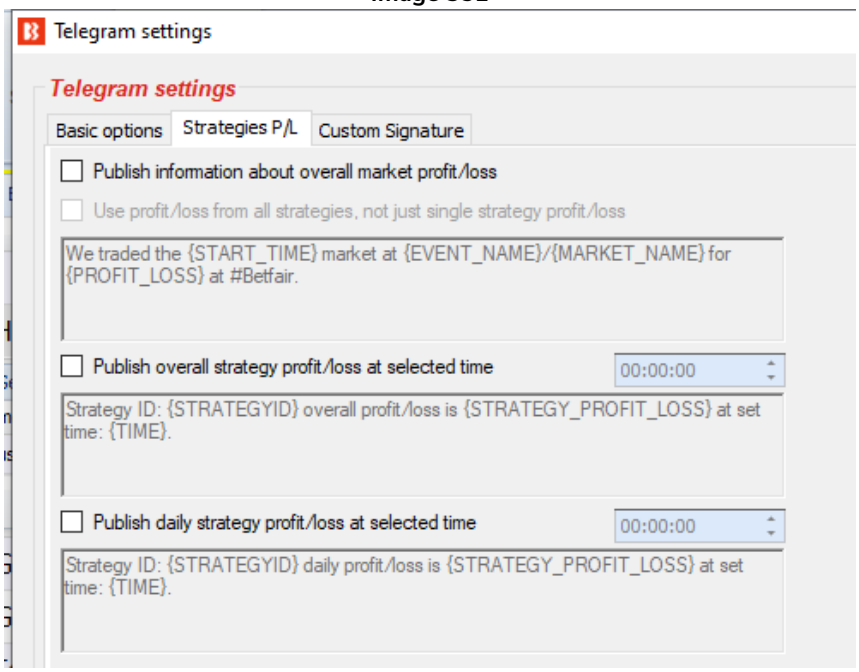
Each strategy that you wish to receive updates about must have a Telegram integration rule added to it. That rule is found in the Safety Rules area.

Image 350



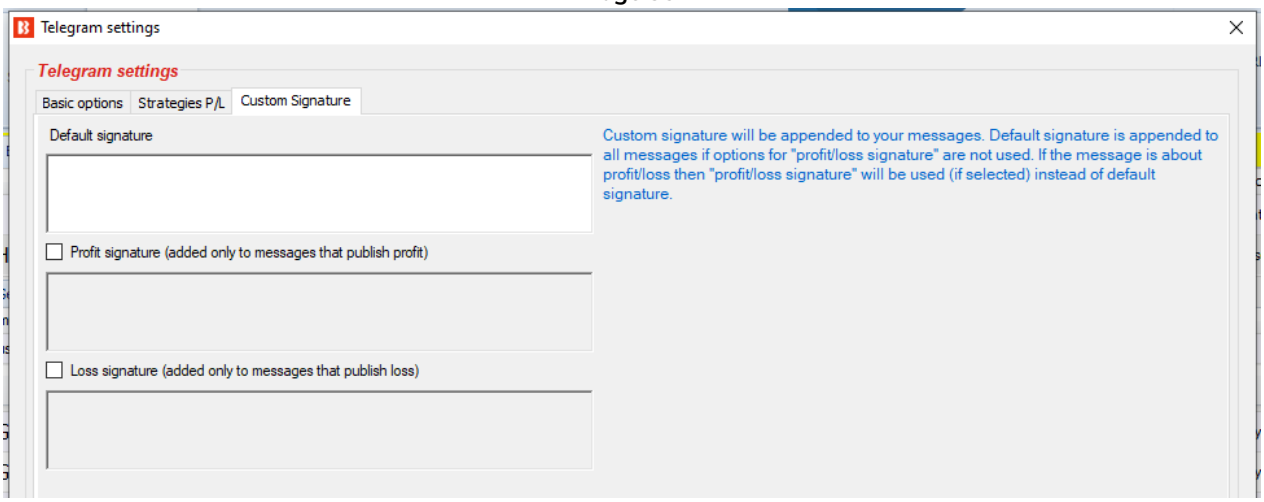
You can set up telegrams to update you on initial bets, hedge/close bets, trade out bets. This can be useful when you are away from your computer or VPS that has your software running but you want to be updated on your phone as to bets being placed by some or all strategies. You can also add your Bot Manager affiliate link to the end of Telegram messages by ticking the checkbox.

Image 351



You can also get updates on overall market profit and loss for each market from one strategy or form all strategies, overall strategy profit/loss and a daily profit/loss update.

Image 352



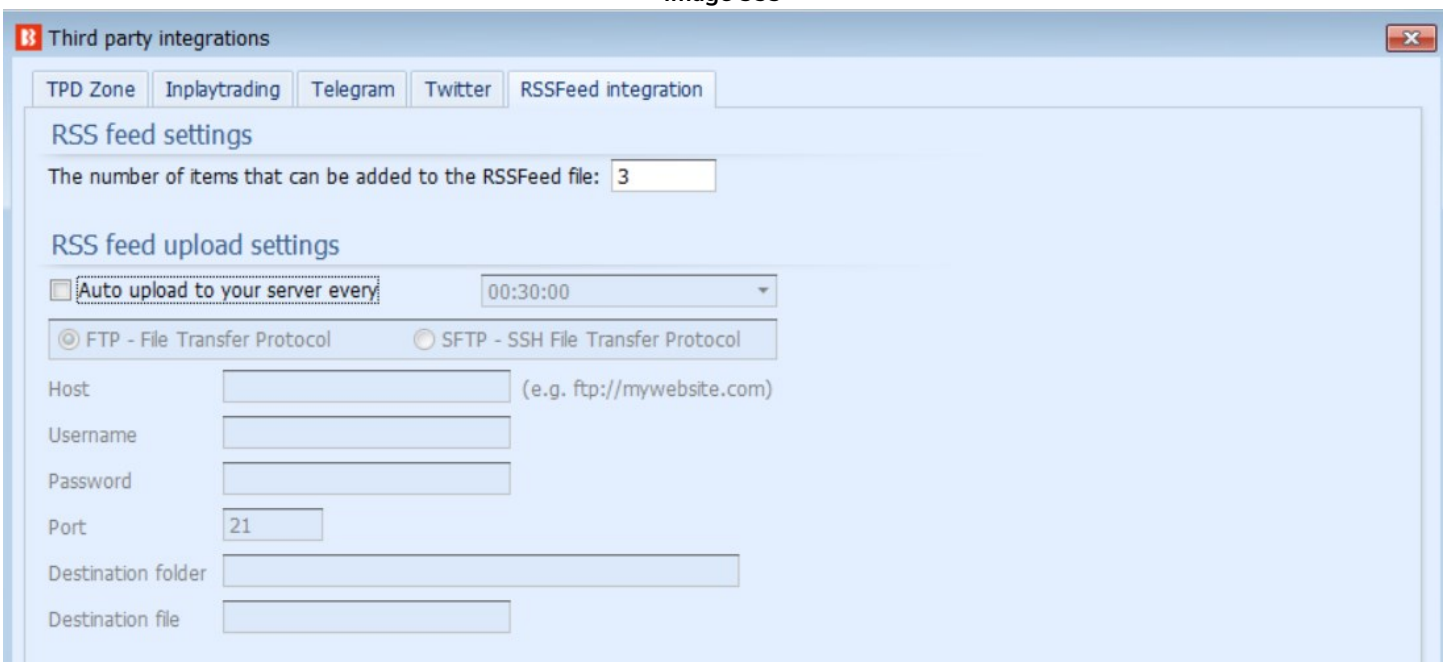
You can also add custom signatures to Telegrams for all messages, messages after profits and messages after losses. Note: Telegram messages can only be sent in Real Mode. Simulated bets cannot be sent.

7.5.10 Third Party Integrations - RSS feed integration

This function allows messages to be sent to a RSS feed with the “RSS Feed integration” rule. The rule is found in the safety tab of the strategy rules. Messages are published to a RSS feed/format and uploaded to the customer website by using FTP/SFTP settings. These settings are located in the “Third Party integrations” section in BF Bot Manager and in the “General settings” section in the BQ Bot Manager and MB Bot Manager.

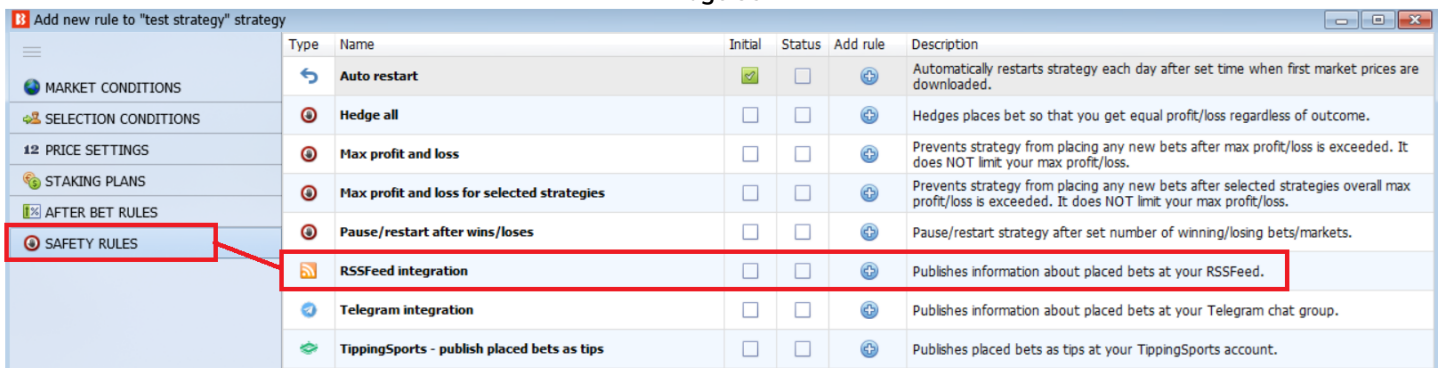
You can edit the RSS settings in the “Third party integrations” form.

Image 353



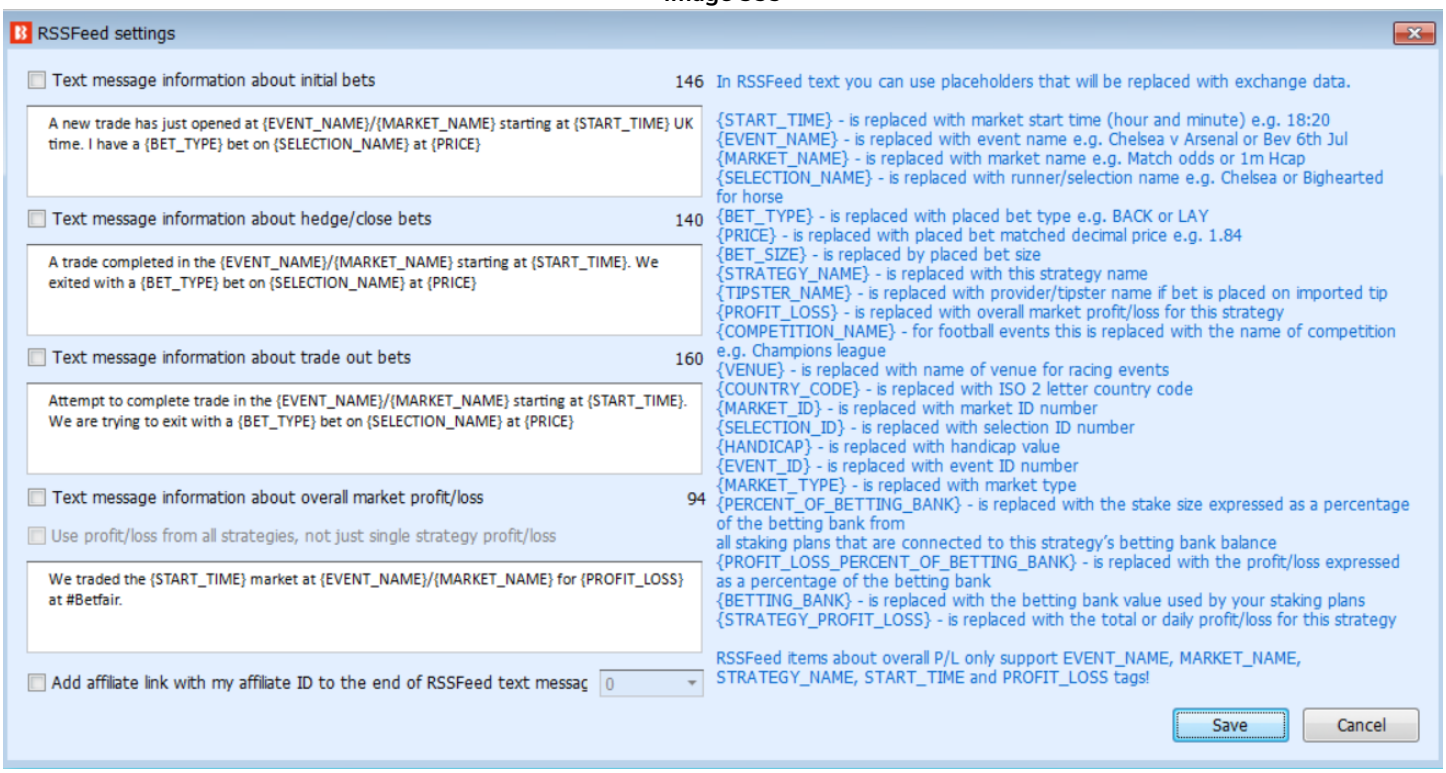
You can edit the RSS message settings in the strategy's "Safety rules" tab.

Image 354



Messages are published to RSS feed/format and uploaded to the customer website by using FTP/SFTP settings.

Image 355



7.5.11 Monitoring settings

For loaded markets, prices will be downloaded according to the settings in the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings form. When markets are first loaded, the prices might not be displayed yet on the Markets screen, but when the event start time comes closer and comes within the monitoring time set by your Monitoring settings, then the bot will start downloading prices.

Loading of markets is the first part of automating your strategy. Once you have loaded the markets on which you want to bet, then you should also check the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings and make sure that

markets will be monitored at the times when your strategy is set to place bets. Always test new strategies in simulation mode.

The bot tries to execute strategies and place bets when the market prices are downloaded. If market prices are not being downloaded then your strategies will not execute or try to place bets. Market prices are downloaded according to the Monitoring settings. By default, the bot is set to start monitoring markets 30 minutes before the event start time and to keep monitoring markets until they are closed. In most cases you will not need to change those settings, but if you decide to place bets early or need to monitor a large number of markets at the same time then you will need to make some changes to optimize those settings to your needs.

Image 356 Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings

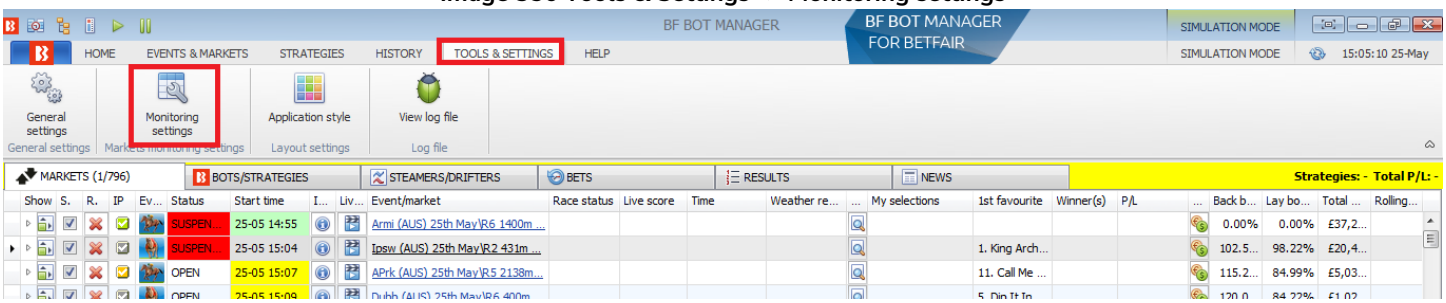
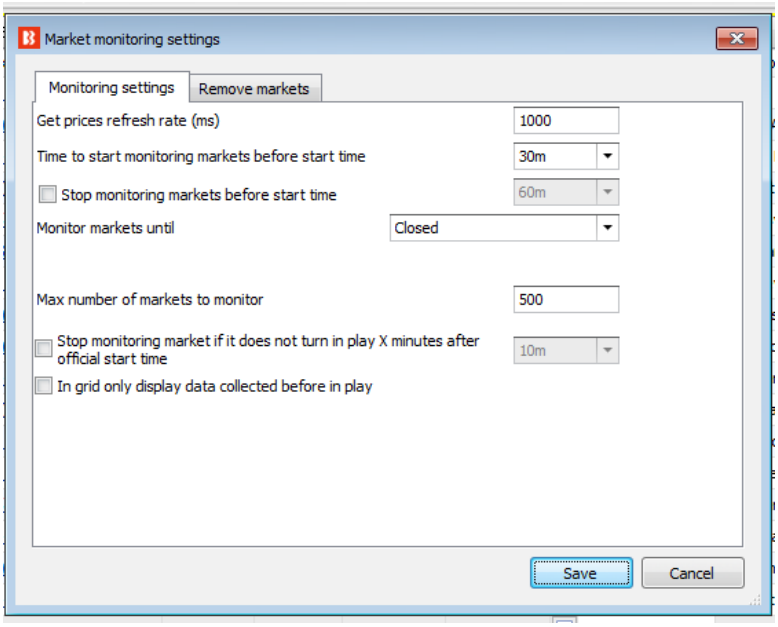


Image 357 Monitoring settings form



The default monitoring time is set at 30 minutes before event start. Prices will start being downloaded from this point. No bet activity can take place without the price data. By default market prices will be downloaded and monitored until the markets is closed. If you want to get price information from before the default 30m, you need to change this setting.

The first option in the form is the refresh rate for getting market prices. The default value is 1,000ms (1 second) and it can be set low as 300ms. This means that every 1 second, the bot makes one request to get prices for 5 different markets. Then next second it gets prices for the next 5 markets loaded in the markets screen that are being monitored, and so on. With a refresh rate of 1 second, the bot will be able to get prices for 300 markets each minute (60s x 5 = 300).

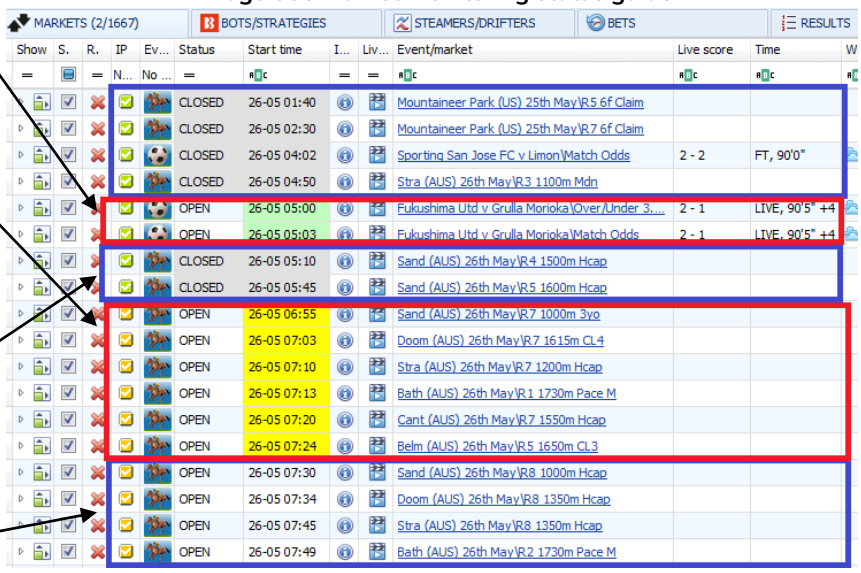
Start times with a GREEN background are in-play and currently being monitored.

Start times with a YELLOW background have not started yet but are currently being monitored because their start time is within the time set by the monitor markets form. (default 30m)

Start times with a GRAY background are closed and are no longer being monitored.

Start times with no background shading have not started yet and are not being monitored yet because their start times are outside the time set by the monitor markets form.

Image 358 Market monitoring status guide



There are currently 8 markets being monitored in this image.

In this example Image 359, there are 8 markets being monitored.
With a refresh rate setting of 1,000ms, that means that every second it gets the prices for 5 markets. So it will take at least 2 seconds to be able to completely refresh the prices for all 8 markets. And it will be able to refresh the prices for these markets 37 times in a minute (300 price checks per minute / 8 markets = 37.5 checks for each market per minute)

If you were monitoring all football markets then this might not be fast enough, especially during the weekends when there are many matches that start at same or similar time. If the software was set to monitor 100 matches kicking off at 3pm, and is already monitoring 100 matches that kicked off at 2pm and 2:30pm, and also it was monitoring the Match odds, Over/under 0.5, 1.5, 2.5, 3.5, 4.5 goals markets, Draw no bet, Correct score, Both teams to score and Half time result. That is 10 markets for each match, making 2,000 markets. A setting of 1,000ms would allow 300 price checks per minute, so it would take over 6 minutes to refresh the prices for all of the 2,000 markets. (2,000 markets / 300 price checks per minute = 6.6 minutes to refresh all market prices) Depending on the type of strategy you are using, that might not be fast enough.

In that case, you can set a faster refresh rate. A refresh rate of 500ms, for example, would allow the bot to get twice as many prices per second (600 market prices per minute). Below is a table that shows how many market prices a bot can get per second/per minute for different refresh rates.

Image 359

Refresh rate interval	Market prices per second	Market prices per minute
300ms	15-20	1,000
500ms	10	600
1,000ms	5	300
2,000ms	0-5	150
5,000ms	0-5	60

Higher refresh rates will allow the bot to get prices faster, but it will also require a faster processor to handle all those prices and execute your strategies. Each downloaded price must be checked against each strategy so that the strategy can decide if it should take any action for those downloaded prices or not. This requires a very fast processor (CPU). If you are running a large number of strategies at the same time, you should check the minimum configurations for hardware that we recommend. If your CPU is not fast enough then bot might not work properly, become unreliable or crash. It is always best to test your settings in simulation mode before using real money and see how bot performs over the course of few days.

Minimum configuration to run the bot

The Bf Bot Manager V3 software will work on almost all newer computers, that is, computers produced since 2014. So generally you should be fine, but if you are running a large number of strategies, placing many bets at the same time or using some of the extra features provided by a third party, then you should consider using a VPS or a dedicated server to run the bot.

Minimum configuration to run V3 version	Recommended configuration to run V3 version
Intel i3, i5 or i7 CPU 2GB of RAM 1280px screen resolution width 20Mbps cable internet connection or faster 200MB of HD space to install the bot and use it	Intel i5 or i7 CPU, the faster the better 4GB of RAM 1920px screen resolution width 50Mbps cable internet connection 400MB of HD space to install and run the bot. If possible use a SSD, as your computer will work faster and it will not slow down the bot in case you use it for something else and not just to run the bot

If you plan on running 50 or more strategies with a single bot, then you should consider splitting those strategies and running another bot instance on a second computer. That will make the bot faster and more reliable.

Also, if you are running other programs connected with your Betfair account then you should check those other program refresh rates, too. Make sure that your account is not making more than 5 requests per second in total to get market prices, as that is the Betfair API limit. If you exceed Betfair API limits then you might get blocked by the API or charged additional fees for API use. The 5 requests do not mean 5 prices. Each of the 5 requests can get up to 5 prices, which means up to 25 prices per second, but Betfair has a slightly complex point system of price weighting so that some prices take more points than others and there is a 200 point limit for each of the 5 requests allowed per second. The Bf Bot Manager manages this point system for you

so that you do not go over the 200 point limit. But if you are using other methods to request data from Betfair that the Bot does not know about, it could go over the limit. It is in those cases that you need to make sure you are not going over the Betfair API limit.

Horse racing and Greyhound markets that are in-play or just about to go in-play will have their market prices downloaded in addition to 5 other loaded markets in a single request to the Betfair API. This is so that users who have football, tennis or other markets loaded in addition to horse racing and greyhound markets will not have the longer lasting events use up their API request allowance and lead to racing bets not having prices to bet on. This is a big improvement made in recent updates that is an advantage on previous behaviour, where long lasting events (i.e. football, tennis) would prevent the bot from monitoring short lasting events (i.e. racing) that requires high refresh rate.

Technical Details for Betfair API Price Requests

The Betfair API has a limit of 5 requests per second, but each request can download prices for up to 25 markets. The maximum refresh rate is 200ms, but the Bot Manager software limits it to 300ms as the bot needs to make its own requests in the background to get results or update closed markets. Each price request uses up some of the 200 point allowance for each request, and some prices have higher weightings than others. When getting prices, the bot requests data for SP_AVAILABLE (Weighting 3) and EX_BEST_OFFERS (Weighting 5), so total weight of each price's data is 8, the maximum points allowance for each of the 5 API price requests permitted per second is 200. So the maximum number of different markets for which the bot can request prices for in a single request is 25, as 25 x 8 = 200 points. 5 requests are allowed per second, so 125 market prices could be downloaded per second at a 200ms refresh rate, 75 markets per second at a 300ms refresh rate and 25 markets per second at the Bot Manager software's default 1,000ms refresh rate.

BUT each set of prices downloaded needs to be checked against each active strategy being run. If you have a lot of strategies running at the same time, and a price refresh rate that is very fast, then there is a chance that the software might not complete its checking of the prices against all the active strategies. In this case, once new prices are received, it will stop checking the previous prices with strategies and instead start again with the newest price information. This can lead to errors and software instability. This is why we recommend that refresh rate at 1,000ms by default.

The actual number of prices that the bot requests per single request depends on the number of markets being monitored in that request and their status. Here is an example:
a) By default the bot gets prices for up to 5 markets that satisfy the Tools&settings->Monitoring settings rules.
b) If there are any racing events that are about to start or are in play, then prices will also be requested for those on top of the 5 markets in a). Prices for up to 10 racing markets can be requested here, possibly increasing the total number of requested prices to 15.
c) When new markets are initially loaded to the main MARKETS grid view, then the bot does not have any prices for those markets, so it requests prices for up to 10 markets that do not have prices until the initial prices have been downloaded for all the loaded markets. After that it does not request prices for those markets unless they satisfy the "Tools&settings->Monitoring settings". This could add another 10 prices on top of the 15 in a) and b).
So the total number of markets for which the bot could request prices for in a single request is a) + b) + c) and

that would be the maximum of 25 markets per request to the Betfair API. In most cases, however, this will usually just be 5 markets per request. If racing events are loaded with football and other events then the number of prices requested per request will go up to 15 and on start up (when many markets are autoloaded) it might jump up to 25 per request until the initial prices have been downloaded. This is all within the API limits as each request has a weight less than 200 (25 x 8 = 200). This is how the software handles the complicated Betfair API price request weighting system for you. This also means that if you use any other Betfair API software, it could push the data requests over the limit for your Betfair account. In those cases, please be aware of how much data you are using and maybe consider slowing the refresh rate to avoid going over the limits.

You can read more about market data request limits in the following Betfair help article:
https://docs.developer.betfair.com/display/1smk3cen4v3lu3yomq5qye0ni/Market+Data+Request+Limits

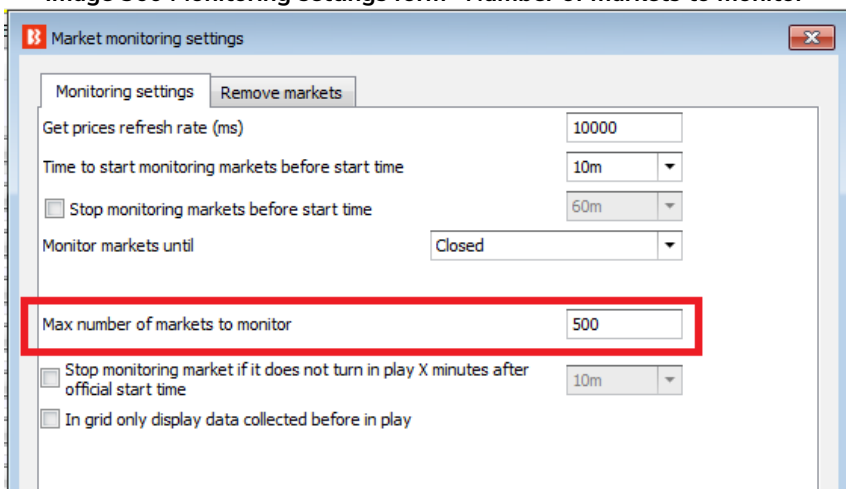
Optimizing Market Monitoring

Other options at the monitoring settings form can help you optimize the time to start monitoring markets. If your strategies are placing bets only a few minutes before the start time, then set the time to start monitoring markets to 2 minutes before that time. There is no need to monitor markets a few hours before the start time when your strategies will only attempt to place bets just before start time.

The same goes with the time to stop monitoring markets. If you do not have any strategies that will attempt to place bets during in-play, then there is no need to monitor markets until they are Closed, so you can set this to monitor markets until Start Time or In Running. Even if you stop monitoring markets before they are closed, the bot will still get other non-price information such as the event results to calculate profit and loss. Live score and in-play statistics information will also still be downloaded since this is not coming from Betfair, but from another 3rd party provider that does not affect the Betfair API requests limit.

The number of markets that bot is allowed to monitor is by default set to 500. This is more than enough to cover all horse and greyhound racing markets. It will be also enough if you plan on loading a single football market type e.g. Match odds. In the case that you will load more than one market type per football match then you should increase this to a higher value e.g. 1,000 or 2,000.

Image 360 Monitoring settings form –Number of markets to monitor

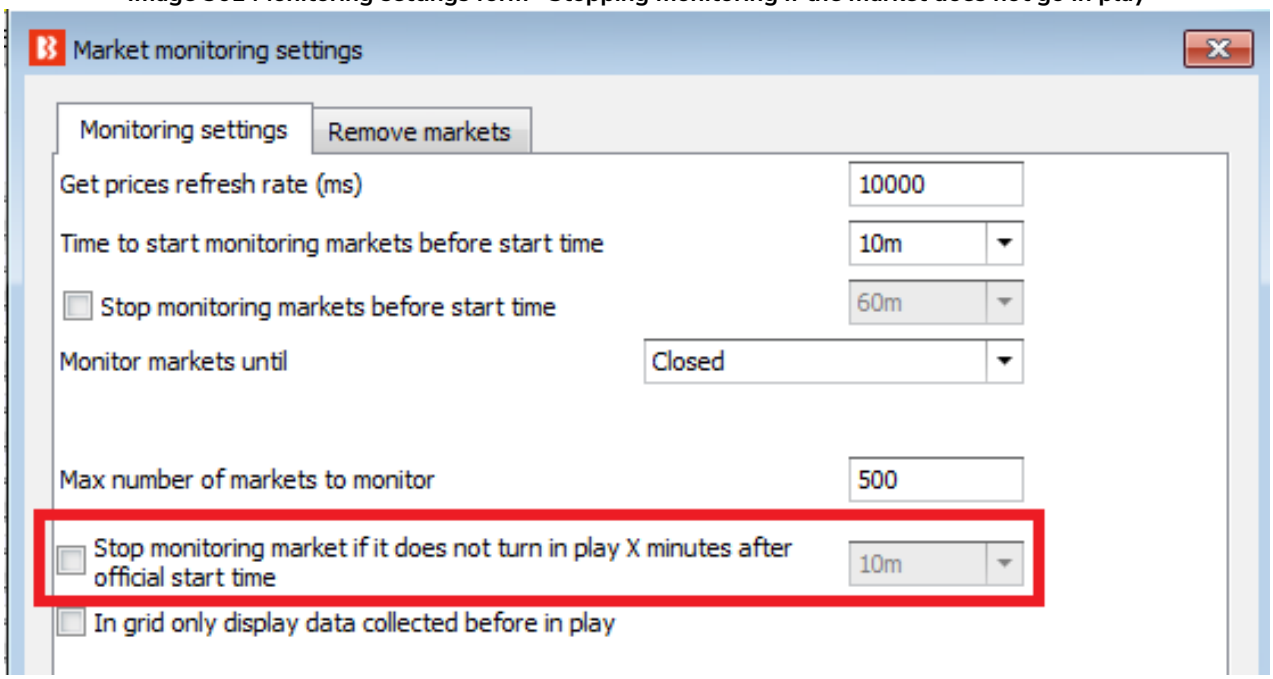


The fewer markets that the bot monitors at the same time allows a higher refresh rate of prices for those markets. If you have only 5 markets that start at the same time, and they are monitored with refresh rate of

500ms, then that means that each market's prices will be downloaded 120 times each minute! The bot will be able to get prices for each market twice each second. So if your strategy relies on speed in the market, then reducing the number of actively monitored markets can improve the bot speed.

There is also the option to stop monitoring markets that do not turn in play, this allows the bot to move to other markets in cases when there is a delay on some events.

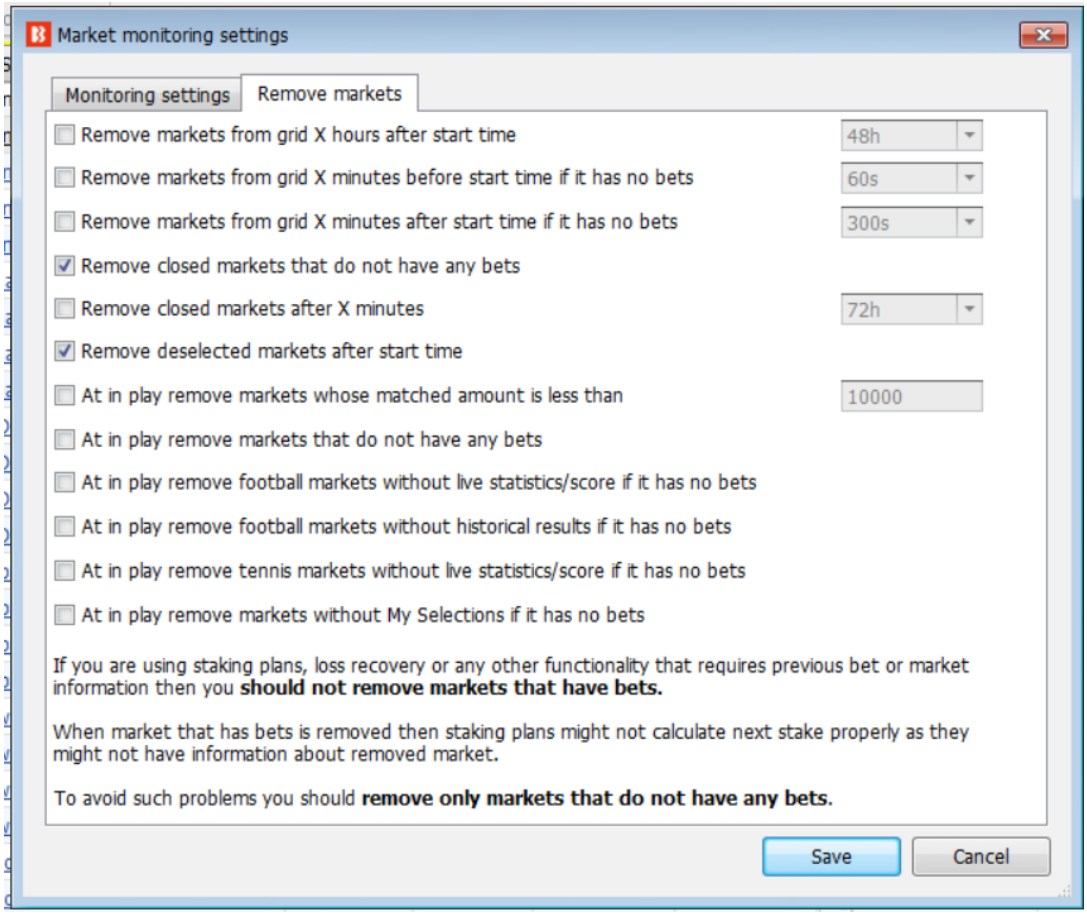
Image 361 Monitoring settings form –Stopping monitoring if the market does not go in play



If you are only betting before in play then you might want to display only prices from before in play at the main MARKETS grid view. This can be useful if you wish to check favorite prices at a later time by referring to the main MARKETS grid view.

Removing markets

Image 362 Market Monitoring – Remove Markets Settings



Other settings include the removing of markets from the MARKETS grid view so that they are no longer monitored or maintained. Removing market from MARKETS grid view will free memory and improve bot speed, but it will also prevent bot from betting on that market. By default the bot is set to remove closed markets without any bets, deselected markets and all markets 24 hours after their start time.

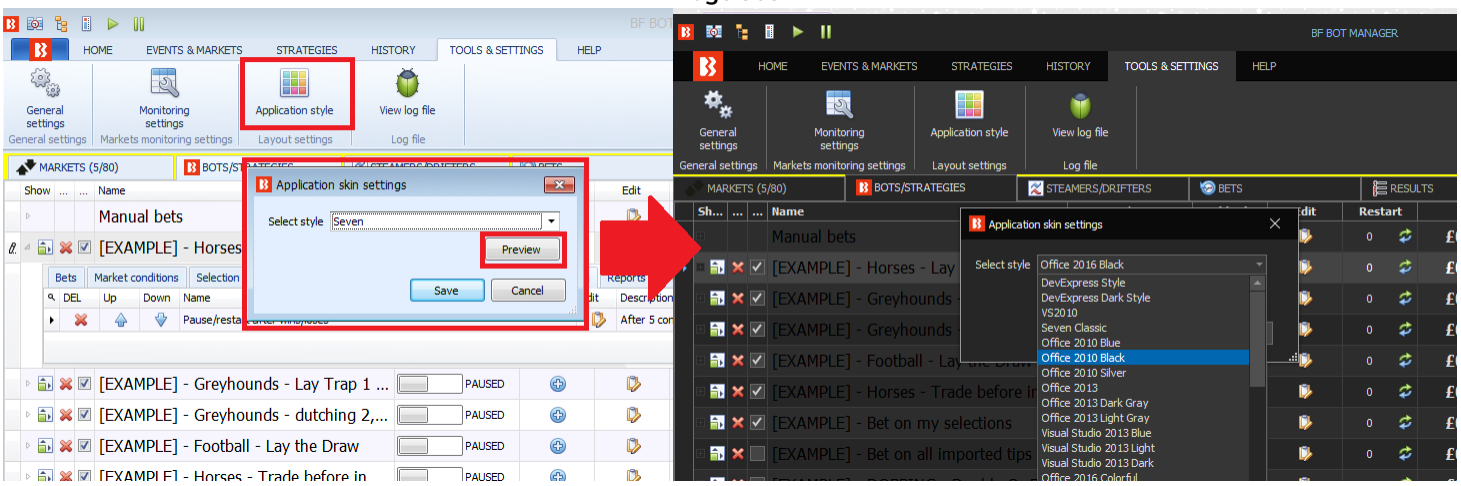
You should be careful with removing markets as this can have effect on some staking plans. When a market is removed, then all its details are removed from the bot and a staking sequence can be affected in some cases. So it is best to keep markets for 24 hours or longer in the MARKETS grid view if you are using staking plans or loss recovery.

There are options to remove markets based on:

- Start time or end time
- Matched amount
- If it is a closed market
- If it has bets on it or not
- If f it has live statistics or not
- If it has historical results or not
- If it does not have any My Selections on it

7.5.12 Application style

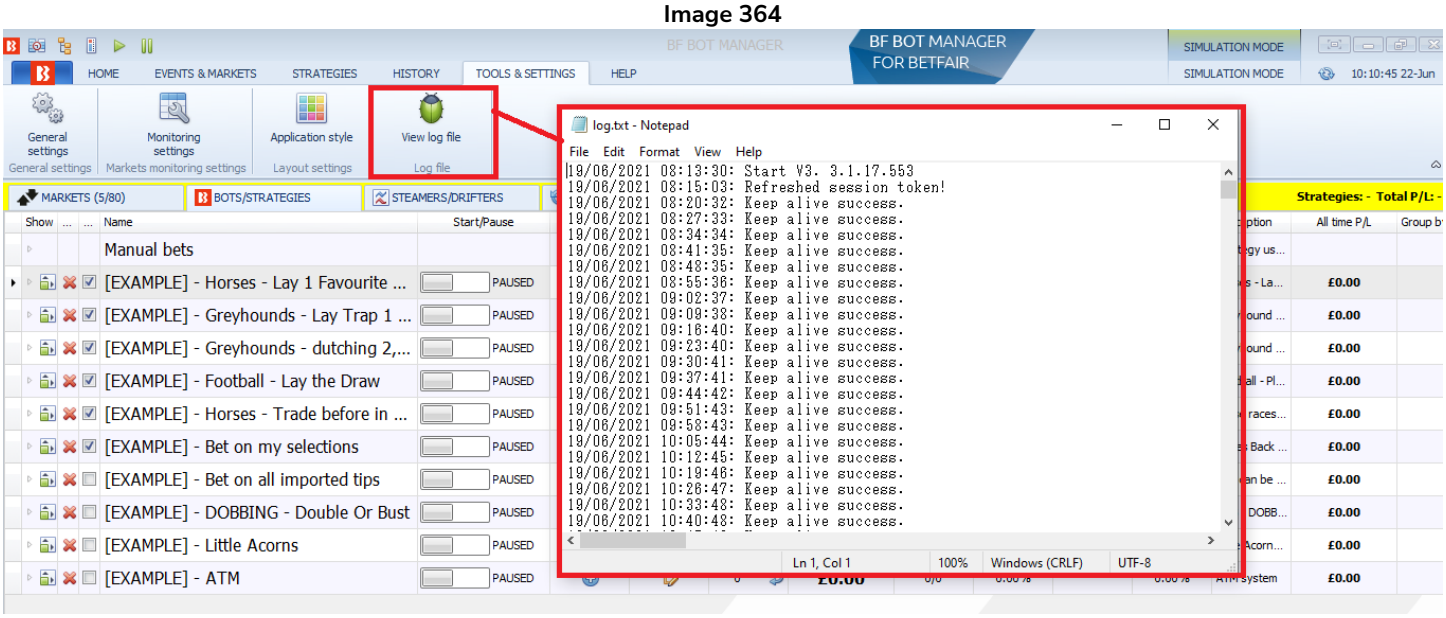
Image 363



You can change the appearance of the software to a number of different themes. Each one can be previewed first before saving a change.

7.5.13 View log file

Image 364



The log file is a text file that logs all the activity of the software. If there are errors, then this is a good place to check for clues on the cause. When a bet is placed then its ID is saved to the log file. The bet placed time recorded by Betfair might be different compared to the log file, especially if there was a big delay in executing requests.

Image 365

```
21/06/2021 09:37:20: Keep alive success.
21/06/2021 09:44:21: Keep alive success.
21/06/2021 09:51:22: Keep alive success.
21/06/2021 09:58:41: ListMarketBookRequest: PerformRequest Exception: System.Net.WebException: Unable to connect to the remote server ---> System.Net.Sockets.SocketExc
   at System.Net.Sockets.Socket.DoConnect(EndPoint endPointSnapshot, SocketAddress socketAddress)
   at System.Net.ServicePoint.ConnectSocketInternal(Boolean connectFailure, Socket s4, Socket s6, Socket& socket, IPAddress& address, ConnectSocketState state, IAsyncR
   --- End of inner exception stack trace ---
   at System.Net.HttpWebRequest.GetRequestStream(TransportContext& context)
   at System.Net.HttpWebRequest.GetRequestStream()
   at BFNGAPI.RescriptClient.Invoke[T](String method, IDictionary`2 args)
   at BFNGAPI.RescriptClient.listMarketBook(IList`1 marketIds, PriceProjection priceProjection, Nullable`1 orderProjection, Nullable`1 matchProjection, String currency
   at Framework.Requests.ListMarketBookRequest.PerformRequest()
21/06/2021 09:58:41: RequestsController: RequestError = ERROR, RequestStatus = DONE, StartTime = 21/06/2021 09:58:41, EndTime = 21/06/2021 09:58:41
21/06/2021 09:58:43: ListMarketBookRequest: PerformRequest Exception: System.Net.WebException: Unable to connect to the remote server ---> System.Net.Sockets.SocketExc
   at System.Net.Sockets.Socket.DoConnect(EndPoint endPointSnapshot, SocketAddress socketAddress)
   at System.Net.ServicePoint.ConnectSocketInternal(Boolean connectFailure, Socket s4, Socket s6, Socket& socket, IPAddress& address, ConnectSocketState state, IAsyncR
   --- End of inner exception stack trace ---
   at System.Net.HttpWebRequest.GetRequestStream(TransportContext& context)
```

When an error does occur, we can see the time and reasons for the error. In the above image, the error is no internet connection, which is making it unable to connect to the remote server. When contacting Bot Manager customer service for support, we may ask you to send us your log file to help determine the problem you are having.

7.5.14 Common Log File Errors

The log file is a very technical file and it is meant to be used as a tool for Bf Bot manager staff to analyze problems if software crashes, closes unexpectedly, or is unable to login or place bets. It is not necessary to understand all the items in the log file. It is a file that you may be asked to save as a .txt file and send to us during assisted troubleshooting.

Just for your information, here are a few of the more common log file errors:

Login related errors

Error	Details
ACTIONS_REQUIRED	You must login to https://www.betfair.com to provide missing information.
BETTING_RESTRICTED_LOCATION	The account is accessed from a location where betting is restricted
CHANGE_PASSWORD_REQUIRED	Change password required
EMAIL_LOGIN_NOT_ALLOWED	This account has not opted in to log in with the email
INVALID_USERNAME_OR_PASSWORD	The username or password are invalid

Place bet related errors

Error	Details
ERROR_IN_MATCHER	The matcher is not healthy. **Please note:** The error will also be returned if you attempt concurrent 'cancel all' bets requests using cancel orders which isn't permitted.
INVALID_ACCOUNT_STATE	Order rejected due to the account's status (suspended, inactive)
INSUFFICIENT_FUNDS	Account has exceeded its exposure limit or available to bet limit
LOSS_LIMIT_EXCEEDED	The account has exceed the self-imposed loss limit
MARKET_SUSPENDED	Market is suspended
PERMISSION_DENIED	Business rules do not allow order to be placed. You are either attempting to place the order using a Delayed Application Key or from a restricted jurisdiction (i.e. USA) **Please note**: If you rent a VPS in a country from which betting is not allowed, then the bot cannot place bets. (e.g. A VPS in that

	country might be cheaper in the USA, Germany or Canada, but Betfair does not allow betting from there.)
INVALID_PROFIT_RATIO	The order falls outside the permitted price and size combination. This error is also explained in our knowledge base,
RUNNER_REMOVED	Runner has been removed from the event

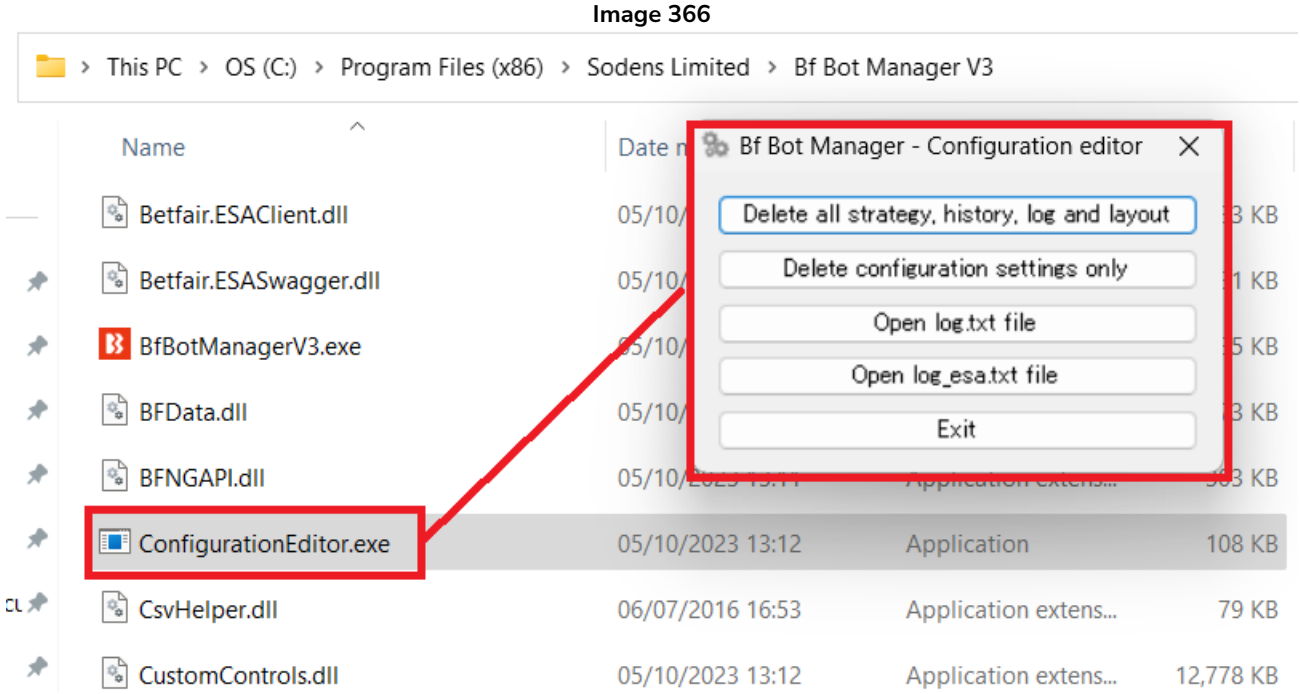
7.5.15 Configuration Editor

The program can be run from the Bf Bot Manager installation folder.
This only works for the Bf Bot Manager, which must be closed for the Configuration Editor to work.

The editor allows you to:

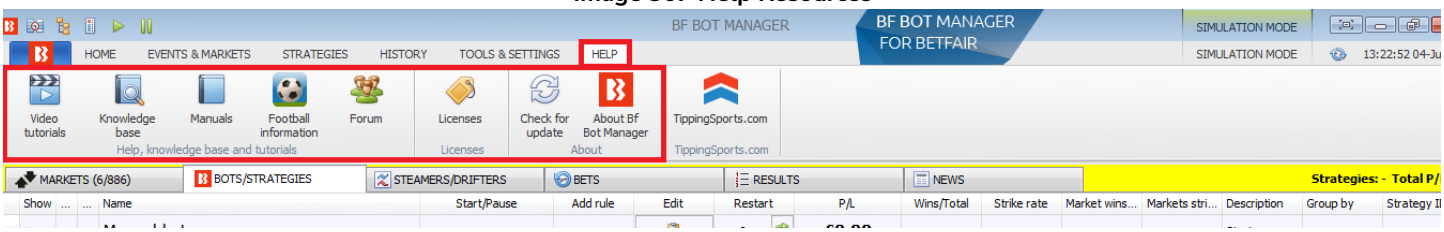
- Delete all strategy, history, log and layout.
- Delete configuration settings only.
- Open thelog.txt file.
- Open the log_esa.txt file.

Image 366



7.6 Help

Image 367 Help Resources



There are a number of resources to help you. Many of them can be accessed from the HELP tab of the main screen ribbon.

7.6.1 Video Tutorials

These give a very clear overview of how to use the bot. They are a good place to start.
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/en/help/video_tutorials
https://www.youtube.com/user/BfBotManager/videos

We have a number of very useful video tutorials available. They can be useful as an introduction before you read the manual or as a good review after you have read the manual. All video tutorials are available at our YouTube channel. It is highly recommended for new users to watch these videos to get a better understanding of the software in a short space of time.

We update video tutorials when we add new functionality, so please subscribe to our YouTube channel if you wish to be updated when new videos are available.

Current Video List (As of June 1st 2021)

1. Software overview
2. Market autoloading
3. Strategies
4. Bet and result history
5. Ladder and Manual Bets Strategy
6. Automated Tipping on Tipster Tips
7. Setting bet type
8. Football rules
9. Racing rules
10. Staking plans
11. Creating 3 popular strategies
12. Tennis in play strategies

7.6.2 Knowledge base

These have articles on specific topics that are often asked about by users and you may find solutions to common problems here.

7.6.3 Manuals

You can access the latest up-to-date manuals from here.

7.6.4 Football information

This displays what football competitions are covered by the 3rd party live score and in-play statistics service.

7.6.5 Forum

This is a very useful area for discussing Bf Bot Manager related topics and finding the solutions to problems that other users have already had and resolved.

7.6.6 Licenses

You can find your license key here and also buttons to buy a new license.

7.6.7 Check for update

You can check if you have the latest version of the Bot Manager software here.

7.6.8 About BF Bot Manager

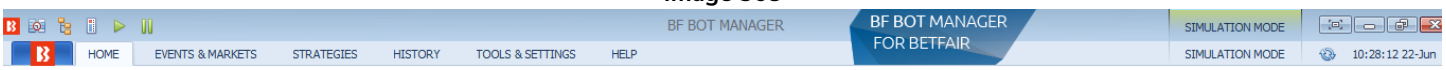
You can check what version you are currently using. This is also displayed at the bottom right of the main screen. We may ask you this when you contact customer support.

7.6.9 TippingSports.com

Clicking on this button takes you to the website www.tippingsports.com. It is a tipping website that produces BF Bot Manager compatible tips that can be setup to auto load. There are many free tipsters to follow and sometimes paid tipsters. You can even post your own tips that, if proven to be profitable over the long term, may be sold.

7.7 Main Screen Header and Footer

Image 368



7.7.1 Auto load settings

At the top left there are some icons always visible that allow quick actions. The first will take you to the autoload settings.

7.7.2 Tree navigation

This will open the tree navigation for the Markets screen.

7.7.3 Ladder view

This will open the ladder view.

7.7.4 Start all strategies

This will start all strategies.

7.7.5 Pause all strategies

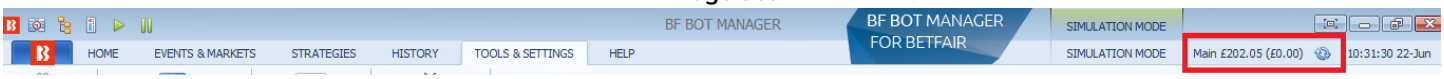
This will pause all strategies.

7.7.6 Real/Simulation mode

This tells you if you are in Real Mode or Simulation mode.

7.7.7 Betfair balance and refresh button

Image 369



If your Betfair balance is not hidden (by the Tools & Settings –> General settings) then it will be displayed here. There is a refresh button if you want to check that the figure is up-to-date.

7.7.8 Bot time and date

This will tell you the current time and date.

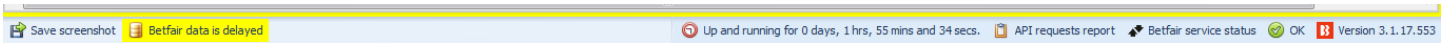
7.7.9 Strategies running and Total P/L

Image 370

On the right you can see how many strategies are loaded and how many are active. You can also see the total profit and loss for all currently loaded strategies. 10/10 means that all 10 of the 10 loaded strategies are currently running.

7.7.10 Save screenshot

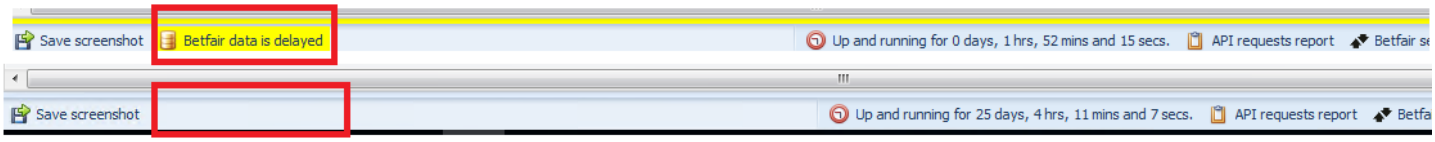
Image 371



In the footer on the left, there is a Save screenshot button. This is for if you quickly want to save a screenshot of the current screen. This is especially useful when contacting customer service about troubleshooting.

7.7.11 Betfair data status

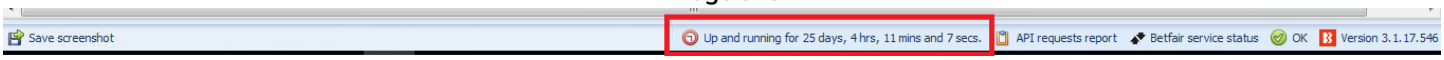
Image 372



This tells you if the data is delayed or not. For simulation mode, the data is delayed anywhere between 1 to 180 seconds and the message “Betfair data is delayed” will be shown, but for real mode, the data is not delayed and no message will be here.

7.7.12 Software running time

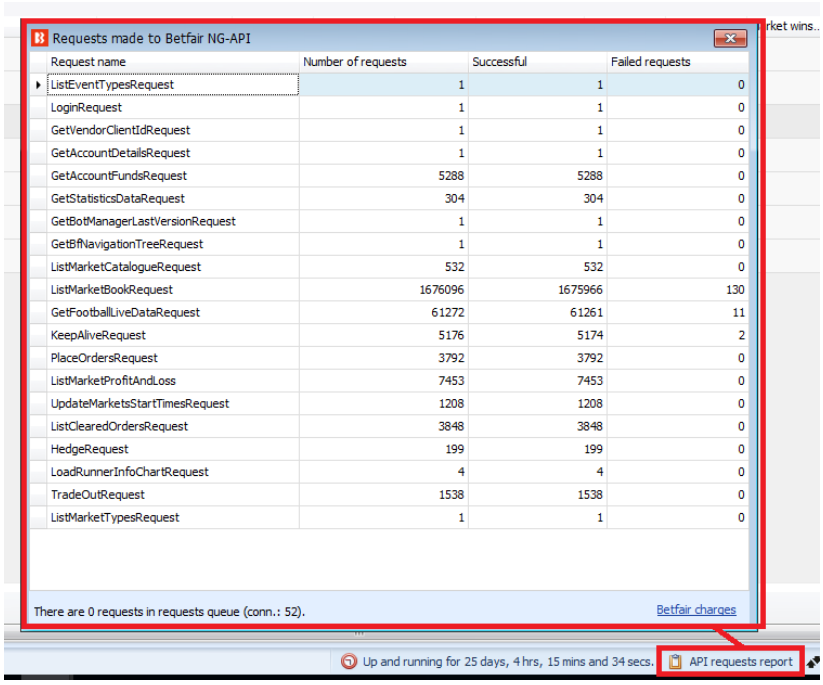
Image 373



This tells you how long the software has been running. In the above image, the software has been running for over 25 days.

7.7.13 API requests report

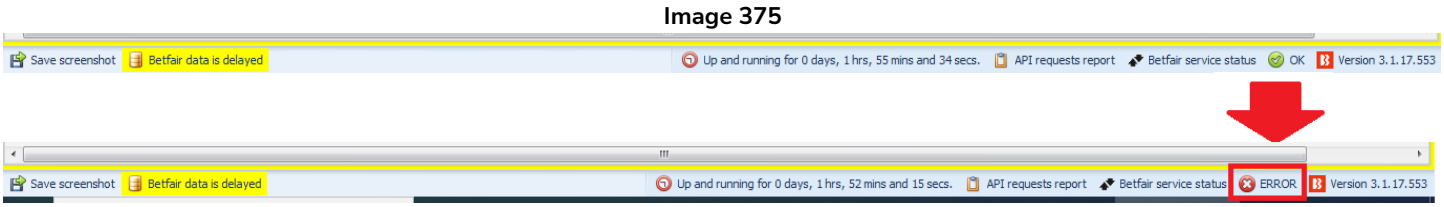
Image 374



Clicking here displays an API requests report. Here you can see how many requests were made, how many were successful or failed. This can be another way to find clues of where problems are when they occur.

7.7.14 Betfair service status

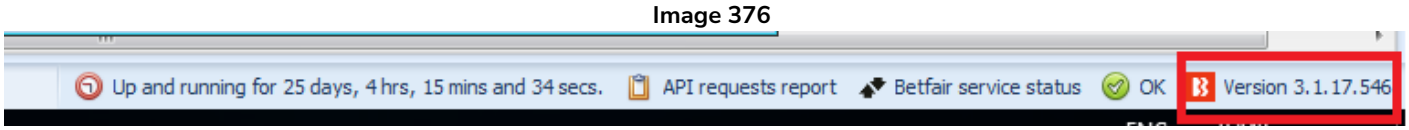
Image 375



This shows if there are any errors that have been detected by the software. In the case above, the internet was disconnected and then the Green OK message changed to a Red Error message.

7.7.15 BF Bot Manager Version details

Image 376

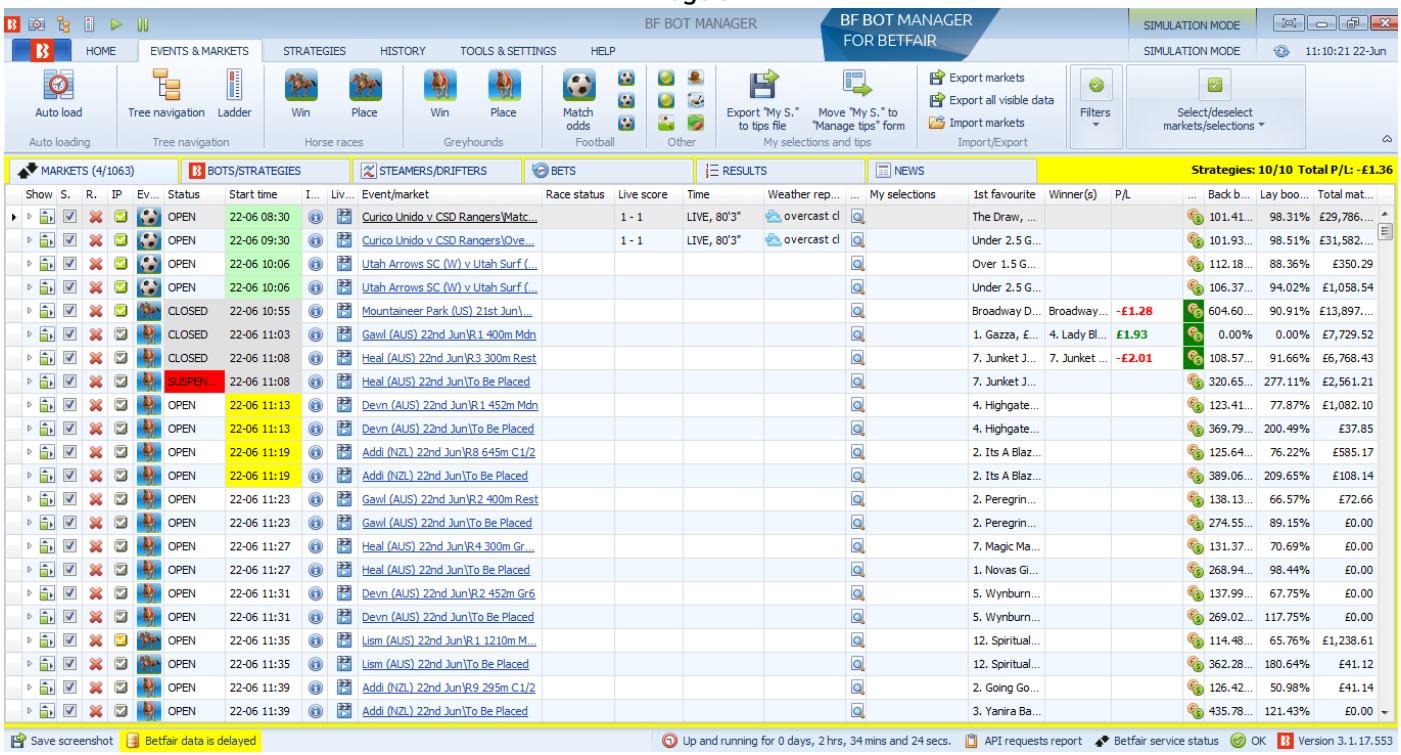


This shows the version of the software being used. It is displayed here so that in screenshots it is easy to know which version was being used.

8 Markets Screen

8.1 Markets grid view

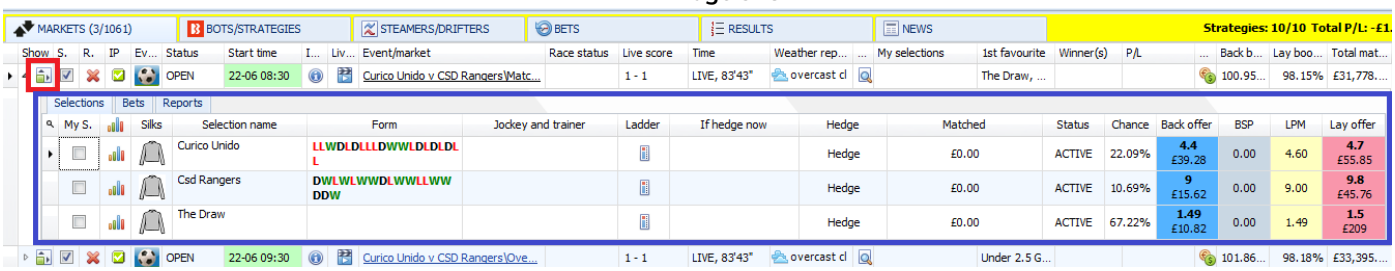
Image 377



The markets grid view shows you all the markets that are currently loaded in the software. It shows their status, which ones are being monitored, in-play or closed. It shows in-play data and results with P/L if available. This is where you can see what is happening right now with the bot. The columns shown on startup are just the default columns. **You can add more columns with other data if needed. Right clicking on any column header and clicking "Column chooser" opens up a list of other columns that can be added to customize the screen to the information that is most useful for you. You can add, remove and re-size columns to your convenience.**

8.1.1 Show button

Image 378



Clicking on the Show/Hide button for a market will open its Selections Grid View. The **Markets Grid View** and the **Selections Grid View** are both on the MARKETS screen, but they are different things. The Markets Grid View is all the markets loaded in the bot. The Selections Grid View is just one of those markets. It shows you the runners, their form, current odds, any potential profit/loss figures if bets have been placed and so on. The columns visible can be edited and this is explained further in the Selections Grid View section.

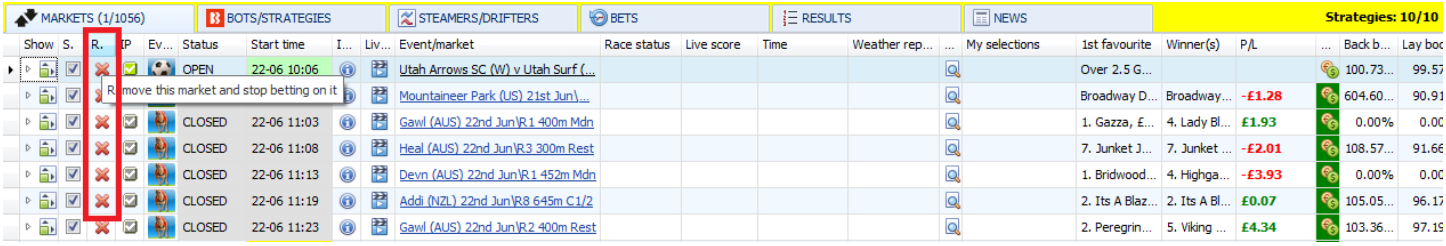
8.1.2 Select market "S." check box

Image 379

This checkbox tells the software to monitor this market, which means prices will be downloaded for it and strategies will be checked against that price information and if the strategy filters allow it, it will place bets. If you uncheck this box, then the market will not be monitored anymore. This means that no more prices will be downloaded for it and strategies will not place any bets on it. The livescore data will still be updated since this is not price related data and is provided by a 3rd party. Even if a market is not monitored anymore, its results and profit/loss for any bets will still be updated. It is only the price data that will not be downloaded for it

8.1.3 Remove market "R." button

Image 380



By clicking on a cross next to a market, it will remove that market. Markets are usually manually removed when a user does not have bets on the market yet and does not want to bet on the market or have it monitored. If a market has no bets on it, then it just means this market will not be bet on. Be careful about removing markets with bets on. If a removed market had bets on that were not settled, these bets will not be settled since the results for that market will not be requested. If a removed market had bets that were settled, but was part of a strategy that uses the results of previous bets to calculate the next stake size, then it will not have that information available to calculate stakes correctly. So it is important to be careful when removing markets that have bets on them. The software automatically removes settled markets with bets on them after 24 hours, so it is advisable to leave settled markets with bets on to be automatically removed.

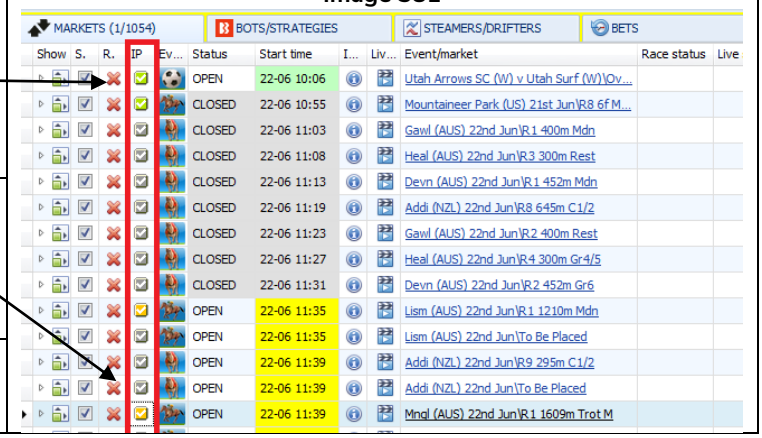
8.1.4 In-Play status "IP" icon

A **green tick mark** means the market is **in-play now**.

A **grey tick mark** means that the market is **not in-play and is not scheduled to go in-play.**

An **orange tick mark** means that the market is **not in-play now but is scheduled to go in-play later.**

Image 381



8.1.5 Event type icon

Image 382

The event type icons give you a quick idea of what sport the market is.

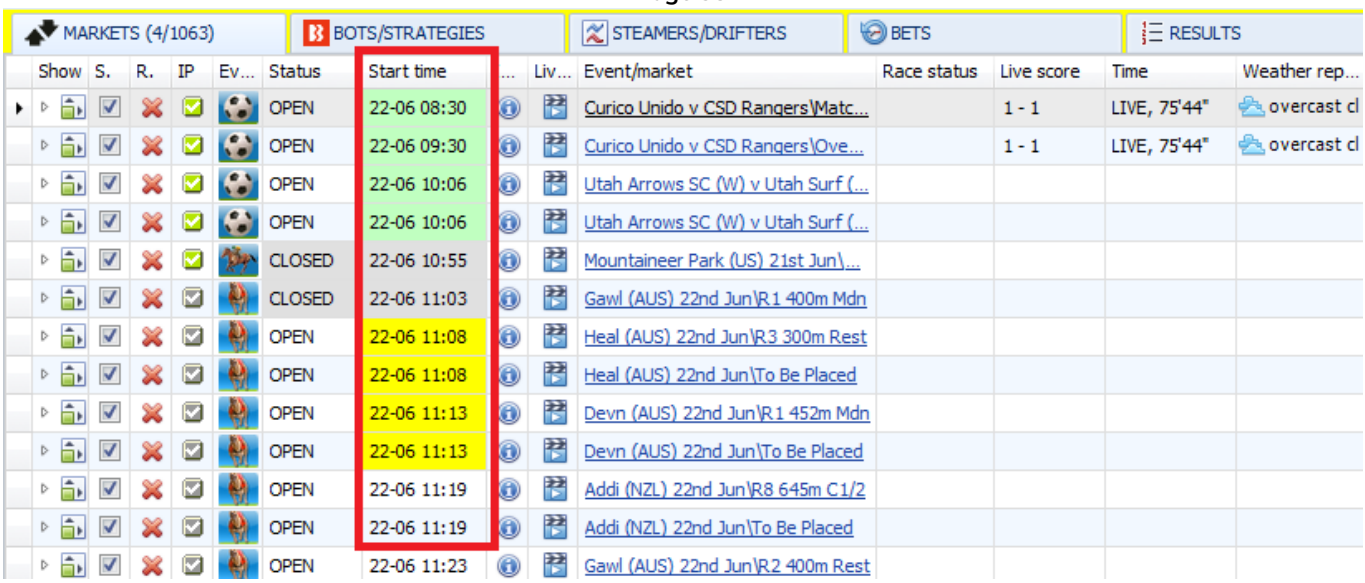
8.1.6 Market status

Image 383

The market status column tells you if the market is open, suspended or closed. Note that an open market could be either not started yet or in-play.

8.1.7 Start time

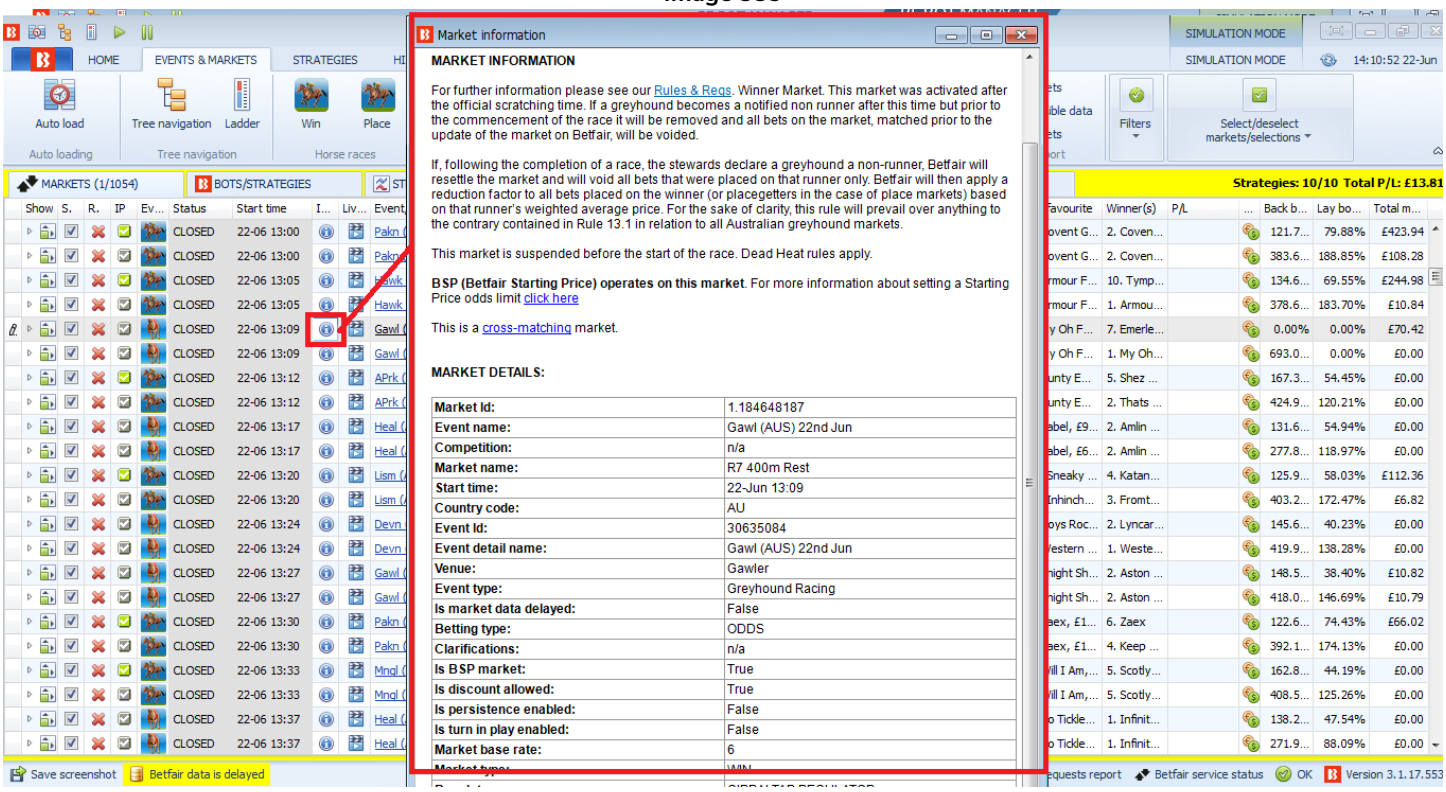
Image 384



The start time is the event start time as provided by Betfair through their API data stream. Some events may start later than their scheduled starting time.

8.1.8 Market Information button

Image 385



The market information icon gives the market information as provided by the Betfair API data stream. We can get information about the MarketID, venue, BSP market, market base rate and other details of the event.

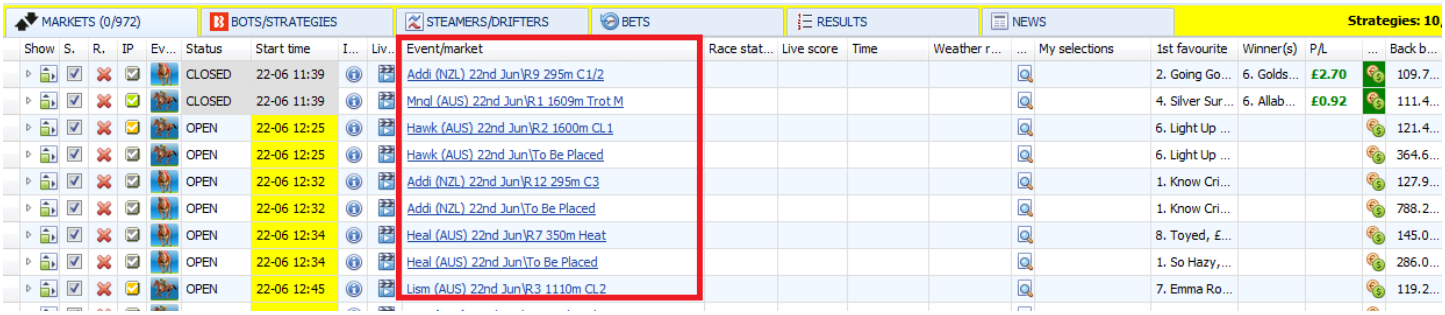
8.1.9 Live video button

Image 386

The Live Video quick link will open up the Betfair live video if one is available for this event.

8.1.10 Event/market

Image 387



The event/market column gives the event name and market type.

8.1.11 Race status

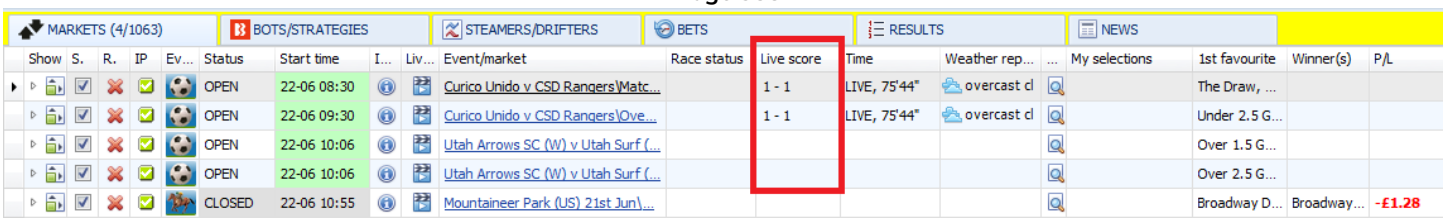
Race status is available for UK and Irish horse races. This information is provided by Betfair NG- API. Status information is loaded when the market is added to the markets grid view and updated once per second starting 5 minutes before the race official start time until the race is complete.

Possible race statuses are the following:
DORMANT - There is no data available for this race
DELAYED - The start of the race has been delayed
PARADING - The horses are in the parade ring
GOINGDOWN - The horses are going down to the starting post
GOINGBEHIND - The horses are going behind the stalls
ATTHEPOST - The horses are at the post
STARTED - The race has started
FINISHED - The race has finished
FALSESTART - There has been a false start
PHOTOGRAPH - The result of the race is subject to a photo finish
RESULT - The result of the race has been announced
WEIGHEDIN - The jockeys have weighed in
RACEVOID - The race has been declared void
ABANDONED - The meeting has been cancelled

Please note that not all race statuses will appear each time. It is common for a race status to go from GOINGBEHIND to STARTED with ATTHEPOST being missed out.

8.1.12 Live score

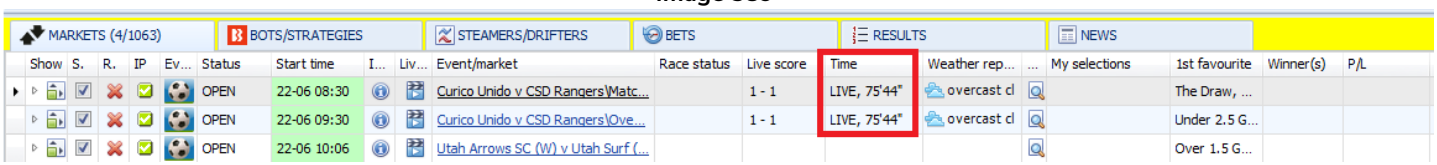
Image 388



The livescore column provides data from either the 3rd party service that is included in the Bot Manager subscription or the InplayTrading data if that has been separately subscribed to by the user and the activation checkbox ticked in the Tools & Settings > General settings > Football – in play statistics form. Note that not all football fixtures will have Livescores and the competitions covered by the 3rd party service included in the Bot Manager can be seen in the Help > Football information form. But even this does not guarantee that every game in that competition will have in-play data as it depends on the 3rd party service.

8.1.13 Time

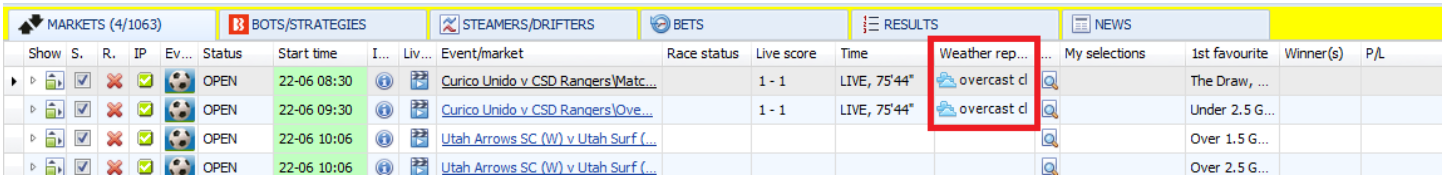
Image 389



Similar to the live score column, the data in the time column relies on the external data sources providing the information.

8.1.14 Weather report

Image 390



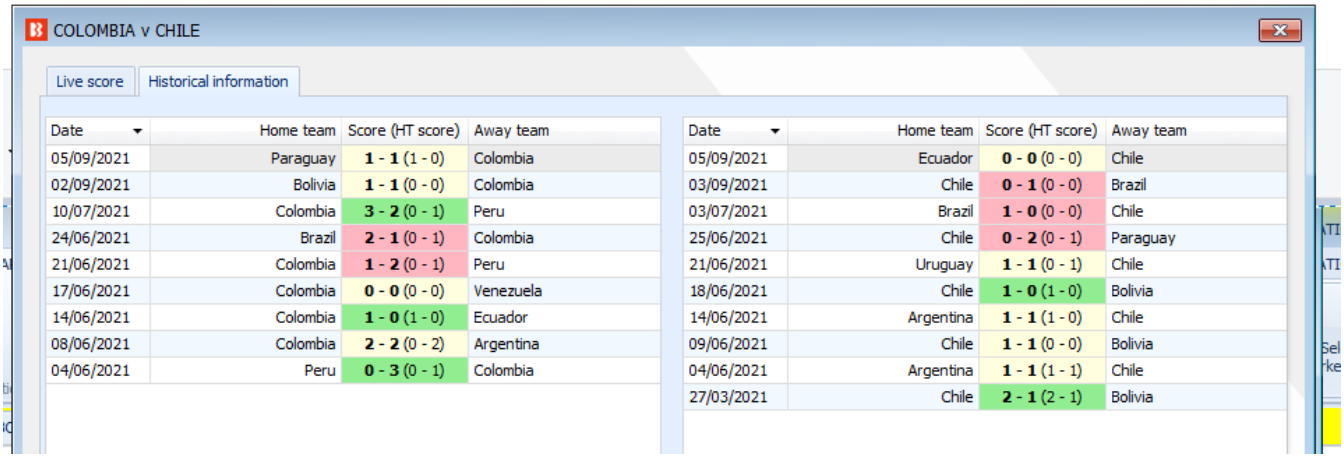
Once again, similar to the Live score and Time column, the weather column relies on the external data sources providing the information.

8.1.15 Detailed information button

Image 391

The detailed information magnifying glass brings up in-play statistics if they are available for the match. Statistics provided include total shots, shots on target, shots off target, blocked shots, shots inside/outside the box, passes, attacks, dangerous attacks and so on. The actual range of in-play statistics provided may vary from match to match. Major league matches tend to have more statistics than minor competition matches.

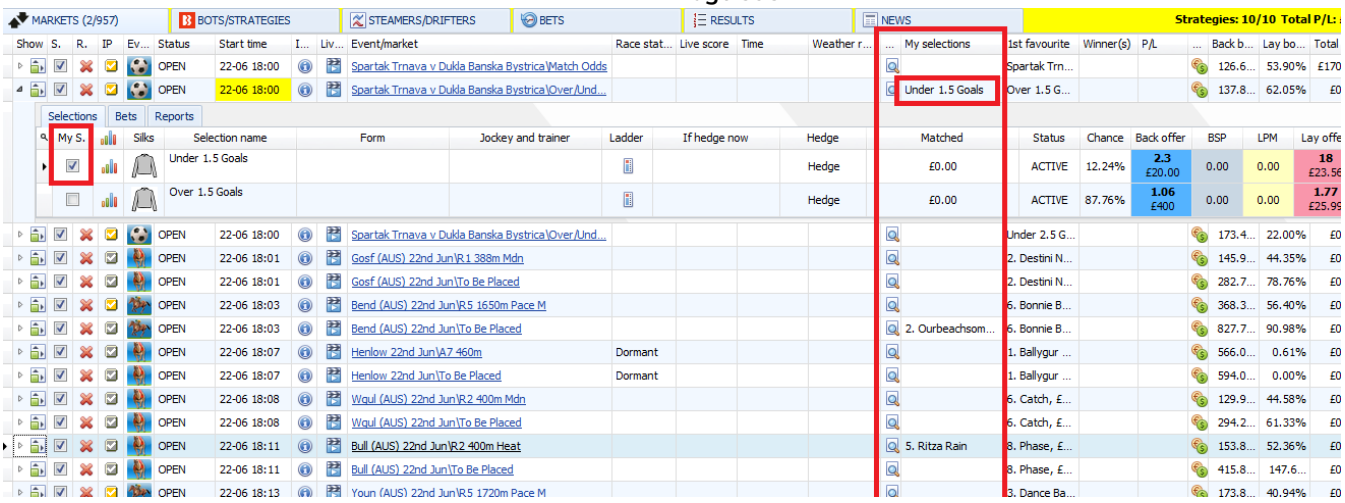
Image 392



Clicking on the historical information tab will bring up the recent results of both teams if available, with the most recent results at the top.

8.1.16 My selections

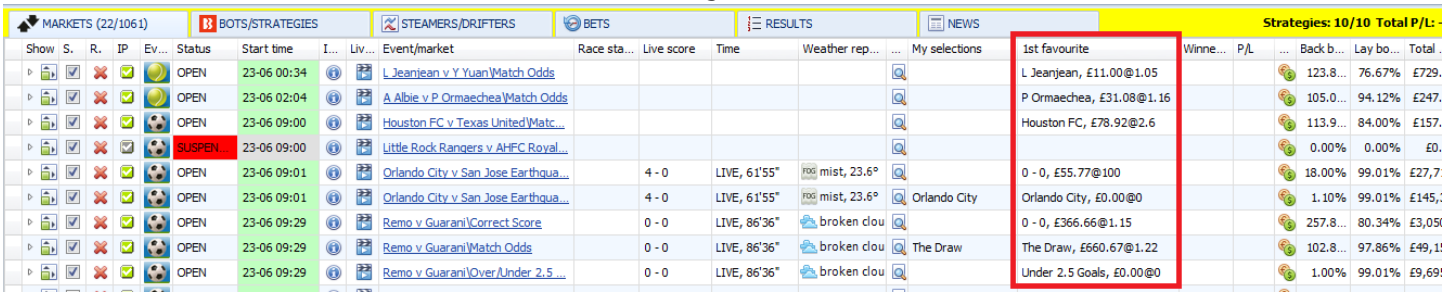
Image 393



The My selections column shows which selection has been chosen if the user has manually selected some selections. These "My S." selections can be bet on by the Bet on my selections strategy or exported as a tips file or moved to the Manage Tips form with a Tipster/Provider name for this set of selections and bet on by a Bet on imported tips strategy.

8.1.17 1st favorite

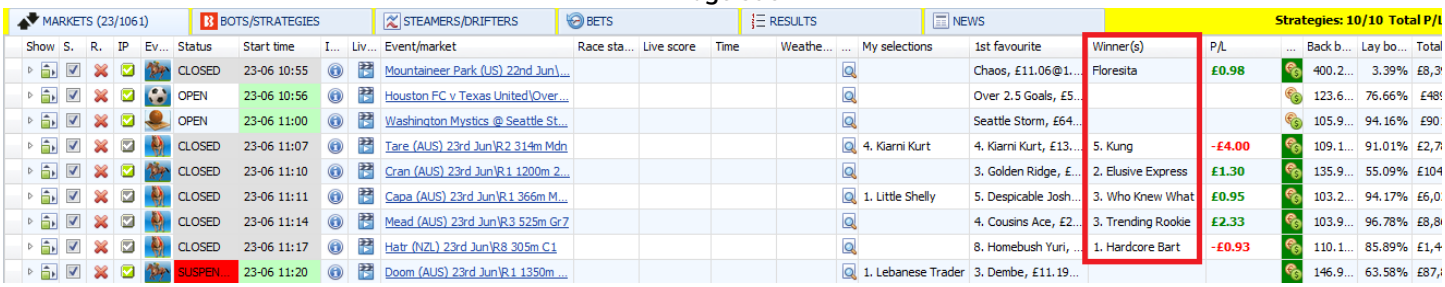
Image 394



The 1st favorite column shows the current selection with the lowest odds and also displays the liquidity available at those odds. For markets currently being monitored, these will be the latest prices. For markets whose start time is not yet within the monitoring period set in the Tools & Settings > Monitoring settings form, then the 1st favorite is displayed from one set of prices downloaded when the market was first loaded. If you want the odds updated before monitoring begins, you can open the Selections Grid View and the latest prices will be loaded.

8.1.18 Winner(s)

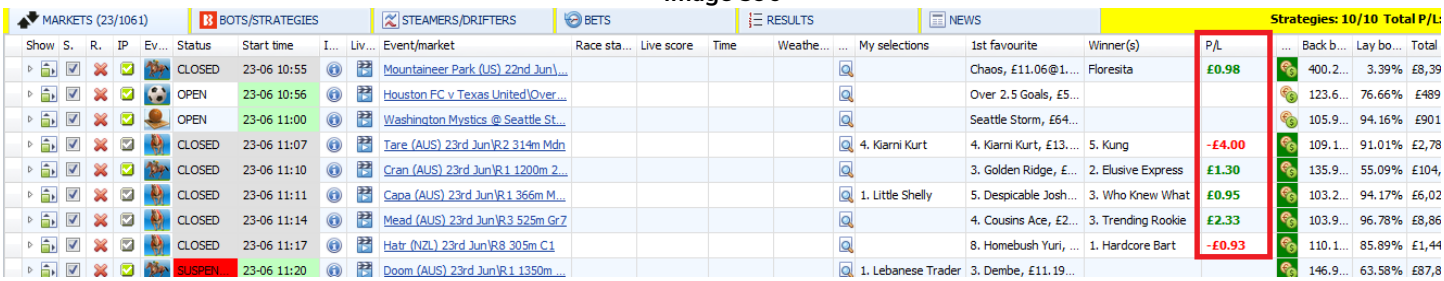
Image 395



The Winner (s) column displays the official result received from the Betfair data stream. For Place markets and other markets with multiple winners, all the winners will be displayed here. The way the software determines the winner can be edited in the Tools & Settings > General settings > Results tab.

8.1.19 P/L

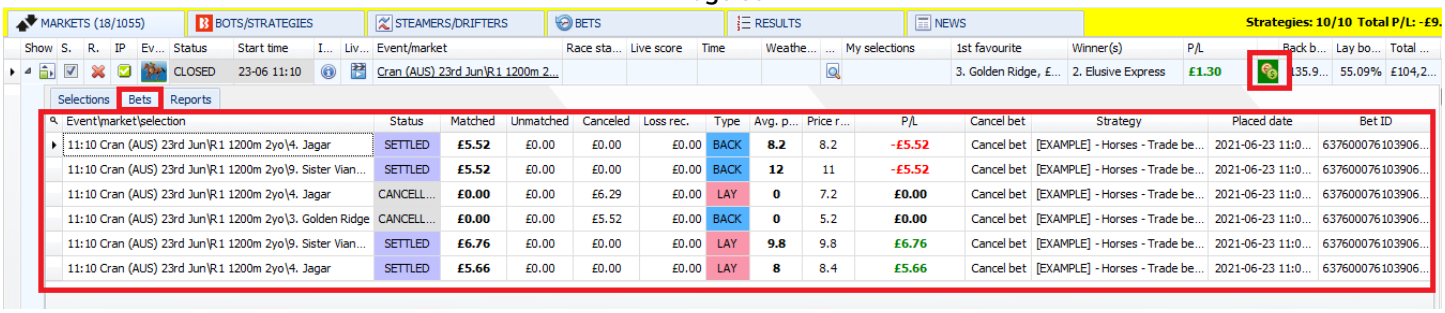
Image 396



The P/L column displays the overall profit and loss for ALL strategy bets. You can edit if this figures includes Betfair commission or not in the Tools & Settings > General Settings > General form.

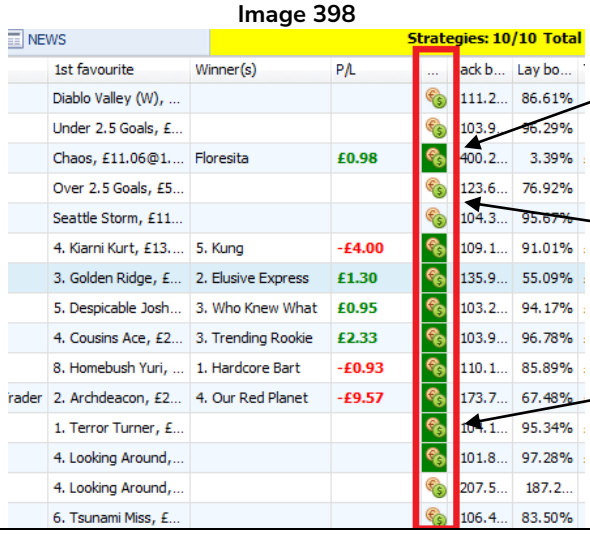
8.1.20 Bets button

Image 397



Clicking on the Bets icon will open the Selections Grid View to the Bets tab. This will display all bets (unmatched, matched, settled, cancelled, voided) that were placed on this market (for all selections) by all strategies.

Image 398



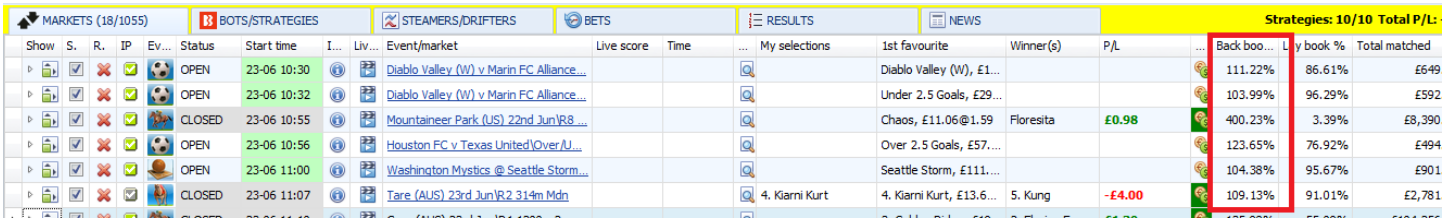
Bet icons with a dark green background mean that there are bets placed on this market.

Bet icons with no dark green background have no bets placed on them.

Bet icons with a dark green background that do not have a winner or P/L next to them indicates that the market has bets but has not been settled yet.

8.1.21 Back book percentage

Image 399



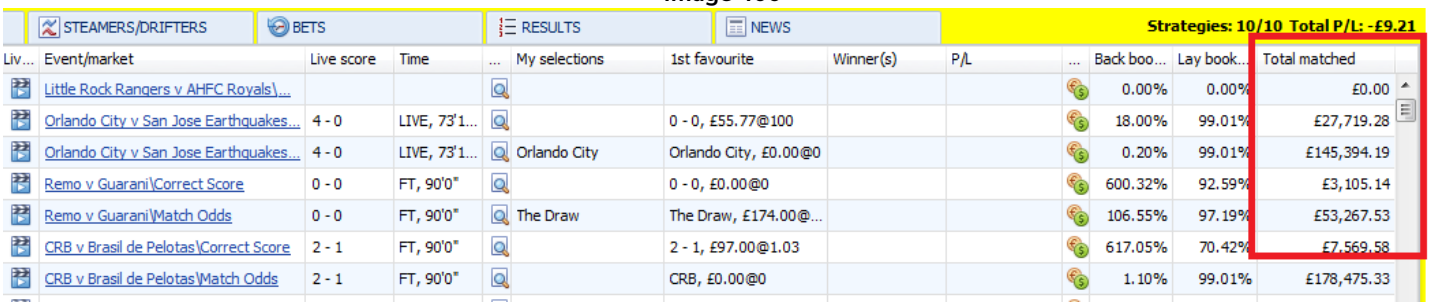
The back book percentage displays the current overround of the back bets in a market. For markets not yet being actively monitored, this figure will show the back book percentage received when the market was first loaded.

8.1.22 Lay book percentage

The lay book percentage displays the current overround of the lay bets in a market. For markets not yet being actively monitored, this figure will show the lay book percentage received when the market was first loaded.

8.1.23 Total matched on market

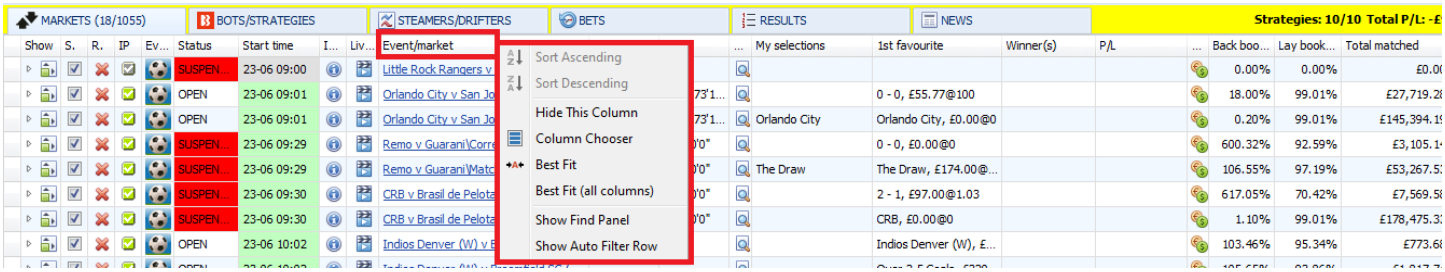
Image 400



The Total matched column will display how much has currently been matched. For markets not yet being actively monitored, this figure will show the Total matched when the market was first loaded.

8.2 Markets grid view column header options

Image 401



Right-clicking on a column header will show a menu of column header options.

8.2.1 Sort ascending

When possible, it will sort the columns from the lowest value at the top to the highest value at the bottom for numbers or A-Z for text.

8.2.2 Sort descending

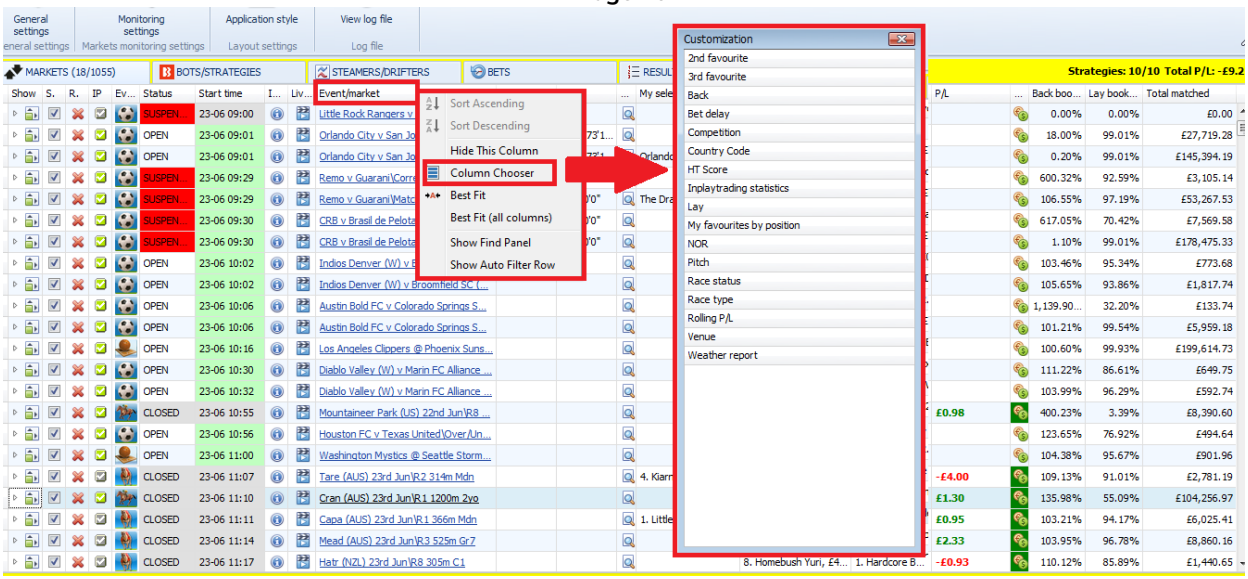
When possible, it will sort the columns from the highest value at the top to the lowest value at the bottom for numbers or Z-A for text.

8.2.3 Hide this column

This will remove the column from being visible in the markets grid screen. This is very useful when you want to customize the markets grid screen to just see the information that you want. Columns that have been hidden can be brought back by selecting them from the Column Chooser menu.

8.2.4 Markets grid view column chooser

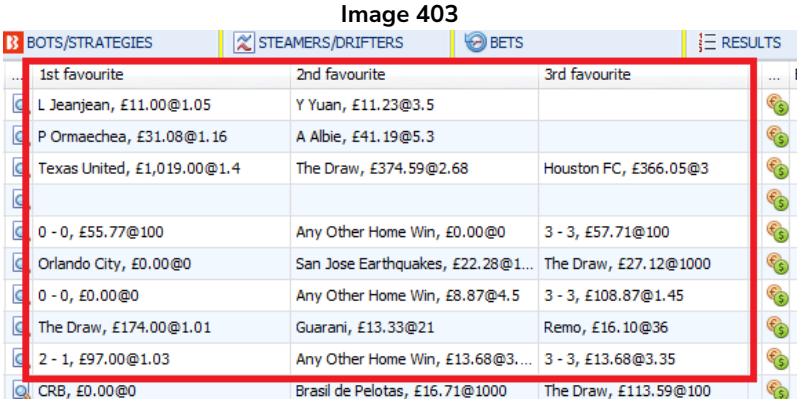
Image 402



Clicking on the Column Chooser option will bring up another menu of optional information columns that can be added to the markets grid view. Double-click on any of these to add them to the market grids view. You can then left-click and hold a column header to drag it along to different positions and re-arrange the markets grid view as is best for you.

8.2.5 2nd favorite and 3rd favorite columns

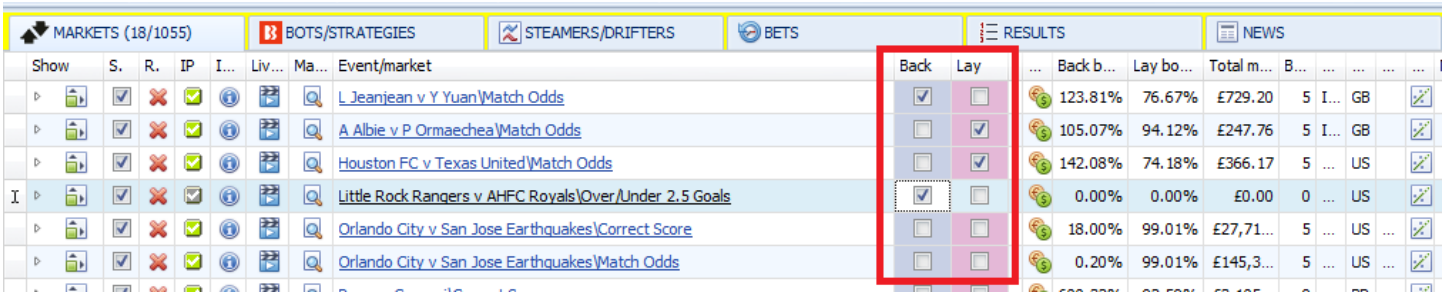
Image 403



You can add 2nd favorite and 3rd favorite columns to the market grids screen to see the current top 3 favorites, their odds and the money available to bet on them at that price.

8.2.6 Back and Lay button columns

Image 404



You can add back and lay checkbox columns to the markets grid screen. These are used in connection with bot strategies that use the Bet Type by Market that looks for those checkboxes to know if qualifying selections in that market should be backed or layed.

8.2.7 Bet delay

Image 405

The bet delay column will display the current number of seconds delay imposed on bets placed in-play. For events that are not scheduled to go in-play, the delay will be shown as 0, since non-in-play markets have no delay. Markets that are not yet in-play but are scheduled to go in-play will also show 0 since their current delay is 0. This number will change after the event goes in-play.

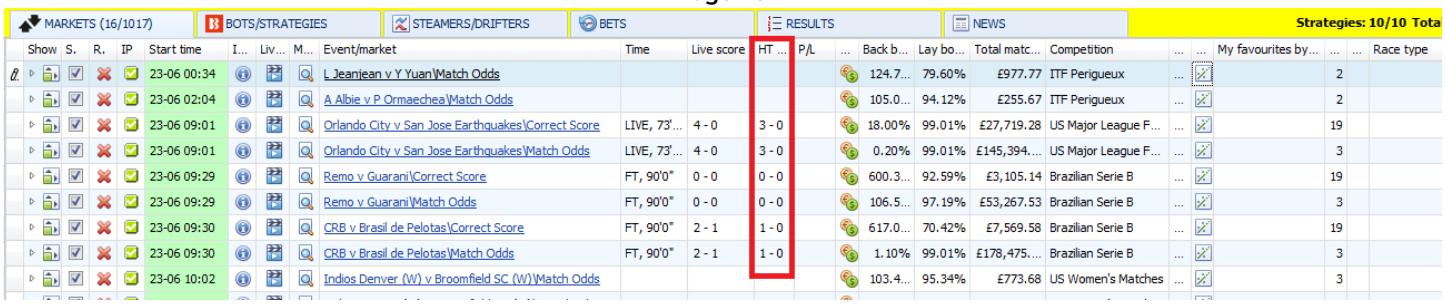
8.2.8 Country Code and Competition

Image 406

It is possible to add columns that display the country code (GB, US, BR, etc.) and competition of the event.

8.2.9 HT Score

Image 407



The Half Time score can also be added in its own column.

8.2.10 Inplaytrading statistics

Image 408

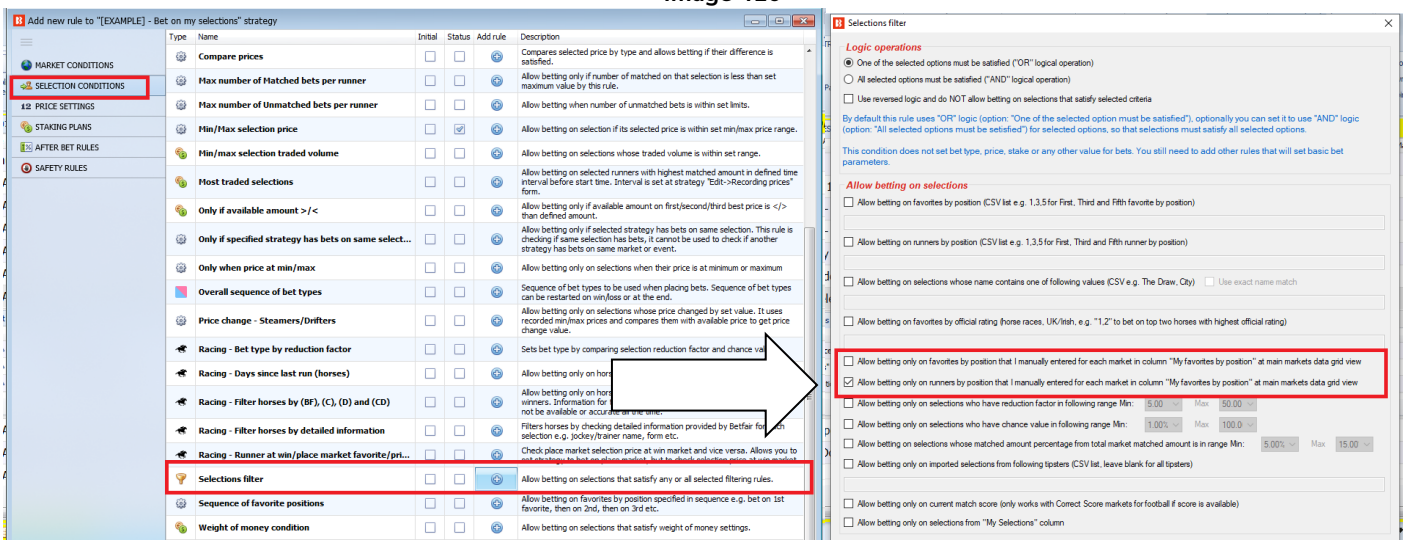
A column with graph icons to access the paid 3rd party data service of Inplaytrading.com can be added (red). This will bring up the in-play statistics as provided by the service. Note that this is different from the Bot Manager's own included in-play statistics which can be accessed from magnifying glass column which is visible by default (blue).

8.2.11 My favorite by position

Image 409

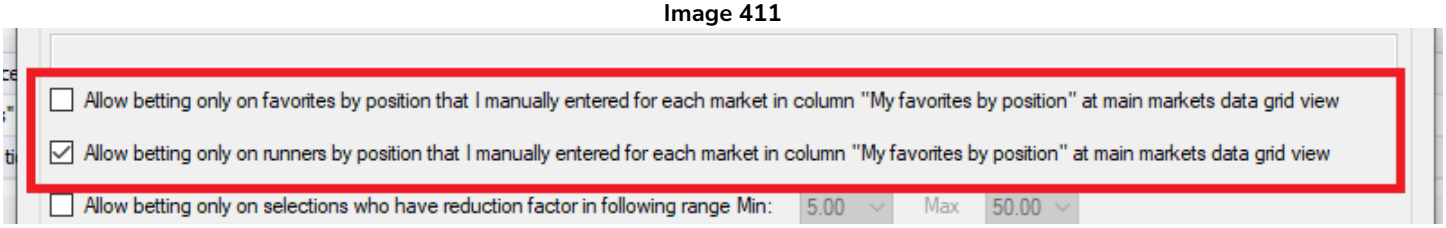
The My favorite by position column needs to be added to use the Selection Condition "Selections Filter" that a bot strategy will use when you want to set the favorite or runner by position to a different position for each market. If you wanted to bet on the 2nd favorite by position on one market, but 3rd favorite by position on another market, then this column would be used. Similarly, if you wanted to bet on the 4th runner by position on one market and the 2nd runner by position on another market, then this column would be used.

Image 410



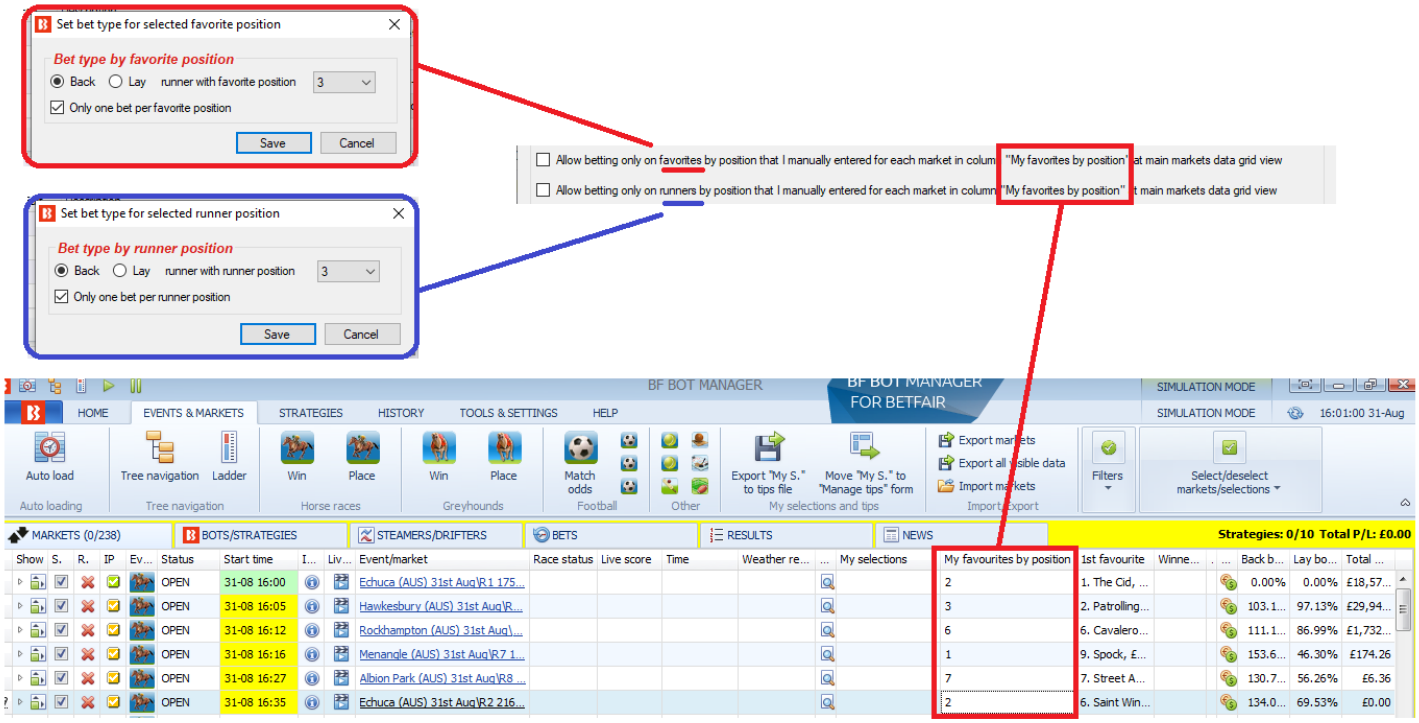
In the Strategies area, the Selection Condition "Selections Filter" must be used when you want to set the favorite or runner by position to a different position for each market.

Image 411



Only one of these check boxes should be ticked when using this condition, otherwise the bot will allow betting on both the runner and the favorite by the position indicated by the markets grid column "My favorite by position".

Image 412



It is much easier to understand this rule when we consider the bet types “Bet type by favorite position” and “Bet type by runner position”. The “Bet type by favorite position” bets on the SAME favorite by position for EVERY market, **but if we use the “My favorites by position” column in the markets grid view together with the “Default bet type” and the strategy rule “Selections filter”** and other necessary filters to specify the selections that you want to allow betting on, **then the favorite by position can be changed depending on each market.** In a similar way, the “Bet type by runner position” bets on the SAME runner by position on EVERY market, but the above rule allows the runner by position to be specified separately for each market.

8.2.12 Race Type, Venue and NOR (Number of Selections)

Image 413

The **NOR column** gives information about the number of runners in an event. For regular markets like match odds and over/under 2.5 goals, this is not so meaningful, but for Horse and Greyhound Racing events, then it can help to see at a glance how many runners are in a race.

The **Venue column** gives information on what race ground the event is being held.

The **Race Type column** gives information on the kind of race it is. For example, flat, hurdle, harness, chase, bumper, NH flat, etc.

8.2.13 Rolling P/L

Image 414

The **Rolling P/L column** gives a running total of the profit and loss situation as markets are settled. The P/L column is only the profit or loss from that market, the Rolling P/L column shows a cumulative total of the profit and loss of the markets.

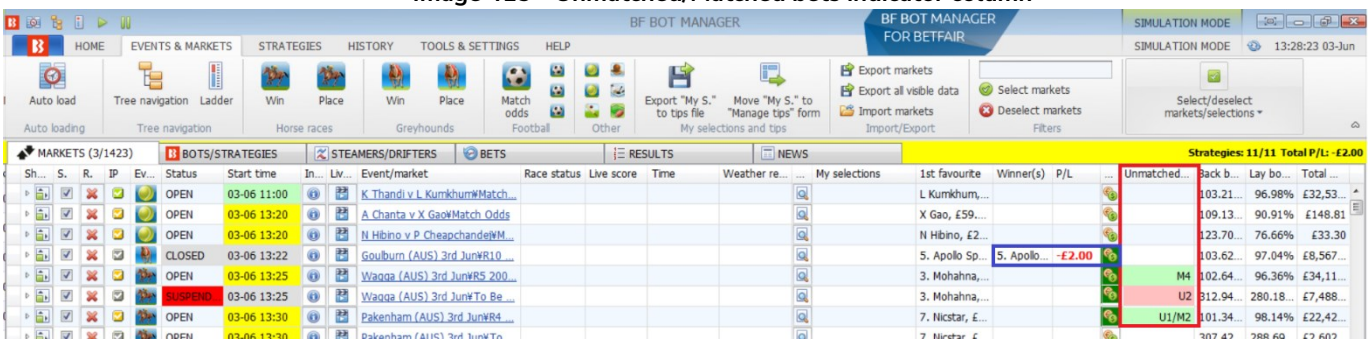
8.2.14 Pitch

The pitch column is a football related column that gives details on the pitch condition if it is available.

8.2.15 Unmatched/Matched

This column shows if a market has matched or unmatched bets on it. It also displays how many bets of each type there are. This is very useful if you need to know at a glance how many active bets you have on a market.

Image 415 - Unmatched/Matched bets indicator column



Matched bets – Will display as "M4" with a green background if there are 4 matched bets.
Unmatched bets – Will display as "U2" with a pink background if there are 2 unmatched bets.
Matched & Unmatched bets – Will display as "U1/M2" with a green background if there is 1 unmatched bet and 2 matched bets.
Settled Bets – Will not display anything in the "Unmatched/Matched" column, but the "Bets" column will still display a dark green background to show that the market had bets on it.

8.2.16 Best fit

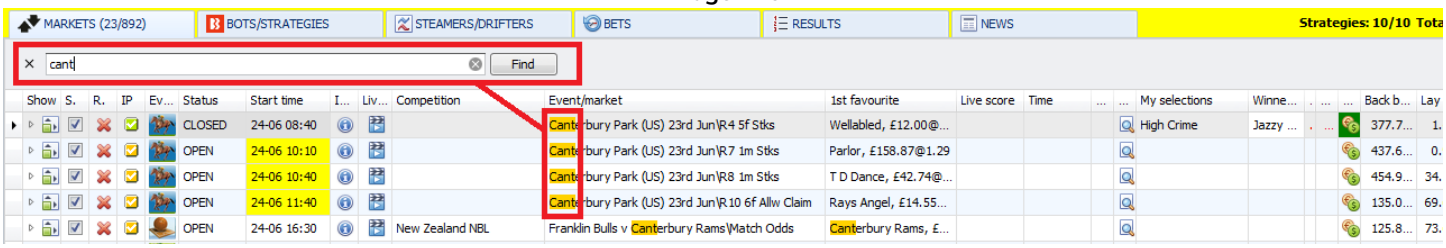
The best fit option will automatically adjust the width of the current column so that all the information is more easily visible.

8.2.17 Best fit (all columns)

The best fit (all columns) option will try to adjust the width of all columns so that as much information as possible is visible. This is a useful option if you want to automatically tidy up the column widths of the visible columns.

8.2.18 Show find panel

Image 416



If you right-click on any column header and then left-click “Show find panel”, then it will show a search bar at the top of the columns. It will then filter markets according to what you type into the search bar. This is very useful when you quickly want to find one particular market or a number of markets with the same text in their names such as horse race grounds, race types, football leagues, and so on. The markets are filtered as you type.

8.2.19 Show auto filter row

This function adds filters to each column so that you can search one column for some text, by a specific status from a drop down menu, by start time or even by a variety of filtering logic commands.

Image 417 Auto Filter by Market Status

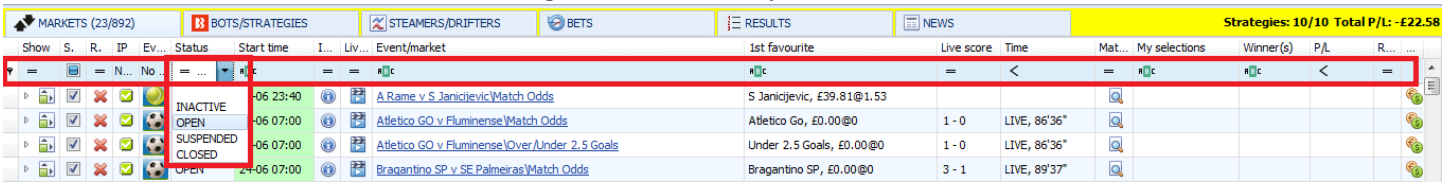
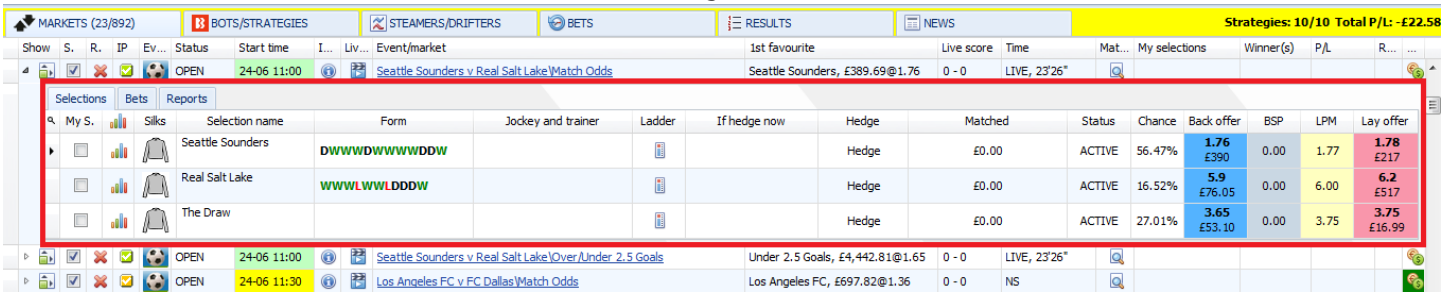


Image 418 Auto Filter by Start Time

Image 419 Auto Filtering Logic Commands

8.3 Selections grid view

Image 420

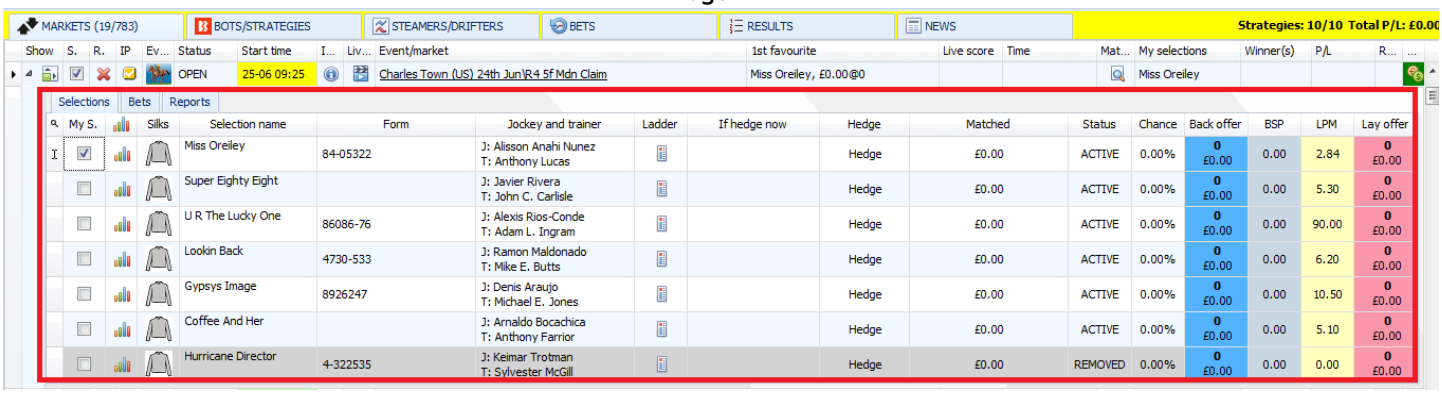


The Selections Grid View is different to the Markets Grid View because the Selections Grid View only shows the information for ONE market. It shows all of the selections in the market. The Markets Grid View shows the list of all markets loaded into the software. The Selections Grid View has 3 tabs within it, Selections, Bets and Reports. The Selections Grid View has different columns that can be added from the columns chooser in comparison with the Markets Grid View.

8.3.1 Selections grid view Selections tab

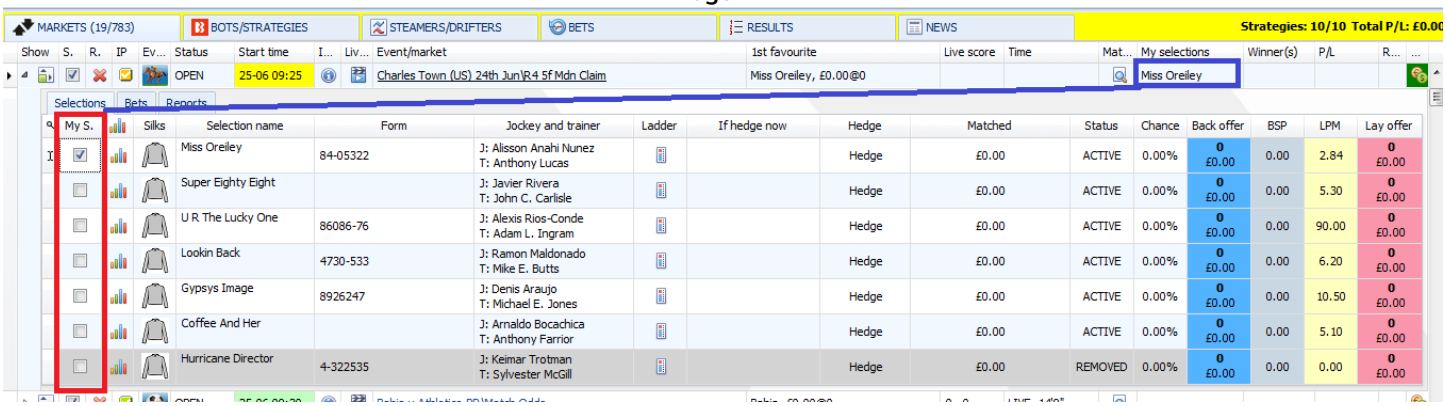
The selections tab shows all the runners in that market. The data and columns shown are customizable by right-clicking on any column header and using the Column chooser feature.

Image 421



8.3.2 "My S." check box

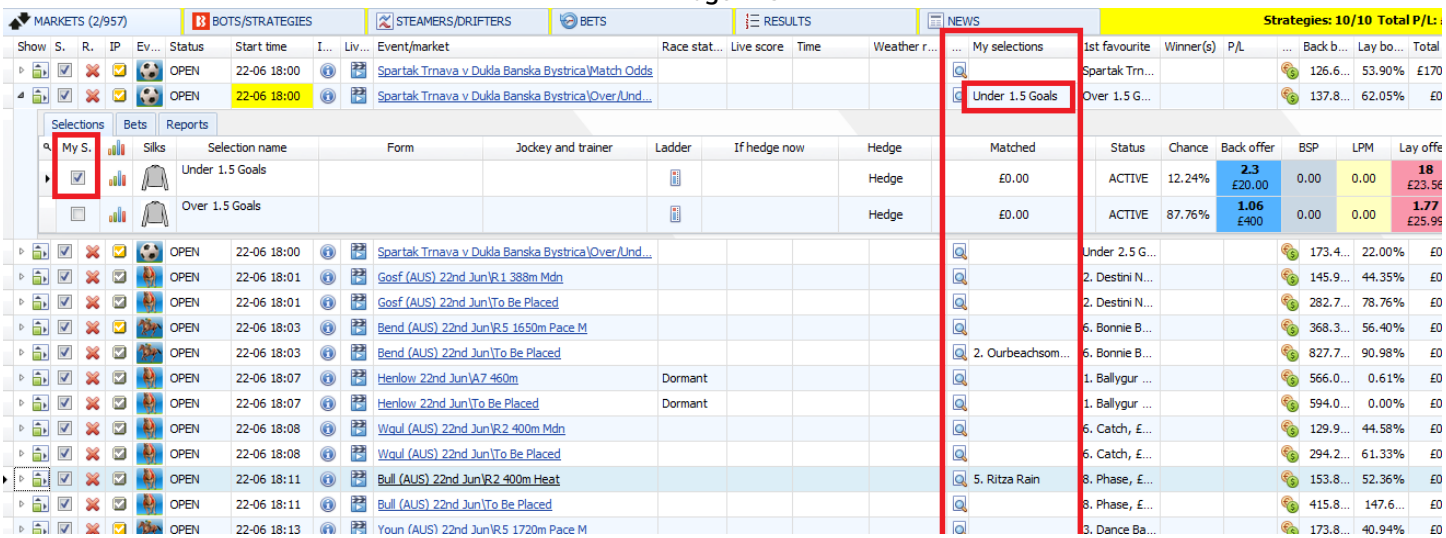
Image 422



The "My S." selection box in the selections grid view is for manual selections that you want a strategy to bet on directly from the My selections checkbox, or to export to a file or move to the Manage tips form as a set of

selections that are saved with a tipster/provider name. This box can be used with a "Bet on my selections" strategy or a "Bet on imported tips" strategy. Selections ticked in the selections grid view will also be displayed in the "My selections" column in the markets grid view,

Image 423



8.3.3 Price/volume over time

Image 424

The Price/volume over time icon brings up the Betfair graph that shows how the price for this selection has changed over time. It also includes bet volume information.

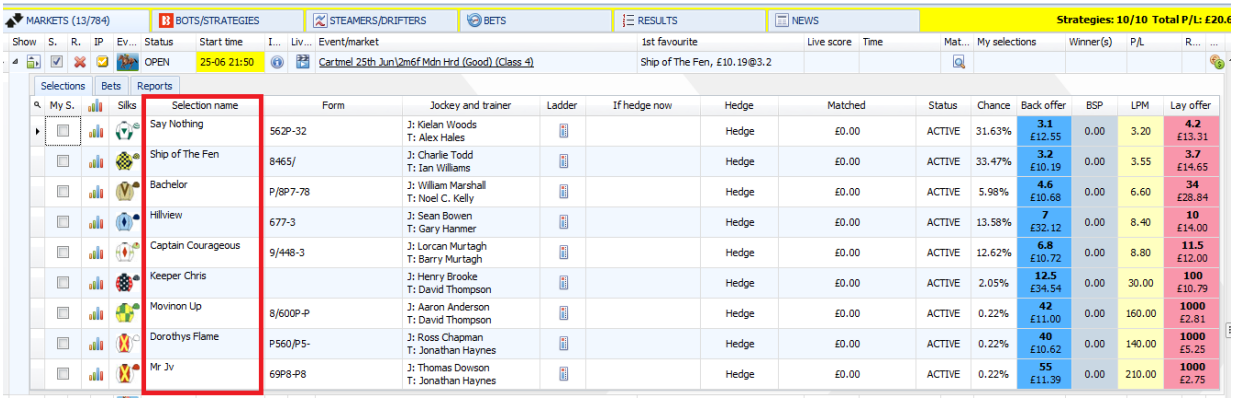
8.3.4 Silks

Image 425

The silks column shows the jockey or dog colors if provided.

8.3.5 Selection name

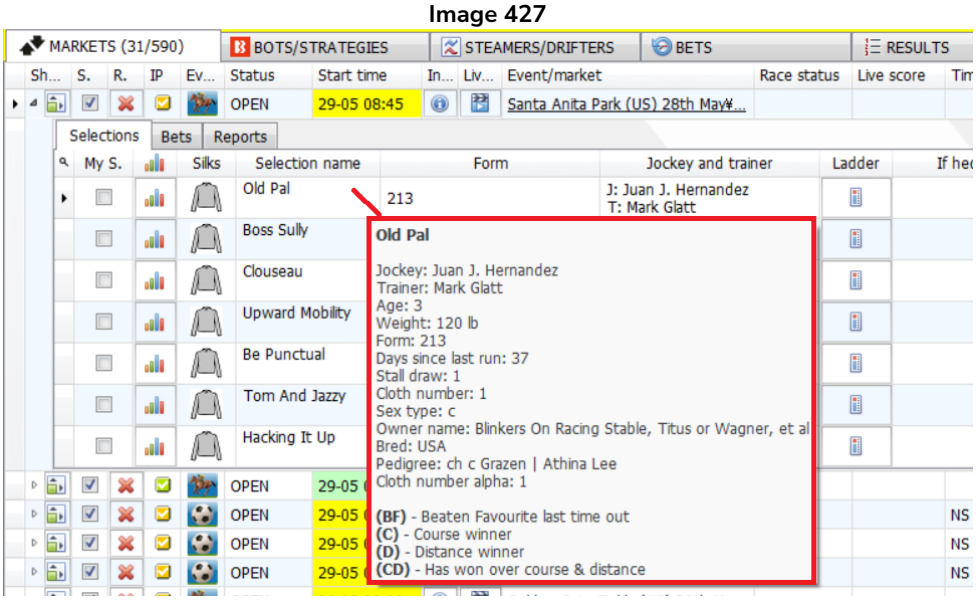
Image 426



The Selection name is the official Betfair name for this runner. For racing, it is the horse or dog name. For football, it could be the team name or simply the outcome such as “Draw” or “Over 2.5 goals”.

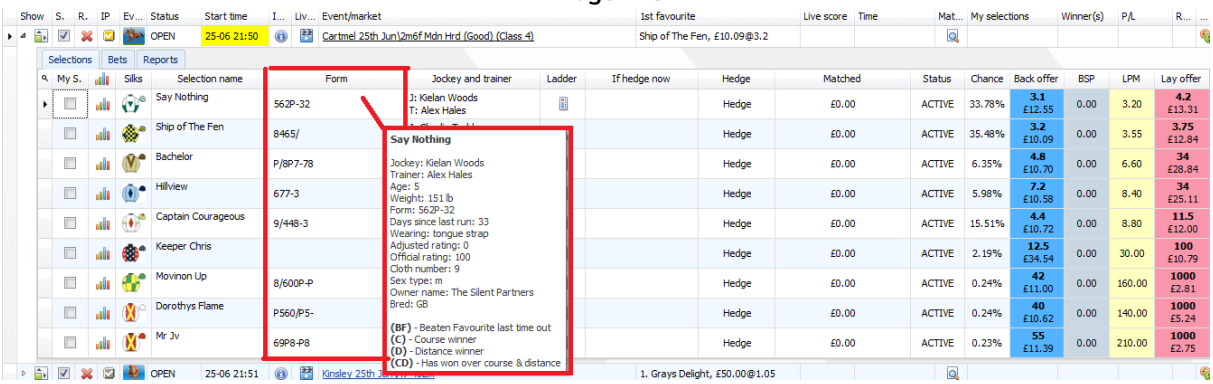
If you hover the mouse over a selection name, more information will be displayed if available.

Image 427



8.3.6 Form

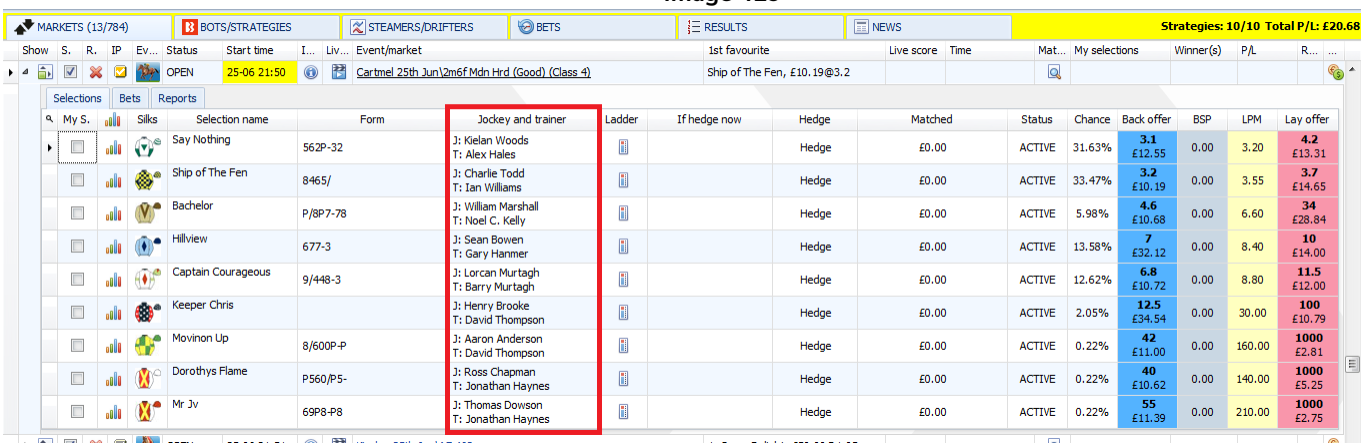
Image 428



The form column shows the recent form of the selection if available. For horses the number on the right is the most recent race. So in the above image the favorite "Say Nothing" finished 2nd in their last race. If you hover the mouse over a selection, it will display more detailed information. The same is true for football team form. The result on the right is the most recent.

8.3.7 Jockey and trainer

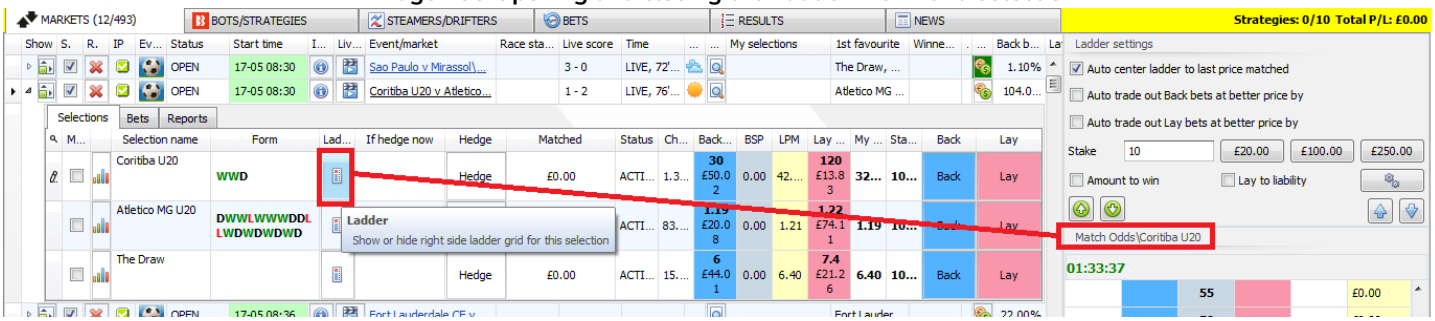
Image 429



The jockey and trainer column shows the information as provided by the Betfair API data stream.

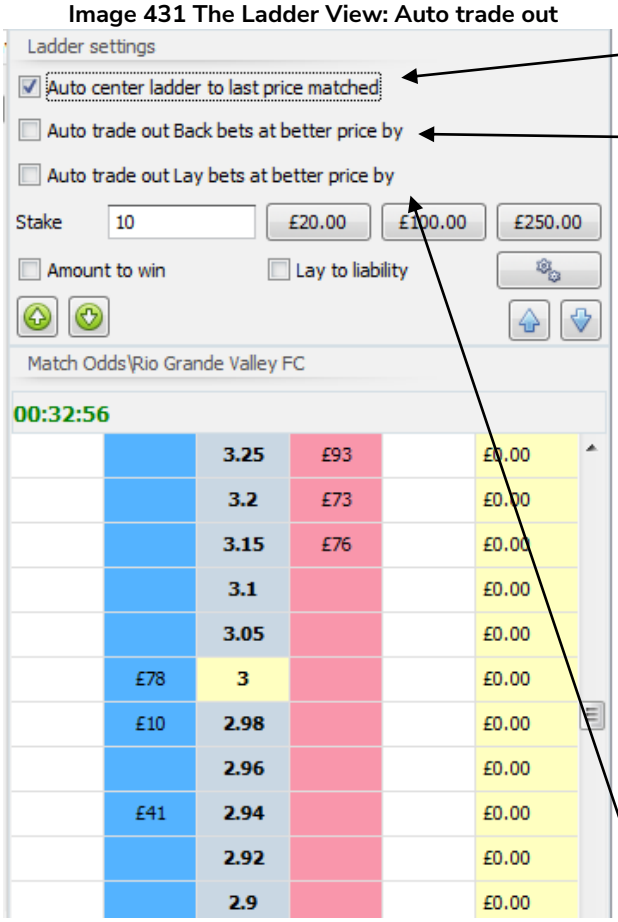
8.3.8 Ladder button

Image 430 Opening and closing the Ladder View for a selection



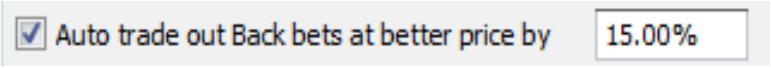
To open the ladder view, left-click on the ladder icon for that selection in the selections grid view. The ladder grid view shows only one selection at a time. So make sure the correct selection is being displayed by checking the selection name that appears above the odds in the ladder view. To close the ladder view, left-click on the ladder button in the selections grid view again.

Image 431 The Ladder View: Auto trade out

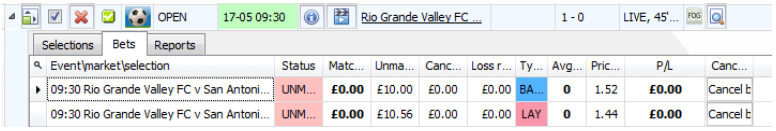


This will auto center the ladder on the last price matched. **This is useful to move the focus of the ladder to where the most recent action is occurring.**

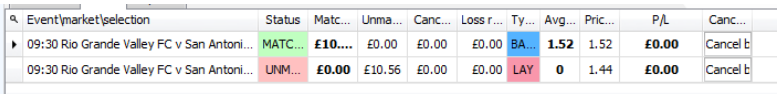
Ticking this checkbox will bring up a field on the right.



With this setting enabled, the software will **automatically place a lay bet** at 15% better odds. This % can be adjusted.



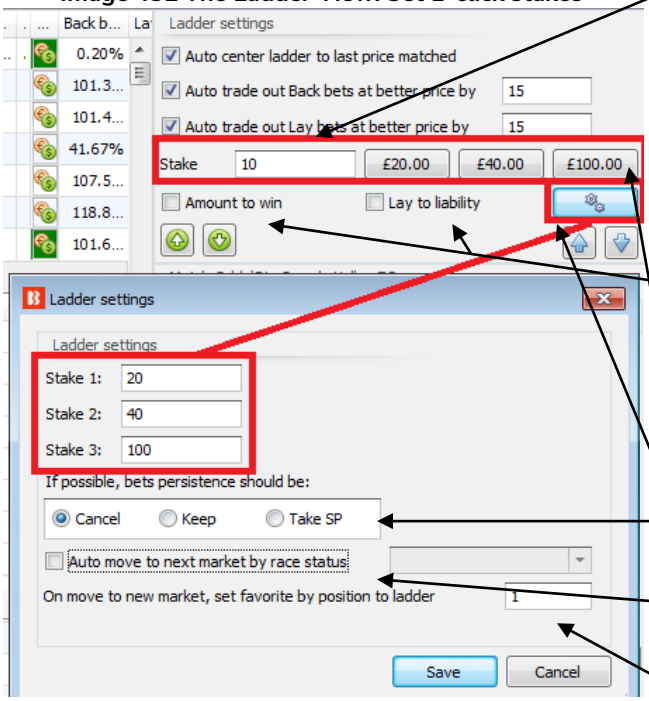
For back bets, that means a lay bet will be placed straight away at lower odds. In this above example the back bet is at 1.52 and the lay bet is at 1.44. Both bets are still unmatched. As the bets get matched, the bets tab will update itself.



The cancel bet button is available on the bets tab in the section girds view to allow easy cancelling of bets.

The same function can be done with lay bets. But the second bet will be a back bet at higher odds than the lay bet.

Image 432 The Ladder View: Set 1-click stakes



The **Stake** field sets the amount that will be placed by one-click betting on the ladder grid itself. If we enter £10 in the stake field and then left-click on a blue cell, it will place a £10 back bet at that price. If the placed Back bet is unmatched, it will show up on the Lay side in the white cell. If we left-click on that £10 in the white cell, it will cancel the unmatched bet.

Instead of being a regular **Stake**, it can be edited to be an **Amount to win** or a **Lay to liability** figure.

The £20, £100, £250 buttons enable **quick stake changes** without having to type in the numbers. For in-play trading, speed is important.

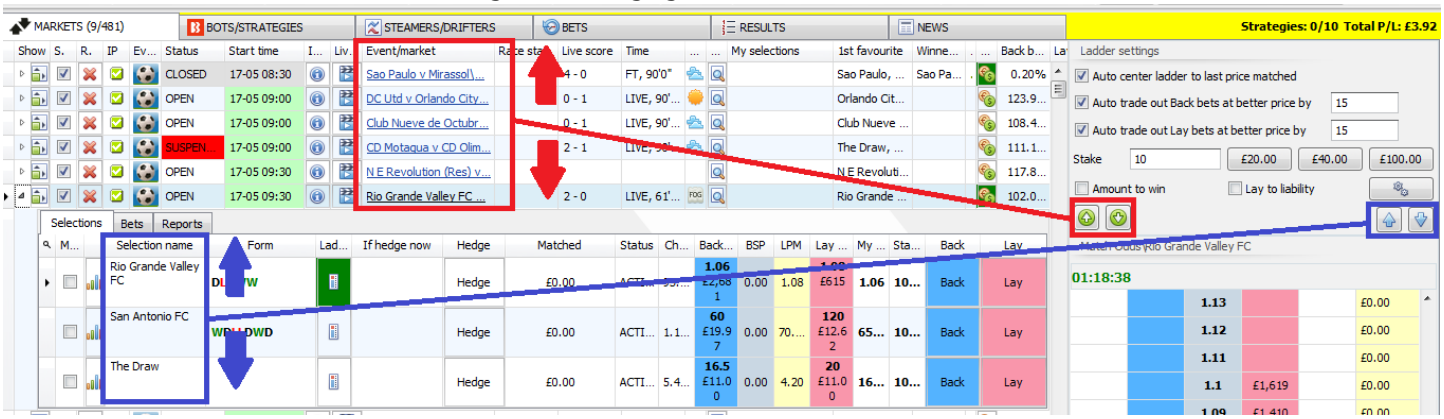
The cog button allows the settings of those **quick stake buttons to be customized**.

The **persistence** of those bets can also be customized. The default setting is Cancel.

For Horse Traders, the ladder can be set to **auto move to the next market based on race status**.

The next **Selection to be viewed** when auto move takes place can also be **set by favorite position**.

Image 433 Changing Market or Selection Buttons



The green up/down arrows allow quick changing of markets. The blue up/down arrows allow quick changing between the selections in the currently selected market.

There is also a video tutorial available for demonstrating how to use the [Ladder and Manual Bets Strategy]

8.3.9 If hedge now

The "If hedge now" column shows what profit and loss figures could be achieved if the software tried to hedge the bet to make the same profit or loss on that selection regardless of the result. There are two figures, the first is the outcome if the selection wins and the second is the outcome if the selection loses.

8.3.10 Hedge button

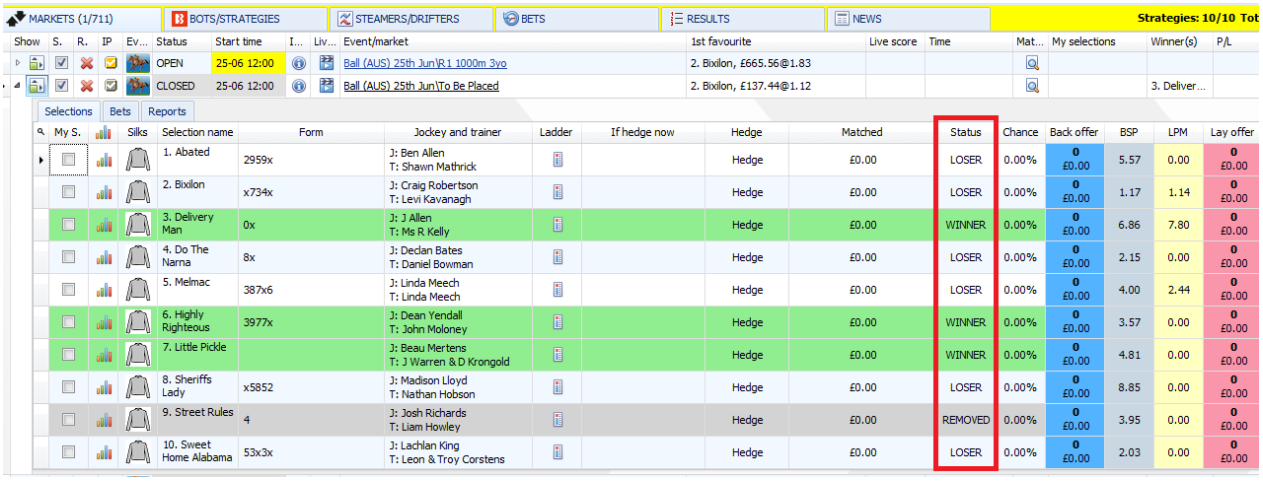
This will tell the software to hedge the selection's bets. The bot will then place bets to achieve the "if hedge now" figures. This does not guarantee the hedge will be completed, since the bets still need to be matched on the market.

8.3.11 Matched

The matched column shows how much money has been matched on this selection.

8.3.12 Status

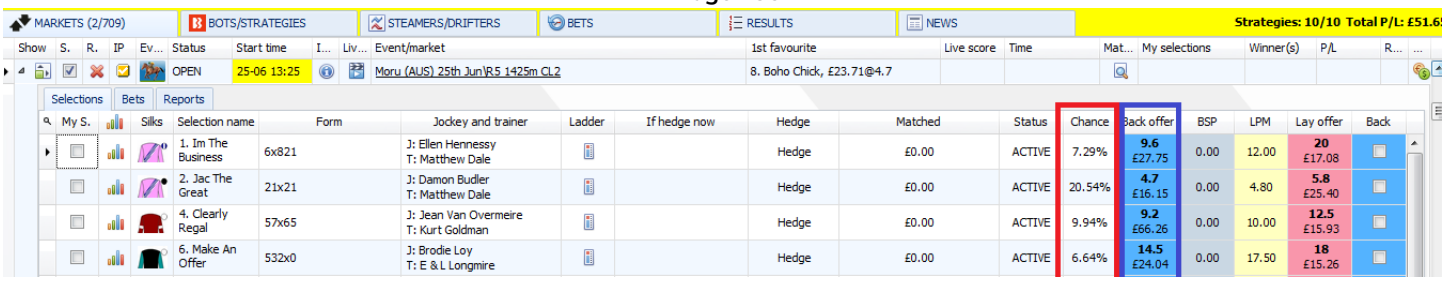
Image 434



This shows the status of the selection Active, Removed, Winner, Loser, etc.

8.3.13 Chance

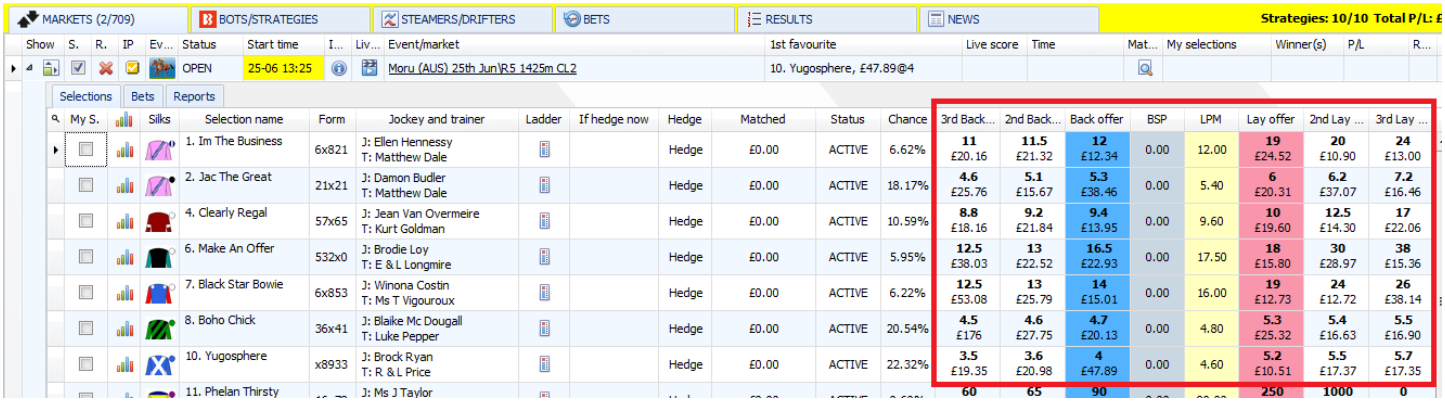
Image 435



This converts the back odds into the implied probability percentage chance of the selection winning.

8.3.14 Back offer and Lay offer

Image 436



This shows the current 1st best back/lay price. If you want to see the 2nd and 3rd best back/lay prices similar to the Betfair website screen, then you can right click on a column header, click on Column chooser and double click on "2nd back offer", "3rd lay offer" and so on.

8.3.15 BSP - Betfair Start Price

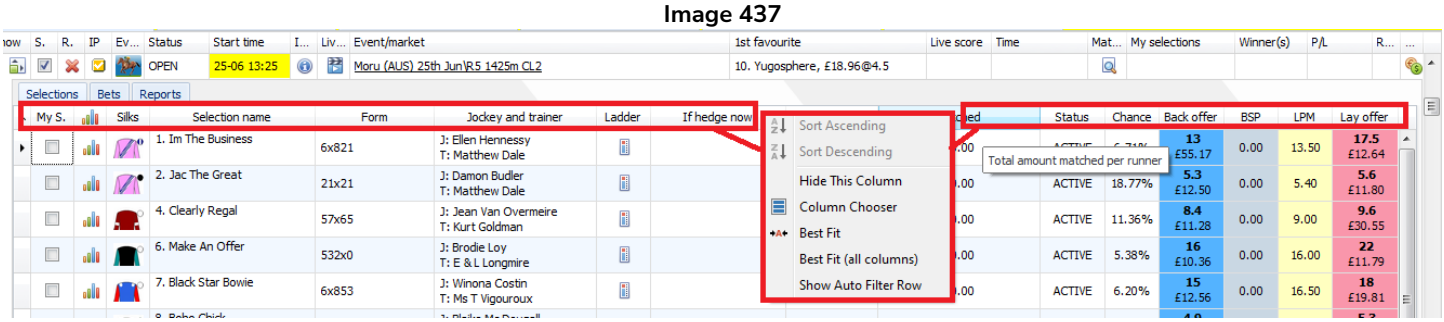
This will show the Betfair Start Price if there is one available. It is only available after the event starts, so it will be zero before the event begins.

8.3.16 LPM - Last Price Matched

The last price matched tells us what price the most recent bet was placed and matched at.

8.3.17 Selections grid view Column header options

Image 437



Right clicking on a column header in the Selections Grid view will reveal options.

8.3.18 Sort ascending / Sort descending

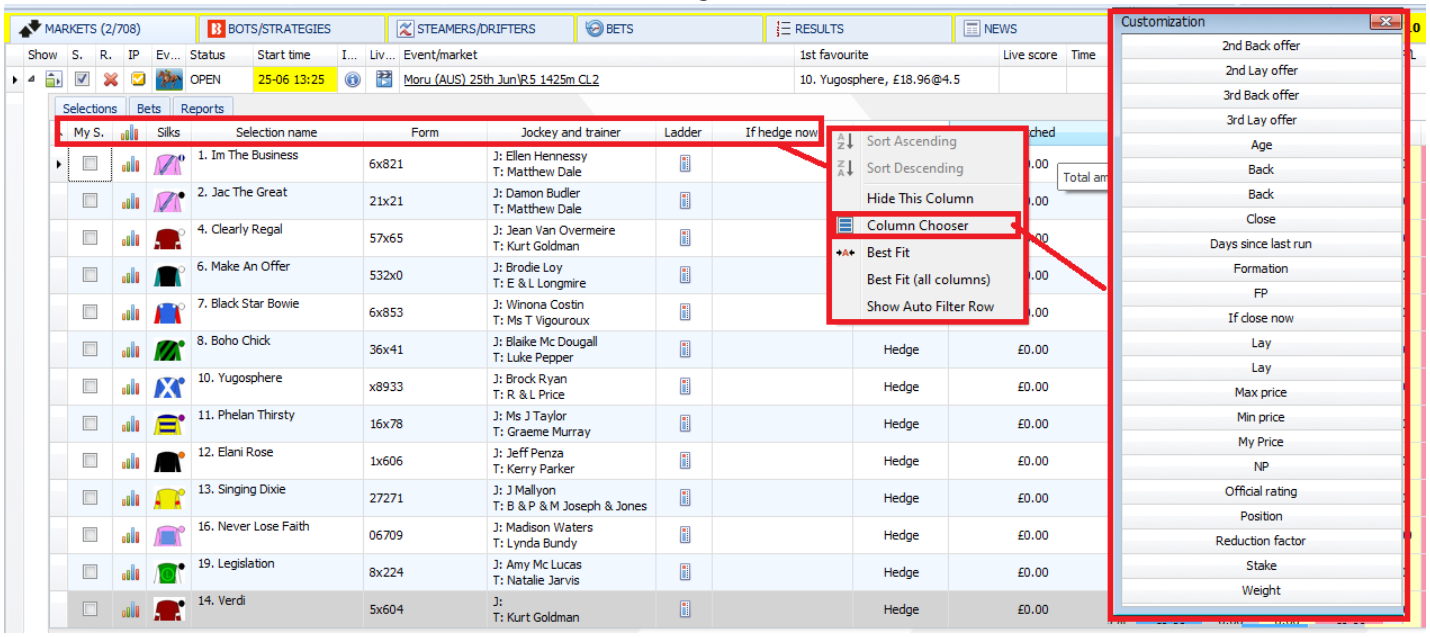
If this column allows this function, then it is possible to sort and rank the selections.

8.3.19 Hide this column

This will remove the column from being visible in the selections grid screen. This is very useful when you want to customize the selections grid screen to just see the information that you want. Columns that have been hidden can be brought back by selecting them from the Column Chooser menu.

8.3.20 Selections grid view Column chooser options

Image 438

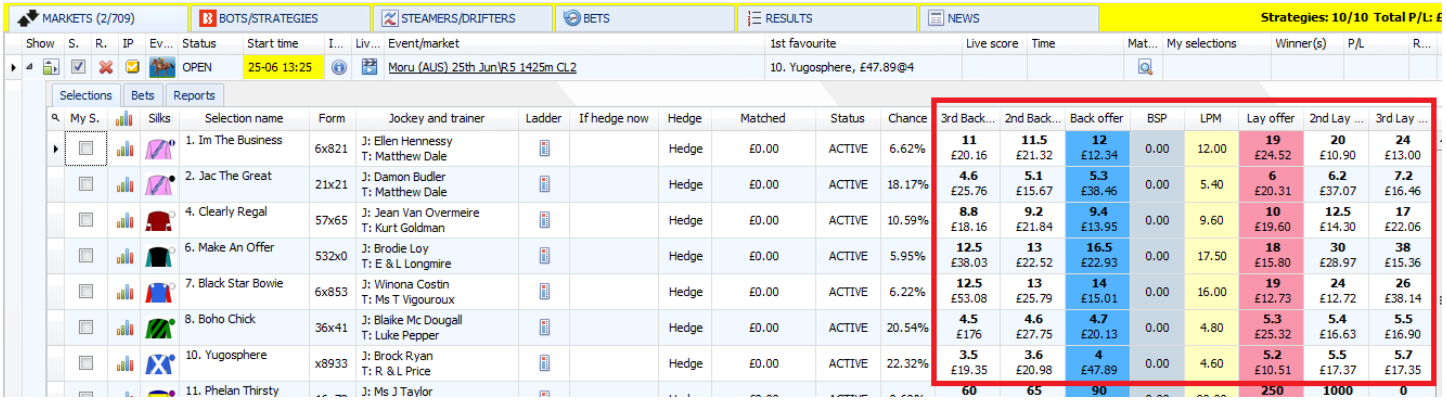


The selections grid view offers many options to add into the columns. They may not all fit together, so it is useful to use the "Best-fit (all columns)" option after adding in new columns. You can also left-click and hold on a column header to drag and re-position it in the selections grid view to view information as you want it.

8.3.21 2nd Back offer, 2nd Lay offer, 3rd Back offer, 3rd Lay offer

If you want to see the 2nd and 3rd best back/lay prices similar to the Betfair website screen, then you can right click on a column header, click on Column chooser and double click on these options.

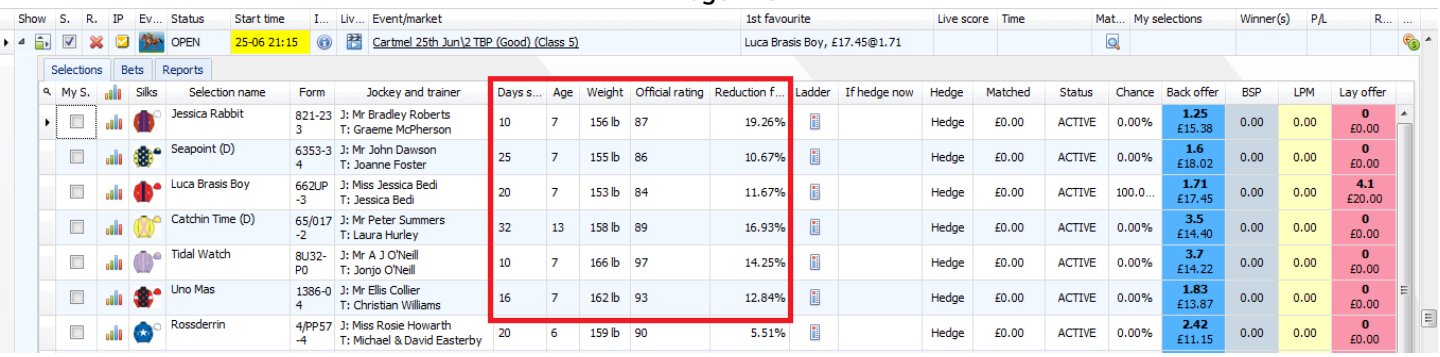
Image 439



8.3.22 Age, Days since last run, Weight, Official rating & Reduction factor

There are a number of racing focused information columns that can be added to the selections grid view.

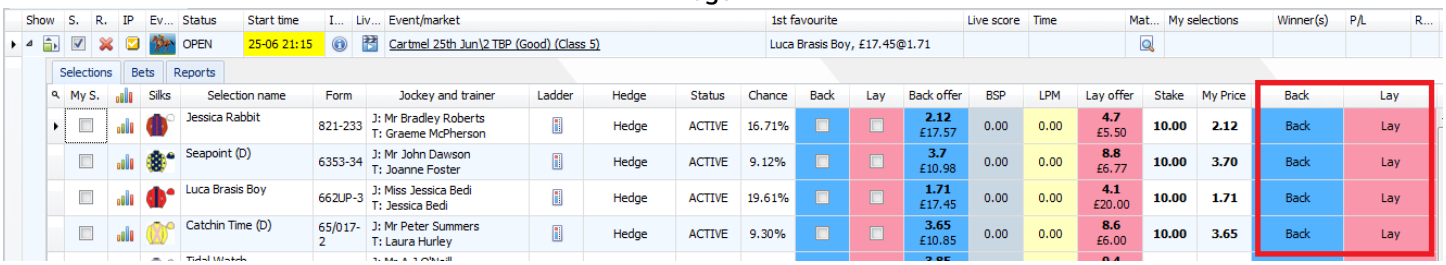
Image 440



Days since last run will show how many days since this runner has been in a race if the information is available.
Age will show the age of the horse if available.
Weight will show the weigh in lb.
Official rating will show an official rating if one is available. For example, at the end of every season the International Flat Handicappers produce a rating for the top horses in the world rated at 115+ based on their best sustainable performance. The British and Irish Jumps Handicappers produce a similar classification for chasers and hurdlers rated at 140+. You can read more about official ratings at the BHA website.
Reduction factor will show the reduction factor if a runner has been removed from the race.

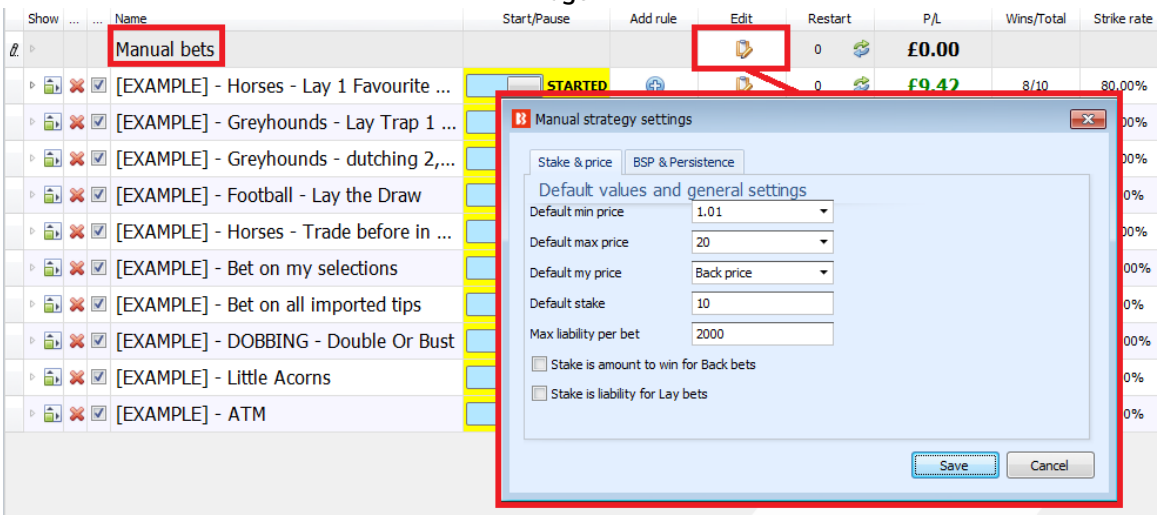
8.3.23 "Back" & "Lay" Bet Buttons

Image 441



This is useful for manual betting. It adds a Back bet button to the selections grid view. If clicked, it will place a bet at the default stakes set in the Manual bets strategy, or you can specify the stake and price by adding "Stake" and "My Price" columns. A confirmation screen will come up before a bet is placed, but you have the option to deactivate that confirmation screen.

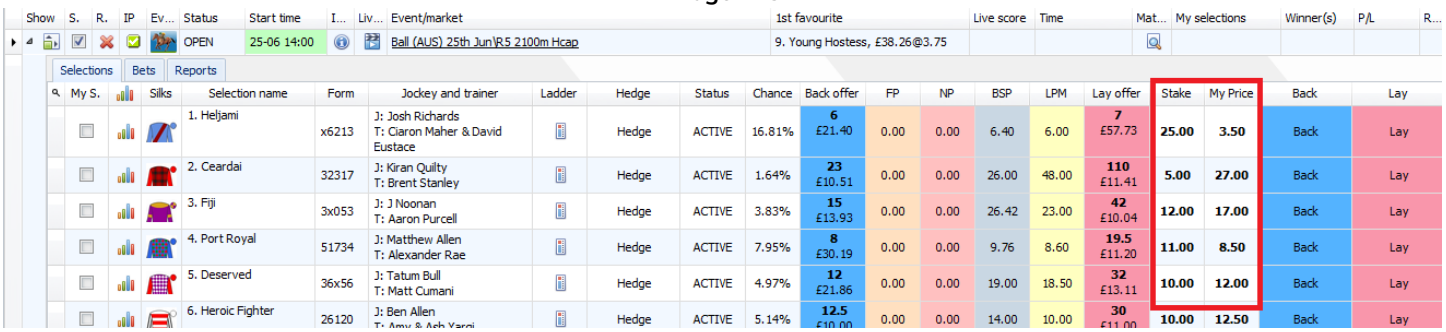
Image 442



Profit and loss from manual bets will be shown in the Manual bets strategy in the Strategies tab. Default price, stake and other settings for the Selections Grid view Back & Lay buttons will be displayed here.

8.3.24 "My Price" & "Stake"

Image 443

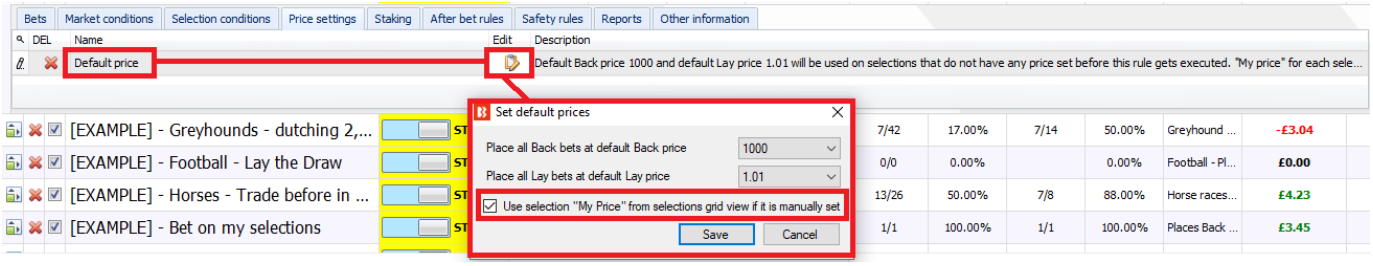


The **My Price** and **Stake** buttons allow you to do several things.

1. For manual betting, you can enter your own desired stake size and price before clicking on the Back or Lay bet execution buttons. This allows you to make a bet at a price different to the current one offered, or it allows you to prepare different stakes and prices for each runner and then you can wait for the right moment to click the bet execution button. This is pre-off preparation that can save time during in-play betting where speed is important.

2. Strategies can be instructed to look for manually set stake sizes and prices that can override their default settings.

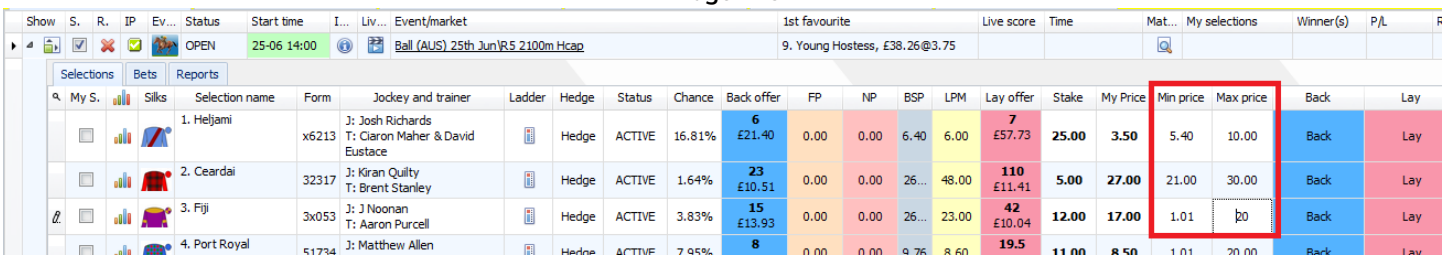
Image 444 Instructing a strategy to look for "My Price" in the Selection Grid view with Default price condition



3. The Stakes and Prices can be Exported to a tips file or Moved to the Manage Tips form as a set of selections after ticking the "My. S" checkbox.

8.3.25 "Max price" and "Min price"

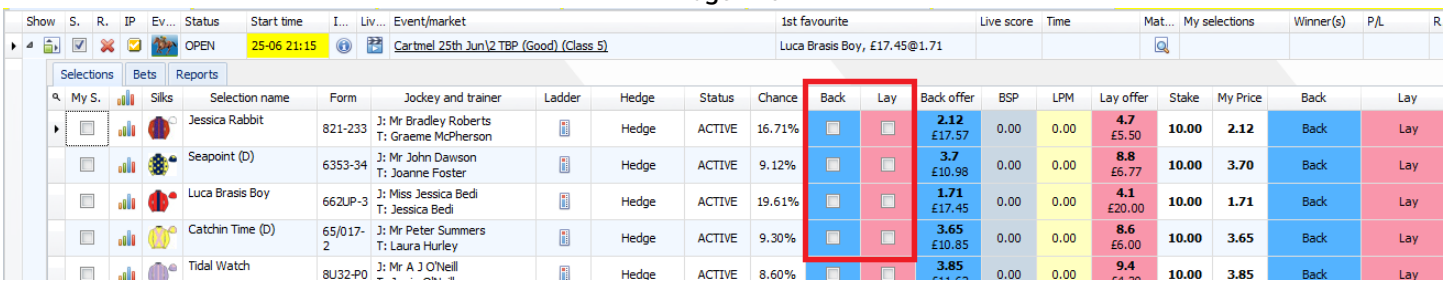
Image 445



Similar to the "Stake" and "My Price" columns, these columns can be used to override a strategy min/max price rule or to be exported with a set of tips as a file or as a selection set to the Manage Tips form.

8.3.26 "Back" & "Lay" Bet Type Checkboxes

Image 446



This is useful for strategies that use the "Manual bet type" rule. If you add this checkbox, you can set it to back or lay each selection. Then the strategy using the Manual bet type rule will look at these checkboxes to know what kind of bet to place. This checkbox does not tell the software to place a back bet, it just tells the strategy with the Manual bet type rule to place a back bet on this selection IF all the other conditions and rules in that strategy are met.

Image 447 Manual Bet Type rule

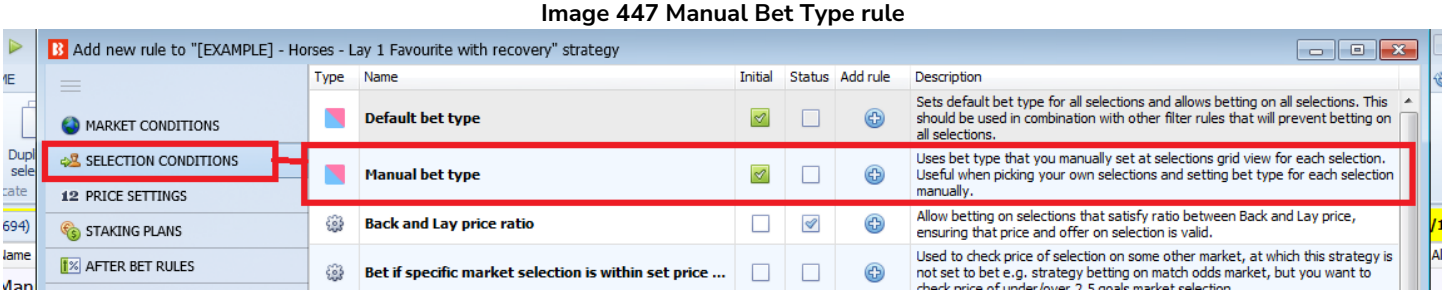
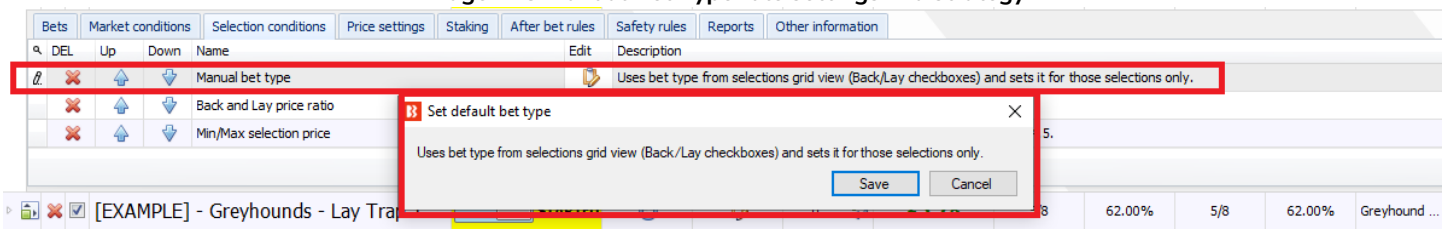


Image 448 Manual Bet Type rule settings in a strategy



8.3.27 If close now

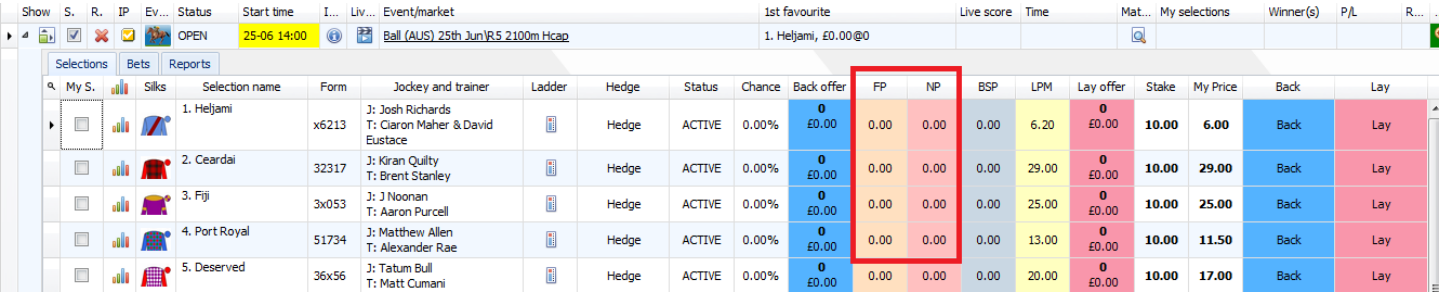
The “If close now” column shows what profit and loss figures could be achieved if the software tried to close the bet with zero profit or loss if the selection loses and some profit or loss if the selection wins. There are two figures, the first is the outcome if the selection wins and the second is the outcome if the selection loses. This is often used in combination with the “Close” button that will tell the software to execute close bets to try and achieve this figure.

8.3.28 Close

The close button will tell the software to try and place bets that will result with zero profit or loss if the selection loses and some profit or loss if the selection wins. If before Closing, Hedging would result in equal profit whatever the outcome, Closing would result in only making profit if the selection wins and zero profit if the outcome loses. If before Closing, Hedging would result in equal loss whatever the outcome, Closing would result in only making a loss if the selection wins and zero loss (zero profit) if the outcome loses. When clicked, the software will attempt to place bets to close the position, but it still needs those bets to be matched. So in fast moving markets, this might not always be achieved, so it is important to double-check if the close has been successful afterwards.

8.3.29 FP (Far Price) & NP (Near Price)

Image 449



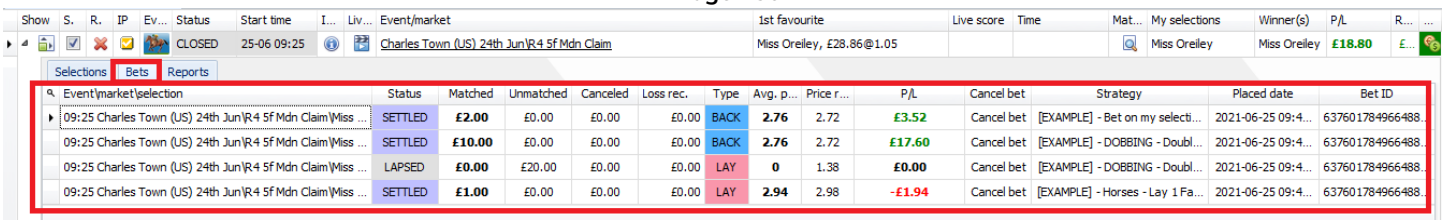
The FP column shows the Betfair Far Price. The NP column shots the Betfair Near Price. Until the market is actually closed, the Betfair Starting Price (BSP) can only be estimated, and Betfair have two methods for this, the **far price** and the **near price**. The far price is calculated using the unmatched bets, as the matched bets are between users who have agreed a mutually acceptable price, and therefore can be considered as separate bets from unmatched bets. The far and near prices aren't calculated in real time but only about once per minute. The **Far price** is calculated by using only the Starting Price qualifying bets and assumes that there will be no Exchange market at the time the market is determined. The Near price assumes that the current Exchange market can be used. In effect, the **Near price** is what the Starting Price odds would be if the event started at the current moment. The NP and FP are only available on some markets.

8.3.30 Position and Formation

These football columns will show the team formation and league position if it is available.

8.3.31 Selections grid view Bets tab

Image 450



Show	S.	R.	IP	Ev...	Status	Start time	I...	Liv...	Event/market	1st favourite	Live score	Time	Mat...	My selections	Winner(s)	P/L	R...	...
					CLOSED	25-06 09:25			Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim	Miss Oreiley, £28.86@1.05				Miss Oreiley	Miss Oreiley	£18.80	£...	

Selections | Bets | Reports

Event\market\selection	Status	Matched	Unmatched	Canceled	Loss rec.	Type	Avg. p...	Price r...	P/L	Cancel bet	Strategy	Placed date	Bet ID
09:25 Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim\Miss ...	SETTLED	£2.00	£0.00	£0.00	£0.00	BACK	2.76	2.72	£3.52	Cancel bet	[EXAMPLE] - Bet on my selecti...	2021-06-25 09:4...	637601784966488...
09:25 Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim\Miss ...	SETTLED	£10.00	£0.00	£0.00	£0.00	BACK	2.76	2.72	£17.60	Cancel bet	[EXAMPLE] - DOBBING - Doubl...	2021-06-25 09:4...	637601784966488...
09:25 Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim\Miss ...	LAPSED	£0.00	£20.00	£0.00	£0.00	LAY	0	1.38	£0.00	Cancel bet	[EXAMPLE] - DOBBING - Doubl...	2021-06-25 09:4...	637601784966488...
09:25 Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim\Miss ...	SETTLED	£1.00	£0.00	£0.00	£0.00	LAY	2.94	2.98	-£1.94	Cancel bet	[EXAMPLE] - Horses - Lay 1 Fa...	2021-06-25 09:4...	637601784966488...

The Bets tab in the selections grid view will tell you all the bets placed by any strategy on this market.

8.3.32 Event/market/selection

You can see which selection a bet was placed on.

8.3.33 Status - bet status

You can see if the bet was matched, settled, unmatched, lapsed, voided or cancelled.

8.3.34 Matched - matched amount

You can see how much of your bet was matched. In the case of partially matched bets, only the matched portion will be shown.

8.3.35 Unmatched - unmatched amount

This will show how much stake was unmatched.

8.3.36 Cancelled - cancelled amount

This will show how much stake was cancelled.

8.3.37 Loss rec. - Loss recover part of bet size

If you are using a loss recovery staking plan, then you will see the amount of the bet which is the loss recovery portion.

8.3.38 Type - Bet type

This will show if the bet was a Back or Lay bet.

8.3.39 Avg. - Average price matched

If the stake was all matched at one price, then that price will be displayed. If the stake was matched at multiple prices, then the average price will be shown here.

8.3.40 Price - Price requested

This shows the price requested by the software when the bet was placed. You can see here if your matched price was higher or the same as the requested price.

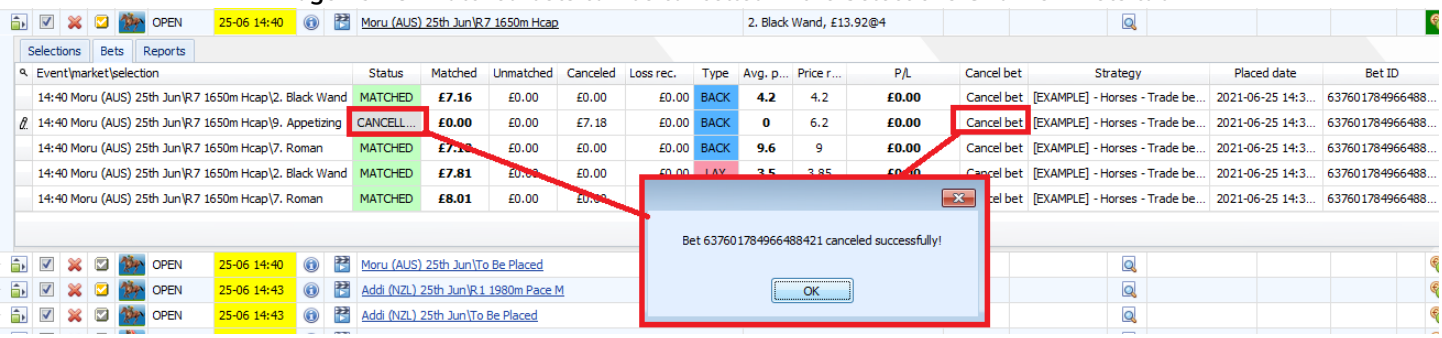
8.3.41 P/L

This shows the profit or loss of this single bet by itself. You can check if commission is being taken from this

P/L figure by looking in the General settings.

8.3.42 Cancel bet

Image 451 Unmatched bets can be cancelled in the Selections Grid view Bets tab



If the bet is unmatched, then this "Cancel bet" button is a one-click cancellation of that bet. This is useful if you suddenly notice an unmatched bet that you do not want. Then you can immediately cancel it here.

8.3.43 Strategy

This tells you which strategy placed this bet.

8.3.44 Placed date

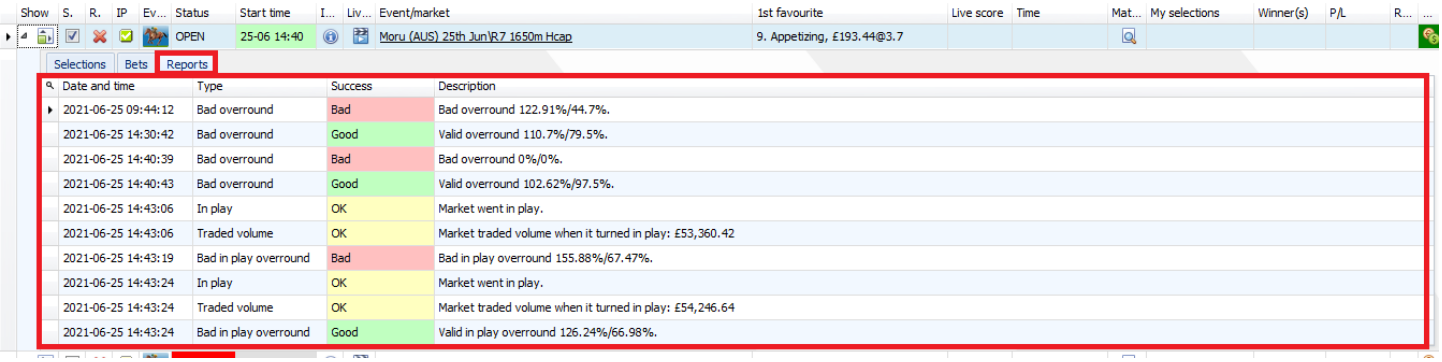
This tells you the date and time the bet was placed.

8.3.45 Bet ID

This tells you the Betfair Bet ID. This is the same Bet ID that will appear in your Betfair account. It is not a Bf Bot Manager created ID.

8.3.46 Selections grid view Reports tab

Image 452



The Reports tab in the Selections Grid view shows basic reports of market issues, such as when the Overround was good or bad, when the market went in-play, what the traded volume was at different times. This is sometimes useful when troubleshooting strategy bet placement issues.

8.3.47 Date and time

This states the date and time of the report.

8.3.48 Type

This shows what type of report it is; Bad overround, In-play, Traded volume, etc.

8.3.49 Success

This gives a quick indication of if the report is about an issue that might stop “Bad” or allow betting “Good” or just confirm the market is working as normal “OK”.

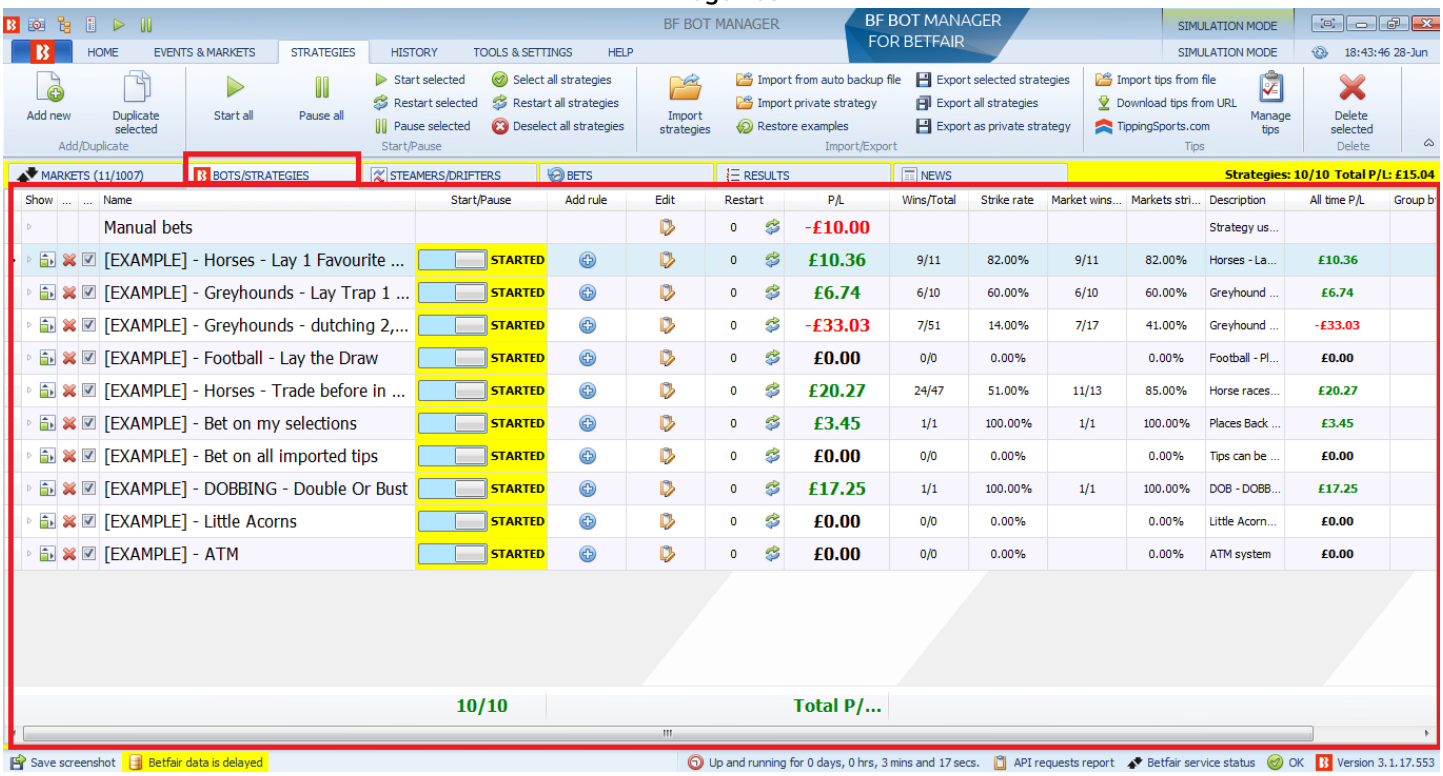
8.3.50 Description

This gives the details of the report.

9 Bots/Strategies screen

9.1 Main View

Image 453



The Bots/Strategies main screen is the place where you can see which strategies are started and paused. You can edit, delete and duplicate strategies here. This is also a good place to get an overview at a glance of how many bets have been placed by each strategy, how many won and the profit and loss. Columns can be sorted by left-clicking on their column header.

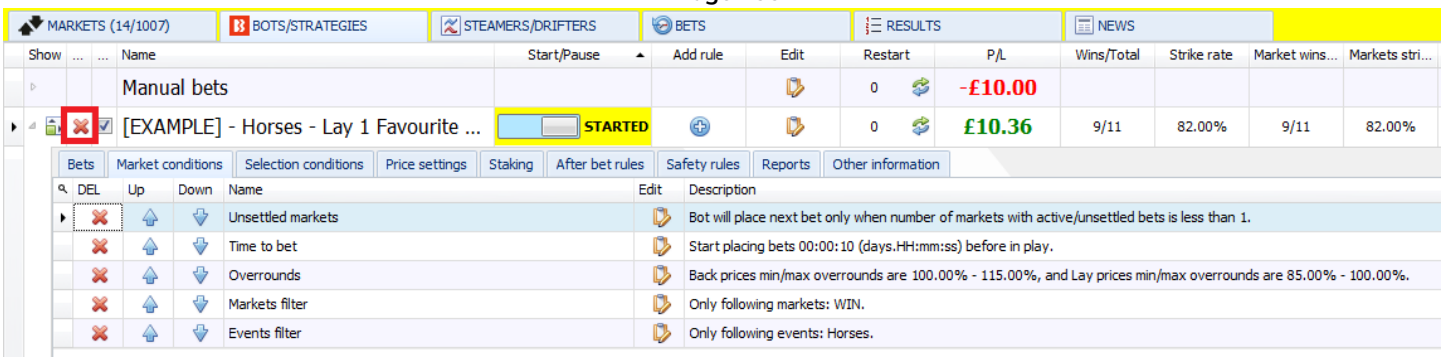
9.1.1 Show button

Image 454

The show/hide toggle button will open up the detail tabs for the strategy that show its bets, market conditions, selection conditions, price settings, after bet rules, safety rules, reports and other information.

9.1.2 Remove strategy button

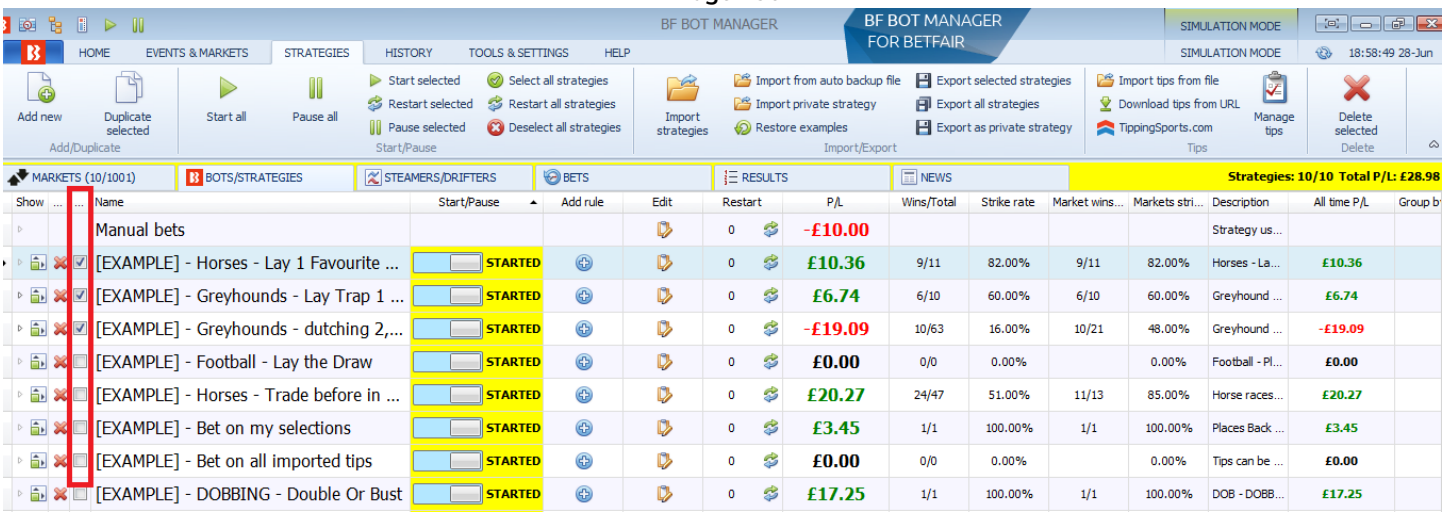
Image 455



This button will remove this individual strategy. Be careful because there is no undelete button. For "Example strategies" it is possible to restore the original versions, but for custom strategies there is a daily backup made of all strategies. If you accidentally delete a strategy and if that strategy had been backed up, then you can import the daily backup file. The autosave files can usually be found in the Local Disk > Users > "Your user name" > AppData > Local > bfbotmanager.com > BF Bot Manager V3 or do a search for "Bf Bot Manager V3" if it is not there. That folder also has the auto backup of bets and results history, It is recommended that you export and save your current set of strategies before you do any editing in case you want to revert back to the pervious settings of your strategies.

9.1.3 Select strategy check box

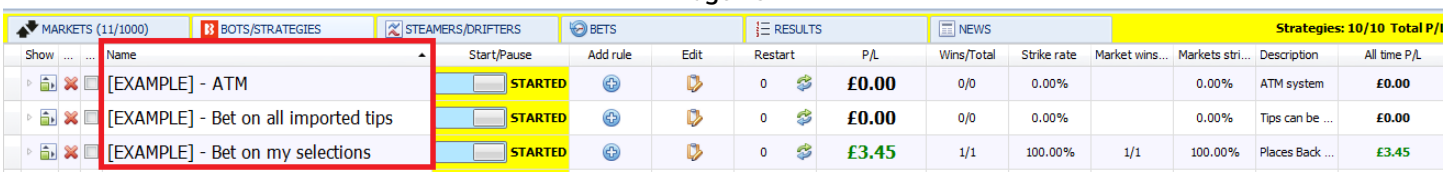
Image 456



The select strategy check box allows you to select and then apply an action to a group of strategies. For example, start, pause, export, delete or restart the selected strategies.

9.1.4 Name

Image 457



The **name** column can be ranked alphanumerically by left-clicking on the column header.

Please note that it is not possible to manually re-order how strategies appear in the list, but you can edit their names to sort them into the order that you want. It is also possible to sort strategies using the “group by” column.

Image 458 Strategies sorted alphabetically

Show	...	...	Name	Start/Pause	Add rule	Edit	Restart	P/L	Wins/Total	Strike rate	Market wins...	Markets stri...	Description	All time P/L	Gro
			[EXAMPLE] ATM	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	ATM system	£0.00	
			[EXAMPLE] Bet on all imported tips	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	Tips can be ...	£0.00	
			[EXAMPLE] Bet on my selections	STARTED			0	£3.45	1/1	100.00%	1/1	100.00%	Places Back ...	£3.45	
			[EXAMPLE] DOBBING - Double Or Bust	STARTED			0	£17.25	1/1	100.00%	1/1	100.00%	DOB - DOBB...	£17.25	
			[EXAMPLE] Football - Lay the Draw	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	Football - Pl...	£0.00	
		☑	[EXAMPLE] Greyhounds - dutching 2,...	STARTED			0	£3.06	12/69	17.00%	12/23	52.00%	Greyhound ...	£3.06	
		☑	[EXAMPLE] Greyhounds - Lay Trap 1 ...	STARTED			0	£6.74	6/10	60.00%	6/10	60.00%	Greyhound ...	£6.74	
		☑	[EXAMPLE] Horses - Lay 1 Favourite ...	STARTED			0	£10.36	9/11	82.00%	9/11	82.00%	Horses - La...	£10.36	
			[EXAMPLE] Horses - Trade before in ...	STARTED			0	£20.27	24/47	51.00%	11/13	85.00%	Horse races...	£20.27	
			[EXAMPLE] Little Acorns	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	Little Acorn...	£0.00	
			Manual bets				0	-£10.00					Strategy us...		

If you use numbers at the beginning of strategy names, it is best to use “01” instead of just “1” so that once the numbers reach 10 or more, that they are alphanumerically sorted correctly. This is often the easiest way to control the order that strategies appear when sorted alphanumerically.

Image 459 Strategies sorted alphanumerically – special character -> numbers -> letters

MARKETS (13/999) | BOTS/STRATEGIES | STEAMERS/DRIFTERS | BETS | RESULTS | NEWS | Strategies: 10/10 Total P

Show	...	...	Name	Start/Pause	Add rule	Edit	Restart	P/L	Wins/Total	Strike rate	Market wins...	Markets stri...	Description	All time P/L
			[EXAMPLE] - Football - Lay the Draw	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	Football - Pl...	£0.00
		☑	[EXAMPLE] - Greyhounds - dutching 2,...	STARTED			0	£8.30	13/72	18.00%	13/24	54.00%	Greyhound ...	£8.30
		☑	[EXAMPLE] - Greyhounds - Lay Trap 1 ...	STARTED			0	£6.74	6/10	60.00%	6/10	60.00%	Greyhound ...	£6.74
		☑	[EXAMPLE] - Horses - Lay 1 Favourite ...	STARTED			0	£10.36	9/11	82.00%	9/11	82.00%	Horses - La...	£10.36
			[EXAMPLE] - Horses - Trade before in ...	STARTED			0	£20.27	24/47	51.00%	11/13	85.00%	Horse races...	£20.27
			01 [EXAMPLE] - DOBBING - Double Or...	STARTED			0	£17.25	1/1	100.00%	1/1	100.00%	DOB - DOBB...	£17.25
			03 [EXAMPLE] - ATM	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	ATM system	£0.00
			06 [EXAMPLE] - Bet on all imported tips	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	Tips can be ...	£0.00
			21 [EXAMPLE] - Bet on my selections	STARTED			0	£3.45	1/1	100.00%	1/1	100.00%	Places Back ...	£3.45
			Little Acorns	STARTED			0	£0.00	0/0	0.00%		0.00%	Little Acorn...	£0.00
			Manual bets				0	-£10.00					Strategy us...	

This shows how naming formats will affect the order strategies get sorted in the name column.
Special characters come first, then sorted by the next differentiating number, then letter. (red)
Numbers are sorted next, then sorted by the next differentiating letter. (blue)
Letters are sorted last if there are no special characters or numbers before it. (orange)

9.1.5 Start/Pause button

Image 460 Started / Paused buttons in Simulation Mode

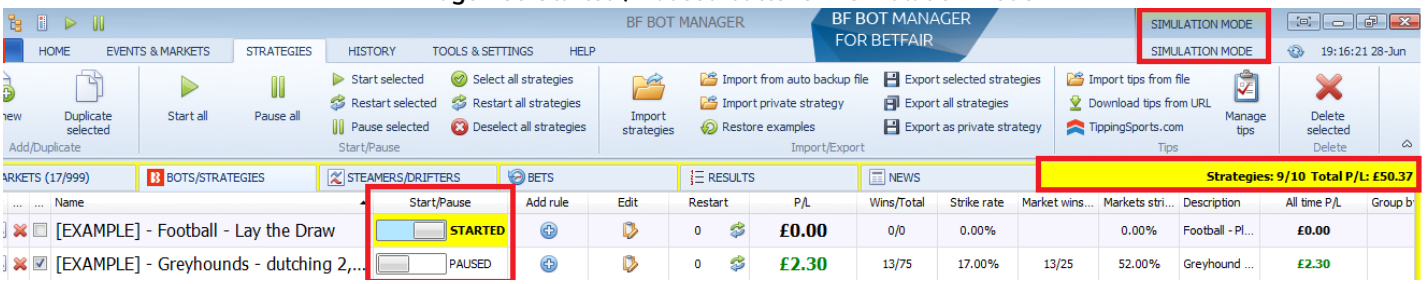
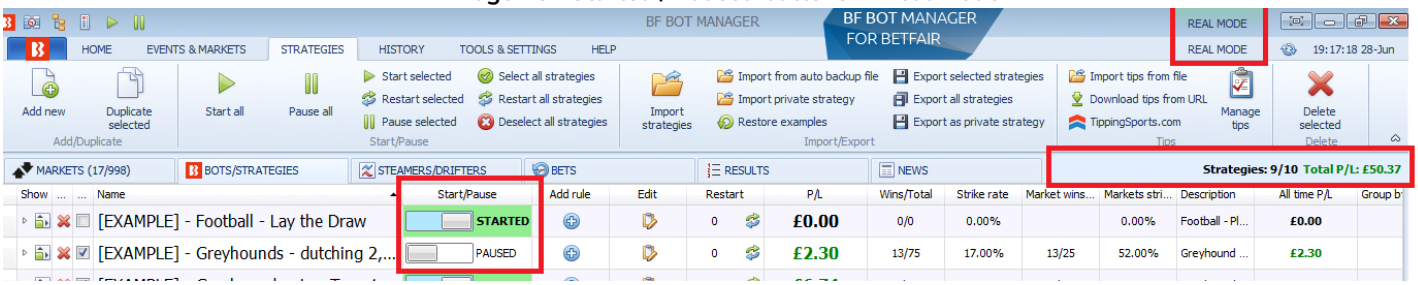


Image 461 Started / Paused buttons in Real Mode

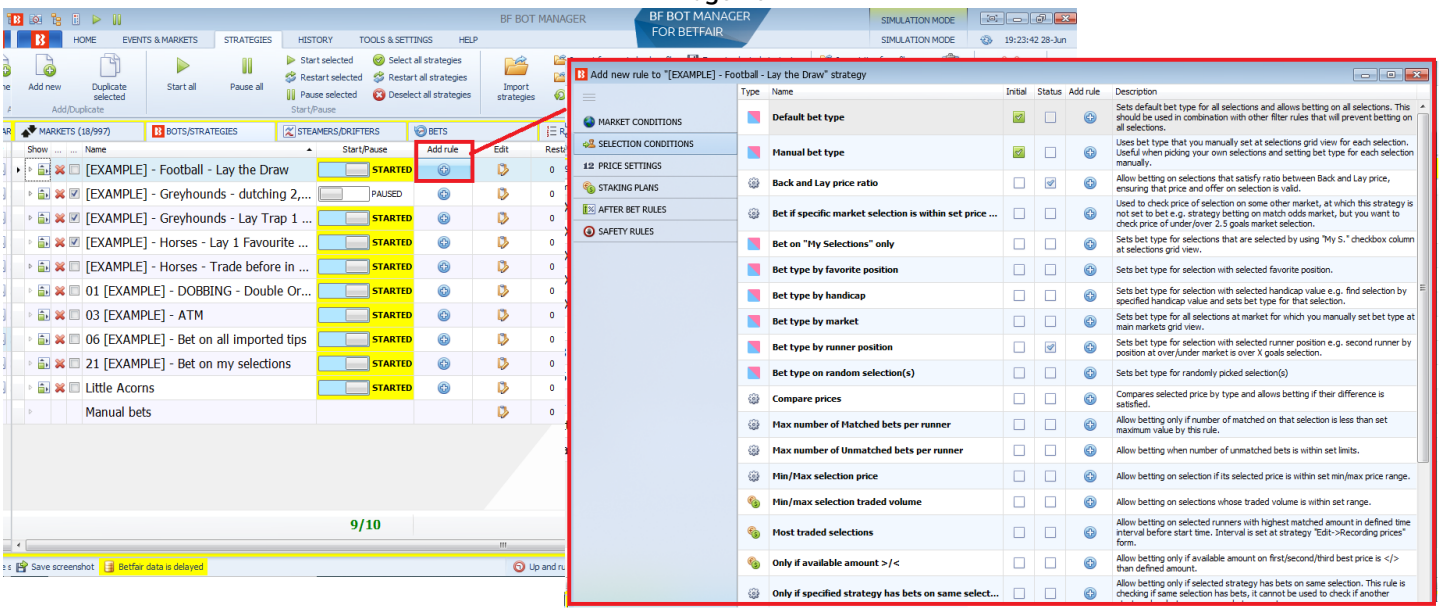


The **Start/Pause buttons** allow or prevent a strategy to attempt to place bets. They are different colors in Real and Simulation mode as an extra signal of which mode you are in. The software always starts in simulation mode unless that setting is changed in the Tools & Settings form.

Left clicking on the Start/Pause header will order the strategies into those that are started and those which are paused. If all are started or paused, it will rank them in order that they were created from oldest to newest or newest to oldest.

9.1.6 Add rule button

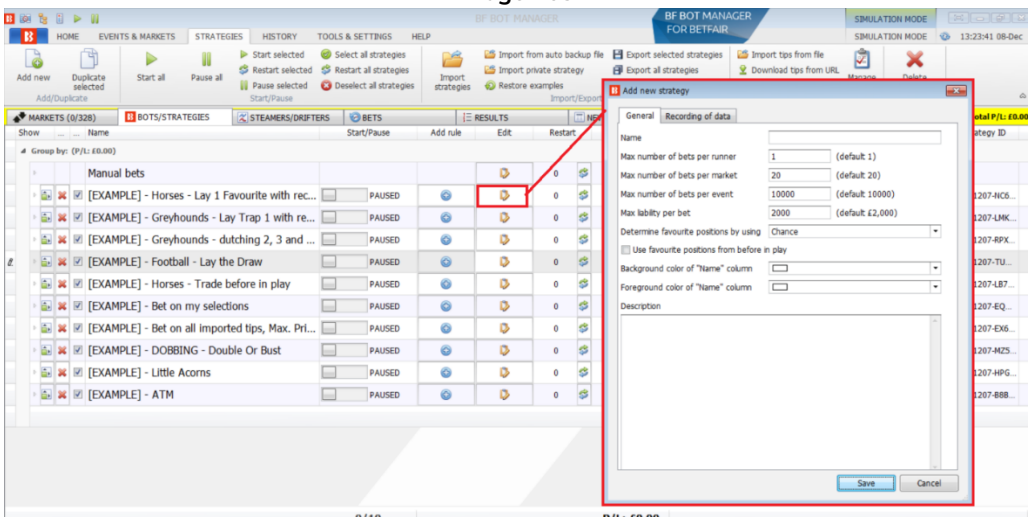
Image 462



The **Add rule** button brings up the Rules form which allows you to add various rules and conditions to your strategy.

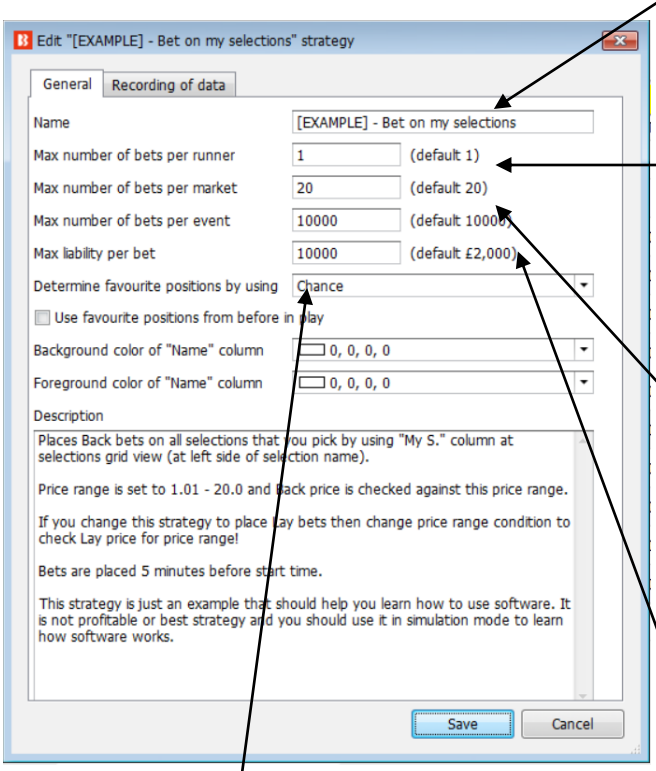
9.1.7 Edit button

Image 463



The **Edit** button allows you to edit the general rules and settings of the strategy. In most cases, you will not need to edit anything here besides the name, the Description and the background color if it makes your active strategies easier to see. You will set almost all of your rules with the "Add rule" button. For some advanced strategies, then settings here may need to be changed, too.

Image 464 Edit Strategy

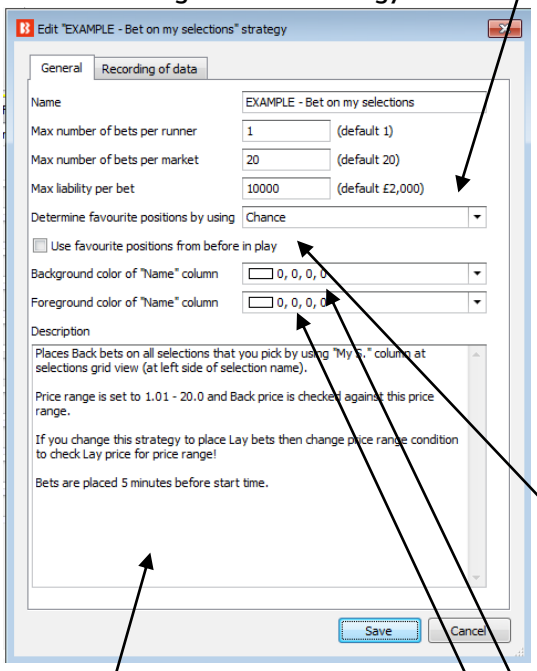


Notes
This is the **strategy name** that will appear on the Bots/Strategies screen.
This sets **the number of bets that can be placed on one market selection** by this strategy. Football Match Odds usually have 3 runners (Home, Away or Draw). Horseracing Win markets usually have a lot more runners (Horse 1, Horse 2, Horse 3, Horse 4, etc.) Tennis Match Odds usually have 2 runners (Player 1 or Player 2). So 'runner' means the betting selection available. (For example, the home team in football.)
This sets **the number of bets that can be placed in this market** by this strategy. The default setting of 20 means that if multiple runners are selected in one market, then bets can be placed on all of them. (For example if 2 or 3 horses were selected in the same race or if 3 or 4 correct scores were selected in a football correct score market.)
This sets **the maximum number of bets that can be placed on this event** by this strategy. This can be useful if your strategy bets on multiple markets associated with the same event. i.e. Football Match Odds, Over/Under markets, Half Time result, etc.

Max liability per bet sets the maximum amount risked on one bet. For the default setting of £2,000 that

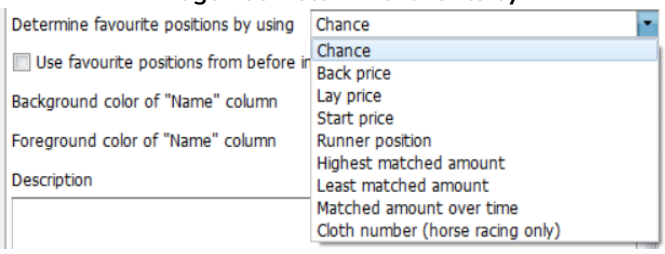
means the largest possible back bet would be £2,000 and the largest possible lay bet liability would be £2,000. (So if the odds were 3.00, then the maximum lay stake would be £1,000.) This strategy is set to £10,000. For level staking, the stake is controlled elsewhere, but as more complicated staking rules are added, it can be a good safety feature to set a maximum liability to match your risk level.

Image 465 Edit strategy



This sets **how the favorite is decided**. By using "chance" means the runner with the highest probability of winning is the favorite. The "chance" value is calculated by using the currently available back and lay price.
chance value = (1 / ((back price + lay price) / 2.0))
If one of the prices is not available then the chance is 0%.

Image 466 Determine favorite by



This setting has a number of advanced options in a drop down menu, but we usually do not need to change this. See below for more details on each option.

If unchecked, the bot will look at the currently available odds to determine the favorite. If checked, the bot will look at the **recorded prices with the best overround near the start of the event** to determine the favorite*. (By default, the best overround from 5 minutes before the event to the start time.) The default setting is unchecked.

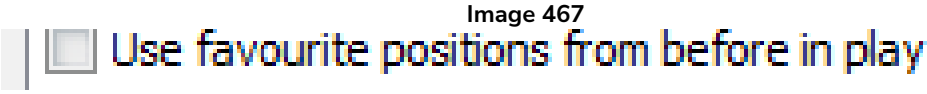
This **changes the background color of the name cell**, and is useful to make the names of your active strategies stand out.

This is a **text box** where you can add information and notes relating to the strategy. It can be useful to put key information about what the strategy does so you can quickly remember if returning to it later.

This **changes the text color of the name cell.** It is another way to make the names of your active strategies stand out and be recognized.

*Software Logic used for determining favorite for "Use favourite positions from before in play" checkbox.

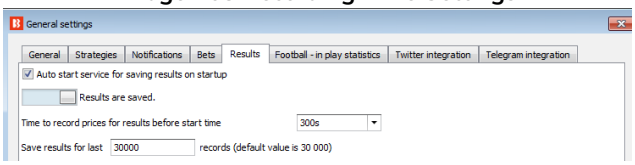
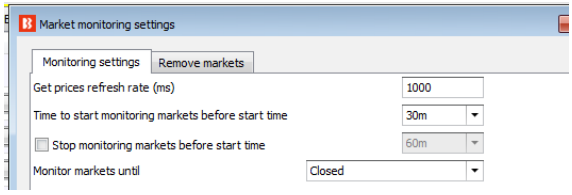
Image 467



Time	Check Box	Prices used to determine favorite positions
Before in play	Unchecked	Current prices
Before in play	Checked	The prices with the best overround recorded by software. Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools &

		settings->General settings-> Results" 300s is default setting) If no prices have been recorded yet, then it will use the current prices.
In play	Unchecked	Current prices
In play	checked	The prices with the best overround recorded by software. Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings-> Results" 300s is default setting)

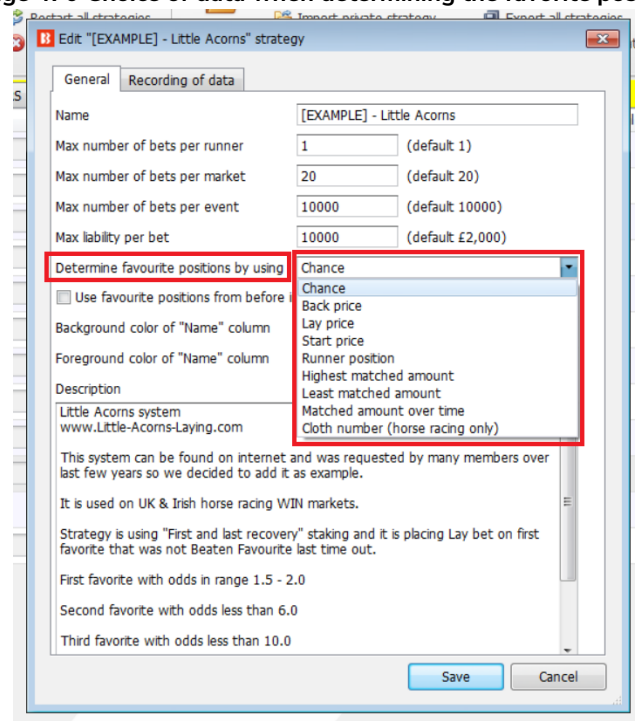
Notes about recording time settings for the prices used to decide favourite positions from before in play.

Default recording time: **From 5 minutes before event start** ("Tools & settings->General settings->Results" 300s is default setting)	**Image 468 Recording Time Settings** 
The "Tools & Settings->Monitoring settings" - "Time to start monitoring markets before start time" default setting of 30 minutes is **not** used to determine the favorite. This is for other rules such as the steamer/drifter rule.	**Image 469 Monitoring Settings** 

For most users betting on their own selections, there will be no need to change any of the settings here. Click "Cancel" to close the box without making any changes.

The way the favorite is determined can be changed in the main strategy edit form.

Image 470 Choice of data when determining the favorite position



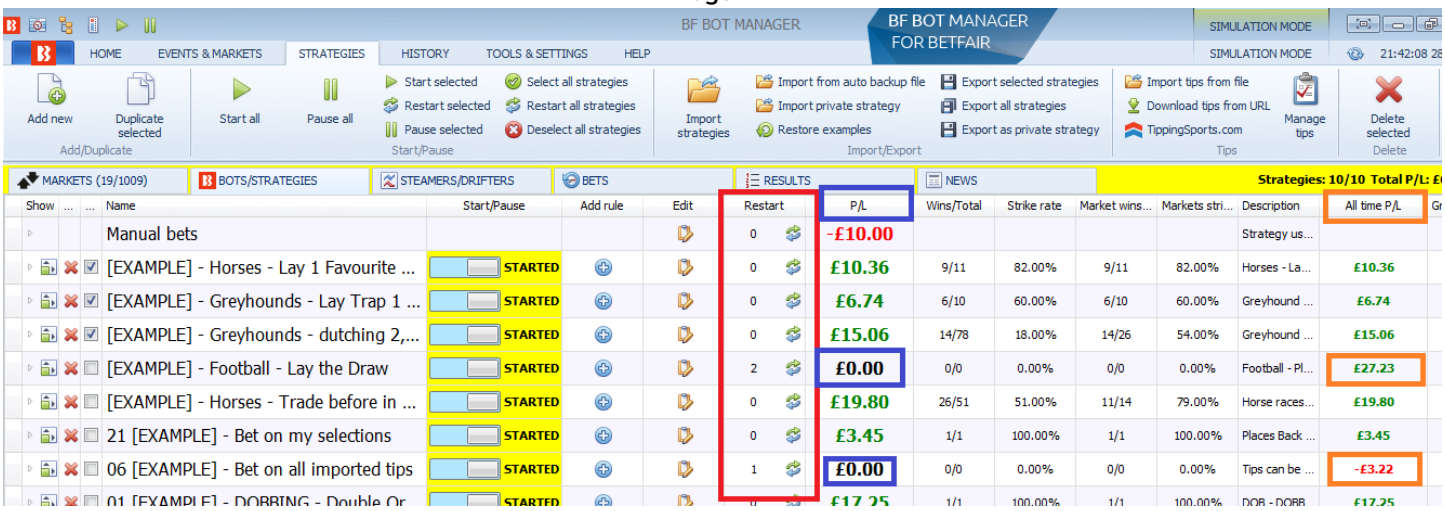
Favourite positions are determined by using the market data that the bot receives from the exchange. Favourite positions can be decided by using one of following parameters:
Chance value (default) - This is calculated by using the currently available runner's Back and Lay price. We recommend that you do not change this value unless you are certain that you fully understand how strategies and rules work or unless we instruct you to do so in order to make the strategy work as you want it to
Back price – The runner with the smallest Back price is first favourite and runner with highest Back price is outsider
Lay price – The runner with the smallest Lay price is first favourite and runner with highest Lay price is the outsider
Start price (BSP) – The runner with the smallest Betfair Start Price is first favourite and the runner with the highest Betfair Start Price is the outsider
Runner position – The first favourite will be the first runner in the list of selections received from the exchange. For example, the first runner in the match odds market is the home team, the second is the away team and the third is the draw. For greyhound markets, the first runner is trap 1, the second one is trap 2 etc. For Under/over markets, the first runner is Under X goals selection and the second runner is Over X goals selection.
Highest matched amount – The first favourite is the runner with the highest amount matched and the outsider is the selection with the lowest amount matched
Lowest matched amount – The first favourite is the runner with the lowest amount matched and the outsider is the selection with the highest amount matched
Matched amount over time – The first favorite is the runner with the highest amount matched over time and the outsider is the selection with the lowest amount matched over time. The Matched amount over time uses the "Recording of data" settings to compare matched amounts over that time period. If the software is set to record prices from 5 minutes before the start time and to stop recording prices at 1 minute before the start time, then the strategy will record the minimum and maximum traded volume for each runner. This allows it to calculate the difference between the min and max recorded value for traded amounts and then to sort the runners by that difference. The selection with the highest difference is the one that was traded the most during that time interval that the "Recording of data" is set to. It is like ranking the selections based on which has had the most betting activity on them in the time period selected for monitoring.
For example, if the 4th favorite by odds had £4,000 traded on it in the 5 minutes before the start, but the 1st favorite by odds only had £100 traded on it, then the 4th favorite by odds would be the 1st favorite by Matched amount over time.
Cloth number (Horse Racing only) – The first favourite is the runner with cloth number 1 and the outsider is the runner with the highest cloth number.

The way favourite positions are determined will have an effect on all the conditions in your strategy that use favourite positions. It is recommended to leave the "Determine favorite positions by using" setting on the "chance" option as this is the most commonly used setting. Only change this if you know exactly what you are doing and will test it thoroughly in simulation mode.

When betting during in play you might want to **use the favourite positions from before in play** instead of determining those by using in play prices. In that case, you would tick option "Use favourite positions from before in play". If you are not betting during in play and placing bets only before in play then make sure you do not tick this option, so that strategy can determine favourite positions at the time of bet before in play.

9.1.8 Restart counter and Restart button

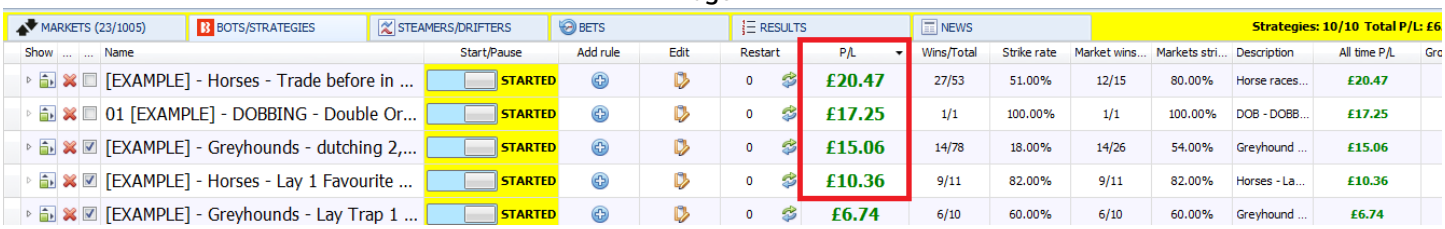
Image 471



The **Restart** button will reset the strategy. When a strategy is restarted, all its bet history is removed and its P/L column figure (blue) is reset to zero. If there is a betting bank in the staking plans area, it will also be reset. But even if the P/L column is reset to zero, the All time P/L column (orange) is not reset by pressing the Restart button. The All time P/L column can be manually edited and changed to zero or adjusted to a figure you want. The P/L column cannot be edited. It can only be reset with the Restart strategy function. The restart counter tells you how many times a strategy has been restarted. The restart counter also cannot be edited.

9.1.9 P/L

Image 472

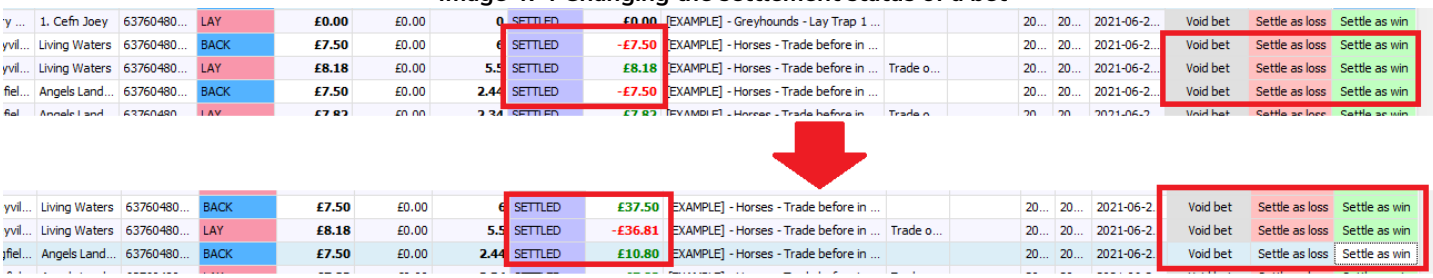


The P/L column shows the overall profit and loss of this strategy since it was started (or since last restarted). This column can be ranked from highest to lowest or lowest to highest by left-clicking on the column header. The P/L is updated as each bet is settled. If the P/L figure does not match your actual Betfair account results, then check if you have the "Take commission from overall market profit" option checked in the Tools & Settings > General form. If the P/L is still incorrect, check if the bets were settled correctly. On very, very rare occasions, Betfair incorrectly settle a market which they later correct. If Betfair have already paid out winnings, they will remove those mistaken winnings from accounts and give them to the rightful winners. In the Bot Software case, the first result given out by the Betfair API is used to settle the bets. If an incorrect settlement was sent out, then the only way to correct it is by manually changing the result of the settled bet in the bets tab. The total P/L is shown at the bottom of the column.

Image 473 Adding bet settlement status adjustment columns

First, in the Bets screen, you right-click on any column header and click on “Column chooser”. Then add a “Settle as loss” or “Settle as win” or “Void bet” column and left-click on the change you want to make.

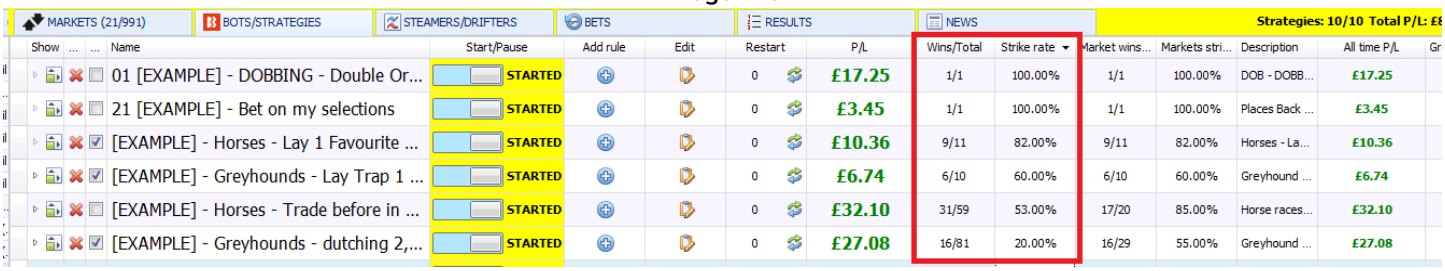
Image 474 Changing the settlement status of a bet



You can left-click on the Void bet, Settle as loss and Settle as win buttons to change the settlement status of a bet. This can be useful when there is an error with Betfair market settlement. **Please note that these changes can only be made with bets in the current software session. Older bets cannot be re-settled.** Re-settled bets will automatically adjust the P/L columns of the strategies that had bets on them.

9.1.10 Wins/Total and Strike rate

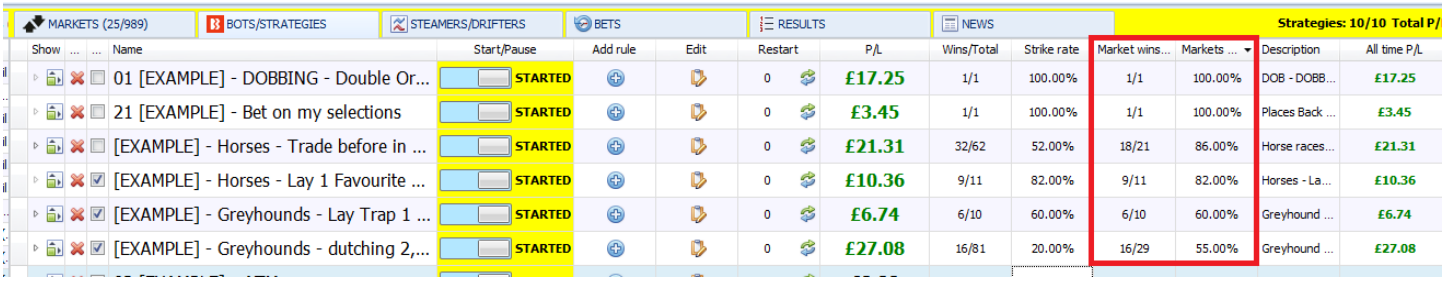
Image 475



The **Wins/Total** column tells you how many bets were placed and how many of those were winners.
The **Strike rate** tells us the Wins/Total rate as a percentage. The Strike rate column can be sorted from highest to lowest or lowest to highest by left-clicking on the column header.

9.1.11 Market wins and Markets strike rate

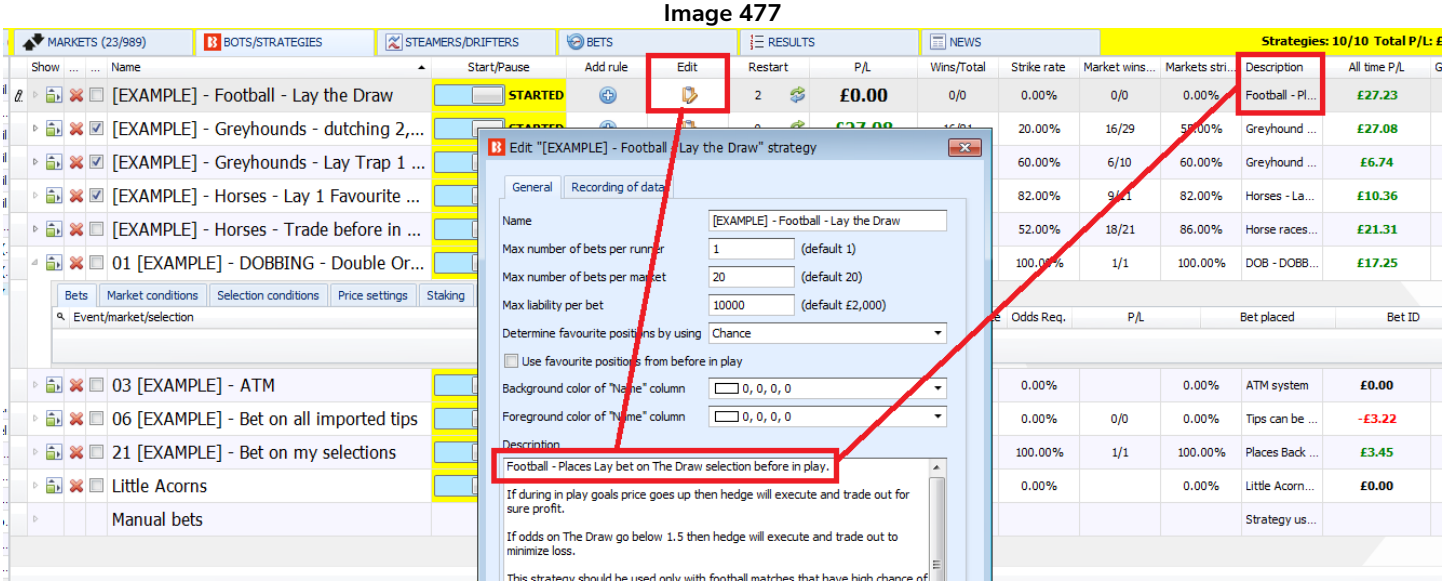
Image 476



The **Market wins** column tells you how many markets were bet on and how many of those made profit. The **Markets strike rate** tells us the Market wins rate as a percentage. The Markets strike rate column can be sorted from highest to lowest or lowest to highest by left-clicking on the column header.

9.1.12 Description

Image 477



The **description** column contains the first words of the description that was written in the general strategy edit form.

9.1.13 All time P/L

This column displays the total P/L of that strategy including all restarts. When a strategy is restarted, its P/L is reset to zero, but the All-time P/L column is not reset. This can only be edited and changed to zero manually. The total P/L is shown at the bottom of the column.

9.1.14 Group by

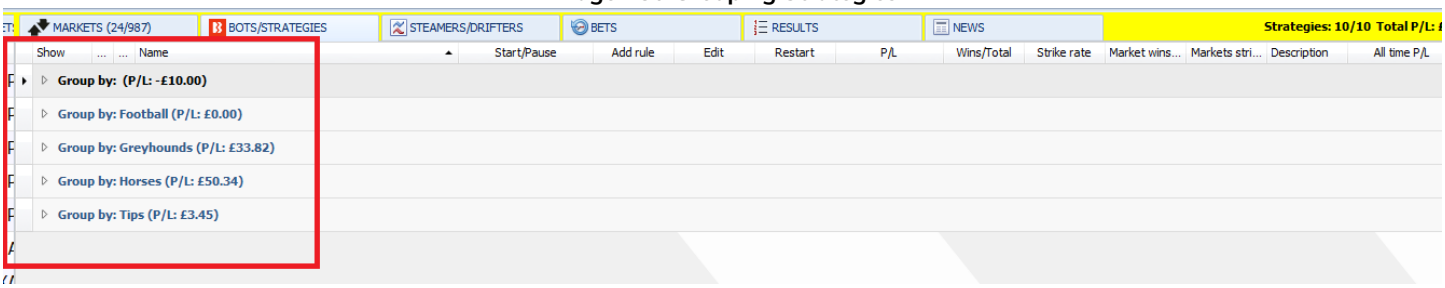
Image 478

The "**Group by**" column is another very useful tool in managing larger numbers of strategies. You can left-click on each box and enter any text. If you enter the same text in different boxes, those strategies will be grouped together.

Image 479

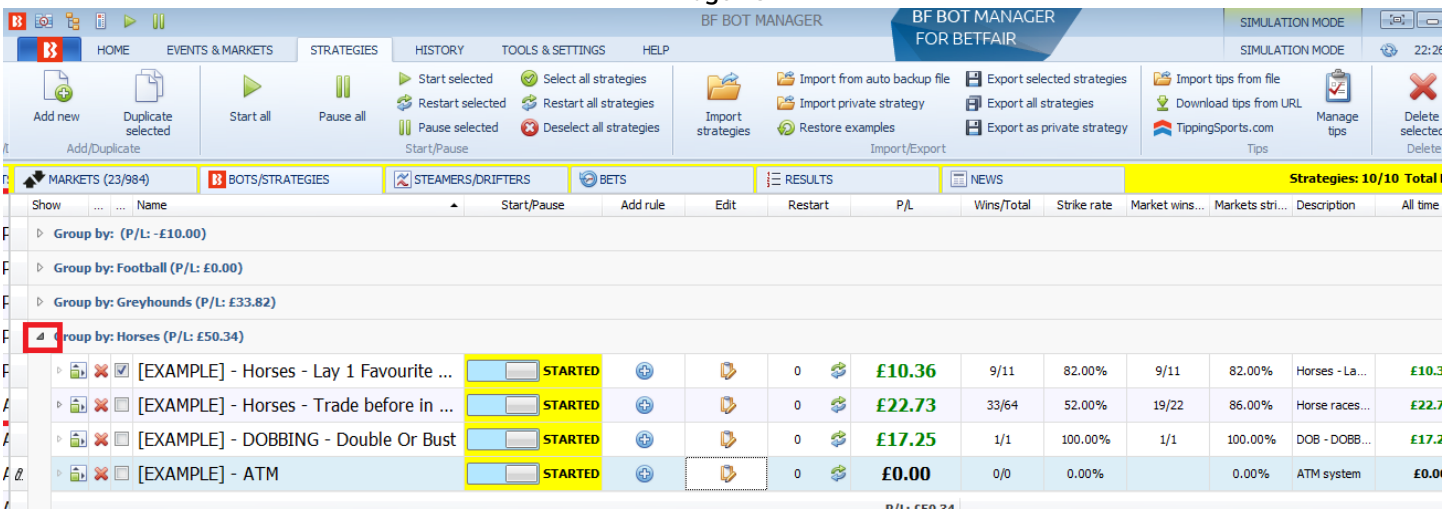
Right-click on the "Group by" column header and select "Group By This Column".

Image 480 Grouping Strategies



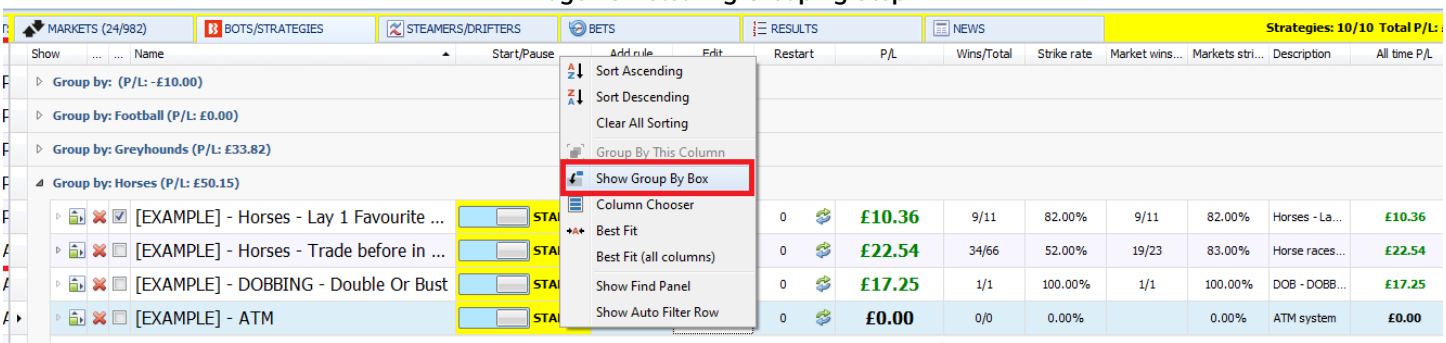
The strategies will then be grouped by the text written in their "Group By" column. Each strategy in the same group will have their P/L amounts added together to give an overall P/L for that group. This can be very useful when using a set of strategies together.

Image 481



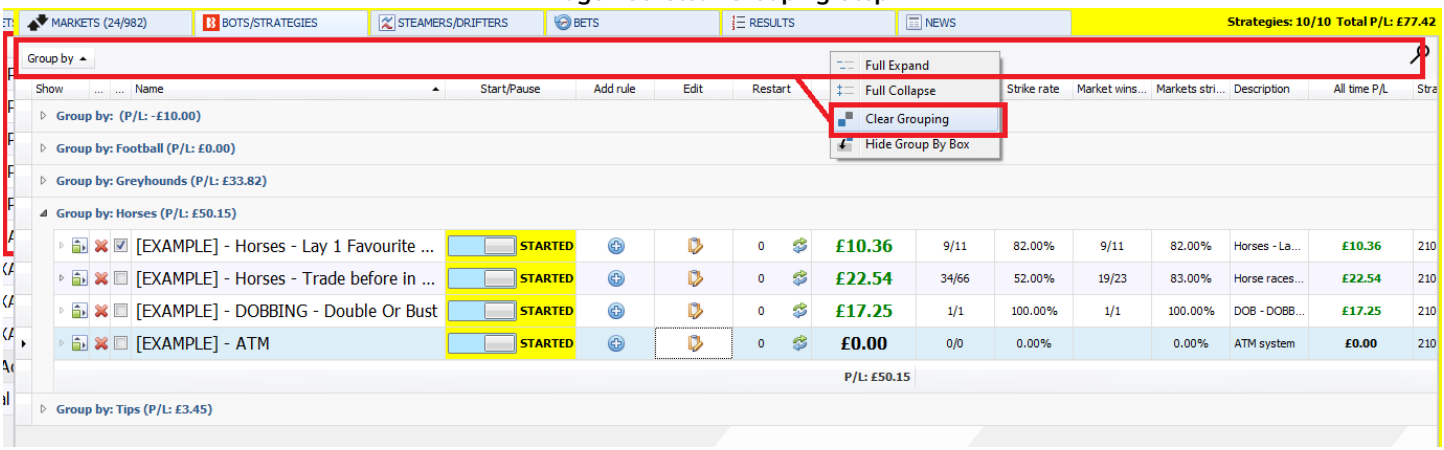
Left-clicking on the arrow on the left of a group name will open that group up to see the strategies inside this group. You can then edit them, add rules, duplicate and delete as usual. Note that you cannot edit the "Group by" column in this view. You would need to ungroup them to edit the "Group by" column again.

Image 482 Clearing Grouping Step 1



To clear the grouping, first right click on any column header and click on "Show Group By Box".

Image 483 Clear Grouping Step 2



Then right-click on the Group By Box which is the grey bar that appears above the column headers. Then click on "Clear Grouping". This will ungroup the strategies and you can again edit the "Group by" column on the right if needed.

Grouping strategies is a great way to manage multiple strategies and especially if you want to know the

combined P/L of a group of strategies without having to add them up all separately each time. You can also sort and rank just those grouped strategies by P/L, hit rate and so on.

Image 484

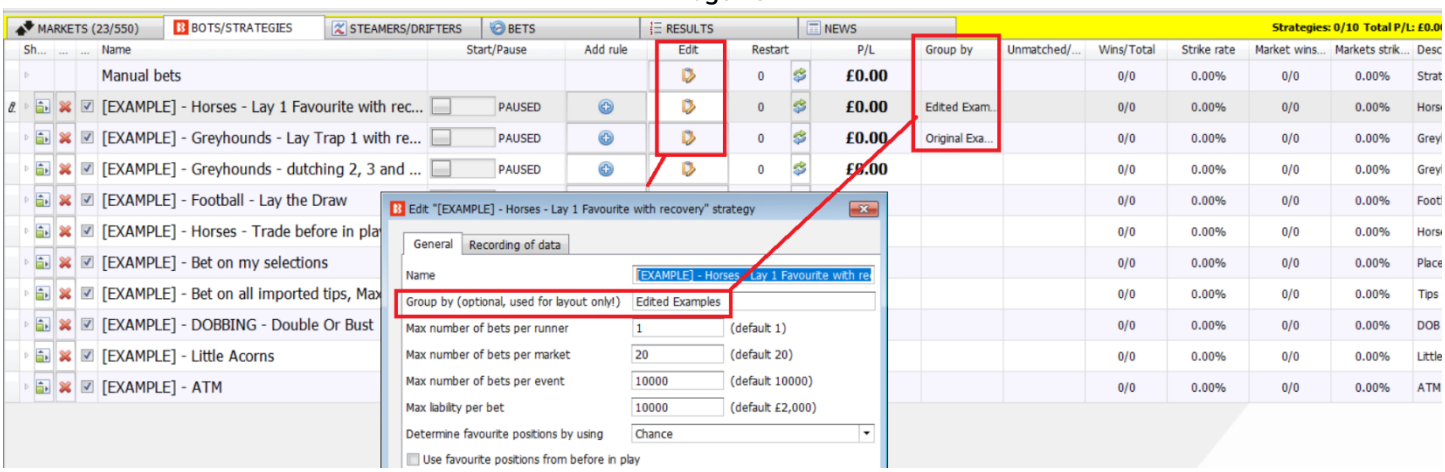
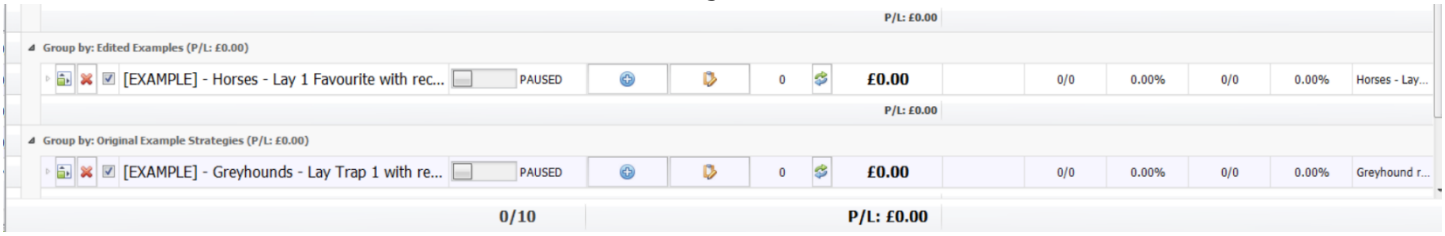


Image 485



You can easily edit the name of the group that a strategy is in by using the “Edit” button for the strategy. This function only affects the ordering and layout of your strategies. It has no effect on the actual function of the strategy in term of betting.

9.1.15 Strategy ID

The **Strategy ID** is how the software knows which strategy is which. Even if you change the “Name” column entry, the software will know this strategy and which bets are associated with it. On a technical note, if you change the name of a strategy, it does not change the Strategy ID. If you restart a strategy, it does not change the Strategy ID. But if you duplicate a strategy, the new strategy will get a new Strategy ID. This can be important if you are importing or exporting strategies to other PCs or sharing and re-sharing with other users. If you are exporting/importing edited strategies that you have renamed, but not duplicated, then they will overwrite the old versions of that strategy in the software incidence it is imported to. This is because the software looks at the Strategy ID when querying if a strategy is unique or not. If another strategy exists with the same Strategy ID, even if it has a different name, it will be considered the same strategy and it will ask if you want to overwrite the strategy. So when making changes or upgrades that you intend to share or export to another software incidence without overwriting old versions of that strategy, then it is better to duplicate it and then make the edits you want to avoid any possible Strategy ID issues.

9.2 Bots/Strategies screen Column header options

You can **view the options** available for a column by right clicking on its header. You can **add columns** with the column chooser function and you can **remove columns** by left-hold-clicking and dragging a column header away from the column header bar until a black cross appears, then let go and the column will be removed. You can **re-add a column** with the Column chooser option. You can also **re-order columns** by left-hold-click and dragging a column header along to a different position on the header bar. You can **re-size columns** as well, but in the beginning it is not possible to resize until you first remove a column to create space for re-sizing other columns.

9.2.1 Sort ascending / Sort descending

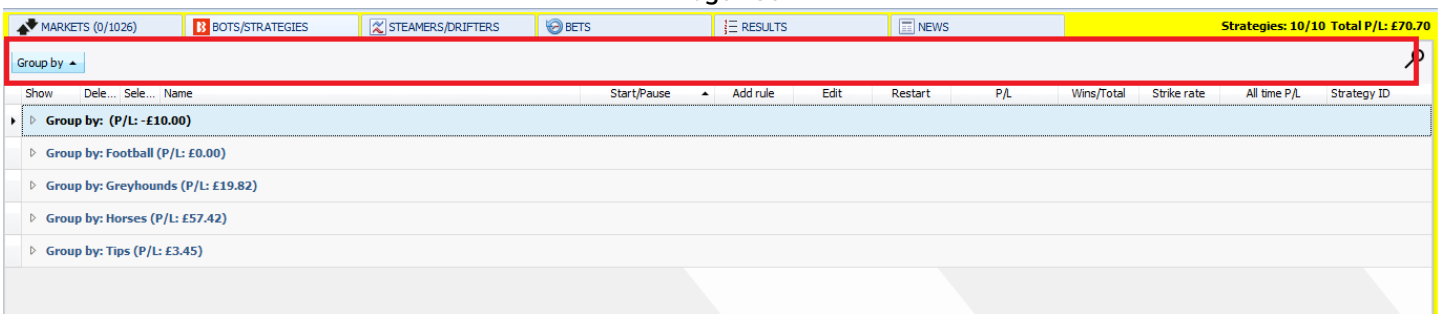
Some of the columns can be sorted by left-clicking their column header or right-clicking the column header and selecting Sort ascending (A-Z 1-10) or Sort descending (Z-A 10-1)

9.2.2 Group by this column

For the strategies screen, only the "Group by" column can be grouped.

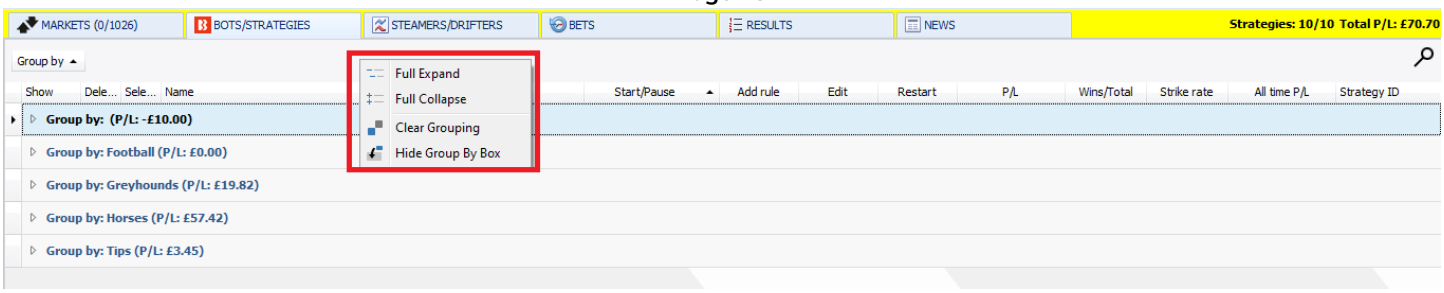
9.2.3 Show group by box

Image 486



The "**Show group by box**" option shows a field above the column headers. Clicking on the "Group by" button will sort the groups alphanumerically. Right-clicking on the Group by Box reveals more options.

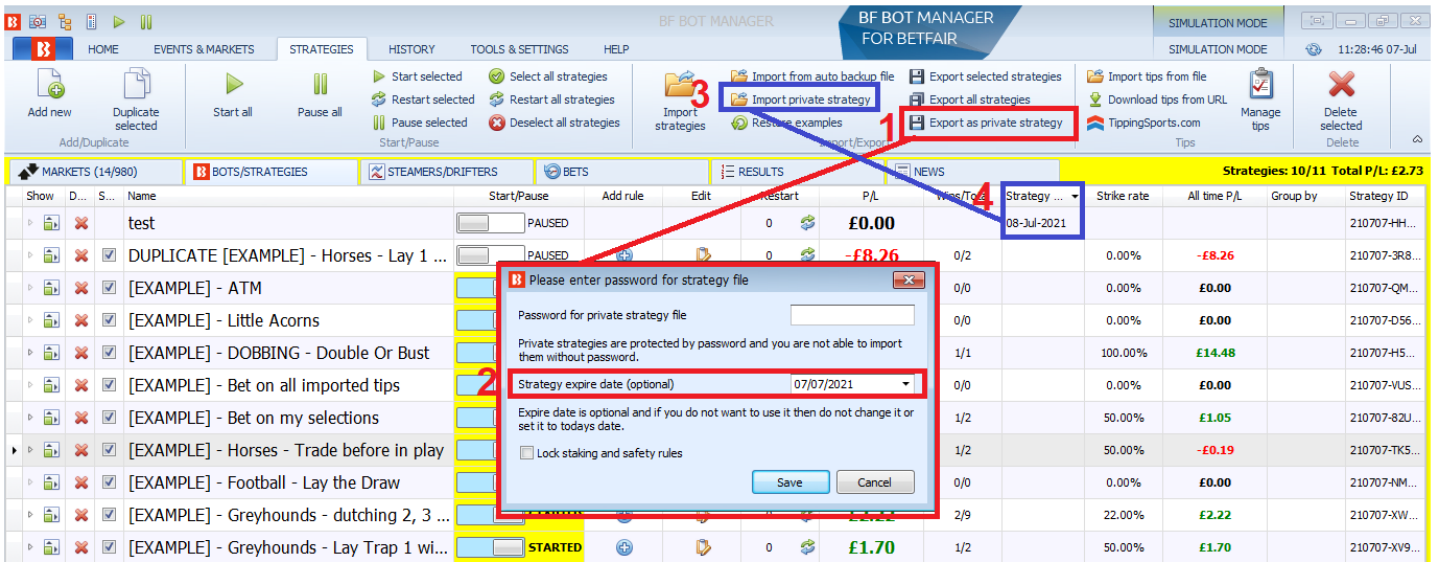
Image 487



"**Full expand**" will open up all the groups so that you can see all the strategies.
"**Full collapse**" will close all the groups so that you can only see the group name and group P/L.
You can left-click on each group name to expand it and view the strategies in that group.

9.2.4 Bots/Strategies screen Column chooser option - Strategy expire date

Image 488

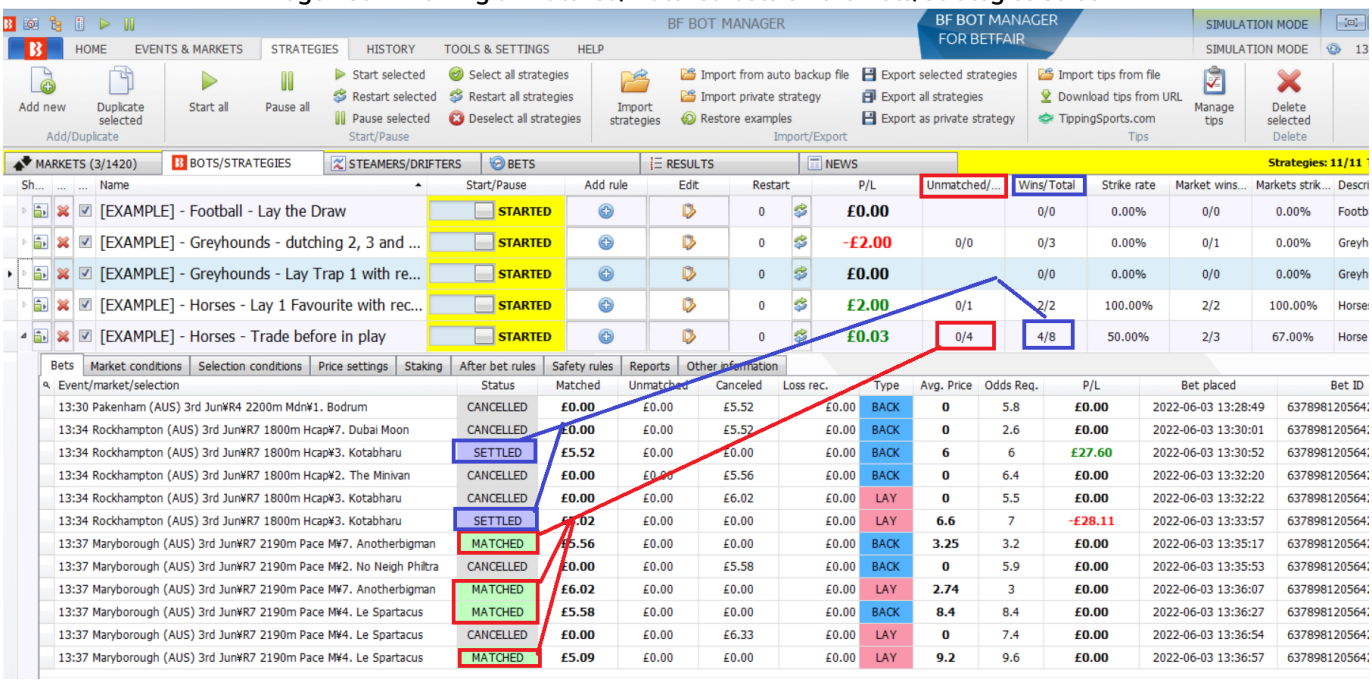


It is possible to add a column to show the "**Strategy expire date**" if it has one set.
An expiry date cannot be set or edited from this column, it only displays one if set.

Strategy expiry dates can only be added when exported as private strategies (1).
Then the expiry date can be selected in the form that appears (2).
The strategy expiry date will only appear (4) when imported as a private strategy (3).

9.2.5 Bots/Strategies screen Column chooser option - Unmatched/Matched

Image 489 - Viewing unmatched/matched bets on the Bots/Strategies screen



Right-click any column header on the Bots/Strategies screen and select "Column chooser". Then double-click "Unmatched/Matched". This will add a new column to the Bots/Strategies screen on the right. You can left-click and hold to drag that column to any position. This column shows you at-a-glance which strategies have active bets, and how many of those are unmatched or matched. After a bet is settled, it is no longer counted in the unmatched/matched column and is moved to the Wins/Total column. In the image above, you can see that the 0/4 in the unmatched/matched column means there are 0 unmatched bets and 4 matched bets that have not yet been settled. In the Wins/Total column the 4/8 in means this strategy placed 8 bets that have been settled and 4 of those were winning bets. If all 4 of the matched bets lose, then the two columns will then change from 0/4 4/8 to show 0/0 4/12. This column is very useful for seeing immediately which strategies have active matched and unmatched bets.

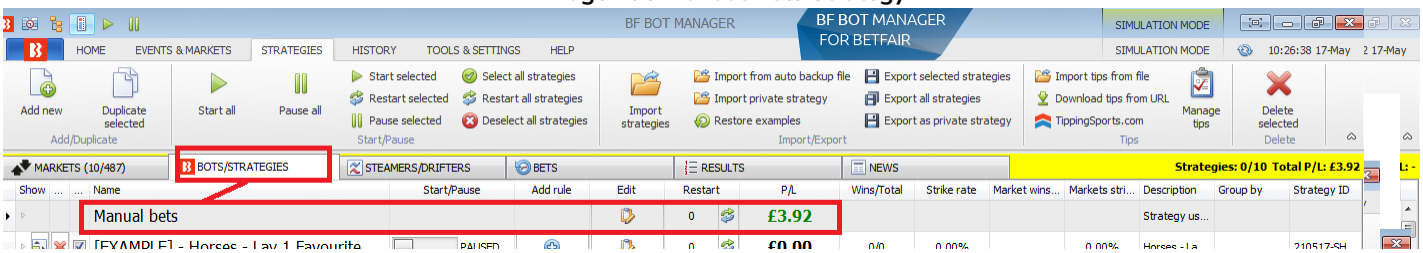
9.2.6 Example strategies

A good way to understand the software is to see how some example strategies have been made and why each rule has been selected. Then the more advanced settings will be easier. Each of these example strategies comes with the software so you can see how different strategy rules look.

IMPORTANT: The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. **They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings**. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works and help you understand how to create your own strategies.

9.2.7 Manual bets strategy

Image 490 Manual Bets Strategy



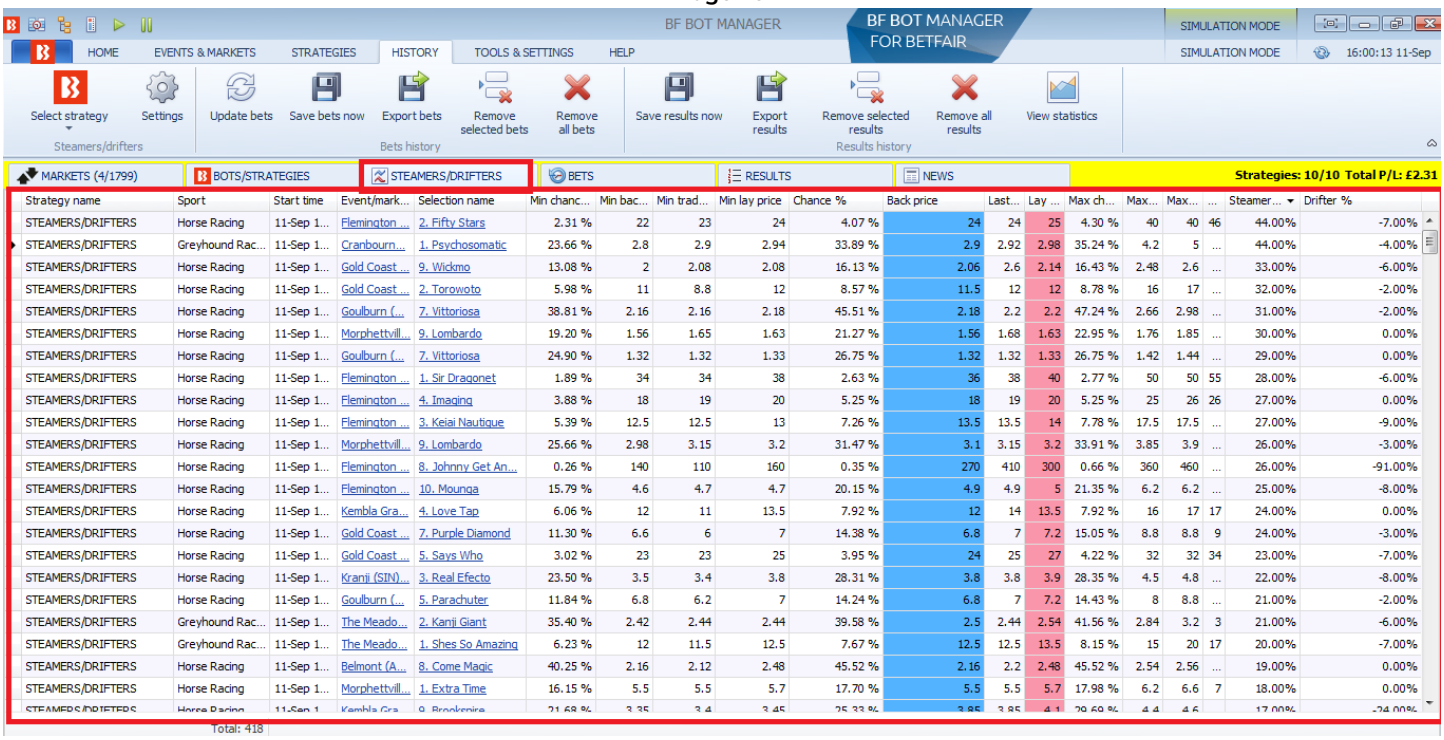
The total Profit/Loss for manual bets is shown on the Strategies Tab as the **Manual Bets** strategy.

Manual bets are those when back or lay bets are placed via the market selections grid view or the ladder view.

10 Steamers/Drifters screen

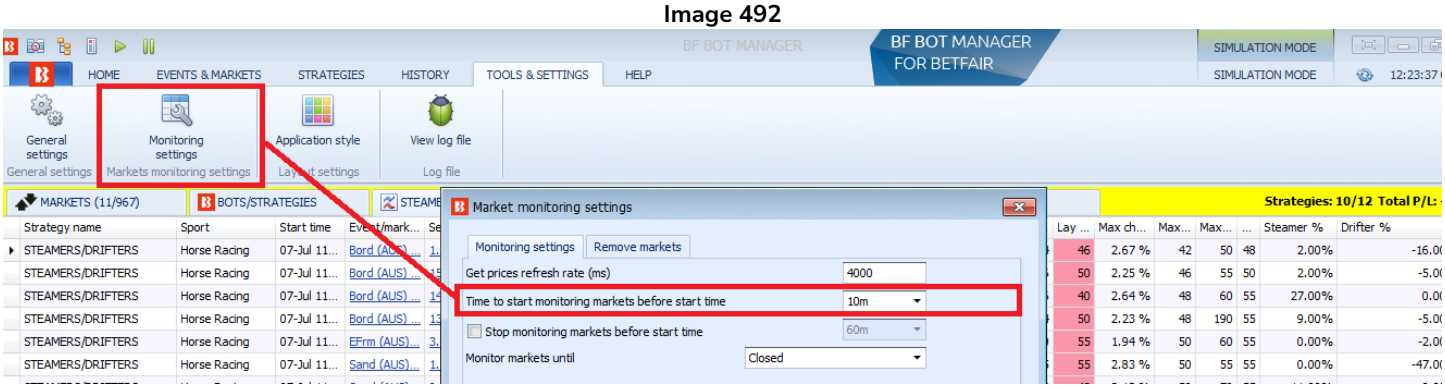
10.1 Main View

Image 491



The **Steamers/Drifters screen** allows you to see and sort market selections by a variety of factors. The most common factor being by which selections are considered "steamers" (their odds are going lower) or "drifters" (their odds are going higher). Clicking on any column header will rank selections by that data, such as minimum chance, minimum traded price, maximum recorded back price, steamer %, drifter % and more.

Image 492



This data is collected during the period set by the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings -> "Time to start monitoring markets before start time" and "Monitor markets until". **The default monitoring time is 30 minutes before the event start time.** You can change this to your required setting. Steamers/Drifters prices are only recorded if they meet the default Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 15%. An example of how steamers/drifters data can be used for a strategy can be seen in the [Example strategy – Horses – Trade before in-play](#).

10.1.1 Strategy name

This clarifies that this data applies to strategies that use the selection condition “Price change - Steamers/drifters” rule.

10.1.2 Sport

This states which sport the selection is on.

10.1.3 Start time

This states the start time of the selection’s event.

10.1.4 Event/market name

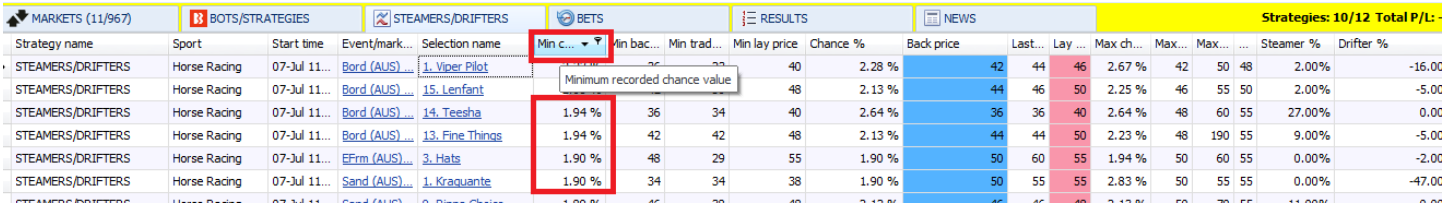
This states what event and market the selection is in. Left-clicking on the Event/Market name will take you to the Markets screen and automatically open up the ladder view for that selection.

10.1.5 Selection name

This states the name of the selection. Left-clicking on the selection name will take you to the Markets screen and automatically open up the ladder view and the selections grid view for that selection.

10.1.6 Min chance %

Image 493



Strategy name	Sport	Start time	Event/mark...	Selection name	Min c...	Min bac...	Min trad...	Min lay price	Chance %	Back price	Last...	Lay ...	Max ch...	Max...	Max...	...	Steamer %	Drifter %
STEAMERS/DRIFTERS	Horse Racing	07-Jul 11...	Bord (AUS) ...	1. Viper Pilot				40	2.28 %	42	44	46	2.67 %	42	50	48	2.00%	-16.00
STEAMERS/DRIFTERS	Horse Racing	07-Jul 11...	Bord (AUS) ...	15. Lenfant				48	2.13 %	44	46	50	2.25 %	46	55	50	2.00%	-5.00
STEAMERS/DRIFTERS	Horse Racing	07-Jul 11...	Bord (AUS) ...	14. Teesha	1.94 %	36	34	40	2.64 %	36	36	40	2.64 %	48	60	55	27.00%	0.00
STEAMERS/DRIFTERS	Horse Racing	07-Jul 11...	Bord (AUS) ...	13. Fine Things	1.94 %	42	42	48	2.13 %	44	44	50	2.23 %	48	190	55	9.00%	-5.00
STEAMERS/DRIFTERS	Horse Racing	07-Jul 11...	EFrm (AUS)...	3. Hats	1.90 %	48	29	55	1.90 %	50	60	55	1.94 %	50	60	55	0.00%	-2.00
STEAMERS/DRIFTERS	Horse Racing	07-Jul 11...	Sand (AUS)...	1. Kraquante	1.90 %	34	34	38	1.90 %	50	55	55	2.83 %	50	55	55	0.00%	-47.00

The “Min chance %” is the minimum recorded odds displayed as a probability of winning percentage.

10.1.7 Min back price

This shows the lowest recorded back price for the market monitoring period.
(The monitoring period is set by the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings -> “Time to start monitoring markets before start time” and “Monitor markets until”. The default monitoring time is 30 minutes before the event start time. Steamers/Drifters prices are only recorded if they meet the default Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 15%.)

.

10.1.8 Min trade price

This shows the lowest recorded traded price for the market monitoring period.

10.1.9 Min lay price

This shows the lowest recorded lay price for the market monitoring period.

10.1.10 Chance %

This shows the current back price for the selection displayed as a probability of winning percentage.

10.1.11 Back price

This shows the current back price for the selection.

10.1.12 Lay price

This shows the current lay price for the selection.

10.1.13 Max chance %

The “Max chance %” is the maximum recorded odds displayed as a probability of winning percentage.

10.1.14 Max back price

This shows the highest recorded back price for the market monitoring period.
(The monitoring period is set by the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings -> “Time to start monitoring markets before start time” and “Monitor markets until”. The default monitoring time is 30 minutes before the event start time. Steamers/Drifters prices are only recorded if they meet the default Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 15%.)

10.1.15 Max trade price

This shows the highest traded price for the market monitoring period.

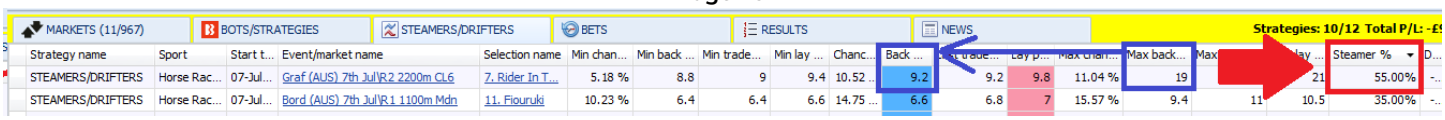
10.1.16 Max lay price

This shows the highest recorded lay price for the market monitoring period.

10.1.17 Steamer %

This shows the percentage that a selection’s back price has come down from its maximum recorded back price during the monitoring period to its current price.

Image 494



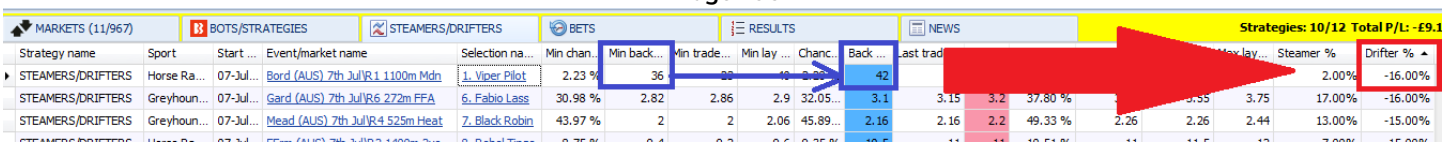
If the monitoring period is 30 minutes before event start and the price decreased from 10 to 7.5, then it will show as 25% in the Steamer column. In the above image, the price had come down from a maximum recorded back price of 19 to the current back price of 9.2 which is a 55% decrease. The positive number indicates an increase in the probability of the selection winning.

This also means that if the price was 9.2 at the 30 minutes before start mark, then went up to 19 at 15 minutes before event start, then dropped down to 9.2 again at 10 minutes before event start, it would still be classed as a 55% steamer since its maximum recorded price was 19 and the current price is 9.2.

10.1.18 Drifter %

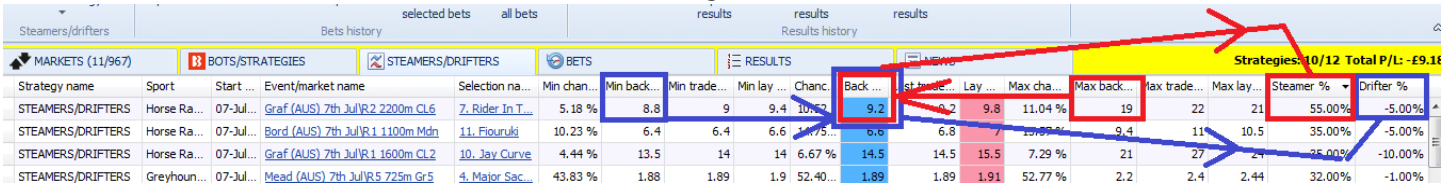
This shows the percentage that a selection’s back price has gone up from its minimum recorded price during the monitoring period to its current back price.

Image 495



In the above image the current back price of 42 is higher than the minimum recorded back price of 36 and so the drifter column shows -16%. The negative number indicates a decrease in the probability of the selection winning.

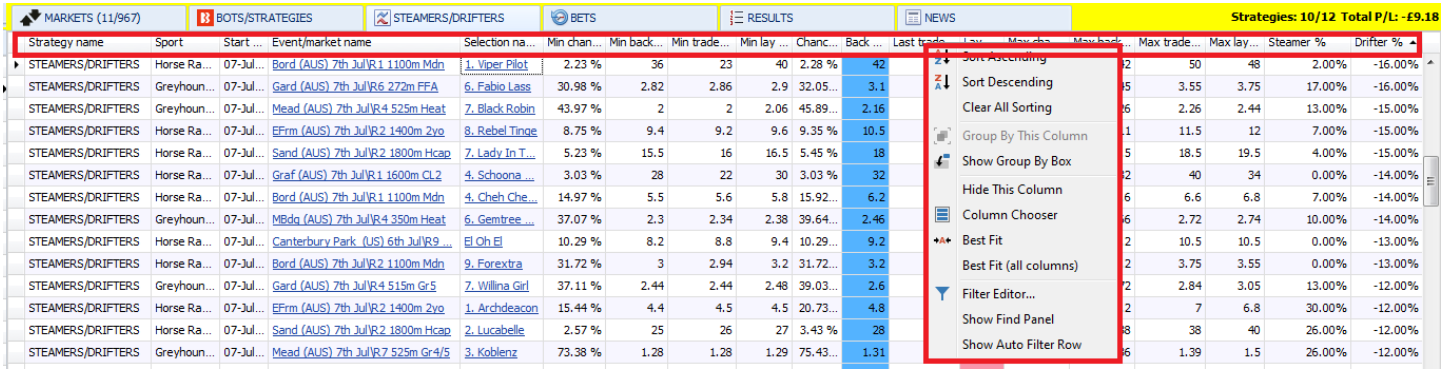
Image 496



A selection can be both a steamer and a drifter. If the price was 19 at the 30 minute before start mark, and then went down to 8.8 at the 20 minute before mark, and then went up to 9.2 at 15 minutes before event start, then it would also be classed as a drifter (blue) since its lowest recorded price of 8.8 was 5% lower than its current back price of 9.2. This is displayed as a -5% in the Drifter column. So a selection can have both steamer (red box) and drifter (blue box) percentages in its row.

10.2 Steamers/Drifters screen Column header options

Image 497



Right-clicking on any column header will bring up the column header options.

10.2.1 Sort ascending / Sort descending

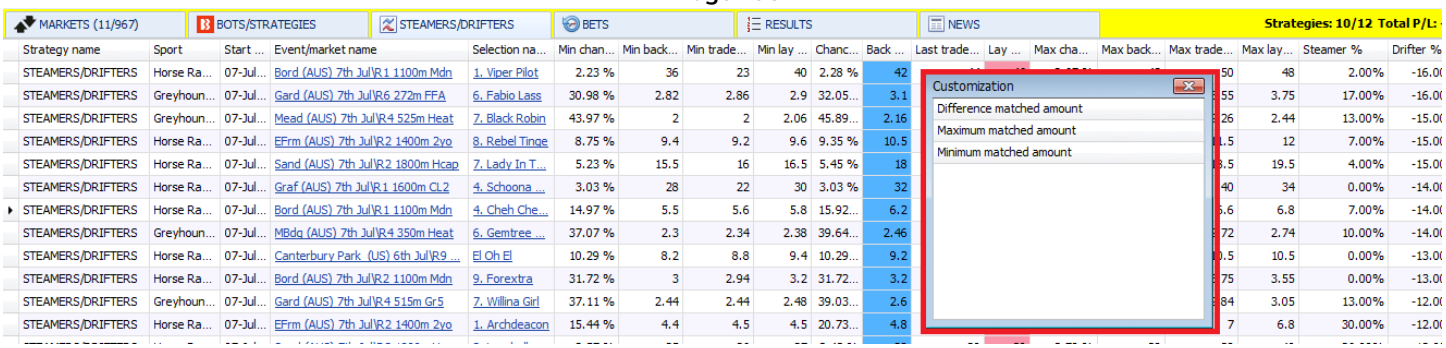
This will rank the selections by this column's data from high to low or low to high.

10.2.2 Hide this column

This will remove the column from view. It can be useful when freeing up space to view the columns you want to see better. Hidden columns can be re-added by selecting the "Column chooser" option and double-clicking on the column to be re-added.

10.2.3 Steamers/Drifters screen Column chooser options

Image 498



The Steamers/Drifters screen only has 3 extra columns that can be added from the “Column chooser” option.

10.2.4 Maximum matched amount

This shows the maximum recorded matched amount for the market monitoring period.
(The monitoring period is set by the Tools & Settings -> Monitoring settings -> “Time to start monitoring markets before start time” and “Monitor markets until”. The default monitoring time is 30 minutes before the event start time.)

10.2.5 Minimum matched amount

This shows the minimum recorded matched amount for the market monitoring period.

10.2.6 Difference matched amount

This shows the difference between the maximum and minimum recorded matched amounts for the market monitoring period. So if there was 1,000 matched at 30 minutes before event start and 20,000 matched at 10 minutes before the event start, then the difference will be 19,000. This is a good way to see which selections have seen a lot of late bets coming in and to see where the money is going during the set monitoring period.

10.2.7 Best fit

This adjusts the width of this column to make its content more visible.

10.2.8 Best fit (all columns)

This adjusts the width of all columns to make all visible content as balanced as possible.

10.2.9 Filter editor

This enables a column to filtered down to specified text.

10.2.10 Show find panel

This allows all columns to be filtered down to and highlight specific text.

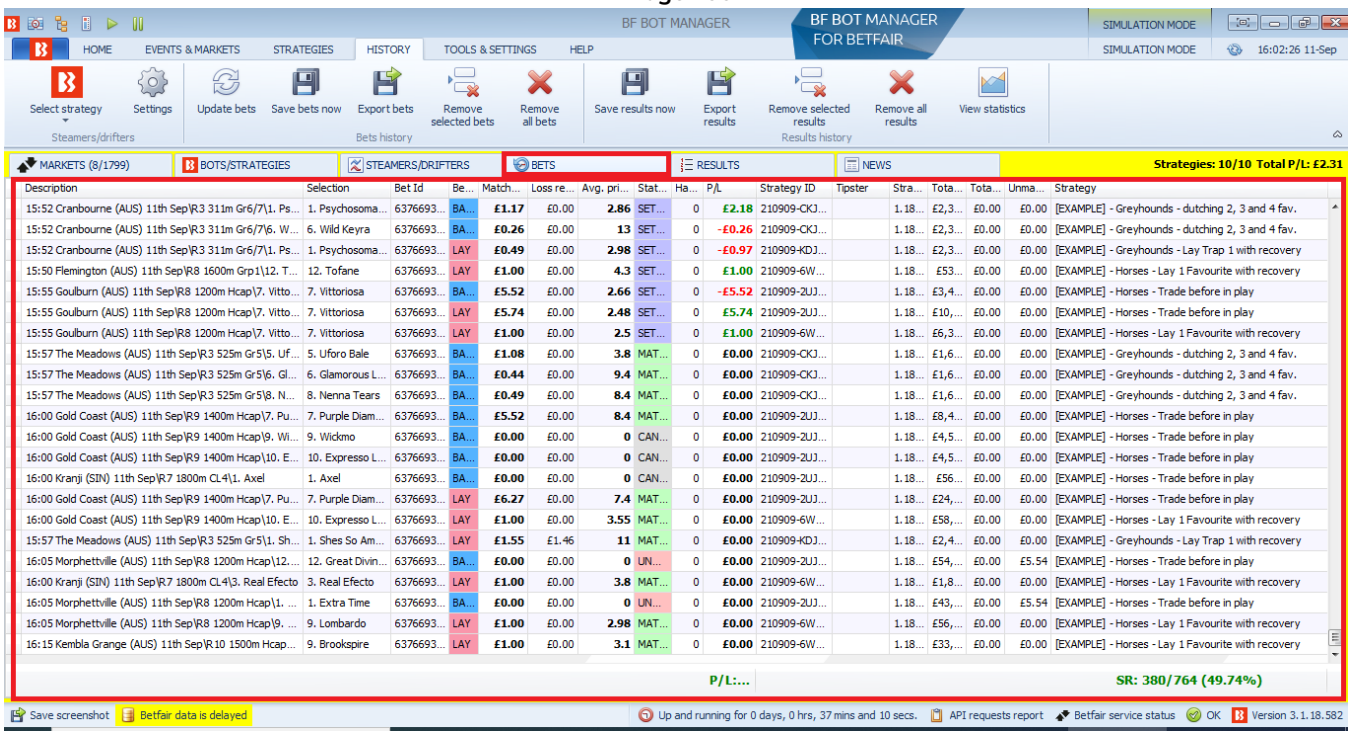
10.2.11 Show auto filter row

This allows an extra row to be added under the column header row which allows certain logical filter functions to be specified.

11 Bets screen

11.1 Main View

Image 499



The bets screen allows you to see all the bets placed by all strategies in the software. This includes matched, unmatched, settled, voided, lapsed and cancelled bets.

11.1.1 Description

Image 500

The description tells you the event start time, event name, market type and selection name in one column.

11.1.2 Selection

This tells you the **selection name** as it appears on the Betfair website.

11.1.3 Bet Id

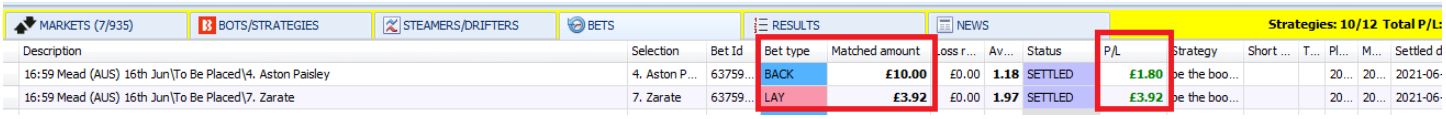
This is the **Bet ID** assigned to the bet by Betfair. The same bet ID will appear in your Betfair account history. You can find the same bet ID in the market selections grid for that selection and also in the strategies screen in that bet's strategy. You can find the same bet ID on the manage tips page if it was connected to an imported tip.

11.1.4 Bet type

This tells you if it is a Lay bet or Back bet.

11.1.5 Matched amount

Image 501



This tells you how much stake was matched on this bet. For Back bets, the stake is your liability.
For Lay bets, the stake is how much you can win, not your actual liability.

11.1.6 Loss rec. amount

If a strategy is using a loss recovery staking rule, then this column tells you how much of the stake was the loss recovery amount.

11.1.7 Avg. price matched

If all of your stake was matched at the same price, then it will show that price. If your stake was matched at different prices, then the average price will be shown here.

11.1.8 Status

This tells you if the bet is unmatched, matched, lapsed, voided, cancelled or settled.

11.1.9 P/L

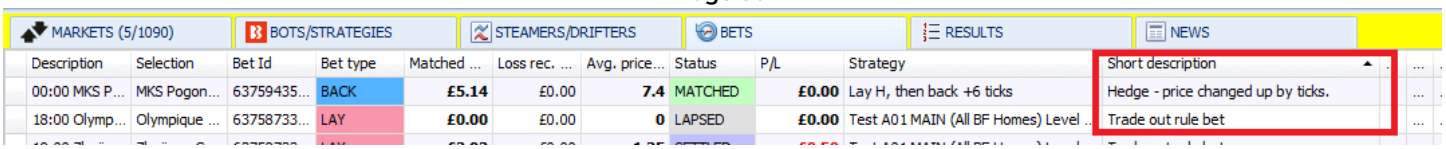
This tells you the profit or loss of this bet. If there are several bets on the same selection, each bet has its own separate row and P/L figure in the bets screen. **Betfair commission is taken from the overall market profit**, **not from individual bets.** Therefore, it is not possible to show the P/L of each individual bet minus commission in this BETS screen because it is showing individual bet P/L and not market P/L. The P/L column will always show the full bet profit, regardless of commission settings. The same is true for the total profit at the bottom of the BETS grid.
Note: For the P/L of strategies on the STRATEGIES screen, the exchange commission might be included or excluded depending on your checkbox settings in Tools & Settings > General > “Take commission from overall market profit”

11.1.10 Strategy

This tells you which strategy placed this bet.

11.1.11 Short description

Image 502



For some bets, a short description is included to explain why the bet was placed. Initial bets do not have descriptions, but Hedge bets and Trade out rule bets do have a short description.

11.1.12 Tipster

If the bet was placed based on an imported tip, the tipster/provider name will appear here.

11.1.13 Placed date

This states the time and date the bet was placed.

11.1.14 Matched date

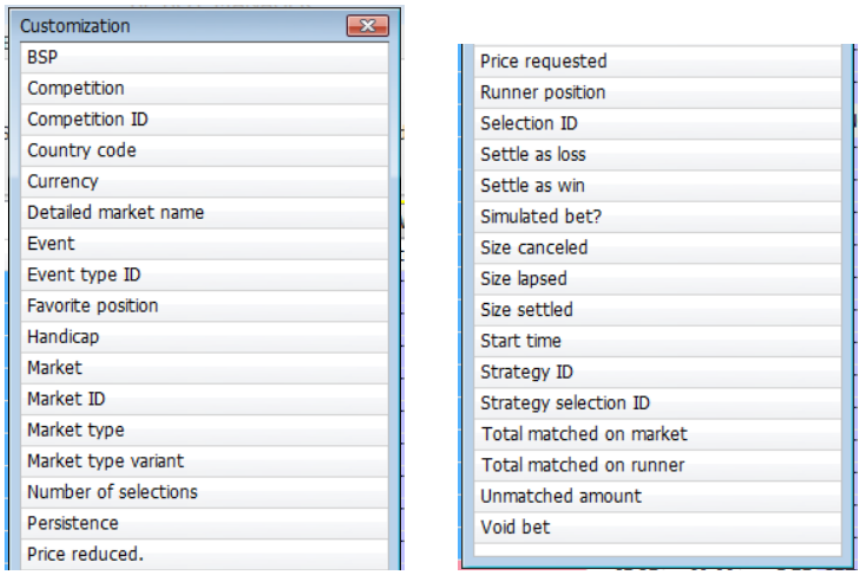
This says the time and date that placed bet was matched. (Some unmatched bets may be matched later on. That time difference can be seen here,)

11.1.15 Settled date

This shows the time and date the bet was settled.

11.2 Bets screen Column chooser options

Image 503



There are a large number of extra columns that can be added to the bets screen. To make space you may need to right-click column headers to “Hide” some other columns to make way for the columns of data that you do want. You can then click on the “Best fit (all columns)” option to resize the columns to make things easier to see.

11.2.1 BSP

This shows the Betfair Start Price for this market if there is one available.

11.2.2 Competition

This tells you what competition it is.

11.2.3 Competition ID

This displays Betfair’s competition ID for this event.

11.2.4 Country code

This shows the country code as a 2 letter code. Ireland is IR, not IRE. Australia is AU, not AUS.

11.2.5 Currency

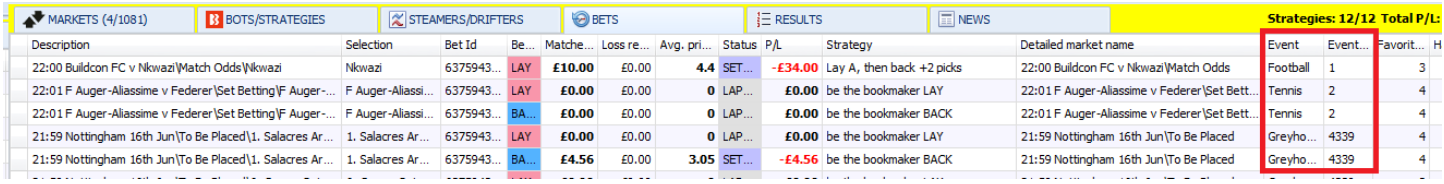
This shows the currency of the bet.

11.2.6 Detailed market name

This shows the detailed name of the market. It is the same as the description column except without a selection at the end. This can be useful when trying to filter and find all the bets placed on one particular market.

11.2.7 Event and Event ID

Image 504



Description	Selection	Bet Id	Be...	Matche...	Loss re...	Avg. pri...	Status	P/L	Strategy	Detailed market name	Event	Event...	Favorit...	H
22:00 Buildcon FC v Nkwazi\Match Odds\Nkwazi	Nkwazi	6375943...	LAY	£10.00	£0.00	4.4	SET...	-£34.00	Lay A, then back +2 picks	22:00 Buildcon FC v Nkwazi\Match Odds	Football	1	3	
22:01 F Auger-Aliassime v Federer\Set Betting\F Auger-...	F Auger-Aliassi...	6375943...	LAY	£0.00	£0.00	0	LAP...	£0.00	be the bookmaker LAY	22:01 F Auger-Aliassime v Federer\Set Bett...	Tennis	2	4	
22:01 F Auger-Aliassime v Federer\Set Betting\F Auger-...	F Auger-Aliassi...	6375943...	BA...	£0.00	£0.00	0	LAP...	£0.00	be the bookmaker BACK	22:01 F Auger-Aliassime v Federer\Set Bett...	Tennis	2	4	
21:59 Nottingham 16th Jun\To Be Placed\1. Salacres Ar...	1. Salacres Ar...	6375943...	LAY	£0.00	£0.00	0	LAP...	£0.00	be the bookmaker LAY	21:59 Nottingham 16th Jun\To Be Placed	Greyho...	4339	4	
21:59 Nottingham 16th Jun\To Be Placed\1. Salacres Ar...	1. Salacres Ar...	6375943...	BA...	£4.56	£0.00	3.05	SET...	-£4.56	be the bookmaker BACK	21:59 Nottingham 16th Jun\To Be Placed	Greyho...	4339	4	

The Event column states if the event is football, horses, greyhounds, tennis, etc.
The Event ID column shows the Betfair event ID. Note that this is different to the Market ID and Selection ID which are different. The Event ID is related to the sport, all football games have an event ID of “1”, Tennis “2”, and so on.

11.2.8 Favorite position

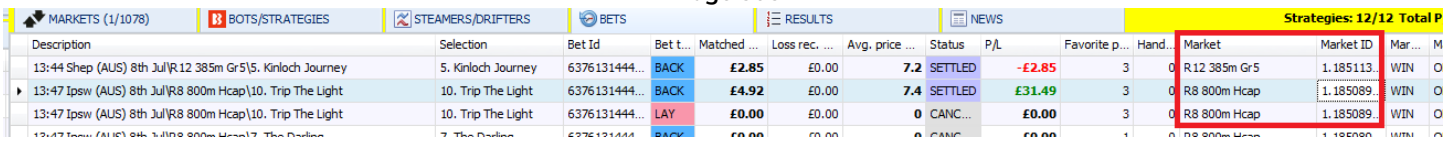
This tells you what favorite it was in its market; 1st favorite, 2nd favorite, 3rd favorite, etc.

11.2.9 Handicap

If the horse has a handicap, it will be show here if that information was available.

11.2.10 Market and Market ID

Image 505

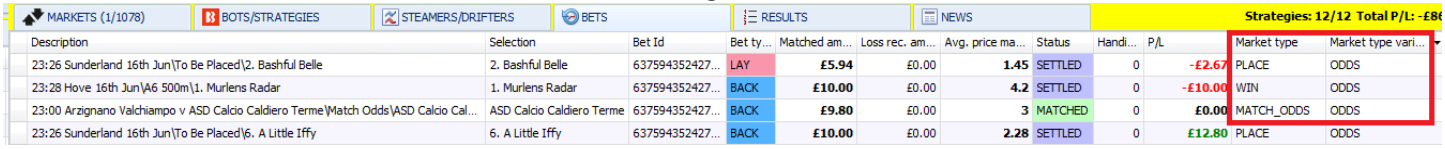


Description	Selection	Bet Id	Bet t...	Matched ...	Loss rec. ...	Avg. price ...	Status	P/L	Favorite p...	Hand...	Market	Market ID	Mar...	M
13:44 Shep (AUS) 8th Jul\R12 385m Gr5\5. Kinloch Journey	5. Kinloch Journey	6376131444...	BACK	£2.85	£0.00	7.2	SETTLED	-£2.85	3	0	R12 385m Gr5	1.185113...	WIN	O
13:47 Ipsw (AUS) 8th Jul\R8 800m Hcap\10. Trip The Light	10. Trip The Light	6376131444...	BACK	£4.92	£0.00	7.4	SETTLED	£31.49	3	0	R8 800m Hcap	1.185089...	WIN	O
13:47 Ipsw (AUS) 8th Jul\R8 800m Hcap\10. Trip The Light	10. Trip The Light	6376131444...	LAY	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANC...	£0.00	3	0	R8 800m Hcap	1.185089...	WIN	O

The market is the official exchange name for the market.
The market ID is the exchange generated ID for the market.

11.2.11 Market type and Market type variant

Image 506



Description	Selection	Bet Id	Bet ty...	Matched am...	Loss rec. am...	Avg. price ma...	Status	Handi...	P/L	Market type	Market type vari...
23:26 Sunderland 16th Jun\To Be Placed\2. Bashful Belle	2. Bashful Belle	637594352427...	LAY	£5.94	£0.00	1.45	SETTLED	0	-£2.67	PLACE	ODDS
23:28 Hove 16th Jun\A6 500m\1. Murlens Radar	1. Murlens Radar	637594352427...	BACK	£10.00	£0.00	4.2	SETTLED	0	-£10.00	WIN	ODDS
23:00 Arzignano Valchiampo v ASD Calcio Caldiero Terme\Match Odds\ASD Calcio Cal...	ASD Calcio Caldiero Terme	637594352427...	BACK	£9.80	£0.00	3	MATCHED	0	£0.00	MATCH_ODDS	ODDS
23:26 Sunderland 16th Jun\To Be Placed\6. A Little Iffy	6. A Little Iffy	637594352427...	BACK	£10.00	£0.00	2.28	SETTLED	0	£12.80	PLACE	ODDS

The Market type tells us if it was a Win, Place, Match Odds market and so on.

The Market type variant is usually Odds. If there is another, then it will be shown here.

11.2.12 Number of selections

This tells us how many runners were in the market.

11.2.13 Order type

This is usually a limit order type, but if there is any other, then it will be displayed here.

11.2.14 Persistence

Image 507

MARKETS (2/1077) | BOTS/STRATEGIES | STEAMERS/DRIFTERS | BETS | RESULTS | NEWS | Strategies: 12/12 Total P/L

Description	Selection	Bet Id	Bet ...	Matched ...	Loss rec. ...	Avg. price ...	Status	Han...	P/L	Number of s...	Order...	Persistence	Price ...	Price r...	Run
14:07 Cran (AUS) 8th Jul\R5 2025m Hcap\8. Volatile Stock	8. Volatile Stock	637613144...	LAY	£1.00	£0.00	4.1	MATC...	0	£0.00	9	LIMIT	LAPSE		4.3	
09:25 Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim\Miss Oreiley	Miss Oreiley	637601784...	BACK	£10.00	£0.00	2.76	MATC...	0	£0.00	6	LIMIT	MARKET_ON_CLOSE		2.72	
09:25 Charles Town (US) 24th Jun\R4 5f Mdn Claim\Miss Oreiley	Miss Oreiley	637601784...	BACK	£2.00	£0.00	2.76	MATC...	0	£0.00	6	LIMIT	MARKET_ON_CLOSE		2.72	
21:00 FK Khimik Novomoskovsk v FC Metallurg Vidnoye\Match Odds\FK...	FK Khimik Novomos...	637587338...	LAY	£2.02	£0.00	1.18	MATC...	0	£0.00	3	LIMIT	PERSIST		1.18	
21:00 FK Aktobe U21 v FC Ordabasy U21\Match Odds\FK Aktobe U21	FK Aktobe U21	637587338...	LAY	£0.00	£0.00	0	UNMA...	0	£0.00	3	LIMIT	PERSIST		1.94	
21:00 Gor Mahia FC v FC Kariobangi Sharks\Match Odds\Gor Mahia FC	Gor Mahia FC	637587338...	LAY	£2.02	£0.00	1.83	MATC...	0	£0.00	3	LIMIT	PERSIST		2.16	

This tells us the persistence of the bet. (Lapse, Market on Close, Persist, etc.)
Lapse means ***cancel*** the bet at in-play if it is still unmatched.
Market on close means take the ***BSP*** if possible
Persist means to ***keep*** the bet active when the market goes in-play.

11.2.15 Price reduced

If the price was reduced, it will be signaled here.

11.2.16 Price requested

This is the price requested by the bot when the bet was placed. If higher odds are available, then those odds will get matched.

11.2.17 Runner position

This shows the position of the runner in the Betfair market screen list,

11.2.18 Selection ID

This is the exchange Selection ID of that runner.

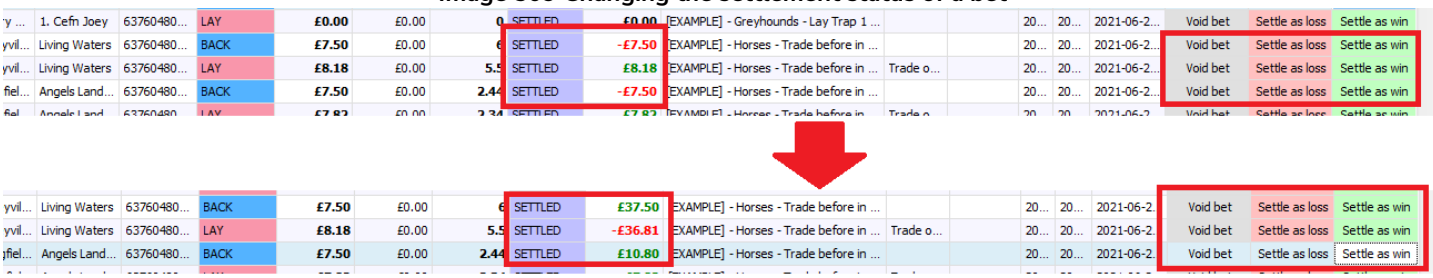
11.2.19 Settle as loss, Settle as win and Void bet

This will add "**Settle as win**", "**Settle as loss**" or "**Void bet**" buttons to the bets screen. If a bet was incorrectly settled or not yet officially settled but you know the result, then you can use these buttons. On very, very rare occasions, Betfair incorrectly settle a market which they later correct. If Betfair have already paid out winnings, they will remove those mistaken winnings from accounts and give them to the rightful winners. In the Bot Software case, the first result given out by the Betfair API is used to settle the bets. If an incorrect settlement was sent out, then the only way to correct it is by manually changing the result of the settled bet in the bets tab.

Image 508 Adding bet settlement status adjustment columns

First, in the Bets screen, you right-click on any column header and click on “Column chooser”. Then add a “Settle as loss” or “Settle as win” or “Void bet” column and left-click on the change you want to make.

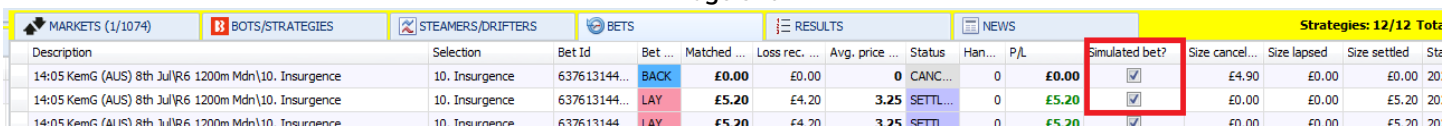
Image 509 Changing the settlement status of a bet



You can left-click on the Void bet, Settle as loss and Settle as win buttons to change the settlement status of a bet. This can be useful when there is an error with Betfair market settlement. Please note that these changes can only be made with bets in the current software session. Older bets cannot be re-settled. Re-settled bets will automatically adjust the P/L columns of the strategies that had bets on them.

11.2.20 Simulated bet?

Image 510



This tells you if a bet was simulated or not. It shows a checkbox with a tick inside it if the bet was a simulated one. This is not editable.

11.2.21 Size cancelled and Size lapsed

Image 511

For cancelled and lapsed bets, the stake size does not show up in the “Matched amount” column, so a “Size cancelled” or “Size lapsed” column allows you to see how much was cancelled or lapsed.

11.2.22 Size settled

This shows the actual amount that was settled on this bet.

11.2.23 Start time

This shows the date and time of the event start.

11.2.24 Strategy ID

This shows the Bf Bot Manager generated Strategy ID that is allotted to each bot strategy. New strategies get a new strategy ID. Duplicated strategies also get a new Strategy ID. But just changing the name of a strategy does not mean it gets a new Strategy ID.

11.2.25 Total matched on market

This shows the total amount of money that was matched on that market.

11.2.26 Total matched on each runner

This shows the total amount of money that was matched on that runner.

11.2.27 Unmatched amount

If some or all of the bet was unmatched, it will be shown here.

11.2.28 Betting bank

This column will show the betting bank of that bet's strategy.
If there are multiple strategies with separate betting banks, each strategy's betting bank will be shown.
If a strategy's betting bank is a combined betting bank of multiple strategies' profit and loss, then that combined betting bank amount will be shown.

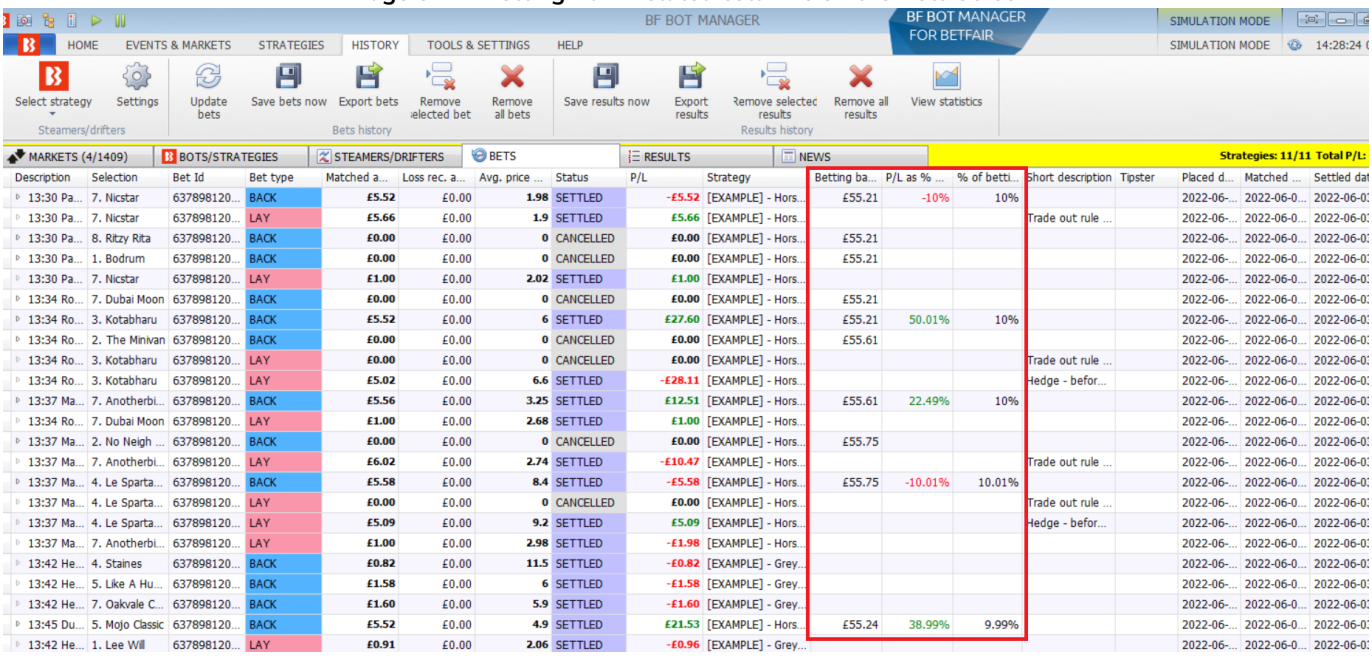
11.2.29 % of betting bank

This shows the stake size as a % of the betting bank. This can give a quick indication of the size of the bet in relation to its betting bank.

11.2.30 P/L as % of betting bank

This shows the profit or loss as a % of the betting bank. This gives the user an indication of how significant the profit or loss was in terms of the strategy betting bank.

Image 512 - Betting Bank related columns on the Bets Screen



Description	Selection	Bet Id	Bet type	Matched a...	Loss rec. a...	Avg. price ...	Status	P/L	Strategy	Betting ba...	P/L as % ...	% of betti...	Short description	Tipster	Placed d...	Matched ...	Settled dat
13:30 Pa...	7. Nicstar	637898120...	BACK	£5.52	£0.00	1.98	SETTLED	-£5.52	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.21	-10%	10%			2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:30 Pa...	7. Nicstar	637898120...	LAY	£5.66	£0.00	1.9	SETTLED	£5.66	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...				Trade out rule ...		2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:30 Pa...	8. Ritzy Rita	637898120...	BACK	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.21					2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:30 Pa...	1. Bodrum	637898120...	BACK	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.21					2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:30 Pa...	7. Nicstar	637898120...	LAY	£1.00	£0.00	2.02	SETTLED	£1.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:34 Ro...	7. Dubai Moon	637898120...	BACK	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.21					2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:34 Ro...	3. Kotabharu	637898120...	BACK	£5.52	£0.00	6	SETTLED	£27.60	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.21	50.01%	10%			2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:34 Ro...	2. The Minivan	637898120...	BACK	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.61					2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:34 Ro...	3. Kotabharu	637898120...	LAY	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...				Trade out rule ...		2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:34 Ro...	3. Kotabharu	637898120...	LAY	£5.02	£0.00	6.6	SETTLED	-£28.11	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...				Hedge - befor...		2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	7. Anotherbi...	637898120...	BACK	£5.56	£0.00	3.25	SETTLED	£12.51	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.61	22.49%	10%			2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:34 Ro...	7. Dubai Moon	637898120...	LAY	£1.00	£0.00	2.68	SETTLED	£1.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	2. No Neigh ...	637898120...	BACK	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.75					2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	7. Anotherbi...	637898120...	LAY	£6.02	£0.00	2.74	SETTLED	-£10.47	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...				Trade out rule ...		2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	4. Le Sparta...	637898120...	BACK	£5.58	£0.00	8.4	SETTLED	-£5.58	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.75	-10.01%	10.01%			2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	4. Le Sparta...	637898120...	LAY	£0.00	£0.00	0	CANCELLED	£0.00	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...				Trade out rule ...		2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	4. Le Sparta...	637898120...	LAY	£5.09	£0.00	9.2	SETTLED	£5.09	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...				Hedge - befor...		2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:37 Ma...	7. Anotherbi...	637898120...	LAY	£1.00	£0.00	2.98	SETTLED	-£1.98	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:42 He...	4. Staines	637898120...	BACK	£0.82	£0.00	11.5	SETTLED	-£0.82	[EXAMPLE] - Grey...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:42 He...	5. Like A Hu...	637898120...	BACK	£1.58	£0.00	6	SETTLED	-£1.58	[EXAMPLE] - Grey...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:42 He...	7. Oakvale C...	637898120...	BACK	£1.60	£0.00	5.9	SETTLED	-£1.60	[EXAMPLE] - Grey...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:45 Du...	5. Mojo Classic	637898120...	BACK	£5.52	£0.00	4.9	SETTLED	£21.53	[EXAMPLE] - Hors...	£55.24	38.99%	9.99%			2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0
13:42 He...	1. Lee Will	637898120...	LAY	£0.91	£0.00	2.06	SETTLED	-£0.96	[EXAMPLE] - Grey...						2022-06-...	2022-06-0...	2022-06-0

By adding betting bank related columns to the Bets Screen, it can make it much easier to track the progress of strategies using a betting bank and the size of bets, profits or losses.

12 Results screen

12.1 Main View

Image 513

MARKETS (1/1067) | BOTS/STRATEGIES | STEAMERS/DRIFTERS | BETS | RESULTS | NEWS | Strategies: 12/12 Total P/L: -£71.

Start time	Market name	Winners	Winners prices	Winner favorite po...	Winner runner posi...	Number ...	Currency	Total matched	Sport type
2021-07-08 14:06:00	Gunn (AUS) 8th Jul\R9 340m Gr5	4. Loch It	9.4	4	3	8	GBP	3567.1	Greyhounds
2021-07-08 14:07:00	Cran (AUS) 8th Jul\R5 2025m Hcap	6. Auf Weidersehen	13.5	7	5	9	GBP	24773.7	Horses
2021-07-08 14:07:00	Cran (AUS) 8th Jul\To Be Placed	6. Auf Weidersehe...	3.8; 1.75; 3.2	7; 2; 5	5; 7; 8	9	GBP	2615.07	Horses
2021-07-08 14:09:00	Wagg (AUS) 8th Jul\R1 320m Heat	4. Wilde Lily	11	3	4	8	GBP	1197.67	Greyhounds
2021-07-08 14:11:00	Addi (NZL) 8th Jul\R4 295m Heat	2. Next Off	9.2	4	2	8	GBP	2799.02	Greyhounds
2021-07-08 14:12:00	Redc (AUS) 8th Jul\R4 1780m Pace M	4. Franco Nandor	6	2	4	9	GBP	5303.16	Horses
2021-07-08 14:12:00	Redc (AUS) 8th Jul\To Be Placed	3. Lifeinheaven, 4....	12; 1.66; 1.95	9; 2; 3	3; 4; 8	9	GBP	1178.23	Horses
2021-07-08 14:14:00	Capa (AUS) 8th Jul\R7 366m Gr5	7. Miracle Ghost	4.1	2	7	8	GBP	2911.3	Greyhounds
2021-07-08 14:17:00	Wgul (AUS) 8th Jul\R1 460m Mdn	1. Oda May	1.49	1	1	7	GBP	8035.76	Greyhounds
2021-07-08 14:20:00	Graf (AUS) 8th Jul\R6 1175m CL6	8. The Drake	14.5	3	6	16	GBP	57558.04	Horses
2021-07-08 14:20:00	Graf (AUS) 8th Jul\To Be Placed	8. The Drake, 10. ...	2.98; 1.41; 6.6	3; 1; 7	6; 8; 12	16	GBP	5533.63	Horses
2021-07-08 14:21:00	FPrk (NZL) 8th Jul\To Be Placed	9. Eilish Hall, 10. P...	4.9; 3.05; 3.55	8; 4; 5	7; 8; 11	12	GBP	0	Horses
2021-07-08 14:21:00	FPrk (NZL) 8th Jul\R1 2200m Trot S	10. Pearlspur	10	3	8	12	GBP	617.82	Horses
2021-07-08 14:24:00	Wagg (AUS) 8th Jul\R2 320m Heat	8. Noble Ability	3.5	1	7	8	GBP	5221.42	Greyhounds

The results screen main view shows the results as provided by the Betfair API as they come in. You can order some of the columns by left clicking on their column headers. (Start time. Market name, Number of selections, Total matched, etc.)

12.1.1 Start time

This shows the start time and date of the event.

12.1.2 Market name

This shows the name of the market.

12.1.3 Winners

This states the name of the winner. If there are more than one winner (place markets), then all winners will be shown in this field.

12.1.4 Winners prices

This shows the odds of each winner.

12.1.5 Winner favorite position

This shows which favorite position the winner was before the event started. “4” would mean it was the 4th favorite by price.

12.1.6 Winner runner position

The winner runner position tells us where it was listed in the Betfair market screen. For horses, it is where they appear on the list. For Greyhounds it is often also meaning which trap they ran from. For football match odds, it means their fixed market positions of “1” home teams, “2” away team and “3” draw.

12.1.7 Number

This tells us the number of runners in that market. So, for horse races, if the number is 7 and the winner favorite position was 7, then we can see that the rank outsider won the race.

12.1.8 Currency

This shows the currency of the market.

12.1.9 Total matched

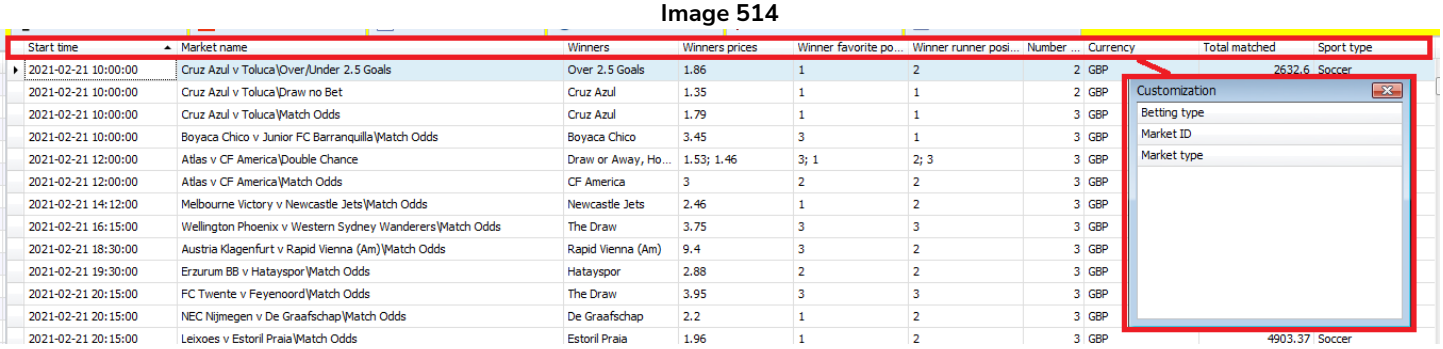
This shows the total matched on this market.

12.1.10 Sport type

This states what sport the event was. This can be useful when filtering results.

12.2 Results screen Column chooser options

Image 514



Start time	Market name	Winners	Winners prices	Winner favorite po...	Winner runner posi...	Number ...	Currency	Total matched	Sport type
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Cruz Azul v Toluca\Over/Under 2.5 Goals	Over 2.5 Goals	1.86	1	2	2	GBP	2632.6	Soccer
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Cruz Azul v Toluca\Draw no Bet	Cruz Azul	1.35	1	1	2	GBP		
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Cruz Azul v Toluca\Match Odds	Cruz Azul	1.79	1	1	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Boyaca Chico v Junior FC Barranquilla\Match Odds	Boyaca Chico	3.45	3	1	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 12:00:00	Atlas v CF America\Double Chance	Draw or Away, Ho...	1.53; 1.46	3; 1	2; 3	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 12:00:00	Atlas v CF America\Match Odds	CF America	3	2	2	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 14:12:00	Melbourne Victory v Newcastle Jets\Match Odds	Newcastle Jets	2.46	1	2	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 16:15:00	Wellington Phoenix v Western Sydney Wanderers\Match Odds	The Draw	3.75	3	3	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 18:30:00	Austria Klagenfurt v Rapid Vienna (Am)\Match Odds	Rapid Vienna (Am)	9.4	3	2	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 19:30:00	Erzurum BB v Hatayspor\Match Odds	Hatayspor	2.88	2	2	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 20:15:00	FC Twente v Feyenoord\Match Odds	The Draw	3.95	3	3	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 20:15:00	NEC Nijmegen v De Graafschap\Match Odds	De Graafschap	2.2	1	2	3	GBP		
2021-02-21 20:15:00	Leixoes v Estoril Praia\Match Odds	Estoril Praia	1.96	1	2	3	GBP	4903.37	Soccer

There are 3 extra columns that can be added to the results screen by right clicking on any column header and selecting “Column chooser”.

12.2.1 Betting type

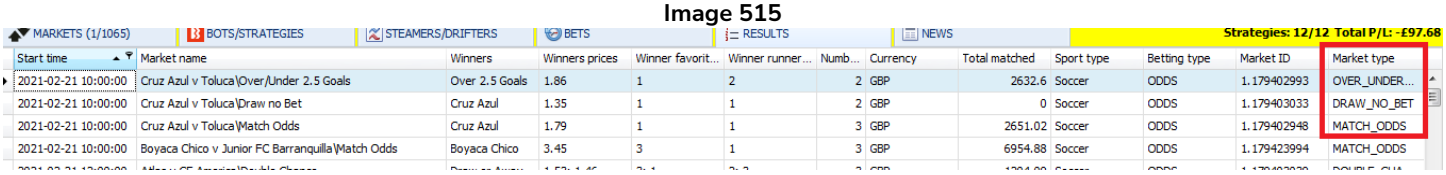
This is usually odds. If there is any other type, then it will be shown here.

12.2.2 Market ID

This is the market ID as provided by Betfair.

12.2.3 Market type

Image 515

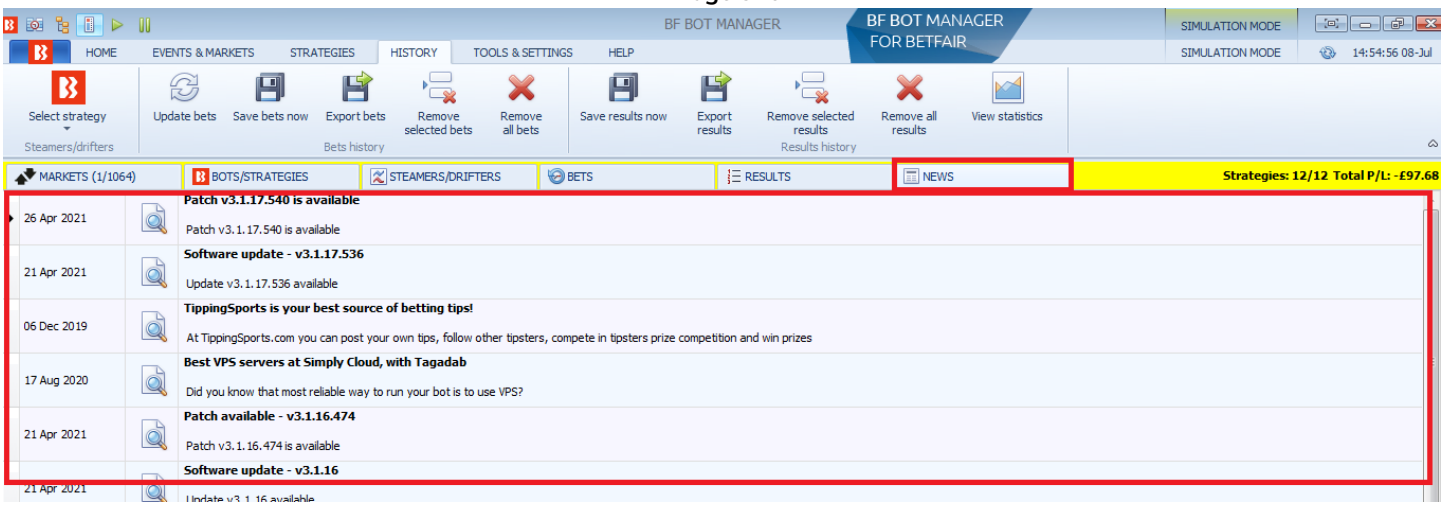


Start time	Market name	Winners	Winners prices	Winner favorit...	Winner runner...	Numb...	Currency	Total matched	Sport type	Betting type	Market ID	Market type
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Cruz Azul v Toluca\Over/Under 2.5 Goals	Over 2.5 Goals	1.86	1	2	2	GBP	2632.6	Soccer	ODDS	1.179402993	OVER_UNDER...
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Cruz Azul v Toluca\Draw no Bet	Cruz Azul	1.35	1	1	2	GBP	0	Soccer	ODDS	1.179403033	DRAW_NO_BET
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Cruz Azul v Toluca\Match Odds	Cruz Azul	1.79	1	1	3	GBP	2651.02	Soccer	ODDS	1.179402948	MATCH_ODDS
2021-02-21 10:00:00	Boyaca Chico v Junior FC Barranquilla\Match Odds	Boyaca Chico	3.45	3	1	3	GBP	6954.88	Soccer	ODDS	1.179423994	MATCH_ODDS

This tells us if the market was Over/Under, Draw No Bet, Match Odds, etc.

13 News screen

Image 516



The news screen tells you of any important announcements or updates from Bf Bot Manager regarding the software or related information.

Clicking on the magnifying glass will bring up more information about this news.

14 Strategy Rules

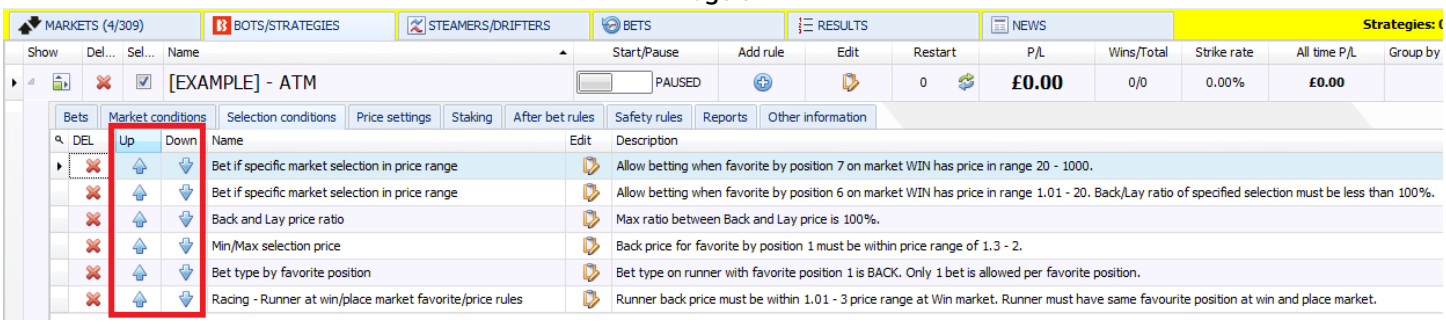
Each strategy is made up of conditions and rules that all need to be satisfied for bets to be placed. Basic strategies can work with only one or two conditions, while some other more complex strategies can have dozens of rules. The software will check all strategies and all conditions each time market prices are downloaded from the Betfair server, and when all conditions for one strategy are satisfied then bets will be placed by that strategy.

Strategy conditions and rules are divided into following groups:

Market conditions
These are applied to the whole market and if they are not satisfied then betting on that market is skipped. For example, the "Time to bet" market condition will prevent the strategy from placing bets on any selection in that market if the time to place bets is not correct.
Selection conditions
These are applied to each selection in a market (each runner in an event) individually. These prevent betting on selections that do not satisfy the selection conditions. For example, the **Back and Lay Price Ratio rule** will exclude selections from possible betting that do not meet the price ratio.
Price settings
These are applied to selections that satisfied market and selection conditions. For example, the price condition will set the price at which the bet should be placed on a selection.
Staking rules
These calculate the stake for each selection that satisfied market, selection and price conditions. Staking rules expect that the price and bet type are determined by selection and price conditions and then those are used to determine the stake for each selection. Once the stake is decided for each selection then bets can be placed.
After bet rules
These are used for monitoring and managing placed bets by strategy. Once all conditions are satisfied, a bet is placed, and in some strategies we want to monitor our placed bets and do additional betting or trading based on those bets when market prices or in-play statistics change. For example, the Lay The Draw selection before in-play and later when a goal is scored to trade out for profit. This can be done easily by using the "Hedge" after bet rule
Safety rules
These are used to stop a strategy or limit its bets and protect our profits or limit our exposure. Max strategy profit and max strategy loss is a basic safety rule that will prevent a strategy from placing any further bets once it reaches the max profit or max loss.

Conditions are executed from top to bottom. To move conditions up or down you can use the up and down arrows on left side of a condition, as shown in the image below. This can be especially useful for staking conditions where the order is very important.

Image 517



A strategy can only place bets if it has at least the following information:

- **Market** on which it will bet (Market conditions)
- **Selection/runner** to bet on (Selection conditions)
- **Bet type** (Back or Lay) (Selection conditions)
- **Price** at which the bet will be placed (Price settings)
- **Stake** (Staking)

When creating a strategy, you must add conditions/rules that will give this information to your strategy. The strategy will apply those conditions/rules to all downloaded market prices. The strategy will filter the possible selections down to get only a few selections for which the bet type, price and stake is then set. Only on such runners that have all the details set, and satisfy all your conditions/rules, can bets be placed.

It is important to understand that all rules execute from top to bottom in each rules tab. You can use the up/down arrows to change the order of rules. As stated previously, each time prices are downloaded, the strategy will check the rules from those tabs in the following order:

The bot strategy logic checks conditions in this order before placing bets:
Safety rules – checks the rules that will prevent a strategy from placing further bets if one of the safety rules is not satisfied e.g. max profit/loss exceeded, auto restart required etc.
After bet rules – checks the rules to execute after an initial bet is placed and they are usually used to hedge or trade out your position
Market conditions - filters markets to bet on
Selection conditions - filters selections to bet on
Price settings - sets the price at which bets should be placed
Staking - sets the stake and places the initial bet. (If the strategy has placed a bet, then the after bet rules will be checked.)

Some rules can appear in any order in the strategy tab, but some rules must be in the correct order to function properly. Those will have specific notes on them that state that information. For example, the event filter and the market filter can come in any order on the market conditions screen. But using percentage staking and the odds staking ladder together require the percentage staking rule to come AFTER the odds staking ladder in order for the rule to work correctly. This is stated in that rule's settings form. So it is important to understand and read the notes on each form.

Conditions are executed from top to bottom. To move conditions up or down you can use the up/down

arrows on the left side of a condition.

Some rules can only appear once in a strategy while others can appear multiple times with different settings. For example, the **Level/initial stake** rule can only appear once in a strategy because there can only be one initial stake like in the example strategy *Bet on all imported tips*. But the **Bet type by runner position** can be used multiple times in one strategy if we want to place bets on multiple runners in a market like in the example strategy *Greyhounds – Dutching 2nd, 3rd and 4th favorite*.

When reviewing strategy rules, it is good to review them in the logical order that the software itself will check the rules and conditions.

Important Rules
In the **market conditions** tab you need to add rules that will tell the strategy **which markets** to try to bet on**.** There are many market conditions that you can add here, but the most common ones are rules that filter markets by event type (horses/greyhounds/football etc.), market type (win, place, match odds etc.), country (UK, Ireland, Germany etc.), venue (used by racing events mostly e.g. Lingfield, Newcastle, Southwell etc.) and competition (used by football events e.g. English Premier league, Bundesliga, Primera etc.). Those **rules will prevent or allow betting on a market as a whole, so if one of the rules is not satisfied then that market will be skipped.**

Selection conditions allow you to **filter selections/runners individually** and to **set the bet type** (Back or Lay). This is very important, if you set the **bet type** rule or **the min/max price range** rule for the wrong selection, then the strategy will place bets on the wrong selections and you could lose your money. The bet type needs to be set ONLY for the selection on which you want your strategy to bet on. For example, if you wish to bet on the 1st favorite then use the "Bet type by favorite" rule and do not use any other bet type rule in this strategy. A common mistake is adding more than one bet type rule, so make sure you do not add more than one bet type rule where needed.

Another important rule is the "**Min/max selection price**" which checks the selection price for a min/max price range that you set. Make sure you set this to check same selection for price range for which you have set bet type rule. If you are setting bet type for 1st favorite then set price range rule to check price of 1st favorite for price range.

By default, the strategy is set to bet at the currently available price (Back price for Back bets, Lay price for Lay bets) and this is set in the Price settings tab by the **Price rules** rule. This rule sets the price at which bets will be placed and it is best that you do not change it. If you change this rule then it might set it to bet at a different price than the price that you checked for in the price range rule, which could be very dangerous. For example, if you check Back price for price range but set to bet at the Lay price, then the strategy could be placing bets outside your price range and at very high or very low prices.

The last important setting that will finally allow your strategy to place bets is the one that will set bet size. This is done at the Staking tab, here you can use a level stake or use a more complex staking plan, dutching rule or loss recovery plan. It is always best to use the "**Level/initial stake**" to test your strategy settings and make sure it is picking the right selections to bet on. Then, once that part is working, you can add or change to other staking rules.

14.1 Market conditions

Market conditions are used by the strategy when market prices are downloaded from Betfair to check if a strategy should try to bet on that market or not.

Image 518 Market Conditions in Bot Strategies

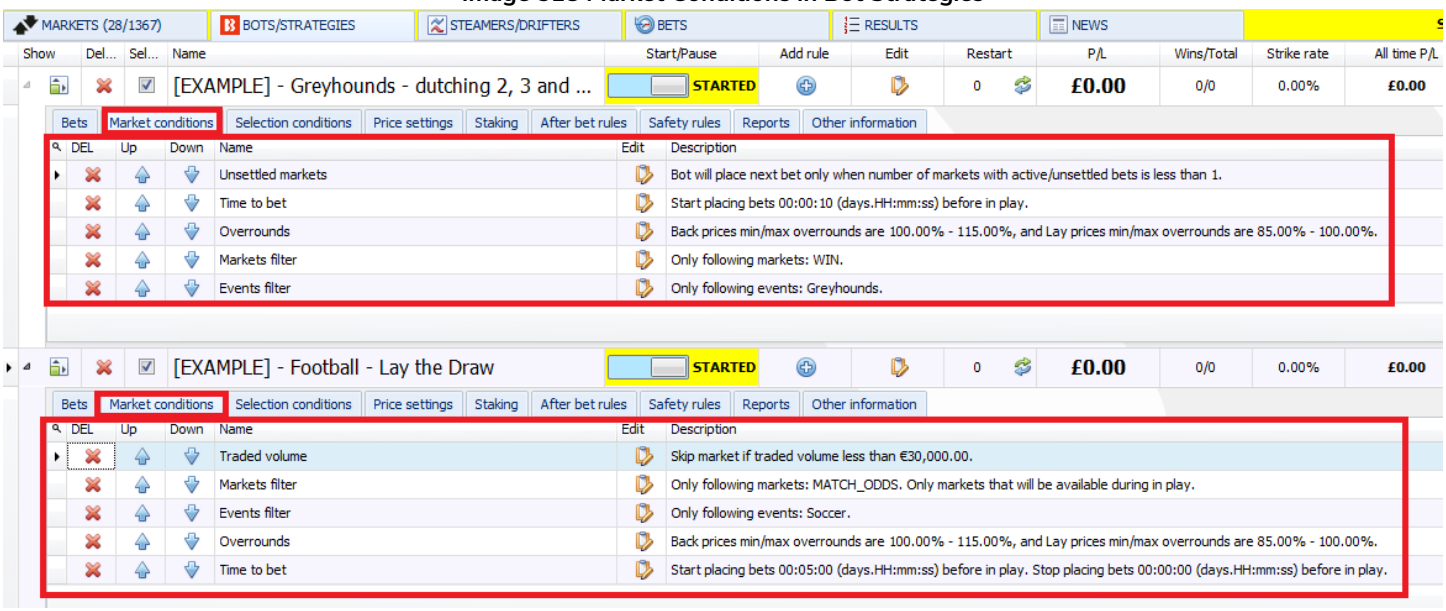


Image 519 – Market Conditions Menu

Type	Name	Initial	Status	Add rule	Description
	Bet after X favorite/runner wins or losses				Allow betting only after specified selection has X wins/losses in a row.
	Clear favorites				Skip markets with or without clear favorites.
	Competitions filter				Bet only on markets from selected competitions.
	Country filter				Bet only on markets from selected countries.
	Do not bet on markets where selections are picked by using ...				Prevent betting on markets where selections are picked by using "My S.". column
	Events filter		✓		Bet only on selected event types e.g. horses, greyhounds, football etc.
	Football - Bet on next over/under market				Allow betting on "total scored goals + selected goals" over/under market.
	Football - Bet when score				Allow betting when match score is one of selected values.
	Football - Filter matches by scored/conceded goals in each ...				This rule uses previous results to check scored/coneded goals of teams in each match.
	Football - Filter matches by team form				This rule uses previous results to check team form.
	Football - Filter matches by team number of points				This rule uses previous results to check team number of points won/lost.
	Football - Filter matches by team total number of goals in la...				This rule uses previous results to check total number of goals scored/conceded by selected team.
	Football - Home/away team odds ratio				Allow betting when ratio between home and away team odds is satisfied.
	Football - In play statistics				Allow betting when in play statistics are satisfied e.g. shots on/off goal, dangerous attacks, ball possession etc.
	Football - In play statistics (inplaytrading / inplayscanner)				Allow betting when in play statistics are satisfied. This rule requires subscription to third party service!
	Football - Match events (goal, red/yellow card, penalty)				Allow betting after match event happens within set time range.
	Football - Match minute				Allow betting only when match minute is within specified time range.
	Football - Match status				Bet when match status is one of selected values e.g. at half time or during the injury time etc.
	Football - Pitch condition				Bets when pitch condition is one of selected values.
	Football - Team formation				Bets when team formation is one of selected values.
	Football - Team position				Bets when team league position is one of selected values.
	Football - Weather type				Allow betting only when weather conditions are satisfied.

Image 520 – Market Conditions Menu (cont.)

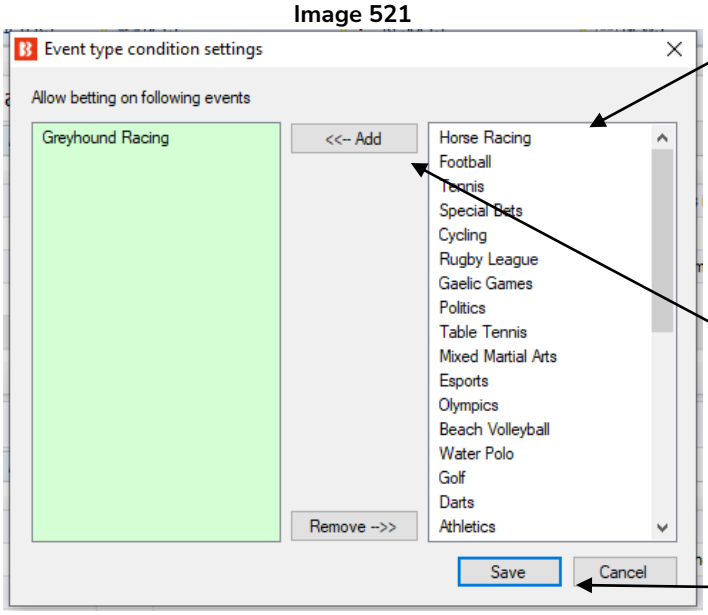
Greyhounds - Skip race if there is a reserve/removed runner	☐	☐		Skip betting on races if there is a reserve or removed runner.
Market status change delay	☐	☐		Prevent betting for X seconds after market changes its status e.g. from suspended to active status, allowing market offer to form properly.
Markets filter	☐	☑		Allow betting on selected market types or markets whose name contains specific text value e.g. hcap for handicap races etc.
Min/max number of runners	☐	☐		Allow betting only on markets whose number of selections is within set min/max range.
Min/max required price for selection on market	☐	☐		Allow betting on market if specified selection price is within set price range.
Minimum delay between initial bets	☐	☐		Prevent betting for X seconds after initial bet is placed. Ensures that there is a delay between initial bets.
Number of winners	☐	☑		Allow betting only on markets with specified number of winners.
Only if live scores are available	☐	☐		Allow betting only on football and tennis matches for which live score data is available.
Only if selected strategy has bets	☐	☐		Allow betting only if specific strategy has bets on same event/market.
Only if selected strategy has profit/loss in range	☐	☐		Allow betting only if selected strategies have total profit/loss in set range.
Only if selected strategy has X wins/loses	☐	☐		Allow betting only if selected strategies have X winning/losing bets or markets.
Overround/book percentage	☐	☐		Market must have overround/book percentage within specified range. Ensures that market offer is valid.
Racing - Class filter	☐	☐		Allow betting only on races with selected class information. Information for this rule is provided by third party service and it might not be available or accurate all the time.
Racing - Going - track condition filter	☐	☐		Allow betting only on races with selected going information. Information for this rule is provided by third party service and it might not be available or accurate all the time.
Racing - Min/max race distance	☐	☐		Allow betting only on races whose length is within set range. Race distance is taken from win market text.
Racing - Race in play time	☐	☑		Allow betting by race duration and passed in play time e.g. only during first 40 seconds of estimated race duration.
Racing - Race status	☐	☐		Allow betting only when race is in specific status e.g. at the post, going behind etc. You can check race status by using "Race status" column at main markets grid view.
Racing - Race type filter	☐	☐		Allow only races by specific race type e.g. harness, flat, chase etc. You can check race type by using "Race type" column at main markets grid view.
Racing - Removed runners	☐	☐		Filter races by removed runners information.
Racing - Venues filter	☐	☐		Only bet on races at selected venues e.g. only Lingfield racing events.
Runner by position favorite condition	☐	☐		Runner by position (its index position in list of runners) must be one of selected favorites by position.
Skip if favourite difference is not satisfied	☐	☐		Skip markets if difference in price between Xth and Yth favorite by position is not satisfied e.g. difference between 2nd and 1st favorite by position etc.
Skip market if my selection is non runner	☐	☐		Skips betting on market if selection that is picked by using "My S." checkbox column becomes non runner.
Skip market(s) after winning/losing market(s)	☐	☐		Skip X market(s) after Y winning/losing market(s)
Tennis - Bet when fifteen score	☐	☐		Bets when match score is one of selected values e.g. score is 30:15 or 40:30 etc.
Tennis - Bet when game score	☐	☐		Bets when game score is one of selected values e.g. 4:2 or 3:1 etc.
Tennis - Bet when set score	☐	☐		Bets when match set score is one of selected values e.g. 1:0 or 2:1 etc.
Tennis - In play statistics	☐	☐		Allow betting when in play statistics are satisfied e.g. player one has 10 aces or 5 double faults etc.
Tennis - Only when selected player	☐	☐		Allow betting only when selected player satisfies specific options.
Time to bet	☐	☑		Time when strategy should start trying to place bets. This is not single moment, it is interval during which strategy is allowed to try to place bets e.g. start 5 minutes before official start time and until 0 seconds before official start time.
Tips - Filtering rules for imported tips	☐	☐		Allow betting only when imported tip/selection satisfies specific rule e.g. imported selection is first favorite etc.
Traded volume	☐	☐		Allow betting only on markets whose traded volume is within set range.
Unsettled markets	☐	☐		Allow betting only when all previous bets are settled. Helps staking plans get correct staking sequence, as it prevents betting until all previous bets are settled.

Market conditions are mainly important because they check overall market status and prices for a strategy and ensure that the strategy only tries to place bets on markets that satisfy those conditions.

14.1.1 Events filter

The events filter tells the strategy what sports to allow betting on. It is important to specify the event, because just specifying a market such as “match_odds” would include all football, tennis, baseball, rugby, etc. match odds markets. So we need to specify the sport with an event filter. This is an important rule and is almost always needed in a strategy.

Image 521



The right-hand side list with a white background includes event names currently available on the Betfair site. It is a “dynamically populated” list. So only events that are currently up on the Betfair site are included. For example, if there are no “water polo” events currently on the site, that event will not appear here until Betfair puts such an event on their site.

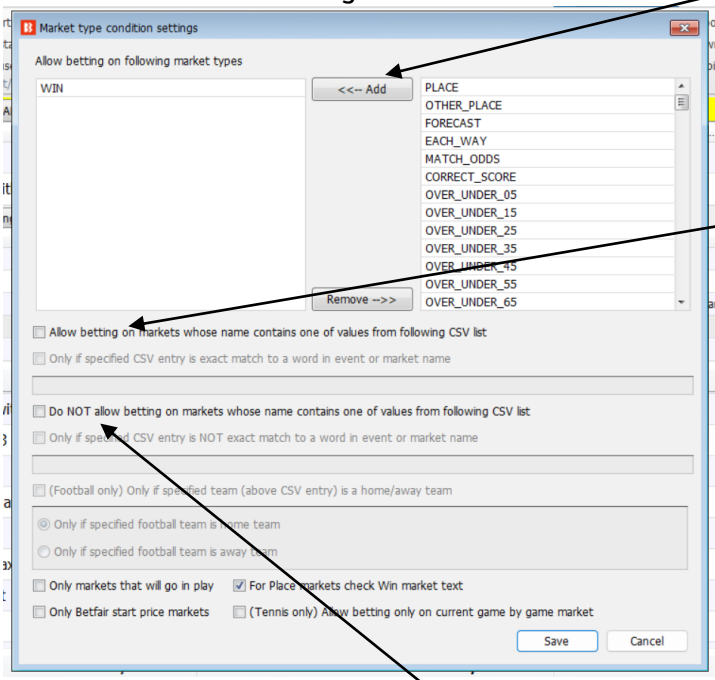
To add an event, left click-on the right-hand side event list, then click the “Add” button to add that event to the left-hand side allowed events list. You can remove an event in the same way with the “Remove” button.

When you have added all the events you want, click save.

14.1.2 Markets filter

A markets filter tells the strategy which market types to allow betting on. If we just select the event "football", that would include all football markets of match odds, over/under, draw no bet, double chance, half time, correct score, etc. So it is very important to include a markets filter rule that specifies which type of market for each event to allow betting on. In the same way as the events filter, it is a "dynamically populated" list. So only markets that are currently up on the Betfair site are included. For example, if there are no "last goal scorer" markets currently on the site, that market will not appear here until Betfair puts such a market on their site.

Image 522

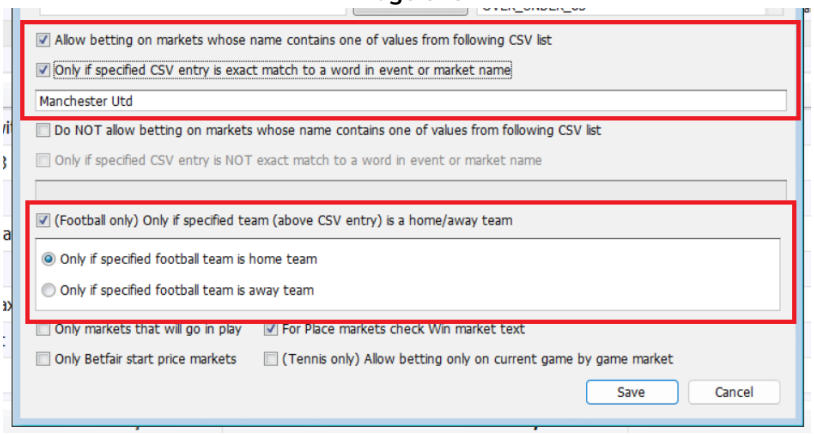


To add a market, left-click on a market type from the right-hand side list of available markets. Then click on "**Add**" to add it to the list of markets that betting is allowed on.

It is also possible to **enter a CSV list** (names separated by commas) of market names into a field at the bottom if the checkbox is ticked. This is useful if you have a list of markets that you want to allow ready to paste into this field, or if you want to enter a market type that is not displayed in the right-hand list yet. The first tick-box enables betting on markets that "contain" the names in the CSV list. If the second checkbox is also ticked, then it will restrict the rule to "exact" names in the CSV list. For example "Manchester Utd U21" ***contains*** "Manchester Utd" so just ticking the first checkbox would allow betting on this market. But ticking the second checkbox would not allow betting on this market since it is not an ***exact*** match. This is useful if you do not want to bet on any derivative selection names and only a specific selection name.

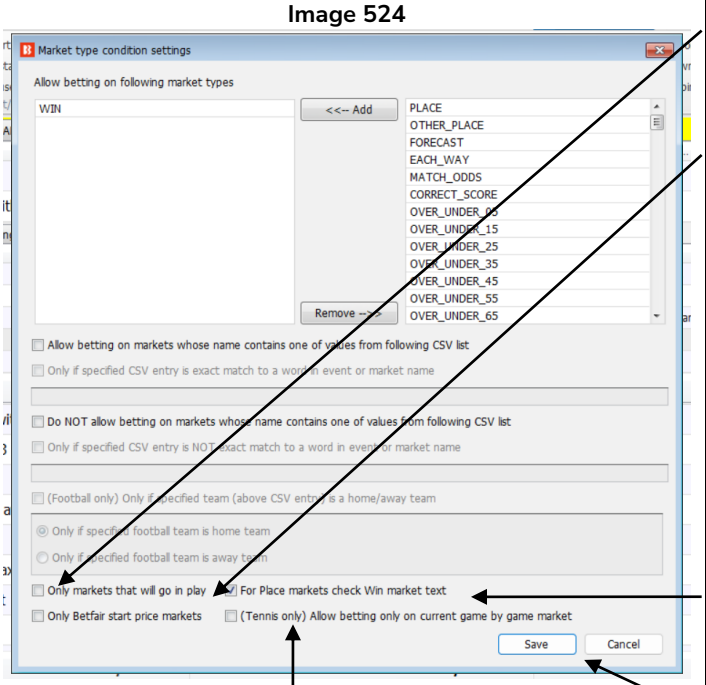
You can also **specify which markets you do NOT want** to allow betting on with a CSV list. The first tick-box prevents betting on markets that "contain" the names in the CSV list. If the second checkbox is also ticked, then it will restrict the rule to "exact" names in the CSV list.

Image 523



You can also limit the rule even further by ticking the "**Only if specified team (above CSV entry) is a home/away team"** checkbox. In the above example, it would only allow betting on markets where Manchester United (exact selection name match) is playing a home. This can also be set to away. It can also be used with "Do NOT allow betting..." checkbox. Please note that text needs to be present in the CSV field for this rule to work. Also this rule does not place bets, it just allows or disallows a market as a candidate to be bet on. A Bet Type rule still needs to be used to actually instruct the bot to place bets.

Image 524



Tick the "**Only markets that will go in play**" checkbox to allow betting only on markets that are scheduled by Betfair to go in-play.

Tick the "**Only Betfair start price markets**" checkbox to only allow betting on markets that are designated as Betfair Start Price markets by the Betfair site.

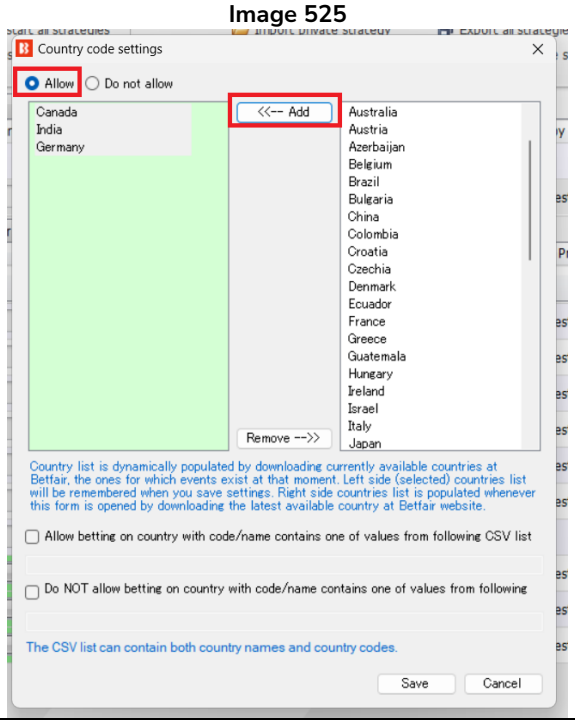
Tick the "**For Place markets check Win market text**" to check for information that is not contained in the Place market name e.g. Hcap, Nov, race distance etc. The Betfair Win market name contains information that is not available in the Place market name. In such cases, if both Win and Place markets are loaded and the strategy is set to bet only on place markets, then this option will allow the user to filter place markets by text contained in the win market name e.g. only bet on handicap races by checking if the win market name contains the text "Hcap", which is not displayed in place market name.

For Tennis markets only, you can select "**Allow betting only on current game by game market**" to create strategies focused on the current tennis game.

Click "**Save**" to keep the changes to the rule.

14.1.3 Country Filter

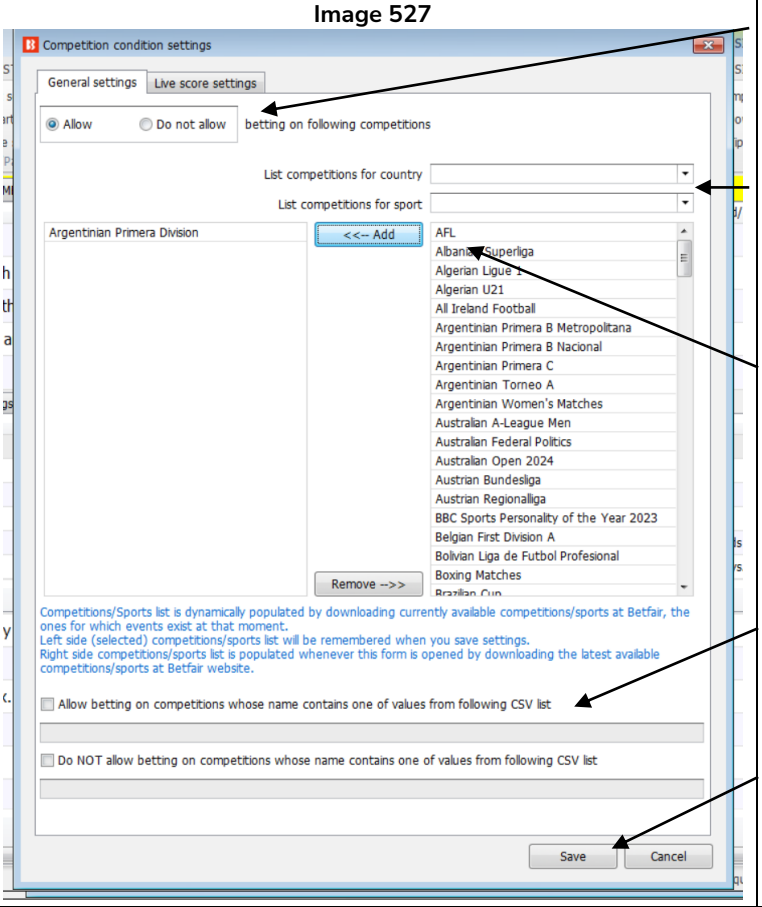
The country filter allows you to specify the country to allow or prevent betting on. In the same way as the events filter, it has a “dynamically populated” list. So only countries that are currently up on the Betfair site are included. For example, if there is no “Israel” country currently on the site, that country name will not appear here until Betfair puts that country on their site. Alternately, you can enter the names of the countries as a CSV list (the country names separated by commas) at the bottom.

Image 525  	To add a country, left click-on the right-hand side country list, then click the “Add” button to add that country to the left-hand side allowed countries list. You can remove a country in the same way with the “Remove” button. When you have added all the countries you want, click Save. In the image on the left, it allows betting on Canada, India and Germany.
Image 526 	You can also simply enter a CSV list of the countries that you want to allow or prevent betting on. In the image on the left, it allows betting on Canada, India and Germany, which is the same effect as selecting the countries from the list as in the above image. You can enter both country names and country codes in the CSV list. So “Canada,India,Germany” or “Canada,India,DE” are both acceptable. (Please note there are no spaces to separate the names and codes, only commas.)

14.1.4 Competitions filter

The competitions filter allows you to specify the competition to allow or prevent betting on. In the same way as the events filter, it has a “dynamically populated” list. So only competitions that are currently up on the Betfair site are included. For example, if there is no “Olympics” competition currently on the site, that competition name will not appear here until Betfair puts that competition on their site.

Image 527



You can set this rule to allow or prevent betting on the specified competitions with this “Allow” or “Do not allow” option.

There are a large number of competitions, so you can filter down the list by country and sport to make it easier to find the competition you are looking for,

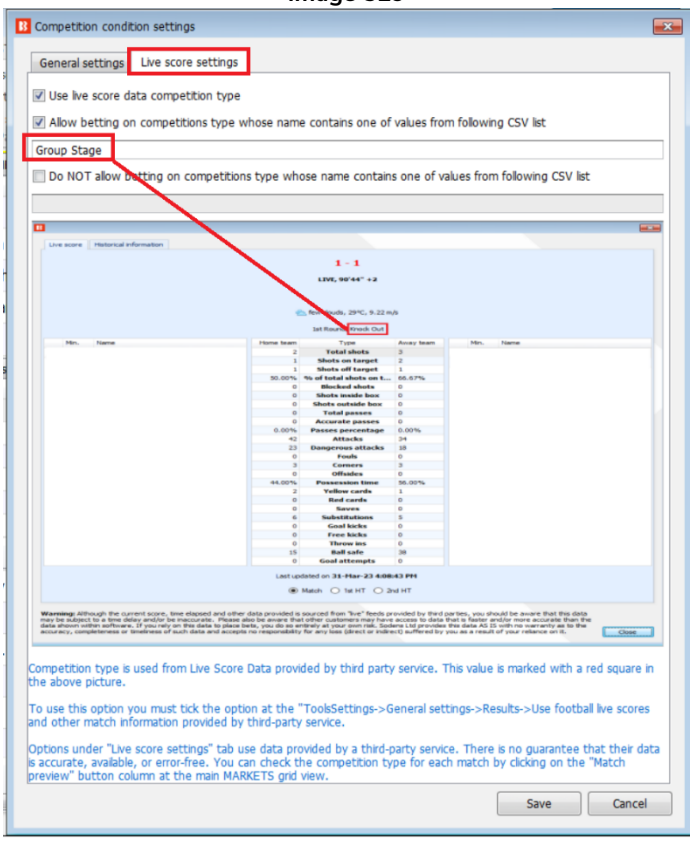
To add a competition, left click-on the right-hand side competition list, then click the “Add” button to add that competition to the left-hand side allowed competitions list. You can remove a competition in the same way with the “Remove” button.

You can also use a CSV list (names separated by commas) of competitions to allow or prevent betting.

When you have added all the competitions you want, click Save.

Image 528

Image 529



There is second tab in this rule that allows or prevents betting on market by competition type, such as knockout or group stage.

This tab will appear blank until the "Use live score data competition type" checkbox is ticked. This is because it is important to understand that the data used for this rule comes from a 3rd party in-play data service. It does not come from Betfair. Not all Betfair markets are covered, so users should be aware of this before using this rule.

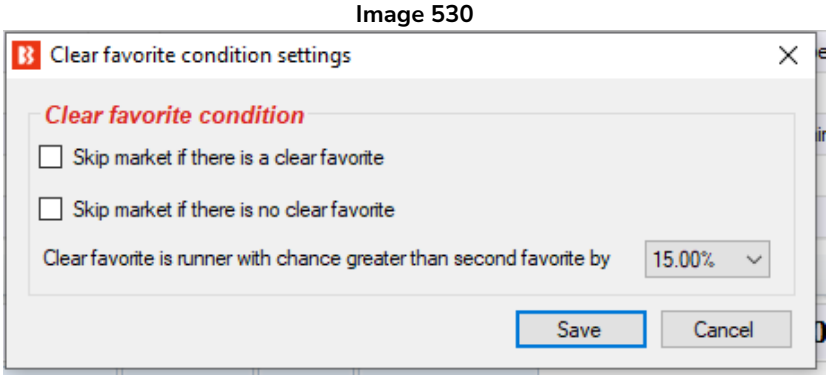
To use this option, you must also tick the option at the "Tools/Settings-> General settings -> Results -> Use football live scores and other match information provided by third-party service.

Options under the "Live score settings" tab use data provided by a third-party service. There is no guarantee that their data is accurate, available or error-free. You can check the competition type to see how they label matches by clicking on the "Match preview" button column at the main Markets grid view.

In the example image, the rule only allows betting on "Group Stage" competitions, but the game being monitored is a "Knock Out" competition so it would not allow betting on this market.

14.1.5 Clear favourites

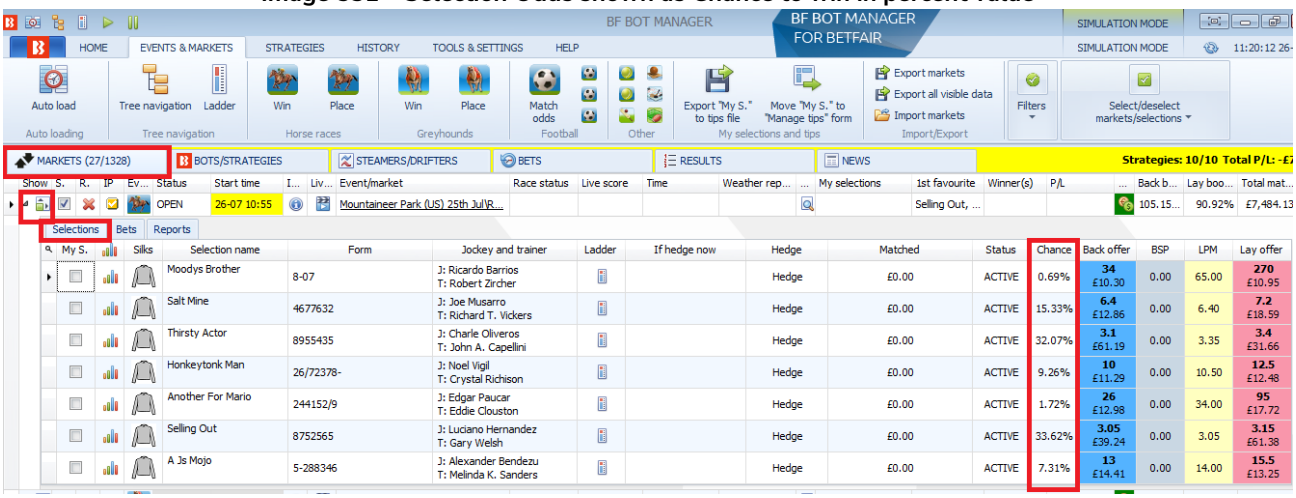
Image 530



This rule tells the strategy to skip a market if there is or is not a clear favorite.
You can set what "clear favorite" is defined as with the percentage drop-down menu. This defines a clear favorite by how much greater its chance of winning is than the second favorite.

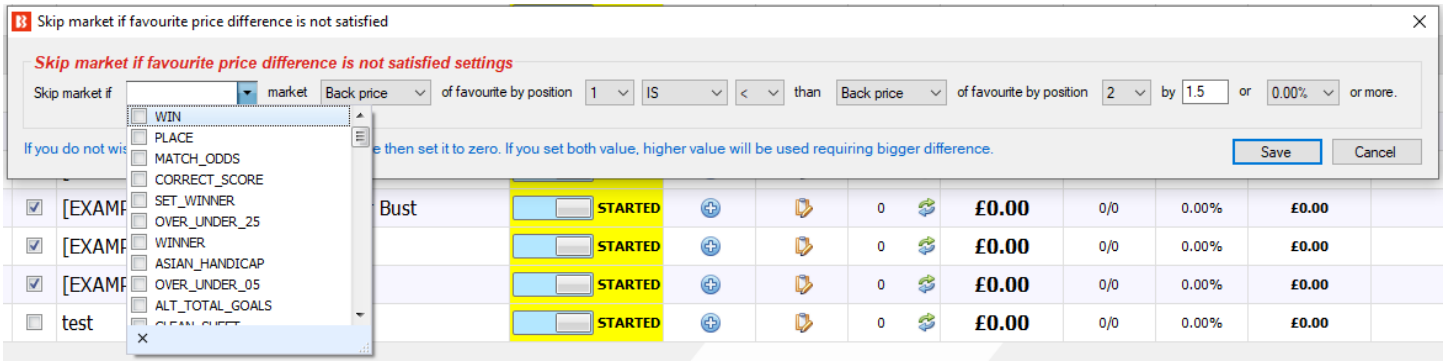
So if the favorite has odds of 2.00 it has a 50% chance of winning. If the second favorite has odds of 3.00, it has a 33% chance of winning. The gap between the first favorite and second favorite is 17%. If a clear favorite is defined as a gap of 15% or more, then in ithis example, the 2.00 odds first favorite would be classed as a clear favorite. You can adjust this figure to your strategy needs. Each favourite's chance to win can be viewed in the selections form in the market grids view. The chance value is calculated by using the available runners back and lay price.

Image 531 – Selection Odds shown as Chance to win in percent value



14.1.6 Skip if favourite difference is not satisfied

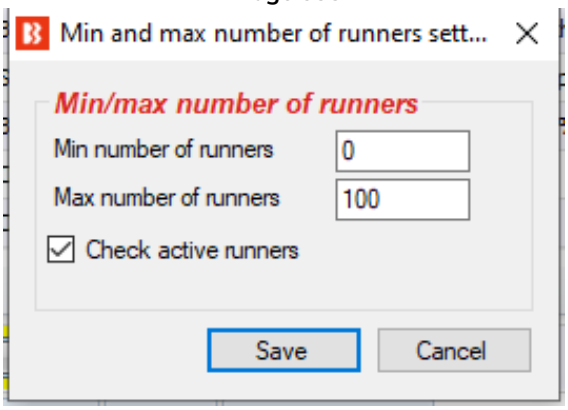
Image 532



This rule is a more customizable version of the "skip market if clear favourite" rule since it allows you to specify which market type of the event it should look at, which price to look at (back, lay last traded, etc.), which favorite by position it should be compared to and to judge the difference in absolute terms or by percentage.

14.1.7 Min/max number of runners

Image 533



The Min/Max number of runners rule allows betting on the market only if this number of runners rule is met. This is often useful for events that have variable numbers of runners, such as horse races. In this case, a minimum and maximum number of runners can be set. Ticking the "Check active runners" checkbox will exclude Removed runners from horse races.

14.1.8 Min/max required price for selection on market

This rule allows betting on **a market** if a specified selection has a price in the specified range. It is important to note that this is a market condition, so it allows or prevents betting on the entire market based on this rule. Even if your strategy is set to bet on the favorite, if this rule checks the price of the second favorite, then it will allow or prevent betting on this market based on that. So it is important to make sure that this rule is focusing on the price of the runner that you want it to. **Multiple incidences of this rule can be used**, so you can tell the strategy to check the prices of multiple runners are within different specified ranges. This was demonstrated in the Little Acorns Example Strategy that checks the prices of the second and third favorites in with 2 incidences of this rule in the market conditions tab. Then it will only bet when both conditions are satisfied.

Image 534

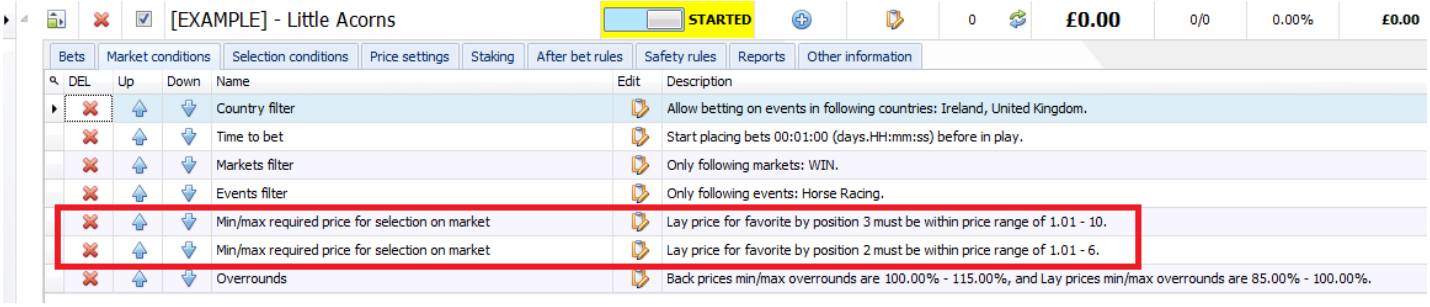
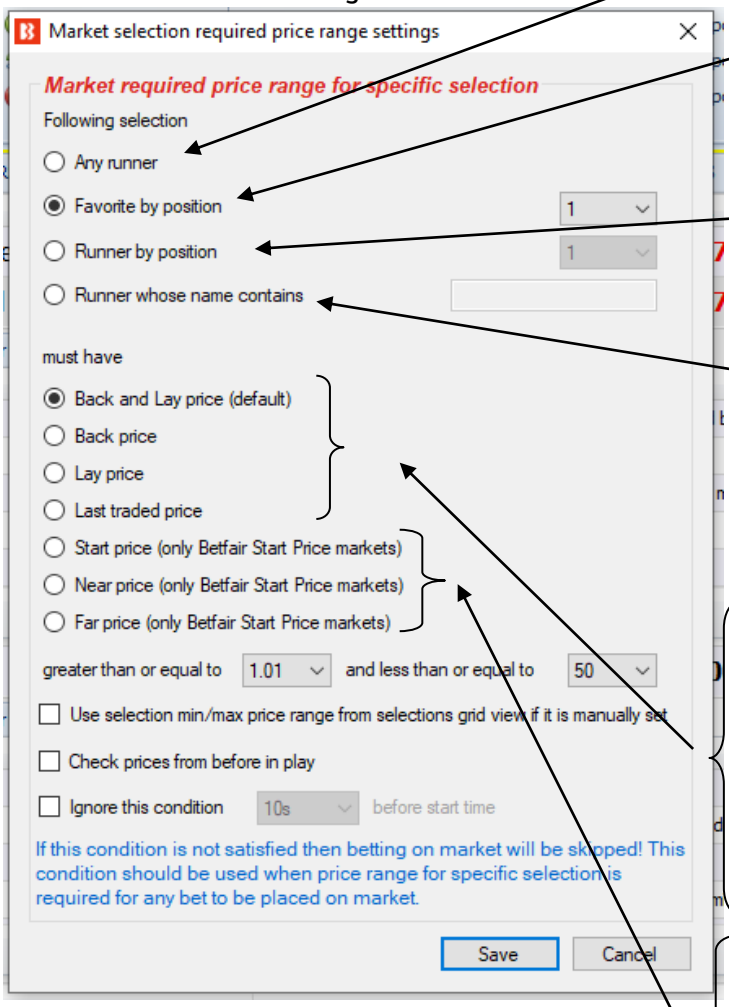


Image 535



Any runner tells the bot to look at the price of all selections. So a selection not within the price range will not be bet on.

Favorite by position tells the bot to look at the price of a favorite by position to allow or prevent betting, even if the selection we want to bet on is different from the one being checked.

Runner by position tells the bot to look at the price of a runner by position to allow or prevent betting, even if the selection we want to bet on is different from the one being checked.

Runner whose name contains tells the bot to look at the price of a runner whose name contains the following text to allow or prevent betting, even if the selection we want to bet on is different from the one being checked.

These settings tell the bot **which price to use**:

Back and Lay price option means that both the back price and the lay price must be within the set odds range.

Back price is the currently available 1st best back price.

Lay price is the currently available 1st best lay price.

Last traded price is the last price that a bet was matched at.

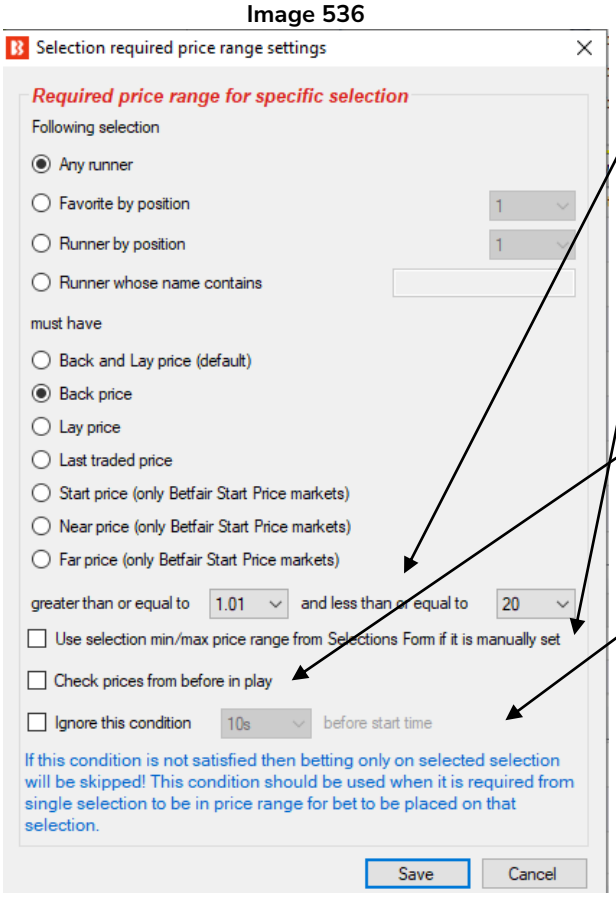
Start price is the Betfair Start Price (BSP). This price is only available for markets that have a BSP.

Near price* is the projected starting price (SP) if the market were to suspend now.

The Far price* is calculated by using only the SP bets and assumes that there will be no Exchange market at the time the market is determined.

*The Near Price and Far Price are advanced pricing concepts, mainly used for horse racing, and it is not really necessary to understand them unless you want to use them.

Image 536



These drop down menus **select the required price minimums and maximums.**
This tells the strategy to **use manually entered min/max prices** for that selection if they were set in the markets grid screen in that selection grid view.
This option tells the strategy to **use prices from before in-play**. This is very useful for in-play betting when we want to use the starting odds, not the current odds. The prices before in-play will be the **recorded prices with the best overround in the 5 minutes before the start of the event** by default. It will look at the odds of the type selected in the section above (Back and Lay, Back, Lay, etc.)
This option tells the bot to **ignore the price rule at a certain point before the start time.** This is useful if you are trying to get better odds, but will accept the available market odds at the start time to make sure the bet is placed.

14.1.9 Overrounds

The **Overrounds** rule is extremely important in order to make sure bets are placed at **valid prices**.
When a new strategy is created this rule is added by default. If we click on the "Edit" button for **Overrounds**, we can see the detailed settings possible for this rule.

Image 537 Overrounds

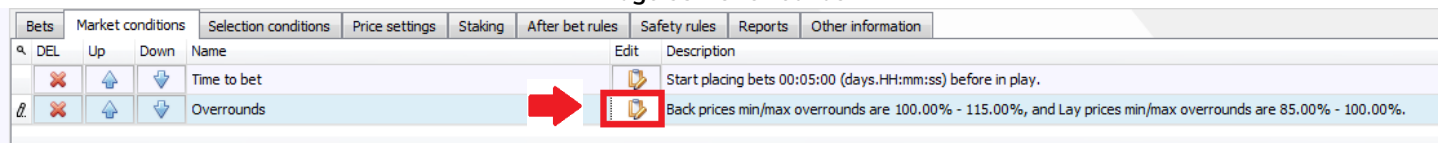
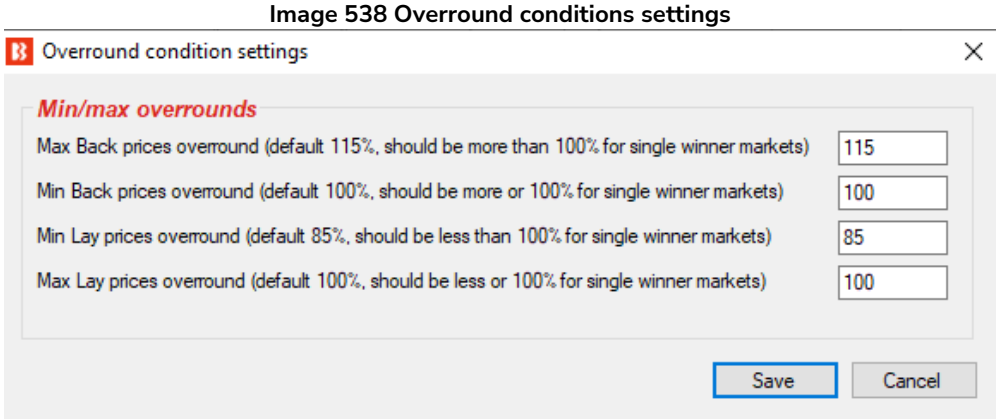


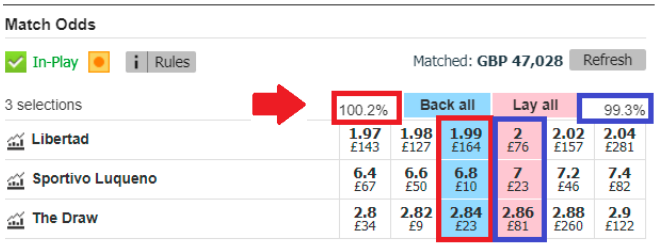
Image 538 Overround conditions settings



The current rule states that it will not place bets unless the **"back prices overround are between 100%-115% or the lay prices overround are between 85%-100%".** But what does this mean?

The easiest way to think of the overround number is as **a measure of how developed a market is** as a whole. It is a sum of either the back or lay odds after being converted to their percentage probability. Another way to view the overround is to look at a Betfair market.

Image 539 A Developed Market



1.99 back odds = a 50.3% implied chance
6.80 back odds = a 14.7% implied chance
2.84 back odds = a 35.2% implied chance
Total implied chance of back odds= 100.2%

2.00 lay odds = a 50% implied chance
7.00 lay odds = a 14.3% implied chance
2.86 lay odds = a 35% implied chance
Total implied chance of lay odds= 99.3%

In the image we can see at a glance that this market is developed and we would be happy to bet on this market. The odds are close together and if we convert the odds to an aggregated probability in percentage, we get 100.2% for the back odds and 99.3% for the lay odds

The overround is a way to quantify in numbers if the odds add up to near 100%. No market will be 100% and bookmakers often run overrounds of 102.5%-110% or more which make up their "margin" where they try to guarantee their profit. So the closer to 100%, the better.

This market clears the bot's overround rule of 100%-115% for back odds and 85%-100% for lay odds.

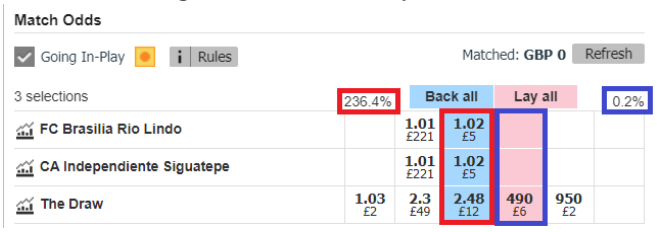
Image 540 A semi-developed market

3.20 back odds = a 31.3% implied chance
2.30 back odds = a 43.5% implied chance
3.20 back odds = a 31.3% implied chance
Total implied chance of back odds= 106.1%

3.95 lay odds = a 25.3% implied chance
2.56 lay odds = a 39.1% implied chance
3.80 lay odds = a 26.3% implied chance
Total implied chance of lay odds= 90.7%

In this image, we see a semi-developed market where the back and lay odds available are not so close together yet. If we add up the back odds implied probability we get an overround of 106%. This is not great for a major market before the event start, but for in-play markets or minor markets pre-start, there are occasions when being too strict with overrounds can lead to bets not getting placed.
This market still clears the bot's overround rule of 100%-115% for back odds and 85%-100% for lay odds.
If you want to change your overrounds, it can be a good idea to manually check the Betfair site for the expected overround levels that occur for the markets you want to bet on. Too strict and bets might not get placed, too loose and you might get poor odds.

Image 541 An undeveloped market



1.02 back odds = a 98% implied chance
1.02 back odds = a 98% implied chance
2.48 back odds = a 40.4% implied chance
Total implied chance of lay odds= 236.4%

490 lay odds = a 0.2% implied chance

In this image, we see a very undeveloped market that we would definitely not want to place bets on.
If we add up the back odds implied probability we get an overround of 236.4%. Only one of the selections has lay odds giving an overround of 0.2%.
This market would not clear the bot's overround rule of 100%-115% for back odds and 85%-100% for lay odds.

So we can see that the Overrounds rule in the Market Conditions area is there to avoid betting on undeveloped markets and invalid prices. One thing to note is that these overrounds are for single winner markets. Markets with multiple winners, such as place markets in horse racing, will have higher overrounds even if they are a developed market. **The Overrounds rule will multiply the settings to work for markets with multiple winners.** For example, a 110% setting for a single winner market will be automatically calculated as a 330% setting for a market with 3 winners such as a place market in horse racing.

14.1.10 Time to bet

The "Time to bet" rule is another rule, like the Overrounds rule, that is included by default when we create a new strategy. It is essential to tell the strategy when it can bet. If we click on the "Edit" button for **Time to Bet**, we can see the detailed settings possible for this rule.

Image 542 Time to Bet

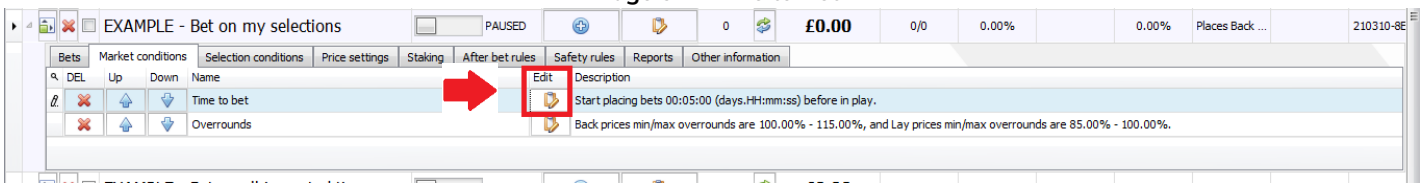
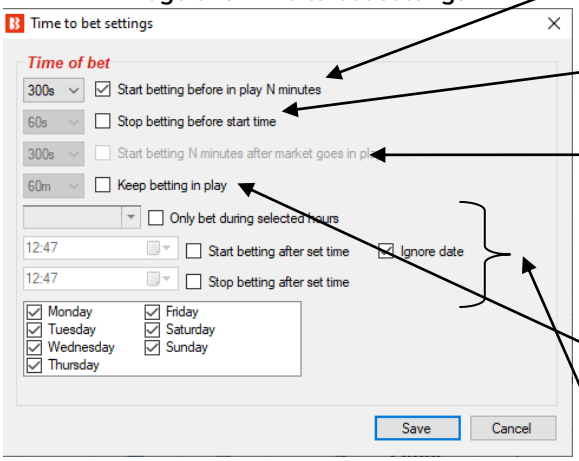


Image 543 Time to bet settings



This tells the strategy to **start placing its bets at 300s (5 minutes) before the event starts.** This can be changed with the drop down menu to a time that you want.
If this box is checked, we can **set a time to stop betting before the start time.**
If this box is checked, we can tell the strategy to **start betting at a certain point after the event has started** and gone in-play. This option is currently greyed out because the bot has been set to start betting before in-play. If the first box is unchecked, then this option becomes available.
If this box is checked, the bot will be allowed **to place bets in-play** if the strategy conditions are met until the time set here.
These options **limit bot activity to specific times of day or days of week.** This is useful if we only want the bot active at specific times.

Please note that this rule allows the strategy to bet at the specified times, but in order to place bets, the markets must be loaded in the markets grid view and the market must be being actively monitored for its prices to be downloaded and give the strategy the price data it needs to function. If your strategy is not placing bets even though it is within the specified time to bet, then the loaded markets or the market monitoring times might be the problem. See the Key Concepts: Loading Markets and Monitoring Markets sections for more details on those.

14.1.11 Traded volume

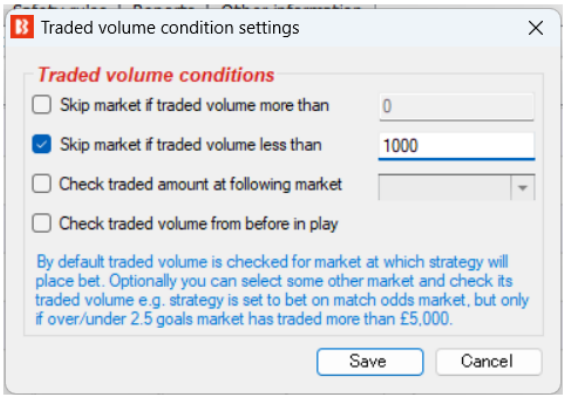
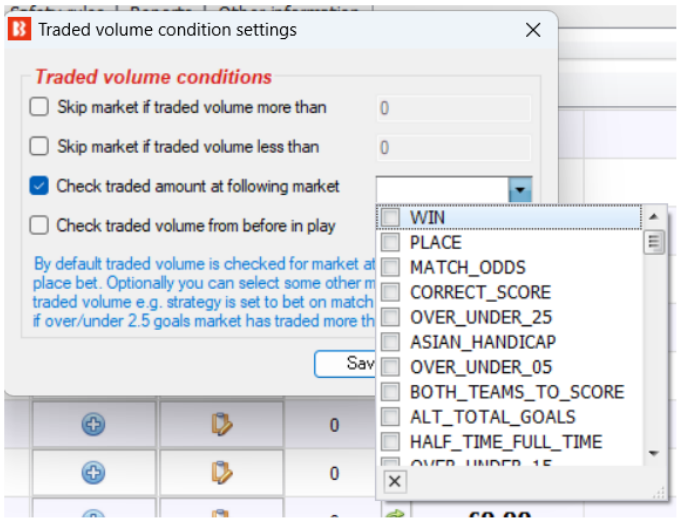


Image 544



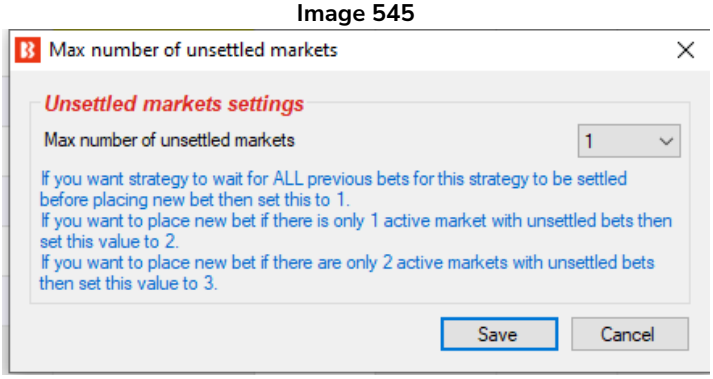
This rule skips a market if its traded volume is above or below the level set here.

It is also possible to set the rule to check a different market of the same event. In this way you can allow betting on a football Match Odds market when its Over/under 2.5 goals market has over a certain amount traded. You can have multiple instances of this rule if you want the strategy to check the traded volume of multiple markets of the same event.

If you are betting in-play and you want the bot to check the traded volume before in-play, then you can select "Check traded volume from before in-play".

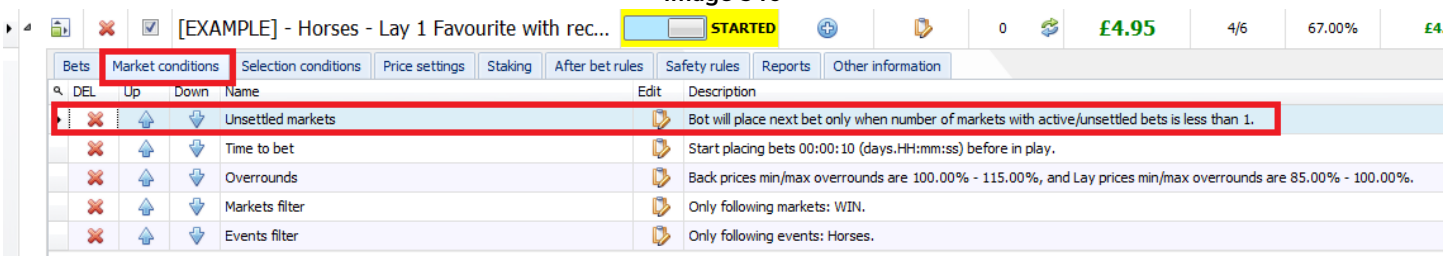
14.1.12 Unsettled markets

Image 545



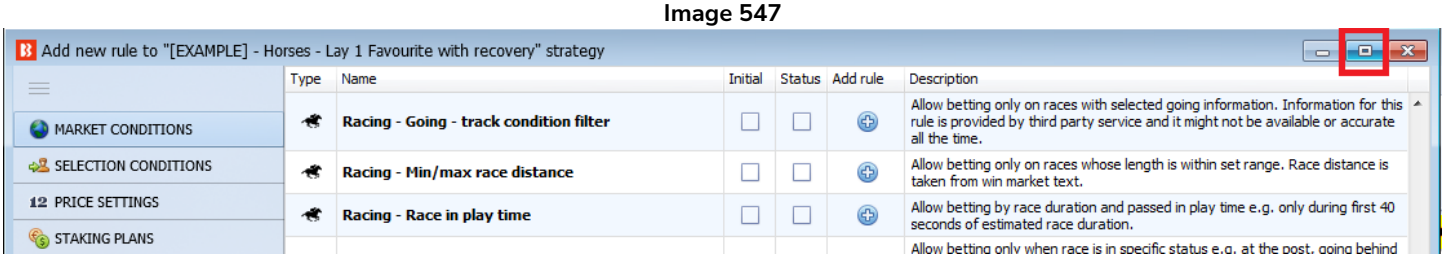
This rule is used when you want to limit the number of markets a strategy bets on at one time. For example, with recovery staking plans, since the next stake can only be calculated accurately after the previous bet has been settled, this rule can limit the strategy to only place the next bet once the previous bet has been settled. This was demonstrated in the [Example Strategy Horses – Lay 1 Favorite with recovery](#).

Image 546



If you want the strategy to wait for ALL previous bets for this strategy to be settled before placing a new bet, then set this to 1. If you want to place a new bet if there is only 1 active market with unsettled bets for this strategy then set this value to 2.

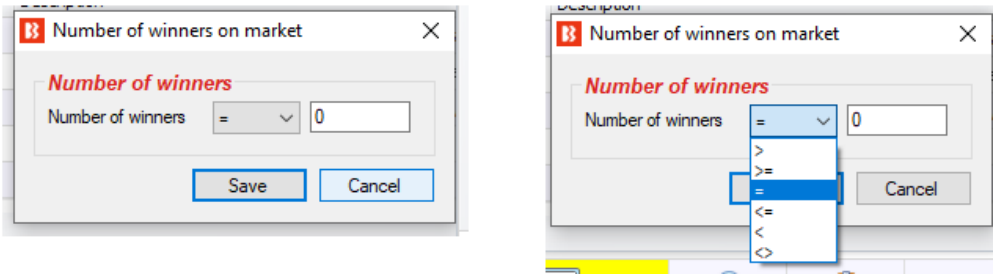
Image 547



This **Unsettled Markets** rule is at the bottom of the Market Condition list, and if your windows taskbar is blocking you from viewing it, then you can click on the Expand button at the top right corner of the Market Conditions form and then you will be able to scroll successfully to the bottom and select the rule.

14.1.13 Number of winners

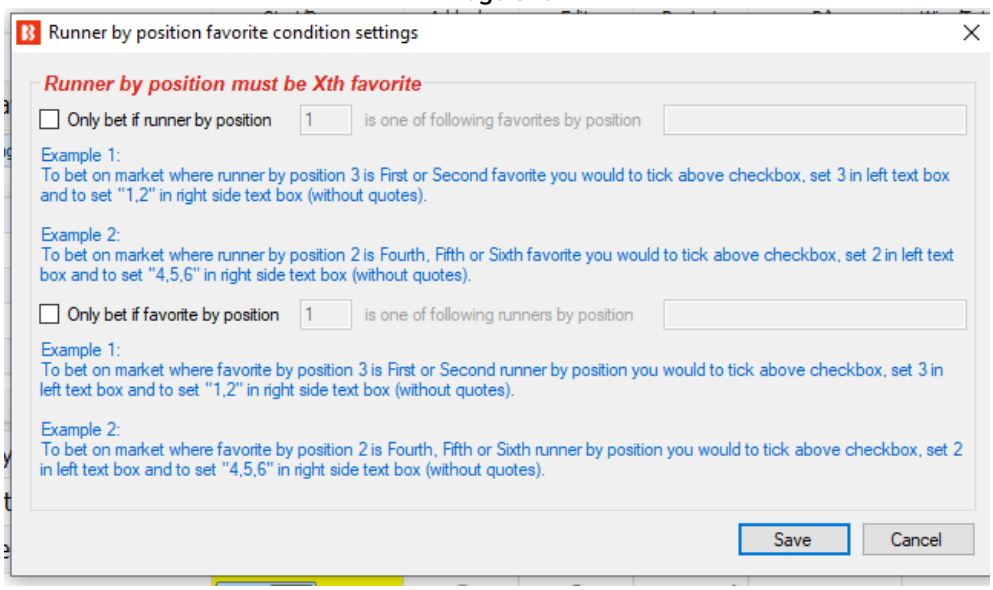
Image 548



This allows you to limit betting to markets that have more, less or exactly a certain number of winners. For example, Place markets in horse racing sometimes have 2 winners or 3 winners depending on the race. In those cases this rule can be useful to limit betting to the desired market types.

14.1.14 Runner by position favourite condition

Image 549

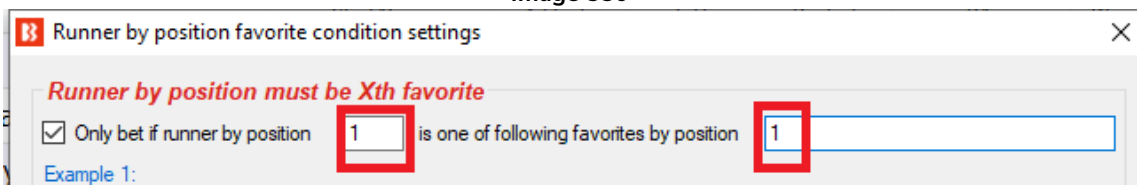


This rule allows betting in two cases:

1) Allow betting on the market only if the runner by position is one of the specified favourites by position
2) Allow betting on the market only if the favourite by position is one of the specified runners by position

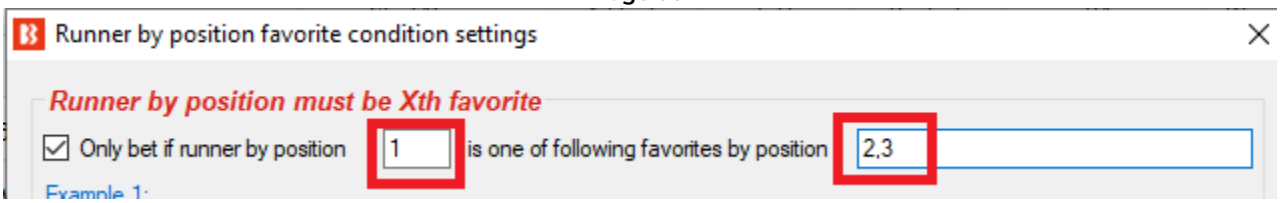
1) Allow betting on the market only if the runner by position is one of the specified favourites by position

Image 550



Example 1: Only allow betting if the 1st runner in the market (runner by position 1) is also the favourite (favourite by position 1). In many cases, horses are listed in order of expected favorite position, so the first horse on the list is often the pre-market opening favorite. If you wanted to bet only when the pre-market opening favorite is still the favorite at your specified time to bet, then it could be done with this rule.

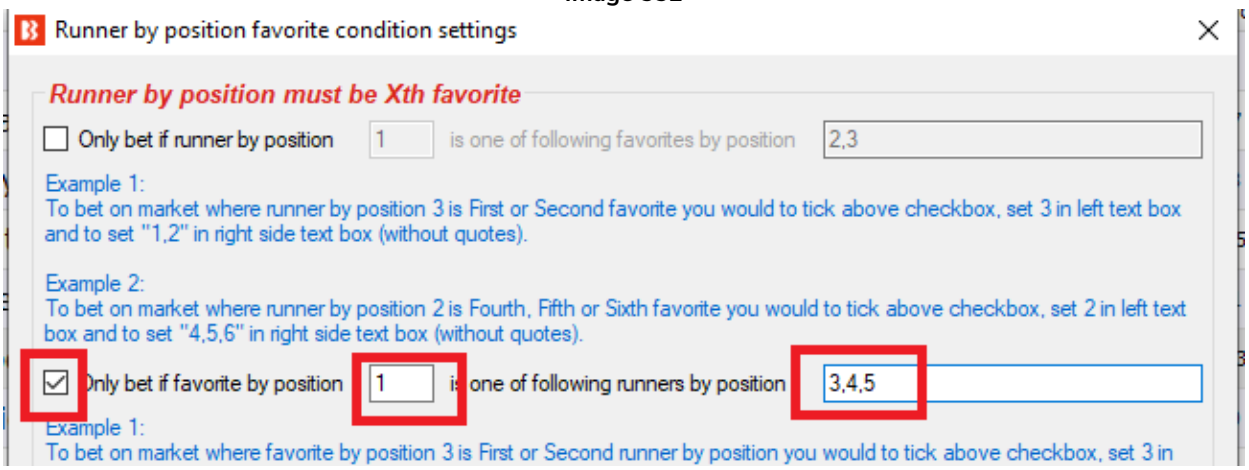
Image 551



Example 2: Only allow betting if the 1st runner in the market is (runner by position 1) is the 2nd or 3rd favorite (favorite by position 2,3,). This would be the opposite of example one, where we want to only bet if the horse was the pre-market opening favorite but its odds have drifted out so it is the 2nd or 3rd favourite by odds at the specified time to bet.

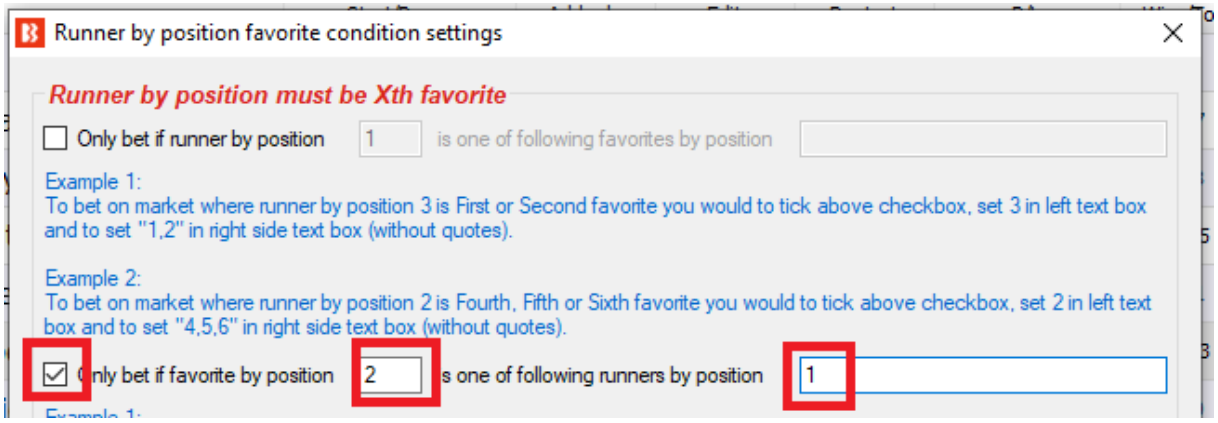
2) Allow betting on the market only if the favourite by position is one of the specified runners by position

Image 552



Example 1: Only allow betting if the favourite (favorite by position 1) is the 3rd, 4th or 5th listed selection (runner by position 3,4,5).

Image 553

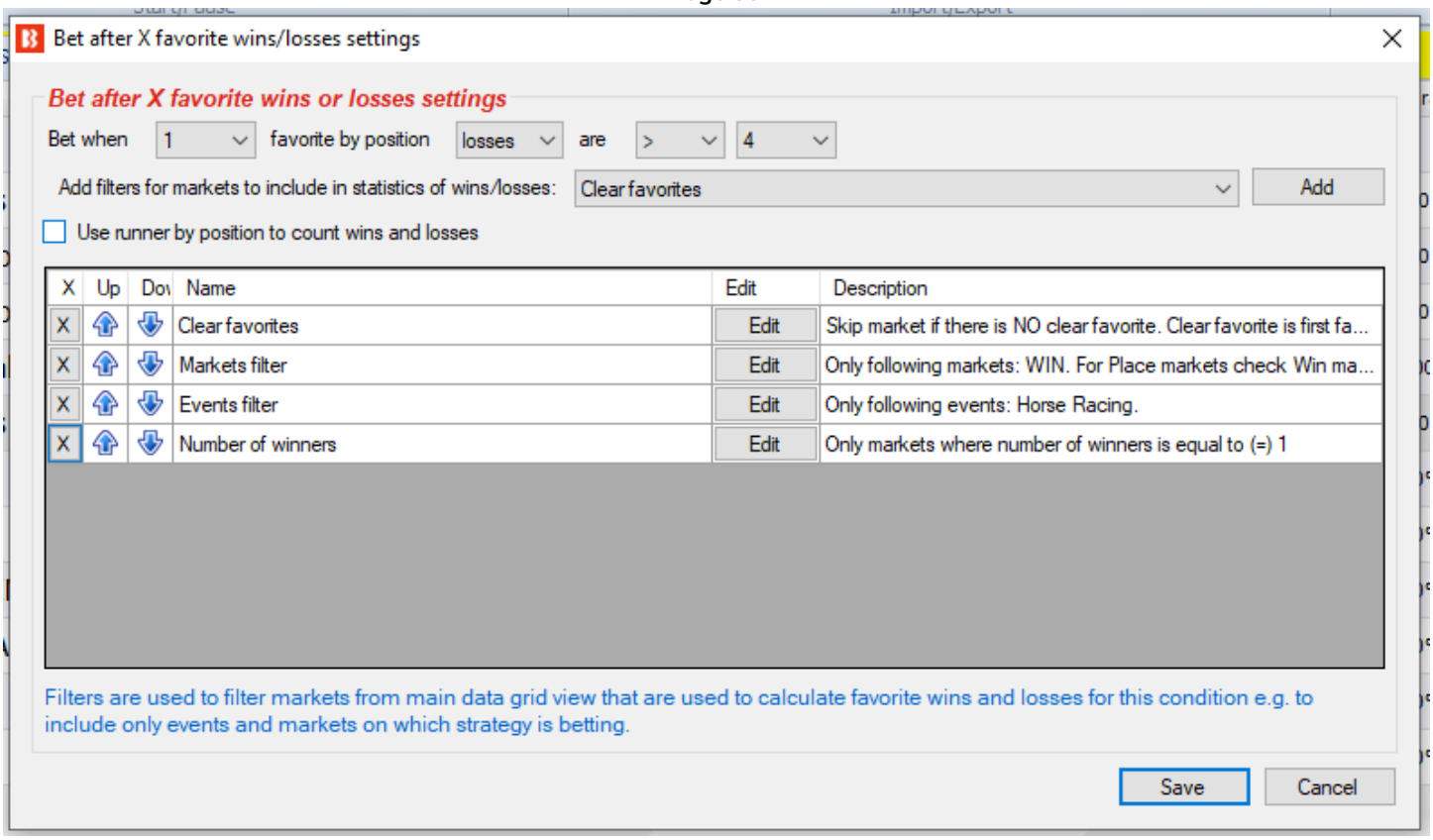


Example 2: Only allow betting if the second favorite (favourite by position 2) is the first listed selection (runner by position 1)

The first numeric text box is for the runner/favourite by position and the second one is for favourites/runners by position. The second text box supports a CSV (comma separated values) list of IDs where you can specify "1, 3, 4" for the first, third and fourth runner or favourite by position. Multiple instances of this rule can be used to specify rules for different runners and favourites.

14.1.15 Bet after Xth favourite wins or loses

Image 554



This condition is used to prevent betting on a market until the specified favourite by position wins or loses specified number of times.

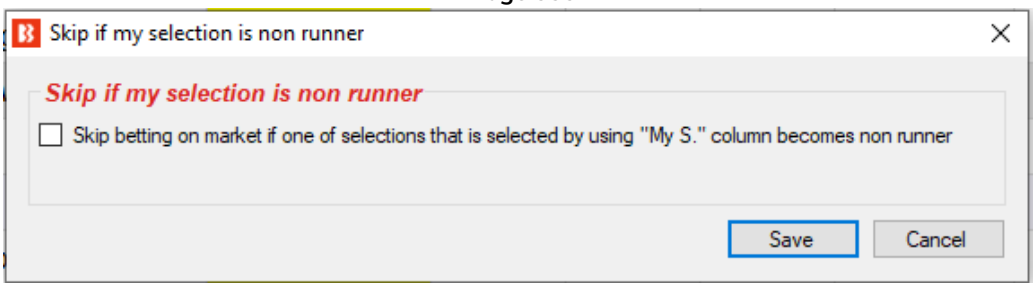
Optionally, you can specify filters for markets when counting favourite wins and loses. Filters are used because favourite wins and losses are counted by going through all the main markets data grid view regardless of event (football, horses, greyhounds, etc.) unless filtered. Usually your strategy is only betting on some of the markets from the main markets data grid view and it makes sense to include only those markets when counting favourite wins and losses.

Most users will set filters to be similar to or the same as the ones in their “Markets conditions” tab, but they also give you possibility of setting filters so that favourite wins and losses are counted only on Place markets (or any other market) while the strategy is actually placing bets on the Win market. This makes this condition very flexible and useful for specific strategies that users might have.

If you want to count “runner by position” wins and losses instead of “favourite by position” then tick the option “Use runner by position to count wins and losses”. In that case those conditions will apply to “runner by position” instead of “favourite by position”.

14.1.16 Skip market if my selection is non-runner

Image 555

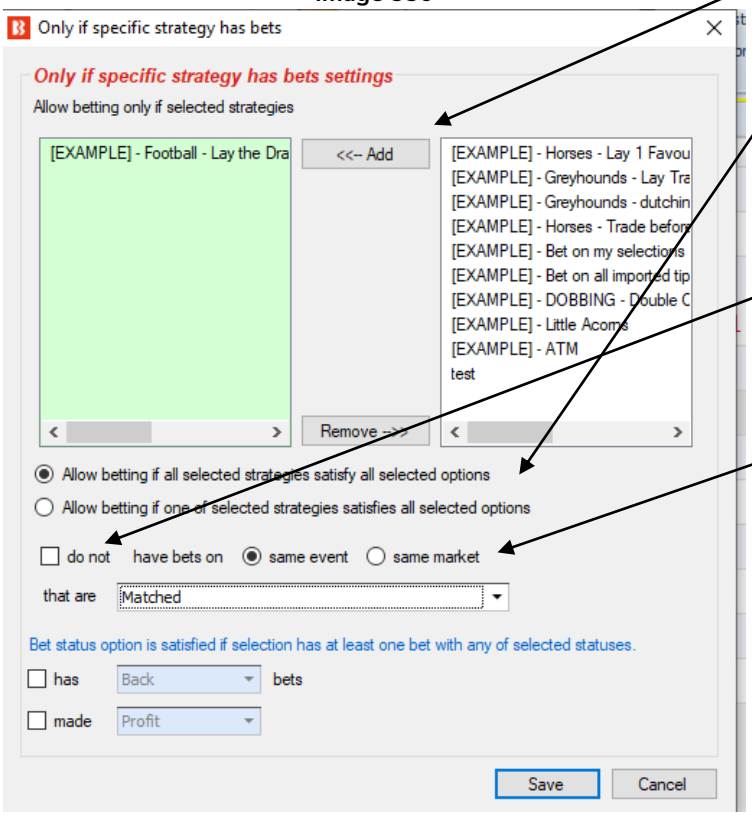


If a user has selected multiple selections with the "My.S." my selections column checkbox, but one of those selections becomes a non-runner and you want to skip betting entirely on this market without even betting on your other My.S. selections, then this rule can be used.

14.1.17 Only if selected strategies have bets

This rule is very useful when you have two strategies that you want to work together as a blocker or a trigger, by either not betting on the same selections (blocker) or where one only bets if the other one has also bets (trigger).

Image 556

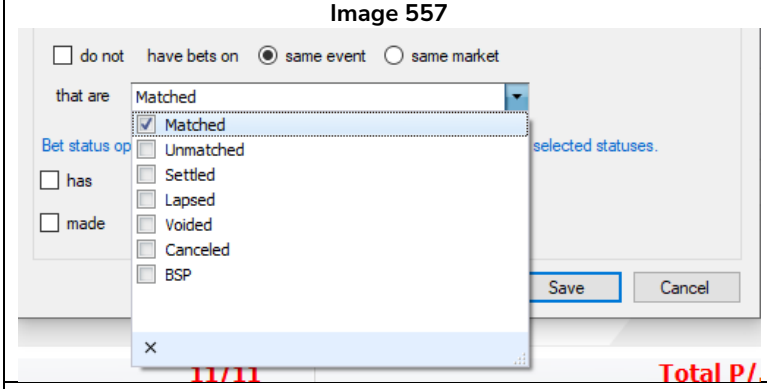
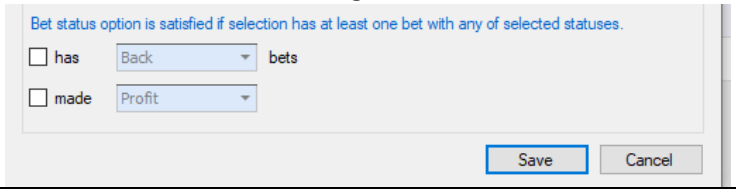


You can add the strategies that you want the strategy to check for bets by choosing from the list of strategies and clicking on "Add".

If you select multiple strategies, then you can tell the strategy to allow betting if ALL or just ONE of the strategies satisfies the other options.

You can choose to allow betting if the selected strategies have bets on an event or market, or even do not have bets by clicking the "do not" have bets checkbox.

You can specify that the selected strategies need bets on the same EVENT or the same MARKET. The difference between these options is very important, so understand this option clearly. Allowing betting if there are bets on the same MARKET, means that if this strategy is set to bet on Match_Odds markets, then it will only bet if the selected strategies also have bets on the Match_Odds market. But if you allow betting when there are bets on the same EVENT, then, if this strategy is set to bet on the Match_Odds market then it would bet if the selected strategies have bets on any market from the same event such as Over/Under 2.5 goals, Correct Score, Half Time, etc. It is important to understand these trigger and blocker settings.

Image 557  	You can also set the strategy to bet or not based on whether another strategy has **matched, unmatched, settled, lapsed, voided, cancelled or BSP bets** on an event or market. For example, this is very useful if you want to set a strategy place bets only if another strategy's bets lapsed from being unmatched.
Image 558  	You can also specify for this condition to be considered satisfied if the specified strategies have back or lay bets that have made a profit or loss.

This rule is very useful, but please be aware that this is the MARKET CONDITIONS version of this rule and another rule exists in the SELECTIONS CONDITIONS that focusses just on selections. This market conditions rule allows or prevents betting on an ***entire market*** based on another strategy having a bet of the specified status on any selection in this event or market. If you just want to allow or prevent betting on a single selection (but still allow betting on other selections in that market) due to another strategy having a bet on that same selection, then you need to use the selections condition version of this rule.

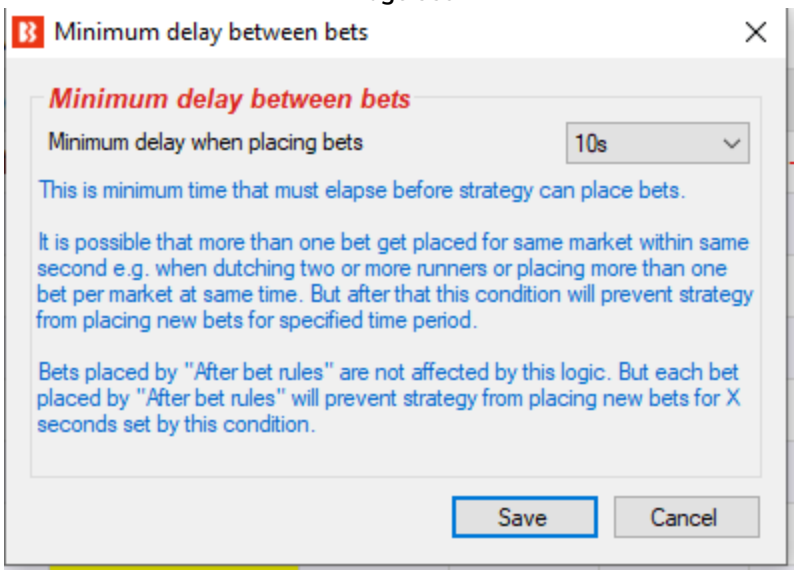
Example 1: Over/Under Goals Markets
With this rule, you can set one strategy to bet only on the Under/Over 0.5 goals market. If that strategy has settled bets then a goal was scored and the Under/Over 0.5 goals market is closed. You can then set a second strategy to bet on the Under/Over 1.5 goals market and add this condition to check if the first strategy has settled bets on the same event. This would ensure that second strategy only places bets on the Under/Over 1.5 goals market when the first strategy has settled bets on the same event. As the first strategy is only placing bets on the Under/Over 0.5 goals markets this would mean that second strategy will only place bets when a goal is scored and the score is either 1-0 or 0-1.

Example 2: In-play strategies triggered by pre-event imported tip strategies
If you are getting 3rd party tips that show consistency and you have confidence in, it is possible to create strategies that will place extra bets in-play based on those tips and conditional on the in-play statistics of the event (e.g. if a football team is dominating a match) or on the odds of the selection (placing second bets at better odds midway though an event if your horse's price goes higher).

Example 3: Running multiple versions of the same strategy without betting on the same events
If you have a good strategy that bets on events one at a time due to its staking plan and has to wait until that bet has settled before placing another bet, but you want to bet on more matches with multiple versions of the same strategy, then you could duplicate those strategies and connect them to each other with this rule so that they do not bet when another strategy has already placed a bet on that event.

14.1.18 Min delay between initial bets

Image 559



This rule prevents additional betting for the specified amount of time. This is useful if you have a strategy that might place multiple bets at the same time but you want to put a time gap between those bets. This is also useful if you have “After bet rules” that have second bets or hedge rules. You may want to force the strategy to wait a certain amount of time before trying to place those second bets or proceed with hedge bets. **This delay only applies to initial placed bets by the strategy,** it has no effect on after bet rules or safety bets.

14.1.19 Football conditions and Football in-play data and livescores

Football conditions allow you to filter matches by using previous results, in play statistics or other information like the weather report, team formation etc. Football conditions have a football icon next to them. Football conditions are like any other conditions/rules, it is just that they are designed to work with football matches specifically.

Image 560

	Football - Bet on next over/under market				Allow betting on "total scored goals + selected goals" over/under market.
	Football - Bet when score				Allow betting when match score is one of selected values.
	Football - Filter matches by scored/conceded goa...				This rule uses previous results to check scored/coneded goals of teams in each match.
	Football - Filter matches by team form				This rule uses previous results to check team form.
	Football - Filter matches by team number of points				This rule uses previous results to check team number of points won/lost.
	Football - Filter matches by team total number of ...				This rule uses previous results to check total number of goals scored/conceded by selected team.
	Football - Home/away team odds ratio				Allow betting when ratio between home and away team odds is satisfied.
	Football - In play statistics				Allow betting when in play statistics are satisfied e.g. shots on/off goal, dangerous attacks, ball possession etc.
	Football - In play statistics (inplaytrading / inplay...				Allow betting when in play statistics are satisfied. This rule requires subscription to third party service!
	Football - Match events (goal, red/yellow card, pe...				Allow betting after match event happens within set time range.
	Football - Match minute				Allow betting only when match minute is within specified time range.
	Football - Match status				Bet when match status is one of selected values e.g. at half time or during the injury time etc.
	Football - Pitch condition				Bets when pitch condition is one of selected values.
	Football - Team formation				Bets when team formation is one of selected values.
	Football - Team position				Bets when team league position is one of selected values.
	Football - Weather type				Allow betting only when weather conditions are satisfied.

Please note that that there are 2 ways that the Bf bot Manager gets statistics for football matches

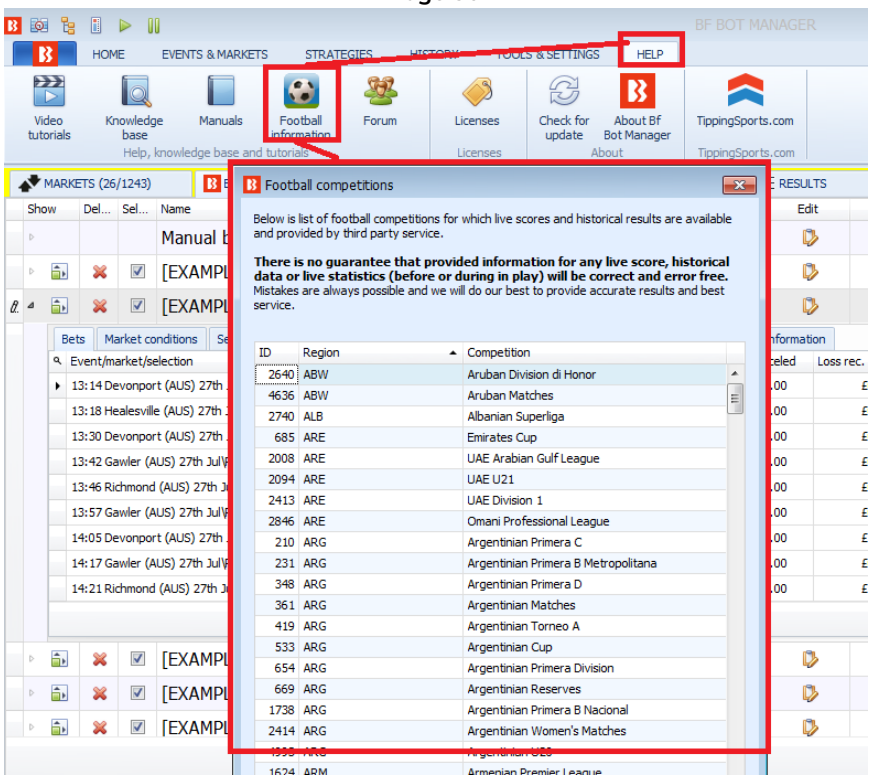
.

1. The **3rd party statistics service** that comes freely included as part of the Bf Bot Manager subscription.
2. The **inplaytrading/inplayscanner statistics service** that requires an extra subscription.

WARNING: Football information is provided by a third party service (SprtMonks) and there is no guarantee that the provided information for any live data, live score, historical or live statistics (before or during in play) will be correct and error free. Mistakes are always possible and we will do our best to provide accurate results and the best service.

The list of leagues for which live scores and historical results are provided by the 3rd party service included with the Bf Bot Manager can be checked within bot by opening “HELP->Football information” form.

Image 561



Rules that use in play statistics might require subscription to a third party service that provides those in play statistics. Such rules have a clear message at their settings form that subscription to third party service is required so that there is no confusion. Availability of this data depends on the third party service that provides those in play statistics.

Important note: Football historical data rules allow betting only if there are enough historical results to check the data. The amount of data required to allow betting depends on your user created rules. For example, if a form market condition only allows betting if a team has "5 wins in the last 10 games" then the requirement is 10 games of data. Even if the team has actually won 5 games in the last 10, if the 3rd party provider did not offer 10 games of data on this fixture, then the strategy will not be allowed to bet.. Or if we set a rule to bet on teams that won their last match, then the bot only needs 1 game of data, but if the 2rd party provider does not offer that data, then no bets will be allowed.

14.1.20 Football - Bet when score

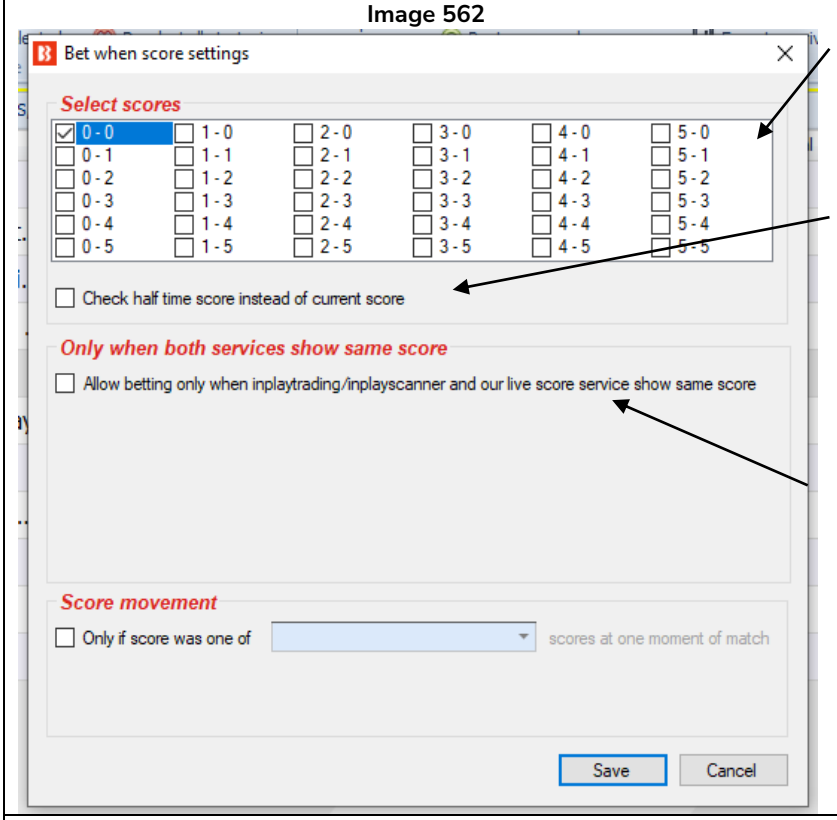
This rule allows betting when the score is as specified. Please note that that there are 2 ways that this rule can get the live score of a football match.

1. The 3rd party livescore service that comes freely included as part of the Bf Bot Manager subscription.
2. The inplaytrading/inplayscanner livescore service that requires an extra subscription.

If you are signed up to the inplaytrading/inplayscanner service, then the Bf Bot Manager service will first check to see if that service is providing a score for the match the strategy is checking. If there is no livescore provided by the inplaytrading/inplayscanner service, then and only then, will it use the 3rd party livescore

service that comes freely included as part of the Bf Bot Manager subscription. If a match is in-play and there is no livescore data from either service, then the strategy will not be triggered.

Image 562

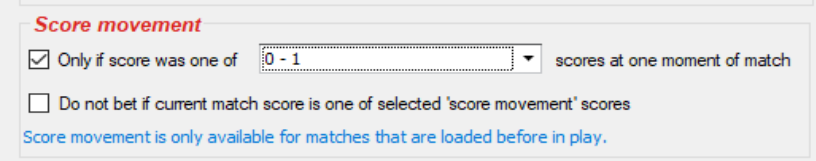


You can select the scorelines by ticking the checkbox on the left of each desired score. (In the image on the left, all the draw scorelines are ticked to only allow betting when the match is still a draw, up to a 5-5 scoreline.)

You can tell the strategy to only check the half-time scores instead of the current livescore.

You can tell the strategy to only bet when BOTH the inplaytrading/inplayscanner livescore service AND the 3rd party livescore service that comes freely included as part of the Bf Bot Manager subscription show the same score. If you have both services, then this can be a good safety feature against possible mistakes in scorelines that can occasionally occur.

Image 563

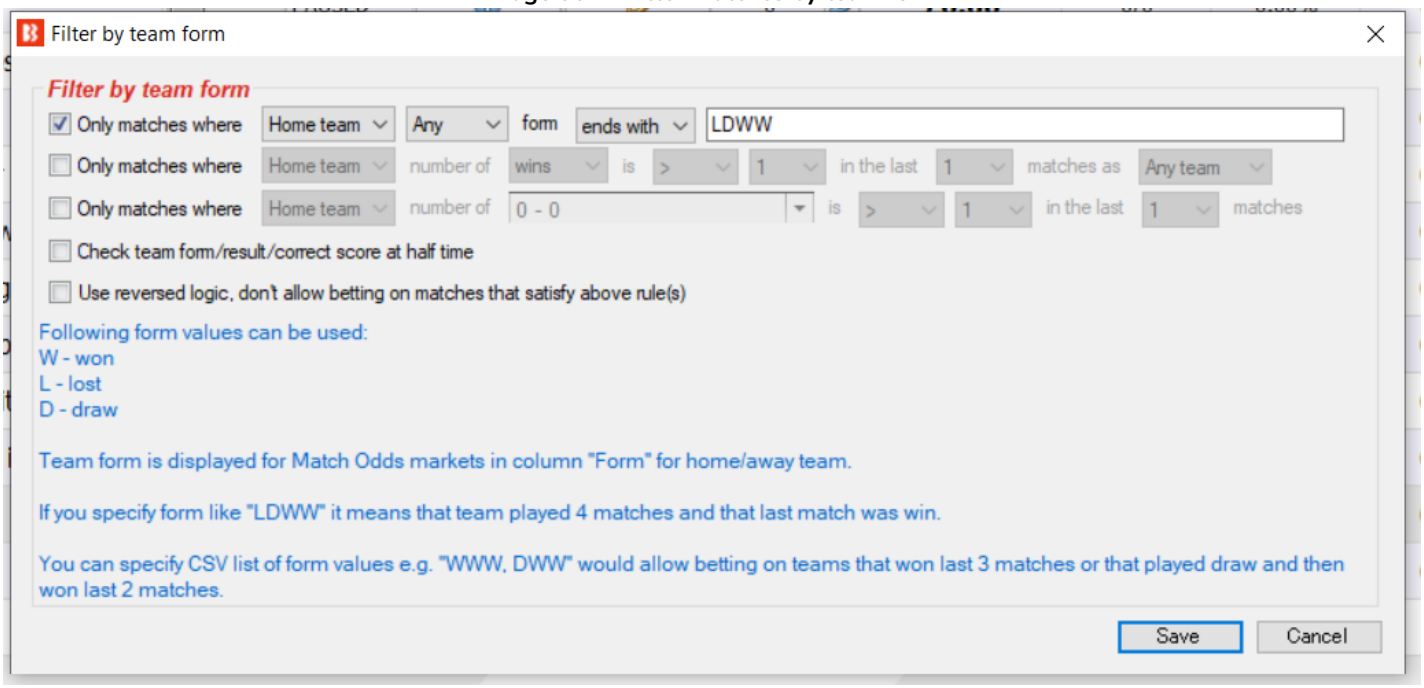


You can allow or prevent betting based on previous scorelines in the match that can be selected from the dropdown menu. For example, if you only wanted to back the home team at 1-1 if they scored the equalizer and not the away team.

WARNING: Football information is provided by a third party service (SportMonks) and there is no guarantee that the provided information for any live data, live score, historical or live statistics (before or during in play) will be correct and error free. Mistakes are always possible and we will do our best to provide accurate results and the best service.

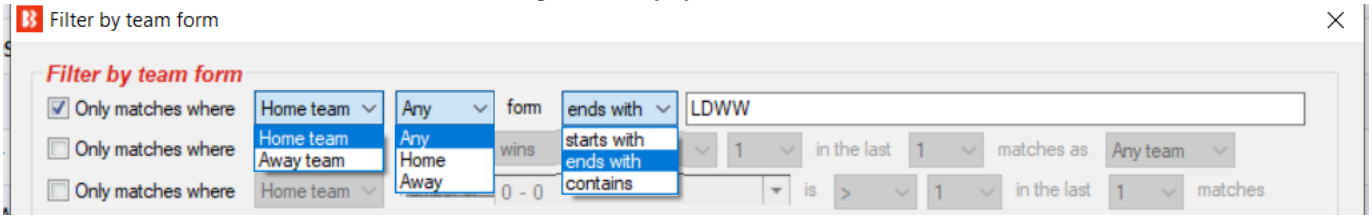
14.1.21 Football - filter matches by team form

Image 564 – Filter matches by team form



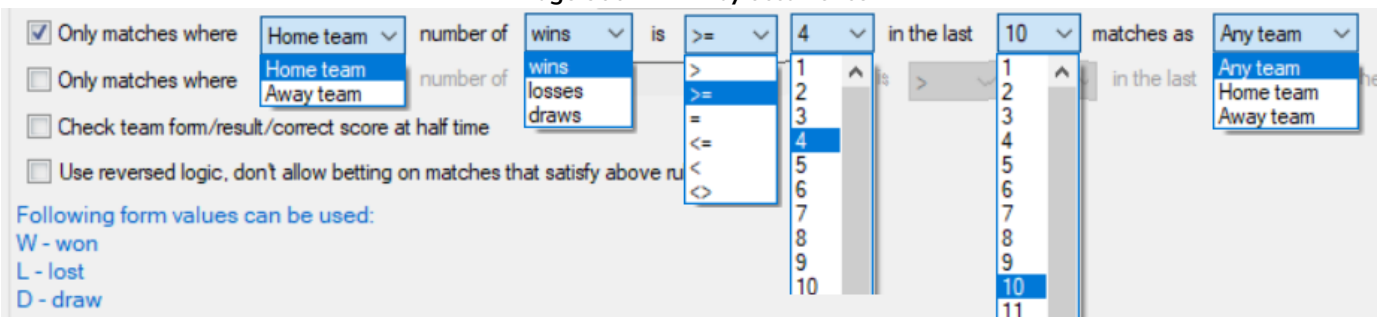
This rule allows or prevents betting based on a variety of form statistics.

Image 565 – By specific WDL form



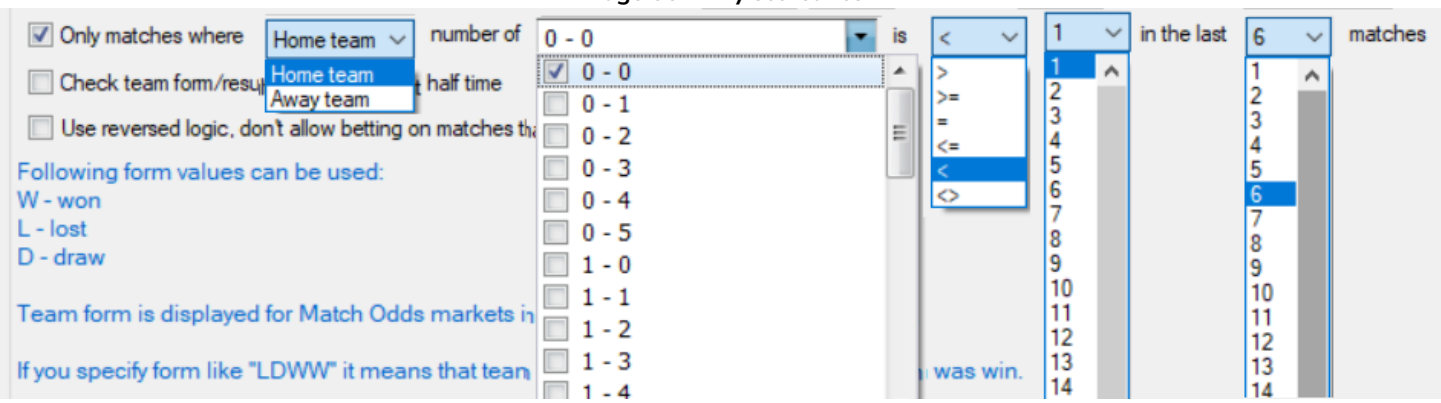
This rule allows or prevents betting on home or away teams with home/away/any form that starts/ends/contains a specific form values. When entering form, **the letter on the right is the RECENT form.** So LDW would mean that the most recent match was a win, before that a draw, before that a loss. Multiple form values can be included by separating them with commas. So “home” form “ends with” WWL,WWD would mean allow betting on any match where the team had won the previous 2 home matches (WW) before losing (WWL) or drawing (WWD) the most recent home game. Or “any” team form “contains” “WWWWWW” would mean allow betting on any match where either team had at least once, in the history provided by the 3rd party service, won 6 games in a row.

Image 566 - WDL by occurrence



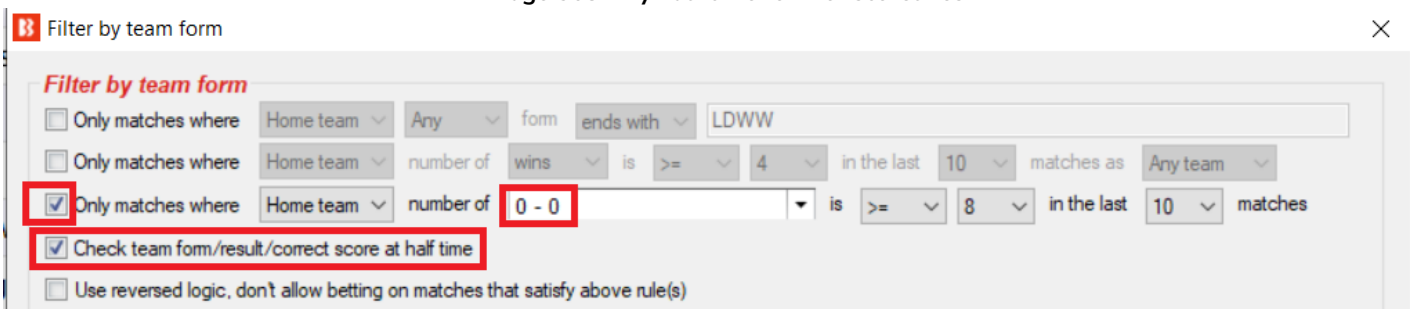
This rule allows or prevents betting on home or away teams when the specified **number of win/draws/loses in the previous x matches** pass the logic rules selected when playing as the home team, away team or both. For example, the above image allows betting when the home team has won 4 or more out of the last 10 games home or away.

Image 567 - By scorelines



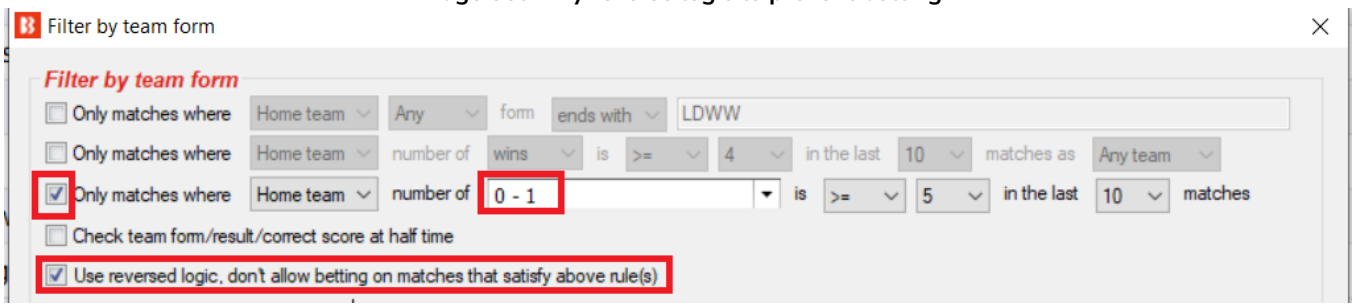
This rule allows or prevents (if "Use reverse logic" checkbox ticked) betting when the specified scorelines have happened in the last x number of matches. Multiple scorelines can be selected. In the image above, it would allow betting if the Home team has had zero (less than 1) 0-0 scorelines in the past 6 matches. This can be useful when making Lay the Draw bots and want to avoid teams with 0-0 tendencies.

Image 568 - By half time form or scorelines



By ticking the "Check team form result/correct score at half time" option, the bot will check the selected form filters according to half time results. So in the above image, it would only allow betting if the home team had been involved in 0-0 half-time draws in 8 or more of its last 10 games. This is a useful rule when looking for matches to lay the under 2.5 goals market pre-match and then trade out in-play at a specified profit level.

Image 569 - By reverse logic to prevent betting

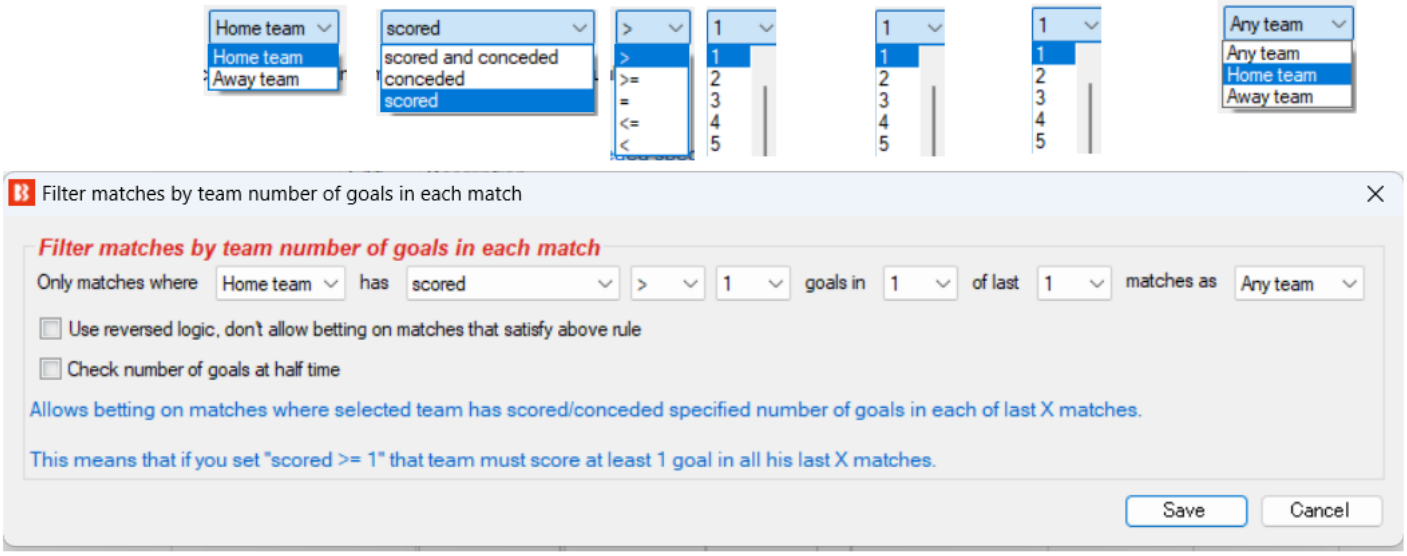


The "Use reversed logic" checkbox is to change the rule to prevent betting on teams with the specified form. So in the above image it would PREVENT betting on matches where the home team has lost 0-1 in 5 or more of its last 10 matches.

Multiple instances of this rule can be used to build up detailed form instructions.
Note: Not all matches will have their form provided, and this rule will only be triggered when such data is available. Also note that league and cup fixtures are sometimes mixed together in the historical form.

14.1.22 Football - filter matches by scored/conceded goals in each match

Image 570



This condition is used to allow betting on matches where teams fulfill the scored or conceded goals filter in the specified number of matches.

You can filter it for the "home/away team" number of "scored", "conceded" or "scored and conceded total" with a logical filter of "equal to", "more than", "less than", "equal to or more than" and "equal to or less than" in their home games, away teams or both home and away games. This can be set to check the criteria fit for X of the last X games. So you can set it to look for the criteria in every game of the last 10 games, or to have happened in 4 of the last 8 games, and so on.

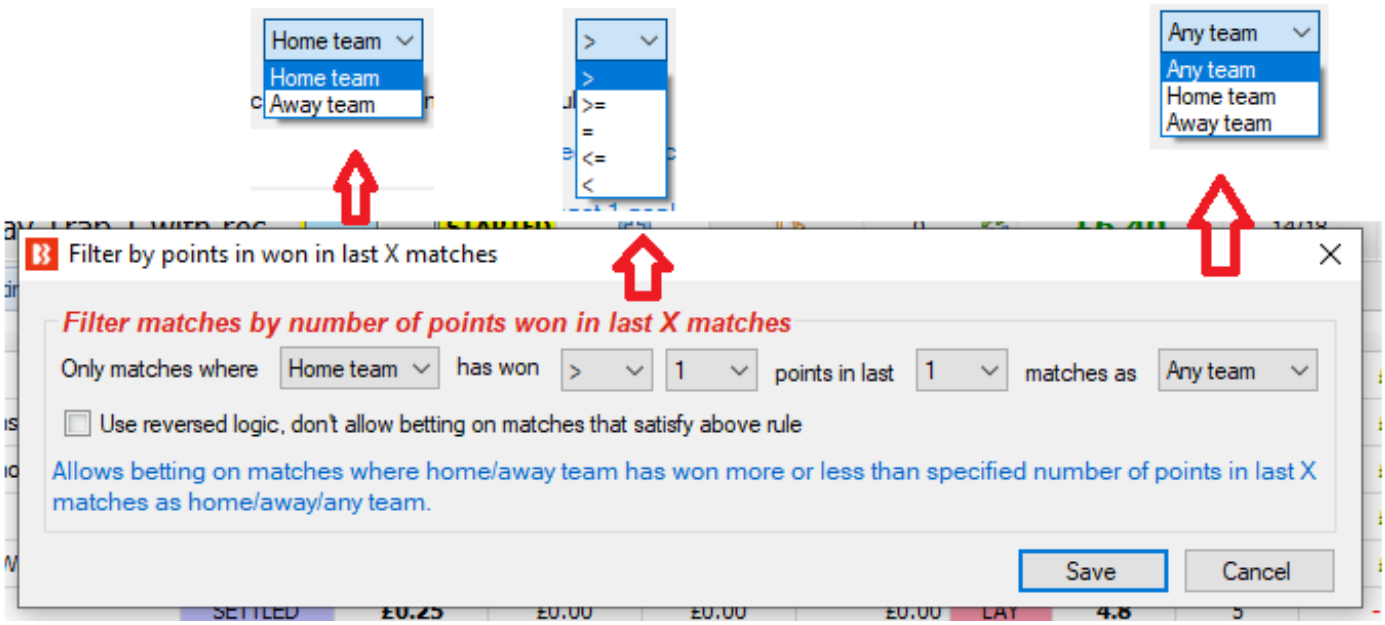
For example, a team that scored at least 2 goals in each of their last 5 matches can be considered a team that plays attacking football. By the same logic a team that scored less than 1 goal in each of their last 5 matches

is probably playing defensive football or is having problems scoring goals. By using such logic you can filter matches that satisfy your rules and then allow the strategy to bet only on those matches.
You can set it not to bet if the criteria are fulfilled by ticking the “Use reversed logic” checkbox.

You can also set it to only look at first half goals by ticking the “Check number of goals at half time” checkbox.

14.1.23 Football - filter matches by team number of points

Image 571



Sometimes, instead of using team form, it is easier to allow betting on matches where one of the teams has won more or less than a specified number of points.

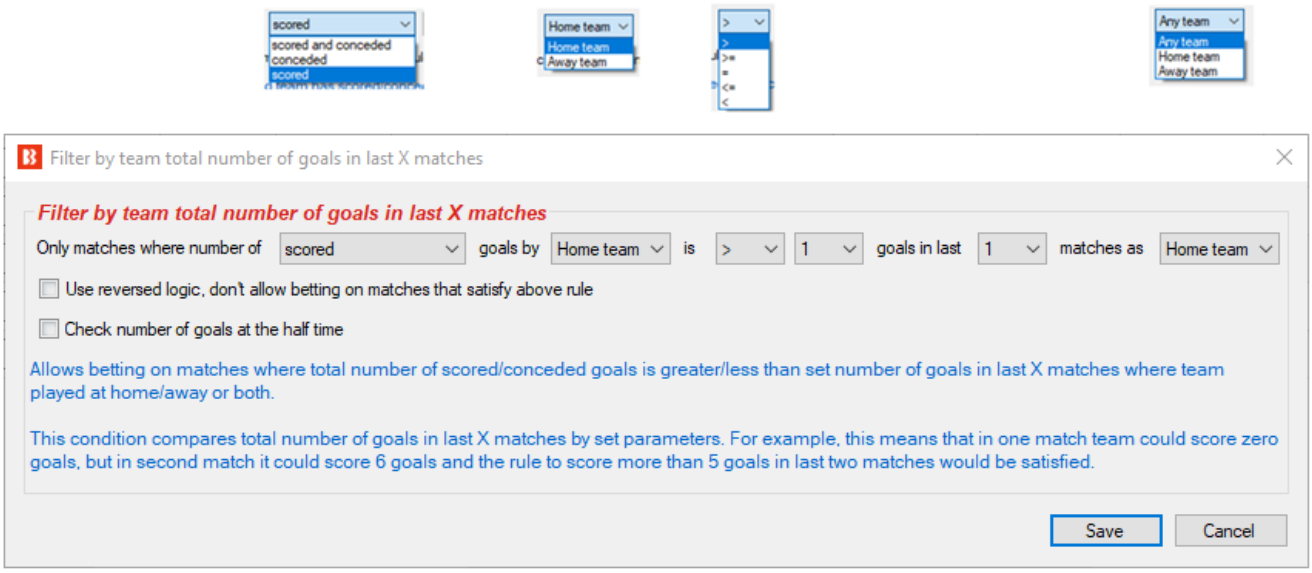
For example, if a team has won 13 points in the last 5 matches it means that it has won 4 matches and drew only 1. That is pretty good form. By the same logic, a team that has won less than 4 points in the last 5 matches is in bad form, as it probably won once and drew once, or it drew 4 times.

Multiple instances of this rule can be used, so you can set one for the home team and the away team.

It is also possible to use this rule in combination with the football form filter.

14.1.24 Football - filter matches by team total goals in last X matches

Image 572



Another rule for filtering matches is by goals, but this time by the total number of goals in the last X matches. This means that a team can score zero goals in one match but then five goals in another match and it would still satisfy this condition and betting would be allowed.

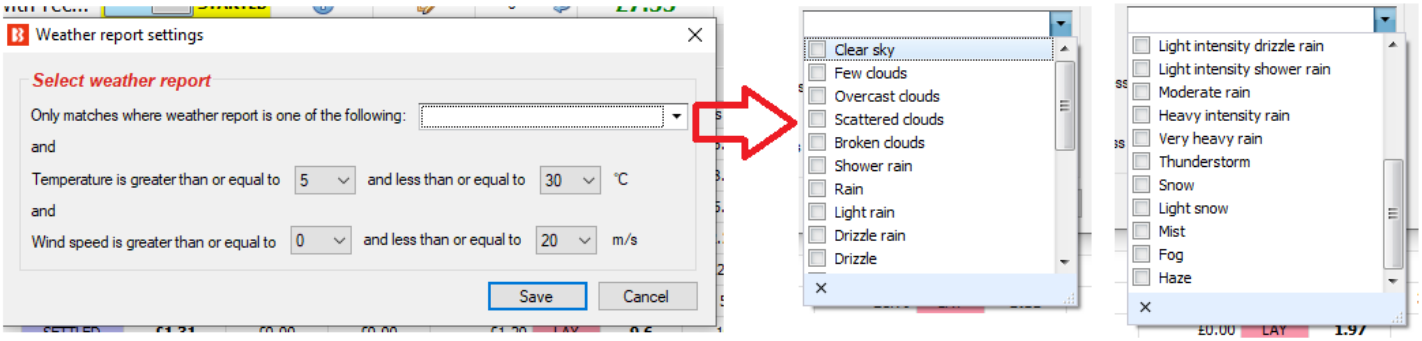
This rule does not limit to teams that score in every match, instead it checks total **overall** scored or conceded goals in the last X matches by the criteria that you set.

You can also use the “reversed logic” checkbox to prevent betting on markets that satisfy this rule.

You can also set it to only look at first half goals by ticking the “Check number of goals at half time” checkbox.

14.1.25 Football - weather type

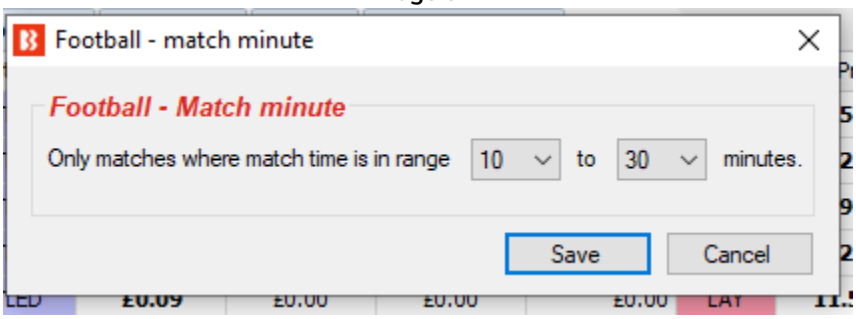
Image 573



This rule allows betting on matches only when the specified weather conditions are met.
This is useful if you want to avoid or specifically seek out matches with fine or difficult weather conditions.
For example, teams often play to form in fair conditions, but poor weather conditions sometimes favor the underdog. It used to be a joke that London teams did not like going up to a rainy, cold, muddy pitch in Newcastle or Middleborough on a Tuesday night. Such a strategy can be automated with rules such as this.

14.1.26 Football - Match minute

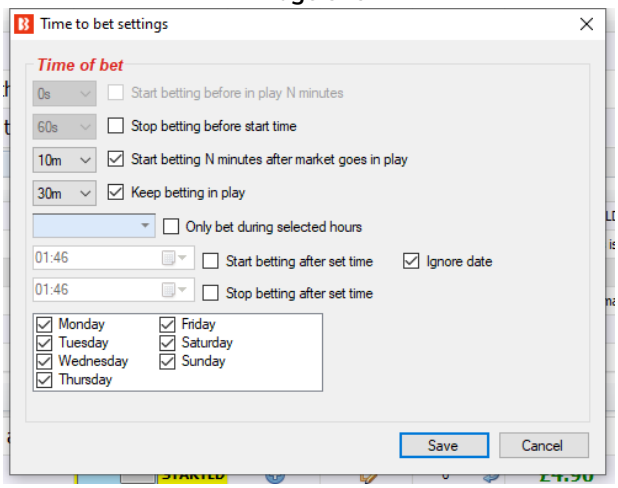
Image 574



This is a very important rule for in-play betting strategies. Similar to the Time to bet rule, it tells the strategy when it is allowed to bet. If you want a strategy to be active in-play between the 10 minute and 30 minute period, then the setting in the above image would do that. The match minute is taken from the in-play data provided by a 3rd party.

The Time to bet rule can also be used for in-play betting

Image 575

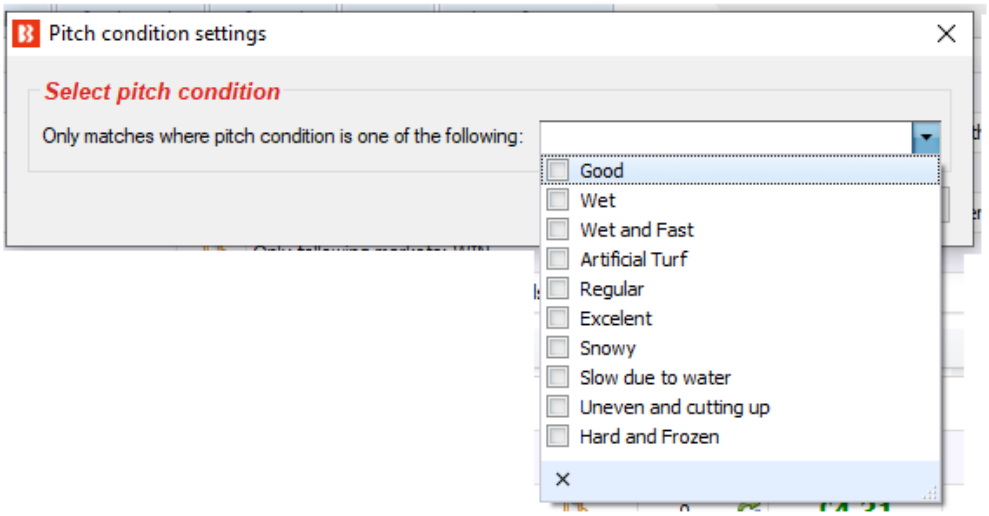


The above settings would attempt to also bet from 10 minutes to 30 minutes in the game, but this method is less precise. If there is a break in play, such as a suspension due to pitch invasion or floodlight failure, then that is not known by the "Time to bet" rule which bases its time on when the market went in-play. The "Football – Match minute" rule bases its time on the in-play data provided by a 3rd party (or by the inplayscanner service). In this way it is easier to be accurate about the match minute. This also means that if there is no in-play data feed providing the match minute, then the bot will not make any bets with the Football – match minute rule, but it will with the Time to bet rule. With the Match Minute rule we can enter 45m-90m for betting in the 2nd half but for the Time to Bet rule we would need to offset the half time break by adding 15m and allowing betting from 60m-105m for a similar effect.

Both Time to Bet and Match Minute rules can be used together. Think of them as ALLOWING betting at the specified times. So if the two rules specify different or overlapping times, betting will be allowed at all those times.

14.1.27 Football - Pitch condition

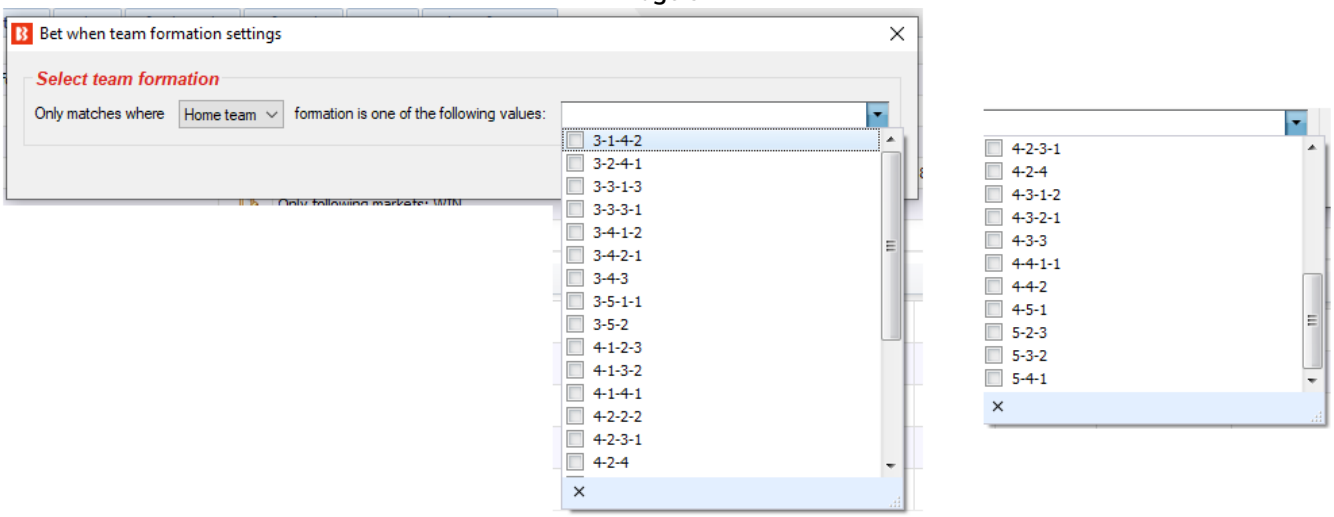
Image 576



This rule allows betting when the selected pitch condition is satisfied.
This rule relies on data provided by the 3rd party football statistics service. Therefore if the data is not present, the strategy will not place any bets.

14.1.28 Football - Team formation

Image 577

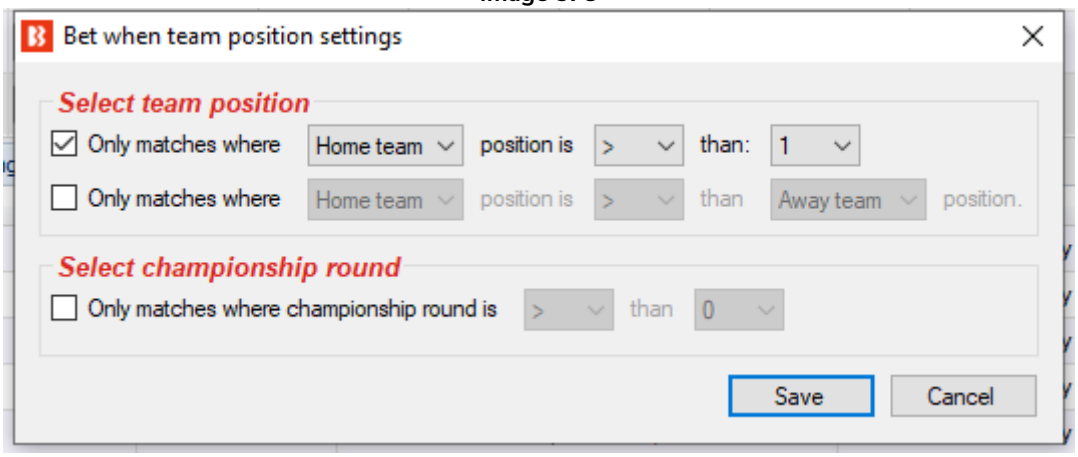


This rule allows betting when the home or away team has one of the selected formations.

For example, this can be used to create strategies that back the draw when the home team and the away team are both playing defensive formations of 5 at the back. Or it can be set up to back the over 2.5 goals selection if both teams are playing attacking formations with 3 at the back.

14.1.29 Football - Team position

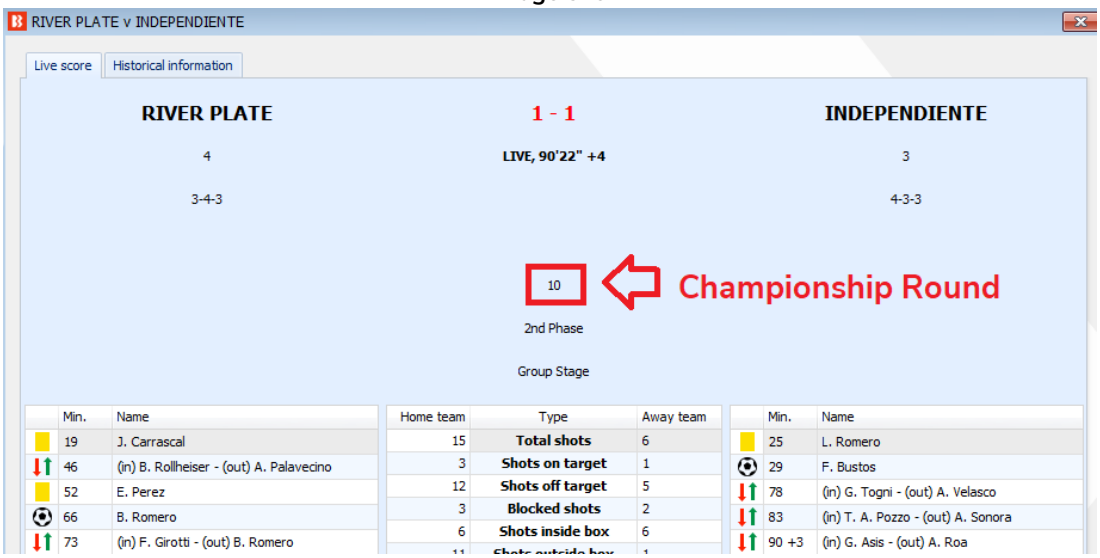
Image 578



This rule allows betting on a market when the home or away team league position is above or below a certain position. It can also allow betting based on the difference between the Home and Away team position.

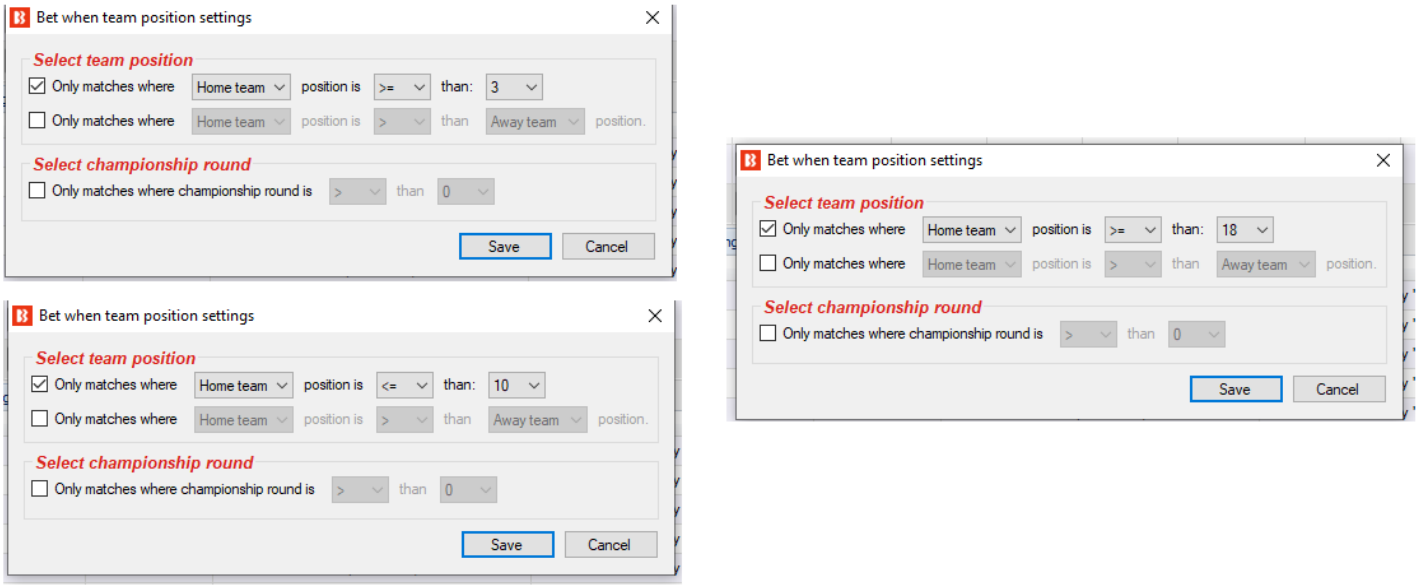
It can also only be set after a certain number of rounds have been played. Being top of the league after 3 rounds is not as strong as being top of the league after 15 rounds of matches. The Championship Round is defined as provided by the 3rd part football statistics provider and can be viewed in the Match Details area.

Image 579



Multiple instances of this rule can be used in one strategy to filter down to specific match ups of league opposition.

Image 580



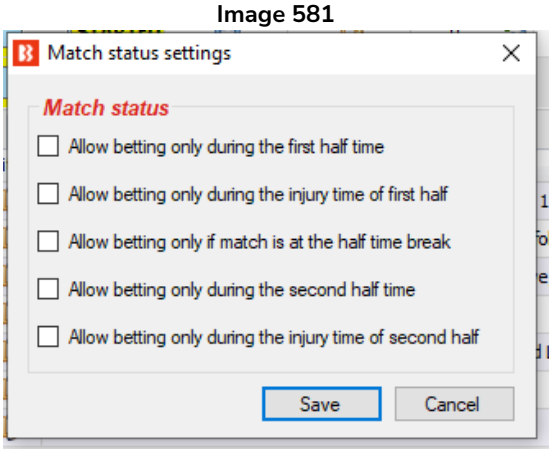
In the above image, the 3 instances work together to allow betting when the home team is in 3rd to 10th position playing an away team that is in 18th position or lower. This gives you top half team against a relegation zone team (in a 20 team league such as the English Premier league) but excluding the top 2 teams in the league that often have very low odds for such games.

Please note how to read the logic signs and the meaning in relation to league position.
The above image rules can be read as:
1. Only bet on matches where the home team position is **equal to or a higher number** than 3. (A higher number means lower in the league because the league position number is a higher number, it does not mean higher up in the league.)
2. Only bet on matches where the home team position is **equal to or a lower number** than 10. (A lower

number means higher in the league because the league position number is a lower number, it does not mean lower down in the league.)
3. Only bet on matches where the away team position is **equal to or a higher number** than 18. (A higher number means lower in the league because the league position number is a higher number, it does not mean higher up in the league.)

14.1.30 Football - Match status

Image 581

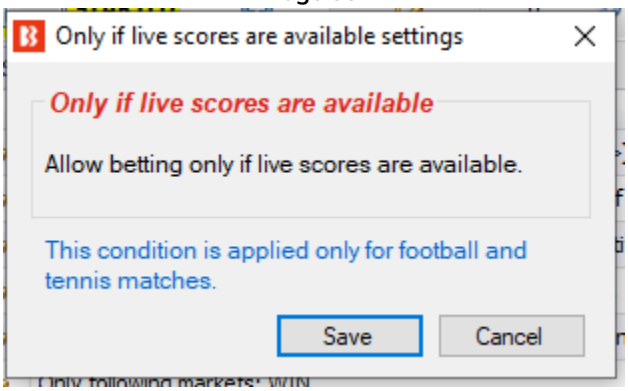


This rule can be used instead of the Time to bet or Football – Match minute.
With this rule you can allow betting only during specified in-play match periods.

Match Minute	Checkbox
0m-45m	Allow betting only during the first half time
45m+	Allow betting only during the injury time of first half
HT	Allow betting only if match is at the half time break
46m-90m	Allow betting only during the second half time
90m+	Allow betting only during the injury time of second half

14.1.31 Football - Only if live scores are available

Image 582

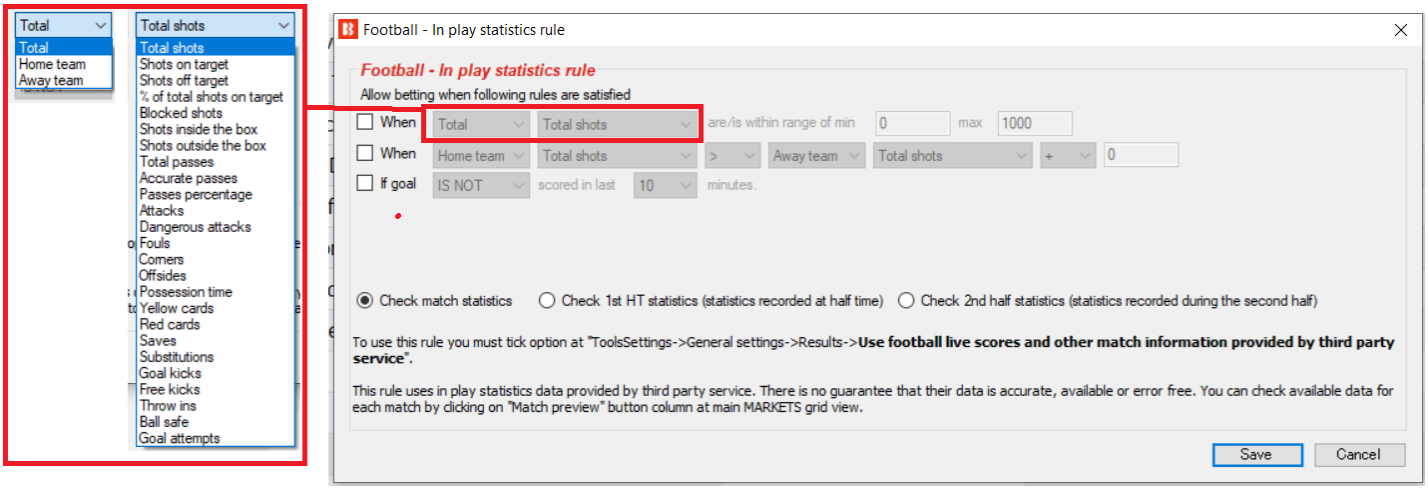


This rule only allows betting if live scores are available. This condition is only applied to football and tennis matches.

14.1.32 Football - In play statistics

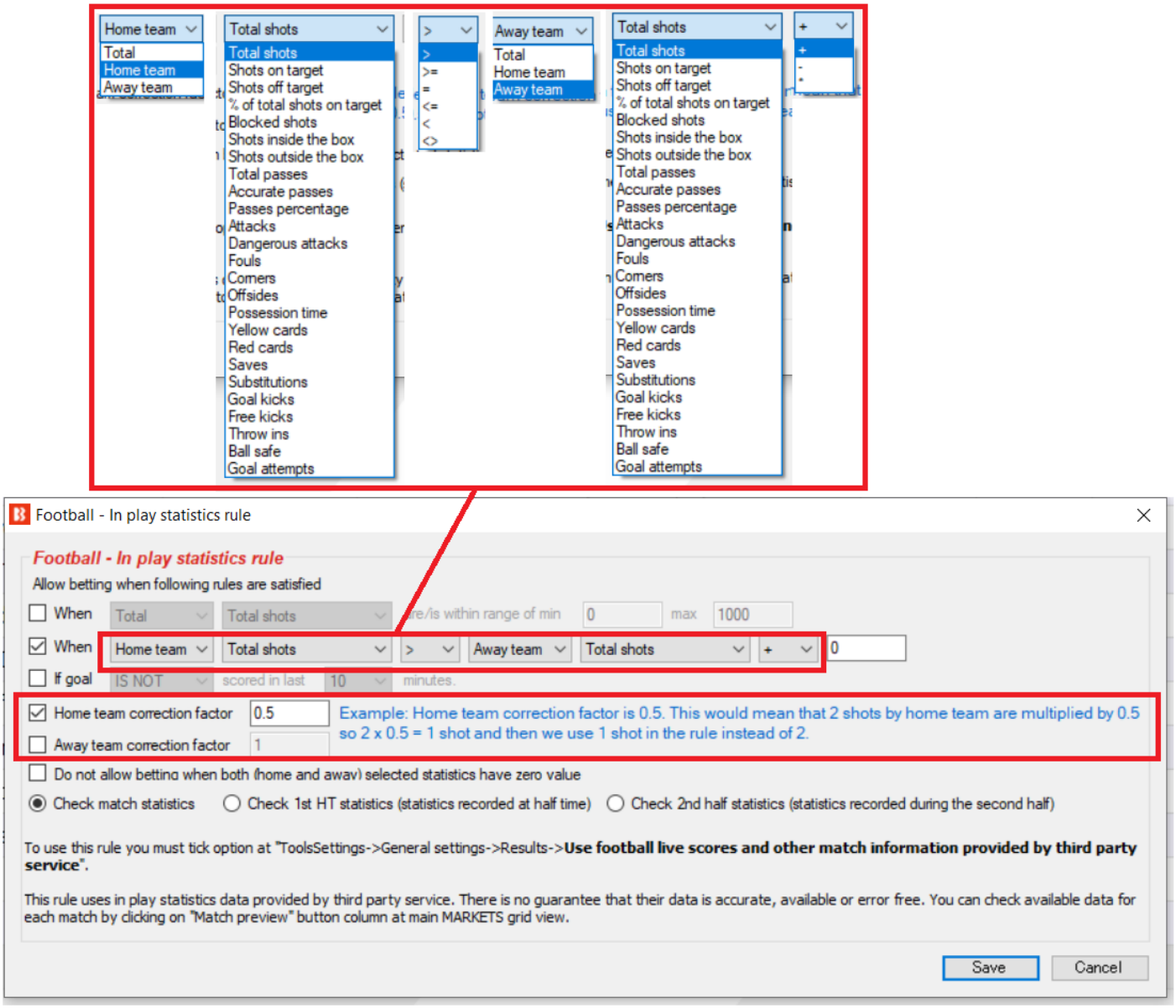
This rule does not require a subscription to any third-party service. It uses in play statistics provided by a third party service. The 3rd party statistics service is SportMonks and Bf Bot Manager has a full subscription to that service, so their results and statistics are included as part of the BF Bot Manager subscription if the option to use the third party service live data is checked in the "Tools & settings->General settings->Results" form.

Image 583 Football – In play statistics options



This rule is very versatile. You can specify betting to be allowed based on a wide choice of statistics for the home, away or total of both teams.

Image 584 Football – In play statistics comparative options



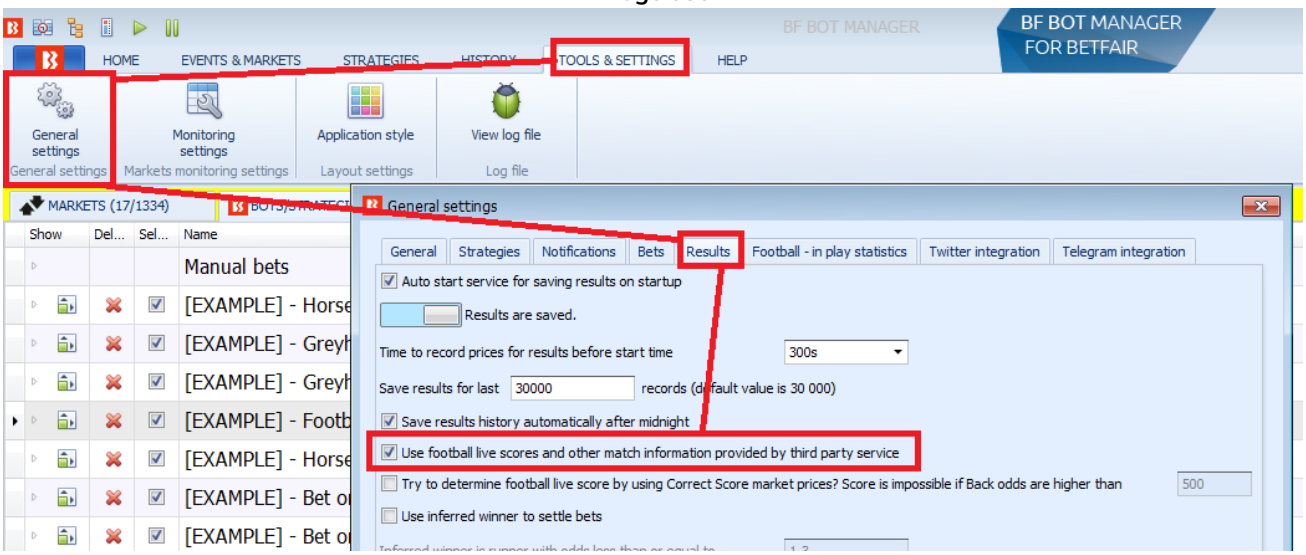
You can also specify betting to be allowed based on comparing statistics between the home, away or combined statistics. These can be set with a choice of logical rules, too. (i.e. >, <=, <>, etc.) A handicap can also be added or subtracted at the end of the rule.

A correction factor for the home or away team statistics can also be set. The correction factor multiplies the statistics by that value. So a correction factor of 2 would double the value for that team's statistics. A correction factor of 0.5 would halve the value for that team's statistics. This can be useful to weight statistics according to the importance you give them.

You can check the information that the bot has for each match by clicking on the "Match preview" button on the main MARKETS grid view (Magnifying glass icon). Then a new form like the one in the image below will appear and display all live data. This rule will allow you to filter matches by any of the displayed data. **This**

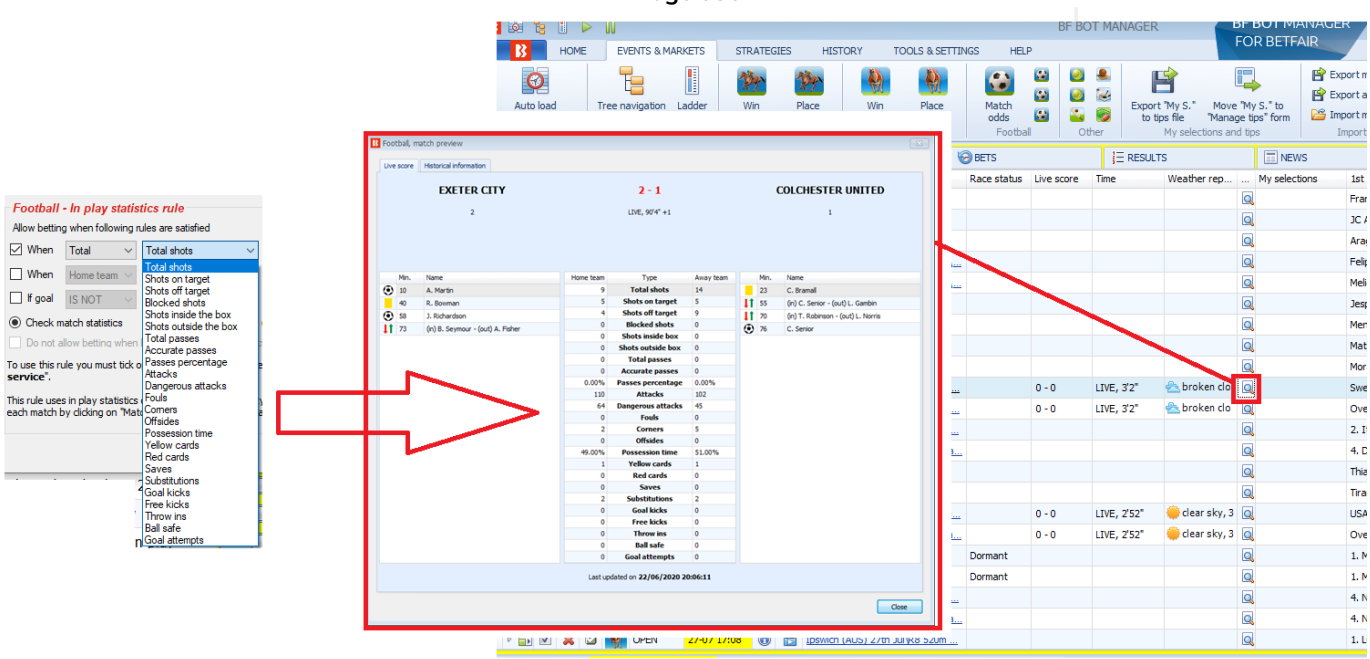
information is updated every 30 seconds if the option at "Tools&Settings->General settings->Results->Use football live scores and other match information provided by third party service" is ticked. You need to make sure this rule is ticked to enable the use of in-play statistics.

Image 585



The score can also be determined by using the Correct Score market prices, but that is not the most reliable solution. It only works for correct score markets with valid offers and for scores up to 3:3 (i.e. The score 4:0 or any other higher score is unavailable). There is an option for this in the "Tools&settings->General settings->Results" form.

Image 586



The rule's statistics come from this form. You can see what kind of data is provided for different kinds of games by checking a few in-play matches. The amount of in-play data provided can vary from league to league and competition to competition. Naturally, more major matches have more statistics than minor matches. But this is just a general guide. The statistics provided are entirely reliant on the data feed that the

3rd party service provides.

Image 587

Football - In play statistics rule

Football - In play statistics rule

Allow betting when following rules are satisfied

When | Home team | Total shots | are/is within range of min | 5 | max | 1000

When | Home team | Total shots | > | Away team | Total shots | + | 0

If goal | IS NOT | scored in last | 10 | minutes.

Home team correction factor | 0.5

Away team correction factor | 1

Check match statistics | Check 1st HT statistics (statistics recorded at half time) | Check 2nd half statistics (statistics recorded during the second half)

To use this rule you must tick option at "ToolsSettings->General settings->Results->**Use football live scores and other match information provided by third party service**".

This rule uses in play statistics data provided by third party service. There is no guarantee that their data is accurate, available or error free. You can check available data for each match by clicking on "Match preview" button column at main MARKETS grid view.

Save | Cancel

Example 1: You can use the rule to allow betting only when the home team has had 5 shots or more (on or off target) by using the above settings.

Image 588

Football - In play statistics rule

Football - In play statistics rule

Allow betting when following rules are satisfied

When | Home team | Total shots | are/is within range of min | 5 | max | 1000

When | Home team | Total shots | > | Away team | Total shots | + | 5

If goal | IS NOT | scored in last | 10 | minutes.

Home team correction factor | 0.5

Away team correction factor | 1

Do not allow betting when both (home and away) selected statistics have zero value

Check match statistics | Check 1st HT statistics (statistics recorded at half time) | Check 2nd half statistics (statistics recorded during the second half)

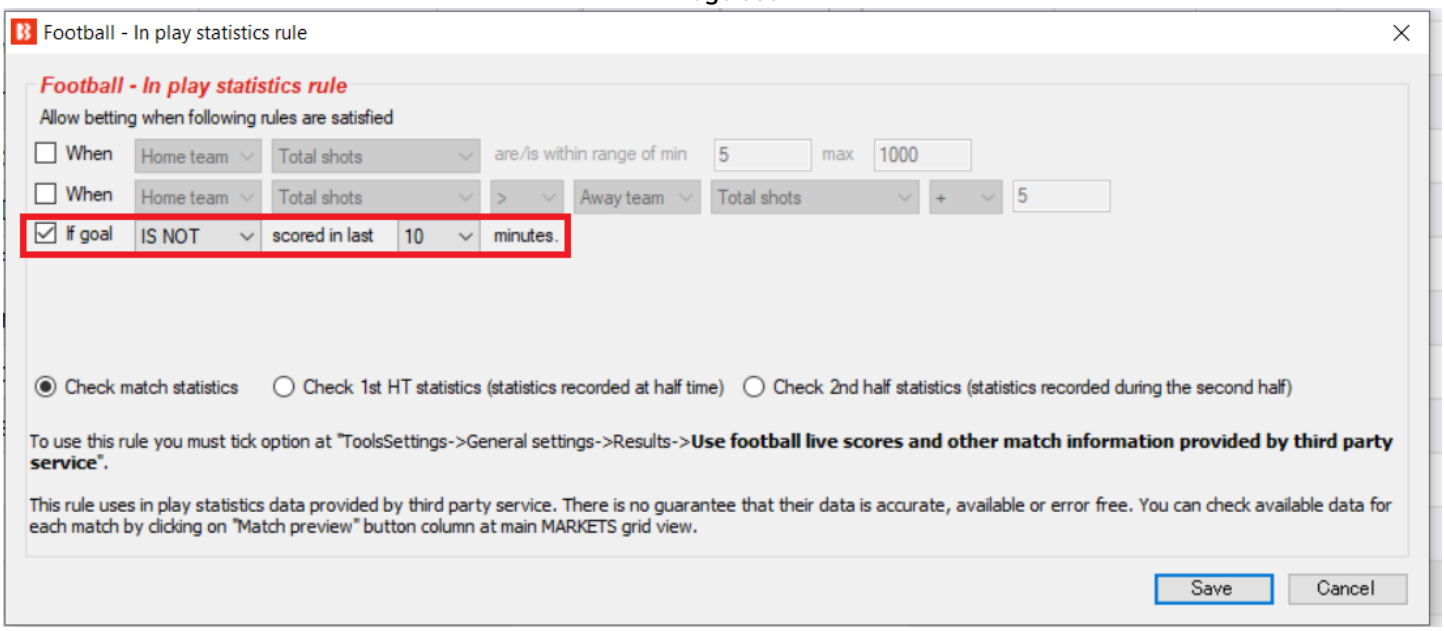
To use this rule you must tick option at "ToolsSettings->General settings->Results->**Use football live scores and other match information provided by third party service**".

This rule uses in play statistics data provided by third party service. There is no guarantee that their data is accurate, available or error free. You can check available data for each match by clicking on "Match preview" button column at main MARKETS grid view.

Save | Cancel

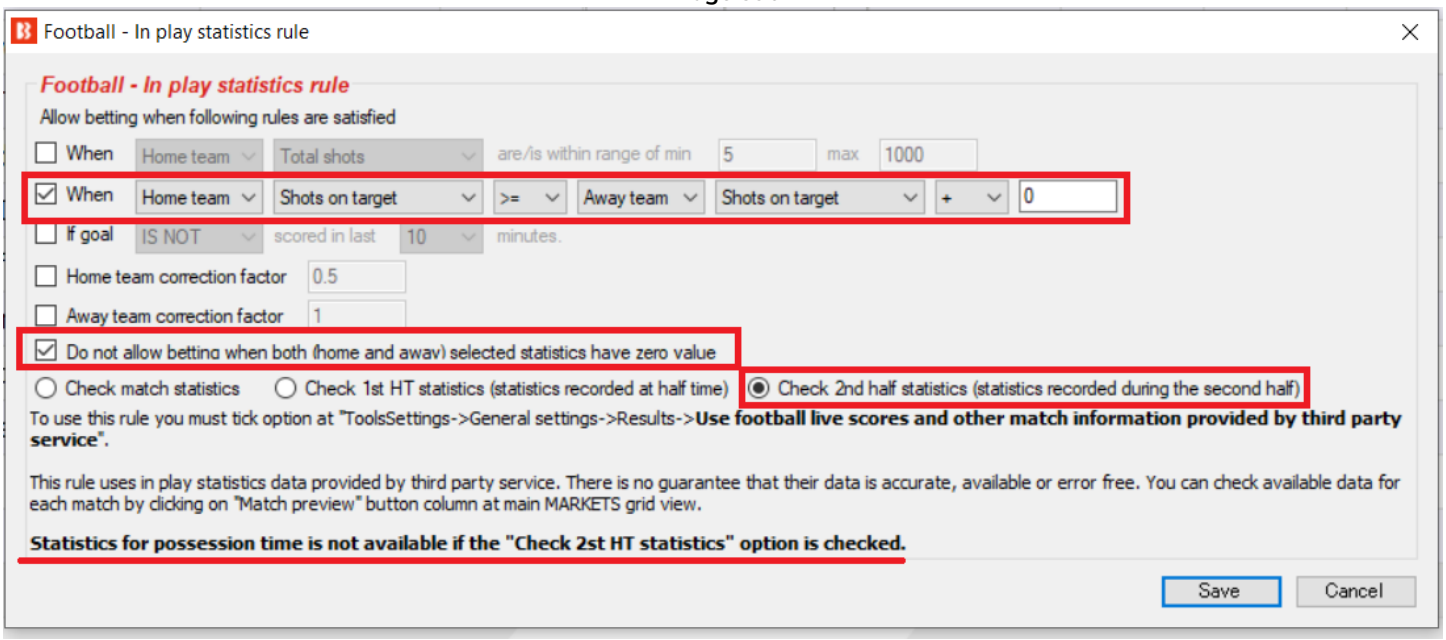
Example 2: You can also use the rule to allow betting only when the home team has had 6 more dangerous attacks than the away team. The “+5” is in addition to be having 1 more dangerous attack than the away team, so “+5” means 6 or more dangerous attacks above the away team statistics.

Image 589



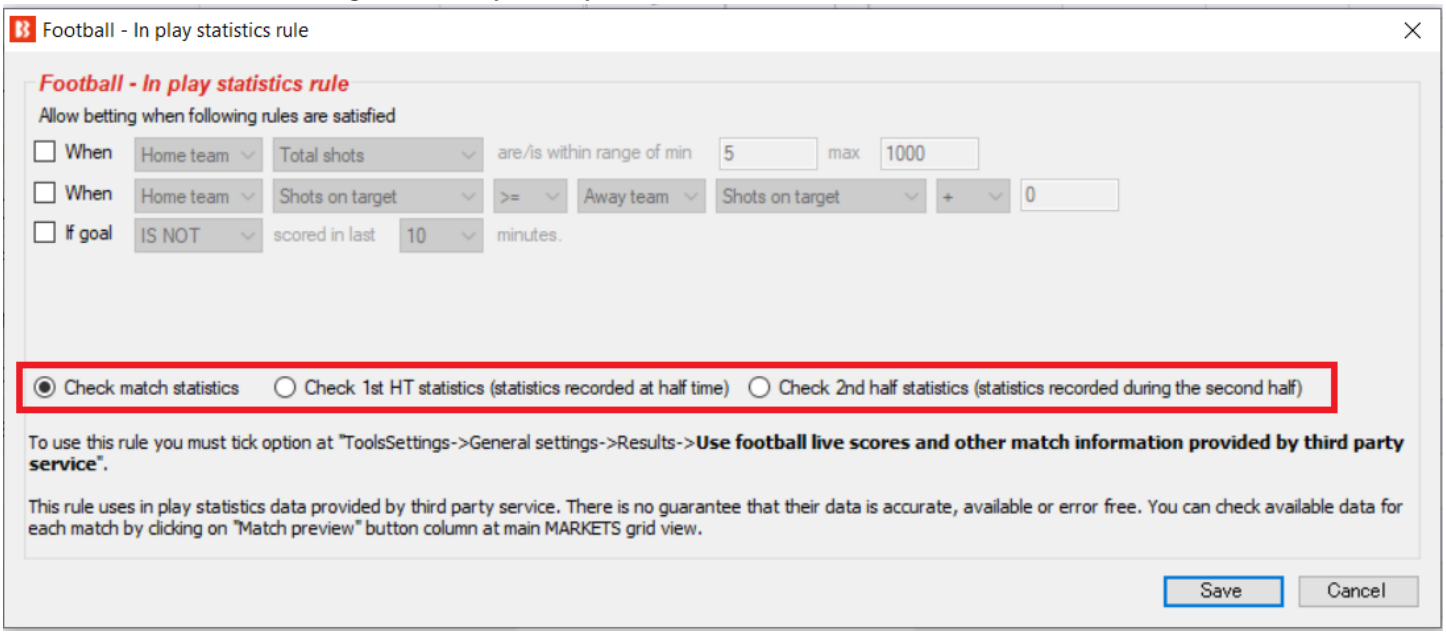
Example 3: You can use the rule to allow betting if a goal has or has not been scored in the last x minutes. The above image shows the settings for allowing betting when a goal was not scored in the last 10 minutes. This can be useful if you want to avoid the betting after a goal because it may lead to a sudden change in playing style from one of the teams.

Image 590



Example 4: You can also tell the strategy not to allow betting when both teams have zero for the specified statistic. This can be useful to stop betting if a rule allows betting when one side has equal or higher value for a statistic, but you do not want it to bet at zero for both teams, since that is just the start of the match or the period you select. With the options, you can tell it to check the current match statistics or to just check the statistics at half time or the just the 2nd half statistics, as in the image above. Note that when only the 2nd half statistics option is used, it is not possible to use the possession time.

Image 591 Time period options - select full match, HT or 2nd half statistics.



You can select **3 time period options** for in-play statistics.

"Check match statistics" means that it will check the current live stats for the match. The stats at 15m will be the 0-15m stats. The stats at 55m will be the 0-55m stats. The stats at 85m will be the 0-85m stats.

"Check 1st HT statistics (statistics recorded at half time)" means that it will check the stats as they were at the end of the 1st half. The stats at 15m will not exist since the half time point has not been reached, so there are no stats for the bot to act on. The stats at 55m will be the 0-45m stats. Even at 85m, it will still look only at the 0-45m stats.

"Check 2nd half statistics (statistics recorded during the second half)" means that it will check only the second half stats. The stats at 15m will not exist since the second half has not started yet, so there are no stats for the bot to act on. The stats at 55m will be the 46-55m stats. The stats at 85m will be the 46-85m stats. Please note that this option does not work for possession since 2nd half only possession stats are not available.

Multiple instances of this rule can be used to allow you to create very specific and customized strategies.

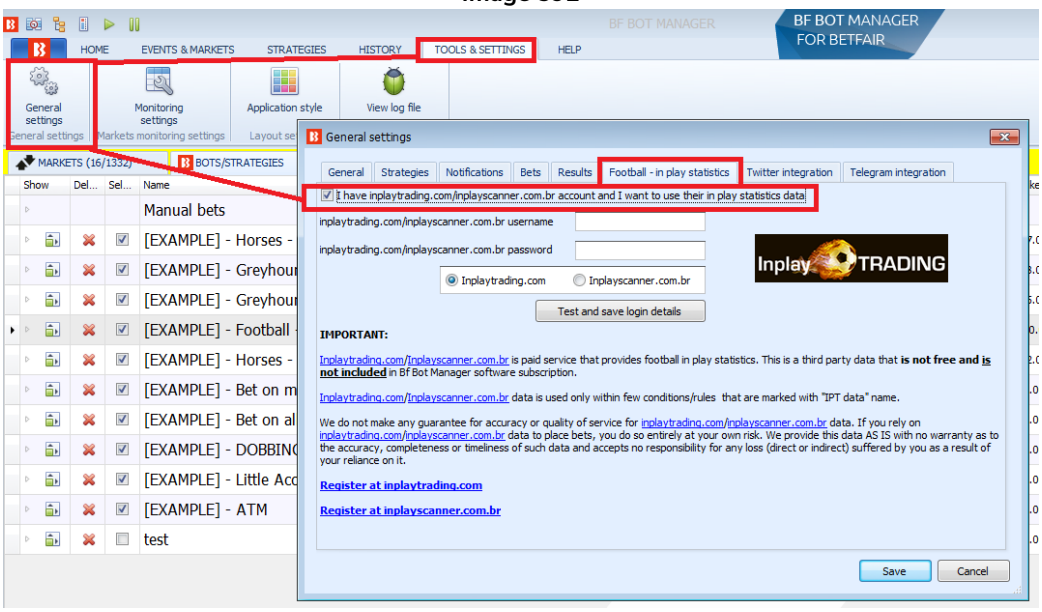
14.1.33 Football - In play statistics (inplaytrading.com)

This rule requires that you have an active subscription to the third party service that provides these in play statistics for football matches. To subscribe to the **Inplaytrading service** please use link below:

http://www.inplaytrading.com/

These football in play statistics are provided by Inplaytrading and before you can use this condition you need to set your Inplaytrading details at "TOOLS & SETTINGS->General settings->Football – in play statistics" form.

Image 592

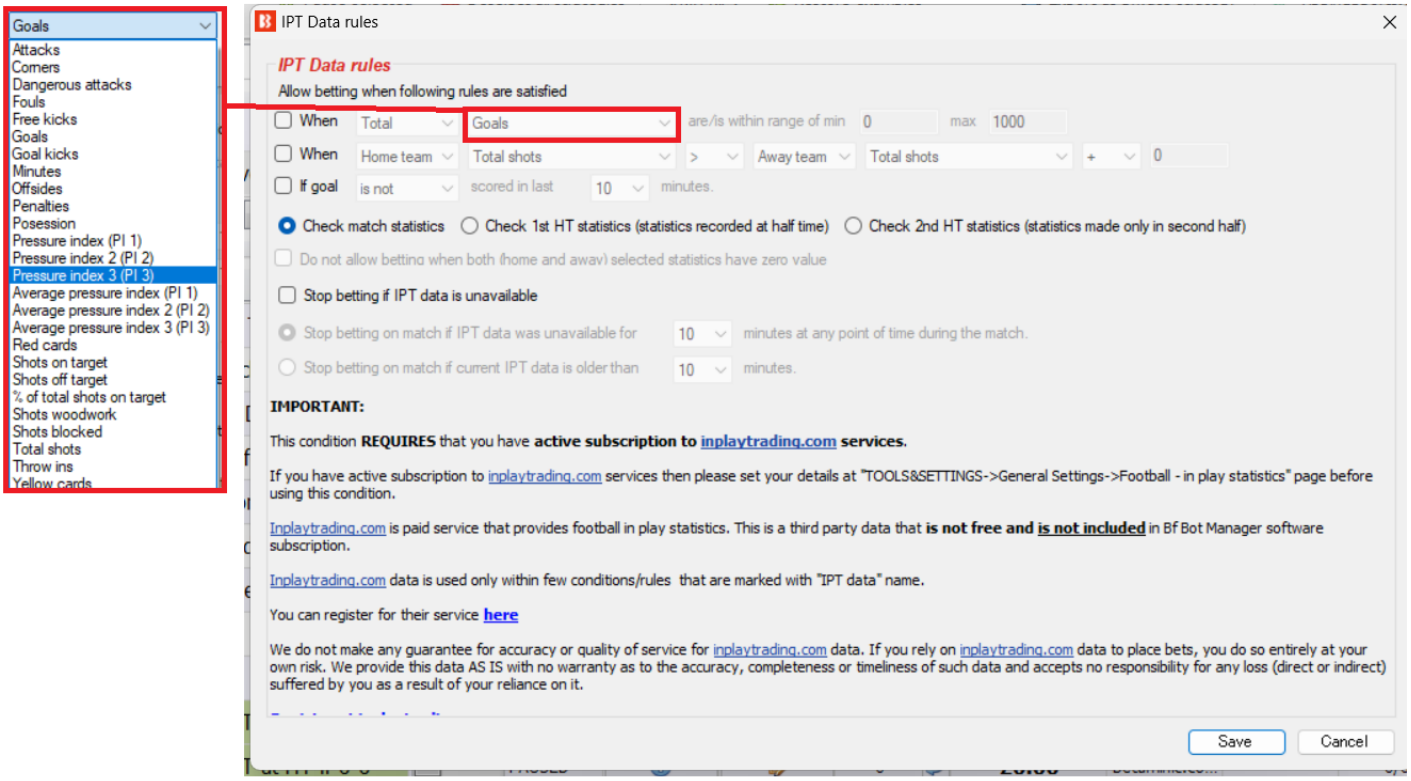


Once you enter your username and password click "Test and save login details". If your details are correct you can click "Save" and exit this form.

By default, Inplaytrading only allows you one login at a time, so if you are going to use their services by browser too then you should contact them and ask them to allow 2 logins for your account. One login to be used manually by you and a second login to be used by Bf Bot Manager V3.

The in play statistics provided by Inplaytrading are a different data feed to the third party service provider (SportMonks) that is free and included in the Bf Bot manager software. Bf Bot Manager accepts no liability for the accuracy of either service but provides the facility at user's own risk.

Image 593



Football in play statistics are provided by Inplaytrading and we do not guarantee that their information will be 100% accurate and available all the time. At the moment they provide information for all football matches that are available for betting at Betfair.

You can set numerous filters for football statistics. Here is a complete list of available data that can be used to filter matches:

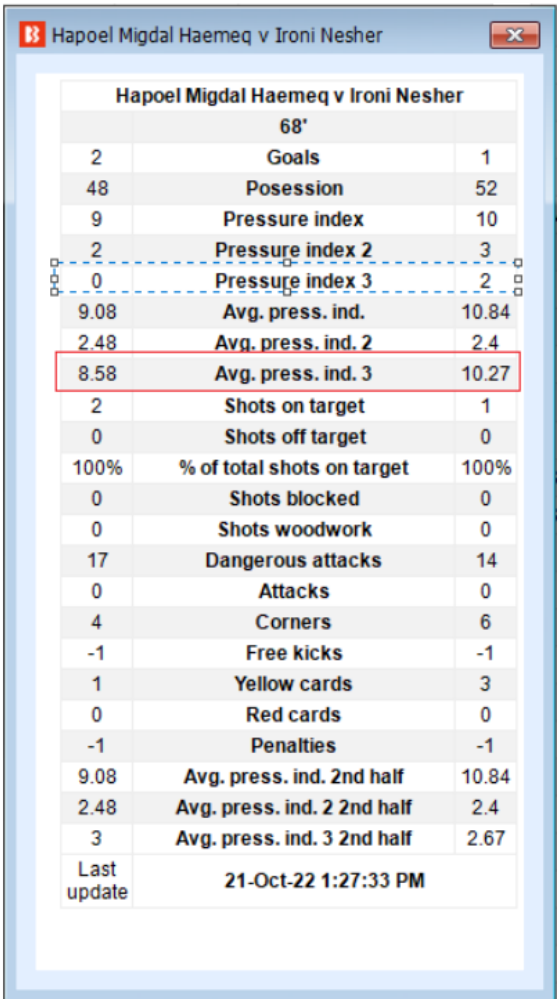
- Attacks – number of team attacks
- Average pressure index – average value of all recorded pressure index values for selected period (first half, second half or full match)
- Average pressure index 2 – average value of all recorded pressure index values for selected period (first half, second half or full match)
- Average pressure index 3 – average value of all recorded pressure index values for selected period (first half, second half or full match)
- Corners – number of corners
- Dangerous attacks – number of dangerous attacks
- Fouls – number of fouls
- Free kicks – number of free kicks
- Goals – number of goals team scored in match
- Goal kicks – number of goal kicks
- Minutes – actual match minute
- Offsides – number of offsides
- Penalties – number of penalties

- Possession – team possession
- Pressure index 1 – team pressure index (higher value means that team is attacking)
- Pressure index 2 – similar to “Pressure index 1” but with different logic to calculate value
- Pressure index 3 – similar to “Pressure index 1” but with different logic to calculate value
- Red cards – number of red cards
- Shots on target – number of shots on target
- Shots off target – number of shots off target
- Shots woodwork – number of shots at woodwork
- Shots blocked – number of blocked shots
- Total shots – total number of shots (SUM of above 4 types of shots)
- Throw ins – number of throw ins
- Yellow cards – number of yellow cards

You can add multiple instances of this condition to your strategy if you wish to filter matches by more than one criteria. When all conditions are satisfied, bets can be placed.

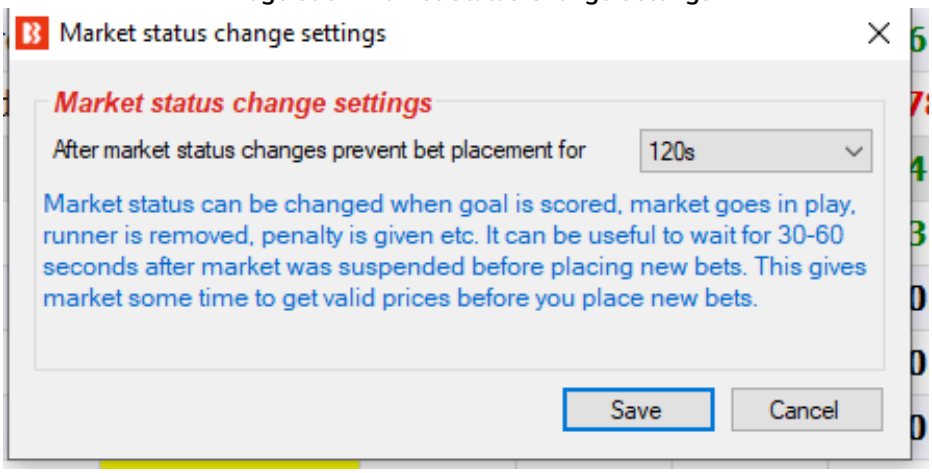
If IPT data is connected to Bf Bot Manager the Inplaytrading statistics display form will also display the statistics.

Image 594 – IPT match information form



Hapoel Migdal Haemeq v Ironi Nesher		
	68'	
2	Goals	1
48	Posession	52
9	Pressure index	10
2	Pressure index 2	3
0	Pressure index 3	2
9.08	Avg. press. ind.	10.84
2.48	Avg. press. ind. 2	2.4
8.58	Avg. press. ind. 3	10.27
2	Shots on target	1
0	Shots off target	0
100%	% of total shots on target	100%
0	Shots blocked	0
0	Shots woodwork	0
17	Dangerous attacks	14
0	Attacks	0
4	Corners	6
-1	Free kicks	-1
1	Yellow cards	3
0	Red cards	0
-1	Penalties	-1
9.08	Avg. press. ind. 2nd half	10.84
2.48	Avg. press. ind. 2 2nd half	2.4
3	Avg. press. ind. 3 2nd half	2.67
Last update	21-Oct-22 1:27:33 PM	

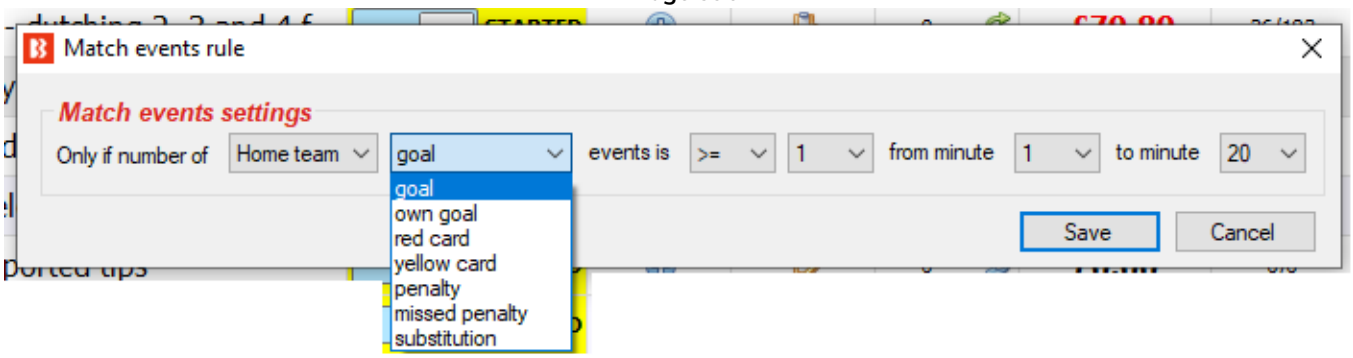
Image 595 – Market Status Change Settings



If you are using in play statistics then we recommend that you also add to your strategy a **"Market status change delay"** rule and **set it to prevent bet placement from 60-120 seconds when market changes its status**. Those 60-120 seconds should allow the bot to get new in play statistics that might have new information about the match after it is suspended during in play. For example, if the market gets suspended because a goal is scored then it might take some time for the statistics/score to update so you should set the strategy to wait for 60-120 seconds to make sure the in play statistics data is up to date. In play statistics data is downloaded every 30 seconds.

14.1.34 Football - Match events

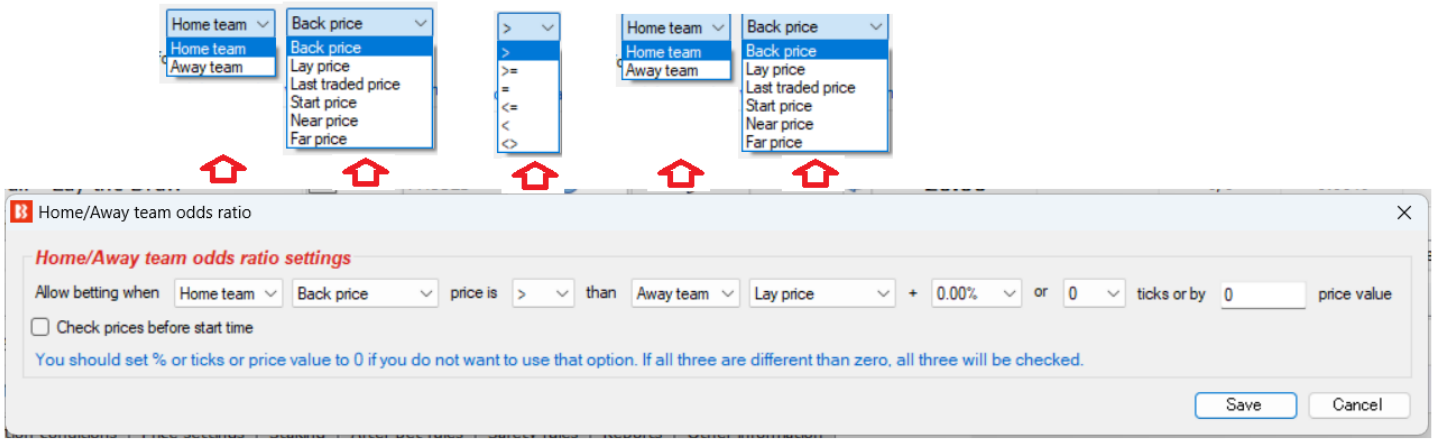
Image 596



This rule allows betting when a specific statistic is equal to, above or below a certain value at the specified time. For example, the above setting only allows betting if the home team has scored 1 or more goals from the 0-90 minute mark.

14.1.35 Football - Home/away team odds ratio

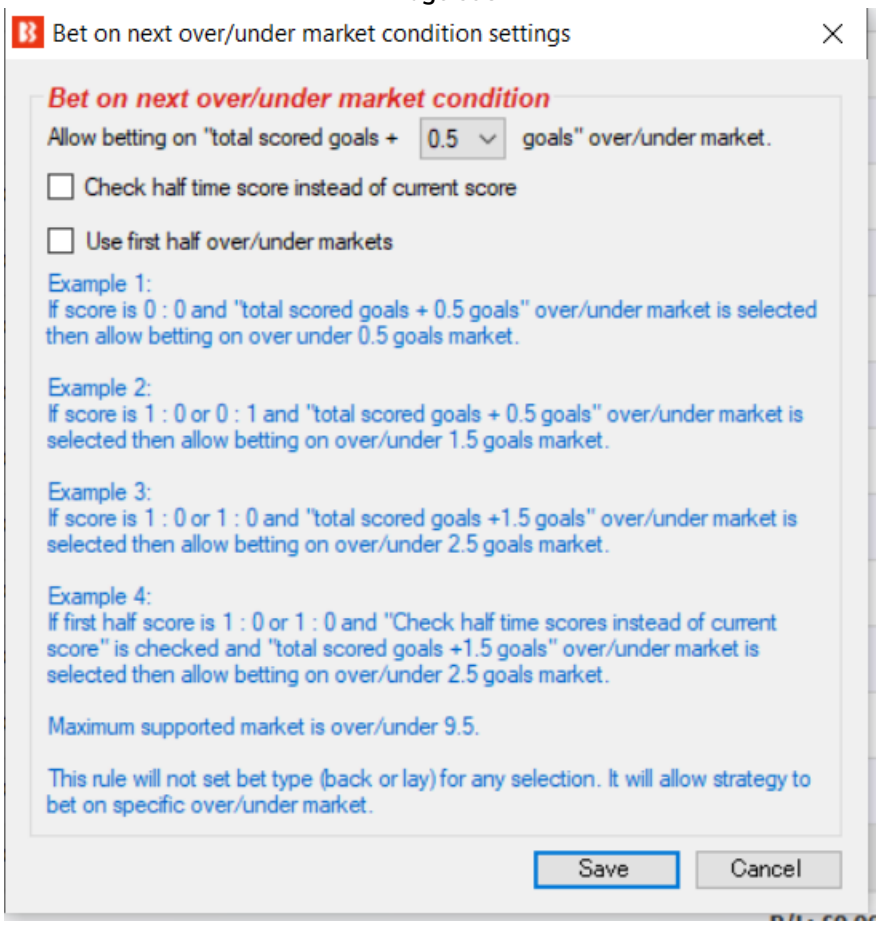
Image 597



This rule allows betting when the ratio of the specified price reaches a certain level which can be adjusted by percent, tick value or absolute value.

14.1.36 Football - Bet on next over/under market

Image 598



This rule allows betting on specified over/under goals markets in football based on the current score.
With the current setting in the image above, it will allow betting on the over/under goals market that is the next to settle if a goal is scored. The rule states “Allow betting on ‘total scored goals + 0.5 goals’ over/under market”, so if the score is 0-0, the total goals are 0, so 0.5 + 0 is 0.5 and the rule will allow betting on the over/under 0.5 goals market only. If a goal is scored and it is 1-0 or 0-1, then the total goals scored is 1 and 1 + 0.5 is 1.5 so it will allow betting on the over/under 1.5 goals market.

Note that this rule just ALLOWS betting on those markets, it does not place bets on those markets. You still need to have market conditions (market filter) and selection conditions (bet type) that tell the bot to place bets on the over/under goal markets.

It is also possible to set the rule to bet on the next first half over/under markets.

You can also set the strategy to add the half time goals to the handicap by ticking the “Check half time score instead of current score.”, so if the current score is 1-1 but the HT score was 1-0 or 0-1 and the handicap is set to +1.5 goals, then the next market to allow betting on would be the over 2.5 goals market, not the over 3.5 goals market.

14.1.37 Racing conditions

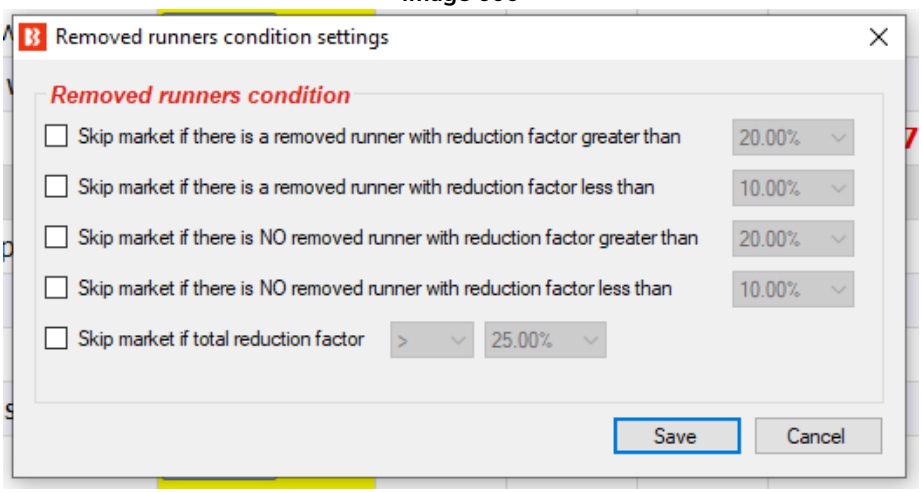
Racing conditions are like any other conditions/rules, it is just that they are designed to work with horse and greyhound races specifically. Racing conditions have a horse icon next to them.

Image 599

	Racing - Class filter	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting only on races with selected class information. Information for this rule is provided by third party service and it might not be available or accurate all the time.
	Racing - Going - track condition filter	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting only on races with selected going information. Information for this rule is provided by third party service and it might not be available or accurate all the time.
	Racing - Min/max race distance	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting only on races whose length is within set range. Race distance is taken from win market text.
	Racing - Race in play time	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting by race duration and passed in play time e.g. only during first 40 seconds of estimated race duration.
	Racing - Race status	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting only when race is in specific status e.g. at the post, going behind etc. You can check race status by using "Race status" column at main markets grid view.
	Racing - Race type filter	☐	☐	⊕	Allow only races by specific race type e.g. harness, flat, chase etc. You can check race type by using "Race type" column at main markets grid view.
	Racing - Removed runners	☐	☐	⊕	Filter races by removed runners information.
	Racing - Venues filter	☐	☐	⊕	Only bet on races at selected venues e.g. only Lingfield racing events.

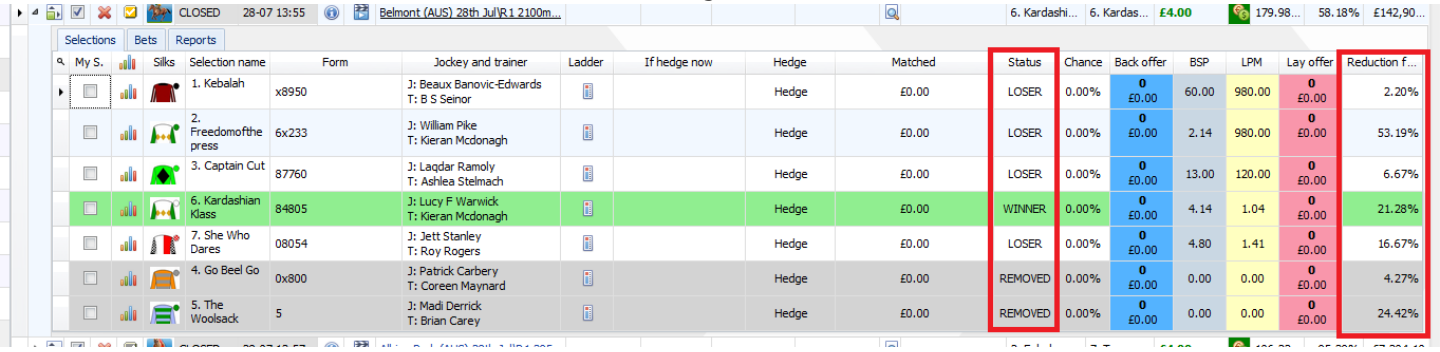
14.1.38 Racing - Removed runners

Image 600



This rule gives instructions of how the strategy should act if there is a removed runner. It tells the bot to skip a market in certain circumstances.

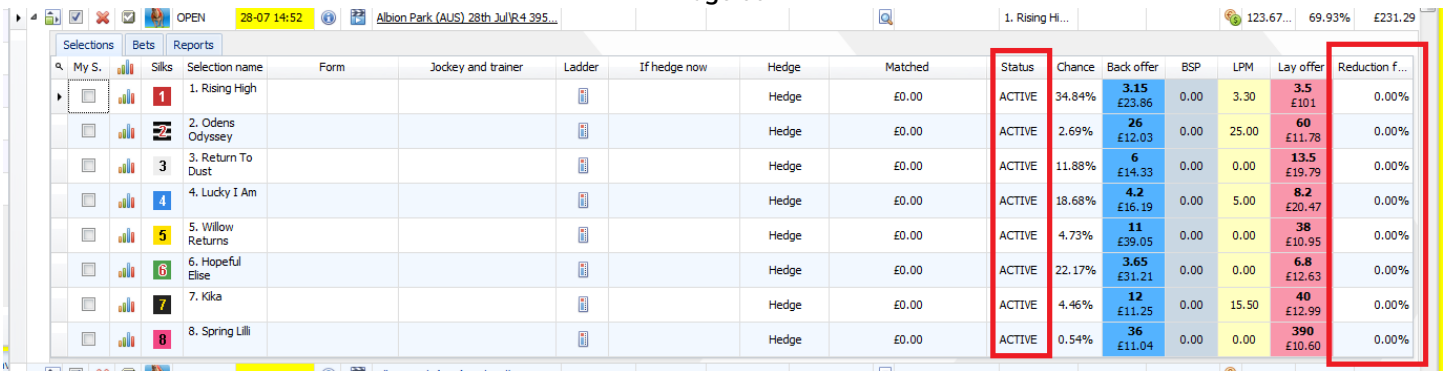
Image 601



The removed runners and reduction factors can be viewed at the main markets selections grid view, in the column “Status” and “Reduction factor”. Only the information that is displayed in those columns at the main

market selections data grid view is available to the strategy when using this condition. If the cell in the column “status” and “Reduction factor” are ACTIVE and 0.00%, then that means that there are no removed runners or at least that information is not available to the bot at that moment.

Image 602

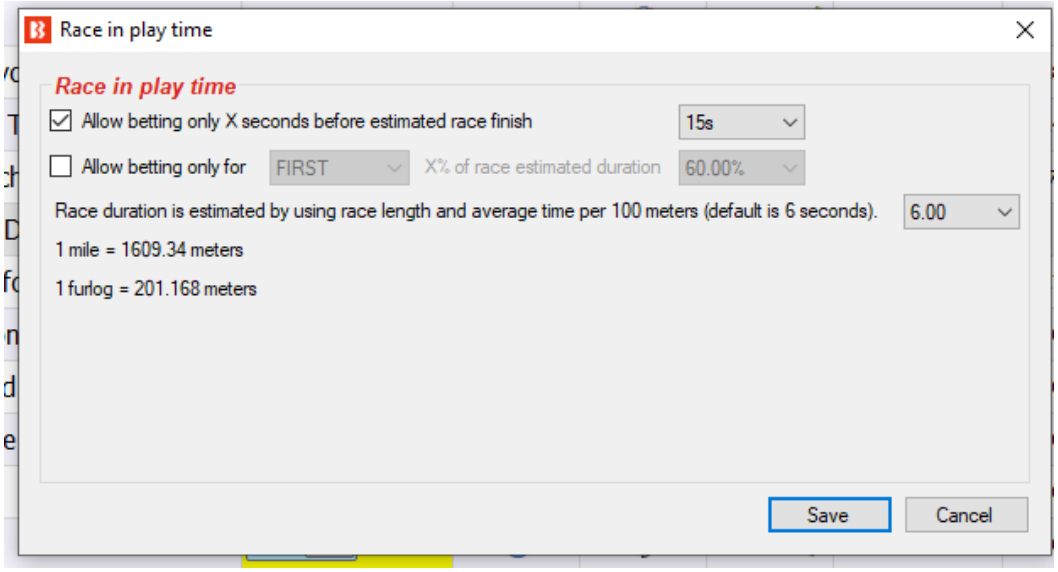


My S.	Silks	Selection name	Form	Jockey and trainer	Ladder	If hedge now	Hedge	Matched	Status	Chance	Back offer	BSP	LPM	Lay offer	Reduction f...
	1	1. Rising High					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	34.84%	3.15 £23.86	0.00	3.30	3.5 £101	0.00%
	2	2. Odens Odyssey					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	2.69%	26 £12.03	0.00	25.00	60 £11.78	0.00%
	3	3. Return To Dust					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	11.88%	6 £14.33	0.00	0.00	13.5 £19.79	0.00%
	4	4. Lucky I Am					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	18.68%	4.2 £16.19	0.00	5.00	8.2 £20.47	0.00%
	5	5. Willow Returns					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	4.73%	11 £39.05	0.00	0.00	38 £10.95	0.00%
	6	6. Hopeful Elise					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	22.17%	3.65 £31.21	0.00	0.00	6.8 £12.63	0.00%
	7	7. Kika					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	4.46%	12 £11.25	0.00	15.50	40 £12.99	0.00%
	8	8. Spring Lilli					Hedge	£0.00	ACTIVE	0.54%	36 £11.04	0.00	0.00	390 £10.60	0.00%

The “Reduction factor” column is an optional column, so to add it to your market selections grid view, right click on any column header and double left-click on “Reduction factor” to add that column to your market selections grid view.

14.1.39 Racing - Race in play time

Image 603



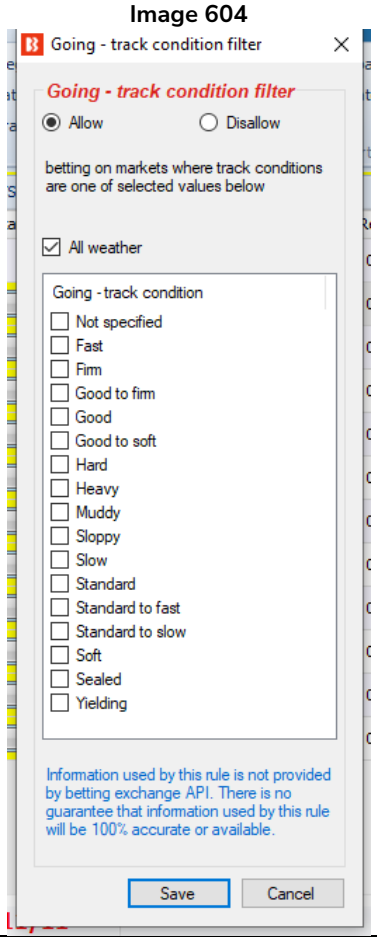
When trading or betting during in play on horse races, you might want to place bets only in the last X seconds of the race or just for some time at the beginning of race. You can use this condition that will estimate the expected race duration by using the race length and average speed per 100 meters.

The actual race time can be different and depends on the horses, track conditions, weather, etc. The default values that are used here are average values, but you can adjust those if you wish.

The race length is taken from the Betfair market name and converted to meters, then an average speed per 100 meters is used to calculate the expected race duration. Decreasing this “6 seconds” setting will change the calculations to expect that the horses are running faster. Increasing this “6 seconds” setting will change the calculations to expect that the horses are running slower.

14.1.40 Racing - Going - track condition

Image 604



The **Racing - Going – track condition** filter lets you "Allow" or "Disallow" betting on a race depending on the track condition.

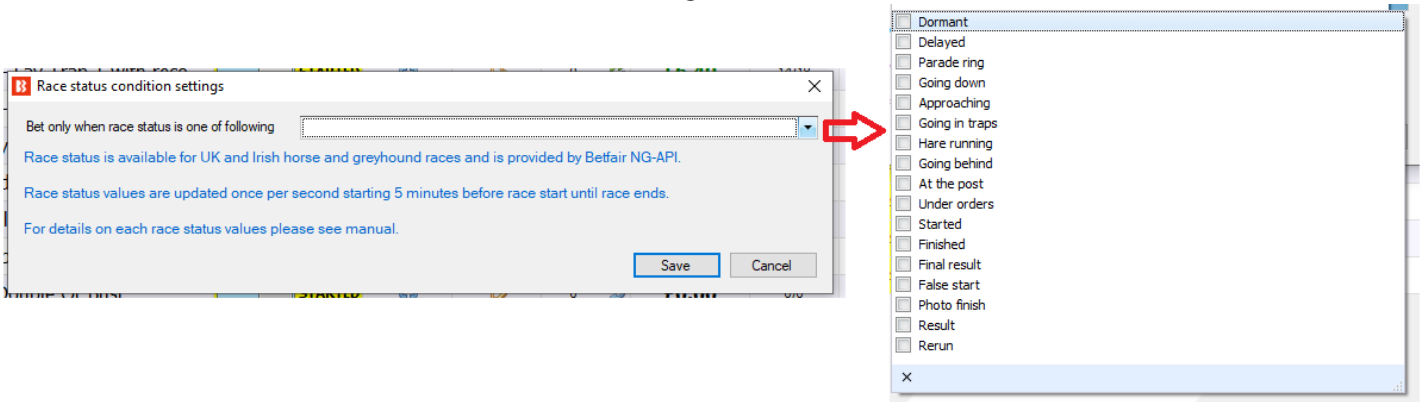
The rule allows betting on track conditions such as: fast, firm, good to firm, good, good to soft, hard, heavy, muddy, sloppy, slow, standard, standard to fast, standard to slow, soft, sealed, yielding or not specified.

You can also tick the "All weather" checkbox so that you allow or disallow betting on "All weather (AW)" tracks.

The information used by this rule is not provided by the betting exchange API. It is provided by a 3rd party service. There is no guarantee that information used by this rule will be 100% accurate or available, but we do our best to provide reliable track conditions for races where possible.

14.1.41 Racing - Race status

Image 605



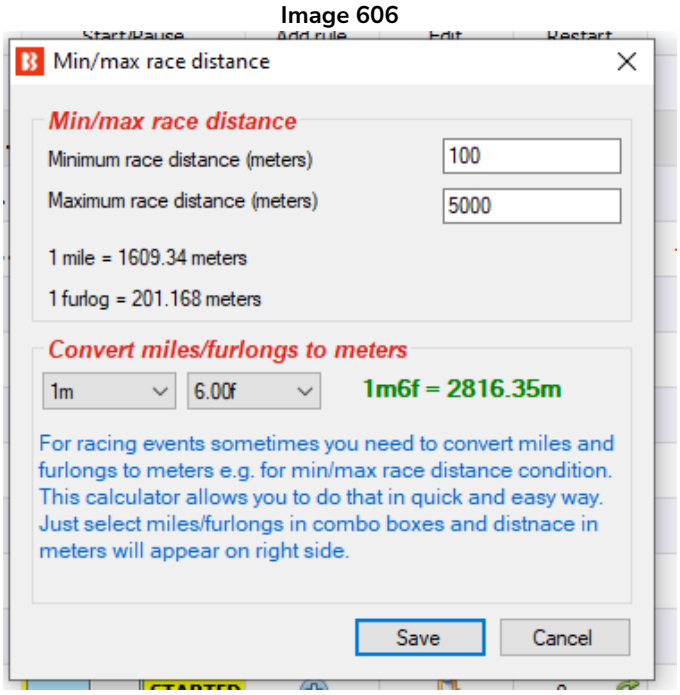
This allows betting if the selected race status is provided by the Betfair NG-AGI.
The race status is updated once per second starting 5 minutes before the race starts until the race ends.
Race status is available for UK and Irish horse races.

Possible race statuses:
DORMANT - There is no data available for this race

DELAYED - The start of the race has been delayed
WEIGHEDIN - The jockeys have weighed in
PARADE RING - The horses are in the parade ring
GOING DOWN - The horses are going down to the starting post
APPROACHING – The greyhounds are approaching the traps
GOING IN TRAPS – The greyhounds are going into their traps.
HARE RUNNING – The hare in greyhound races has started moving.
GOING BEHIND - The horses are going behind the stalls
AT THE POST - The horses are at the post
UNDER ORDERS - The horses are loaded into the stalls/race is about to start
STARTED - The race has started
FINISHED - The race has finished
FINAL RESULT - The result has been declared (Greyhounds only)
FALSE START - There has been a false start
PHOTO FINISH - The result of the race is subject to a photo finish
RESULT - The result of the race has been announced
RERUN – The race will be run again.
RACEVOID - The race has been declared void
ABANDONED - The meeting has been cancelled

14.1.42 Racing - Min/max race distance

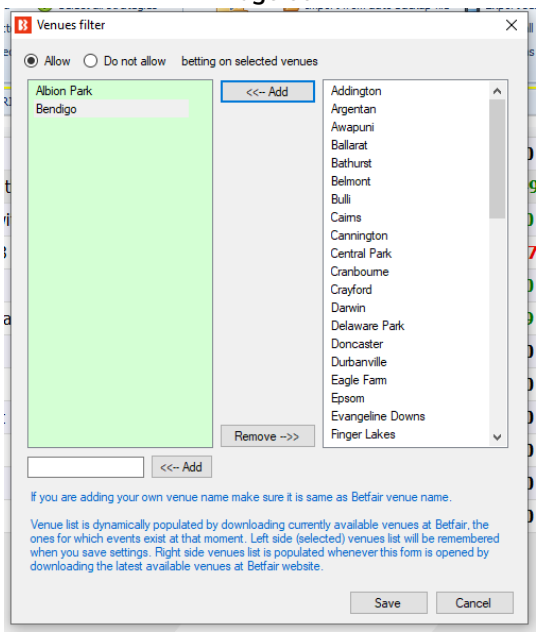
Image 606



The min/max race distance rule allows you to filter races to your desired race distance. The distance is measured in meters, so for miles and furlongs we provide a converting calculator to tell you how far the race is in meters.

14.1.43 Racing - Venues filter

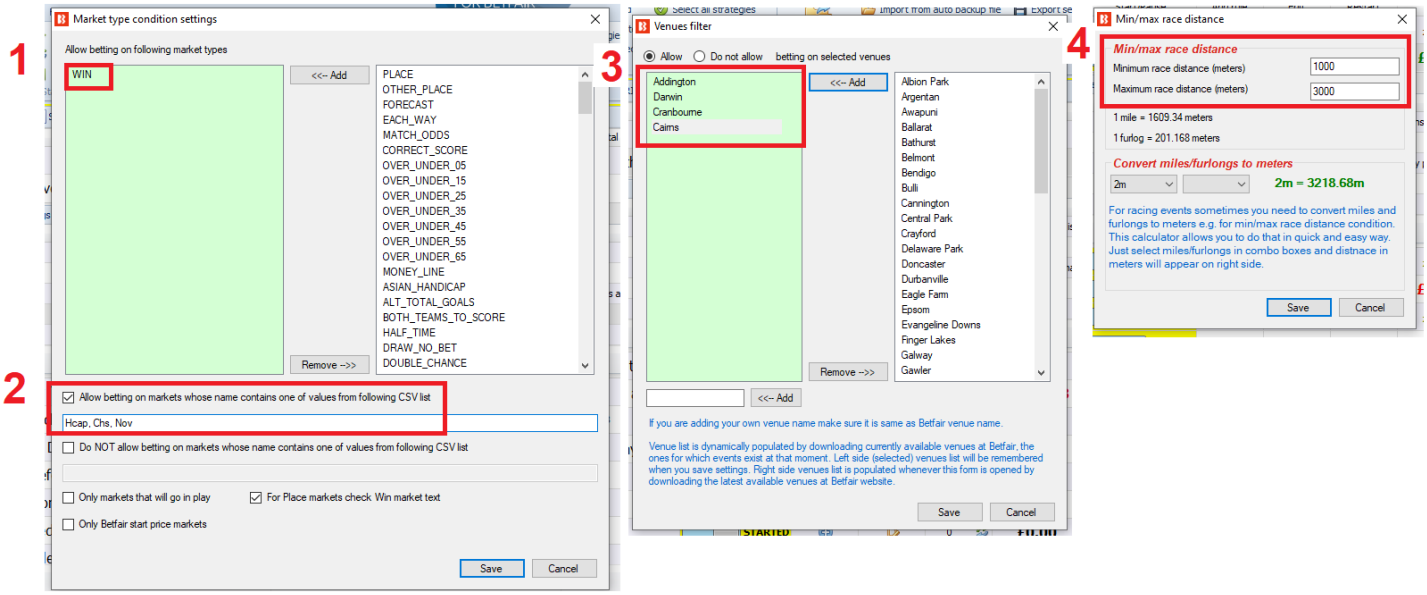
Image 607



This rule allows you to filter by race venue. In the same way as the events filter, it has a “dynamically populated” list. So only venues that are currently up on the Betfair site are included. For example, if there is no “Doncaster” venue currently on the site, that venue name will not appear here until Betfair puts that venue on their site. It is possible to add your one venue name in the field at the bottom, but if you do that, make sure your venue name is exactly the same as the Betfair website name, otherwise the software will not recognize it is the same venue when it does appear on the Betfair website.

The advantage of this condition, in comparison to the markets filter, is that it allows you to pick venues from the list of currently available venues available for betting at Betfair. This allows you to use the markets filter condition to filter markets by other parameters e.g. hcap, chs, hunt etc.

Image 608

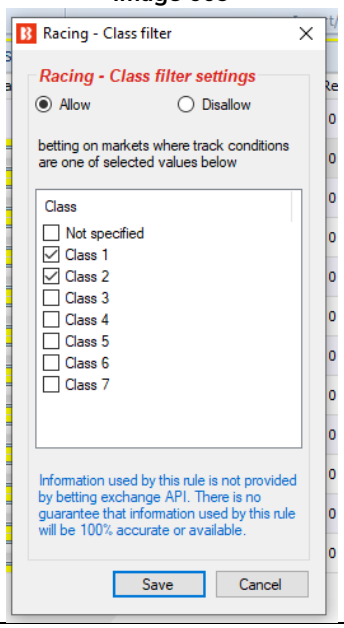


When using the **markets filter** condition for filtering horse races by information displayed in the **market name** you should use:

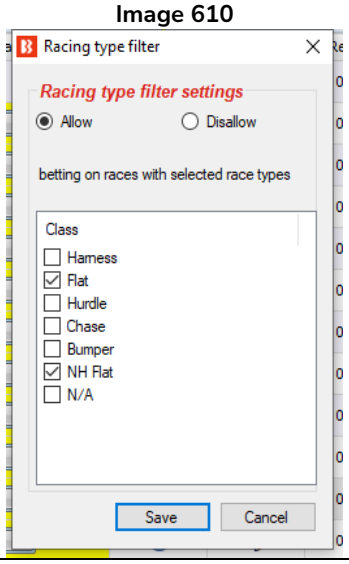
1. Markets filter to filter by **market type** (WIN, PLACE, etc.)
2. Markets filter to filter by **text in market name** (Hcap, Chs, Nov etc.)
3. Venues filter to filter by venues/course name (Doncaster, Chester, etc.)
4. Min/max race distance to filter by race distance (1,000-3,000m, etc.)

With the Venues filter and the Min/max race distance conditions, you no longer need to use the markets filter "filter by text in market name" field to filter markets by venue and distance. It should make your job of creating strategies much easier.

14.1.44 Racing - Class filter

Image 609  	The racing class filter lets you "Allow" or "Disallow" betting on a market by the race class from 1 to 7 or Not specified. Please be aware that the race class is not provided by the betting exchange API. It is from a 3rd party. There is no guarantee that the information used by this rule will be 100% accurate or available.

14.1.45 Racing - Race type filter

Image 610  	This rule lets you "Allow" or "Disallow" betting on a market based on its race type. Race types available are; Harness Flat Hurdle Chase Bumper NH Flat N/A

14.1.46 Tennis rules

Tennis rules use the Betfair tennis live score and statistics services. These are available for major tennis events. The tennis rules have a tennis ball icon next to them.

Image 611

Tennis - Bet when fifteen score	☐	☐	⊕	Bets when match score is one of selected values e.g. score is 30:15 or 40:30 etc.
Tennis - Bet when game score	☐	☐	⊕	Bets when game score is one of selected values e.g. 4:2 or 3:1 etc.
Tennis - Bet when set score	☐	☐	⊕	Bets when match set score is one of selected values e.g. 1:0 or 2:1 etc.
Tennis - In play statistics	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting when in play statistics are satisfied e.g. player one has 10 aces or 5 double faults etc.
Tennis - Only when selected player	☐	☐	⊕	Allow betting only when selected player satisfies specific options.

14.1.47 Tennis - Bet when fifteen score

Image 612

Bet when fifteen score settings

Select fifteen scores

☐ *0 - 0	☐ 0 - 0*	☐ *15 - 0	☐ 15 - 0*	☐ *30 - 0	☐ 30 - 0*	☐ *40 - 0	☐ 40 - 0*	☐ *40 - Av
☑ *0 - 15	☐ 0 - 15*	☐ *15 - 15	☐ 15 - 15*	☐ *30 - 15	☐ 30 - 15*	☐ *40 - 15	☐ 40 - 15*	☐ *Av- 40
☐ *0 - 30	☐ 0 - 30*	☐ *15 - 30	☐ 15 - 30*	☐ *30 - 30	☐ 30 - 30*	☐ *40 - 30	☐ 40 - 30*	☐ 40 - Av*
☐ *0 - 40	☐ 0 - 40*	☐ *15 - 40	☐ 15 - 40*	☐ *30 - 40	☐ 30 - 40*	☐ *40 - 40	☐ 40 - 40*	☐ Av - 40*

* - player who serve (for example: *0 - 0 - player 1 is server player, 0 - 15* - player 2 is server player)

If the game score gets to 6-6 in the tiebreak, a player must have a two point advantage to win the tiebreak.
Here are advanced options for that case (taken in consideration only if game score is 6-6):

☐ Use advanced settings for the tiebreak game

Save Cancel

This rule allows betting when the game score is one of the ticked scores in this rule.

Image 613

Medvedev v Sinner
Sat 13 Mar, 0:30
Live Stream | Head to Head | Multiples

Match Odds
Going In-Play | Rules | Matched: GBP 6,885 | Refresh

2 selections		Back all			Lay all		
Daniil Medvedev	Runner 1	1.33 £523	1.34 £51	1.35 £221	1.36 £222	1.37 £135	1.39 £250
Jannik Sinner	Runner 2	3.55 £97	3.75 £117	3.8 £12	3.9 £76	3.95 £33	4 £76

The star denotes the server of the current game.

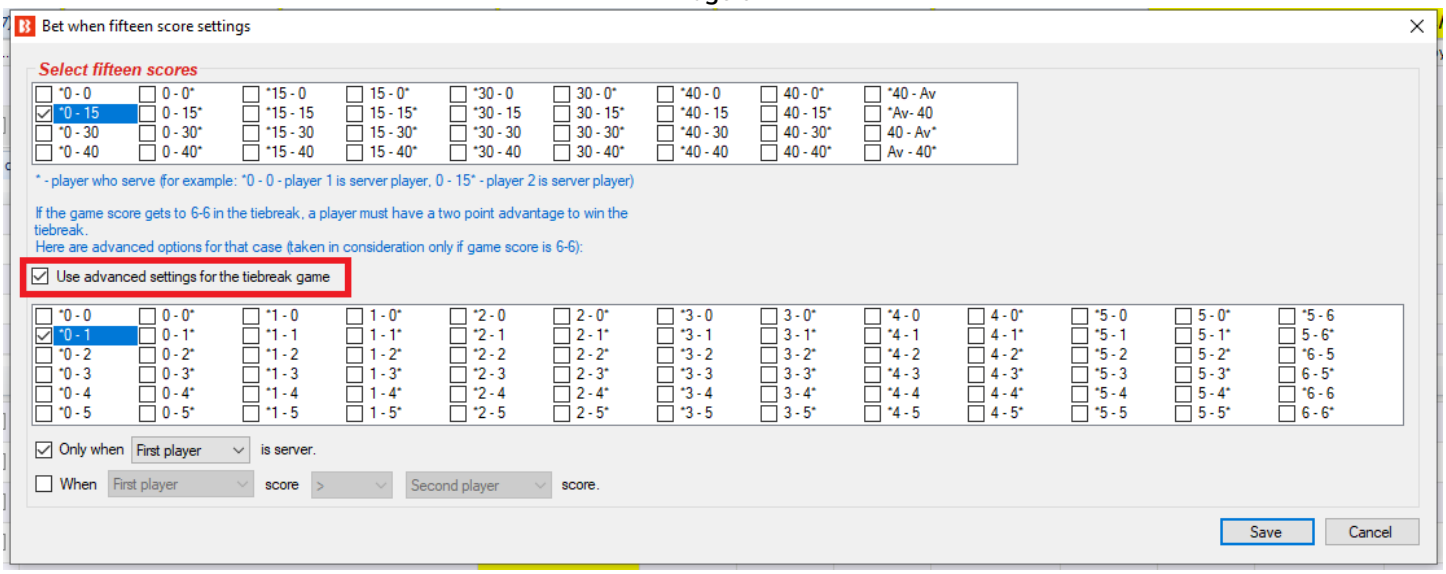
*0-15 means that the server is Player 1 and lost the first point. Player 2 won the first point.

0-15* means that the server is Player 2 and won the first point. Player 1 lost the first point.

Player 1 is Runner 1. Player 2 is Runner 2.

If the set goes to a tie break after 6-6 on games, there are special rules available for that, too.

Image 614

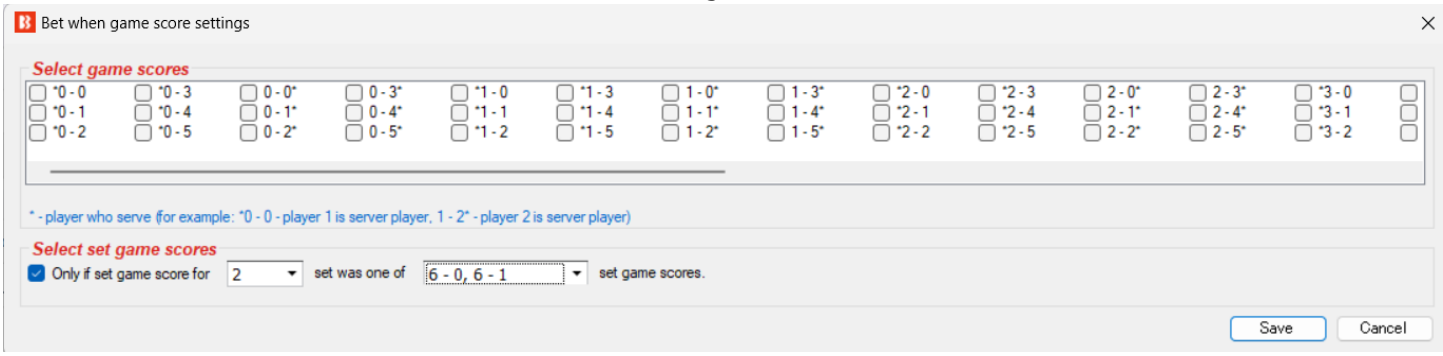


You can also specify to only bet when the first or second player is the server or when the first or second player score is equal to, higher or lower than the other player.

Please note that this rule just ALLOWS betting on the market when the score is as specified, but it does not tell the strategy to place actual bets. You still need a selection condition **Bet Type** to do that.

14.1.48 Tennis - Bet when game score

Image 615



The bet when game score rule is similar to the bet when fifteen score rule. It allows betting when the specified game score is true.

The star denotes the server of the NEXT game.
So *2-0 means that Player 1 (Runner 1) served and won Game 1 to make it 1-0 on games, then broke Player 2's serve in Game 2 to make the game score 2-0 and is now going to serve in Game 3 with the game score *2-0.

Game	Server	Score
Game 1	Player 1	Player 1 1-0* Player 2
Game 2	Player 2	Player 1 *2-0 Player 2
Game 3	Player 1	Not played yet or being played now

And 2-0* means that Player 1 (Runner 1) received and broke Player 2's serve in Game 1 to make it 1-0 on

games, then served and won Game 2 to make the game score 2-0 and is now going to receive in Game 3 as Player 2 serves again with the game score 2-0*.

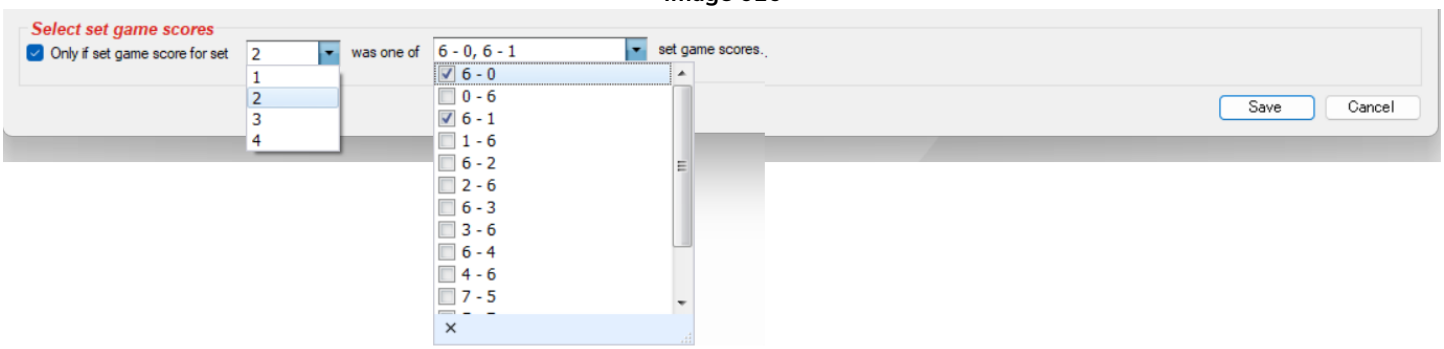
Game	Server	Score
Game 1	Player 2	Player 1 *1-0 Player 2
Game 2	Player 1	Player 1 2-0* Player 2
Game 3	Player 2	Not played yet or being played now

Please note that this rule just ALLOWS betting on the market when the game score is as specified, but it does not tell the strategy to place actual bets. You still need a selection condition **Bet Type** to do that.

Select set game scores
This rule allows betting if a specific set had one of the specified scores.

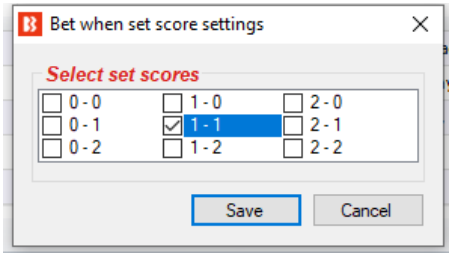
For example **"Only if set game score for set** *2* **was one** ***of*** *6-0/6-1* **set game scores."**
In this example it allows betting if the score for the 2nd set in match was 6-0 or 6-1 to player 1.

Image 616



14.1.49 Tennis - Bet when set score

Image 617

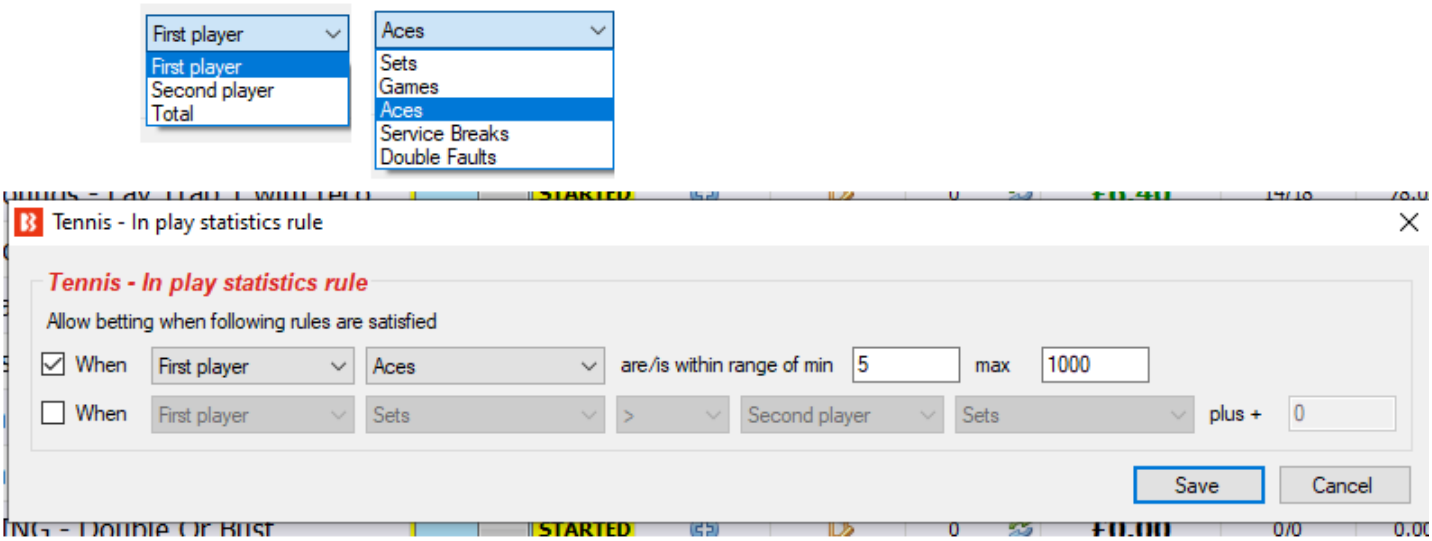


This rule allows betting when the set score is as specified.
1-0 means Player 1 is one set up.
0-2 means Player 2 is two sets up.

Please note that this rule just ALLOWS betting on the market when the set score is as specified, but it does not tell the strategy to place actual bets. You still need a selection condition **Bet Type** to do that.

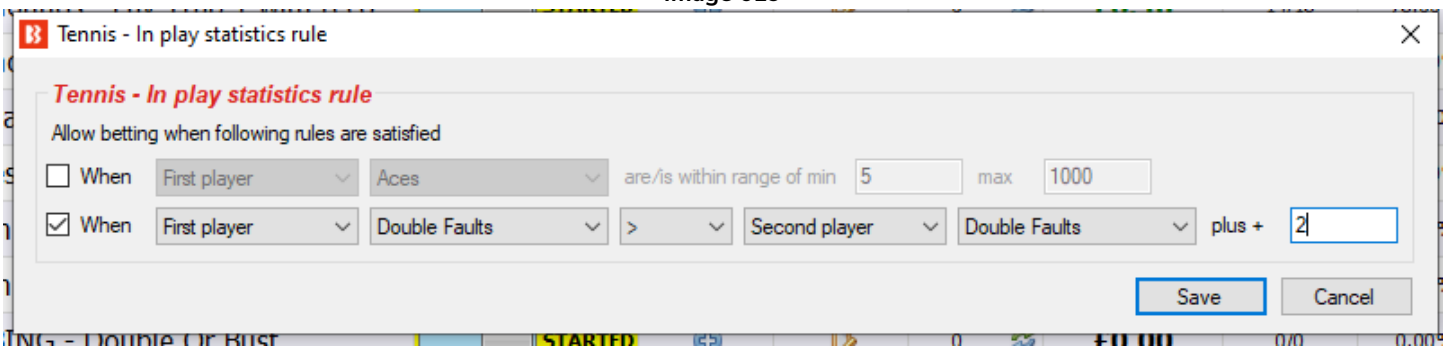
14.1.50 Tennis - In play statistics

Image 618



The **Tennis – In play statistics** rule allows betting when the specified values are true. It allows betting based on sets, games, aces, service breaks and double faults. In the above image it would allow betting when Player 1 (Runner 1) has 5 or more aces.

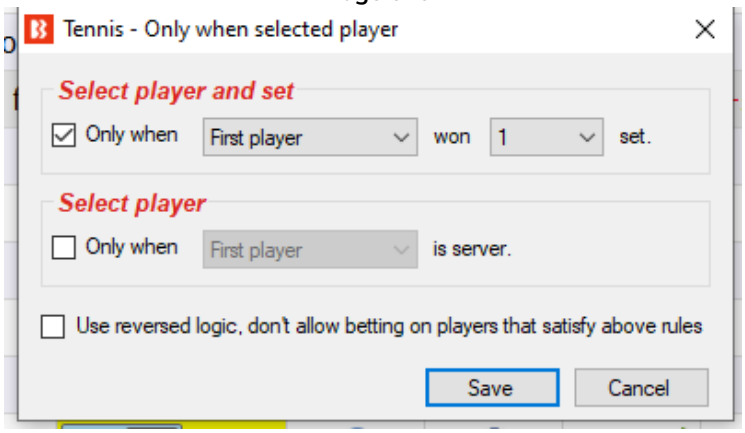
Image 619



The rule can also be used to allow betting based on the difference between values between Player 1 and Player 2. In the above image it would allow betting when Player 1 has 3 more double faults than Player 2 **Note**: "Player 1 has more double faults than Player 2 **+2**" = 3 double faults because if the "+" field is 0 then it means player 1 just has 1 more double fault than Player 2.

14.1.51 Tennis - Only when selected player

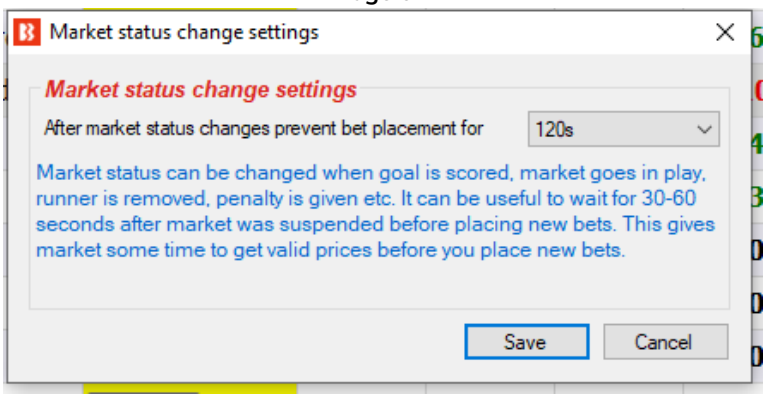
Image 620



This rule can be used to allow betting when Player 1 or Player 2 has won a specified amount of sets.
Or it can be used to allow betting only when Player 1 or Player 2 is the server.
You can also tick the "Use reversed logic" checkbox to prevent betting when the specified conditions are satisfied.

14.1.52 Market status change delay

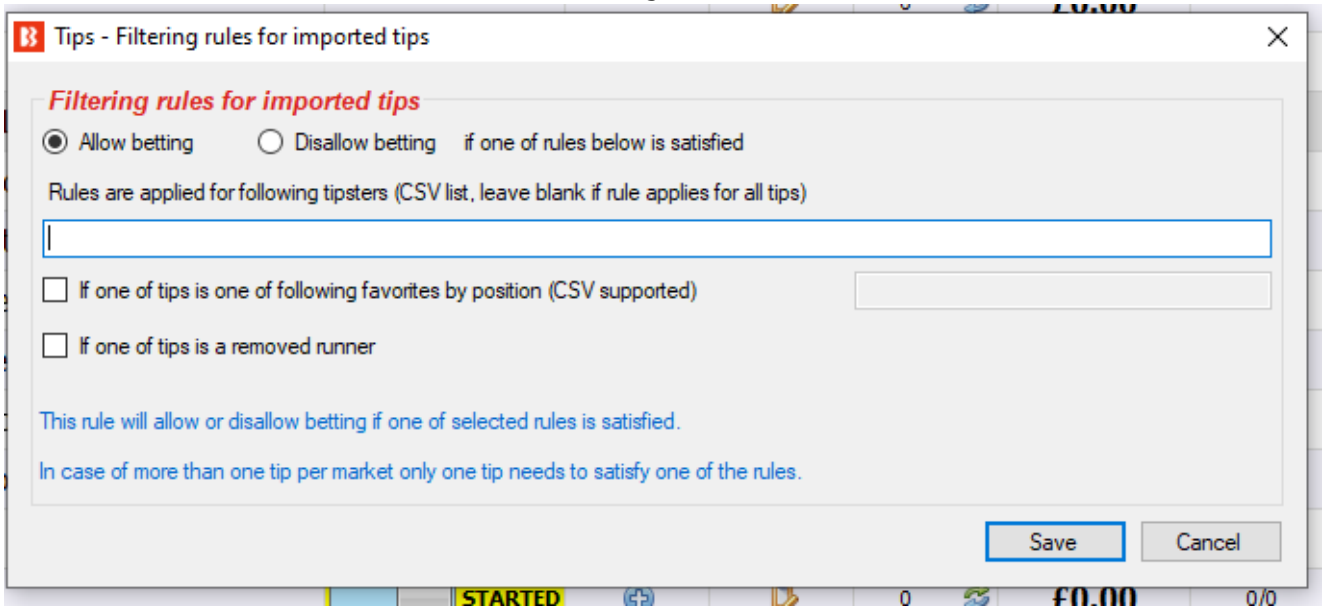
Image 621



If you are using in play statistics then we recommend that you also add to your strategy a **"Market status change delay"** rule and set it to prevent bet placement from 60-120 seconds when a market changes its status. Those 60-120 seconds should allow the bot to get new in play statistics that might have new information about the match after it is suspended during in play. For example, if the market gets suspended because a goal is scored then it might take some time for the statistics/score to update so you should set the strategy to wait for 60-120 seconds to make sure the in play statistics data is up to date. In play statistics data is downloaded every 30 seconds.

14.1.53 Tips - filtering rules for imported tips

Image 622



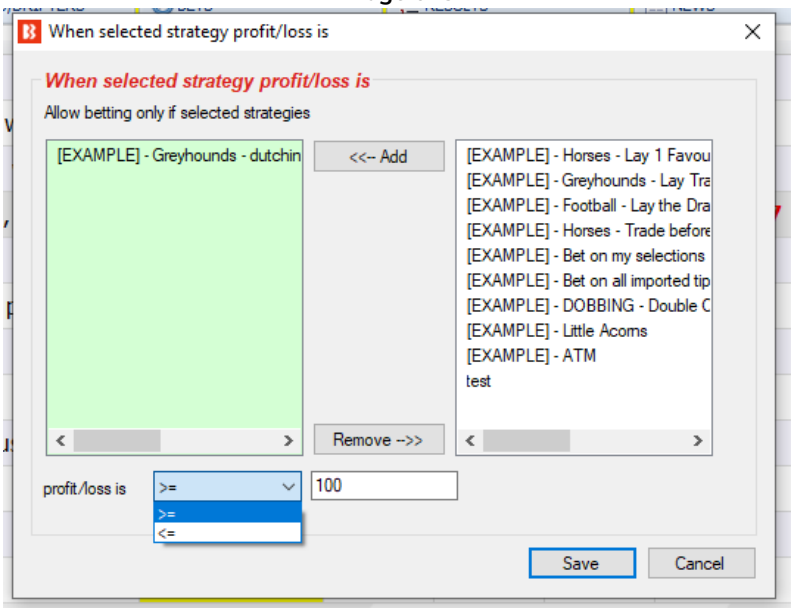
This rule is used to allow or not allow a strategy to bet on a market if one of your tips satisfies the selected rules.

You can specify a CSV list of tipsters whose tips need to be checked against the rule or leave this list blank to apply the rule to all tips. If you decide to use a tipster name, then make sure that the name is exactly the same as the tipster name set at the “Staking->Bet on imported tips” rule, as the strategy will bet only on tips from tipsters set at the “Staking ->Bet on imported tips” rule.

You can specify some or tipsters’ tips to be allowed or disallowed if:
One of the tips is a specified favorite by positon. This means you can only allow or disallow tips when the tip is a first or second favourite if you so choose. You need to select the “**Allow**” betting option to let betting happen only in these cases, or “**Disallow**” to prevent betting on those cases.
One of the tips is a removed runner. This means if the tipster has multiple tips on this market, but one of them is a removed runner, it will skip all tips for this market and not bet on it. You must select the “**Disallow**” option to stop betting on this market for that case.

14.1.54 Only if selected strategy has profit/loss in range

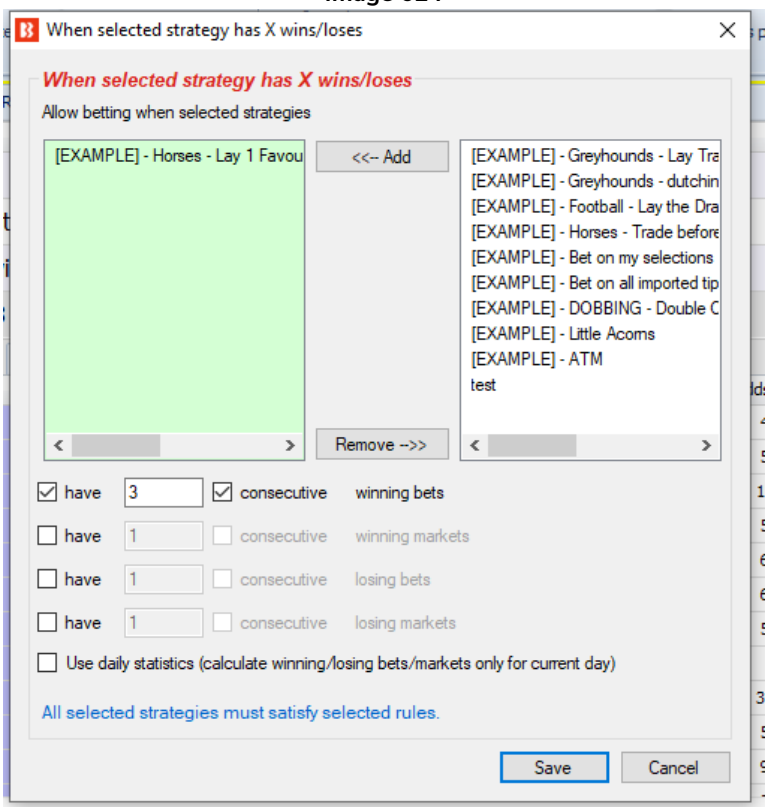
Image 623



This allows betting when the selected strategies total P/L is equal to more than (>=) a specified value or equal to or less than (<=) a specified value. If you select multiple strategies, it will look at the combined profit and loss figure. This can be useful when making strategies work together or be triggered by each other's profit or loss level.

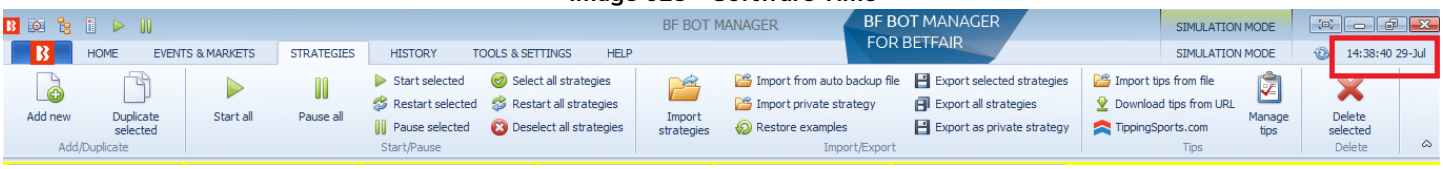
14.1.55 Only if selected strategy has X wins/losses

Image 624



This rule allows betting only when the selected strategies have a specific number or winning or losing bets or markets. There is a checkbox to specify if they are consecutive wins or losses. If unchecked, it will count total wins or losses overall until the value is met.
Note that some strategies can have multiple bets on a market, so the winning market option is available for those.
You can also tell the strategy to only count today's results instead of overall results. The day's results will depend on your PC clock, not the time of that market event's local time. You can see what time your software thinks it is by looking at the top right of your screen.

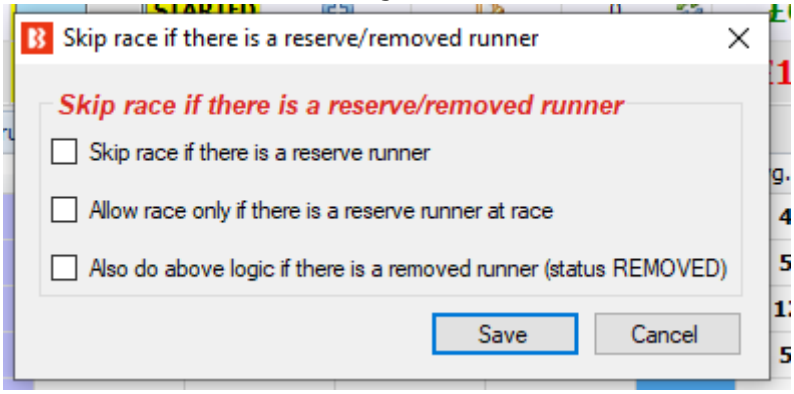
Image 625 – Software Time



Multiple incidences of this rule can be used. So you can set up a set of different rules for various strategies.

14.1.56 Greyhounds - Skip race if there is a reserve runner

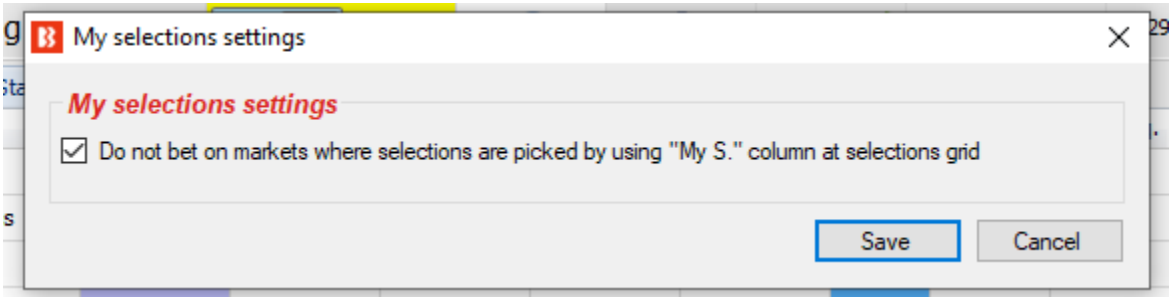
Image 626



Greyhound races can have a reserve or removed runner, and in such cases, you can use this rule to tell your strategy to skip betting on those races, or to bet only on those races. A reserve runner is identified by checking its name for the text "(res)" that is usually added to its name by the exchange.

14.1.57 Do not bet on markets where selections are picked by using "My S." column

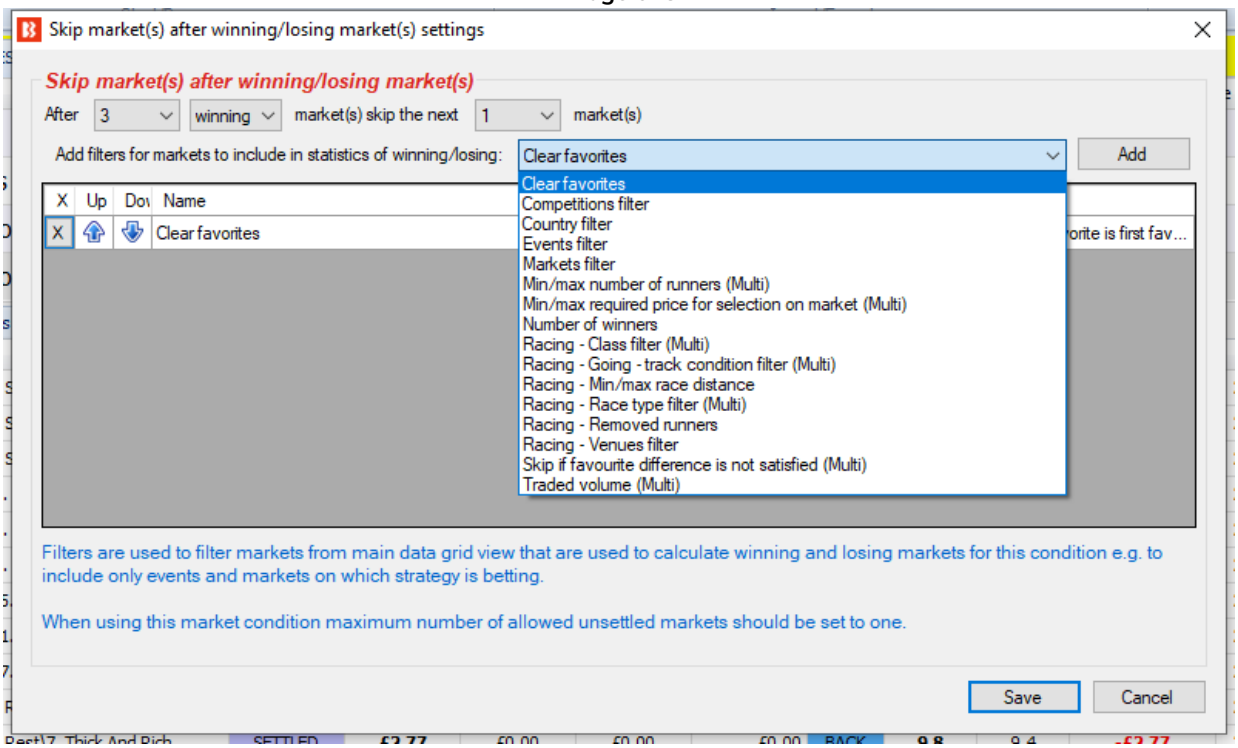
Image 627



This tells the strategy to skip a market if you have any selections picked manually by yourself by putting a tick in the "My S." (My Selections) column in the selections grid view. This can be useful to stop your strategies betting on markets that you have selected runners for another purpose.

14.1.58 Skip market(s) after winning/losing market(s)

Image 628

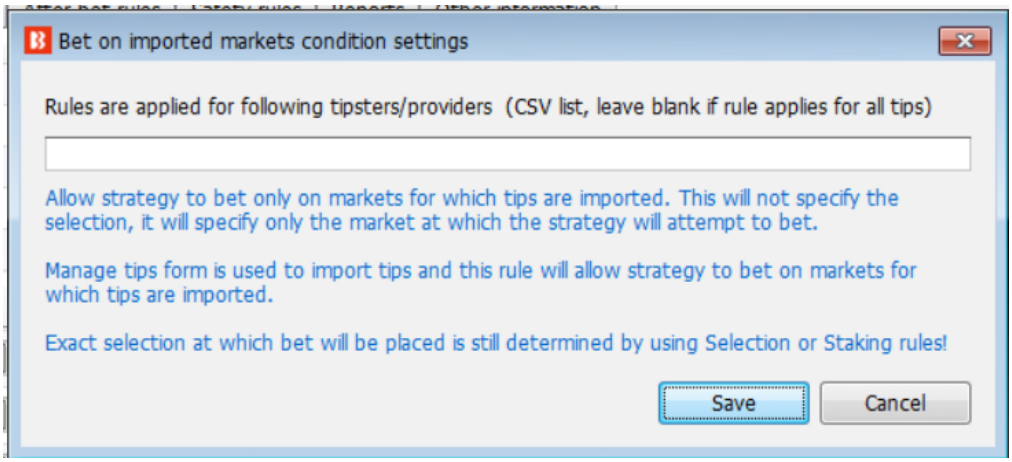


This rule lets you tell the strategy to skip “x” number of markets after “x” number of winning or losing markets.
The markets counted will be the ones bet on by this strategy.
You can filter the markets counted by the strategy by adding filters from the drop down menu. The filters are similar to other market condition filters and can be used in the same way to filter which markets to count or not.

14.1.59 Bet only on markets for which tips are imported

This rule allows betting on markets for which there are imported tips.

Image 629



If a tipster name is specified, then it will only allow markets which that tipster has tips on.
If no tipster name is specified, then it will allow betting on all markets for which there are imported tips.

One important difference between this rule and the Staking rule “Bet on imported selections/tips” is that if this bot strategy places a bet based on an imported tip, it does not use up that tip. A tip selection can only be bet on once, but in this rule does not bet on that selection, so it does not use up the tip. It just allows betting on the same market that a particular tip is for.

Please note that the selection to be bet on still needs to be specified with additional rules.

14.2 Selection conditions

Image 630

Add new rule to "test strategy" strategy

MARKET CONDITIONS
SELECTION CONDITIONS
PRICE SETTINGS
STAKING PLANS
AFTER BET RULES
SAFETY RULES

Type	Name	Initial	Status	Add rule	Description
	Default bet type	✓		+	Sets default bet type for all selections and allows betting on all selections. This should be used in combination with other filter rules that will prevent betting on all selections.
	Manual bet type	✓		+	Uses bet type that you manually set at selections grid view for each selection. Useful when picking your own selections and setting bet type for each selection manually.
	Back and Lay price ratio		✓	+	Allow betting on selections that satisfy ratio between Back and Lay price, ensuring that price and offer on selection is valid.
	Bet if specific market selection is within set price range			+	Used to check price of selection on some other market, at which this strategy is not set to bet e.g. strategy betting on match odds market, but you want to check price of under/over 2.5 goals market selection.
	Bet on "My Selections" only			+	Sets bet type for selections that are selected by using "My S." checkbox column at selections grid view.
	Bet type by favorite position			+	Sets bet type for selection with selected favorite position.
	Bet type by handicap			+	Sets bet type for selection with selected handicap value e.g. find selection by specified handicap value and sets bet type for that selection.
	Bet type by market			+	Sets bet type for all selections at market for which you manually set bet type at main markets grid view.
	Bet type by runner position			+	Sets bet type for selection with selected runner position e.g. second runner by position at over/under market is over X goals selection.
	Bet type on random selection(s)			+	Sets bet type for randomly picked selection(s)
	Compare prices			+	Compares selected price by type and allows betting if their difference is satisfied.
	Max number of Matched bets per runner			+	Allow betting only if number of matched on that selection is less than set maximum value by this rule.
	Max number of Unmatched bets per runner			+	Allow betting when number of unmatched bets is within set limits.
	Min/Max selection price		✓	+	Allow betting on selection if its selected price is within set min/max price range.
	Min/max selection traded volume			+	Allow betting on selections whose traded volume is within set range.
	Most traded selections			+	Allow betting on selected runners with highest matched amount in defined time interval before start time. Interval is set at strategy "Edit->Recording prices" form.
	Only if available amount >/<			+	Allow betting only if available amount on first/second/third best price is </> than defined amount.
	Only if specified strategy has bets on same selection			+	Allow betting only if selected strategy has bets on same selection. This rule is checking if same selection has bets, it cannot be used to check if another strategy has bets on same market or event.
	Only when price at min/max			+	Allow betting only on selections when their price is at minimum or maximum
	Overall sequence of bet types			+	Sequence of bet types to be used when placing bets. Sequence of bet types can be restarted on win/loss or at the end.
	Price change - Steamers/Drifters			+	Allow betting only on selections whose price changed by set value. It uses recorded min/max prices and compares them with available price to get price change value.
	Racing - Bet type by reduction factor			+	Sets bet type by comparing selection reduction factor and chance value
	Racing - Days since last run (horses)			+	Allow betting only on horses whose last run is within set time range.
	Racing - Filter horses by (BF), (C), (D) and (CD)			+	Allow betting only on horses that are beaten favourites, course/distance winners. Information for this rule is provided by third party service and it might not be available or accurate all the time.
	Racing - Filter horses by detailed information			+	Filters horses by checking detailed information provided by Betfair for each selection e.g. jockey/trainer name, form etc.
	Racing - Runner at win/place market favorite/price rules			+	Check place market selection price at win market and vice versa. Allows you to set strategy to bet on place market, but to check selection price at win market.
	Selections filter			+	Allow betting on selections that satisfy any or all selected filtering rules.
	Sequence of favorite positions			+	Allow betting on favorites by position specified in sequence e.g. bet on 1st favorite, then on 2nd, then on 3rd etc.
	TPD Zone filter			+	Total Performance Data - TPD Zone, rule for picking horses by using TPD live inrunning data
	Weight of money condition			+	Allow betting on selections that satisfy weight of money settings.
	Selection by highest/lowest			+	Allow betting on number of selections with highest or lowest selected price.

Image 631

[EXAMPLE] - Horses - Trade before in play | PAUSED | 0 | £3.13 | 24/47 | 51.00% | £3.13

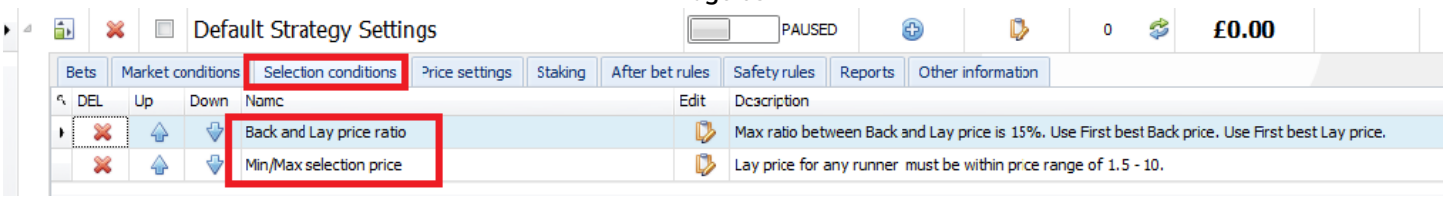
Bets | Market conditions | Selection conditions | Price settings | Staking | After bet rules | Safety rules | Reports | Other information

DEL	Up	Down	Name	Edit	Description
✗	↑	↓	Default bet type		Bet type of "BACK" will be used on selections that do not have any bet type set before this rule gets executed.
✗	↑	↓	Back and Lay price ratio		Max ratio between Back and Lay price is 15%.
✗	↑	↓	Min/Max selection price		Back price for any runner must be within price range of 1.01 - 10.
✗	↑	↓	Price change - Steamers/Drifters		DRIFTER - Bet on selection whose back price goes UP by 20.00%.

Market Conditions allow or prevent betting on a **whole market**.

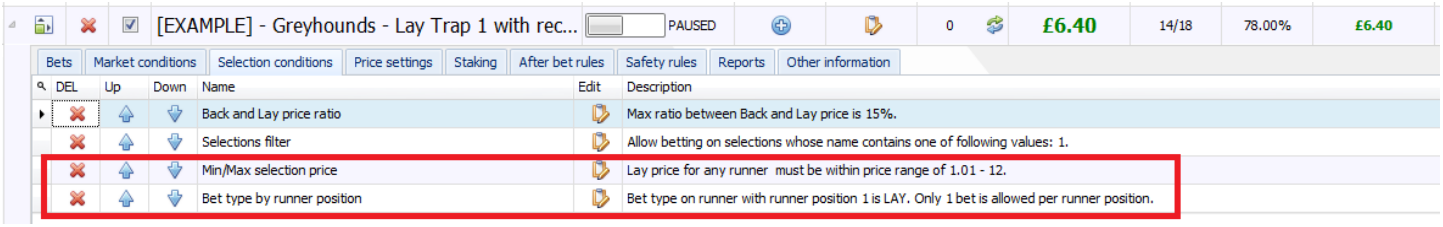
After betting on a market is allowed, **Selection Conditions** will then allow or prevent betting on **each selection** in that market. This is an important concept to understand so that you bet only on the selections that you want.

Image 632



When you create a new strategy, the Selection Conditions "**Back and Lay price ratio**" and "**Min/Max selection price**" are included by default. It is strongly advisable to keep those rules since the Back and Lay price ratio helps ensure the market prices are valid. And the Min/Max selection price let you set limits on what odds bets can be placed at.

Image 633



The two essential Selection Conditions are the **Min/Max selection price** and a **Bet Type**. A Bet Type for the selection **must** be set, otherwise the strategy will not try to place any bets.

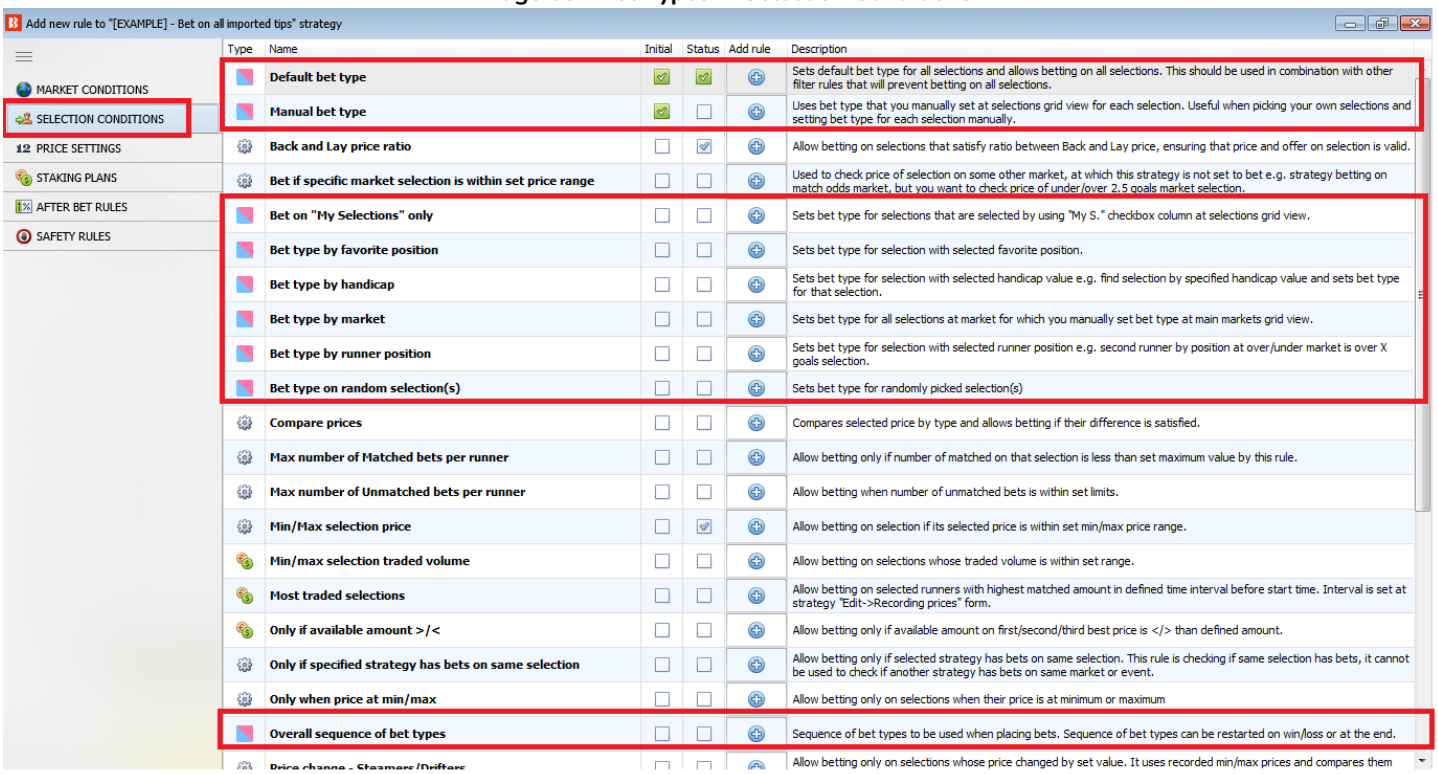
14.2.1 Bet type rules

The **bet type** is a very important rule to understand. **This is the rule that tells the strategy to place bets.** Some bet types can be used only once in a strategy. Some bet types can be used multiple times in one strategy. **Without this rule, it will not place bets.** In most cases, only one bet type rule is necessary for each strategy.

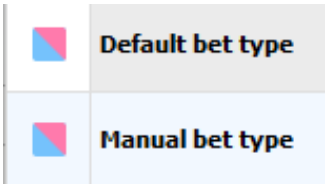
There are ten bet types available in total. Nine of them are found in the Selections Conditions tab and one of them is found in the Staking Plans tab.

The most commonly used bet types are:
1. Bet type by favorite position
2. Bet type by runner position
3. Default bet type
4. Bet on "My Selections" only
Oher bet types available are:
5. Manual bet type
6. Bet type by handicap
7. Bet type by market
8. Bet type on random selection(s)
9. Overall sequence of bet types
10. Bet on imported selections/tips (The last bet type "Bet on imported selections/tips" is the only bet type rule not found in the Selection Conditions tab. It is found in the Staking Plans tab and used together with the Default bet type to enable betting on imported tips.)

Image 634 Bet Types in Selection Conditions



You will notice that the bet type rules have a blue and pink icon on the "add new rule" form, like this.



The Default bet type is meant to be used in conjunction with other conditions that limit betting. One of the common errors that can be made is using the "Default bet type" rule combined with other bet types rules when it is not necessary.

For example. the **"Default bet type"** and the **"Bet type by favorite position"** rules
If both of these rules are selected, it will allow betting on all selections. This is because the default bet type rule will set the bet type on all selections.

To bet only on the favorite by position we need to only use the "Bet type by favorite position" rule.
That means

Default bet type	=	Bet on **all** selections unless others rules are used
Default bet type + Bet type by favorite position	=	Bet on **all** selections unless others rules are used.
Bet type by favorite positon	=	Bet **only** on selections matching this condition

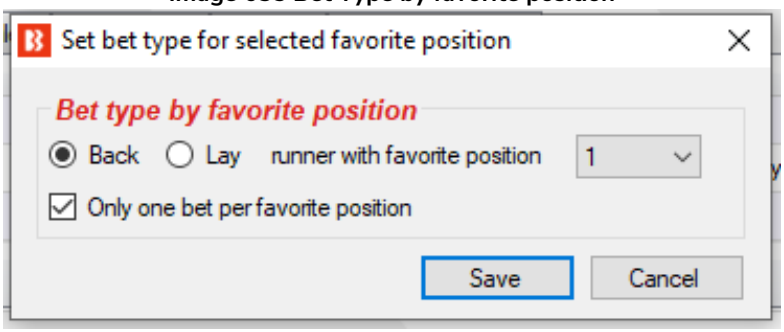
When we use the Default Bet type, we must also use Selection Conditions that specify which selections to allow betting on, otherwise then strategy could end up betting on all selections.

Let's take a closer look at each bet type.

14.2.2 Bet type by favorite position

The "Bet type by favorite position" will place bets on selections based on their odds. Add "Bet type by favorite position" to make it bet on favorites.

Image 635 Bet Type by favorite position



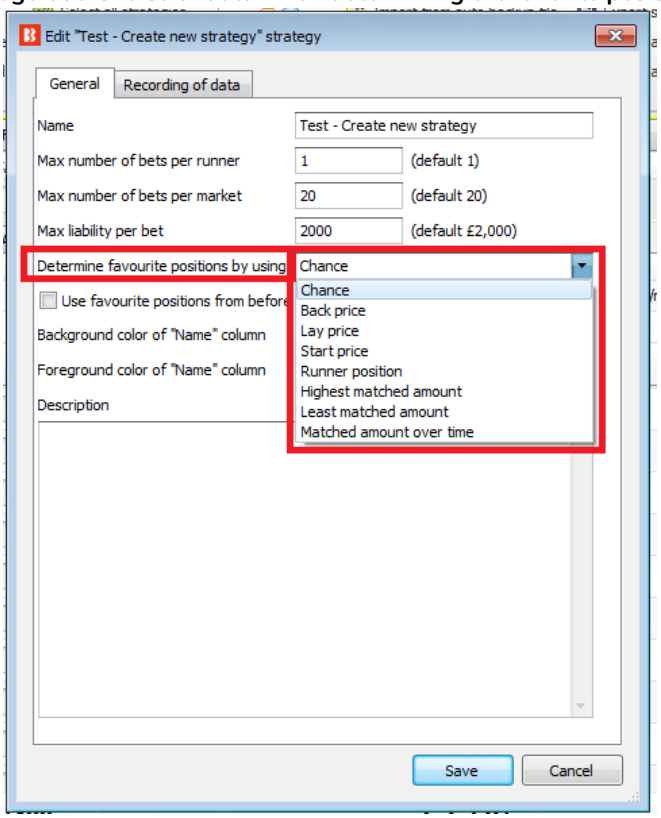
"Back runner with favorite position 1" tells the bot to bet on the runner that has the lowest odds in that market, i.e. the favorite. "Back runner with favorite position 2" would tell the bot to bet on the runner with the 2nd lowest odds in that market, the 2nd favorite. You can also select "Lay runner with favorite position 1" which would tell the bot to place a lay bet on the favorite. Keep the "Only one bet per favorite position" box checked to ensure only 1 bet is placed on a runner. Only uncheck this box if you are making a more advanced strategy that requires multiple bets on the similar runners. This also stops the bot from placing extra bets on the same market if the odds change and a "new" 1st favorite emerges.

You should not use any other bet type rule when you want to bet on a specific favourite by position. Adding other bet type rules would make your strategy bet on other selections as well. In most cases it is always best that you create a separate strategy for each selection that you want to bet on.

One exception is if you want to place dutching bets (for target profit or set exposure) on two or more favourites by position then you need to add a "Bet type by favorite position" rule for each favourite by position and set a dutching staking plan at Staking tab.

The way the favorite is determined can be changed in the main strategy edit form.

Image 636 Choice of data when determining the favorite positon



Favourite positions are determined by using the market data that the bot receives from the exchange. Favourite positions can be decided by using one of following parameters:

Chance value (default) - This is calculated by using the currently available runner's Back and Lay price. We recommend that you do not change this value unless you are certain that you fully understand how strategies and rules work or unless we instruct you to do so in order to make the strategy work as you want it to
Back price – The runner with the smallest Back price is the first favourite and the runner with the highest Back price is the outsider
Lay price – The runner with the smallest Lay price is the first favourite and the runner with the highest Lay price is the outsider
Start price (BSP) – The runner with the smallest Betfair Start Price is the first favourite and the runner with the highest Betfair Start Price is the outsider. The BSP is only available after the market goes in play and only for BSP markets. This option should only be used if the strategy is set to bet during in play, not before in play.
Runner position – The first favourite will be the first runner in the list of selections received from the exchange. For example, the first runner in the Match Odds market is the home team, the second runner is the away team and the third runner is the draw. For greyhound markets, the first runner is trap 1, the second runner is trap 2 etc. For Under/over markets, the first runner is the Under X goals selection and the second runner is the Over X goals selection.
Highest matched amount – The first favourite is the runner with the highest amount matched and the outsider is the selection with the lowest amount matched
Lowest matched amount – The first favourite is the runner with the lowest amount matched and the outsider is the selection with the highest amount matched
Matched amount over time – The first favorite is the runner with the highest amount matched over time and

the outsider is the selection with the lowest amount matched over time. The Matched amount over time uses the "Recording of data" settings to compare matched amounts over that time period. If the software is set to record prices from 5 minutes before the start time and to stop recording prices at 1 minute before the start time, then the strategy will record the minimum and maximum traded volume for each runner. This allows it to calculate the difference between the min and max recorded value for traded amounts and then to sort the runners by that difference. The selection with the highest difference is the one that was traded the most during that time interval that the “Recording of data” is set to. It is like ranking the selections based on which has had the most betting activity on them in the time period selected for monitoring.
For example, if the 4th favorite by odds had £4,000 traded on it in the 5 minutes before the start, but the 1st favorite by odds only had £100 traded on it, then the 4th favorite by odds would be the 1st favorite by Matched amount over time.

The way favourite positions are determined will have an effect on all the conditions in your strategy that use favourite positions. It is recommended to leave the “Determine favorite positions by using” setting on the “chance” option as this is the most commonly used setting. Only change this if you know exactly what you are doing and will test it thoroughly in simulation mode.

When betting during in play you might want to **use the favourite positions from before in play** instead of determining those by using in play prices. In that case, you would tick option "Use favourite positions from before in play". If you are not betting during in play and placing bets only before in play then make sure you do not tick this option, so that strategy can determine favourite positions at the time of bet before in play.

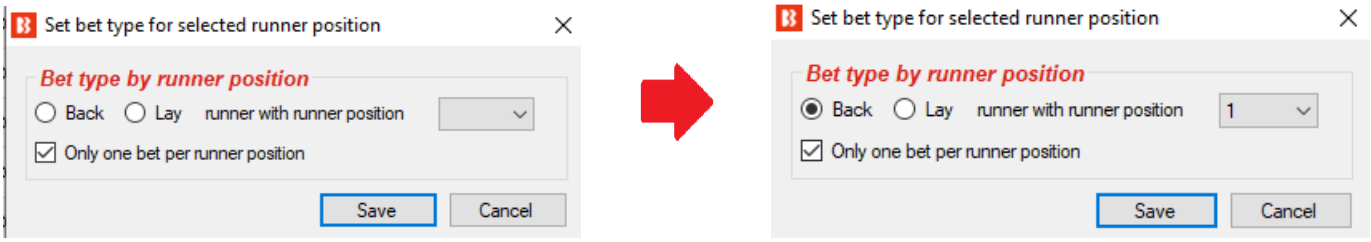
14.2.3 Bet type by runner position

This tells the bot to place bets on selections based on their positon on the Betfair market screen.

Image 637 Selection conditions - Bet type by runner position

If we select the “Back” option and choose “1” from the dropdown menu.

Image 638 Bet type by runner position settings

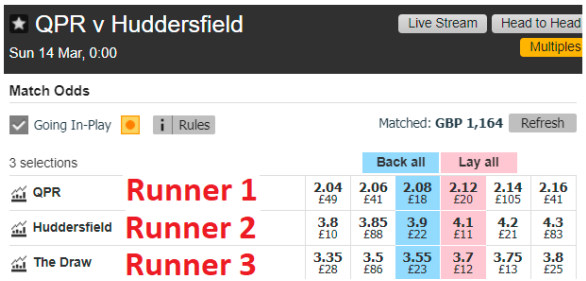


This means the bot will only bet on the runner with position 1 on the markets screen.
Some Betfair markets always have the same selection in the same runner position, for example Match Odds for tennis, football, rugby, etc, Over/Under goals markets, Correct Score markets and so on. Some markets runners depend on the order Betfair added the runners, for example Horseracing, politics or special bets.

Football Match Odds Markets

Runner 1 is always the home team.
Runner 2 is always the away team.
Runner 3 is always the draw.

Image 639



Football Over/Under 2.5 Goals Market

Runner 1 is always the under option
Runner 2 is always the over option.

Image 640

Greyhound Win Markets

Runners 1-8 always equal the Trap numbers 1-8.

Image 641

Tennis Match Odds Markets

Runner 1 is always Player 1
Runner 2 is always Player 2

Image 642

Horse Racing

But for Horse Racing, the saddlecloth number and the horse stall do not always match the Runner number. The Runner number reflects the order of the horses on the Betfair market screen. The Betfair initial order is often in expected odds order from low to high, but these odds change over time so it is not always that order.

Image 643

Special Markets

And of course, special markets are irregular by their nature, so the runners are in the order Betfair chooses. Again, the Betfair initial order is often in expected odds order from low to high, but these odds change over time so it is not always that order.

Image 644

If you are not sure if your market has fixed runner positions or variable runner positions, try comparing several

markets and look if there is a pattern.

The selection condition "Bet type by RUNNER position" should always be used in combination with the market condition "Markets filter" that will allow strategy only to execute on the selected market types.

For example, if you set the markets filter to allow betting on match odds markets and use the bet type by runner position to set the bet type for 1st runner by position. This would allow the strategy to bet on home teams (runner by position 1) in the match odds markets. In this example, if you decided to select over/under 2.5 goals market at markets filter then strategy would bet on under 2.5 goals selection (runner by position 1). It is the combination of these two rules that identifies selection at which bets will be placed. You need to first use the markets filter to identify which market on which the strategy will bet and then you use the bet type by runner position to identify the selection at which strategy will bet.

If you only set Runner by positon 1 and did not select any market filters, then the strategy would bet on every runner in 1st position in every loaded market i.e Home teams in match odds, the under bet in over/under markets, 0-0 in the correct score markets, and so on. So the markets filter is an essential condition to be used with this bet type. If you are loading only markets of one market type to the MARKETS grid view, then in that case the markets filter might not be needed, but to be on the safe side it is always best that you add a markets filter to ALL of your strategies.

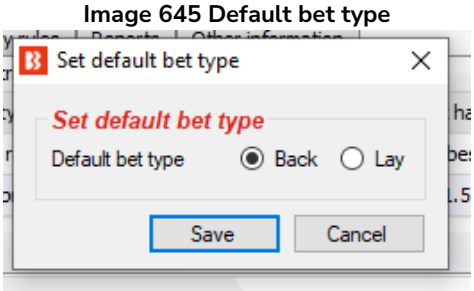
A key thing to remember here is that the difference between “Bet type by favorite position” and “Bet type by runner position” is that “Bet type by favorite position” is done by odds and “Bet type by runner position” is done by the market screen order. Also, make sure that if you set the bet type by using runner position that you also **check the min/max price for the same runner by position**. If you set the bet type by favourite position then you should also check the min/max price for the same “favourite by position” or “any runner”.

14.2.4 Default bet type

This is always used in combination with other selection filters when you want a strategy to place bets on selections that match your specific criteria.

For example, if you only want to bet on horses that have won on a ground before, or football teams that have scored in their last 3 home games, or greyhounds that have come first or second in their last races, and so on. **Another way to think of this bet type is as “Bet on any selections that satisfies my rules”.** That means if you do not add any limiting selection filters, it becomes “Bet on everything”.

Image 645 Default bet type



When using the "Default bet type" rule it is important that you understand that this rule **will set the bet type to Back or Lay on ALL selections.** This will allow the strategy to bet on **ALL** selections in the market. This means that **you must use other filtering rules** that will filter selections and prevent betting on selections if they do not satisfy your rules.

The example strategy "Example – Horses – Trade before in play" uses this Default bet type rule together with a Drifters rule and a Price rule to limit selections.

Even with filters, it is possible that all the runners satisfy all the rules and that bets get placed on all of them. Because of this it is important to be careful when using "Default bet type" rule and **to test your settings in simulation mode** before using real mode.

There are many situations where we do not know on which selection we want to bet on, but we do know that that selection must satisfy our specific rules. For example, if we want to bet on horses that are course or distance winners, that is, horses that have won at that racecourse or at that race distance. In such situations we would use the selection condition "Default bet type" in combination with other selection conditions that would filter horses by our rules so that only horses that satisfy all our rules are left for betting.

Here is an example, let's say that we want to bet on horses that:

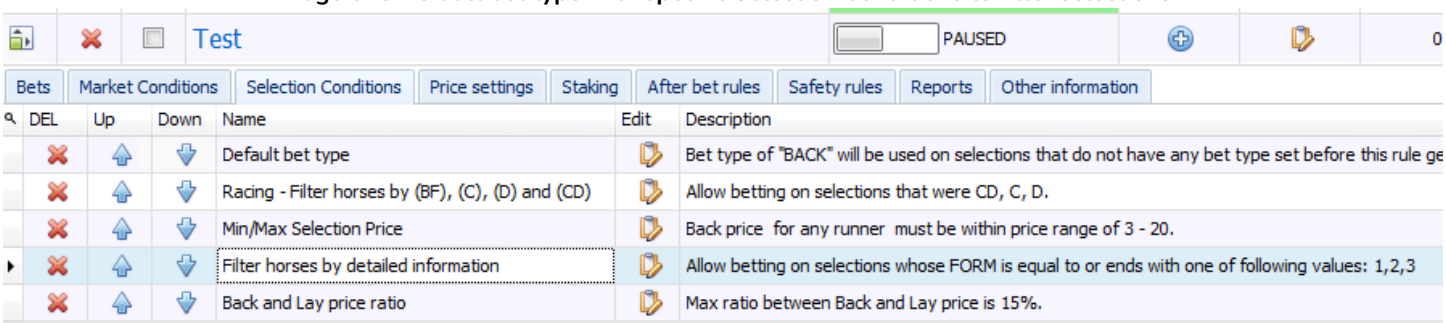
- are course or distance winners
- are in the price range of 3.0 - 20.0
- finished the last race in one of the first three positions

Obviously there can be more than one horse that satisfies these criteria, but there can also be no horses that satisfy all those rules. To bet on all horses that satisfy those rules we would use the following selection conditions:

- **Default bet type** - to bet Back/Lay bet type for all horses
- **Racing - Filter horses by (BF), (C), (D), (CD)** – to set it to allow betting on (C), (D) and (CD) horses
- **Min/max selection price** – to set it to check "Any runner" Back/Lay price for the price range of 3.0 - 20.0
- **Filter horses by detailed information** – to set it to allow betting on horses whose FORM ends with "1, 2, 3", which means that horse finished in one of the first three places in the last race

Here is a screenshot of those rules.

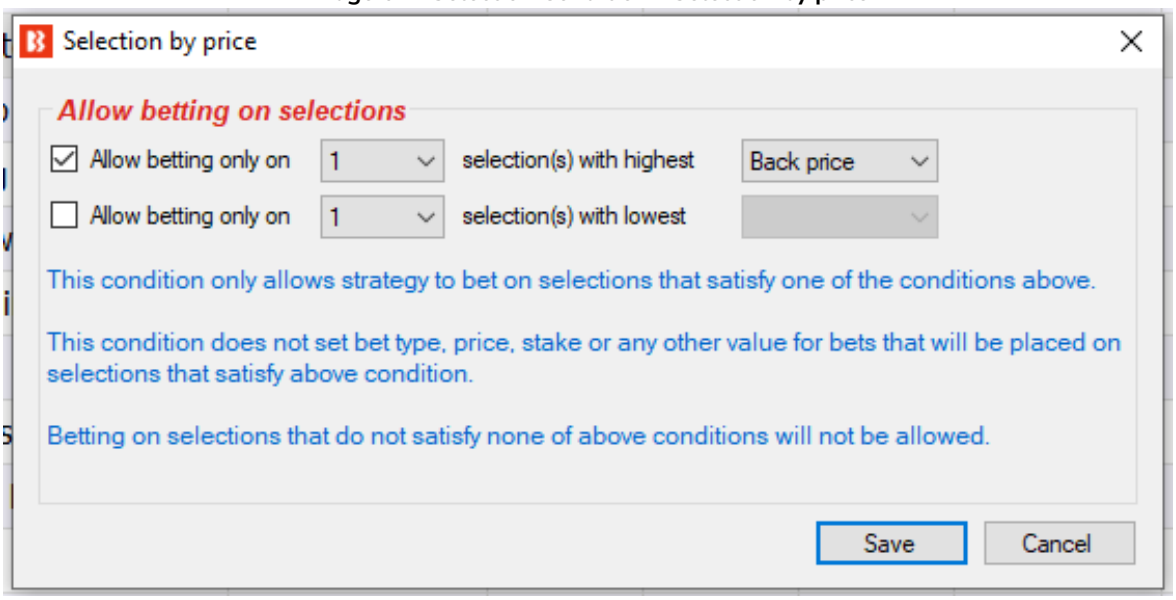
Image 646 Default bet type with specific Selection Conditions to filter selections



Those rules are not very strict and it is possible that all the runners satisfy all the rules and that bets get placed on all of them. Because of this, it is important to be very careful when using the "Default bet type" rule and to test your settings in simulation mode before using real mode.

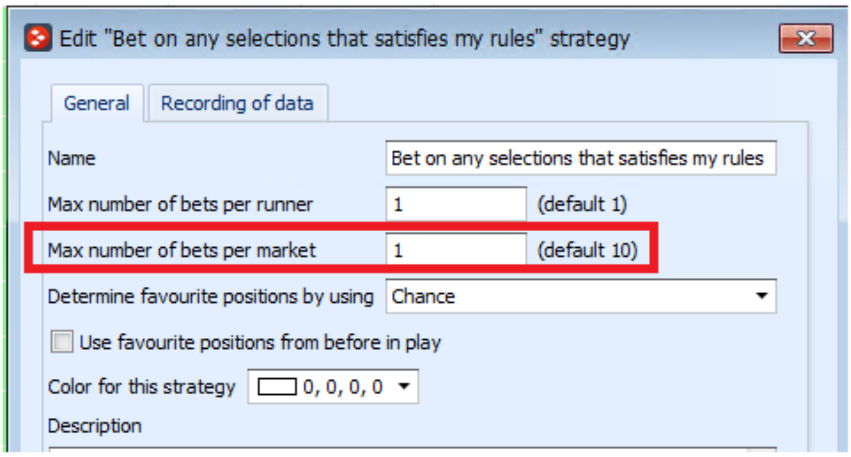
Also, if you only want to bet on the highest or lowest priced horse from the ones that satisfy your rules then you could add the rule "Selection by highest/lowest price" and move it to the last place so that it executes last when only horses that satisfy all the other rules are left for betting. Like in the screenshot below:

Image 647 Selection Condition - Selection by price



Now we know that the strategy will be able to place one bet at a time, which is on the highest priced selection that satisfies our rules. But what will happen if prices change and our selection is no longer the highest priced selection? In that case, another bet would be placed on some other runner that satisfies all the rules. To prevent that, you would also need to edit the strategy details and set the maximum number of bets per market to 1. Here is a screenshot of those settings as well.

Image 648 Strategy Edit Form – Max number of bets per market



Now, all that is left to do with the strategy is to add standard market conditions that will allow it to bet on horse racing WIN markets, set the time to bet, the stake and to try out the strategy in simulation mode.

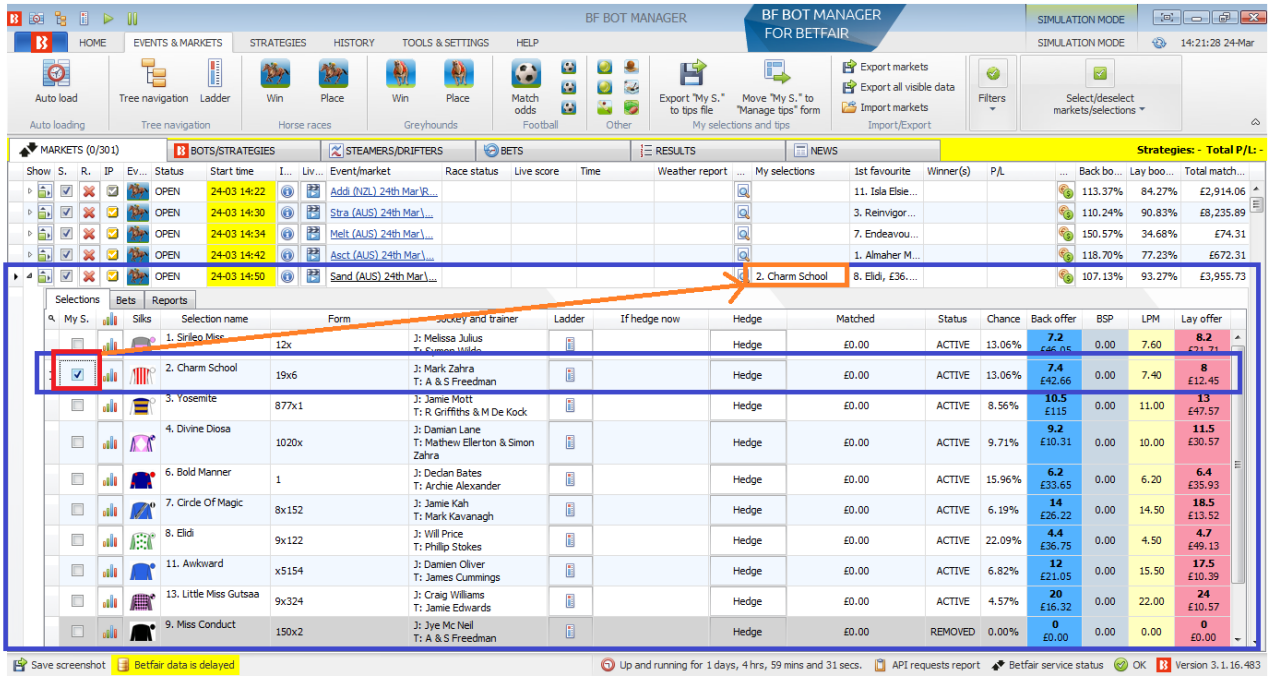
This example shows how initial settings can allow betting on all runners that satisfy the rules and then we can make it stricter so that it only bets on one runner with the highest price that satisfies all the rules. We can make any combination of rules we like, but make sure to always test the settings in simulation mode.

14.2.5 Bet on "My Selections" only

With the bet type **Bet on "My Selections" only** you can

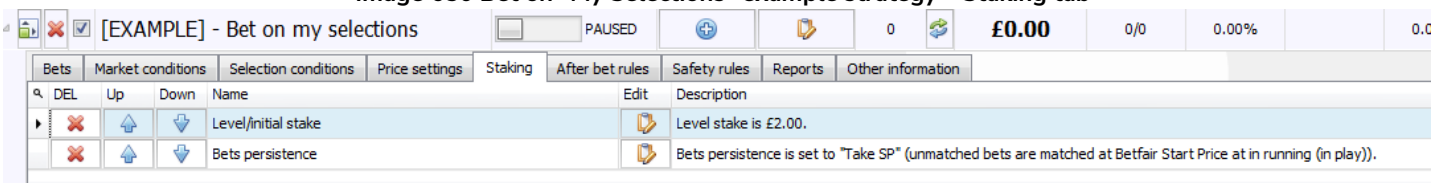
- Set the bot to automatically bet on your manual selections at a specified time.
- Apply a strategy to your manual selections, such as staking plans.
- Apply a strategy to your manual selections and also add special rules to some selections.

Image 649 Bet on "My Selections" bet type – My S. checkbox in Market Selections Grid View



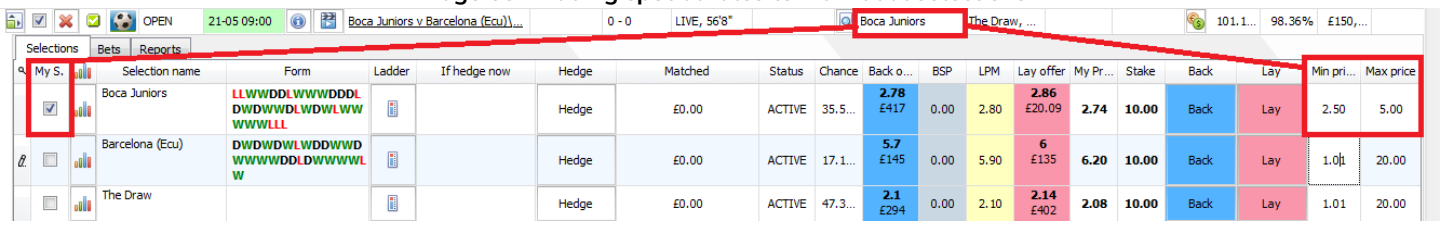
You can place bets at a set time before the start without having to wait in front of a computer using the “My S.” check box in the Market Selections grid view together with a “Bet on my selections” strategy. This can be good for your own liquidity, since if you place all your bets too far in advance, you betting balance is tied up until those events finish, so you can do more with your betting bank when it is only exposed at the time of the event.

Image 650 Bet on “My Selections” example strategy – Staking tab



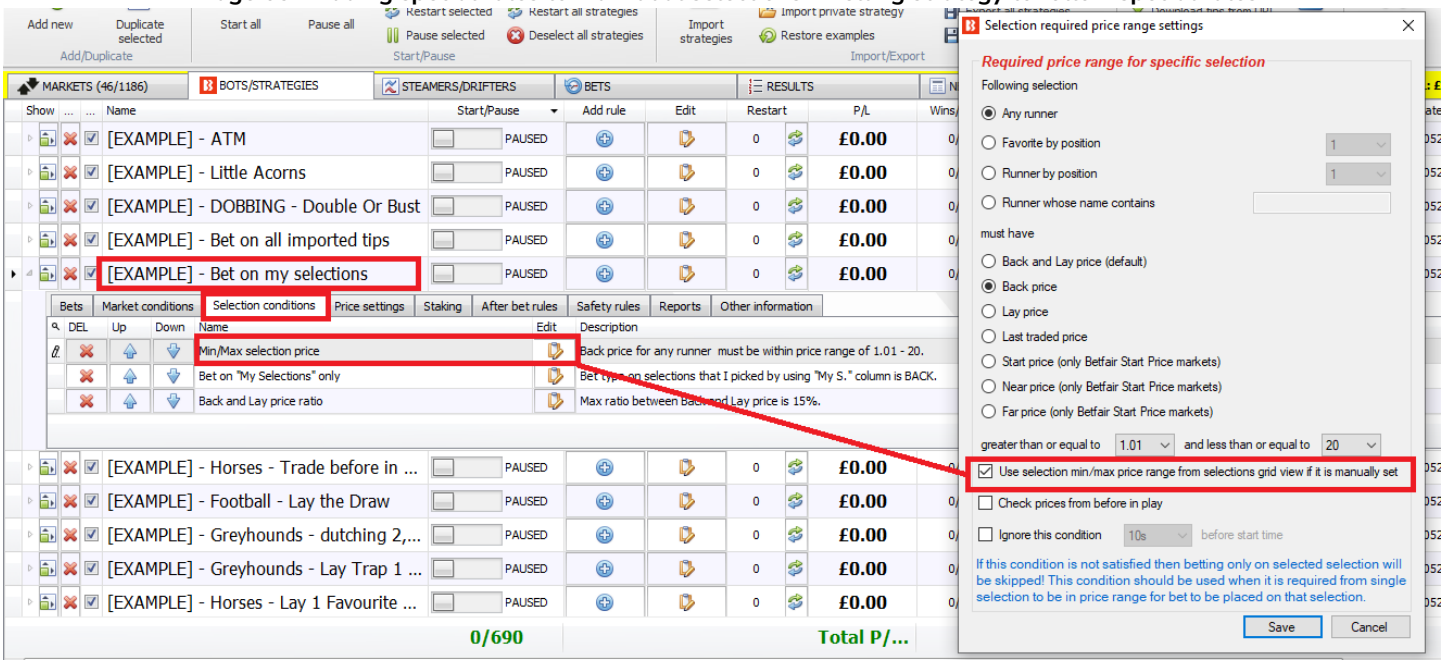
You can apply a strategy to manual selections, such as staking plans. You can manually select the runners that you want to apply a strategy to that may include price rules, a staking plan, and so on. You can use the “Bet on my selections” strategy to apply general rules to all of your bets. For example, if you only want to bet if the odds are 2.00 or more, then in the strategy “Selection Conditions” you can change the “Min/Max Selection Price” setting to 2.00-20. Or if you want to apply a staking plan to your bets, you can add it in the Staking Plans tab, there are many staking plans available, D’Alambert, Odds staking ladder, Recovery and many more. Here I will add the Percent staking plan to my strategy and set it to bet 3% of the betting bank on each bet. Or if you want to do more advanced strategies, you can tell the strategy to hedge your selections in specified situations from the After Bet Rules tab by adding a “Hedge or Close Position” rule.

Image 651 Adding special rules to individual selections



You can apply a strategy to manual selections and also add special rules to some selections by adding columns in the Selections Grid View. For example, you may have a general strategy set up, but for a specific selection you think the odds are not value and you do not want to place a bet unless the odds are above a certain level. We are able to do this by adding special rules to individual selections. In the main Markets tab we open the selections grid view and then right click on any column header and select the “Column Chooser” option and then double-click on “Min price” and “Max price” to add minimum and maximum price columns. Then we set a minimum price.

Image 652 Adding special rules to individual selections – Telling strategy to follow special rules



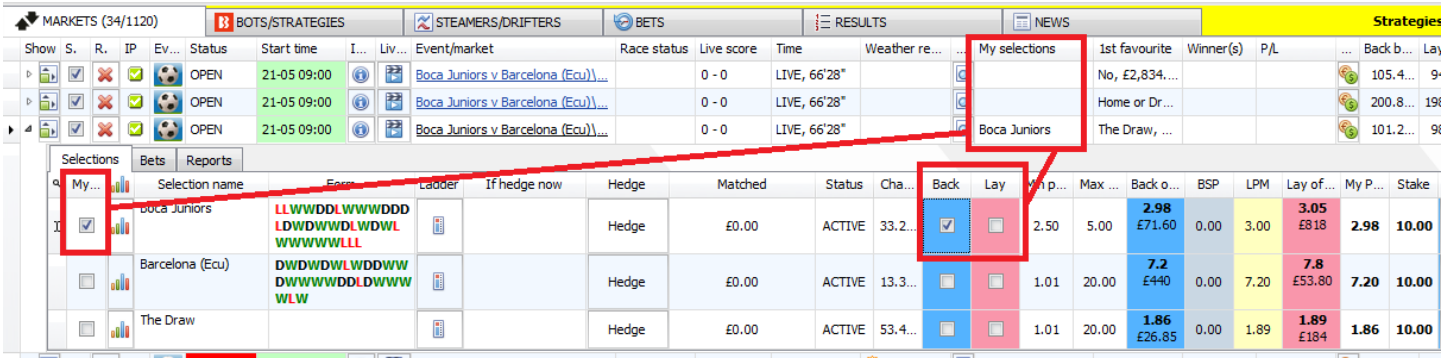
If you want your strategy to follow these special rules, then make sure in the Strategy Tab under the Selection Conditions rules, edit the "Min/Max Selection Price" rule to **"Use selection min/max price range from selections grid view if it is manually set"** by checking that box. You can use these extra columns to manually add selection specific stakes and even bet types.

In this way the **Bet on "My Selections" only** bet type is very useful in allowing users to manually select events and then apply strategies to them, for enabling automatic placing of bets closer to the start time, or for applying staking plans to a set of selections, or for applying complex hedging and dutching rules to selections.

14.2.6 Manual bet type

With this bet type set, the strategy only follows the manually selected bet type, BACK or LAY, from the Markets selection grid view columns, not its own general bet type. This bet type is used if you want to select to BACK or LAY a selection manually for each event.
To do this, we need to add a back and lay check box column in the **markets selections grid view** by right clicking any column header, select "Column Chooser", double-click to add back and lay boxes, and then check the bet type we want for that selection. Remember also to check the "My S." box so that the selection is set.

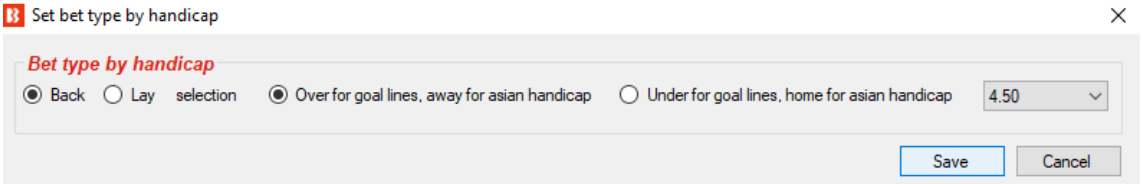
Image 653 Add Back and Lay checkboxes to Selections Grid View for Manual bet type



14.2.7 Bet type by handicap

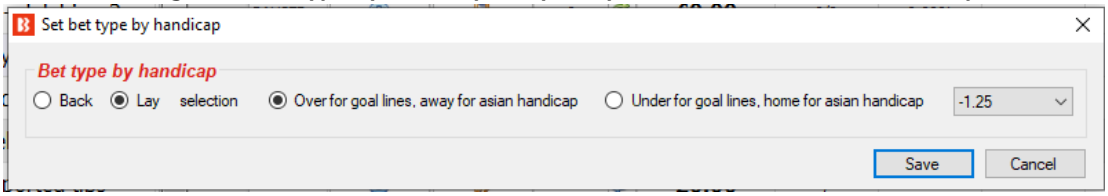
For goal lines and Asian handicap markets the bet type needs to be set by using a handicap value. You select Back or Lay bet type, then the selection you want to bet on and then the handicap value.
If you want to place a BACK bet on the Over 4.5 goals markets that match your criteria, then select “back” the “Over for goal lines, away for Asian handicap” option and “4.5” in the handicap drop-down menu.

Image 654 Bet type by handicap – Back over 4.5 goals



If you want to place a LAY bet on the away team with a handicap of -1.25, then select “lay” the “Over for goal lines, away for Asian handicap option” and “-1.25” in the handicap drop-down menu.

Image 655 Bet type by handicap – Lay away team with -1.25 Asian handicap

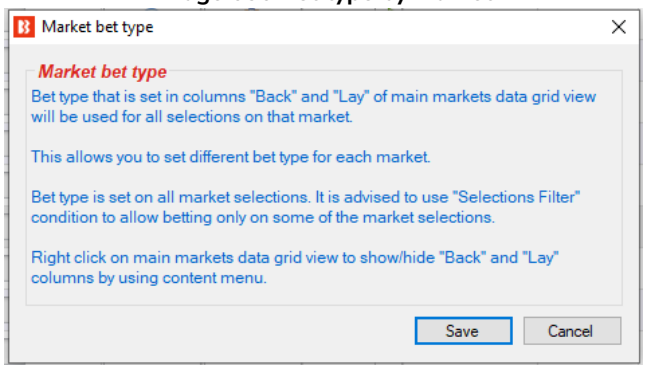


Note that you need to set more filtering rules for the strategy to work. You need to set market filters, event filters, and so on in the market conditions tab, and also price rules and other selection filters in the selection conditions tab.

14.2.8 Bet type by market

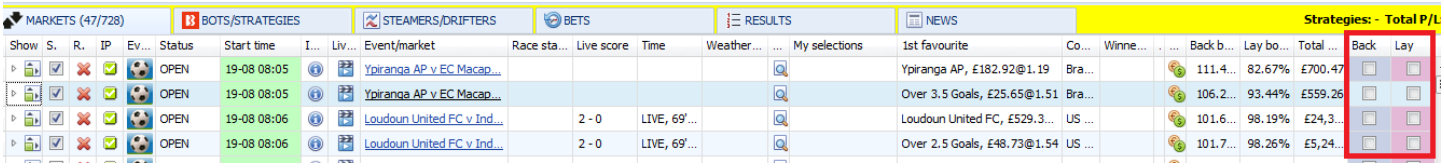
With this bet type, the bet type set in the main **markets grid** will set the bet type for **all selections** in that market. Note that this is different to the manual bet type which sets the bets type for each selection in the Markets selection grid view.

Image 656 Bet type by market



If you right click on any column header in the MARKETS view, select “Column Chooser” and double click to add back and lay columns, then the main markets data grid view will show checkbox columns “Back” and “Lay” that will allow you to select one of those bet types for each market. This is so that if this market contains a selection that matches the filters of the strategy, it will then look at the bet type set for that market for the type of bet to make on it.

Image 657 Bet type by market – Back/Lay bet instruction checkbox in MARKETS view



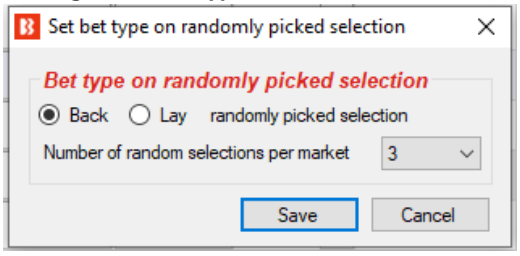
The example strategy “Bet on My selections” will bet on your tips and can have its own rules that will check the min/max price range, set bet type, set price and set the stake at which bets will be placed on your selections. But if you want, you can set a different price range, stake, price and bet type for each selection by using the custom columns in selections grid view. These can be accessed by right clicking on any column header in the selections grid view and clicking on Column chooser. If you decide to set different details for each selection, then make sure that in the strategy that will bet on those selections (i.e. Bet on My selections), you also tick the options in the separate rules to use manually set price range (Min/max selection price rule), stake (Level/initial stake rule), price (Default price rule) and so on.

The Selections grid view also contains button columns for Back and Lay that allow you to place bets immediately at a set stake and price. This is usually used when you want to prepare your bets, monitor markets during or before in play and then to place bets quickly at your preset values.

14.2.9 Bet type on random selection(s)

This bet type will place random bets on markets that match the filters set in the strategy. You can set the bet type, Back or Lay, and the number of runners that can be bet on in each market.

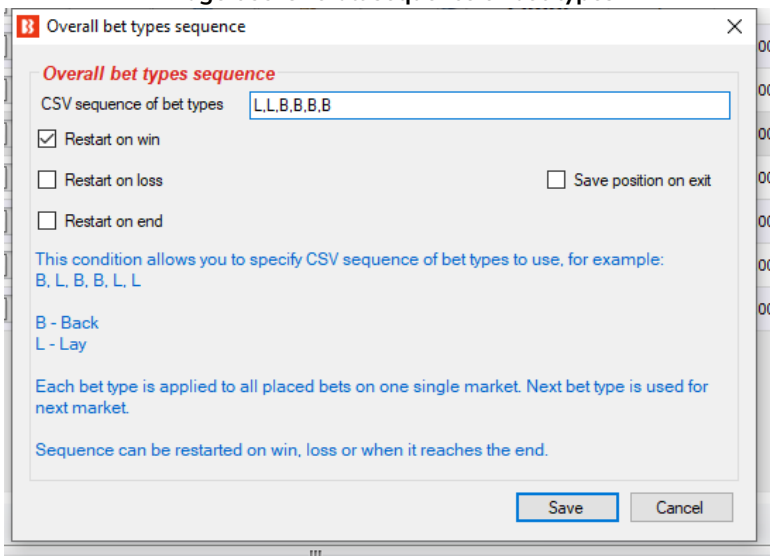
Image 658 Bet type on random selections



14.2.10 Overall sequence of bet types

This condition allows you to set the sequence of bet types to be used on bets that will be placed by the strategy. You can specify any sequence of bet types as a CSV sequence (separated by commas).

Image 659 Overall sequence of bet types



To get the correct sequence that will restart on win/loss/end you should also add to your strategy "Unsettled markets" condition with number of allowed unsettled markets set to 1.

The sequence of bet types is specified as a CSV list, for example, "B,B,L,L,B" for "Back, Back, Lay, Lay, Back" which means the first bet will be a Back bet type, the second a Back bet type, the third a Lay bet type, the fourth a Lay bet type and the fifth a Back bet type.

You can also set the strategy to restart the sequence after a win, a loss or when the series ends.

For example, if you were following a system where you thought there was a low chance of a winner coming on the next two selections after a win, then you could set the bet type to lay those selections instead of backing them for the first two bets after a win, and then revert to normal back bets until another winner resets the system. If the "Restart on end" checkbox is not ticked, then the bet type will remain on the type set by the final entry in the series. For "L,L,B,B,B" in the above image, it would remain on Back bets (the final "B") until a win occurs to restart the series.

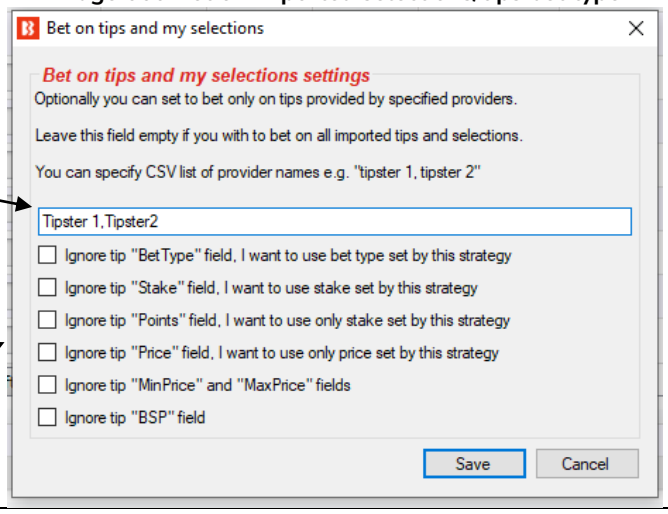
14.2.11 Bet on imported selections/tips be type

This last bet type "**Bet on imported selections/tips**" is the only bet type rule not found in the Selection Conditions tab. It is found in the Staking Plans tab. But it is also classed as a bet type because if the imported tips also specify the bet type, then this rule alone can execute bets.
This is used for betting on imported tips from files or URLs or for betting on sets of selections manually created by using the "My S." my selections check box and exporting selections to the "manage tips" form.
If there is no bet type set by the imported selections, then another bet type is necessary to set the bet type. For example, the **Default bet type** is used to tell the bot to place Back bets on all imported tips.

Leave the tipster field blank to bet on all imported tips, or specify the tip set to be bet on. For specifying multiple tip sets, separate them by a comma.

If the imported selection set/tips have fields that you want to ignore, such as stake size or MinPrice and MaxPrice field, then you can select which fields to ignore.

Image 660 Bet on imported selections/tips bet type



See this manual section [2.1.7 Bet on all imported tips](#) for a detailed demonstration of how to use this bet type.

14.2.12 Back and Lay price ratio

The Back and Lay Price Ratio rule helps the bot get valid prices.

Image 661 Back and Lay Price Ratio rule

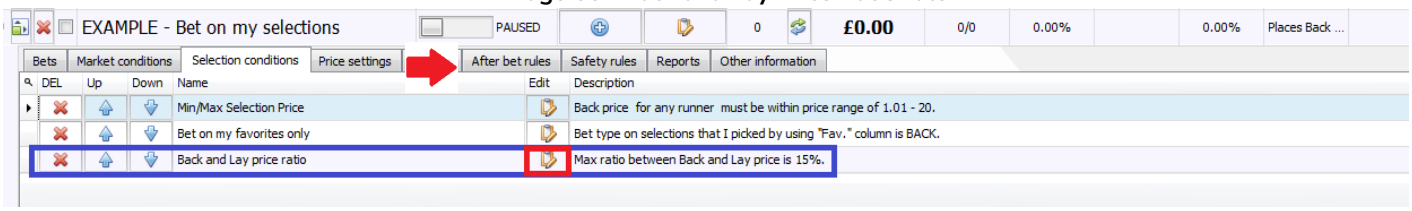
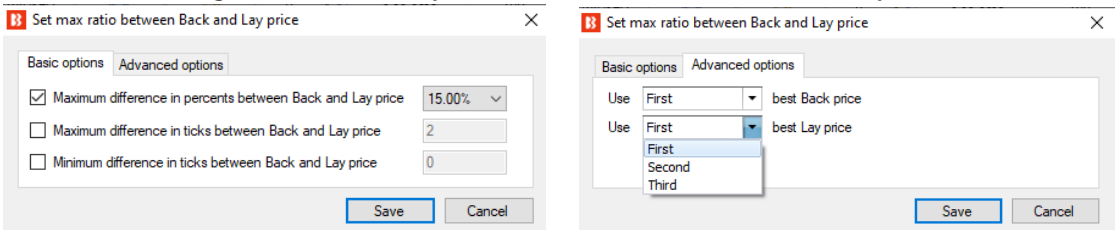


Image 662 Back and Lay Price Ratio rule Basic and Advanced Options



The Back and Lay Price Ratio rule looks at the odds gap between back and lay odds for each individual selection. It then checks the rule to see if the strategy is allowed to bet based on the percentage or tick difference. The percentage value is calculated by dividing the lay odds by the back odds, then subtracting 1.

Odds ratio = (lay odds / back odds) – 1

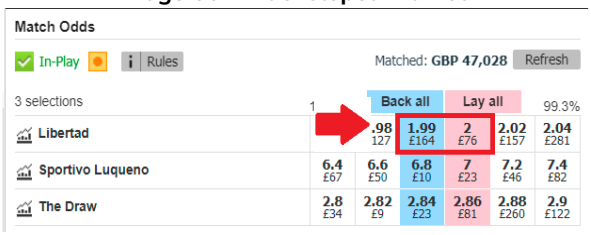
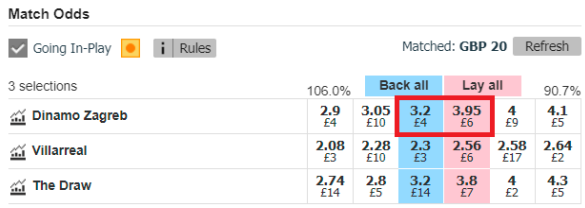
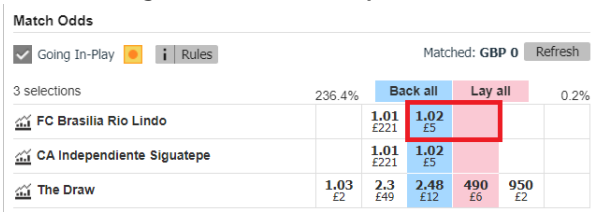
The bigger the percentage, the larger the gap between the odds.
We can also set the maximum ratio by ticks. Ticks are the Betfair allowed intervals between odds.
For example 1.33 to 1.34 is 1 tick. But 2.00 to 2.02 is also 1 tick since 2.01 is not allowed. So 5 ticks up from 1.50 is 1.55, but 5 ticks up from 50 is 75.

Odds Range	Betfair Tick Interval	Ticks in this Odds Range
1.01-2.00	0.01	100
2.02-3.00	0.02	50
3.05-4.00	0.05	20
4.10-6.00	0.10	20
6.20-10.00	0.20	20
10.50-20.00	0.50	20
21-30	1	10
32-50	2	10
55-100	5	10
110-1,000	10	90

Image 663 1st, 2nd & 3rd Best Prices

By default the rule looks at the first best back odds and the first best lay odds, but in the advanced options, this can be changed to the second or third best odds.

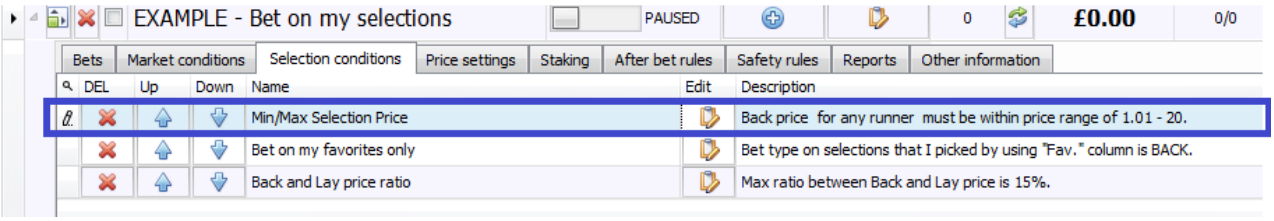
If we look at a Betfair market screens we can see how this rule protects us from bad odds.

Image 664 A developed market  Match Odds In-Play Rules Matched: GBP 47,028 Refresh 3 selections 1 Back all Lay all 99.3% Libertad .98 127 1.99 £164 2 £76 2.02 £157 2.04 £281 Sportivo Luqueno 6.4 £67 6.6 £50 6.8 £10 7 £23 7.2 £46 7.4 £82 The Draw 2.8 £34 2.82 £9 2.84 £23 2.86 £81 2.88 £260 2.9 £122 1.99 to 2.00 = a 0.5% or 1 tick difference 6.8 to 7 = a 2.9% or 1 tick difference 2.84 to 2.86 = a 0.7% or 1 tick difference	In the image we see this market is developed and we would be happy to bet on this market. The odds are very close together. All odds are 1 tick apart and the biggest ratio is 2.9% for the away team bet. All selections in this market clear the bot's back and lay ratio rule of 15%.
Image 665 A semi-developed market  Match Odds Going In-Play Rules Matched: GBP 20 Refresh 3 selections 106.0% Back all Lay all 90.7% Dinamo Zagreb 2.9 £4 3.05 £10 3.2 £4 3.95 £6 4 £9 4.1 £5 Villarreal 2.08 £3 2.28 £10 2.3 £3 2.56 £6 2.58 £17 2.64 £2 The Draw 2.74 £14 2.8 £5 3.2 £14 3.8 £7 4 £2 4.3 £5 3.2 to 3.95 = a 23% or 15 tick difference 2.3 to 2.56 = a 13% or 13 tick difference 3.2 to 3.8 = 18.75% or 12 tick difference	In this image, we see a semi-developed market where the back and lay odds available are not so close together yet. Here the home win and draw odds would not be bet on because they do not satisfy the 15% ratio rule, but the away bet would be bet on since its 13% is under the 15% rule set. **It is important to remember that the back and lay odds ratio rule is a selection condition and not a market condition.** This means that it will only consider the selection that the bot is trying to bet on, If the bot is betting on home wins, it would not place a bet here since the home win selection's ratio is over 15%. But if the strategy was set to bet on away wins, it would bet here since the odds ratio of that selection is under 15%.
Image 666 An undeveloped market  Match Odds Going In-Play Rules Matched: GBP 0 Refresh 3 selections 236.4% Back all Lay all 0.2% FC Brasilia Rio Lindo 1.01 £221 1.02 £5 CA Independiente Siguatepe 1.01 £221 1.02 £5 The Draw 1.03 £2 2.3 £49 2.48 £12 490 £6 950 £2 There are no home win or away win odds to divide the back odds by. So no ratio can be calculated. 2.48 to 490 = 198% or 175 tick difference	In this image, we see a very undeveloped market that we would definitely not want to place bets on. No selections in this market would clear the back and lay price ratio limit of 15%. The home and away bets don't have lay odds to calculate a figure with. The draw odds are over the ratio limit of 15%.

In this way we can see how the **Back and Lay Price Ratio rule** is important to stop the bot betting on poor odds.

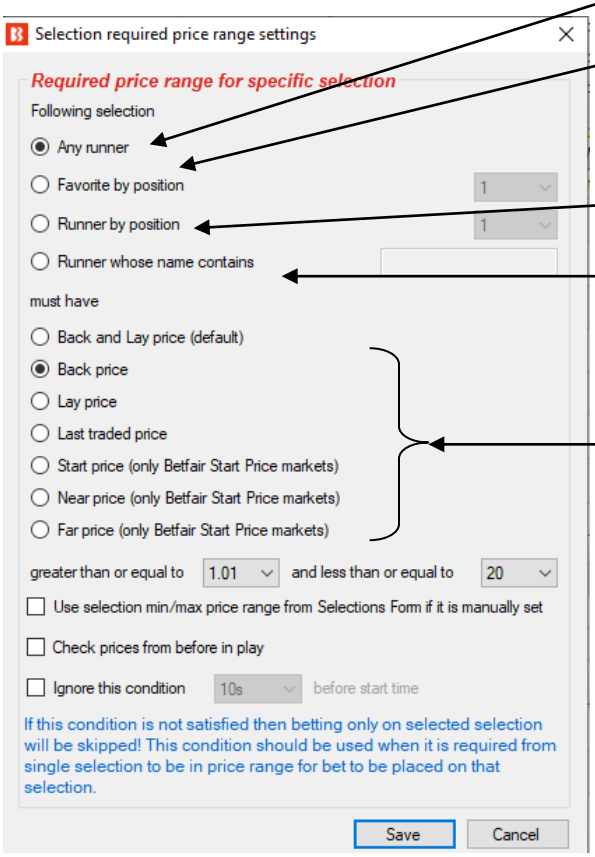
14.2.13 Min/max selection price

Image 667 Min/Max Selection Price



This is a way to allow betting on a selection based on the available odds.
Note that this rule exists in both the Market Conditions and Selection Conditions tab.
If the price of the selected runner is not within the set price range in the **Market Conditions Min/Max Selection Price**, then it will prevent betting on **ALL selections in that market**.
If the price of the selected runner is not within the set price range in this **Selection Conditions Min/Max Selection Price**, then it will prevent betting on **each selection** in that market.
For example, the Market Conditions Min/Max Selection Price could be set to allow betting on markets where the favorite has odds of 1.01-1.50 and then the Selection Conditions Min/Max Selection Price could then only allow betting on selections were the odds are 2.01-3.50.

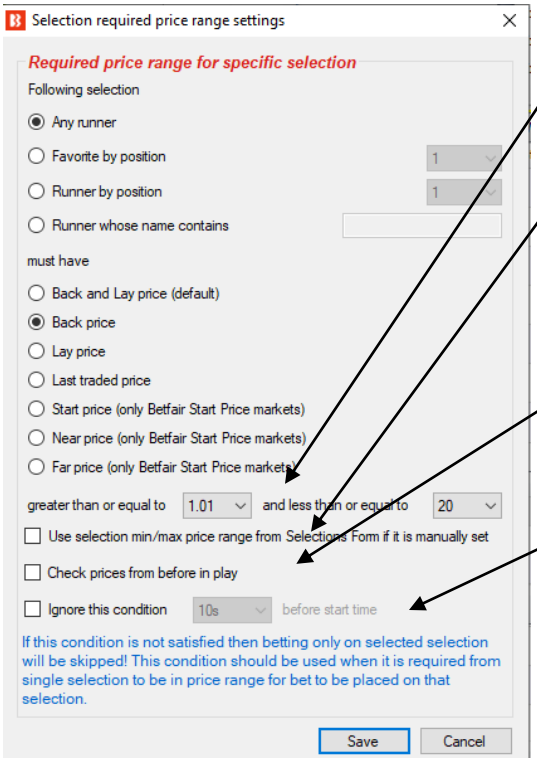
Image 668 Min/Max Selection Price



Any runner tells the bot to look at the price of the selection that the strategy rules are allowed to bet on.
Favorite by position tells the bot to look at the price of a favorite by position to allow betting.
Runner by position tells the bot to look at the runner by position price to allow betting.
Runner whose name contains tells the bot to look at the price of a runner whose name contains the following text to allow betting.
These settings tell the bot **which price to use**:
Back and Lay price option means that both the back price and the lay price must be within the set odds range.
Back price is the currently available 1st best back price.
Lay price is the currently available 1st best lay price.
Last traded price is the last price that a bet was matched at.
Start price is the Betfair Start Price (BSP). This price is only available for markets that have a BSP.
Near price* is the projected starting price (SP) if the market were to suspend now.
The Far price* is calculated by using only the SP bets and assumes that there will be no Exchange market at the time the market is determined.

*The Near Price and Far Price are advanced pricing concepts, mainly used for horse racing, and it is not really necessary to understand them unless you want to use them.

Image 669 Min/Max Selection Price

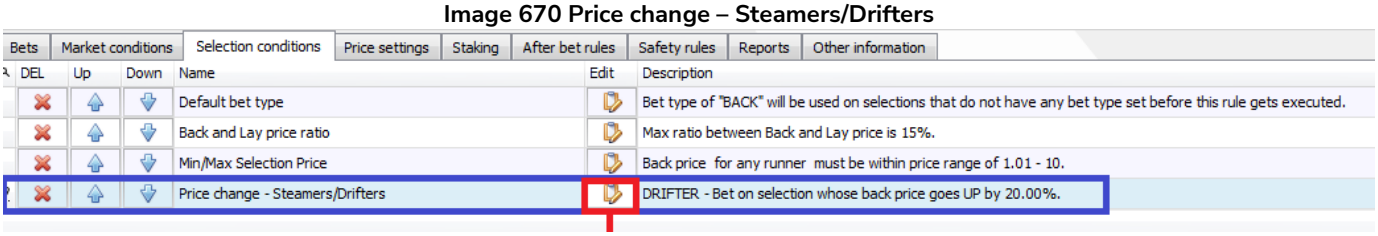


These drop down menus **select the required price minimums and maximums.**
This tells the strategy to **use manually entered min/max prices** for that selection if they were set in the markets grid screen in that selection grid view.
This option tells the strategy to **use prices from before in-play**. This is very useful for in-play betting when we want to use the starting odds, not the current odds. The prices before in-play will be the **recorded prices with the best overround in the 5 minutes before the start of the event** by default. It will look at the odds of the type selected in the section above (Back and Lay, Back, Lay, etc.)
This option tells the bot to **ignore the price rule at a certain point before the start time.** This is useful if you are trying to get better odds, but will accept the available market odds at the start time to make sure the bet is placed.

Please be careful to check that your Selection Conditions Min/Max Selection Price rule is checking the same odds as the runners that your Bet Type is instructing the strategy to bet on. Using the "Any selection" option is safest, but it you specify "Runner by Position 1" then make sure your Bet Type is also only betting on "Runner by Position 1", otherwise you might end up betting on odds that you did not intend to.

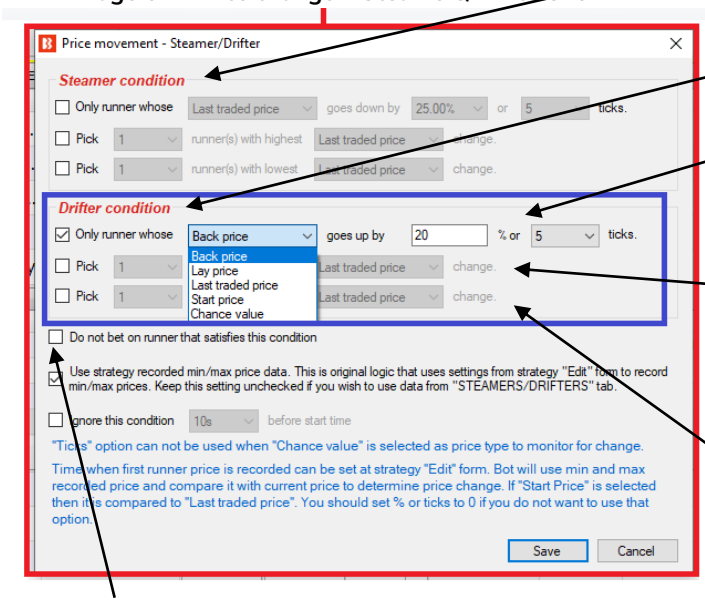
14.2.14 Price change - Steamers and Drifters

Image 670 Price change – Steamers/Drifters



The Price change – Steamers/Drifters rule is a very useful tool that allows the bot to monitor markets for price changes for each selection. If a selection's price goes up, it is called a Drifter, because the odds are drifting out. If a selection's price goes down, it is called a Steamer, because the odds are steaming in. It is possible to set which odds to monitor (back, lay, last traded price, start price, chance value). It is also possible to set the time period to monitor. This can be set to bet on all, some or just one runner meeting the steamer/drifter settings set.

Image 671 Price change – Steamers/Drifters form

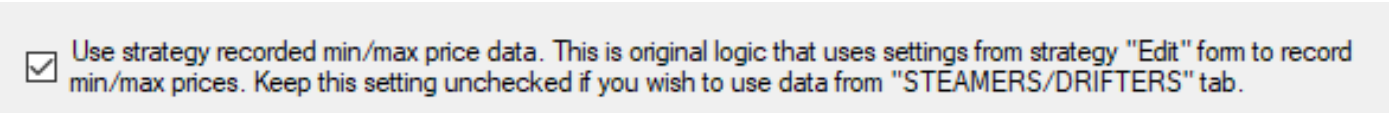


The **steamer condition** looks at runners whose price has gone down by a percentage level or number of ticks.
The **drifter condition** looks at runners whose price has gone up by a percentage level or number of ticks.
Only runner whose *Back* price goes up by *20%* or *5* ticks would only allow betting on selections that meet these filters.
Pick *1* runner with the highest *Back* price change would only allow 1 bet on qualifying selections in that market which would be the one with the highest change.
Pick *3* runners with the lowest *Back* price change would allow 3 bets on 3 qualifying selections in that market which would be the one with the lowest change.

Do not bet on runner that satisfies this condition allows this rule to be used in reverse. For example, if we want to add a function to a strategy so that it does not bet on selections who have drifted too much before the off, which is sometimes an indication of new, adverse information entering the market.

These rules can be used alone or together. It is important to understand the logic of using them together.
Using only **Only runner whose Back price goes up by 20% or 5 ticks** would allow multiple bets on all qualifying selections.
Using only **Pick 1 runner with the highest Back price change** would allow only 1 bet on the biggest drifter (even if it did not increase by 20%).
Using both **Only runner whose Back price goes up by 20% or 5 ticks** and **Pick 1 runner with the highest Back price change** would allow only 1 bet on the biggest drifter if its price had gone up by 20% or 5 ticks.

Image 672 Steamers/Drifters price data monitoring check box



Which prices are being monitored is very important to understand. There are 2 options for how strategies can monitor price data.

1. **Tell the strategy to use the price data from the Steamers/Drifters tab. (Above box unticked.)**
2. **Tell the strategy to collect its own price data. (Above box ticked.)**

Steamers/Drifters Price Data Monitoring

Price data	Price data from Steamers/Drifters tab	Strategy collects its own price data
Markets monitored	User set **Match Odds markets** (default) **Win markets** (default)	Fixed setting **All loaded markets**

Time	User set *Default setting:* From **30 minutes before event start** until market close**.** (i.e. after the event has finished and bets are settled) This can be edited in the "Tools&Settings->Monitoring settings". If you set to start monitoring markets 2 hours before the start time then the steamers/drifters tab will start recording prices 2 hours before the start time.	User set *Default setting for this example strategy:* From **5 minutes before event start** until event start time. *(Default setting for new strategies:* From 30 minutes before event start until event start time.)
Qualifying price data	User set *Default:* **Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 15%**	User set *Default:* **Max Back/Lay Odds ratio 25%**

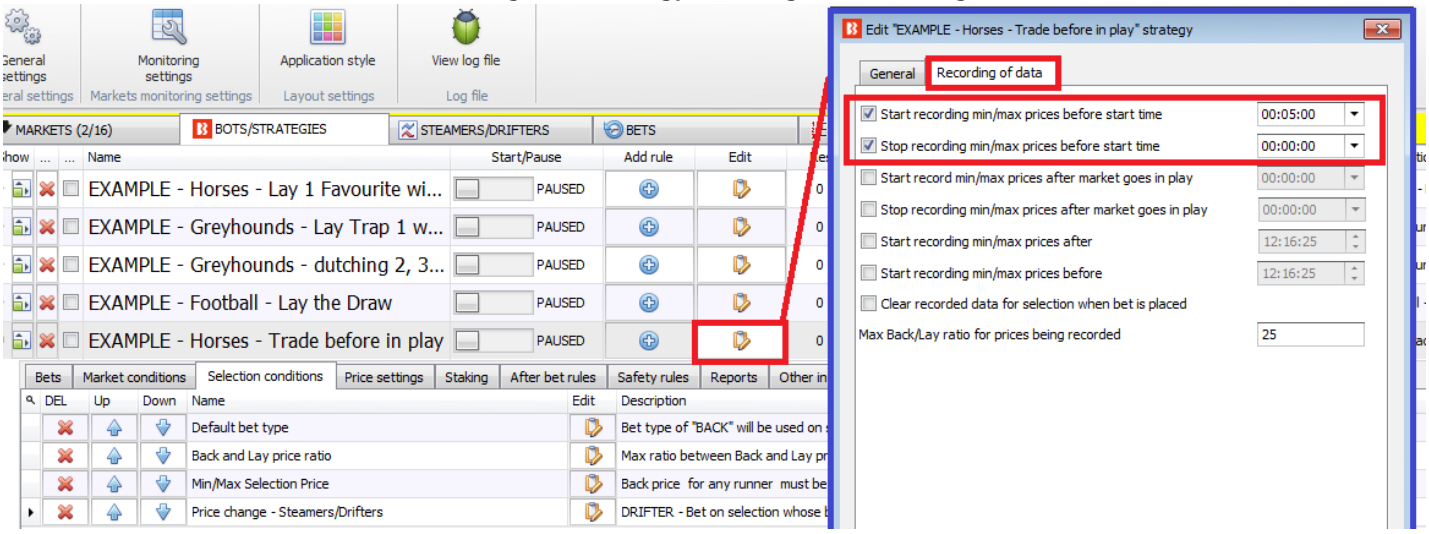
In the [Example Strategy – Horses – Trade before in play](), we only wanted to judge drifters by the price data from 5 minutes before the event starts. If we do not check the **Use strategy recorded min/max price data** box and instead use the price data from the Steamers/Drifters tab, then the drifters would be judged by the price data from 30 minutes before the event starts.

Cases where it would be useful to use the strategy recorded price data instead of the Steamers/Drifters tab recorded data:

Specify a different back/lay price ratio only for this strategy. For when you want a different recording ratio for a specified strategy but don't want to change the general steamers/drifters settings that will affect all strategies using steamers/drifters tab data.

Specify a longer/shorter recording time only for this strategy. For when you want a different recording time for a specified strategy but don't want to change the general steamers/drifters settings that will affect all strategies using steamers/drifters tab data.

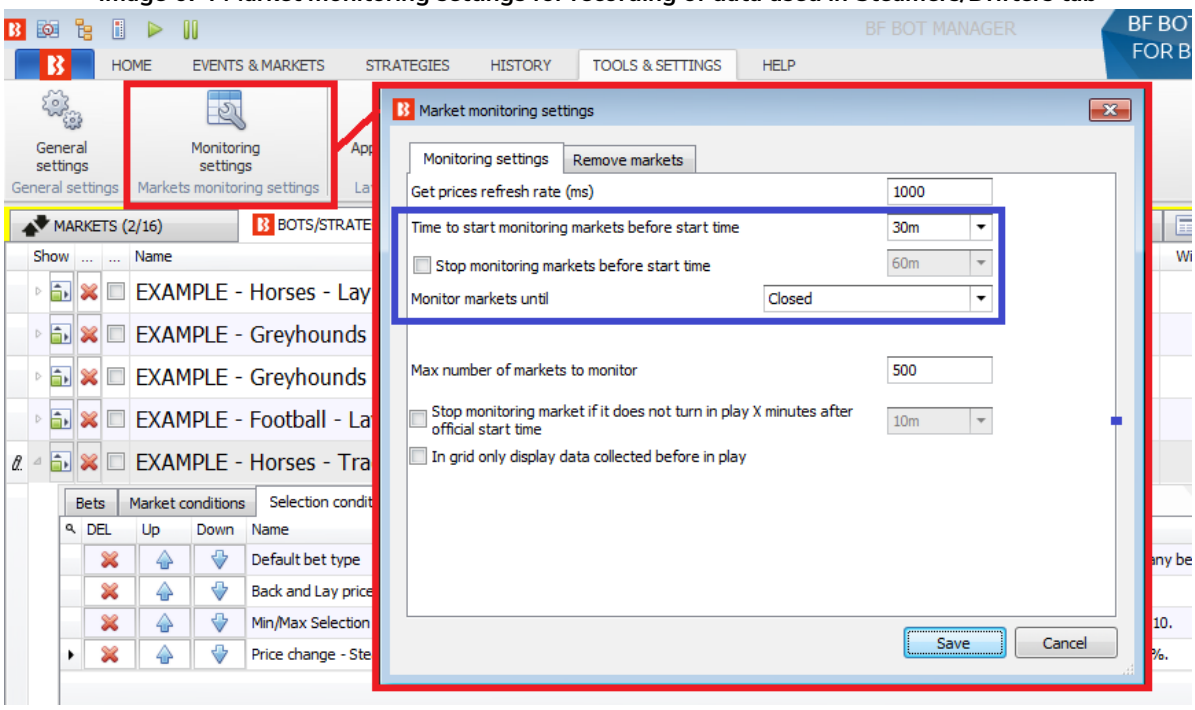
Image 673 Strategy recording of data settings



To edit the default settings of each strategy's price recording of data, click on the strategy **Edit** icon, and then

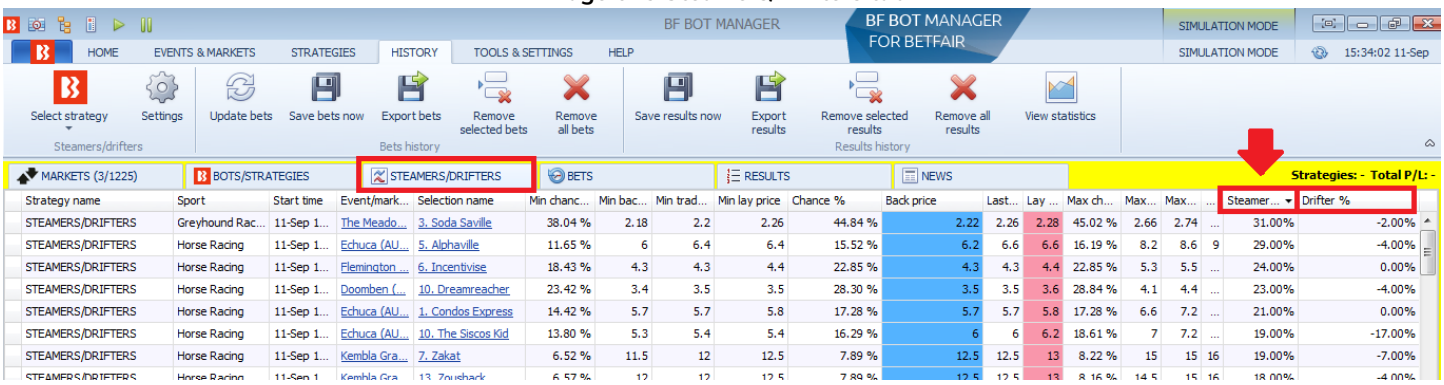
on the secondary **Recording of data** tab. There we can adjust the settings to required values.

Image 674 Market monitoring settings for recording of data used in Steamers/Drifters tab



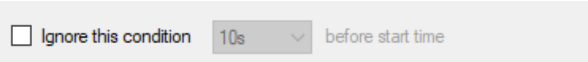
To edit the **general market monitoring settings that are used to set the times for recording price data and the Steamers/Drifters tab,** click on the Tools & Settings ribbon > Monitoring settings form.

Image 675 Steamers/Drifters tab



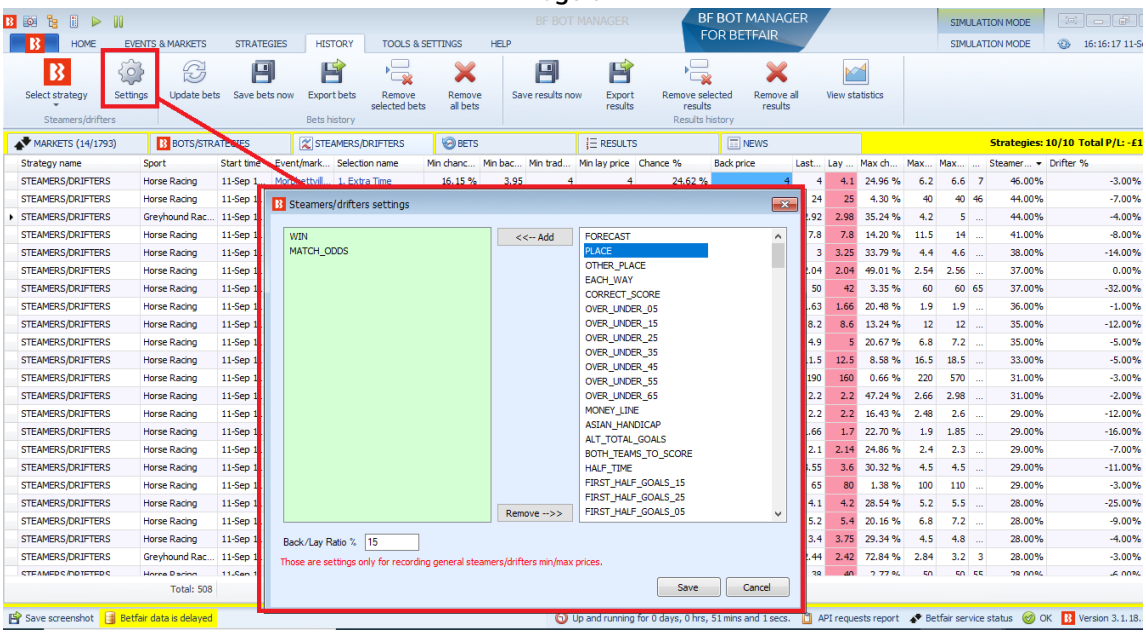
The Steamers/Drifters tab shows the steamer/drifter percentages for all active markets loaded in the Markets page for the set monitoring period. By clicking on the header of any column, it will rank the selections. In this way, it is also possible to manually browse and view the current top steamers and drifters of monitored markets in the 30 minutes before event start. (Unless the general monitoring settings are changed,) This data is gathered by the software, so if the software has just been switched on, then it will not have had time yet to gather much data.

Image 676 Selection Conditions - Price change – Steamers/Drifters form



At the bottom of the Price change – Steamers/Drifters rule, there is option to ignore the rule at a set time before the event starts. This can be very useful if you wish to bet on your runners early if their price goes up by X%, but if that does not happen, then take whatever price is available just before start time.

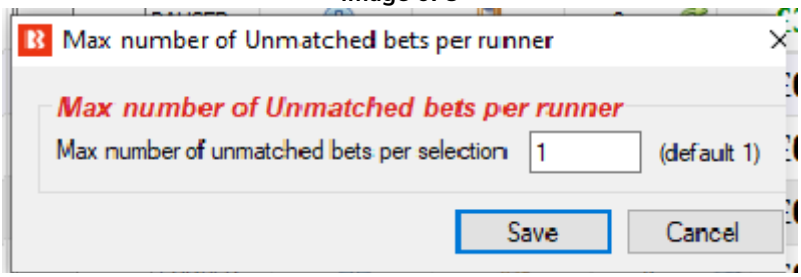
Image 677



The settings form on the History ribbon can set which market data will be recorded for the Steamers/Drifters tab. It records Win and Match Odds markets by default, but you can add or remove market types here. You can also change the Back/Lay ratio which is 15% by default. This means that prices for any selection that has a Back/Lay ratio greater than this number will not be recorded as a valid price.

14.2.15 Max number of unmatched bets per runner

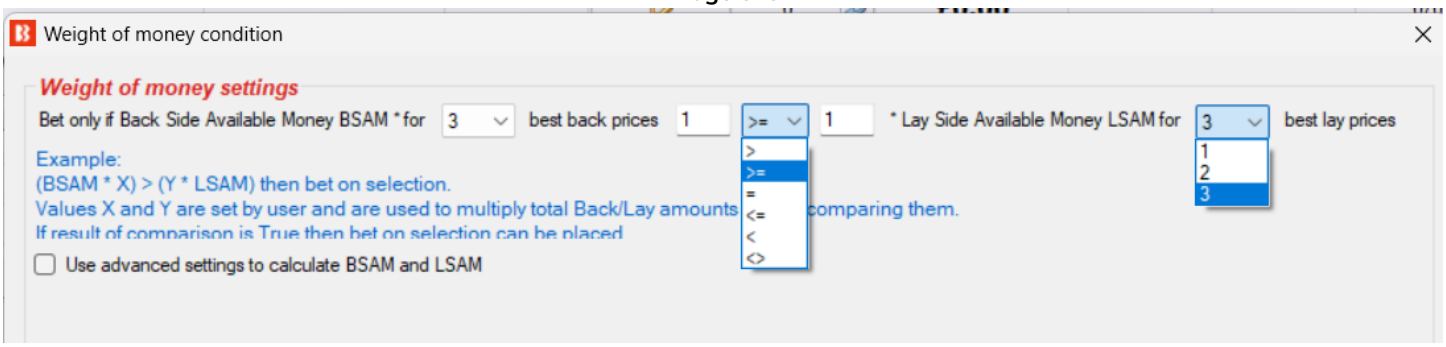
Image 678



Usually when placing more than one bet per runner it is useful to set a maximum number of unmatched bets per runner, so that the strategy does not place a new bet on a runner before the previous bet is fully matched. This condition is often used by trading strategies.

14.2.16 Weight of money

Image 679

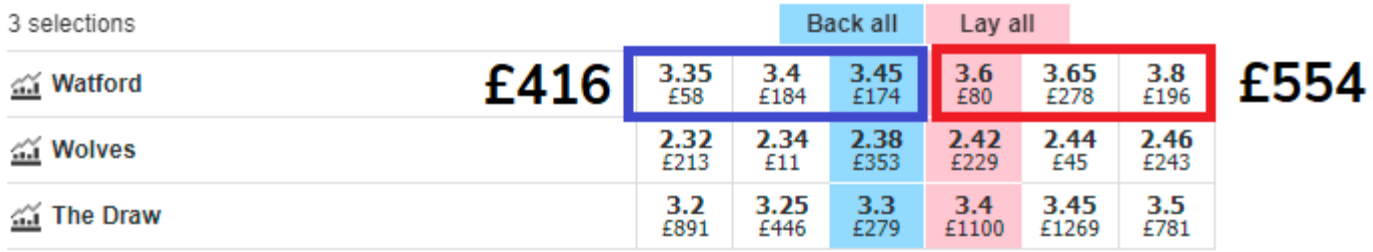


The **Weight of money** condition prevents betting on selections whose available amounts on the 1-3 best Back and Lay prices do not satisfy the weight of money formula.

The default formula calculates the **sum of available money from the 3 best Back and 3 best Lay prices** and compares them. If the result is true, then betting on the selection is allowed, otherwise it is not. For example, in the image above, if the available money from the 3 best back prices is equal to or greater than the money available on the 3 best lay prices, then betting on that selection will be allowed.

The rule can be edited to only look at the best 3, best 2 prices or even just the best price of each side, back or lay prices.

Image 680 - Sum of available money from the 3 best Back and 3 best Lay prices



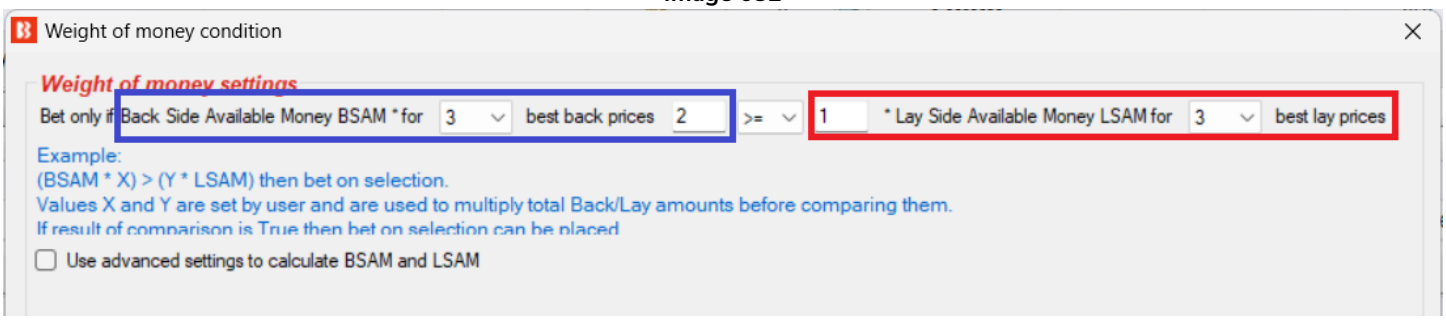
In the Betfair market screenshot above, betting on Watford would not be allowed since its BSAM (Back side amount of money) is smaller than the LSAM (Lay side amount of money).

Image 681

A more complex formula allows users to set a multiplier for the total Back amounts and the total Lay

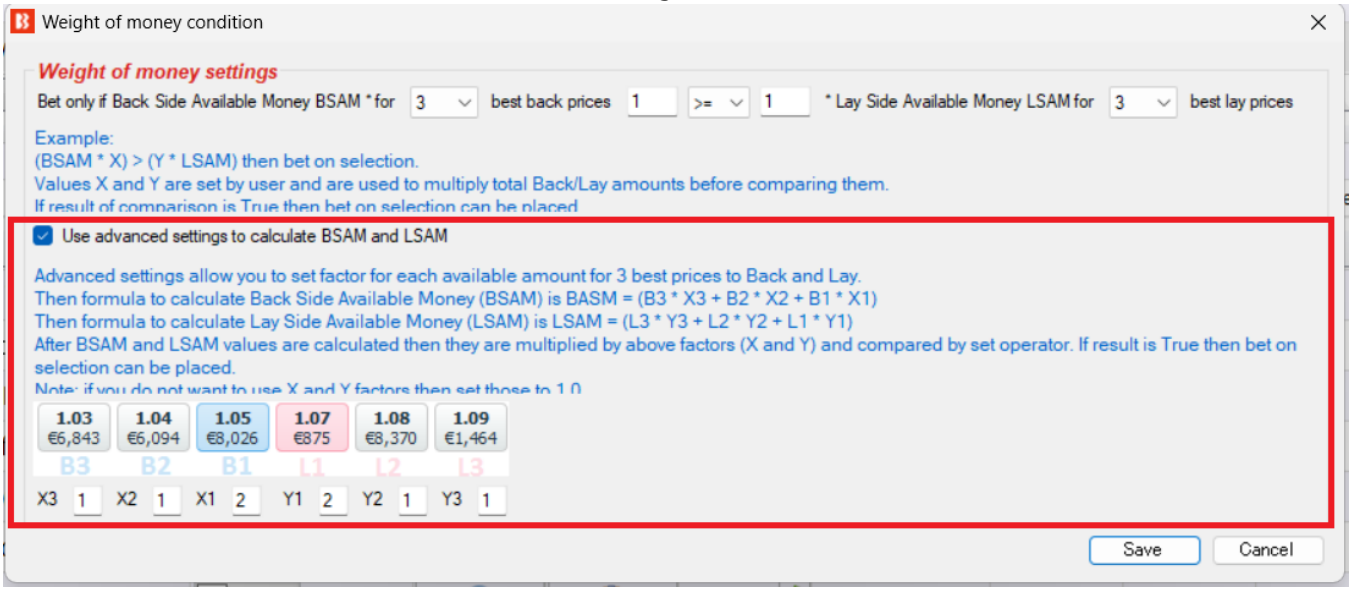
amounts and then to compare those values. For example, this is useful if you want to bet on a selection only when the **total Back amount** is 2 or more times greater than total Lay amount, as in the image above. Note that the 2 is on the lay side. This is because we want to double the Lay side amount and then check if the Back side amount is still higher. In this way we can check if the actual available Back side amount is double or more than the Lay side amount. In the Watford vs Wolves market, betting is still prevented because the BSAM of £416 is lower than £1,108 (double the LSAM of £554).

Image 682



In the above setting, this will allow betting if the Back side amount is half or more of the Lay side amount, since it doubles the Back side amount and then checks if it is larger than the Lay side. For the Watford vs Wolves market, betting on Watford would be allowed since £832 (£416 BSAM doubled) is larger than the £554 LSAM.

Image 683

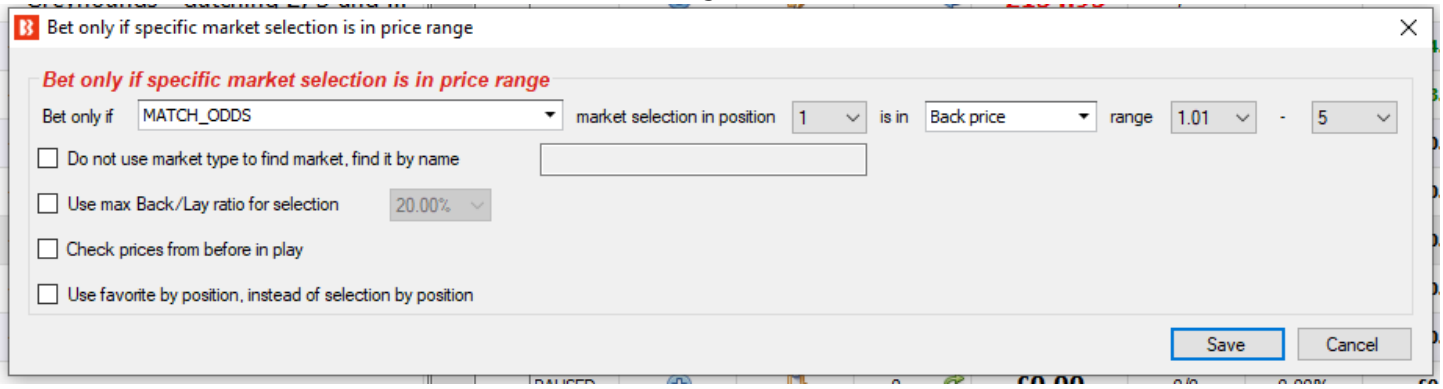


The **advanced settings** of this condition allow users to set multipliers for each available amount of the 3 best Back and Lay prices. For example, this is used when you consider the first best price more important than the second or third best price. This condition's options form shows the exact formula used to calculate the weight of money.

WARNING: The Weight of Money rule is an advanced rule. Only use it if you are sure that you understand its operation. Always test carefully in Simulation Mode first.

14.2.17 Bet if specific market selection is in price range

Image 684



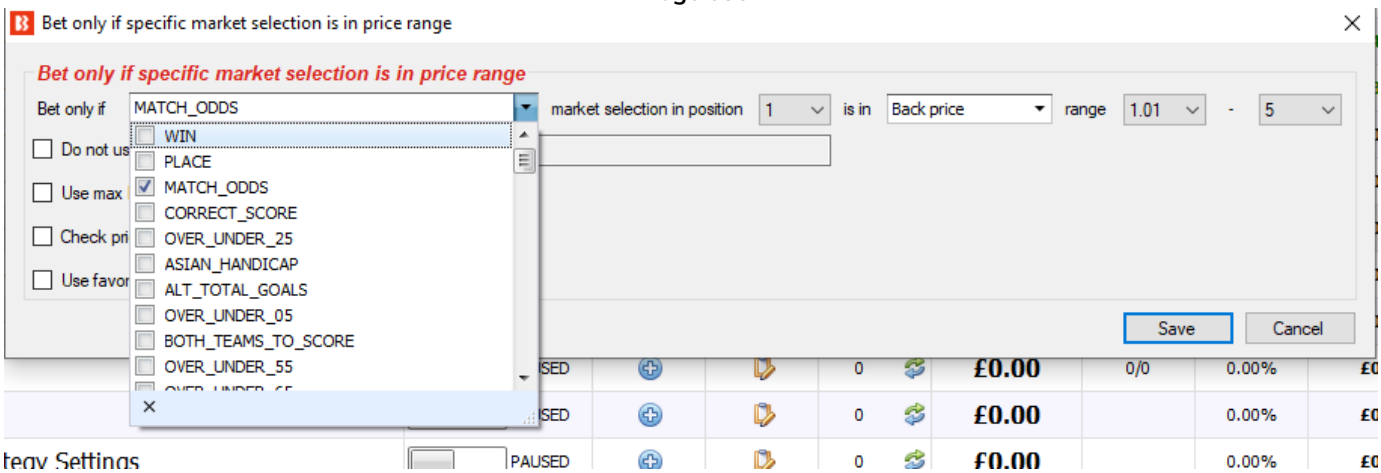
Many users, before betting on their intended market, usually check similar markets for that event, check those odds, and then decide if they will place a bet or not.

Image 685

By using this condition, for example, you can set the strategy to place bets on the Under/Over 2.5 market only if the Correct Score 0:0 has a price in price the range of 18-25.

The selection that needs to satisfy the condition is found by position in the list of that market's selections. For example, the Correct Score 0:0 is always in position 1 (Runner 1), the Correct Score Any Unquoted is always in position 17 and the Correct Score 1:1 is always in position 6.
Alternatively, you can tick the option to use favourite by position instead of selection by position.

Image 686



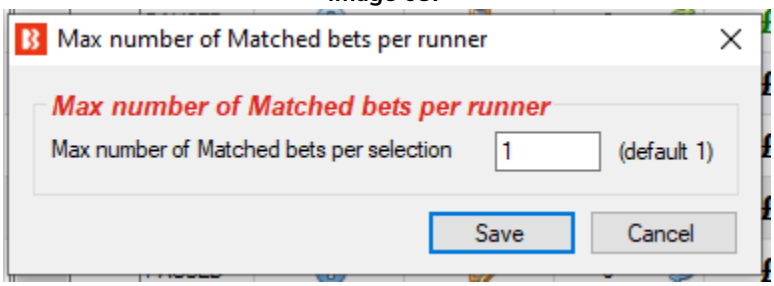
You can select which market prices of the same event to check from the drop down menu that is dynamically populated (it is only populated by markets currently available on the Betfair site.)

2021-12-10 Software update note: This rule "Bet if specific market selection is in price range" now works with **the greyhound forecast and tennis game by game markets**. You can set this rule to check the greyhound Win/Place market when the strategy is set to bet on the Forecast market and vice versa. This was not previously possible before Dec 2021 because those markets are listed under different events at the Betfair navigation tree, The same is true for tennis game by game markets, you can now check the match odds market when a strategy is set to bet on the game by game market.

For this condition to work properly, it is important that you load all the markets that are involved in this condition to the main markets data grid view and to monitor them. If you do not do this, then the condition will not have the information about the market and selection to which the condition applies. So if you are betting on the Over/Under 2.5 goals market but are checking the Correct Score market, then you need both those markets loaded in the markets screen, either manually or by setting up auto loading of markets correctly.

14.2.18 Max number of Matched bets per runner

Image 687

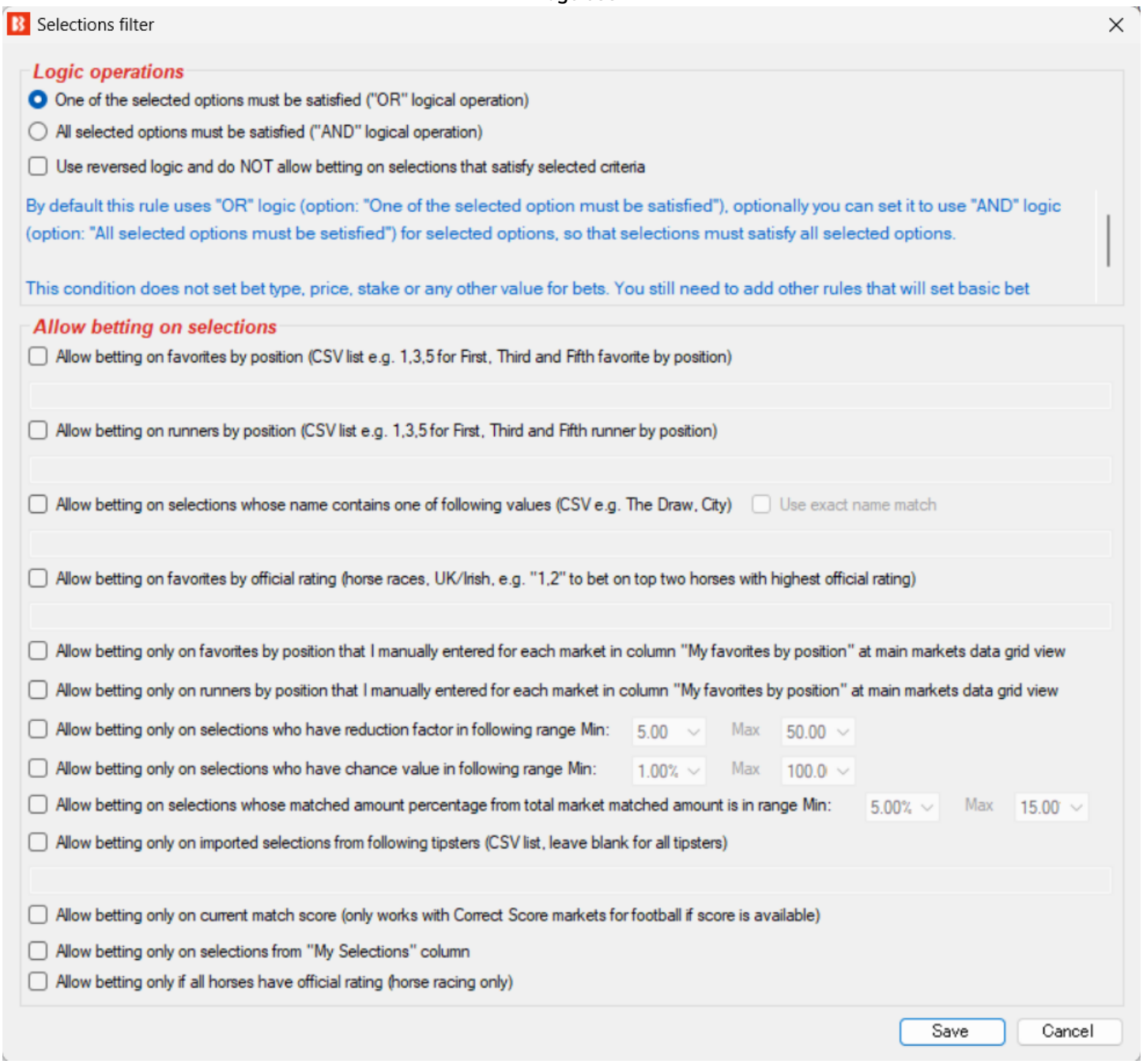


This puts a limit on the number of matched bets per runner a strategy can have. Once that number is reached, it will not place new bets on that runner.

When placing unmatched bets, cancelling them and trading, it is useful to stop when we get our target number of matched bets. This condition will prevent the placing of new bets on selections that have the specified number of matched bets or more.

14.2.19 Selections filter

Image 688



The selections filter is used to allow the strategy to try to bet on specifically filtered selections**. This condition will not set the bet type, price or stake for the filtered selections. It will only prevent the strategy from placing any bets on selections that do not satisfy the specified filters.**

You can use this filter to allow betting on selections:

- With the specified favourite position
- With the specified runner position in a list of runners (e.g. useful for betting on trap numbers)
- Whose name contains specific text and can be optionally set to use the exact name match instead of

"contains" specific text logic

- Bet on favourites by official rating, specifically designed for horse races
- Favourites by position that you entered for each market in the main markets data grid view
- Runners by position that you entered for each market in the main markets data grid view
- That have a reduction factor in the min/max range
- That have a chance value in the min/max range
- Whose matched amount percentage of the total market matched amount is in the min/max range
- Only on selections for which imported tips exist, and optionally you can set the tipster/provider names of those tips
- That are the current match score (specific for Correct Score market). This means that it would only bet on the correct score selection of the current score. i.e. If it is 2-0, it will allow betting on that selection. Whether that is a back or lay bet depends on the Bet Type settings, not this Selections Filter rule.
- Only on selections that are manually picked by using the "My S" column at the selections grid view
- Only if all horses have official rating (horse racing only)

Optionally you can use reversed logic and do not allow betting on selections that satisfy this selections filter.

By default this rule uses "OR" logic and allows betting on selections if they satisfy one of the selected rules, but you can change this to "AND" logic by selecting the option "All selected options must be satisfied".

This condition is very useful when selecting your own selections by using the "My S." column, but when you want to bet on those selections only if they are one of the specified favourites by position.

Image 689

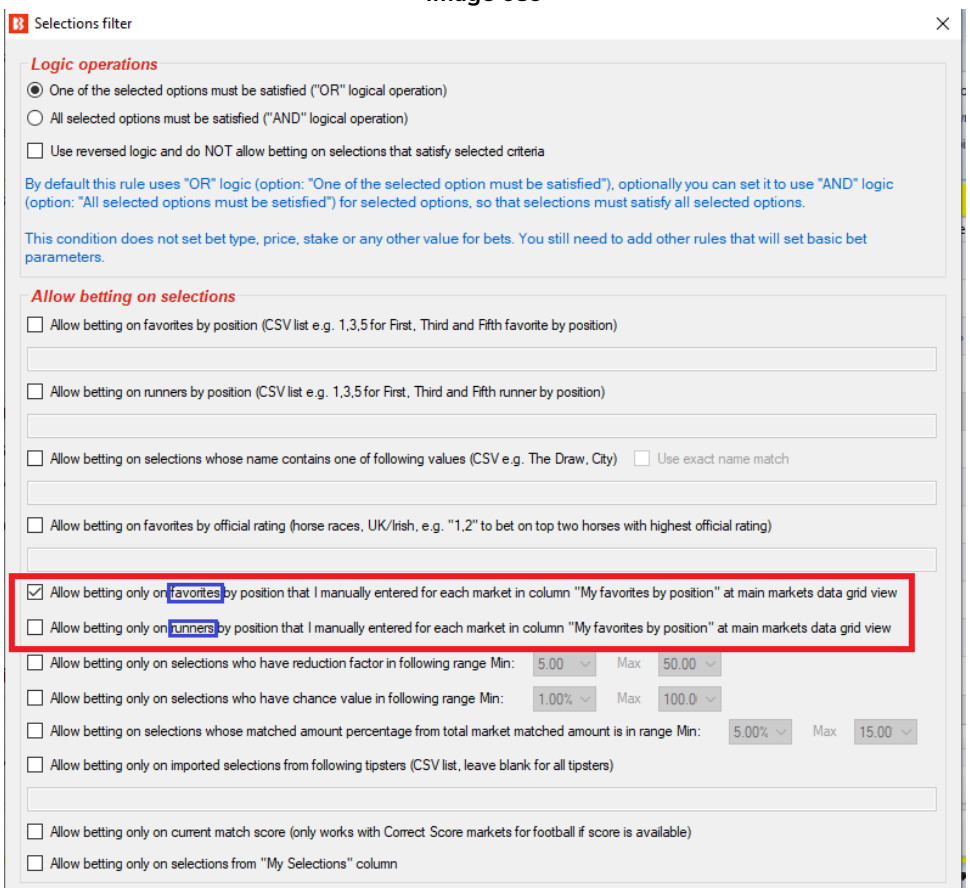
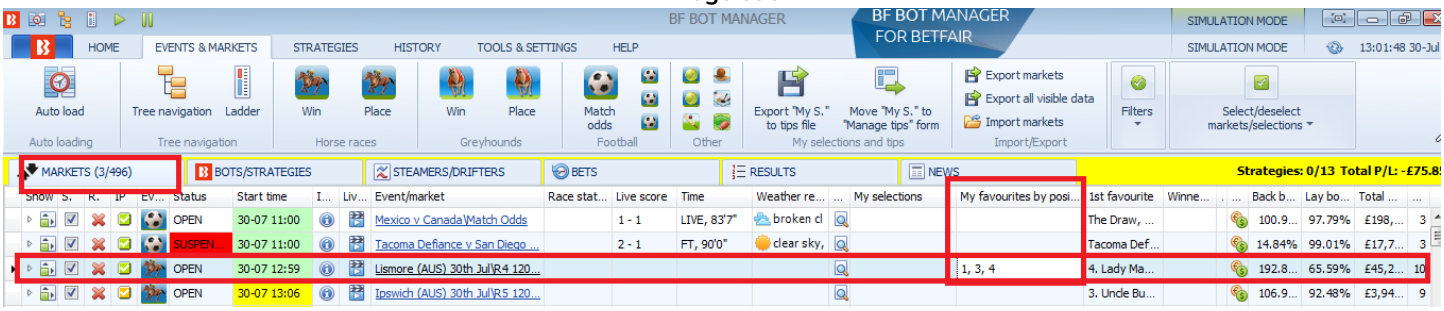


Image 690



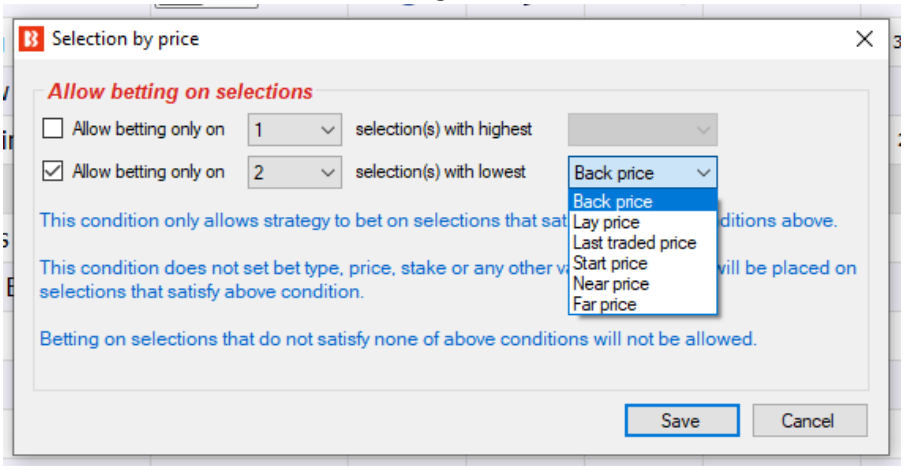
You can also use the column “My Favourites by position” at the main markets data grid view. Then, for each market you can enter a list of favourites or runners by position that you want to bet on that market only. For example, entering value “1,3,4” in cell in column “My Favourites by position” in the main markets data grid view would mean that you want to bet on the First, Third and Fourth favourite by position. If you cannot see the “My favourites by position” column, then you can add it by right clicking any column header, clicking on “column chooser” and then double left-clicking on the “My favourites by position” option to add that column to the market grid view.

Image 691

There is only ONE column in the markets grid view and TWO options related to it in the Selections Filter. If you want the numbers you enter in the markets grid view “**My favorites by positon**” column to represent the favorites by position, then check the Selections Filter option for **favorites by positon**, if you want the numbers you enter to represent runners by position, then check the Selections Filter option for **runner by position**.

14.2.20 Selection by highest/lowest

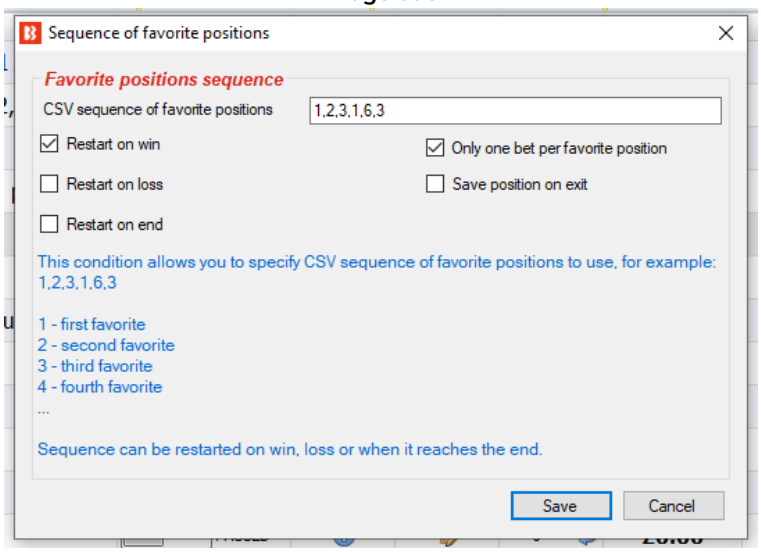
Image 692



If more than one selection in a market satisfies all the strategy conditions, then this rule can be used to tell the strategy to only bet on a specified number of those allowed selections. It can be allowed to bet on x number of qualifying selections with the highest or lowest back price, lay price, last traded price, start price, near price or far price.

14.2.21 Sequence of favourite positions

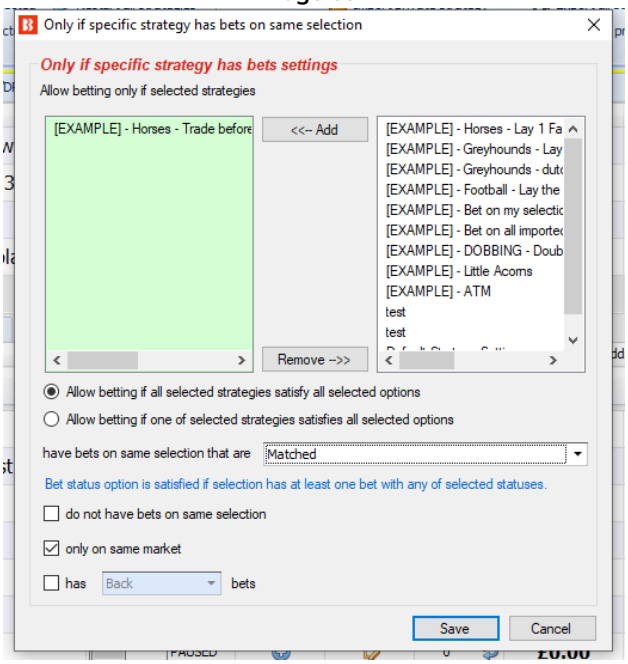
Image 693



This rule allows you to set a sequence of favorites to bet on.
For example, the above settings would bet on the first favorite in race 1, then the second favorite in race 2, then the third favourite in race 3, then the first favourite in race 4, the sixth favourite in race 5 and the third favorite in race 6. With the “Restart on win” checkbox ticked, it means the strategy will bet on favourites in this order until a winner is hit, then it will restart the sequence.
You can set it to bet on any CSV sequence of favourites by position. (CSV = Comma separated values)
You can set it to restart on a win, a loss or at the end of the sequence.
The checkbox “Only one bet per favourite position” ensures that if Runner 1 is bet on as Favourite 1, and then the odds change and a different runner becomes Favourite 1, then a second bet will not be placed.
You can also set the rule to save where it is in the sequence on exiting the software.

14.2.22 Only if specified strategy has bets on same selection

Image 694

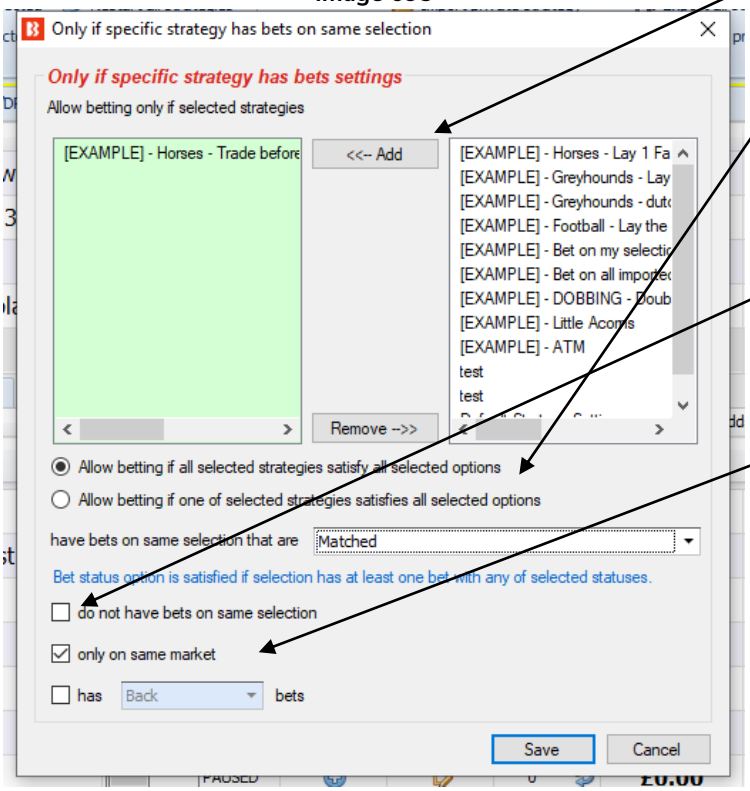


This has almost the same settings and options as the Market Conditions version of this rule "Only if specified strategy has bets on same selection".

The important difference is that this rule allows (or prevents) betting on this selection if the specified strategy has bets on it. But the Market Condition version allows or prevents betting on an entire market based on the specified strategy having bets or not.

This rule is very useful when you have two strategies that you want to work together as a blocker or a trigger, by either not betting on the same selections (blocker) or where one only bets if the other one has also bet (trigger).

Image 695



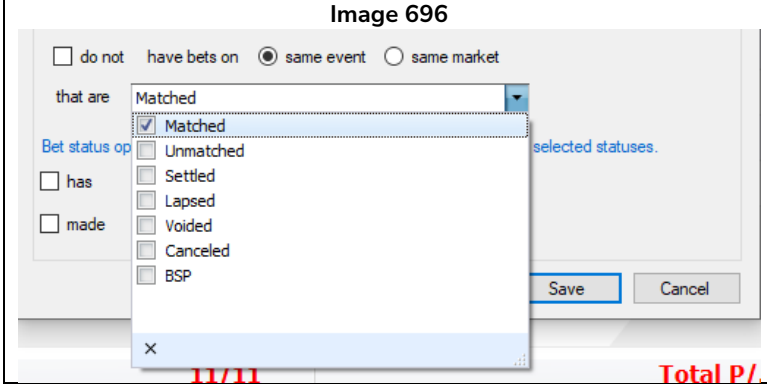
You can add the strategies that you want the strategy to check for bets by choosing from the list of strategies and clicking on "Add".

If you select multiple strategies, then you can tell the strategy to allow betting if ALL or just ONE of the strategies satisfies the other options.

You can choose to allow betting if the selected strategies have bets on an event or market, or even do not have bets by clicking the "do not" have bets checkbox.

You can specify that the selected strategies need bets only on the same MARKET.
For example, if the bet by another strategy is on the "Draw" selection, and there are multiple markets which have the selection "Draw" in them. This checkbox will make sure that it only bets on the "Draw" in this market. (For example, even in the same event, there is the Match Odds draw and the Half Time draw.)

Image 696

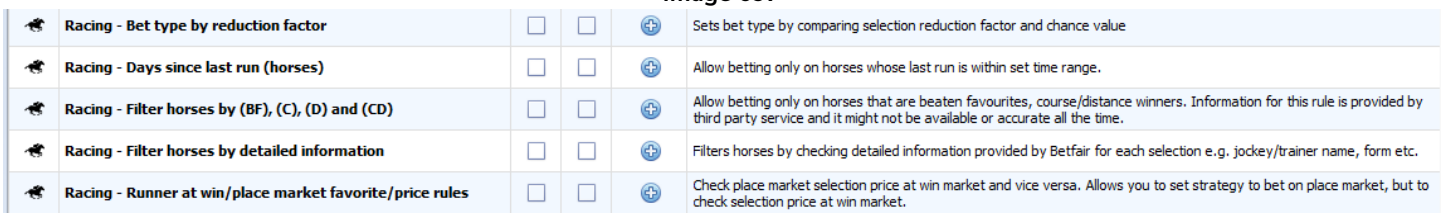


You can also set the strategy to bet or not based on whether another strategy has **matched, unmatched, settled, lapsed, voided, cancelled or BSP bets** on an event or market. For example, this is very useful if you want to set a strategy place bets only if another strategy's bets lapsed from being unmatched.

This rule is very useful, but please be aware that this is the SELECTION CONDITIONS version of this rule and another rule exists in the MARKET CONDITIONS that looks at whole markets. The market conditions rule allows or prevents betting on an ***entire market*** based on another strategy having a bet of the specified status on any selection in this event or market. If you just want to allow or prevent betting on **a single selection** (but still allow betting on other selections in that market) due to another strategy having a bet on that same selection, then you need to use this Selections Conditions version of the rule.

14.2.23 Racing conditions

Image 697

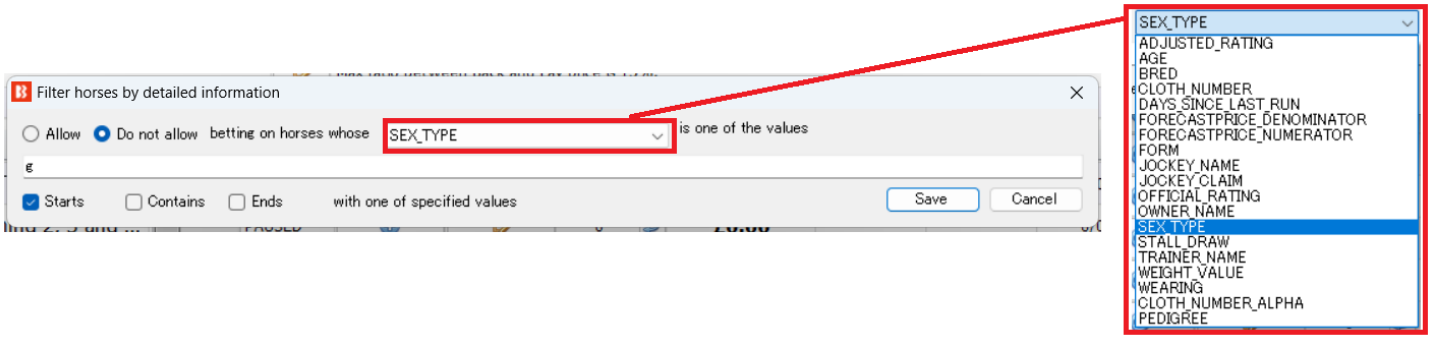


Racing - Bet type by reduction factor				Sets bet type by comparing selection reduction factor and chance value
Racing - Days since last run (horses)				Allow betting only on horses whose last run is within set time range.
Racing - Filter horses by (BF), (C), (D) and (CD)				Allow betting only on horses that are beaten favourites, course/distance winners. Information for this rule is provided by third party service and it might not be available or accurate all the time.
Racing - Filter horses by detailed information				Filters horses by checking detailed information provided by Betfair for each selection e.g. jockey/trainer name, form etc.
Racing - Runner at win/place market favorite/price rules				Check place market selection price at win market and vice versa. Allows you to set strategy to bet on place market, but to check selection price at win market.

Just like the Market Conditions racing conditions, there are selection racing conditions that are specific for horse/greyhound racing event selections.

14.2.24 Racing - Filter horses by detailed information

Image 698



This condition works mostly with horse races for which Betfair publishes more detailed information e.g. saddle cloth number, ratings, form, jockey name etc. You can pick one of the available parameters from the drop down menu and then set a CSV (Comma Separated Values) list of values from which at least one must be the same as the horse details (or optionally start with, end with or contain that specified text) for betting

to be allowed or not on that horse. This condition does not set the bet type, price or stake, it is simply filtering horses on which betting can or cannot be done.

This rule allows filtering based on:

- **Adjusted rating**
- **Age**
- **Bred**
- **Cloth number**
- **Cloth number alpha**
- **Days since last run**
- **Forecast price denominator**
- **Forecast price numerator**
- **Form**
- **Jockey name**
- **Jockey claim**
- **Official rating**
- **Owner name**
- **Pedigree**
- **Sex type**
- **Stall draw**
- **Trainer name**
- **Weight value**
- **Wearing**

Sex abbreviations are:

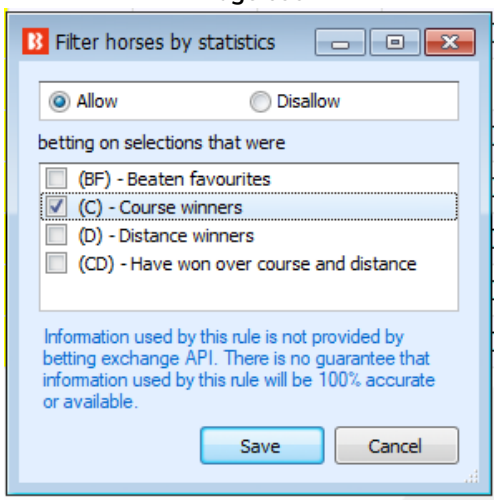
c	colt
f	filly
g	gelding
h	horse
m	mare
r	ridgling

In the pedigree information, horse color definitions are:

B	Bay
Blk	Black
Ch	Chestnut
Dkb or br	Dark bay or brown
Gr	Gray
Ro	Roan

14.2.25 Racing - Filter horses by (BF) - beaten favourite, (C) - course winner, (D) -distance winner and (CD)

Image 699



This rule allows or prevents betting on horses based on their past statistics if available.

Next to each horse name you might see following information:

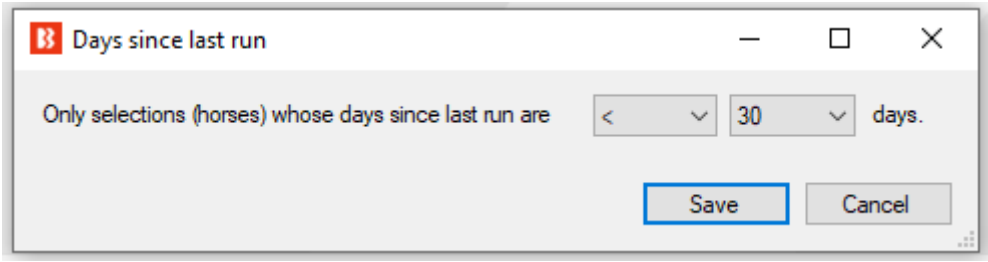
- (BF) – beaten favourite last time out
- (C) - course winner
- (D) - distance winner
- (CD) - has won over course & distance

You can use this condition to allow or prevent the strategy from betting on selections that have one of those attributes.

There is no guarantee that this information will be accurate and correct for all horses, but we do our best to provide this data whenever possible and for as many races as possible.

14.2.26 Racing - Days since last run (horses)

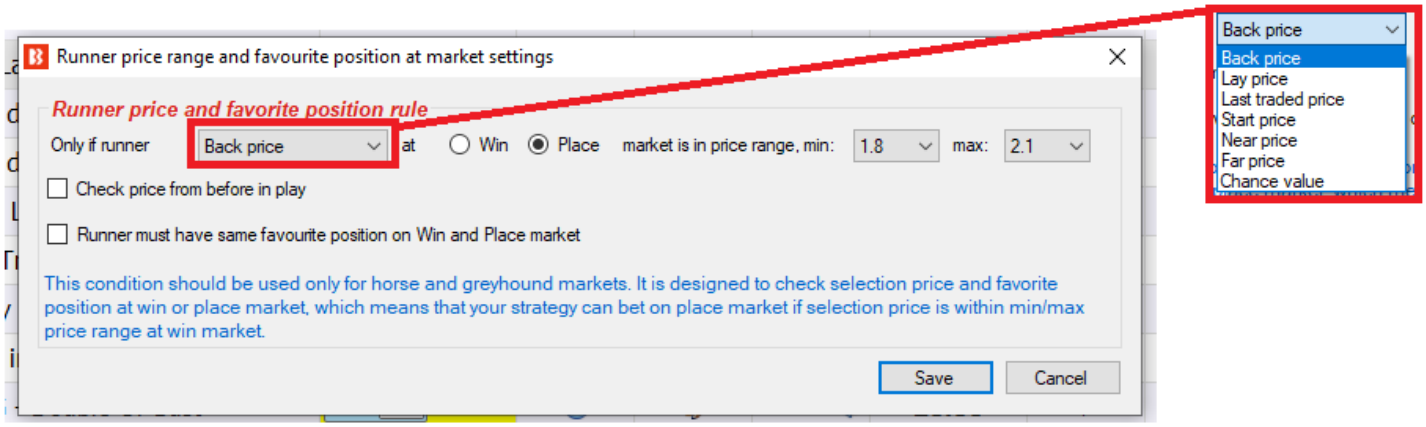
Image 700



This selection condition allows betting only on horses that satisfy the set number of days since their last run. This “days since last run” information might not be available for all races. If this rule is added, then betting will only be allowed when such data is available and satisfies the set filter.

14.2.27 Racing - Runner at win/place market favourite/price rule

Image 701



This rule can check the price at the corresponding Win or Place market for that race and check if the runner's price is within the set limits. The price to be checked can be set as the Back price, Lay price, Last traded price, Start price, Near price, Far price or Chance value.

This is useful if you want to back a runner in the Win market but only if its Place odds are within a certain range.
You can also back a runner in the Place market but only if its Win odds are within a certain range.

In the above image, it would only allow betting on a selection if its back price in the Place market is within 1.9 and 2.1. This rule only ALLOWS betting, it does not actually place bets. It still needs all other selection conditions to be satisfied and a bet type, price rules and stake size to be set.

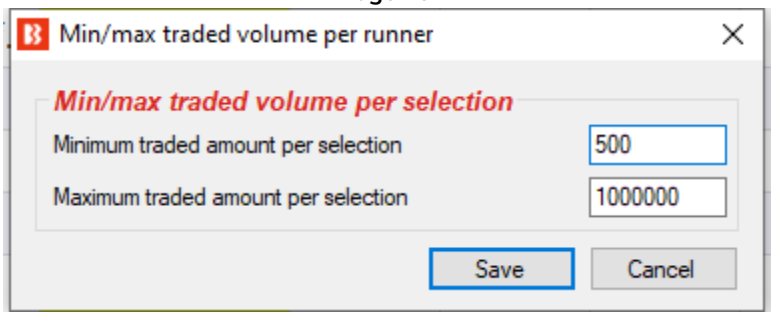
When betting on place market sometimes you might want to check selection price at win market, and vice versa. This condition allows you to do exactly that, check selection price range or favourite position at win/place market.

You can tick the checkbox "Check price from before in-play" if your strategy is betting in-play if you want it to check prices from before the race started.

You can also tick the check box "Runner must have same favourite position on Win and Place market" if you only want to bet if it is both the 1st favourite in the Win market and the 1st favourite in the Place market. (Or 2nd favourite in both markets, etc.)

14.2.28 Min/max selection traded volume

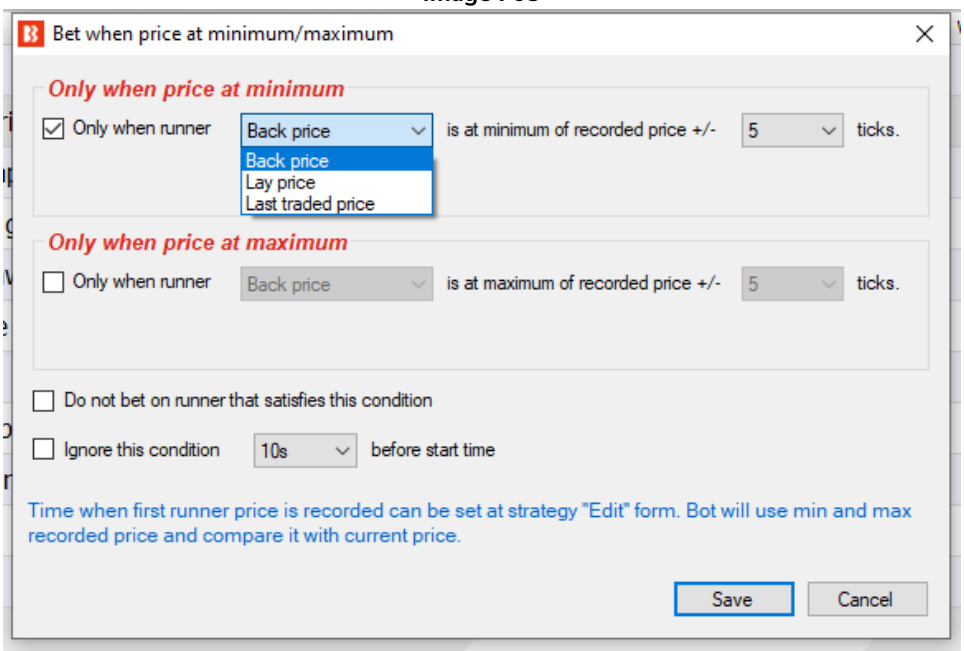
Image 702



This rule allows betting only when the **amount of money traded on THIS selection** is within the set range. Please note that this is the amount traded on just this selection, not on the entire market. There is a separate Market Condition – Traded Volume rule for that.

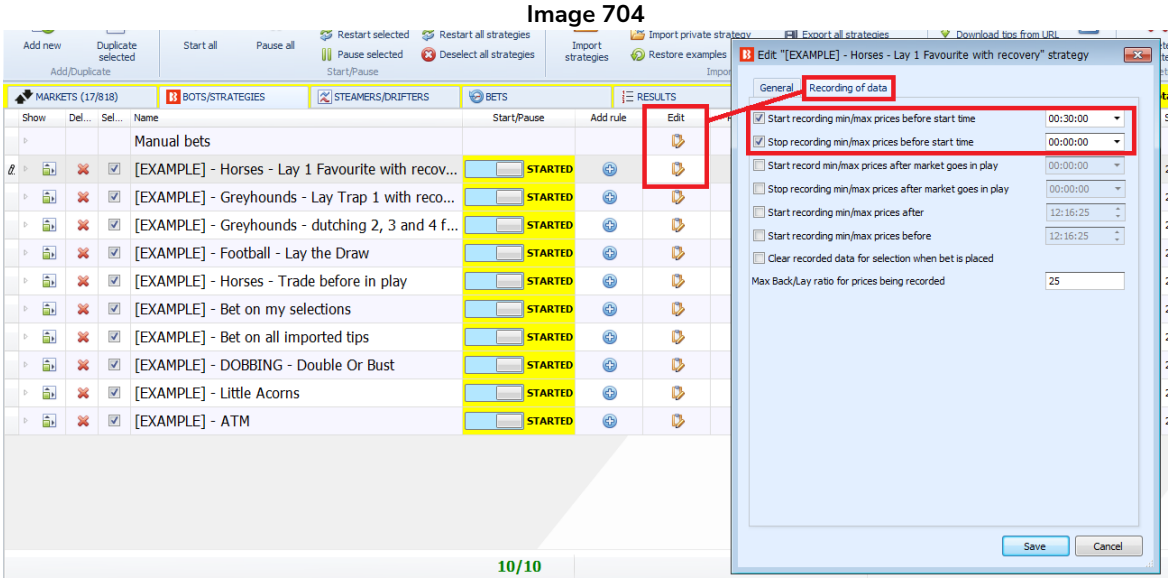
14.2.29 Only when price at min/max

Image 703



This rule will allow or prevent betting on a runner whose current price (Back, Lay or Last traded price) is near its minimum or maximum recorded price plus/minus the set amount of ticks

Image 704



At the strategy "Edit" form (the one where you set strategy name) you can set the time for when to start recording minimum and maximum prices. This rule will allow the strategy to bet only when the currently available price is within X ticks from the minimum or maximum recorded price. This can help you get the best price for selections that you are betting on. In combination with the "Price change – steamers/drifters" rule you can set the strategy to bet only when the price goes up or down by X% and the currently available price is at the minimum or maximum. Both those rules have the option to ignore them and bet at whatever price is available a few seconds/minutes before the start time. This can be very useful when betting on tipster tips or your own selections and you want to get take a better price early if the price starts moving in one direction instead of waiting for the start time to place bets.

Note that if your Edit - "Recording of data" settings start recording data from only 5 minutes before the event start, and your "Time to bet" rule is set to allow betting from 5 minutes before the event starts, the strategy will not have many prices to compare and have a meaningful minimum and maximum price to use for reference. So you should **make sure your "Recording of data" settings give enough time to gather price data that you feel is meaningful for your following "Only when price at min/max" or "Steamers/drifters" rules to allow or prevent betting on that selection.**

14.2.30 Most traded selections

Image 705

This rule allows betting on X number of runners with the highest or lowest amount of money matched on them within the set “Recording of data” time period from the strategy main “Edit” form.

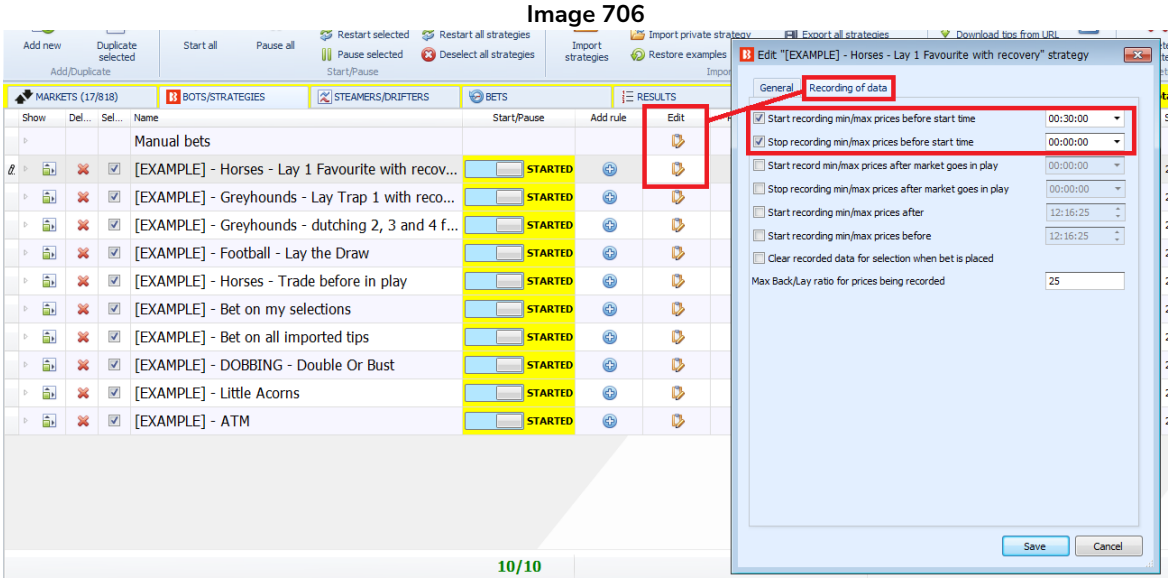
The first option is to **allow betting on selections with the highest traded amount**. If you select “1” then only the highest traded selection will have betting allowed on it. If you select only "2" then betting is allowed only on the 2nd most traded selection. If you select numbers 2 and 5 then betting is allowed only on 2nd and 5th most traded selections. If you want to bet on the top 3 selections with the highest traded volume, then you must select 1, 2 and 3. The highest traded selection is always at position 1.

The second option is to **allow betting on selections with the lowest traded amount**. However, the logic is slightly different compared to the above option. Since we do not always know how many selections there are in an event, we use a logic rule to bet only on X selections with the lowest traded volume. For example, if a horse race has 9 horses, and we set it to bet on the 3 lowest traded selections, then betting is allowed on the 7th, 8th and 9th horses by lowest traded volume. In a race with 12 runners betting would be allowed on the 10th, 11th and 12th horses by lowest traded volume.

There are 2 settings that must be set in order for this rule to function properly:

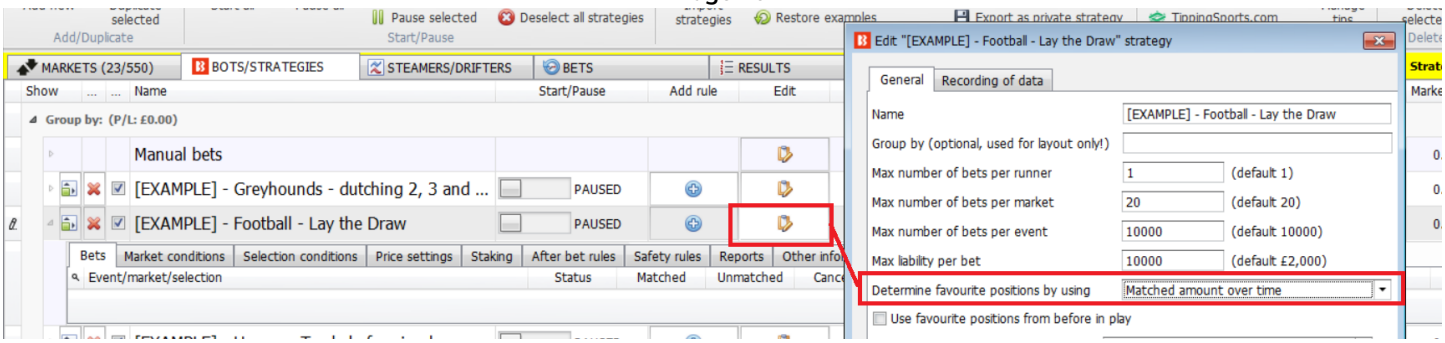
- You must set the “**Recording of data**” time period “**start recording**” and “**stop recording**” times in the strategy “Edit” form’s “Recording of data” tab.
- You must set the “**Determine favorite by position by using**” option to ”**Matched amount over time**”.

Image 706



The “Recording of data” settings for each strategy can be found by clicking on the “Edit” button in the same row as the strategy name and clicking on the “Recording of data” tab. Then you can edit the start and stop recording prices settings.

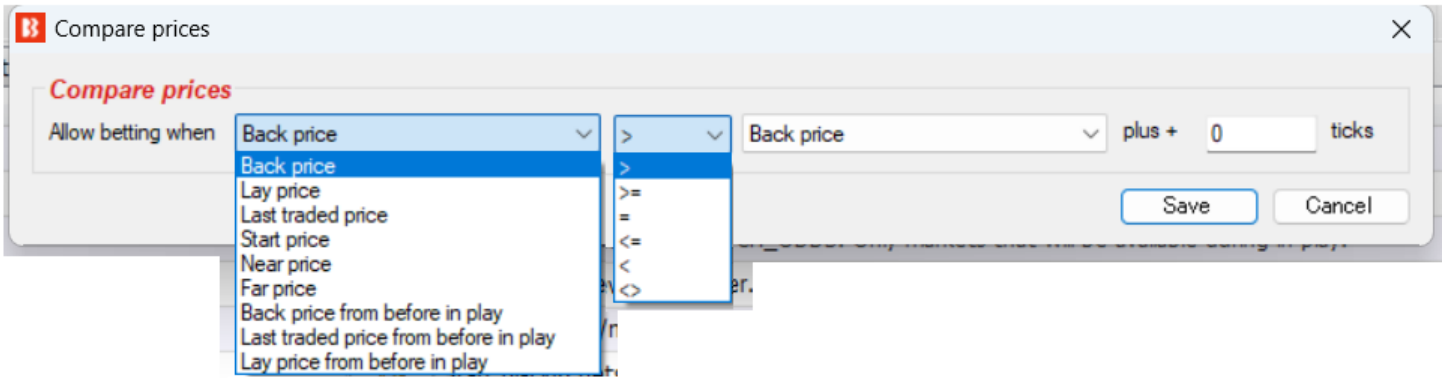
Image 707



You can set the "**Determine favorite by position by using**" option to "**Matched amount over time**" by clicking on the "Edit" button in the same row as the strategy name and using the drop down menu.

14.2.31 Compare prices

Image 708



This rule allows betting depending on the comparative value of two prices.

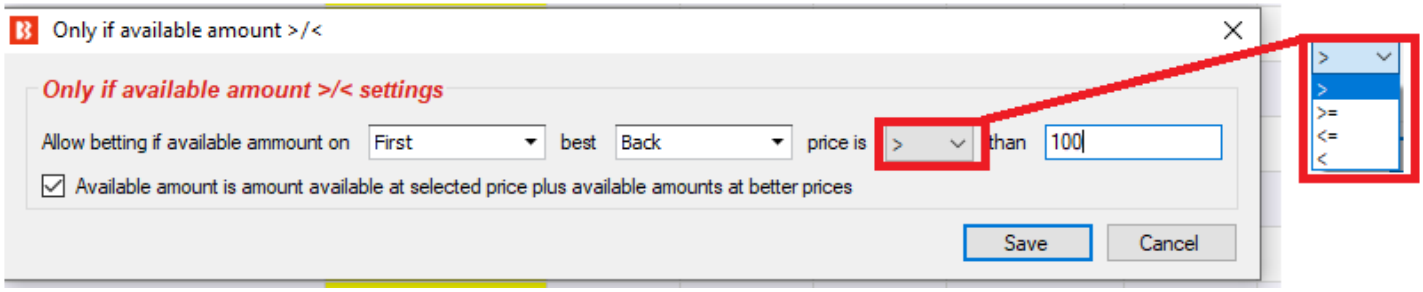
- Back price or Lay price
- Last traded price
- Start price, Near price or Far price
- Back price or lay price from before in play
- Last traded price from before in play

The above values can be compared with logical rules.

The price can also be adjusted by X number of ticks. Prices on the market change all the time and sometimes to find value, you want to compare available back prices with start prices e.g. bet only on selections whose back price is higher than the start price + 2.

14.2.32 Only if available amount >/<

Image 709



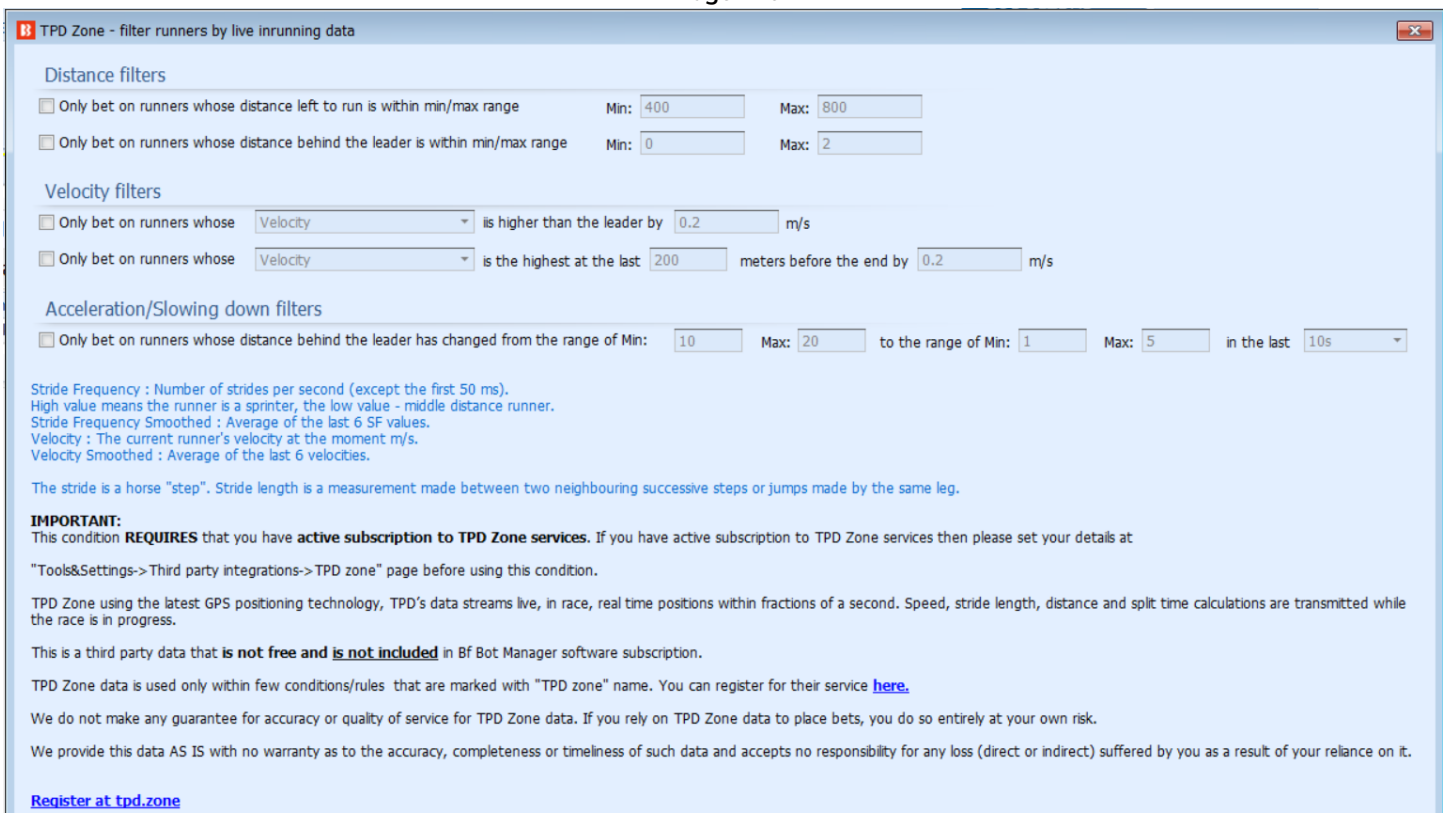
This rule allows betting only if the available amount of money to bet on satisfies the set filter for the first, second or third best back or lay price based on logical rules.

For example, the above condition would only allow betting if the first best back price has more than 100 available in liquidity to bet on. This is a useful rule if you want to prevent betting until sufficient amounts are available at the first bet back price.

If you wanted to only bet if the 1st **and** 2nd best Back prices **together** had 100 or more, then you could choose the "Second" best back price from the drop down menu and make sure you tick the "**Available amount is amount available at selected price plus available amounts at better prices"** option. This would add those amounts together.

14.2.33 TPD Zone Filter (Total Performance Data) (BF Bot Manager only)

Image 710

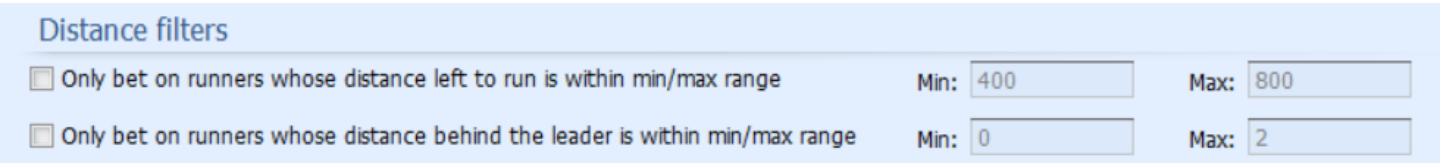


This rule allows betting on selections whose TPD Zone data meets the specified filters.

Distance Filters

- Only bet on runners whose distance left to run is withing min/max range (in meters).
- Only bet on runners whose distance behind the leader is within min/max range (in meters).

Image 711

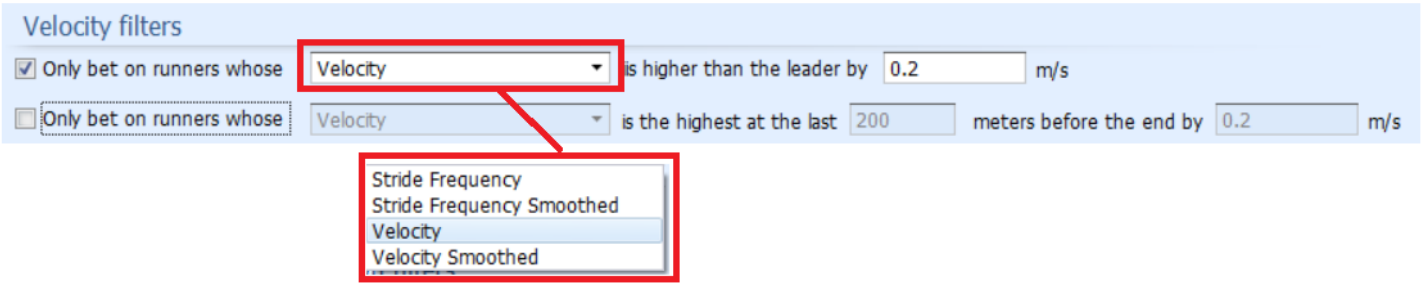


For example, used in combination with other rules, you could limit betting to back bets on horses near the end of the race, or on hoses who are near the leader. Or it could allow lay bets on horses near the end of the race who are a specific distance away from the leader.

Velocity Filters

- Only bet on runners whose (*Velocity / Velocity Smoothed / Stride Frequency / Stride Fluency Smoothed)* is higher than the leader by x m/s. (milliseconds)
- Only bet on runners whose (*Velocity / Velocity Smoothed / Stride Frequency / Stride Fluency Smoothed)* is the highest at the last x meters before the end by x m/s. (milliseconds)

Image 712



Stride Frequency means the number of strides per second (except for the first 50ms. (milliseconds)
A high value means the runner is a sprinter. A low value means the runner is a middle distance runner.
Strike Frequency Smoothed means the number of strides per second figure averaged over the last 6 Strike Frequency values.
Velocity means the current runner's speed (velocity) in m/s (meters per second).
Velocity Smoothed the current runner's speed (velocity) in m/s (meters per second) averaged over the last 6 velocities.

The **stride** is a horse "step" and stride length is a measurement made between two neighboring successive steps of jumps made by the same leg.

Image 713

Stride Frequency : Number of strides per second (except the first 50 ms).
High value means the runner is a sprinter, the low value - middle distance runner.
Stride Frequency Smoothed : Average of the last 6 SF values.
Velocity : The current runner's velocity at the moment m/s.
Velocity Smoothed : Average of the last 6 velocities.

The stride is a horse "step". Stride length is a measurement made between two neighbouring successive steps or jumps made by the same leg.

For example, used in combination with other rules, you could limit betting to back bets on horses that are running faster than the current leader by a specific amount. Or it could limit back bets to the horse that was the fastest by a specific margin near the end of the race.

Acceleration/Slowing Down Filters

- Only bet on runners whose distance behind the leader has changed from the range of Min: *x* Max: *x* (meters) to the range of Min: *x* Max: *x* at the last *x*(s) (seconds)

Image 714

Acceleration/Slowing down filters
☑ Only bet on runners whose distance behind the leader has changed from the range of Min: 10 Max: 20 to the range of Min: 1 Max: 5 in the last 10s

For example, used in combination with other rules, you could try to place back bets on horses that have moved closer to the leader in the last 30 seconds, or you could try to place lay bets on horses that have moved further away from the leader in the last 20 seconds.

In the Third-Party Integrations form we can setup a connection to **TPD Zone**'s racing data from https://www.tpd.zone/. This feature only works on the Bf Bot Manager version of the software for Betfair. TPD Zone uses the latest GPS positioning technology so that TPD's data stream has live, in-race, real-time positions of the runners within fractions of a second. Speed, stride length, distance, and split time calculations are transmitted while the race is in progress.

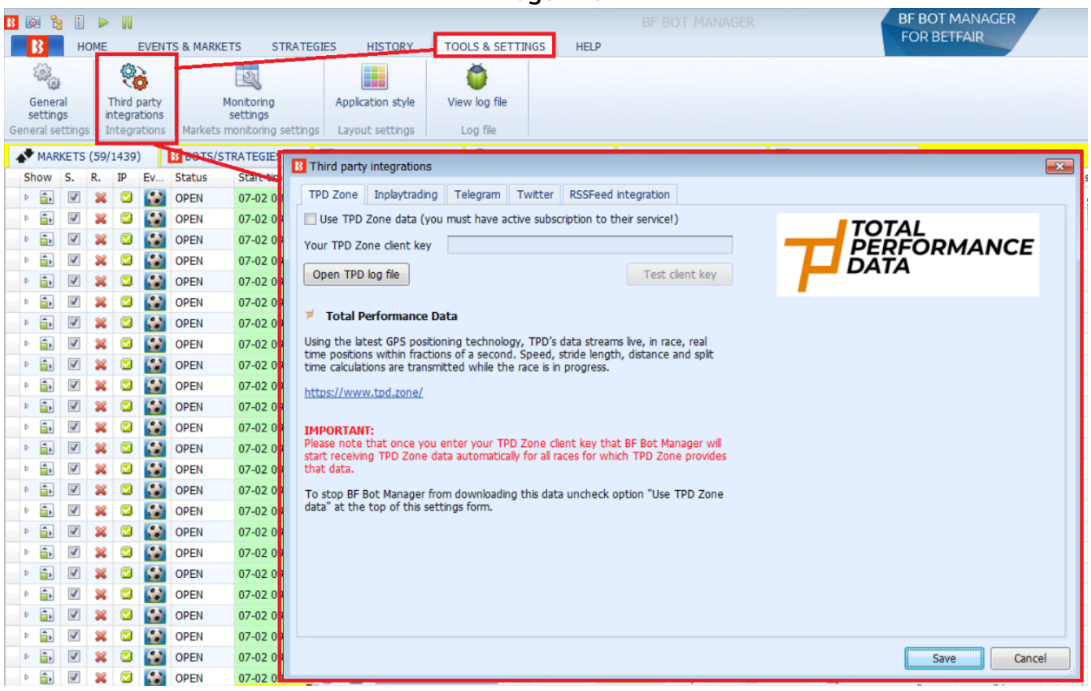
This service requires a separate subscription to TPD Zone. This is separate from Bf Bot Manager and not included for free.

You can add your client key to the TPD Zone form to connect your TPD Zone data to the Bf Bot Manager software.

IMPORTANT: Please note that once you enter you TPD Zone client key, the Bf Bot Manager will start receiving TPD Zone data automatically for all races which TPD Zone provides data for.

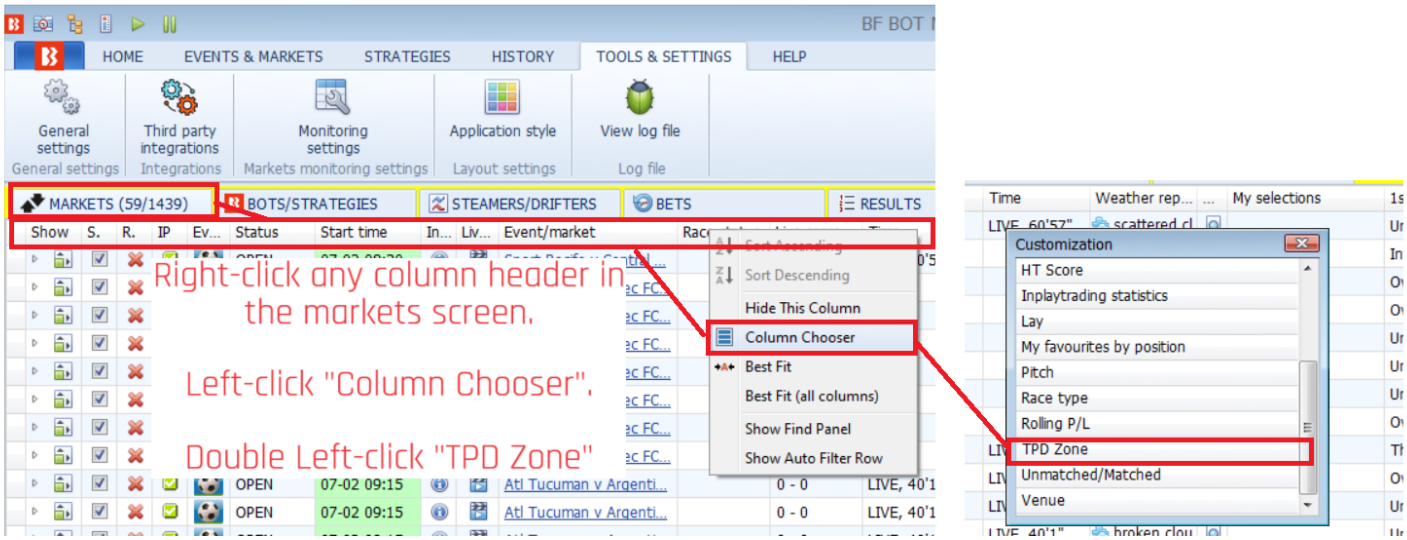
To stop Bf Bot Manager from downloading this data, untick the option "Use TPD Zone data" at the top of the settings form.

Image 715



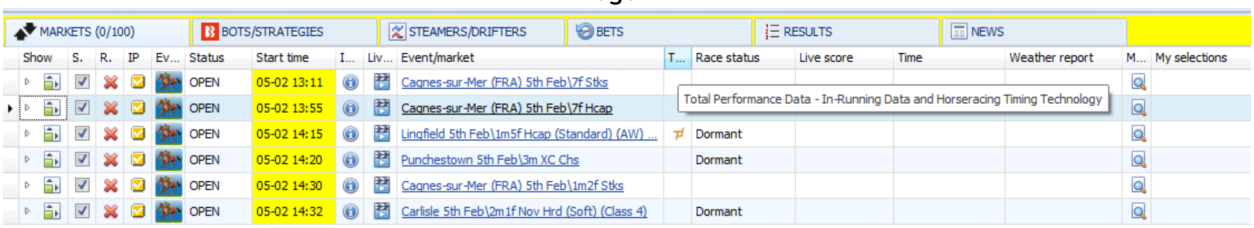
TPD Zone data is available for each selection in the horse market. The column that shows TPD Zone data can be added to the Markets main tab. The name of this column is “TPD zone”. To add this column, go to the MARKETS screen and right click on any of the column headers. Then, left-click on “Column Chooser”. Next, double left-click on “TPD Zone”. This will add the column to your MARKETS screen. If you cannot find it straight away, try scrolling to the right and see if it is the final column on the right. You can move the position of the TPD Zone column by left-click holding the column header. Then you can drag it to your preferred position.

Image 716



If a race has TPD Zone data, then the TPD Zone data icon will appear in the column.

Image 717



By pressing the TPD zone icon , a window with the TPD zone data will open.

Image 718

If the TPD Zone icon is not there, it means that TPD zone data is not available for that market.

Important: This is a third-party data source. Bf Bot Manager does NOT make any guarantee for the accuracy or quality of the service of TPD Zone data. If you rely on TPD Zone data to place bets, you do so entirely at your own risk. We provide the data AS IS with no warranty as to its accuracy, completeness or timeliness. We accept no responsibility for any loss (direct or indirect) suffered by you as a result of your reliance on TPD Zone data.

14.3 Price settings (pre-stake) conditions

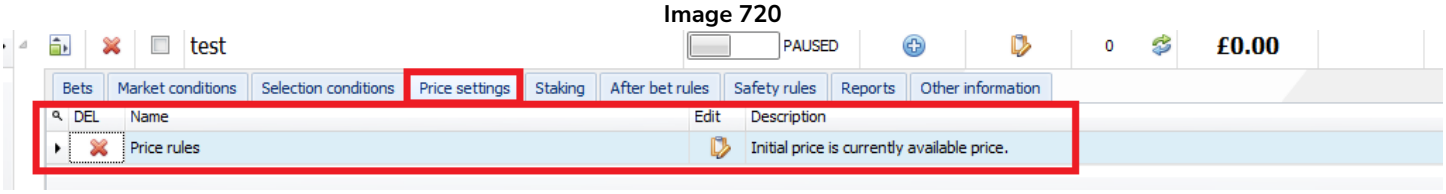
Image 719

Type	Name	Initial	Status	Add rule	Description
12	**Default price**	☑	☐	⊕	Sets price at which bets will be placed.
12	**Price rules**	☐	☑	⊕	Sets price at which bets will be placed.

The **price settings** conditions set the price at which bets will be placed. Either at a set price, the current price or a modified price based on the price data.

Note: Only **ONE** price setting rule should be used, **Default price** OR **Price rules**. Price Rules is the most common. Default price is rarely used.

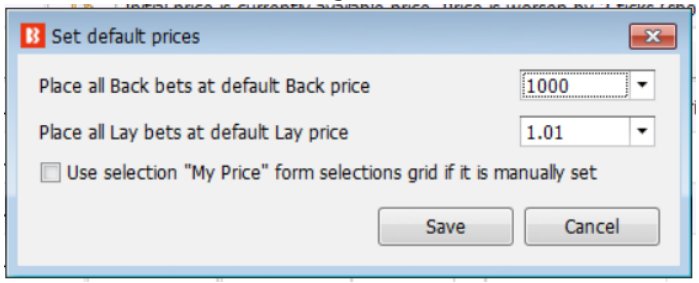
Image 720



When a new strategy is created, the Price Settings Condition “Price rules” is added by default.
A strategy must have a rule telling it at what price to place bets.
In contrast to Market Conditions and Selections Conditions that allow or prevent betting, the price settings tell the strategy what price to attempt to place bets at.

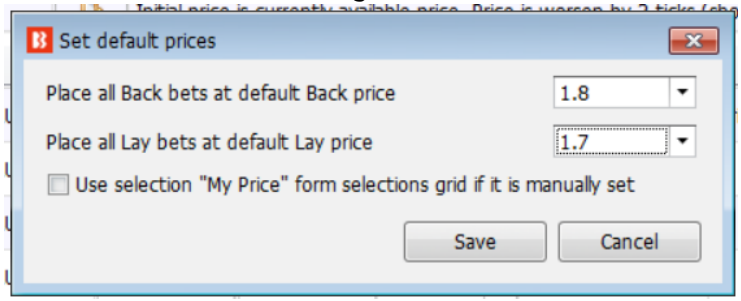
14.3.1 Default price

Image 721



This setting sets a default price to place bets at. It will place bets at these prices regardless of what the market price is. In the above image it would place back bets at 1000 and lay bets at 1.01. Unless the outcome of a market is virtually decided, it is unlikely these bets would get matched.

Image 722

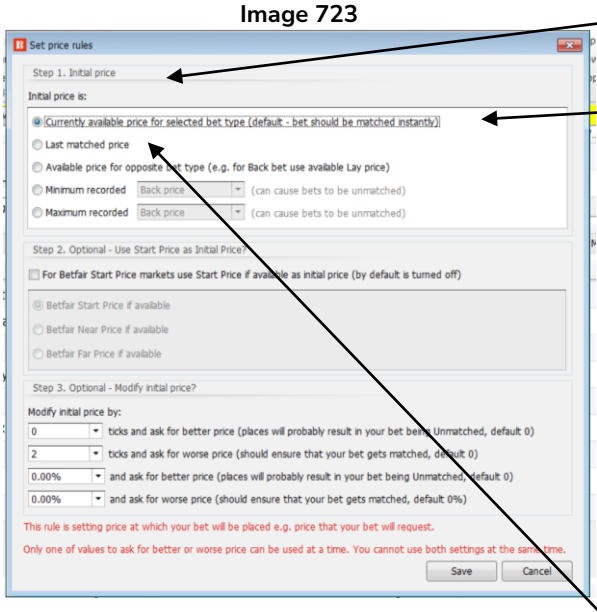


In the above image, all back bets by this strategy would be placed at odds of 1.8 and all lay bets would be placed at odds of 1.7. Optionally you can set to use price that you manually entered for selection at selections grid view column “My Price”. This can be useful when setting individual stake, price and bet type for each selection.

14.3.2 Price rules

In the Price Settings tab of the strategy rules, there are the **Price rules**. These tell the strategy what price it should try to place bets at. For example, to take the current price or to ask for a better price and so on.

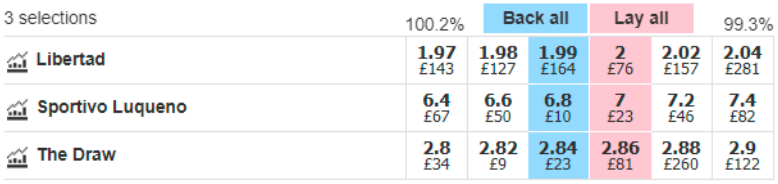
Image 723



Step 1: Initial price tells the bot what price to use as the base price.

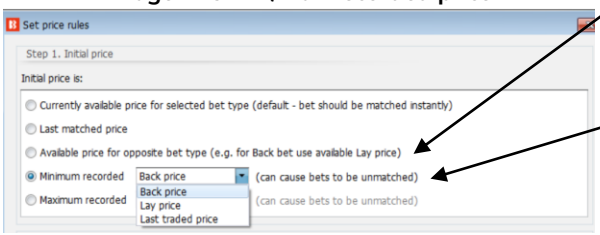
If we select **the currently available price for the selected bet type**, it will place bets at the current back price for back bets and the current lay price for lay bets. Most bets will be matched immediately, but if there is not enough money offered at that odds level, then part of the bet may remain unmatched. In the Betfair market image below, the away bet has £10 available at 6.8 so a £20 bet would only be partially matched.

Image 724



Last matched price will use the odds of the most recently placed bet that was matched.

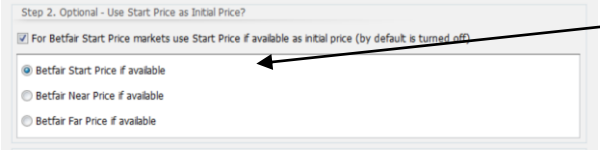
Image 725 Min/Max recorded price



Available price for the opposite bet type for back bets would use the current 1st best lay price. For lay bets it would use the current 1st best back price for the price to request.

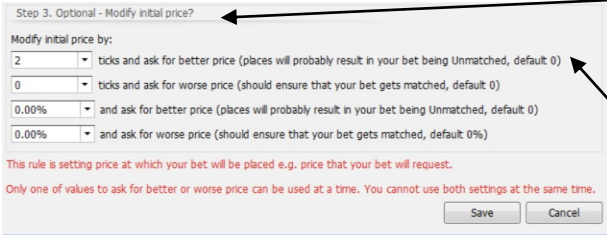
Minimum and maximum recorded price looks at all the data recorded by this strategy to find the highest or lowest back price, lay price or last traded price. The recorded data depends on the time period that the market was monitored from.

Image 726



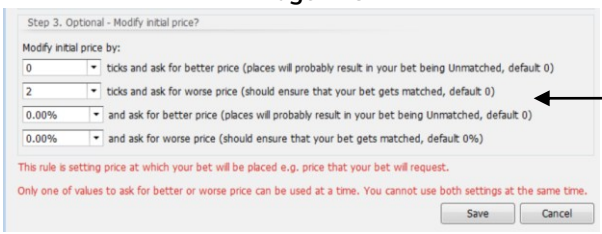
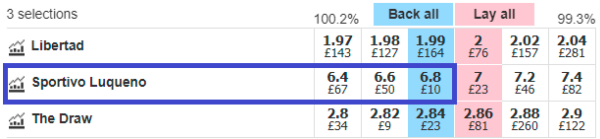
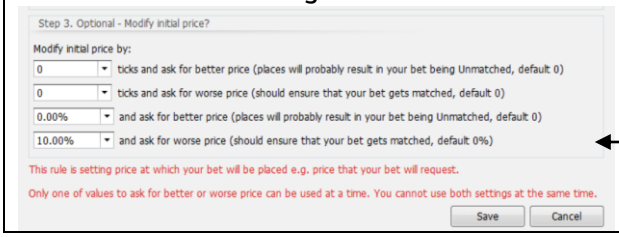
Step 2 is an optional setting if you want the bot to use the **Betfair Start Price (BSP)** if available. It is possible to select the **Start Price, Near Price** or **Far Price**. If the market is not a Betfair Start Price market, then the strategy will follow the rule set in Step 1. This can only be used if bets are being placed during in play. This is because the BSP is unknown before in play, so it cannot be used as a requested price. Also this setting is NOT used to place BSP bets. To place BSP bets users should use "Staking->Bets persistence" rule

Image 727



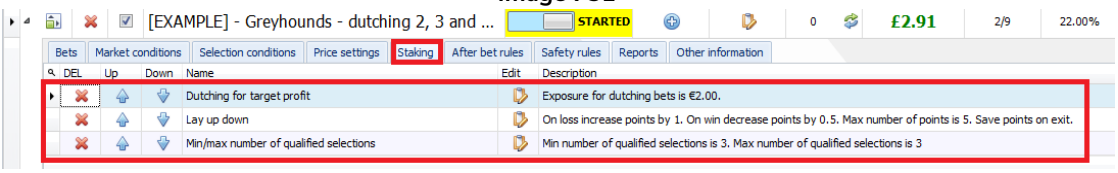
Step 3 is an optional setting that modifies the price to ask for a better or worse price by a number of ticks or by a percentage.

Asking for a better price by 2 ticks on a back bet which has odds of 1.35 currently available would instruct the bot to place a bet at 1.37. Asking for a better price on a lay bet which has odds of 1,35 currently available would instruct the bot to

	place a lay bet of 1.33**. Only one of these 4 rules can be set in one strategy.** You cannot ask for 2 prices on one bet. That would require 2 bots with different instructions. By asking for a price better than the currently available one, the bot will place an unmatched bet.
Image 728  **Image 729** 	**Asking for a worse price by 2 ticks** on a back bet which has odds of 1.35 available would instruct the bot to place a bet at 1.33. This would increase the chance of the entire stake being matched. In the case of the away team in the Betfair market image on the left, which has current odds of 6.8, if asked for a £100 bet with the price modified to ask for a worse price by 2 ticks of 6.4, it would first get matched at the higher odds of 6.8, then 6.6 and the remainder at 6.4. So £10 would be matched at 6.8. £50 would be matched at 6.6. The remaining £40 would be matched at 6.4. By asking for a worse price by 2 ticks, it increases the chances of the entire stake getting matched, especially for in-play events when the 1st best currently available odds are sometimes smaller amounts.
Image 730 	Modifying the price can also be done as a **percentage** of the currently available price. For example, asking for a 10% worse price on 6.8 would ask for odds of 6.2. (6.8 - (6.8 - 1.0) x (1.0 - 0.90) = 6.8 - 5.8 * 0.1 = 6.8 - 0.58 = 6.22 but those odds are not permitted on Betfair, so it would be rounded to the nearest permitted interval which is 6.2.)

14.4 Staking Plans

Image 731



Staking rules will be applied to selections that satisfy the Market conditions and Selection Conditions, and that also have Bet Types and Price Settings properly set.

Image 732

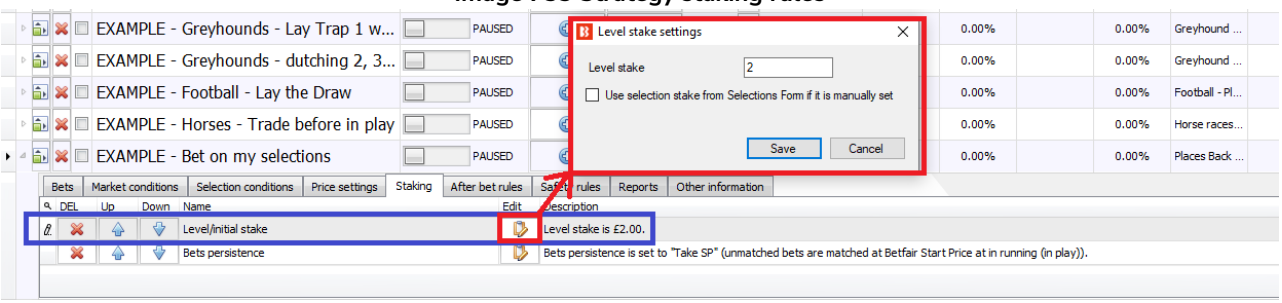
Lay the Draw" strategy

Type	Name	Initial	Status	Add rule	Description
	Bet on imported selections/tips	☑	☐		Allow betting only on imported tips from specified tipster. Sets tip bet type, points, stake, price and checks imported min/max price.
	Dutching for target profit (Back bets)	☑	☐		Use target profit option to win target amount if any of your Back bets wins. Or you can use exposure option so that you lose fixed amount if none of them wins.
	Dutching over multiple markets for target profit (Back bets)	☑	☐		Dutching qualified selections for target profit across multiple markets, mostly used for football and similar sports.
	Level/initial stake	☑	☑		Level/initial stake.
	Odds staking ladder	☑	☐		Set different bet size for each price range.
	Back 1 point staking plan	☐	☐		Your target is your previous loss plus 1 point value. If your new stake is greater than previous loss + 1 then your stake is previous loss + 1.
	Bets persistence	☐	☐		Place Start Price bets or set bets persistence that tells exchange what to do with your unmatched bets when market turns in play.
	Bookies bank staking plan	☐	☐		This staking plan works on the basis of competing against the bookmaker.
	Coupmaster staking plan	☐	☐		Recovery staking plan that aims to make a percentage of your bank on a daily basis.
	D'Alembert	☐	☐		Each winning bet decreases stake by one point, and each losing bet increases stake by one point.
	Dutching for target profit (Lay bets)	☐	☐		Calculate stakes so that you win target amount if all your Lay bets win.
	First and last recovery	☐	☐		Recovers first and last loss, then repeats that process until all losses are recovered.
	Kelly staking plan	☐	☐		Kelly staking plan f* = bp - q / b
	Labouchere	☐	☐		Create serie of numbers. First and last numbers in serie are stake. When winning delete first and last. On lose add to the end of serie new loss.
	Lay % up down	☐	☐		On win decrease/increase stake to "stake / (100% + X%)", on loss increase/decrease stake to "stake * (100% + Y%)".
	Lay 1 point staking plan	☐	☐		Your target is your previous loss plus 1 point value. If your new stake is greater than previous loss + 1 then your stake is previous loss + 1.
	Lay 1-4 staking plan	☐	☐		Stake is increased by one unit on loss. It remains at that value as long as bets are winning and loss is not recovered.
	Lay up down	☐	☐		On loss increases number of points by X, on profit decreases number of points by Y.
	Maria staking plan	☐	☐		Uses betting bank and different percentage of betting bank depending on odds at which bet will be placed.
	Moving average staking plan	☐	☐		Next stake is calculated having taken into account your moving average strike rate.
	Parlay Overall P/L	☐	☐		Uses profit from previous market and invest it to the next market. Resets to initial value on loss.
	Percent of betting bank	☐	☐		Sets bet size as percentage of betting bank. Betting bank changes as you win/lose. Ratchet staking and options to use selected strategies to calculate profit/loss.
	Pro staking plan	☐	☐		Pro staking plan is designed to win your target amount in each race and to recover any losses from previous races.
	Retirement staking plan	☐	☐		Uses divisor and target profit to get bet size and recover losses.
	Reverse Labouchere	☐	☐		Create serie of numbers. First and last numbers in serie are stake. When losing delete first and last. On win add to the end of serie new profit.
	Reversed recovery staking plan	☐	☐		This staking plan increases your stake on winning bets and resets after X losing bets or X winning cycles of Y winning bets.
	Simple Sequence Overall P/L	☐	☐		Allows you to set sequence of multipliers and create your own sequence of bet sizes or to implement Fibonacci staking sequence.
	Square root	☐	☐		When you are in profit then initial bet size is increased by square root of your profit.
	Step staking plan	☐	☐		Increase/decrease points by using different value for each price range.
	Sweeper - the six point plan	☐	☐		The six point plan, uses divisor and price to calculate next stake.
	Target overround	☐	☐		Places unmatched bets at target overround, so that if all bets get matched you get sure profit.
	Combined liability of odds	☐	☐		Min/max odds liability of selections at which bets will be placed.
	Liability or amount to win	☐	☐		Uses price at which bet will be placed to adjust bet size set by other staking rules so that it becomes liability, payout or profit.
	Max number of matched/unmatched bets per market	☐	☐		Limits number of matched/unmatched bets per market.
	Min/max number of qualified selections	☐	☐		Min/max number of qualified selections for bet placement at single moment.
	Min/max overround of qualified selections	☐	☐		Min/max overround/book of selections at which bets will be placed.
	Overall loss recovery	☐	☐		Increase bet size to recover previous losses. Use it carefully as bet size can increase quickly in case of long losing run.

Warning: Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.1 Level/initial stake

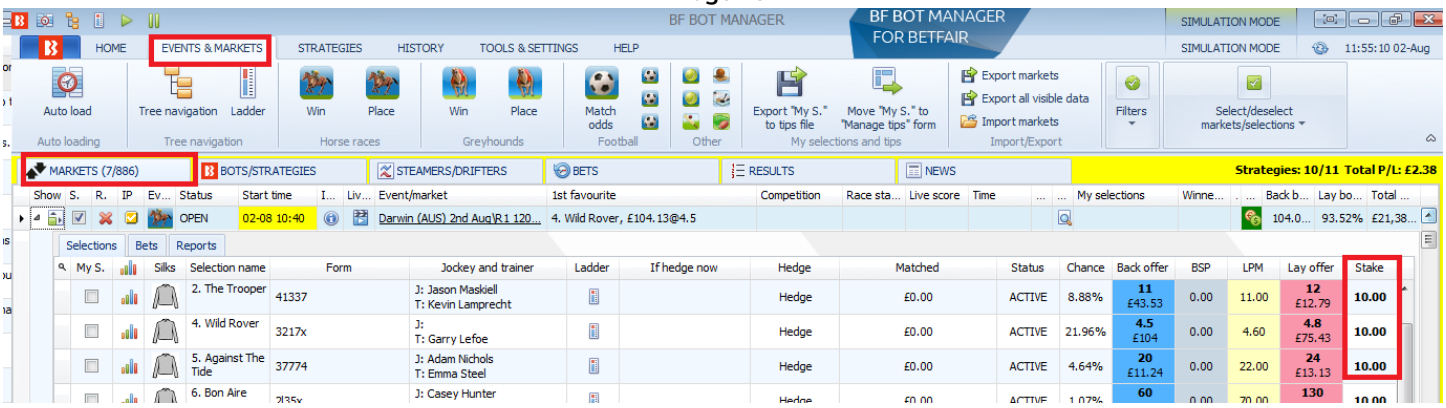
Image 733 Strategy staking rules



In the staking rules tab we set how much to bet. There are a wide variety of staking plans to choose from. The "**Level/initial stake**" rule sets a fixed amount of money to bet on each qualifying selection. In this image above, it will bet £2 on every back bet, and lay to win £2 on every lay bet.

It is also possible to tick the checkbox "**Use selection stake from Selections Form**" if manually set.

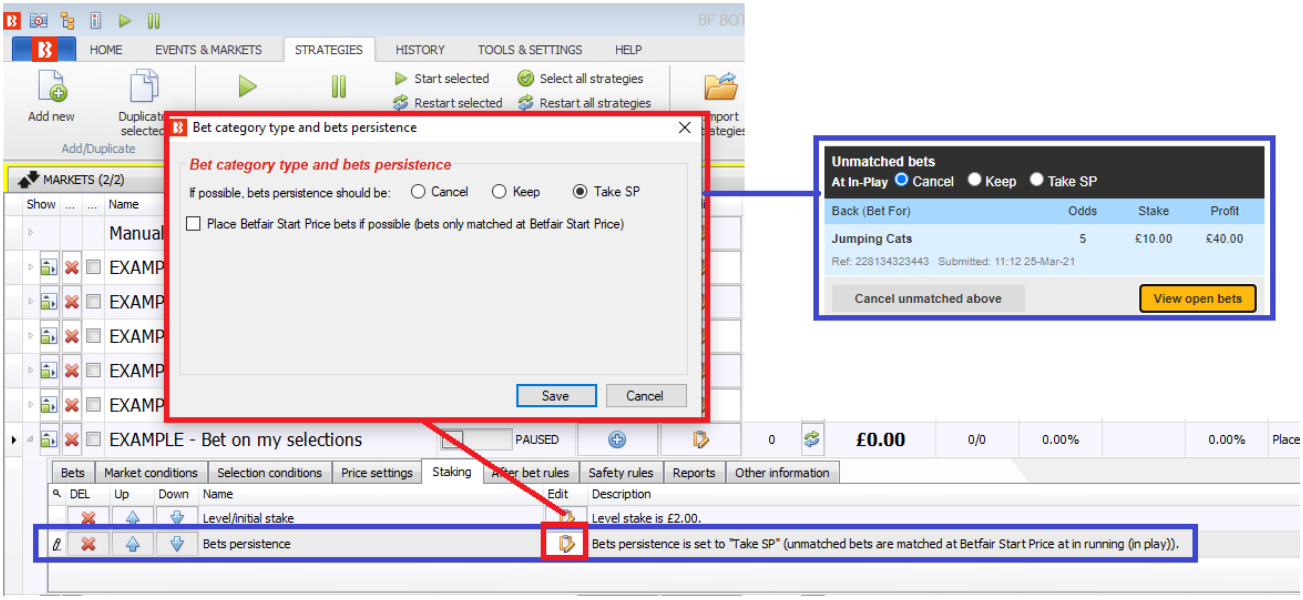
Image 734



This refers to the "**Stake**" column that can be added to the Market Selections Grid View. The "Stake" column does not appear by default and needs to be added by right-clicking any column header, selecting "Column chooser" and then double left-clicking on "Stake" to add a stake column. You can then manually set the stake individually for each selection in a market if you want. If the "Level/Initial stake" rule's "Use selection stake from Selections Form" checkbox is ticked, then it will use that stake value to place bets.

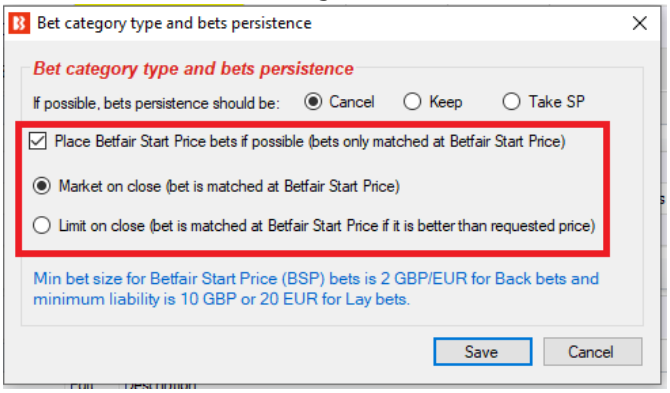
14.4.2 Bets persistence

Image 735 Bets persistence rule



This is similar to the Betfair **Cancel**, **Keep** and **Take SP** options on their website. The bets persistence rule lets you place a bet that will be cancelled at in-play if unmatched, kept at in-play if unmatched or will take the Betfair Start Price (SP) if available on that market. These settings work as they do on the Betfair website.

Image 736



It is also possible to place full Betfair Start Price bets on markets. Start price bets can only be placed on Betfair Start Price markets, those are usually UK horse races and some US and AUS horse races. The Minimum size for start price bets is 2 GBP/EUR for Back bets and 10 GBP or 20 EUR for Lay bets.

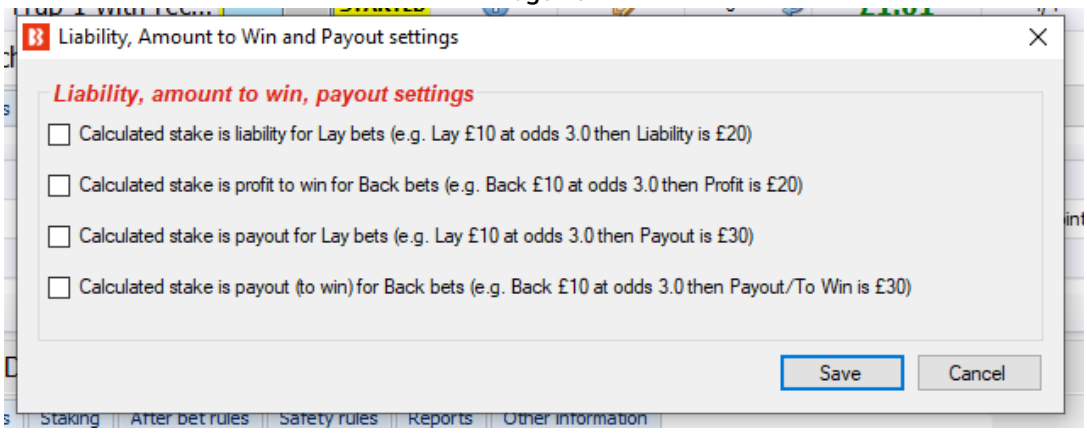
For start price bets there are two options, those are:

- **Market on close**, this tells Betfair to match our start price bet at the Betfair start price when the market goes in play **at whatever the Betfair start price is**
- **Limit on close**, this tells Betfair to match our start price bet at the Betfair start price **only if the start price is better than our requested price.** Our requested price is set by using the Price Settings conditions.

If your strategy is only betting on BSP markets, then it is recommended to also set the "Market conditions-> Markets filter" rule to only allow betting on BSP markets.

14.4.3 Liability or amount to win (ending)

Image 737



The "Liability or amount to win" rule is a very useful setting that changes the bets of other staking plans from simple stakes to liabilities, to target profit or to payouts.

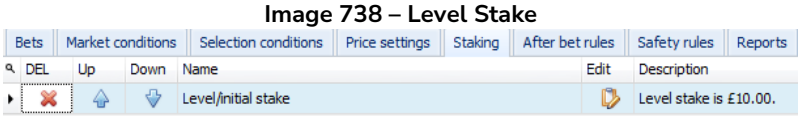
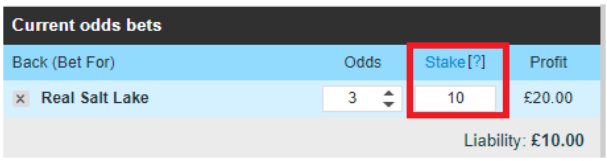
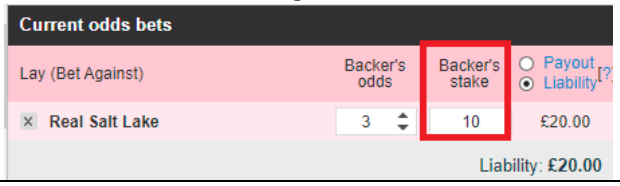
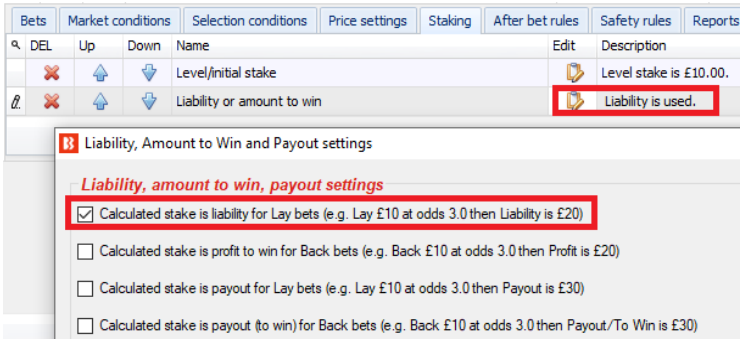
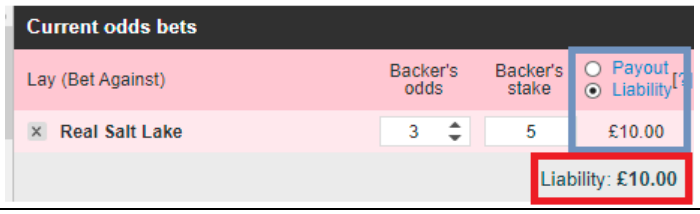
Image 738 – Level Stake  Image 739  Image 740 	For example, the Level/Initial stake rule set at 10 GBP will risk 10 GBP to win 20 GBP on a back bet, but risk 20 GBP to win 10 GBP on a lay bet at odds of 3.00. The **amount won on a back bet will vary** depending on the odds. The **amount risked on a back bet will not vary** depending on the odds. The **amount won on a lay bet will not vary** depending on the odds. The **amount risked on a lay bet will vary** depending on the odds.
Image 741 – Stake is Liability (Lay)  Image 742 	If we add the rule with the setting "**Calculated stake is liability for Lay bets**", then combined with the Level/Initial stake rule set at 10 GBP, it will risk 10 GBP to win 5 GBP on a lay bet at odds of 3.00. The **amount risked on a lay bet will not vary** depending on the odds, it remains fixed. But the **amount won on a lay bet will vary** depending on the odds. This controls the amount risked on lay bets.

Image 743 Stake is Profit (Target Profit for Back bets)

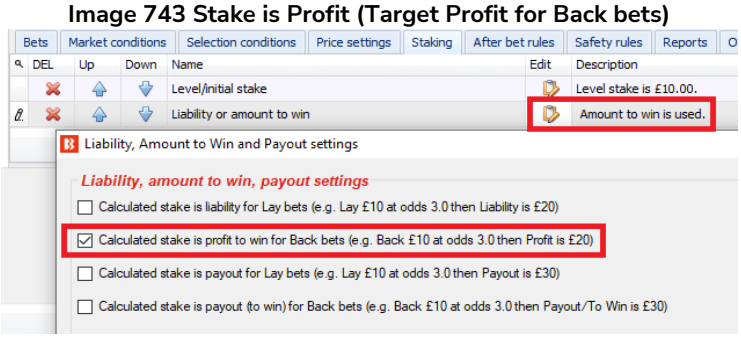
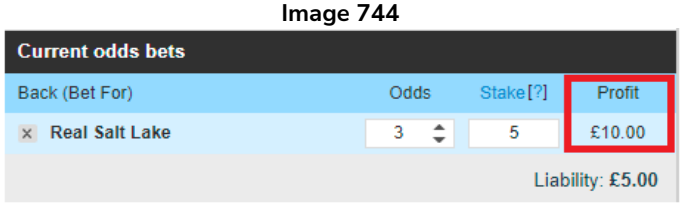


Image 744



If we add the rule with the setting **"Calculated stake is profit for Back bets"**, then combined with the Level/Initial stake rule set at 10 GBP, it will risk 5 GBP to win 10 GBP on a back bet at odds of 3.00.
The **amount risked on a back bet will vary** depending on the odds.
But the **amount won on a back bet will not vary** depending on the odds.
This is also known as Target Profit staking.

This controls that amount won on back bets.

Image 745 Stake is payout (Lay)

Image 746

If we add the rule with the setting **"Calculated stake is payout for Lay bets"**, then combined with the Level/Initial stake rule set at 10 GBP, it will risk 6.66 GBP to win 3.33 GBP on a lay bet at odds of 3.00.
The **amount risked on a lay bet will vary up to a point** depending on the odds.
But the **amount won on a lay bet will vary up to a point** depending on the odds.

This controls the payout on lay bets.
(Payout = Back stake + Lay liability)

Image 747 Stake is payout (Back)

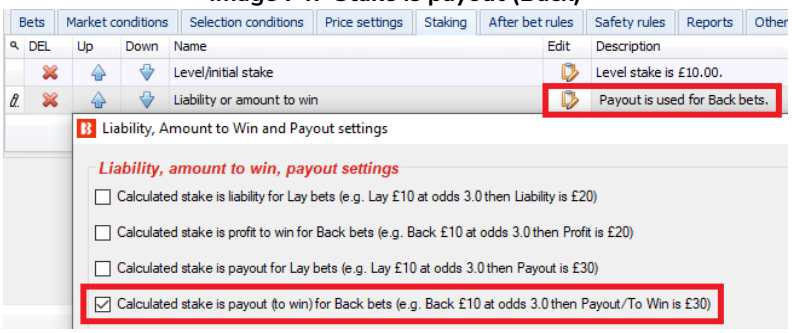
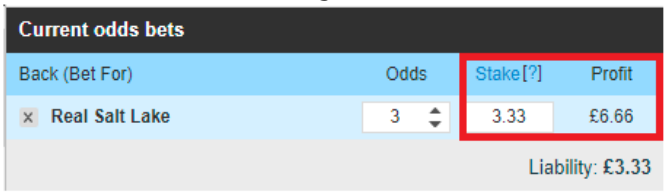


Image 748



If we add the rule with the setting **"Calculated stake is payout for Back bets"**, then combined with the Level/Initial stake rule set at 10 GBP, it will risk 3.33 GBP to win 6.66 GBP on a back bet at odds of 3.00.
The **amount risked on a back bet will vary up to a point** depending on the odds.
But the **amount won on a back bet will vary up to a point** depending on the odds.

This controls the payout on back bets.
(Payout = Back stake + Lay liability)

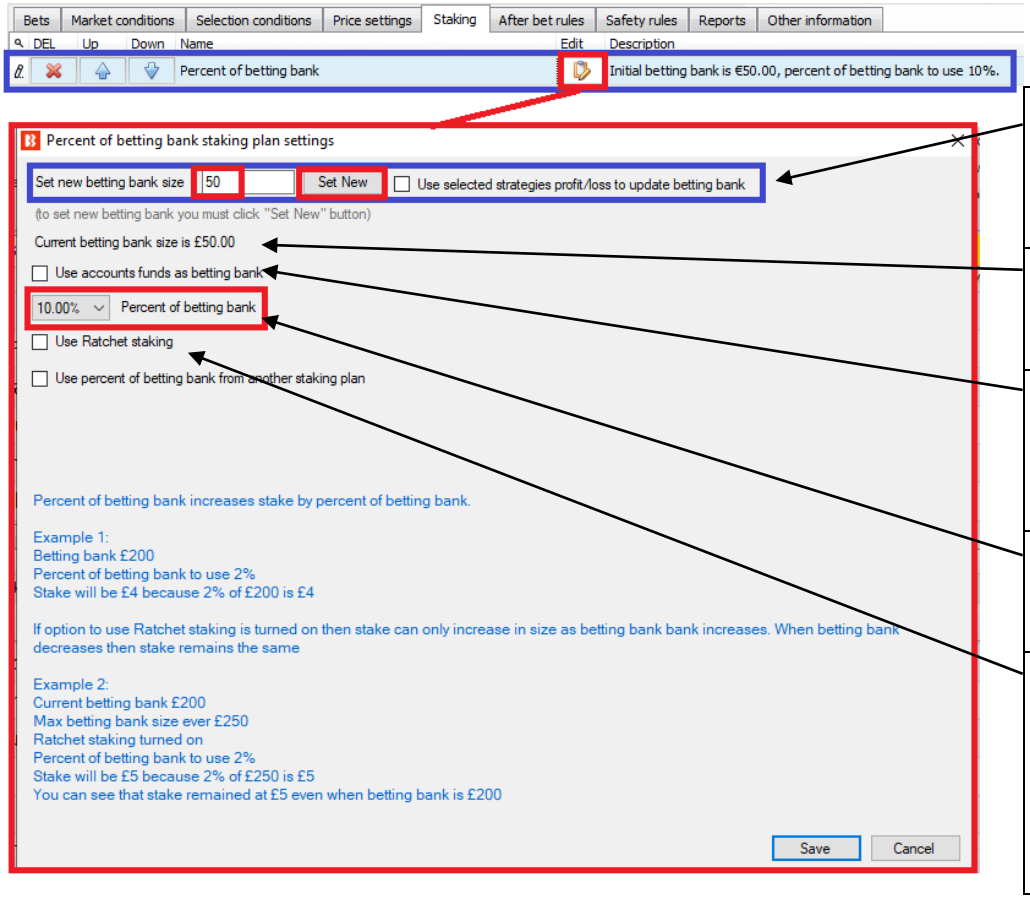
This rule can also be used in with other staking plans, such as the percent of betting bank rule, which would then, for example, mean it would bet to a percentage liability of the bank instead of staking a percentage of the bank.

Warning: Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.4 Percent of betting bank and ratchet staking

A betting bank size is set at the start, then each bet is placed as a percentage of the current strategy's betting bank after settled bets profit and loss has been added. It is important to understand that the current betting bank balance excludes unsettled bets. This means that if several bets are placed at one time, they will place all bets at that initial 10% level excluding unsettled bets. If we are betting 10% of the bank on each bet, that means if 15 bets are placed, 150% of the bank will have been used. As each bet is settled, the betting bank balance will be recalculated.

Image 749 Staking – Percentage of betting bank



Each strategy has its own **starting betting bank** set here. Click Set New after entering a new amount.

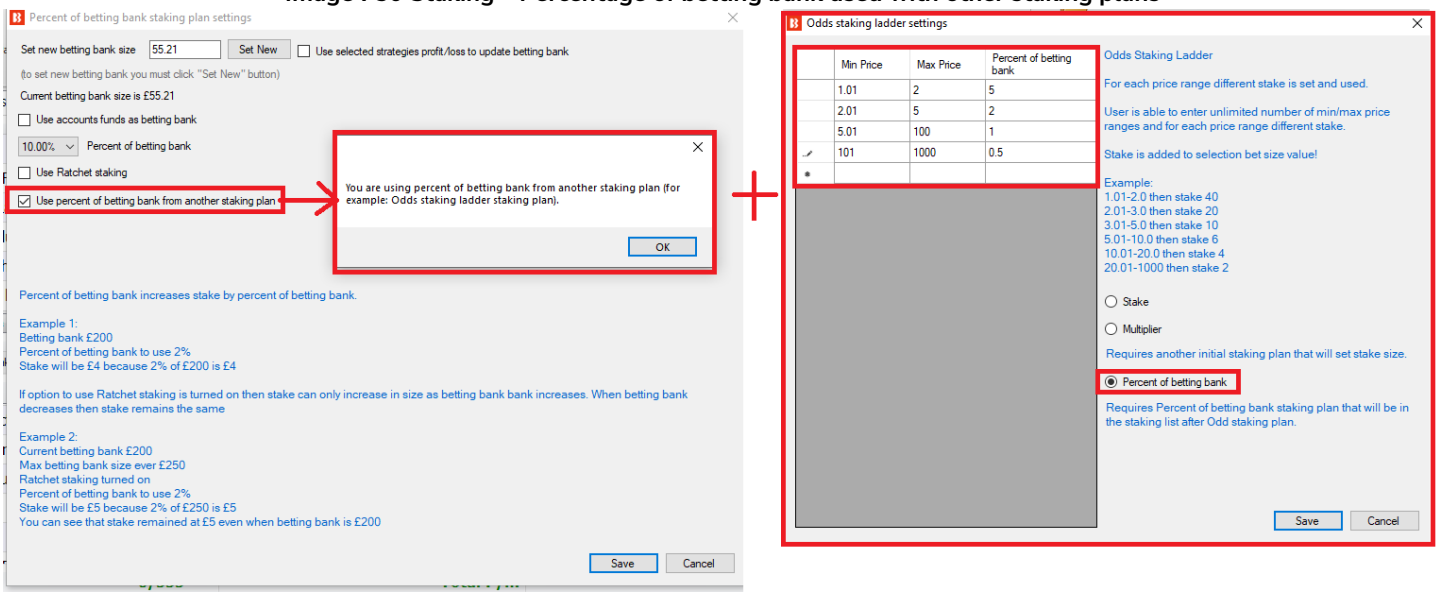
After a strategy has been started, the **current betting bank** can be viewed here.

If this box is checked, the strategy will **use all account funds as the betting bank** to calculate stakes from.

The **percentage of the betting bank to bet** on each selection is set here.

Ratchet staking can be set here. (Ratchet staking means that once stakes have been increased, they will never decrease, even if the betting bank decreases.)

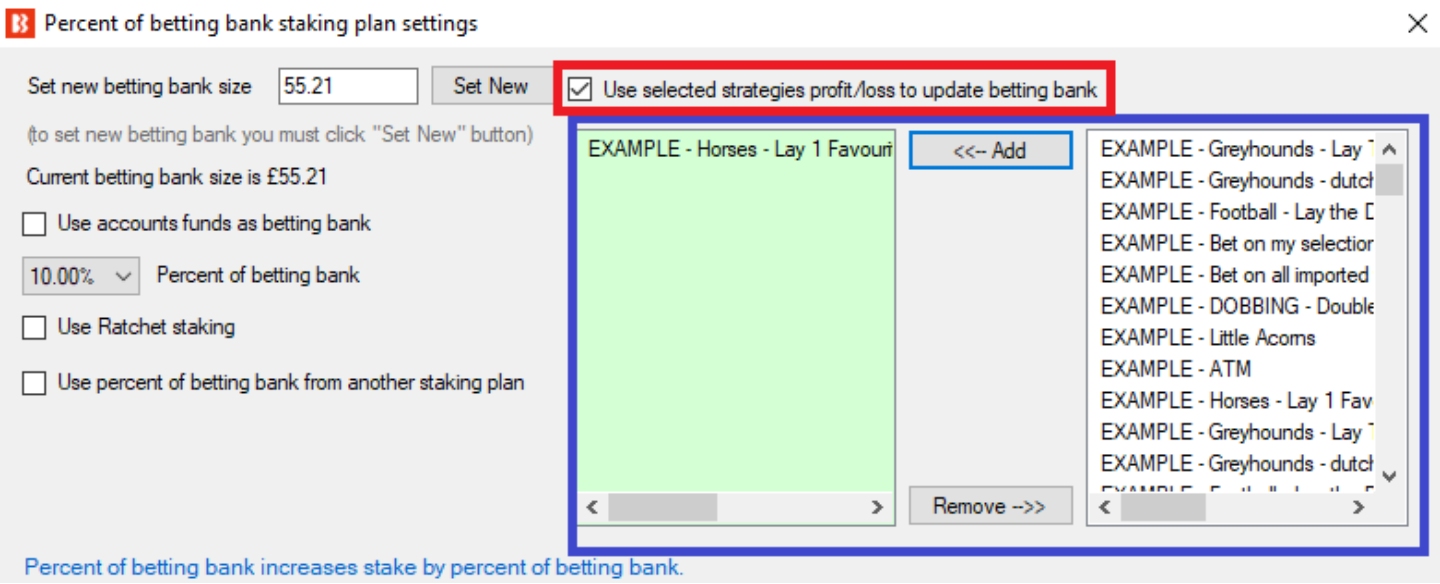
Image 750 Staking – Percentage of betting bank used with other staking plans



If you want other strategies to operate betting on percentages of a betting bank, **the Percentage of betting**

bank staking rule can be used together with other staking plan rules. For example, the Odds Staking Ladder allows different stake sizes to be set for different odds ranges. Using this with the Percentage of betting bank rule allows a different percentage of the betting bank to be used for different odds ranges. When combining the percentage plan with other staking plans, the order that they appear on the staking tab is very important because the bot executes rules in that logical order from top to bottom. So for the Odds Staking Ladder rule, it must appear in the list BEFORE the Percentage of Betting Bank rule.

Image 751 Staking – Percentage of betting bank used with other strategies

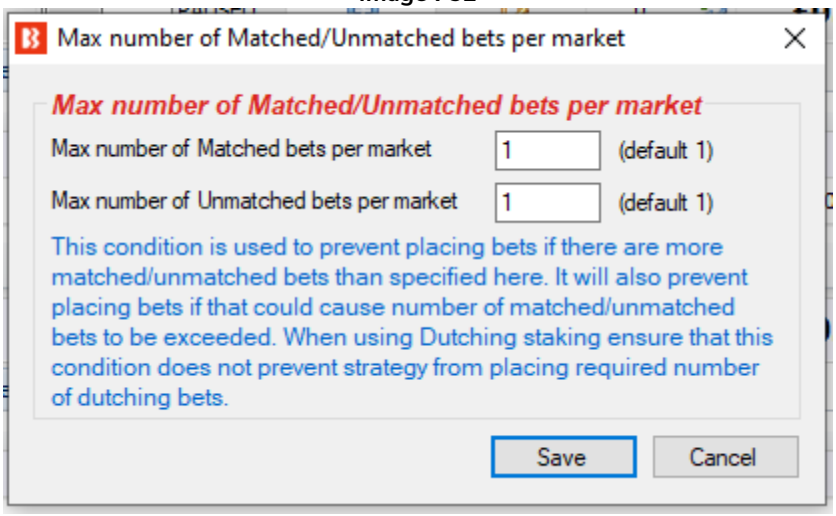


It is also possible to set up the betting bank so that the percentage used is not just of this strategy's betting bank, but the combined profit/loss of selected strategies together.

This staking plan is demonstrated in the example strategy [Horses – Trade before in play](#).

14.4.5 Max number of Matched/Unmatched bets per market

Image 752



This condition prevents the strategy from placing bets if new bets will lead to exceeding the maximum number of allowed matched or unmatched bets per market. You should use this condition when placing more

than one bet per runner and market. For example, if you want to allow up to 3 bets **per market**, you can change the “Max number of Matched bets per market” to “3”.

If you are using a Dutching condition, be careful that this rule does not prevent betting on the number o required selections.

NOTE: This rule is different to the Market Conditions **“Unsettled markets”** rule. The unsettled markets rule prevents betting if there are X number of unsettled bets on a market. But this Max number of matched/unmatched bets per market prevents the number of bets per market being exceeded.

14.4.6 Odds Staking Ladder

The odds staking ladder lets you set a different stake for different odds bands.
This can be a fixed stake value, a percentage of a bank or a multiplier of another initial stake plan.

The **Min Price** sets the lower limit of this row's odds band.

The **Max Price** sets the upper limit of this row's odds band.

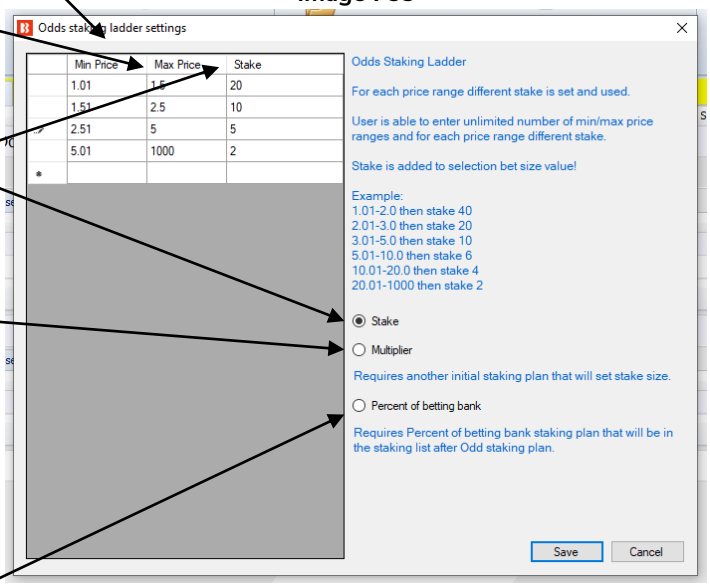
The **Stake** sets the fixed stake value, the percentage of a bank or the multiplier of another initial stake plan to be used.

The **Stake option** sets the "Stake" column value as a fixed value. So "20" = 20 GBP or whatever the currency of your Betfair account is.

The **Multiplier option** sets the stake as a multiple of an initial stake set by another staking plan. For example, if a "Level Stakes" rule is also in the strategy staking tab, then just changing that Level stakes rule stake value would mean you do not have to change each separate stake column value in this Odds staking ladder rule.

The **Percent of betting bank option** will mean that the "stake" column becomes a "percent of betting bank" column, so "20" would mean 20% of the betting bank. The betting bank is set by a separate "Percent of betting bank" rule which needs to be positioned in the staking rules list AFTER the Odds staking ladder rule.

Image 753

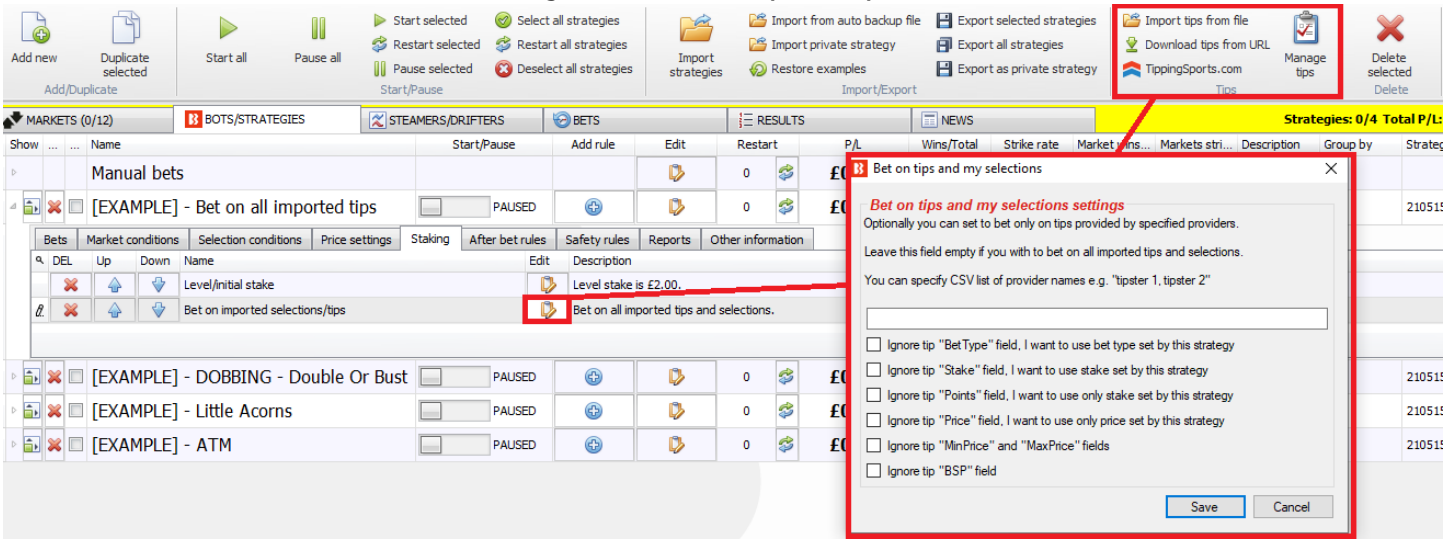


The Odds Staking Ladder staking plan is also known by other names such as Secure Staking or Odds Bracket Staking. It is a good way to control stakes to bet less on higher odds and more on lower odds (or the reverse).

14.4.7 Bet on imported selections/tips

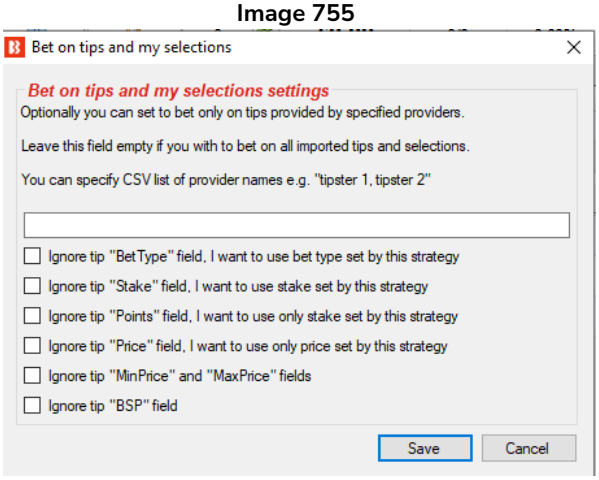
This rule allows betting only on imported selections or tips, which can be user generated or imported.

Image 754 Bet on all imported tips rule

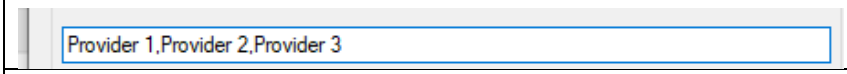


The bet on imported selections/tips rule gets its tips from the Manage tips form. These have been exported as a My Selections set, imported from a file or downloaded from a URL.

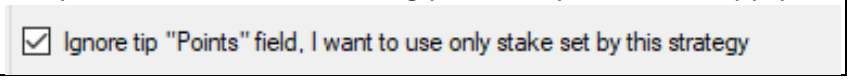
Image 755



This **provider name** field allows the tipster or selection set name to be specified. If you leave this field blank, it will bet on all tips that are in the Manage Tips form. This is useful if you want to apply different settings such as staking plans to different tip sets. Each provider name must be separated by a comma. **Provider names are case sensitive.**



These **ignore field settings** allow the user to tell the strategy to ignore some of the data fields imported with the tips. For example, the provider may specify the points to be bet with, but you have a different staking plan that you want to apply.



Next, let's look at the 3 main ways we can import tip sets.

1. Use selection sets that you have created yourself in the markets screen and exported as "My Selections".

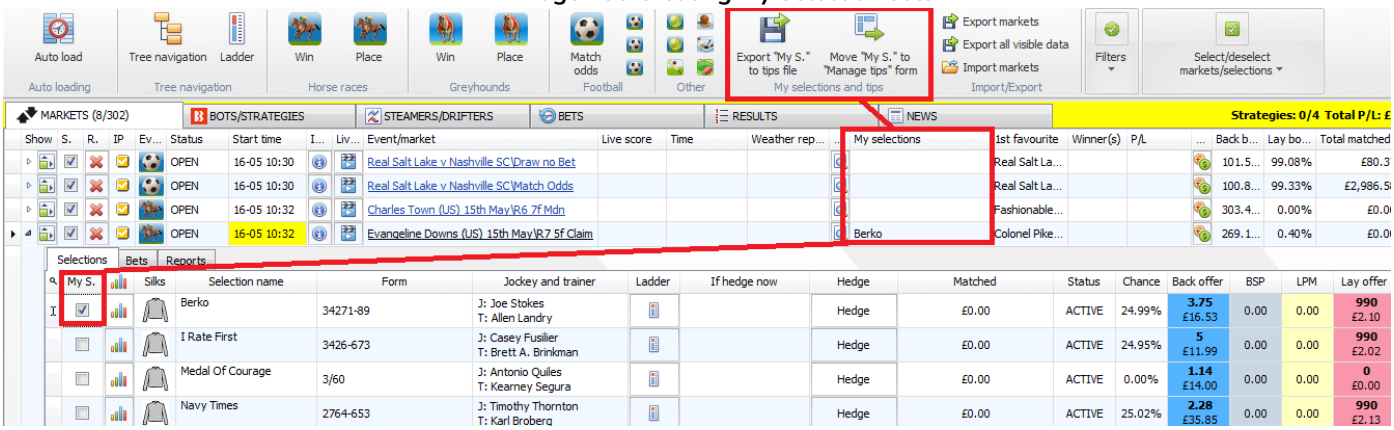
2. Manually import a selection set as a Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV file.

3. Automatically import tips from a 3rd party such as Betaminic, Proform, Predictology or any other 3rd party that can provide a URL with Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV data.

1. Use selection sets that you have created yourself in the markets screen and exported as "My Selections".

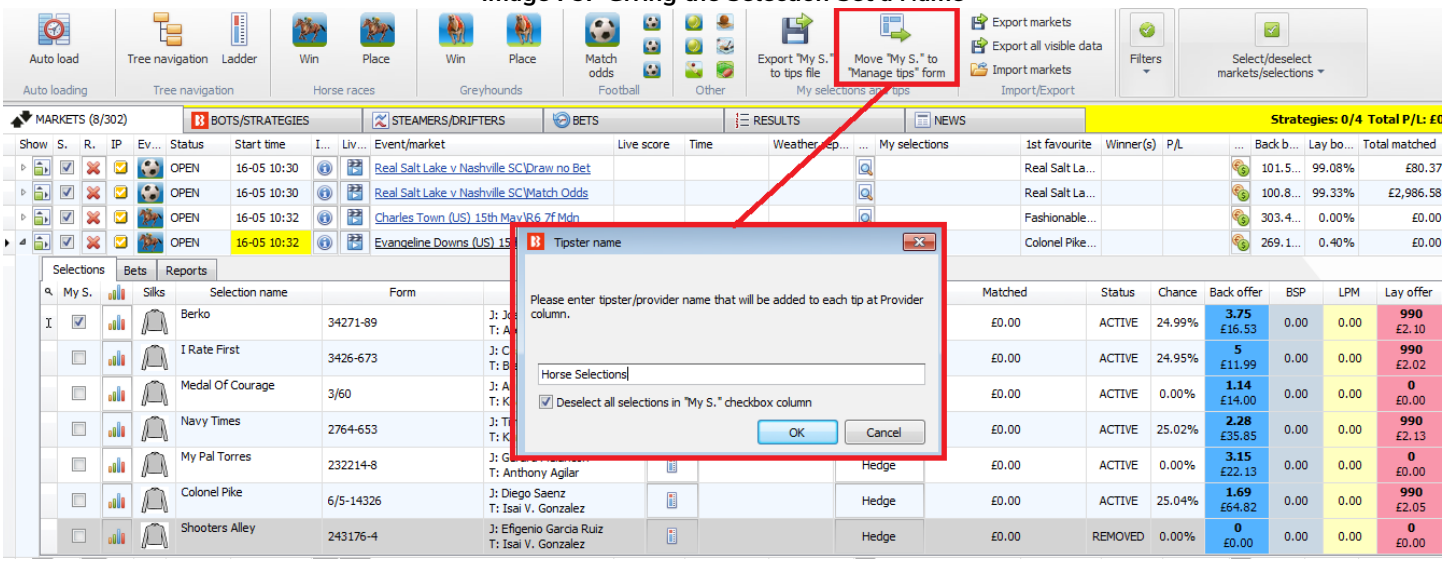
This function is useful if you want to apply a variety of different bot strategies to different selection sets. For example, football bets, horse racing bets, greyhounds and so on.

Image 756 Creating My Selection sets



In the markets tab, in the selections grid view, you can check the “My. S” box next to each selection that you want to include in the set. It will then appear in the “My selections” column on the Markets grid view. Then, you have the option to export those to a file or to move them to the “Manage tips” form.

Image 757 Giving the Selection Set a Name



If we click on the **Move “My. S.” to “Manage tips” form** button, we will be prompted to enter a name. This becomes the Provider name in the Manage Tips form. This is also the name you will need to specify in the “Bet on imported tips” provider name field if you want to specify a strategy to bet on these selections.

It is a good idea to leave the Deselect all selections in “My S.” checkbox column checked so that you do not have to manually deselect items before creating your next set.

Image 758 The Manage tips form

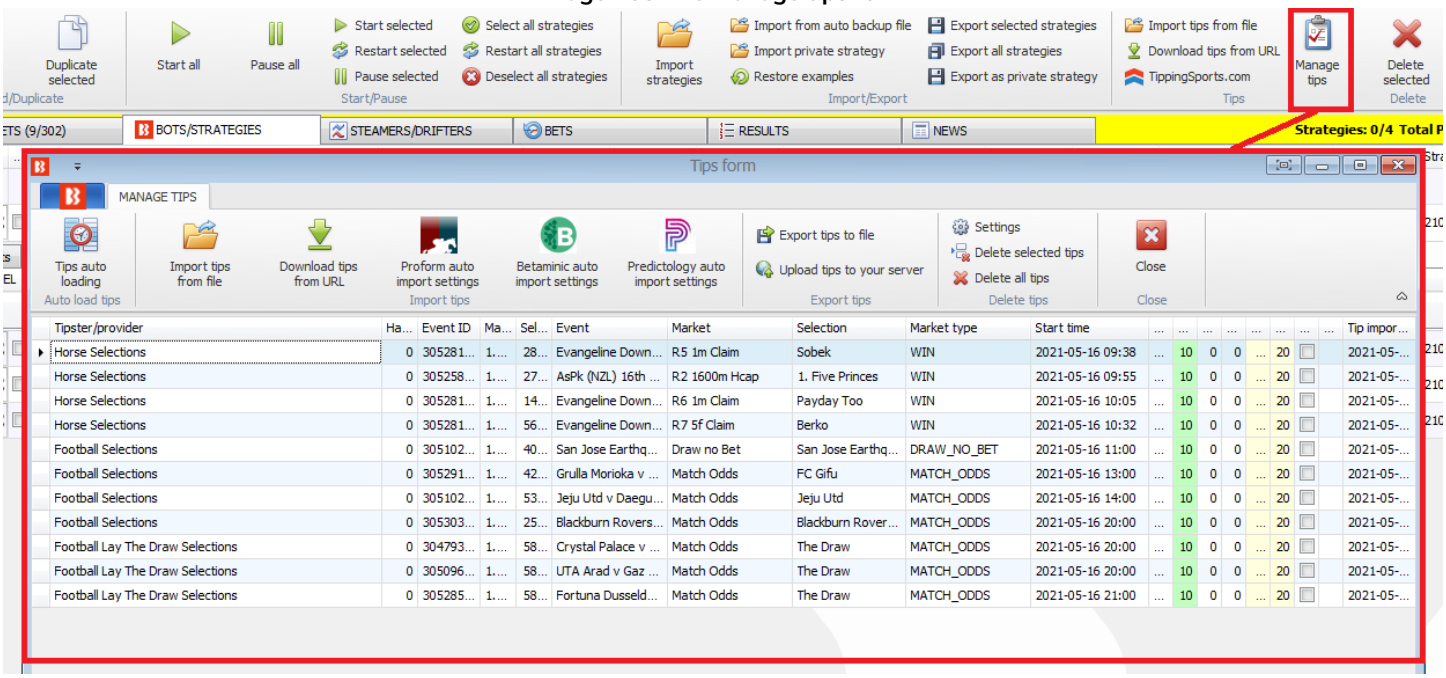
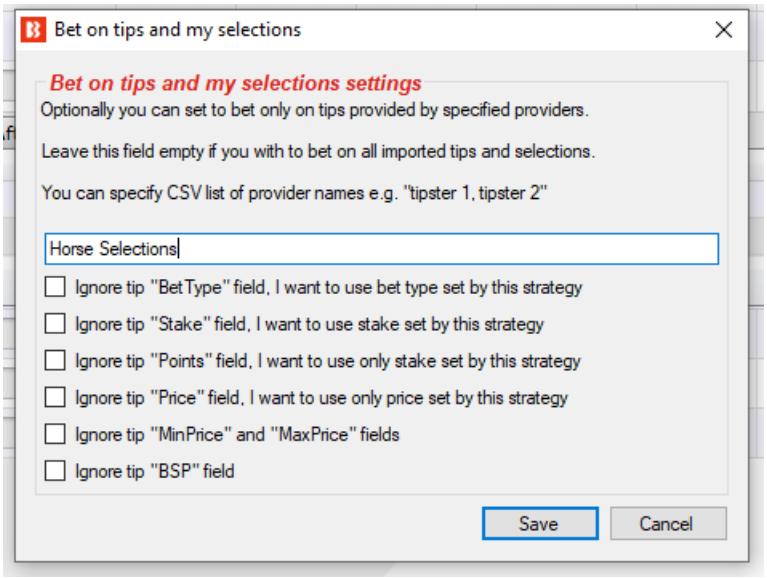


Image 759 Specifying the Provider/Tipster



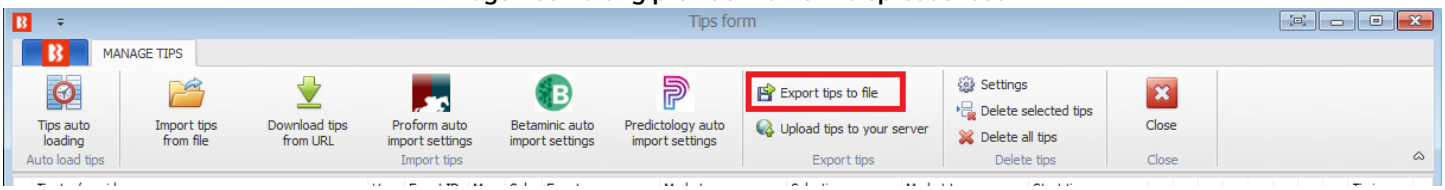
After we have created and moved a few "My S." sets of selections, we can see those by clicking on the Manage tips button in the Bots/Strategies tab. We can then create strategies that only bet on the Horse Selections, by going to the Bet on tips and my selections rule in a strategy, and we add "Horse Selections" to the provider field. If the provider field is left blank, it will bet on all selections in the Manage tips form.

IMPORTANT NOTE: 1 tip = 1 bet

It is very important to be aware that each tip/selection can only be bet on once. If you wanted two strategies to bet on the Horse Selections, you would need to save the selections twice with 2 different provider names (i.e. Horse Selections and Horse Sections 2) or to Export tips to file and rename the selection set there by copying/pasting the original set and changing the 2nd version's name. (See below.) Alternatively you would have to set up one of the strategies as a base strategy betting on the actual imported tips, and then set up the other as a triggered strategy that bets when the first strategy has bets by using the "Only if specified strategy has bets on the same selection" condition.

Click on Export tips to file

Image 760 Editing provider name in a spreadsheet



Edit in a spreadsheet. (Note: Excel sometimes converts the MarketIDs to number format and cuts off the ending zeroes. To avoid this, do not open the file directly with Excel, but instead, after exporting from the Bf Bot Manager, import it into a fresh spreadsheet "from text" and specifically tell Excel to import the columns "as text". This can avoid MarketID errors when reloading those tips into the Bf Bot Manager.)

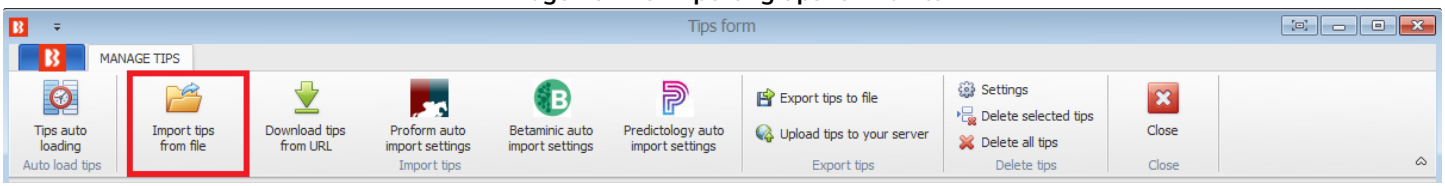
Image 761 Export to spreadsheet

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
1	Provider	Handicap	SelectionI	MarketId	EventId	SelectionI	MarketNa	EventNam	MarketTy	StartTime	BetType	Size	Points	Price	MinPrice	MaxPrice	BSP
2	horse selections	0	28168059	1.183426	30528182	Sobek	R5 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 00:38	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
3	horse selections	0	27366585	1.183396	30525894	1. Five Pri	R2 1600m	AsPk (NZL	WIN	16/05/2021 00:55	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
4	horse selections	0	14752984	1.183426	30528182	Payday To	R6 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:05	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
5	horse selections	0	5659220	1.183426	30528182	Berko	R7 5f Clair	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:32	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
6	football selections	0	408102	1.183215	30510231	San Jose E	Draw no B	San Jose E	DRAW_NC	16/05/2021 02:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
7	football selections	0	4270387	1.183455	30529106	FC Gifu	Match Odi	Grulla Mo	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 04:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
8	football selections	0	5342583	1.183222	30510203	Jeju Utd	Match Odi	Jeju Utd v	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 05:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
9	football selections	0	25556728	1.183468	30530348	Blackburn	Match Odi	Blackburn	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 11:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
10	football lay the draw selections	0	58805	1.182874	30479365	The Draw	Match Odi	Crystal Pa	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 11:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
11	football lay the draw selections	0	58805	1.183207	30509674	The Draw	Match Odi	UTA Arad	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 11:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
12	football lay the draw selections	0	58805	1.183464	30528545	The Draw	Match Odi	Fortuna D	MATCH_O	16/05/2021 12:00	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
13	horse selections 2	0	28168059	1.183426	30528182	Sobek	R5 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 00:38	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
14	horse selections 2	0	27366585	1.183396	30525894	1. Five Pri	R2 1600m	AsPk (NZL	WIN	16/05/2021 00:55	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
15	horse selections 2	0	14752984	1.183426	30528182	Payday To	R6 1m Clai	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:05	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0
16	horse selections 2	0	5659220	1.183426	30528182	Berko	R7 5f Clair	Evangelin	WIN	16/05/2021 01:32	UNKNOW	10	0	0	1.01	20	0

Note that you must save it in CSV format.

Click on Import tips from file. (Note: Excel locks files that are currently open. Before importing a CSV file back into the Bf Bot Manager software, it will need to be closed in Excel. Otherwise the bot will not be able to read the file and import the tips.)

Image 762 Re-importing tips form a file



When you import the file, you will see the two sets of tips with different names.

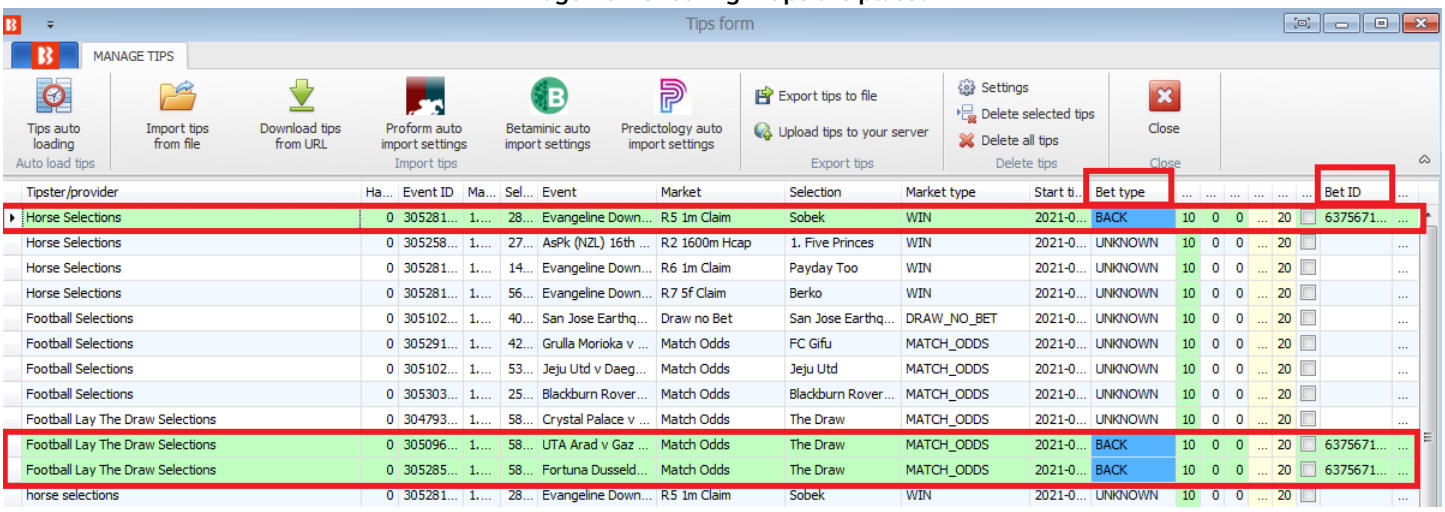
Image 763

Only the same tips with different tipster/provider names can be imported. If a duplicate tip is imported, the software will not accept it and a second instance of the same tip will not appear in the "Manage Tips" form.

Know when tips have been bet on

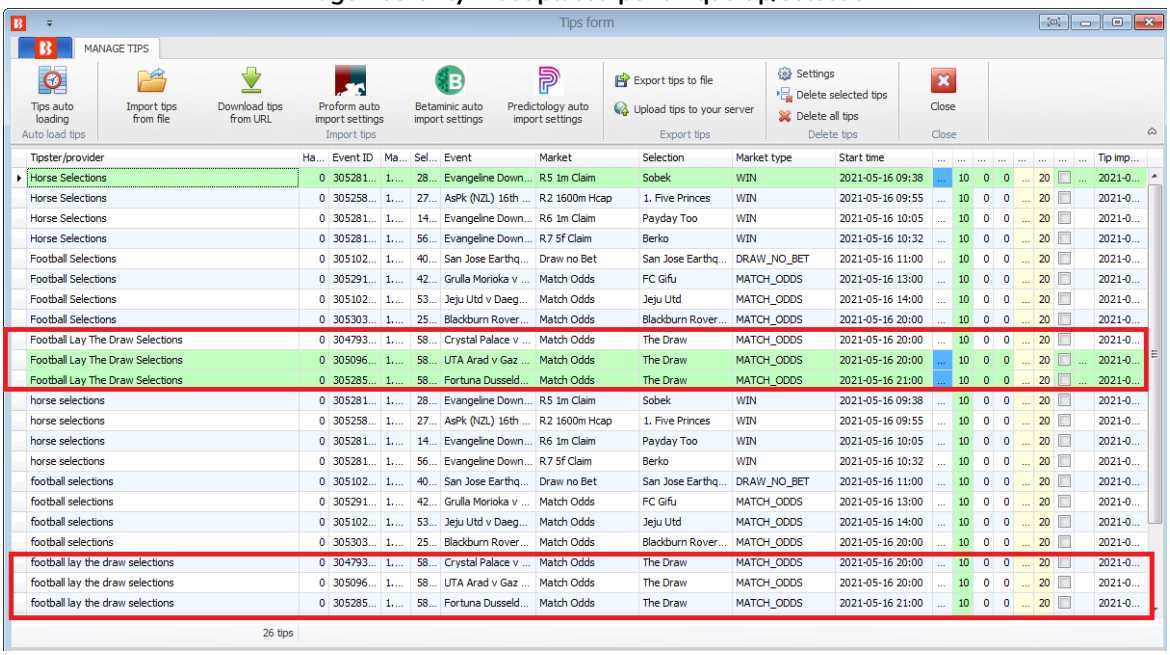
When a tip has had a bet placed on it, the background will change to green and it will get a bet ID. It will also update the bet type if it was previously unknown.

Image 764 Checking if tips are placed



As stated previously, only 1 bet will be placed per tip, so even if the same tip appears twice with the same provider name, only 1 of those tips will be bet on. (For example. When re-importing tips from a file, some duplicate tips may appear, but will only be bet on once.)

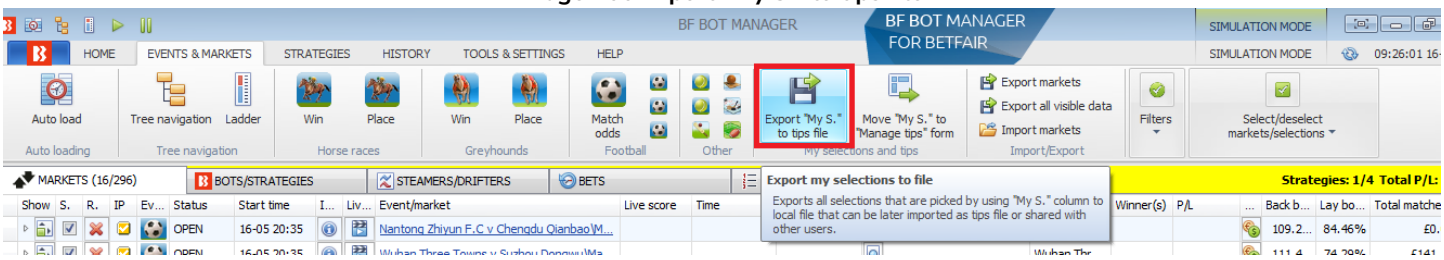
Image 765 Only 1 bet placed per unique tip/selection



2. Manually import a selection set as a Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV file.

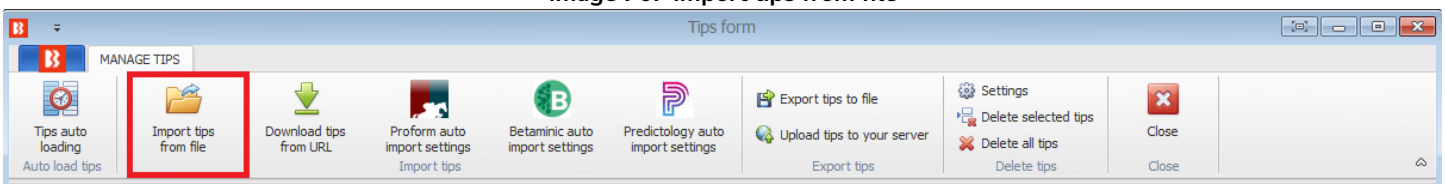
It is also possible to export selections directly from the Markets tab to a file for editing there. That file can also be shared with other BF Bot Manager users or imported into another instance of a Bf Bot Manager if you are running multiple instances. Similarly, you can import tip files received from other users.

Image 766 Export "My S." to tips file.



The file can then be imported via the Manage Tips form

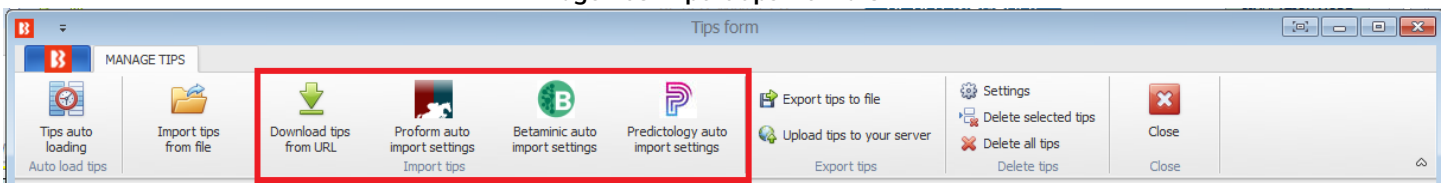
Image 767 Import tips from file



3. Automatically import tips from a 3rd party such as Betaminic, Proform, Predictology or any other 3rd party that can provide a URL with Bf Bot Manager compatible formatted CSV data.

Bf Bot Manager also has the function to import tips directly from a 3rd party.

Image 768 Import tips from a URL



For Betaminic and Predictology. You need to enter the URL they provide you with into the auto import settings form. For more information on those services, please refer to their websites.

Image 769 Import tips from Betaminic auto import settings

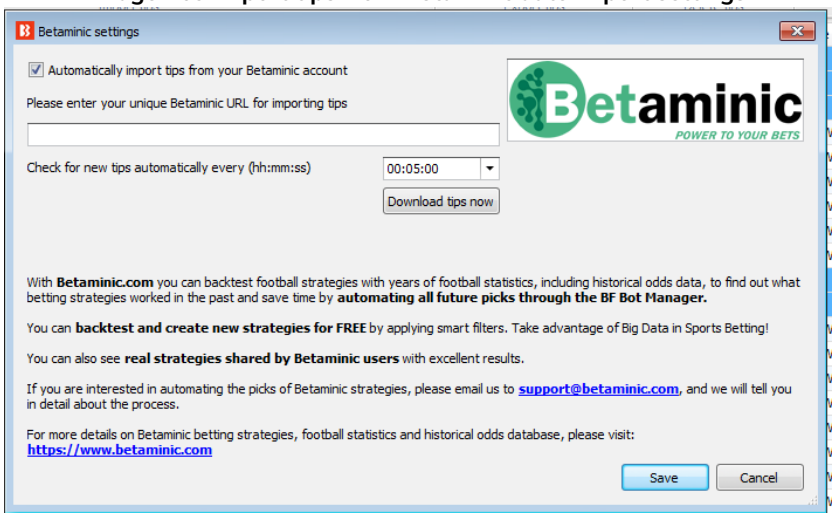
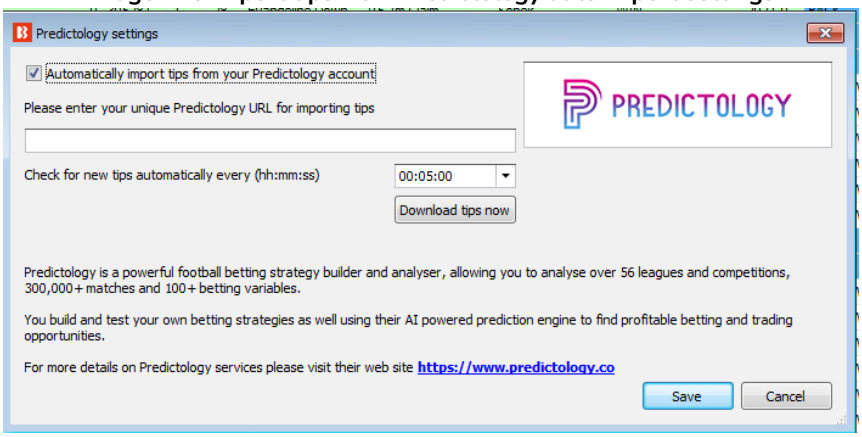


Image 770 Import tips from Predictology auto import settings



For the Proform tips, there is no URL. You need to have their software running on your computer.

Image 771 Import tips from Proform auto import settings

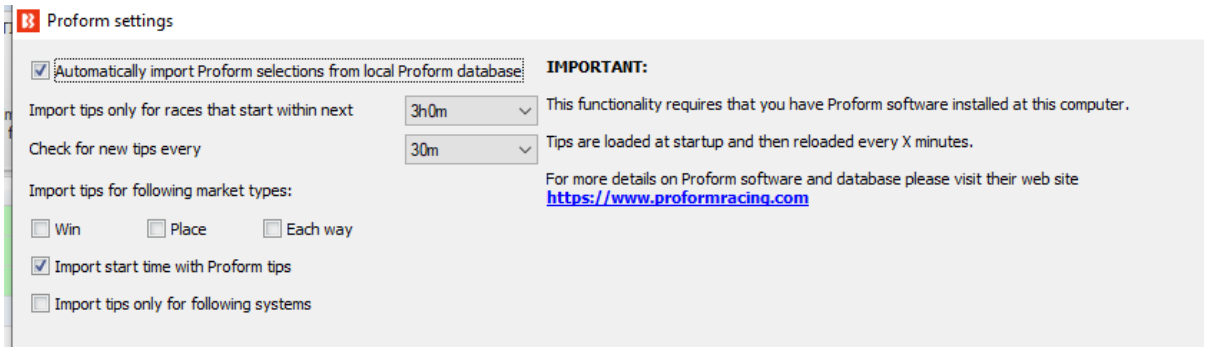
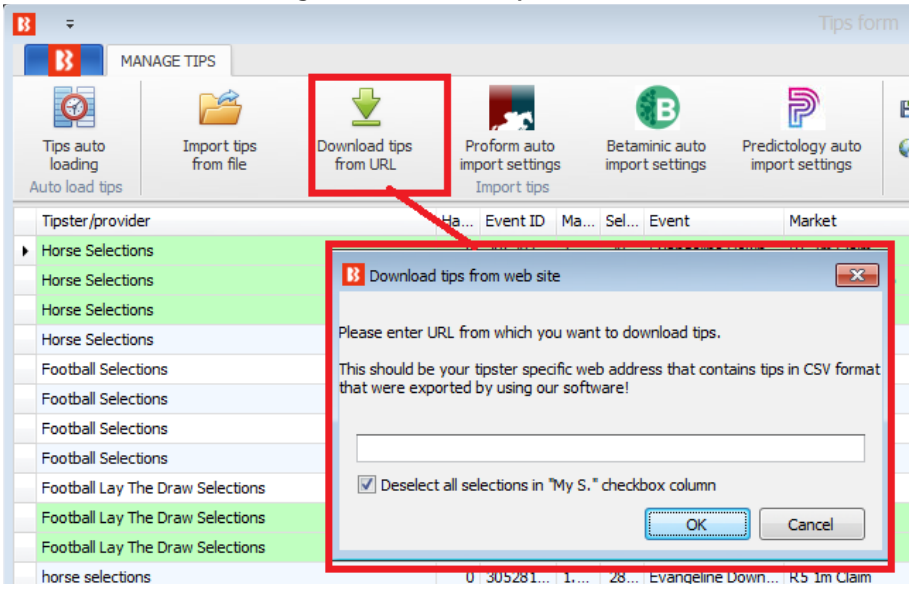


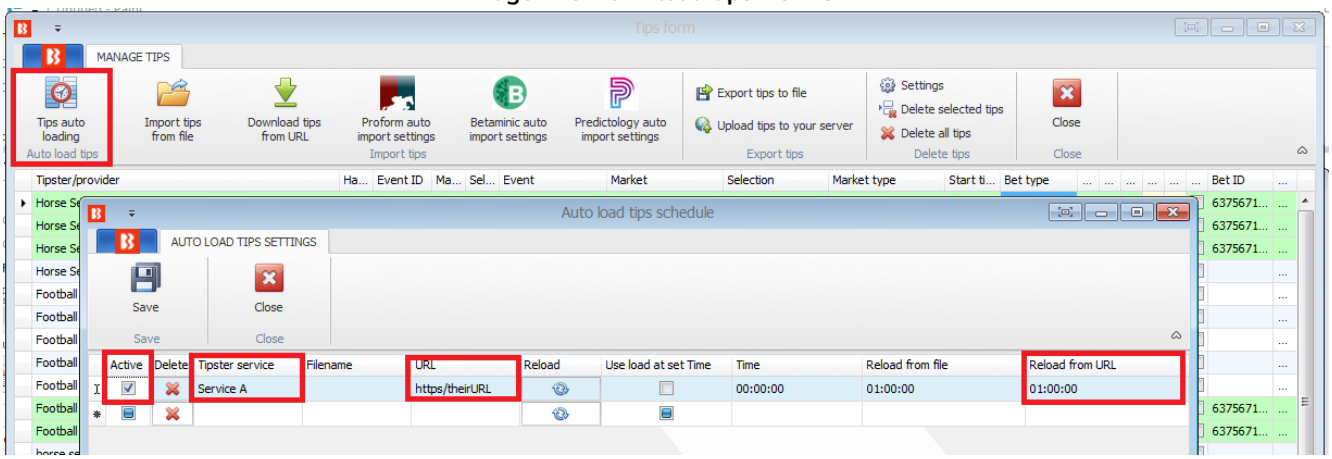
Image 772 Download tips from URL



You can also download tips from a website if they offer their tips in a CSV format that were exported by using the Bf Bot Manager software. This can also be automated by using the Tips auto loading feature.

Tips auto loading from a URL

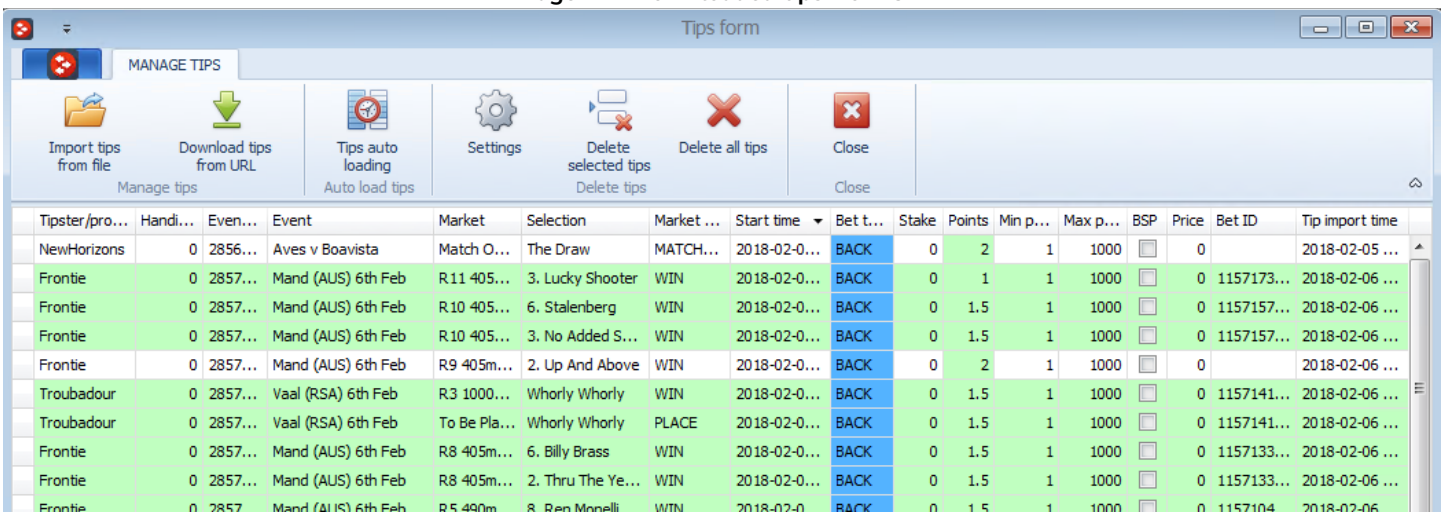
Image 773 Download tips from URL



You can set the software to auto import tips from a URL (such as from www.tippingsports.com) by clicking on the active checkbox, entering a Tipster service name (anything for your reference is fine) and entering the URL in the URL field. You can also set how often you want the tips imported. The default setting is every hour.

You can import tips from TippingSports by using your unique link that is available at your profile page. This unique link will contain tips from the tipsters that you decide to follow or subscribe to and the tips will be in a format that Bf Bot Manager V3 supports. In this case the markets will be loaded automatically as the TippingSports unique link provides Betfair market IDs with tips.

Image 774 Downloaded tips from URL



Once you have the tips loaded properly to the tips form you can set the strategy to bet on those tips. This can be done by using the example strategy that comes with the software and it is already set up to bet on all imported tips. It is best that you duplicate that example strategy and then modify it to your own needs.

The main rule in the strategy is "Staking->Bet on imported selections/tips" rule. This rule is the one that will make your strategy bet only on imported tips. All other rules in your strategy still must also be satisfied before bets can be placed e.g. Back/Lay Ratio, Overrounds, Time to bet, Price ranges etc.

Your strategy should in most cases have the "Bet on imported tips" rule at the top of rules in the Staking tab, so that it executes first in the Staking tab (Use up/down arrows to move it to first place). The only exceptions are "Level/initial stake" and "Percent of betting bank" staking that should be first set in the Staking tab.

The tips can contain bet type, price, price range, stake, points data that will be used by your strategy betting on those tips. For example, if you specify a min and max price range with your tips, then the strategy will automatically check if the price at which will place bet is within this tip min/max price range. In the same way, if you set the bet type with your tips then the strategy will use that bet type when placing bets.

Usually tipsters provide a number of "points" with their tips. This is used to tell you how much to stake on that tip, if they are confident that the tip will win, then they stake more points (e.g. 2.0) and if it is risky tip then they stake less (e.g. 0.25). The number of points is multiplied by the stake that you set in the Staking tab. For example, if you set a "Level/initial stake" of £10 in the Staking tab and the imported tip has 5 points, then the actual stake size of your bet will be 5 x £10 = £50!

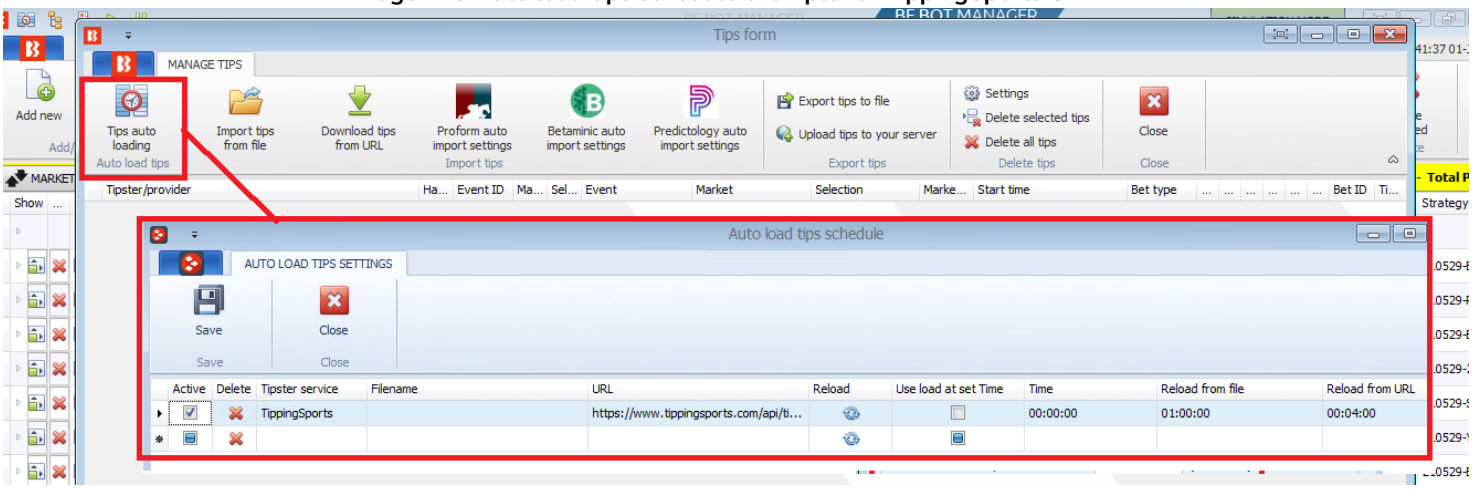
It is always best that you test your strategy in simulation mode to ensure you have set it all properly.

If your tips file contains a "Provider" column, which is usually set to a tipster name, then you can create a separate strategy for each tipster and set different rules, stakes, price ranges etc. In that case, in the "Bet on imported selections/tips" rule you can specify the provider (tipster) name that is supplied with your tips and the strategy will bet only on tips from that provider/tipster.

Only 1 bet can be placed for each imported tip. If you plan on having more than one strategy that will bet on the same tips then you should create tips with different provider names for each strategy.

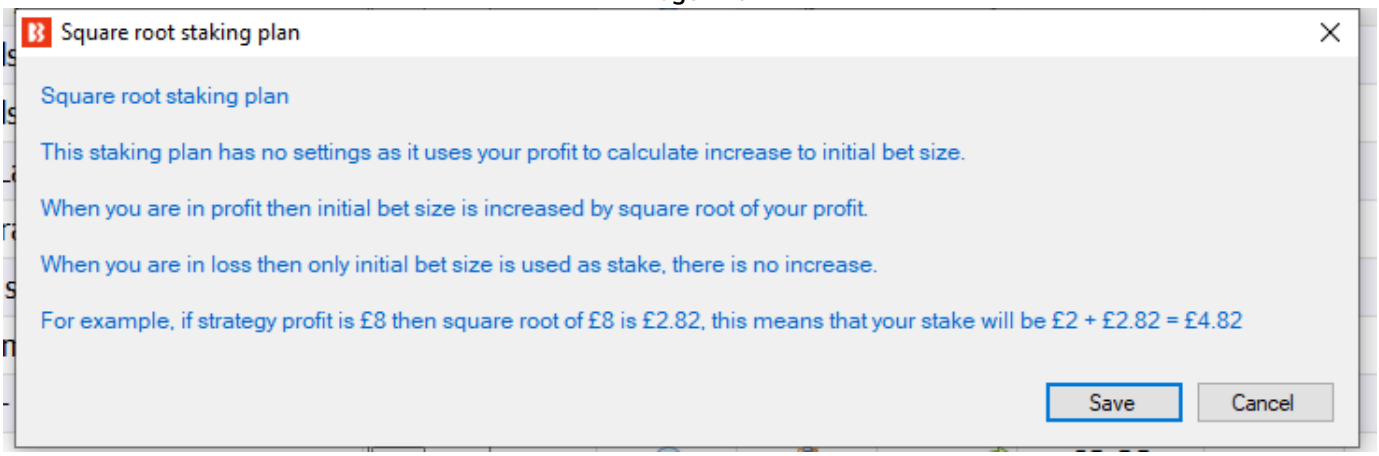
In the "Tips auto loading" form you can set the automatic loading of tips e.g. every few minutes/hours. This will allow you to leave the bot working 24/7 and betting on imported tips without any interaction from you. Once you have set it up, you will have a fully automated solution that can work for days, betting on your tips or tips from your tipsters.

Image 775 Auto load tips schedule example for TippingSports URL



14.4.8 Square root

Image 776



The Square Root Staking plan increases your stake by the square root of your strategy profit. If the strategy is in a loss then there is no increase and only the initial stake is used.

This a way to conservatively increase your stakes when you are in profit, but not to increase stakes when at a loss.

14.4.9 Overall P/L Parlay

The Parlay staking plan allows you to let a % of profits ride onto the next bet.

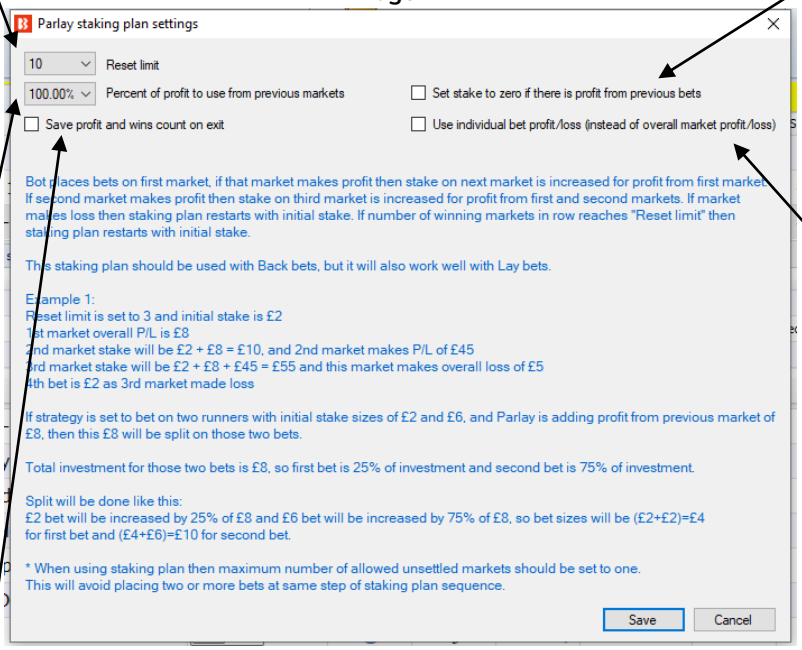
For example in the image below, if Bet 1 wins, 100% of its profit will be added to the next bet. If Bet 2 wins, 100% of that profit will also be added to Bet 3. If Bet 3 loses, then the staking plan restarts from the beginning. You can edit the amount of profit to add on, the number of wins to allow before resetting or even set the plan to only bet with winnings after the first bet.

The **Reset Limit** tells the strategy when to restart the profit count. With a setting of "10" it will reset the profit count to zero after 10 winning bets.

The **Percent of profit to use from previous markets** tells the strategy how much of your profits you want to let ride on the next market. So a setting of "100%" means all profits will be added to the next stake.

Save profit and wins count on exit will save the current status of the staking plan when the software closes.

Image 777



Set stake to zero if there is profit from previous bets tells the strategy to only let the profits ride onto the next bet and not to add any new stakes. This is the equivalent of only betting with your winnings.

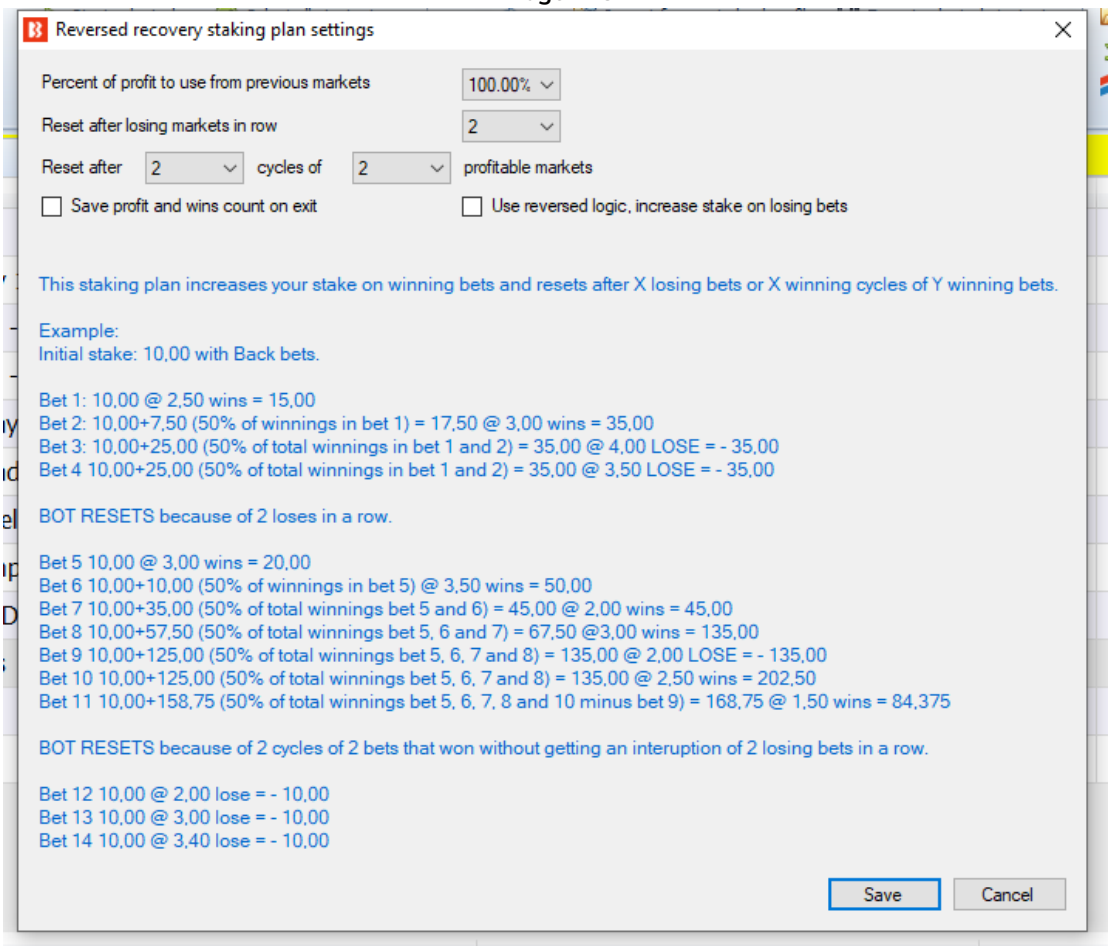
Use individual pot profit/loss (instead of overall market profit/loss) can also be set.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

14.4.10 Reversed recovery staking plan

Similar to Overall P/L Parlay, this staking plan uses profit from your previous market and invests it into the next bets. But this staking plan offers different reset limits and betting cycle options.

Image 778



You can set what percent of profit to use from previous markets.

You can set after X winning or losing cycles, the staking plan restarts.

You can set to reset after X number of cycles of X number of profitable markets.

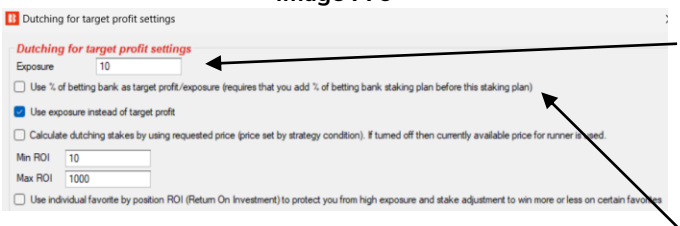
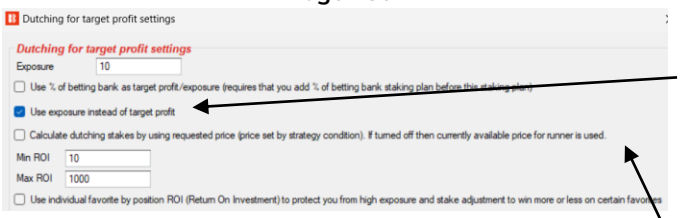
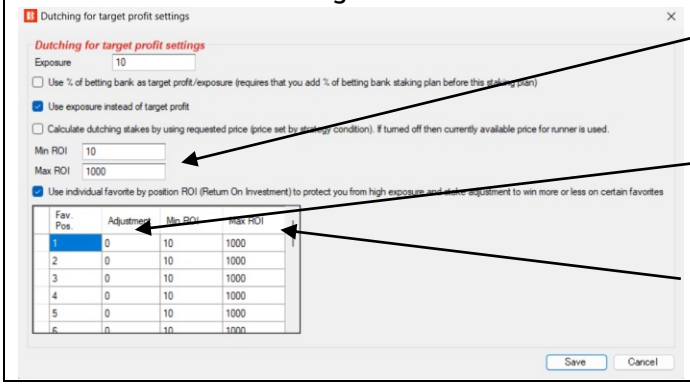
Optionally you can set this staking plan to use reversed logic, to increase stake on losing bets. (If you do this, be careful because stakes will increase during losing runs.)

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

14.4.11 Dutching for target profit (Back bets)

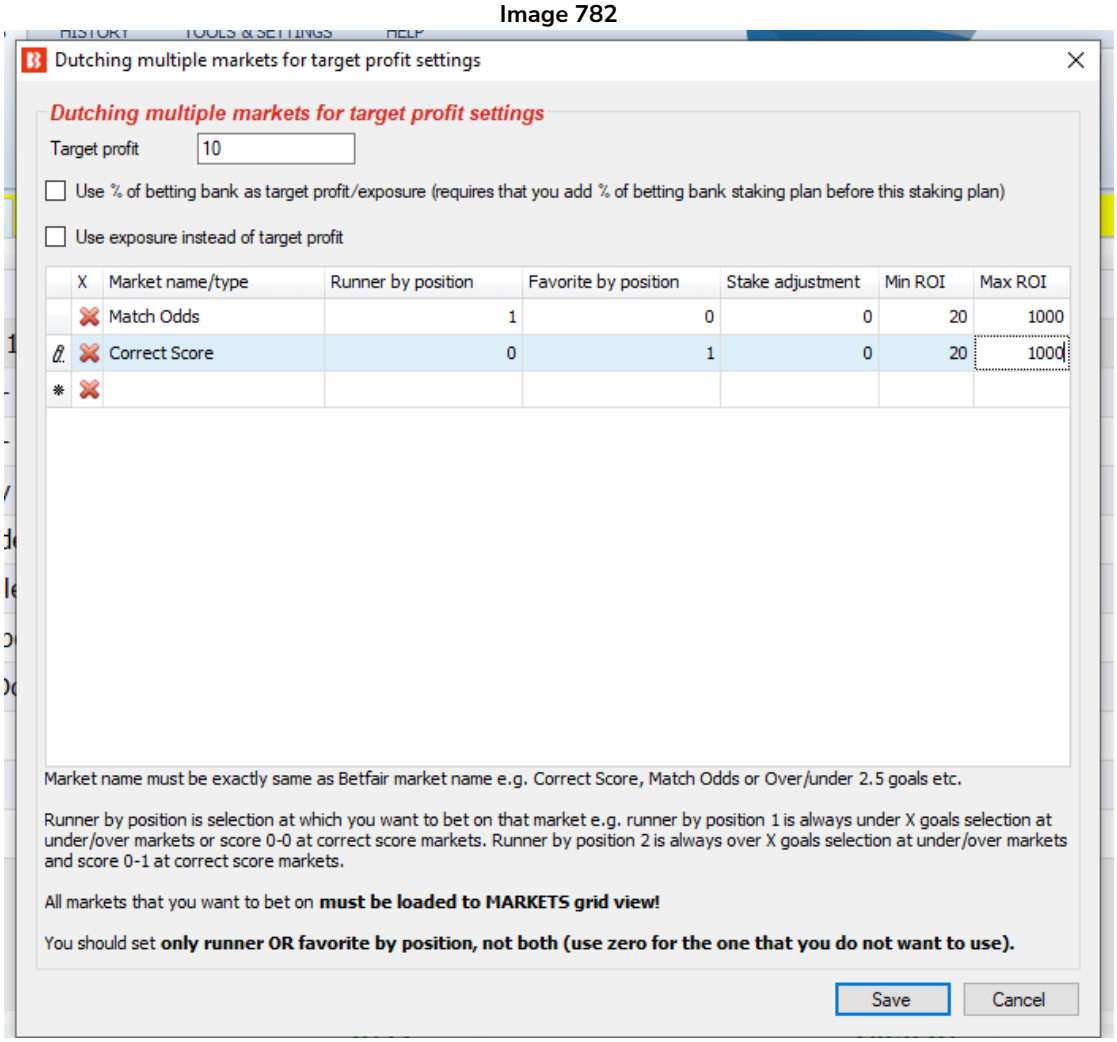
Dutching for target profit can only be used when placing Back bets. The stake is calculated for selections that have a Back bet type and Price set so that if just one of those selections wins, we will win our **target profit**. If they all lose, then we lose all the money.

Note: If you want the strategy to **only** bet if it has 2 or more qualifying selections in this **one market,** then you need to add the rule "**Min/Max number of qualifying selections**."
Note: If you want the strategy to only bet if it has 2 or more qualifying selections over **multiple markets**, then you need to use the "**Dutching over multiple markets for target profit (Back bets)"** staking rule instead of this single market "Dutching for target profit (Back bets)" rule. (In addition to the above "Min/Max number of qualifying selections" rule.)

Image 779  	In this image, it will place back bets on the selections to win a **target profit** of 10 GBP. If you want the strategy to dutch 2 or more selections so that if any of them win you win the target profit, you can use this rule. Optionally instead of setting a fixed target profit (or exposure) you can tick option to use a **percent of betting bank** as the target profit (or exposure). To make this work you need first to add a "Percent of betting bank" staking plan rule BEFORE this dutching rule in the staking tab.
Image 780  	If the option "**Use exposure instead of target profit**" is ticked then total Back stake on those selections will become the **total exposure of the selections**. This is much safer way of betting as we limit the maximum amount of money that we can lose if none of our selections wins. In some cases you might import prices with tips or want to **calculate dutching bet sizes at different prices than the one currently available on the market.** To do that you just need to tick the option to calculate dutching stakes by using requested price.
Image 781  	You can set a **general minimum and maximum ROI** for the bet here. Or it is possible to set **adjustments to the target profit for each favourite position**. It is also possible to set a **minimum and maximum Return On Investment** (ROI).

14.4.12 Dutching over multiple markets for target profit (Back bets)

Image 782



The previous staking rule allowed Dutching for target profit (Back bets) with multiple selections in ONE market. This staking rule allows Dutching for target profit with multiple selections with MULTIPLE markets. Dutching means that if just one of your selections wins, you win the target profit. If all selections lose, then all of the stakes are lost.

For example, as in the above image, you could tell the bot to place bets on the home team (Runner by position 1) in the Match Odds market and the current favourite (Favourite by position 1) correct score so that if either selection wins, the target profit will be won. If this is used pre-match the favourite correct score might be 1-0 or 2-1, but if the strategy is used in-play, the favourite correct score would most likely (but not always) be the current score.

A checkbox can be ticking so that the target profit becomes a **target percentage of the betting bank** instead of an absolute figure. In that case, a Percent of betting bank staking rule would need to be added BEFORE this dutching rule in the list of staking rules.

You can also change the target figure to a **target exposure** by ticking the "Use exposure instead of target

profit" checkbox. This means that the maximum amount risked would be the number in the target profit box at the top of the rule.

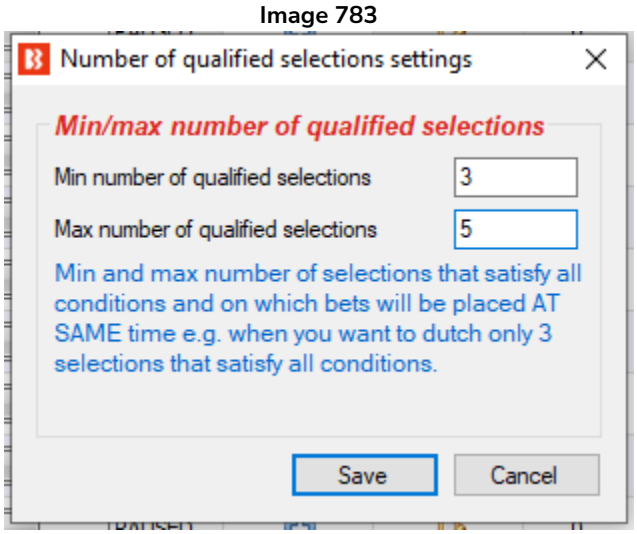
Similar to the standard dutching staking plan rule, you can a stake adjustment for each market, and a min and max return on investment (ROI).
A **stake adjustment** of -100 would mean that you want to get zero profit/loss if **that selection** wins. That could in effect turn one of the selections into a break-even saver selection. This can be useful when ROI is very low, such as when dutching on mirror markets, such as the home bet in Match Odds and the Double Chance X2 market of the same event.
A **Min ROI** of 20% means that if you risk 10 GBP in total on all dutching bets, and if that selection wins, you want to get at least 2 GBP (20% from 10 GBP). If it cannot get that Min ROI, it will not allow bets to be placed. A **Max ROI** actually limits your possible profit, so usually users set this to a high value e.g. 1000.

Important things to note here are:

1. **The names of the markets must be EXACTLY the same as the Betfair market name** in English**,** otherwise the strategy will not be able to find those markets.
2. **All the markets being bet on MUST be loaded** in the markets grid screen.
3. For each market, **only set it to bet on the Runner by position OR the Favourite by position**, not both. Use a zero in the field of the position you do not want to use.

14.4.13 Min/max number of qualified selections (ending)

Image 783

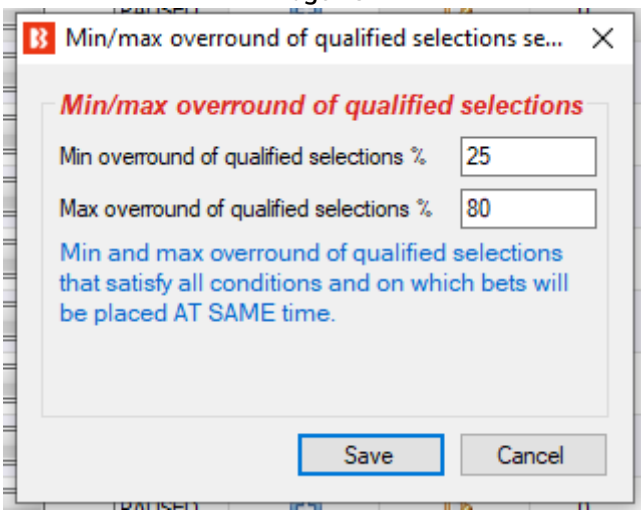


This rule tells the strategy to only place bets when X number of selections satisfy the strategy criteria.
For example, if you only want to place a bet when between 3-5 selections can be dutched, then the above image settings would work. This rule is checked last by the strategy before placing bets.

You can see this rule being used in the example strategy **Greyhounds – Dutching 2nd,3rd and 4th favorite**.

14.4.14 Min/max overround of qualified selection

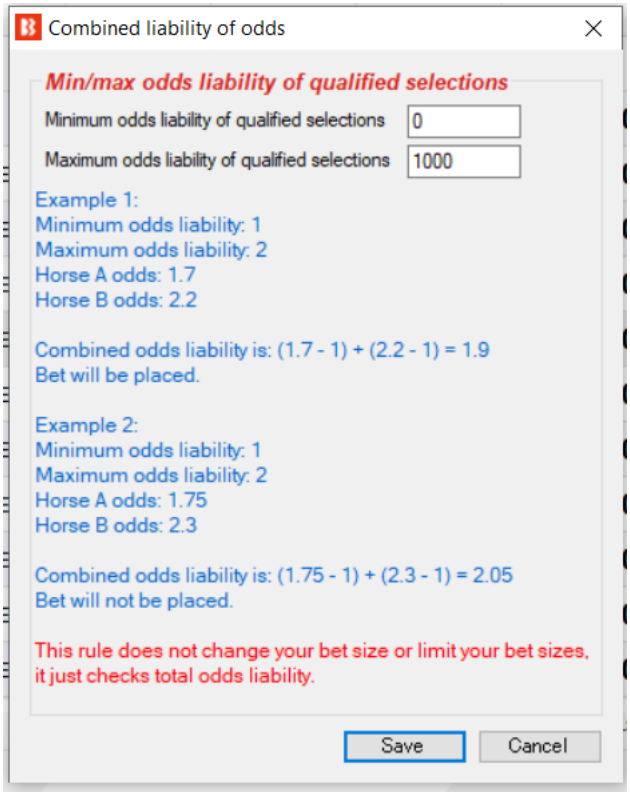
Image 784



This rule allows a minimum or maximum overround to be set for the prices of each of the qualifying selections.

14.4.15 Combined liability of odds

Image 785



This staking rule allows (or prevents) bets being placed if the combined liability of the odds is between a specified level. This is useful if your strategy is set up to bet on multiple runners, but you want to limit the combined odds.

For example, if you only want to bet if the odds liability is between 1-2, then if you have 2 selections of 1.7 and 2.2, betting will be allowed on these since their combined odds liability is 1.9.
(1.7-1) + (2.2 – 1) = 1.9

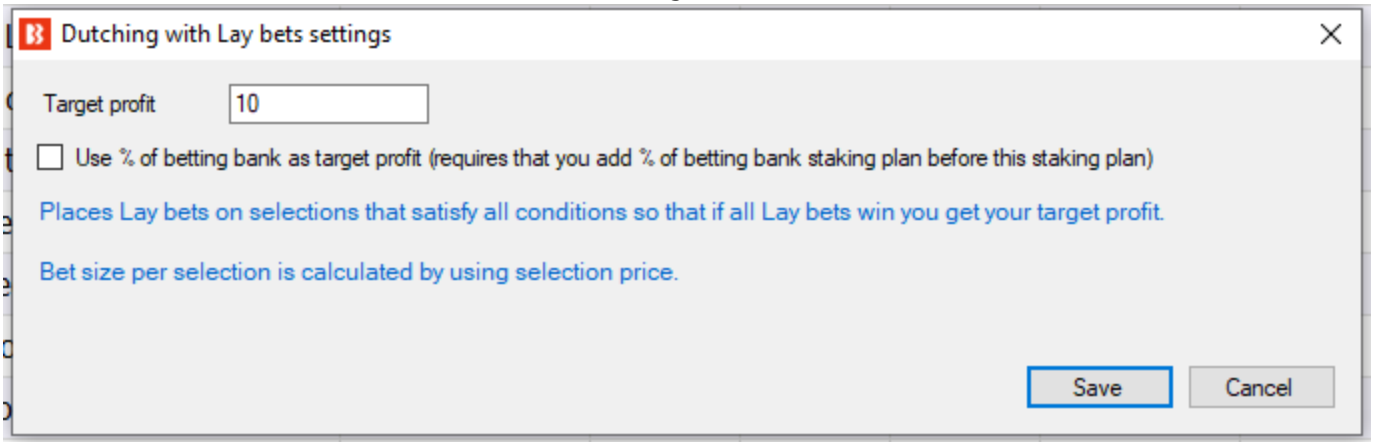
In another example, if you only want to bet if the odds liability is between 1-2, then if you have 2 selections of 1.75 and 2,3, betting will not be allowed on these since their combined odds liability is 2.05.
(1.75 – 1) + (2.3 – 1) = 2.05

It should be understood that this rule only ALLOWS or PREVENTS betting. It does not calculate or adjust stake sizes or limits.

This rule can be used with other rules such as 14.4.11 Dutching for target profit (Back bets), 14.4.12 Dutching over multiple markets for target profit (Back bets) 14.4.13 Min/max number of qualified selections (ending) 14.4.14Min/max overround of qualified selection, to create customized multiple bets with specified overall odds liabilities.

14.4.16 Dutching for target profit (Lay bets)

Image 786



This rule is the lay version of the Dutching for target profit (back bets) rule.

In the case of this rule, it will place bets to dutch multiple selections so that if all of the lay bets win, the target profit is achieved, but if all the lay bets lose, then all of the liability is lost. If some of the lay bets lose, then the full target profit is not reached. (For example, if you lay 3 horses and all 3 win, you will lose the entire liability. If all 3 horses lose, then you achieve the target profit. If some of the horses win and some of the horses lose you will have profit or loss depending on the odds of the horses that won and lost.)

Note that this rule works differently to the Dutching for target profit (back bets) rule because in the back bets version, only ONE selection needs to win to get the target profit, but with the lay version ALL bets need to win to get the target profit. This is a very big difference, so please understand how it works.

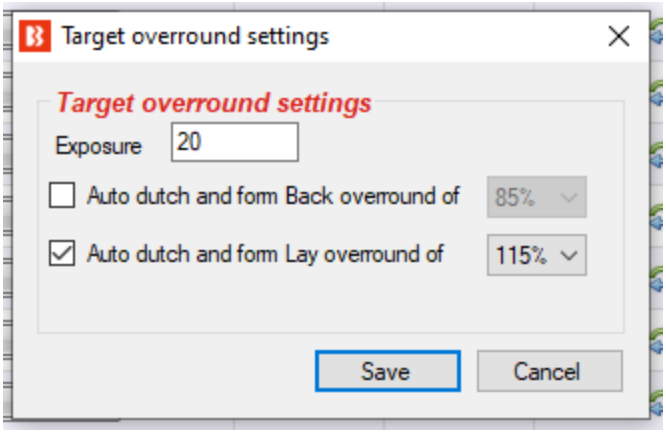
This rule has no option for maximum liability, so if odds are low, then liability can become quite high. It is highly recommended that you run strategies with this rule in simulation mode first until you are sure it works as you expect it to.

By ticking the "Use % of betting bank" checkbox, it tells the strategy to lay to win a target profit that is a percentage of the betting bank and not an absolute value. This needs a Percent of betting bank rule added to the strategy BEFORE this dutching rule in the order of rules in the staking tab.

Warning: The Dutching for target profit (lay bets) staking plan has variable liabilities. Its liabilities increase for lower odds. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.17 Target overround

Image 787



This staking rule allows you to offer lay bets or place back bets on all selections in a market to the target overround set. This allows you to be the bookmaker with lay bets and set the margin of profit to win if **all bets are matched**.

This condition should only be used when placing bets on ALL selections in a market. It calculates the stake and price values so that prices form your specified overround. If all bets get matched then you can get a sure profit, but if one or more of the bets are not matched then you can get big losses.

Warning: This condition cannot be simulated properly as it is designed to place unmatched bets on all selections in a market, so simulation mode is unrealistic as this would result in different offers on real markets because of virtual prices. So you can only really test this in real mode with small stakes.

Simulation mode is realistic when your strategy is set to place bets at currently available market prices and while your bet sizes remain small. If your bet size is large (e.g. £200 or more) then simulation mode is not realistic as your bets could be unmatched in real mode while in simulation mode they would be matched.

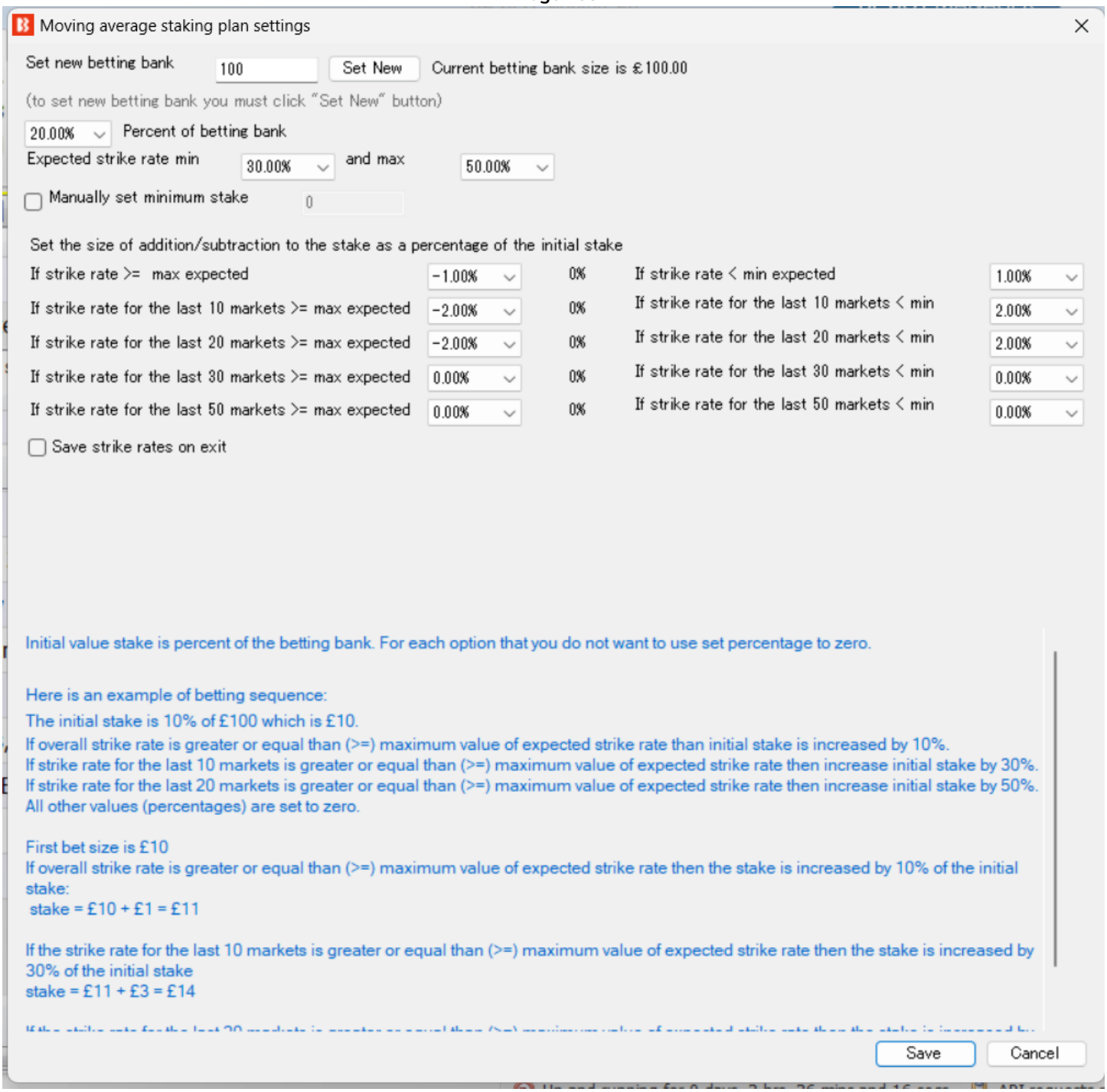
Simulation mode in Bf Bot Manager V3 (from version 3.1.7) is updated to support Unmatched, Lapsed, Voided and Start Price bets. Bets will be matched only if the requested price is available on the market.

Simulation is not realistic when:
- Using large stakes, as there might not be enough money to get your bet matched in real mode
- Dutching multiple runners, because in real mode prices would change on all runners as bets get placed and matched
- Forming target overround, as this would result in different offers on real markets because of virtual prices

14.4.18 Moving average staking plan

This staking plan lets you increase or decrease stakes as the strategy strike rate (win rate) changes in connection to the expected win rate minimum and maximum range.

Image 788



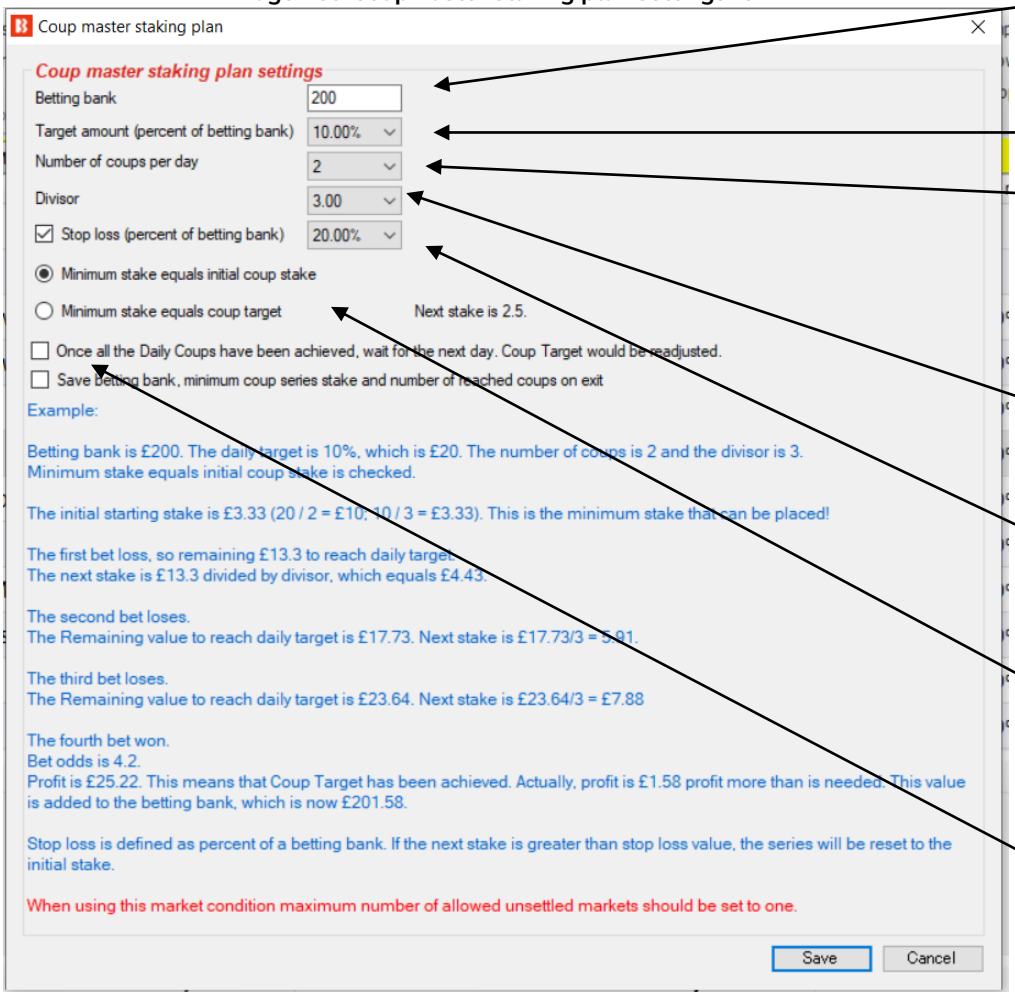
This staking plan is very useful if you have a consistent strategy with a predictable win rate. Then, when you are winning more than expected, you can reduce stakes to avoid betting on losers, and when you are losing more than expected, you can increase stakes in anticipation of a return to the trend line win rate.

Note that the percent changes are CUMMULATIVE and are added on to each other. For example, in the above image, the base stake is 20% of the £100 bank, so the stake will be £20. If the win rate is above the maximum expected win rate, the stake it is reduced by 1% of £20 (which is £0.20) to £19.80. If the strike rate for the last 10 bets is above the expected win rate, another 2% of the initial stake (which is £20 x 2% = £0.40) is taken off to leave a next stake of £19.20. If the win rate for the last 20 bets is still above the expected win rate, then another 2% is taken off reducing the stake to £18.80 (£20 - £0.20 - £0.40 - £0.40 = £19.80).

In the above settings, the stake is increased when the win rate is below the minimum expected win rate by 1% of the initial stake to 10.01%. If the strike rate for the last 10 bets is below the expected win rate, another 2% of the initial stake is added on to make a next stake of 10.03%. If the win rate for the last 20 bets is still below the expected win rate, then another 2% of the initial stake is added increasing the stake to 10.05%.

14.4.19 Coup master staking plan

Image 789 Coupmaster staking plan settings form



This sets the **starting betting bank.**

This sets the **Target amount** as a percentage of the betting bank.

This sets the **number of coups per day.** (How many bets the coup will be divided into.) i.e. 2 coups per day would split the stake into 2.

The **Divisor** is usually the average winning odds of your system if known.

This is a progressive recovery staking plan, so a **stop loss** is recommended.

The **minimum stake** options can be set to the current target or the initial target.

If we tick the "**Daily Coup**" **option**, then it will wait for the next day after each target is achieved before starting the next betting cycle.

The Coup Master aims to increase the betting bank by a set percentage each day (or each cycle of betting). This target is then broken down into smaller legs or "coups". Two coups are recommended but it is possible to set more. We also adjust the target based on the remaining target. Wins are deducted from the remaining target and losses are added to it. A minimum stake level is set as the same as the current coup target. (It can also be set as the current coup target) This avoids the stakes going too low when in profit and close to the daily target. Since this staking plan involves progressive recovery staking, a stop loss is also needed to stop stakes getting too high. The stop loss is calculated as a percentage of the betting bank. The target is also divided by a Divisor which is based on the betting systems average winning odds if known. This is to make sure that each bet has a chance of clearing the Coups. For this reason this staking method can become complicated because it relies on knowing your average winning odds. It also needs tracking carefully to know where you are in the coups and targets, thus automating the staking plan makes a lot of sense. The stake is the remaining target divided by the Divisor and then by the number of coups allowed per day, unless that number is lower than the Coup target in which case the coup target is the stake. The stake is basically calculated like this:

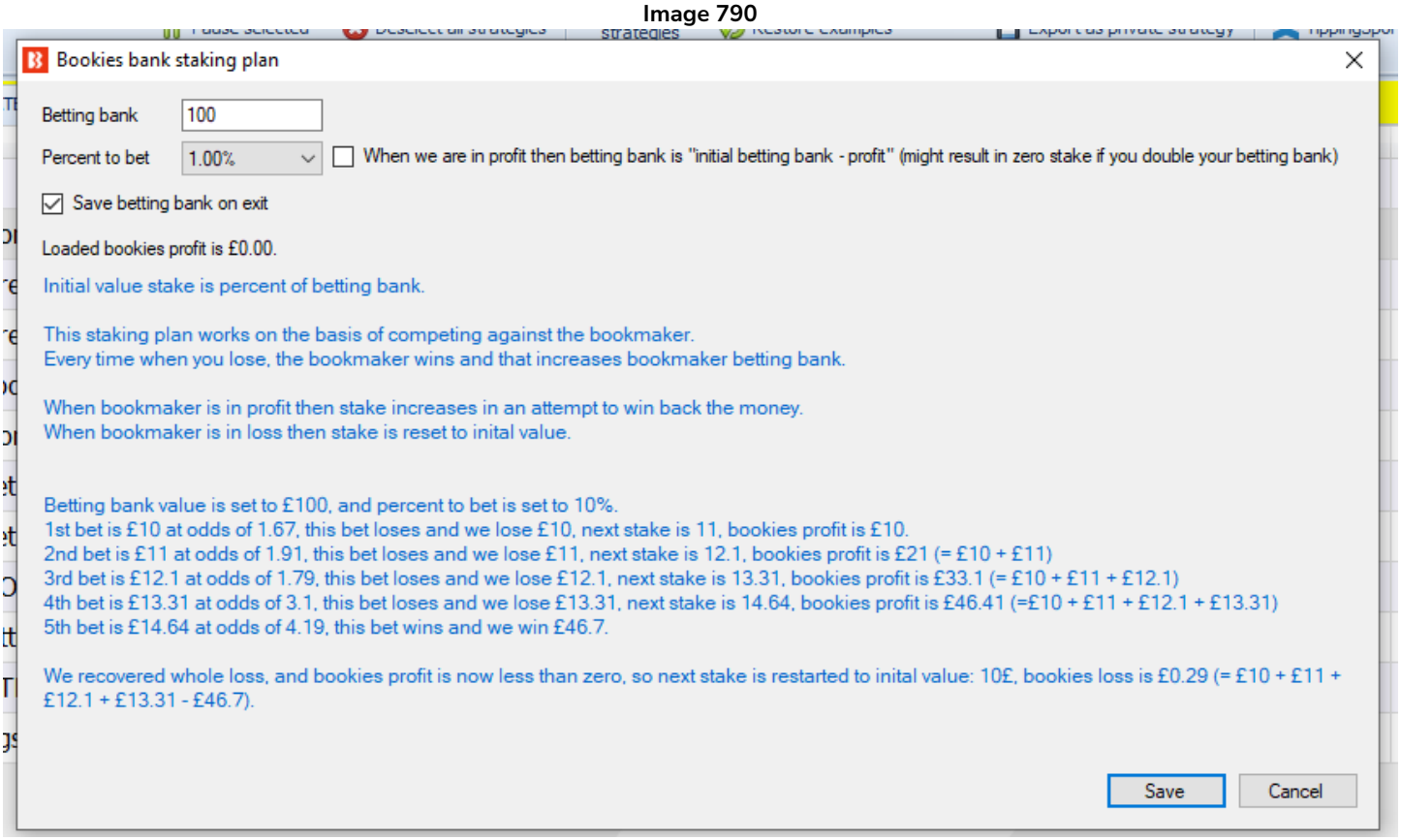
(Remaining Target / Divisor) / number of coups = Stake (unless below minimum stake level)

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled. For Coupmaster staking, setting the Unsettled Markets rule to "1" is recommended.

Warning: The Coupmaster staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly. It is recommended to use the Stop Loss option.**

14.4.20 Bookies bank staking plan

Image 790



This stake plan works on the basis of competing against the bookmaker. Every time when you lose, the bookmaker wins and that increases the bookmaker betting bank.

The Initial bet size is set as percentage of betting bank.

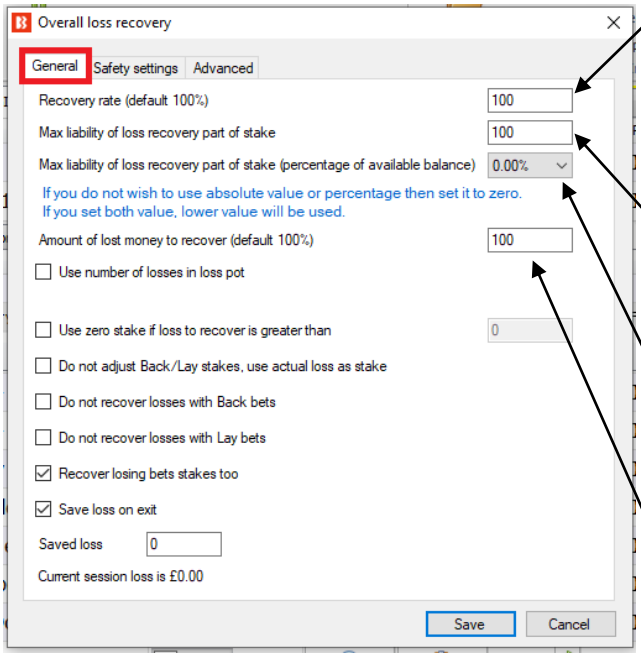
When the bookmaker is in profit (when you are losing), then the stake increases in an attempt to win back the money. When the bookmaker is in loss then the stake is reset to its initial value.

Warning: The Bookies Bank staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.21 Overall loss recovery

The Overall loss recovery rule is a very powerful staking plan that can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Use with caution and only when you have tested it in simulation mode and know it is working as you expect. It attempts to recover a % of the losses over X number of markets.

Image 791 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery



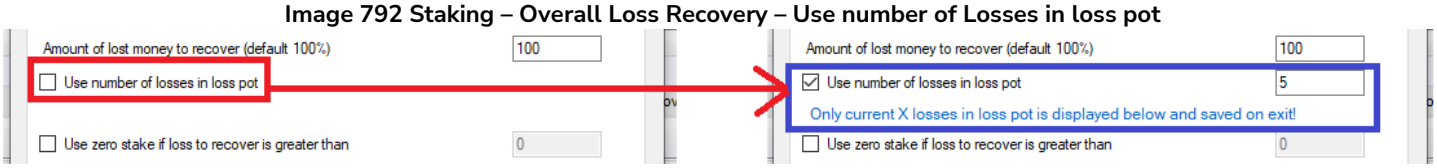
The **Recovery rate** sets how much of the loss is to be recovered on the next market. If you set 100%, then it will recover 100% of the desired amount on the next 1 market. If you set 50%, then it will recover 50% on the next market and 50% on the market after that.

The **Max liability of the loss recovery part of stake** is a stake size limit, so 100 would mean a maximum stake of £100 for the recovery part of the bet.

The **Max liability of loss recover part of stake (percentage of available balance)** is an alternative to the previous option where we can select a percentage of the available balance as an upper limit to the recovery part of the bet instead of an absolute amount.

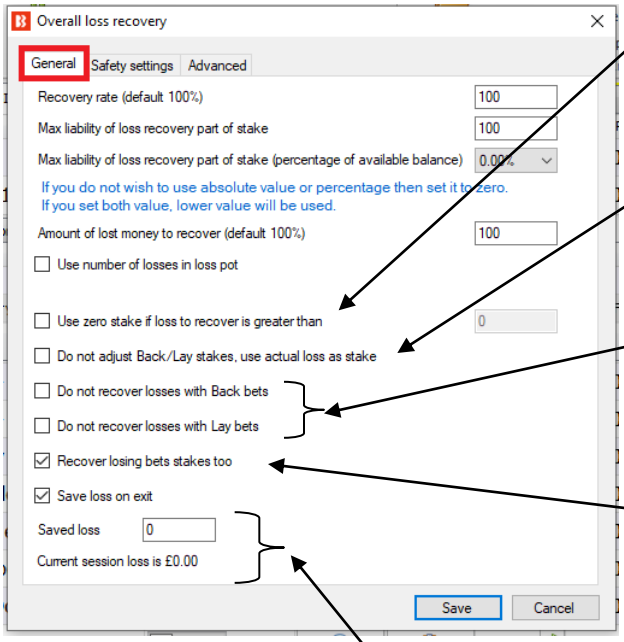
The **Amount of lost money to recover (default 100%)** defines how much of the loss is to be aimed for as a percentage.

Image 792 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery – Use number of Losses in loss pot



By ticking the checkbox for **Use number of losses in loss pot** it enables the number of losses recovered per recovery set to be limited. For example, a setting of 5 would mean losses would be recovered in pots of 5 (a set of 5 losses). The strategy would recover the first 5 losses, then after those are recovered, it would recover the next 5 losses. All the losses will be recovered, but not in one set, but split into pots of 5.

Image 793 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery



Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than allows the strategy to focus only on the recovery bets and not risk anymore stakes on new bets. Once the recovery target is greater than the amount set here, it will only bet to recover lost stakes.

Do not adjust Back/Lay stakes, use actual loss as stake tells the strategy not to adjust the stakes to the price in order to win the loss amount, but to use the loss amount as the stake for the next selection.

Do not recover losses with Back bets and **Do not recover losses with lay bets** are used if a strategy is placing both back and lay bets and you want to restrict one of those for the recovery bets.

Recover losing bets stakes too is used if you also want the strategy to recover lost potential profit of Lay bets, not just lost liabilities. (And this will add the stake on a second time to the total loss for Back bets.) Use this setting with caution.

Save loss on exit tells the strategy to remember the current loss pot when the software is switched off. This will save only the current, active loss pot. If the option "Use number of losses in loss pot" is ticked, then only the current loss pot will be saved. It will not save the other loss pots. For example, if we have 10 losing markets and the number of losses in loss pot is set to 2, then first loss pot is made up of the first two losing markets and it will be saved, but the other four loss pots that are made up of loss 3&4, 5&6, 7&8 and 9&10 will not be saved on exit. If the option "Use number of losses in loss pot" is turned off, then there is only a single loss pot made up of all 10 losses and is saved on exit.

How Two Key Settings for Overall Loss Recovery Work Together

It is easier to understand this rule when you clearly separate in your mind the difference of meaning of the word "stakes" for Lay bets and Back bets. **Stakes for Back bets are the liability. Stakes for Lay bets are the potential profit,** the liability is how much you risk to win the backer's stake. So the meaning of "stakes" in these settings change depending on if your strategy is placing back bets, lays bets or both.

Image 794 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery Settings – Only recover losses

☑ Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than 10 ☐ Recover losing bets stakes too	Only bet to recover **losses**, don't place new bet stakes, if loss is over 10.

Image 795 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery Settings – Recover losses and place regular bets

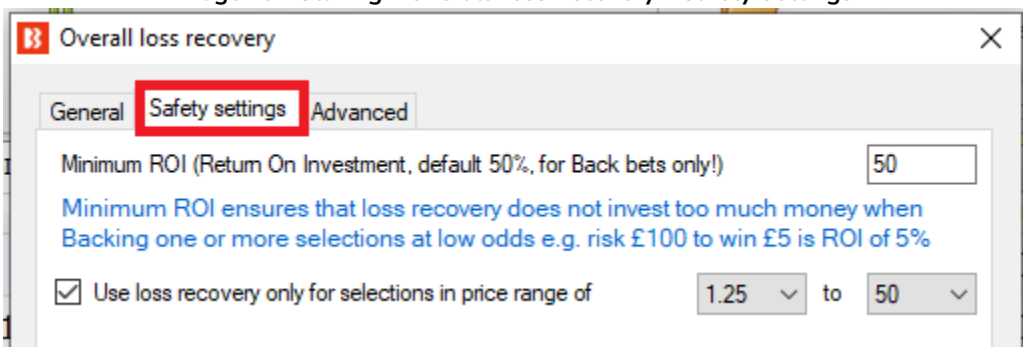
☐ Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than 5 ☐ Recover losing bets stakes too	Bet to recover **losses** and continue to place strategy **regular bet stakes**.

Image 796 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery Settings – Recover losses, place regular bets and recover lost stakes

☐ Use zero stake if loss to recover is greater than 5 ☑ Recover losing bets stakes too *For **Lay** bets, if you ask to recover losing stakes, you add the lost	Bet to recover **losses**, continue to place strategy **regular bet stakes** and bet to recover **lost potential profits of**

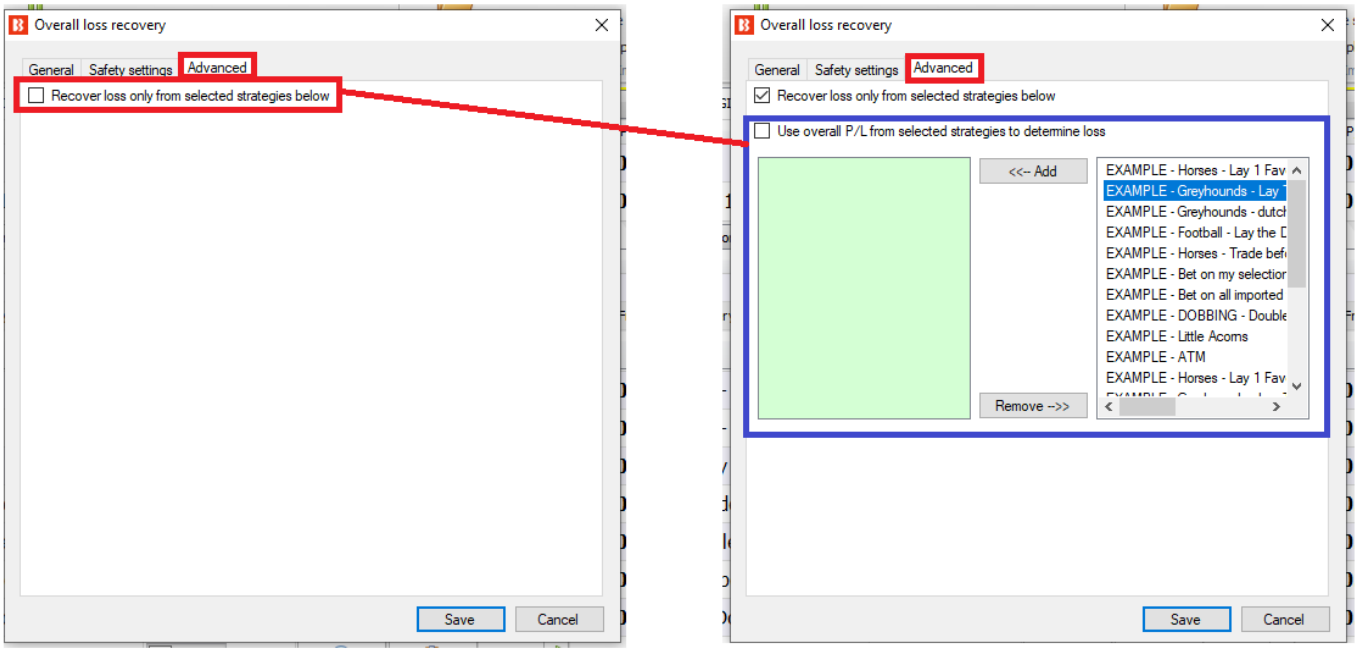
potential profit from the backer's stake. It **was not your actual money that was lost.** *For **Back** bets, if you ask to recover losing stakes, you add a 2nd "lost" stake for back bets that **was not actually lost.**	**lay bets** (the stake part of lay bets) and recover **a second stake bet for back bets.**

Image 797 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery – Safety Settings



Since the recovery staking plan uses a target profit to regain losses, lower odds would require large stakes. For this reason, safety settings can limit the ROI and odds required for recovery bets to be allowed. A minimum ROI of 50% would mean that only bets with odds of 1.50 or higher would be used for back recovery bets. The minimum ROI function only applies to back bets. For lay bets the odds limit range can be used. Similarly, with low odds, it can lead to a high liability for lay bets, too. So limiting the odds can be a good idea. The odds limit also applies to back bets.

Image 798 Staking – Overall Loss Recovery – Advanced



It is also possible to add the profit/loss from other strategies to THIS strategy's loss amount to recover. If another selected strategy is in profit, the overall amount to be recovered by this strategy will decrease. If another selected strategy has a loss, the overall amount to be recovered will increase. Please note that if another strategy is also doing its own recovery staking, this strategy will not factor that into its calculations

and could result in two strategies placing recovery bets for the same loss. This rule simply adds the P/L from another strategy to this strategy's loss amount to recover (without knowing what the other strategy is doing). This enables one strategy to recover the overall loss of a number of strategies. By clicking the check box, a list of strategies will appear. Each one needs to be selected individually.

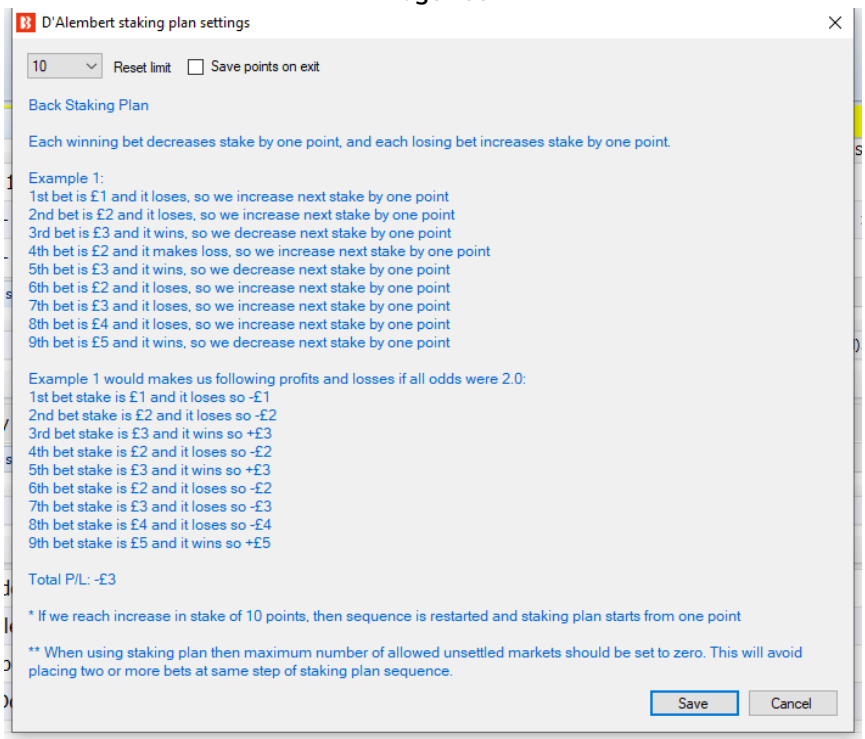
Note: If you only want the strategy to recover losses from this strategy, then leave this option unchecked. The default setting of the rule is for the strategy only to recover its own losses.

You can see this staking plan used in the example strategy Horses - Lay 1st Favorite with recovery which also adds a safety rule for further control over the bot by limiting the number of losses the strategy will allow.

Warning: The Overall Loss Recovery staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.22 D'Alembert

Image 799



The D'Alembert staking plan will decrease the stake after a winning bet by one point, and increase the stake after a losing bet by one point. Once it reaches its "Reset limit", it will reset to 1 and begin the sequence again.
In the above image, it would bet and increase the points multiplier until 10 and then reset.

This staking plan uses the Initial/Level Stake rule to define how much a 1 point bet is.
So, if the Initial/Level stake is 10 GBP, then the stake will increase by 10 GBP after each loss.
This staking plan uses ALL placed bets by its strategy to calculate the number of points by which the initial stake should be increased or decreased.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The D'Alembert staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.23 Lay Up Down Staking Plan

When this staking plan loses a bet, it will increase the points by X.
When it wins a bet, it will decrease the points by Y until it reaches value of 1.0.
The user that suggested this staking plan also suggests that it should be used to place Lay bets on 3rd favourites that are in a price range of 5.5-7.5.

This **sets how many points to increase after a loss**.

This sets **how many points to decrease after a win**.

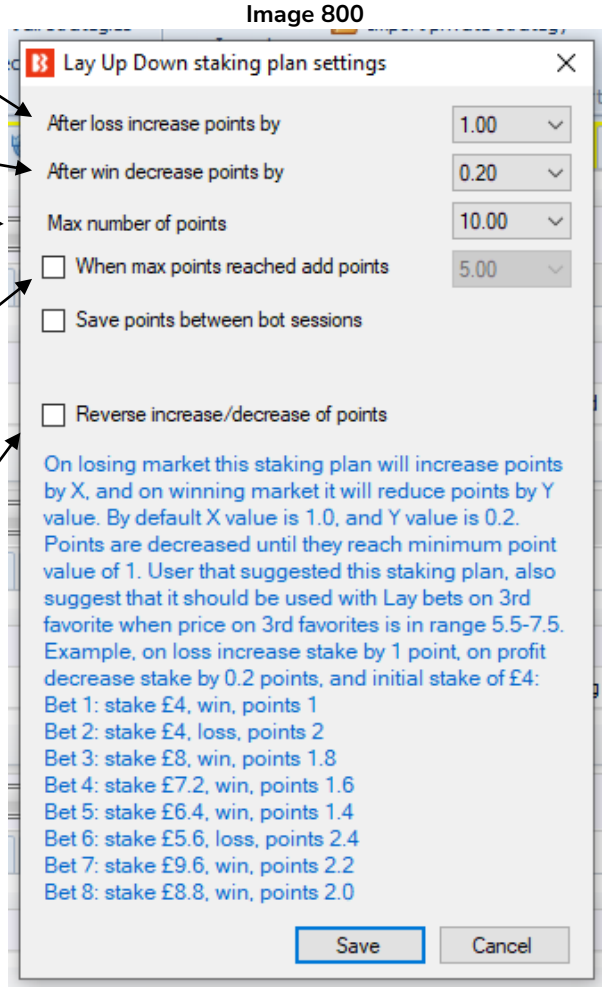
The option "**Max number of points**" is used for controlling your exposure and max stake. Once it is reached, the bot will continue using the max number of points until there are winning bets

The option to increase (or decrease with a minus value) the number of points by a fixed value once the **max number of points is reached** can be used to increase or decrease points by larger value after a long losing run until a winning bet is hit.

There is also an option to **save points between bot sessions, and you can always reset those by entering** "1" to the cells in the data grid for the favourite for which you want to reset the points.

The option to r**everse increase/decrease of points** does the opposite if ticked e.g. it decreases points on a loss and increase points on a win.

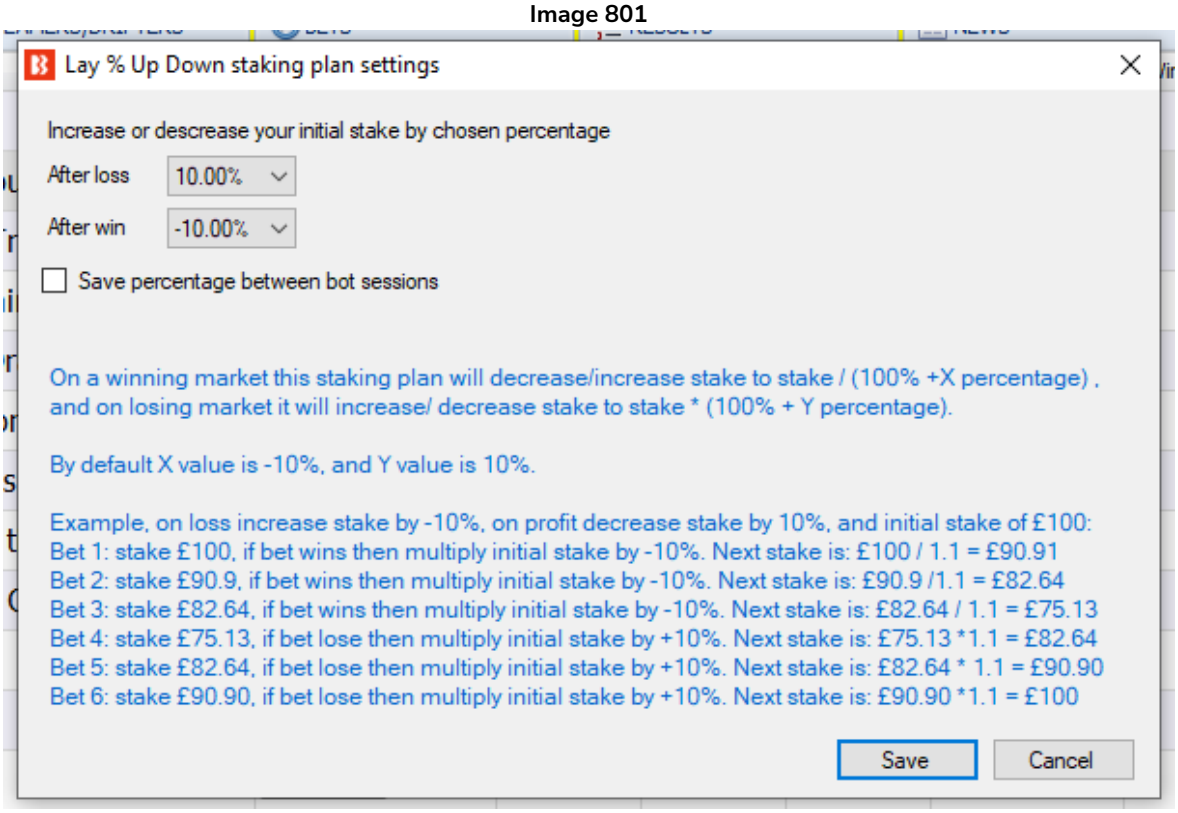
Image 800



Warning: The Lay Up Down staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.24 Lay % Up Down Staking Plan

Image 801



This staking plan allows you to increase or decrease your bet size by a set percentage amount on each win or loss.
The initial stake size is set by a Level/Initial stake rule.

In this Lay % Up Down Staking Plan rule
Set a positive percentage for an increase of your stake.
Set a negative percentage for a decrease of your stake.

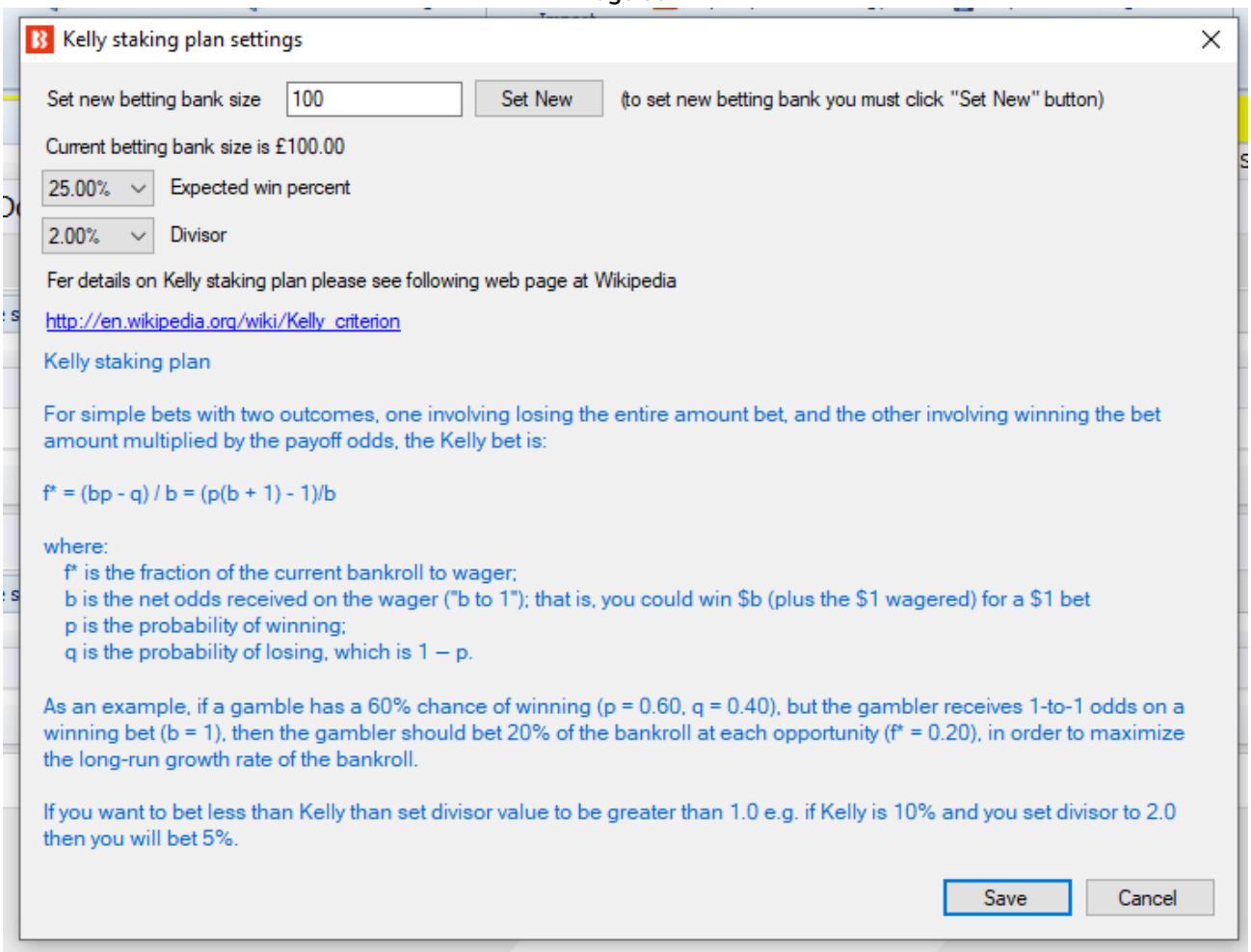
In the staking plan form there is an example where the stake decreased after three winning bets and then after three losing bets it returned to original bet size.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: Lay % Up Down can be a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.25 Kelly staking plan

Image 802



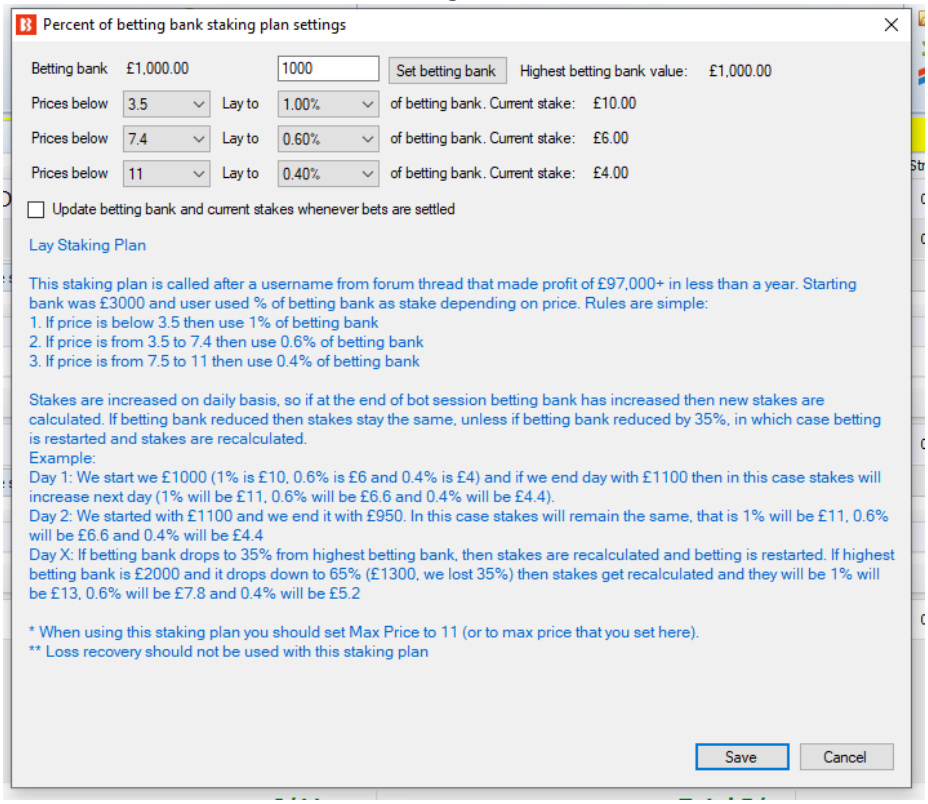
The Kelly staking plan uses a formula to determine the optimal size of a series of bets. You set **your betting bank** and the **expected winning percentage** of your bets. Then the staking plan uses the available odds and your expected winning percentage to calculate the bet size. Alternatively you can specify a divisor to reduce the size of actual stakes.

More information and a detailed explanation on the Kelly staking plan can be found at the following Wikipedia web page: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kelly_criterion

Warning: The Kelly staking plan staking plan has variable stake sizes. Its stake sizes increase for lower odds. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.26 Maria staking plan

Image 803



The Maria staking plan can be considered a Lay version of the Odds Staking Ladder in some senses. It lets you set a different lay amount for different odds.

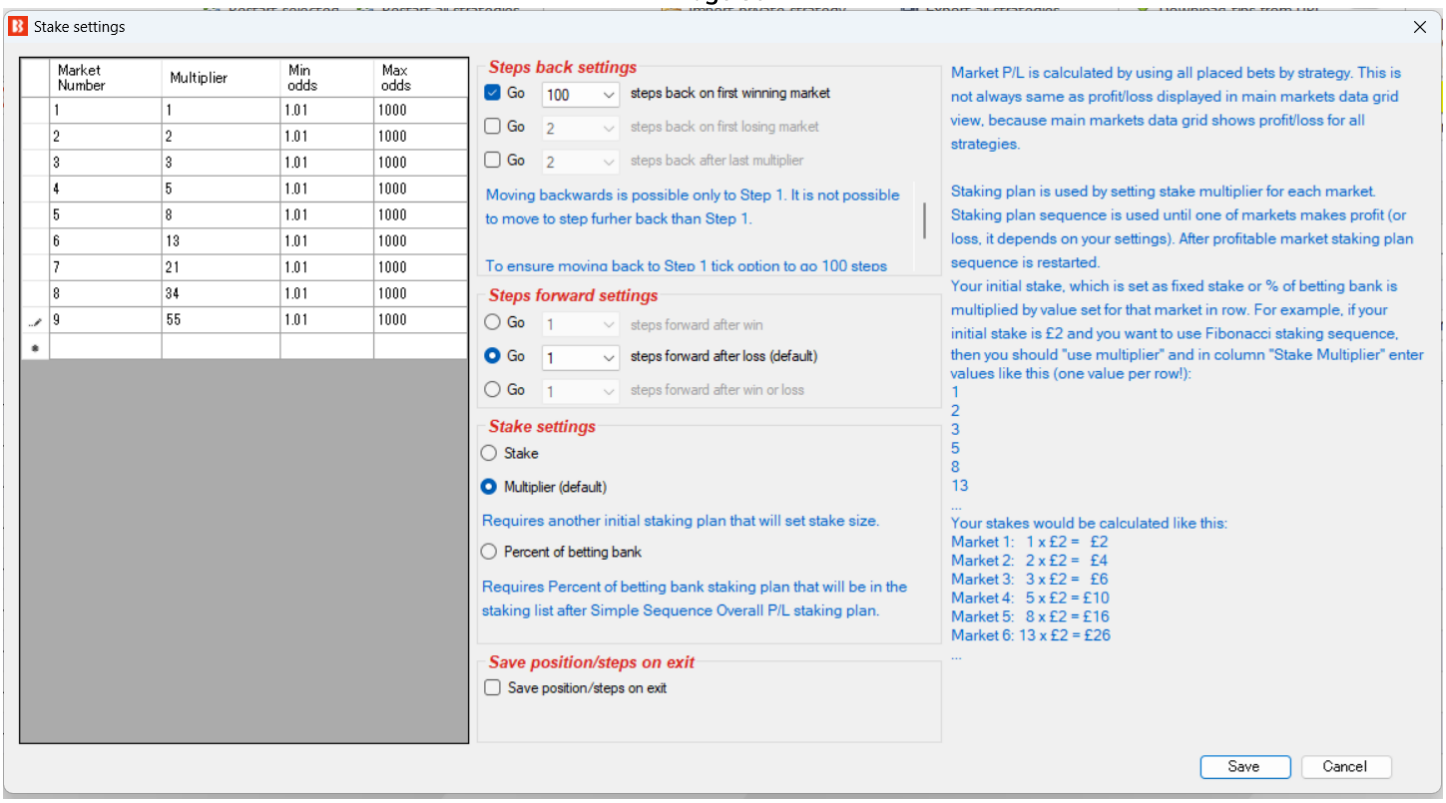
First, you can set a betting bank. Then you can set 3 levels of odds and the % of betting bank to lay for each level. Note that this sets the STAKE, so in the above example for prices 3.5 and below it will lay a stake of 1% of the bank. 1% of 1,000 is 10, so it will lay to win 10. If the odds are very low, such as 1.1, then this could result in very high liabilities of 100 to win 10, so please be aware of how the staking plan works.

This staking plan was named after the user. The default settings are the settings recommended by them with advice to change the bank level each day, rather than after each market is settled. If you want to change the bank to be updated after each settled market, you can tick that option checkbox "**Update betting bank and current stakes whenever bets are settled**".

Warning: The Maria staking plan has variable stake sizes. Its stake sizes increase for lower odds. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. Some staking plans encountered elsewhere may work slightly different in this software**. If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** This is the best and easiest way to see how a staking plan works. Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.27 Overall P/L Simple Sequence

Image 804



This staking plan allows you to set a sequence of stakes or stake multipliers for subsequent markets. The strategy can be set to move X steps along the sequence after market losses, wins or either.

This staking plan is useful if you want to make the Fibonacci staking plan which increases stakes after a loss along the Fibonacci sequence. The above image is an example of how the first 9 steps of the Fibonacci sequence looks. You can also add extra numbers to the sequence as you like.

This staking plan uses ALL placed bets by this strategy to calculate its position in the sequence and to find the correct multiplier for the next bet. Profit and loss for markets are calculated by using all placed bets by this strategy only.

The **min and max price columns** are by default set to 1.01/1,000 and if the selection is within this price range then the multiplier will be applied. If the selection price is outside the price range, then the multiplier will not be used. This allows you to apply a multiplier only if the selection price is within the set price range. This is useful if you do not want higher multiples to place large stake bets on high odds.

The **Go 100 steps back on first winning market** option ensures the staking plan goes back to the start of the sequence after a win. Even if there are only 9 steps, the 100 step back takes it back to Step 1.

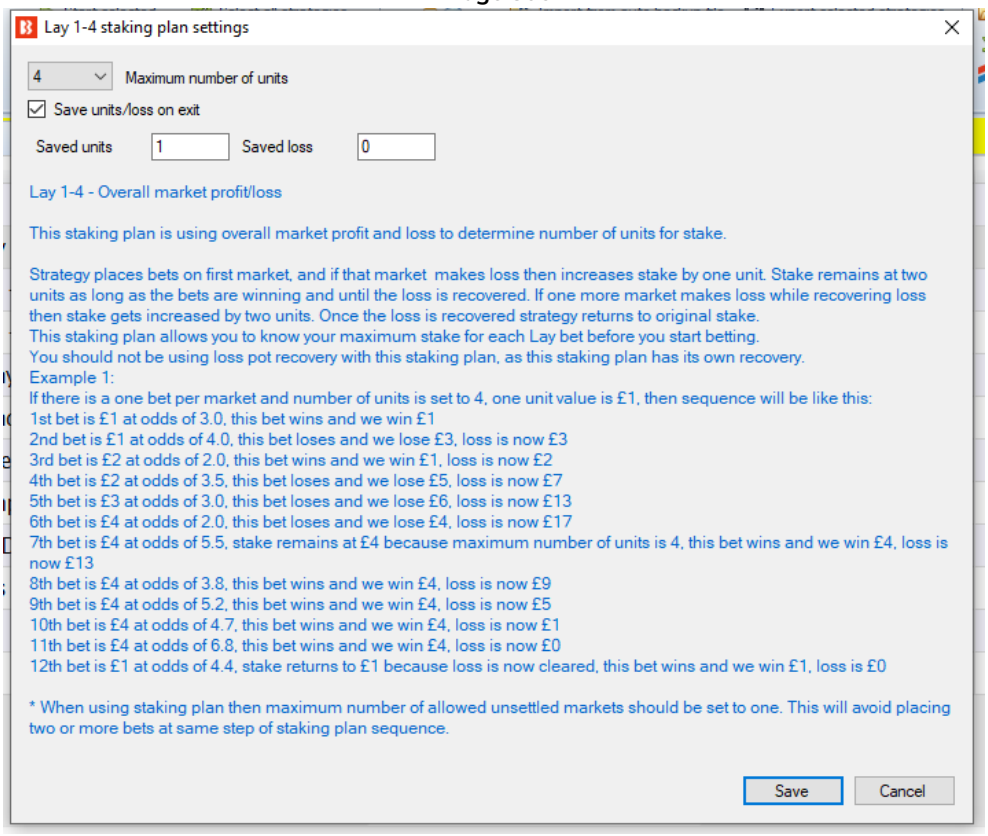
The **Go 100 steps back after last multiplier** option is important. Without this, the sequence would stay on the final multiplier until a winner is hit unless there are other safety rules being used.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: Progressive sequences such as the Fibonacci sequence can lead to stakes rising rapidly. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect.

14.4.28 Lay 1-4

Image 805



This rule first places a Lay bet. If that bet loses, then it increases the stake by one unit. The stake remains at two units as long as the bets are winning and until the loss is recovered. If one more bet loses while still recovering the loss, then the stake gets increased by another unit. Once the loss is recovered, the bot returns to the original stake.

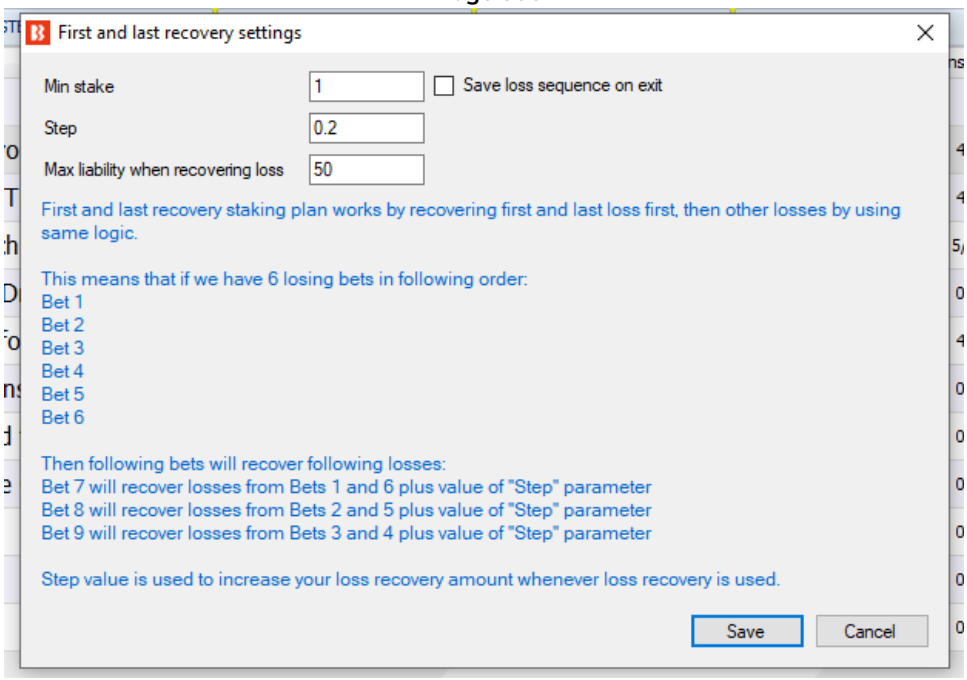
When the maximum number of units is reached, then stake increases stop and the stake remains the same until the loss is recovered, as in the example contained within the staking plan rule. You can edit the maximum number of units. You can tick the checkbox to save the units and loss on exit.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: Lay 1-4 is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.29 First and last recovery

Image 806



The **First and last recovery staking plan** is designed to recover the first and last loss, after that it recovers next first and last loss and so on until all losses are recovered. For example, if you have 5 losing bets, then first it will recover the 1st and 5th losing bets together, after that the 2nd and 4th losing bets and then the 3rd losing bet.

Optionally you can set a max liability when recovering losses, so that you control exposure when recovering losses.

The **minimum stake** is the minimum bet size that can be set for a bet when recovering losses e.g. if a loss is smaller than this value, then the min stake value will be used.

The **step** parameter is the amount that you want to win in addition to recovering the loss, so that you also make some profit.

You can select to **save loss sequence** on exit so that next time you start the bot, the previous sequence gets loaded and recovery gets continued.

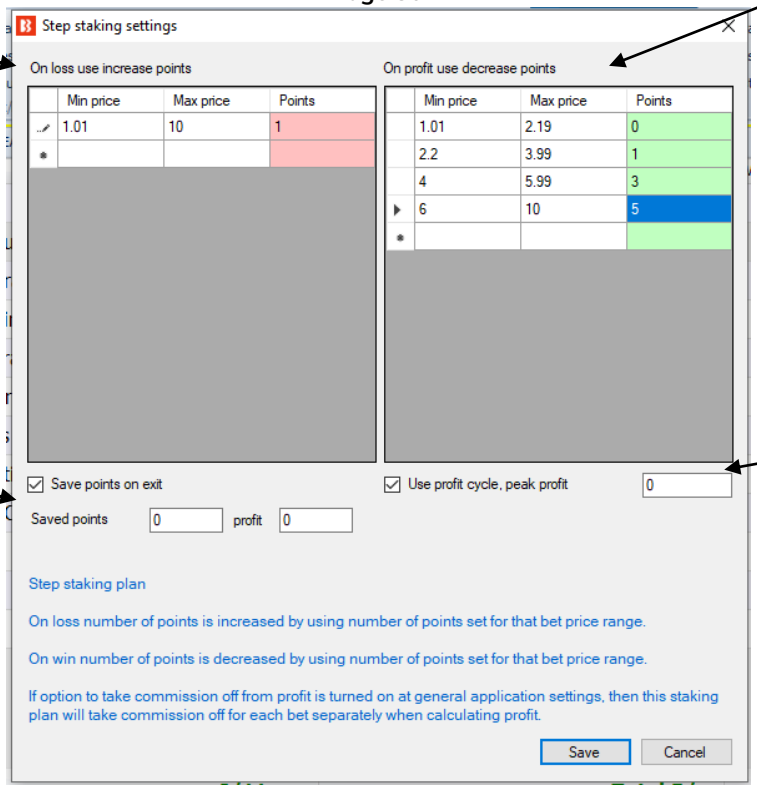
Warning: First and Last Recovery is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.30 Step staking plan

The Step staking plan lets you set points increases after losses and decreases after wins based on the odds of the previous bet.

Set the **points increase after a loss** for specified odds ranges.

Image 807



Set the **points decrease after a win** for specified odds ranges.

Tick to save points on exit.

Tick "Use profit cycle, peak profit" as reset points to record new peak profits so **that each new peak profit resets the staking plan**.

This staking plan also needs a **Level/Initial stake** condition in the staking tab which sets the starting base stake level.

On the left hand side you can enter the odds-range(s) and the INCREASE in stakes required after a LOSING bet in that given range(s). On the right hand side, you can enter the odd-ranges and the DECREASE in stakes required after a WINNING bet in that given range(s).

For example, the above settings are set up to operate a sequence as follows:

- After a loser in the range 1.01 to 10.0, increase stakes multiple by 1
- After a winner in the range 6.00 to10.0 decrease stakes multiple by 5
- After a winner in the range 4.0 to 5.99, decrease stakes multiple by 3
- After a winner in the range 2.2 to 3.99, decrease stakes multiple by 1
- After a winner in the range 1.01 to 2.19 remain on the current stake.

This offers some profit sensitivity over and above simple ladder plans which simply adjust stakes up or down with no reference to the odds achieved. After a 9/1 win you may want to reduce stakes by more than the 1 point a simple ladder plan may offer. After an odds-on winner you may want to "stick" on the same stake. The STEP plan allows stakes to be adjusted a little more intelligently.

There is an option to operate in profit "cycles" which will reset the staking ladder every time a PEAK profit is reached. "Check" the "Use profit cycle/peak profit" option to switch this on. Set the value in the box after the above text to 0 (zero). With this option checked the bot will monitor the profits being made by the plan. Every time a new highest or "peak" profit is reached the plan will be RESET to the START of the staking sequence for the bet following the peak, after which the normal rules governing the sequence will be resumed.

For example, if the plan is moving UP by 1 point after a LOSER at any odds and DOWN 1 point after a loser at any odds.

- Bet 1 stake 1 LOSER stake 1 -1
- Bet 2 stake 2 LOSER stake 2 -2
- Bet 3 stake 3 WINNER stake 3 at 4/1 (5.0) +12 Profit = 9 points.

We'll call this profit cycle 1. The plan has made 9 "points" profit (ie. 9 times your starting stake) and if "profit cycle/peak profit" has been checked the stake for Bet 4 will return to 1 point AND NOT the 2 points dictated by the DOWN 1 set up in the table. **The peak profit reset ignores the next stake in the Step sequence and restarts it at the beginning.**

To clarify what happens next let's follow this through for one more betting/profit cycle. Firstly, the bot will now set a "peak" profit marker at the highest profit figure so far, in this example 9 points (Let's assume this is £9 to a £1 starting stake).
Secondly, it will re-start the STEP plan at the beginning using the initial stake.
Thirdly, the plan will run normally, executing the correct sequence UNTIL a NEW highest or PEAK profit is reached. In this example that's any* profit in excess of £9. When that's reached, it will return to the start of the sequence, from wherever in the sequence it happens to be.
So, Cycle 2:

- Bet 4 stake 1 LOSER -1

Total profit = 9 (from cycle 1) -1 =8 Lower than peak of 9 so no reset.

- Bet 5 stake 2 WINNER at 2/1 (3.0) +4

Total profit =8 +4 = 12 NEW PEAK. Plan resets again. Peak profit = 12 And so on.
This is a powerful option as the plan is reacting to profits and (arguably) more important, is keeping average stakes lower.

A setting of zero in the "Use profit cycle/peak profit" text box will ensure that the bot resets the Step plan every time there is a new peak profit. In cycle 2 of the above example, £12 is the new peak profit, but any amount of profit over the previous peak of 9 would trigger a reset; even if it were only – say – 5 pence more (i.e. £9.05)

However, you can force the bot to target a minimum peak profit for every cycle.

To do this, simply alter the figure in the text box to a higher value. For example 10, which means that before the plan will reset, the new peak profit for the current cycle must be at least £10 higher than the previous peak generated by the previous cycle.

For example, if the previous cycle reset at a peak profit of £14.50, then entering 10 as the "reset value" in the text box means that the plan will not reset until it has made a new peak of £24.50.

So, use 0 (zero) if you're satisfied with any profit over and above the last peak to trigger a reset, or enter a higher value to force the plan to run the current cycle until you've made what you want. Please remember that very high reset values in relation to your starting stake may result in greatly increased stake values in the event of a long losing run as stakes are forced upwards.

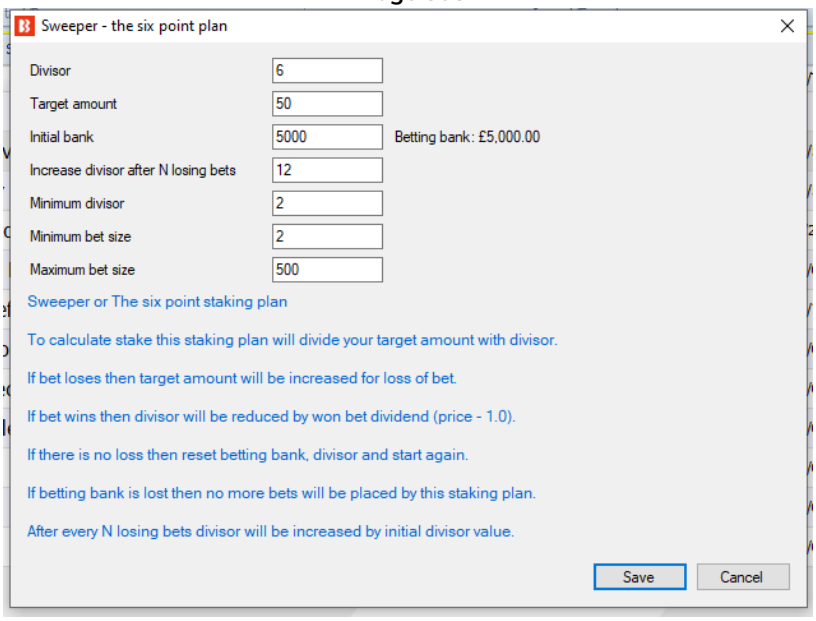
As with other bot plans, ticking the "Save points on exit" checkbox will cause the bot to remember the current betting sequence between sessions when shut down and resume where it left off when re-started. If you don't check the box it won't remember tomorrow where it was up to today.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Step staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.31 Sweeper - the six point plan

Image 808



The six-point plan uses a divisor to calculate your stake.

You set your target amount and then the stake is calculated by dividing that target amount with the divisor. All losing bets are added to your target amount, that way you are recovering your bets as you start winning. If your bet wins, then your target amount is reduced by your profit, and your divisor is reduced by your bet odds e.g. if your bet won at odds of 4.0 and your divisor was 6 then new divisor after that winning bet will be 6 – (4.0 – 3.0) = 3.0.

When you win your target amount, then the staking plan is restarted to initial values.

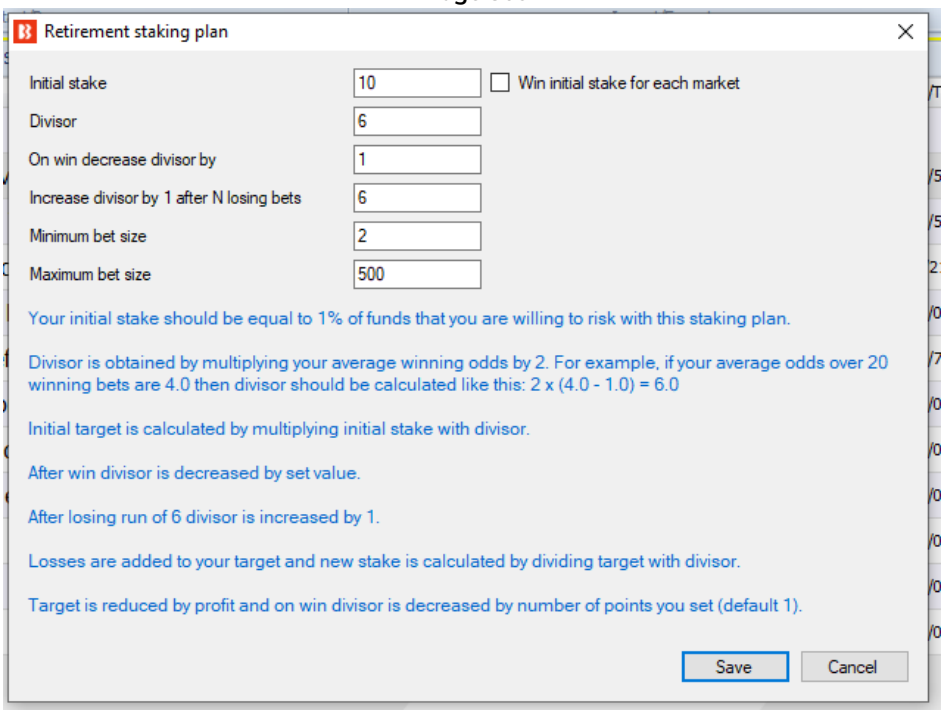
You have options to set a minimum divisor and min/max bet size.
The betting bank will be updated as your bets win and lose.
The staking plan will stop if the betting bank is lost.
An option to increase the divisor after N losing bets is designed to increase the divisor by its initial value.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: Sweeper – the 6 point plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.32 Retirement staking plan

Image 809



The Retirement staking plan uses a divisor to calculate your bet size. To get the initial divisor value you need to know the average odds of your winning bets.

If the average odds are 4.0 then you calculate the divisor like this:
2 x (4.0 – 1.0) = 2 x 3.0 = 6.0

All losing bets are added to your initial stake. Then the initial stake is divided by the divisor to get your bet size. **In the case of longer losing runs your loss will increase**, so it is useful to also increase the divisor by 1 after a certain number of losing bets. That way your stake will not increase rapidly when you start losing.

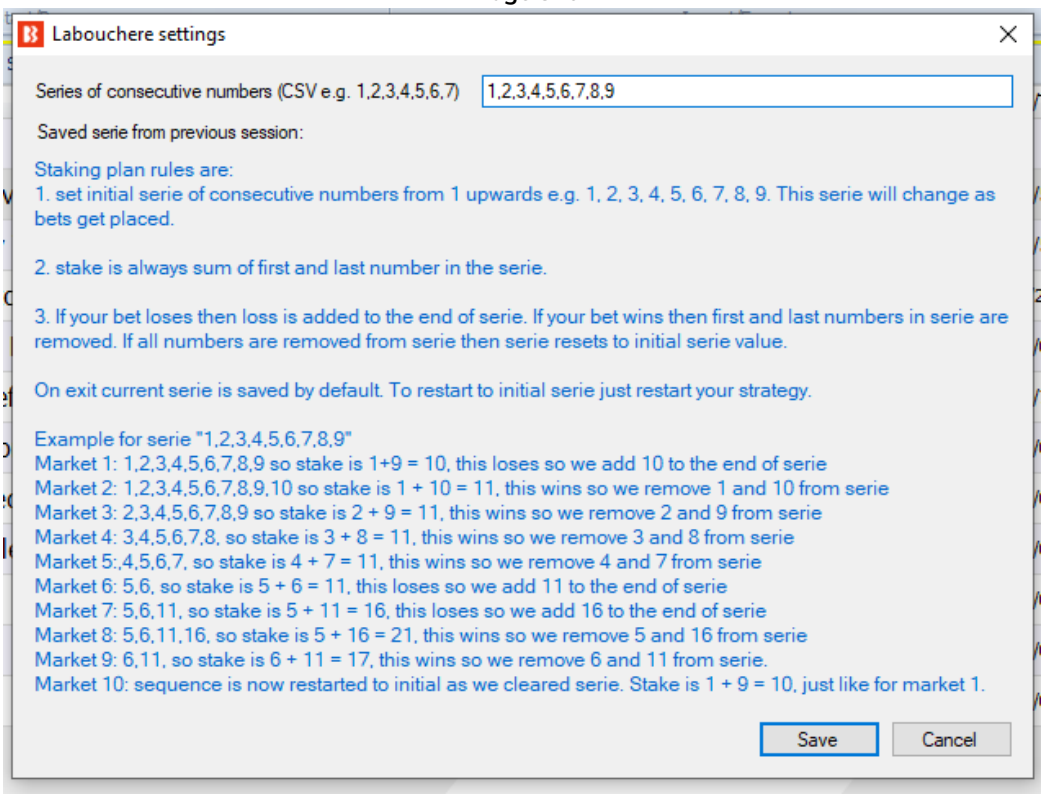
On each winning bet, you can set to decrease the divisor by 1 until it reaches its initial divisor value. Each winning bet will also reduce your loss as you will make profit, so a smaller divisor should be used after a win.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Retirement staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.33 Labouchere

Image 810



The Labouchere staking plan requires that you set a number series that will be used to calculate bet size.

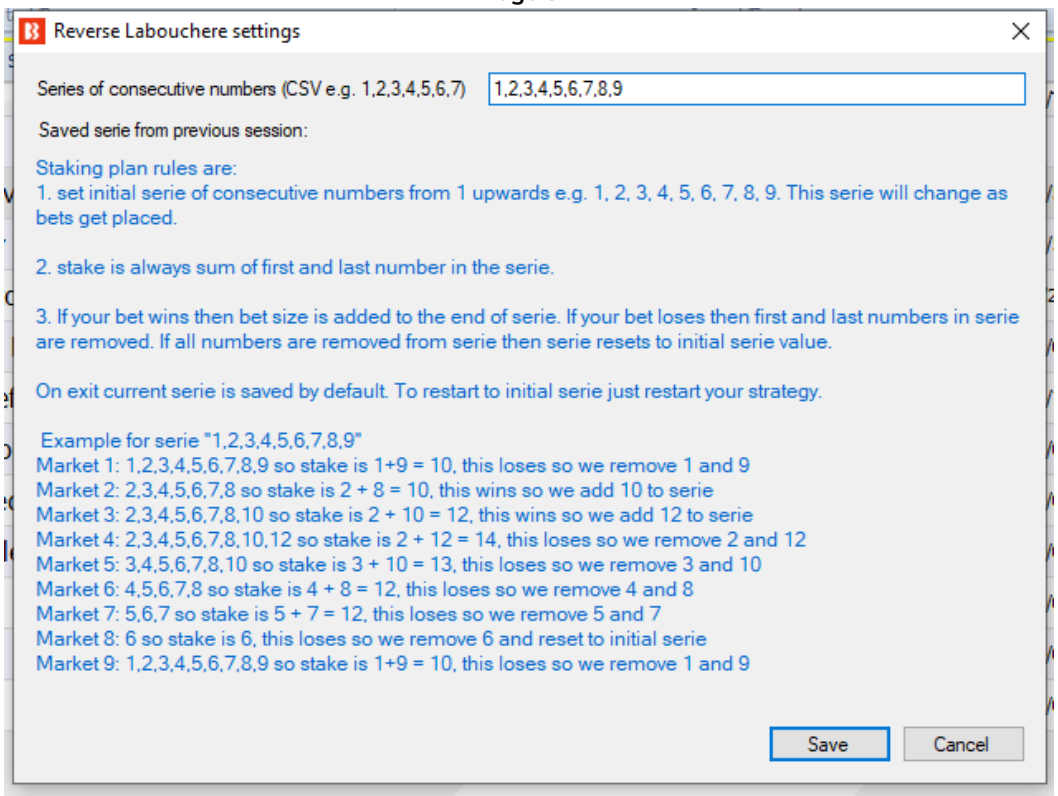
Bet size is always calculated as the sum of the first and last number in the series.
If a bet loses, then the loss is added to the end of the series.
If a bet wins, then the first and last numbers from the series are removed.
If all numbers are removed from the series, then the staking plan restarts with the initial series.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Labouchere staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.34 Reverse Labouchere

Image 811



Reverse Labouchere staking plan requires that you set number series that will be used to calculate bet size.

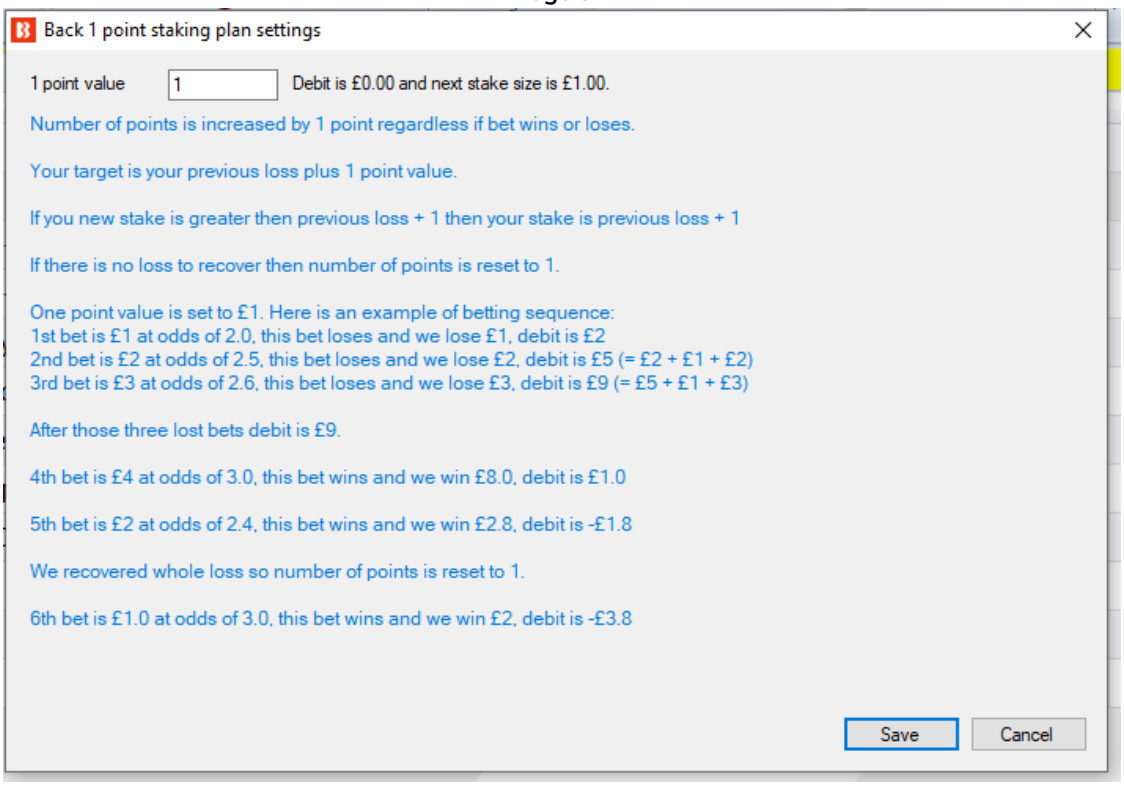
Bet size is always calculated as sum of first and last number in the series.
If a bet wins then profit is added to the end of the series. (In normal Labouchere losses are added to the end of the series, not profits.)
If a bet loses then the first and last number from the series are removed. (In normal Labouchere, the first and last numbers are removed after a win, not a loss.)
If all numbers are removed from the series then staking plan restarts to initial series.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Reverse Labouchere staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.35 Back 1 point staking plan

Image 812



This staking plan follows a few simple rules to adjust your stake size. Those rules are:

- Add 1 point after each bet
- If the bet size is greater than the debit + 1 point, then the new bet size is debit + 1 point
- If the debit is less than zero, then the new stake is 1 point.

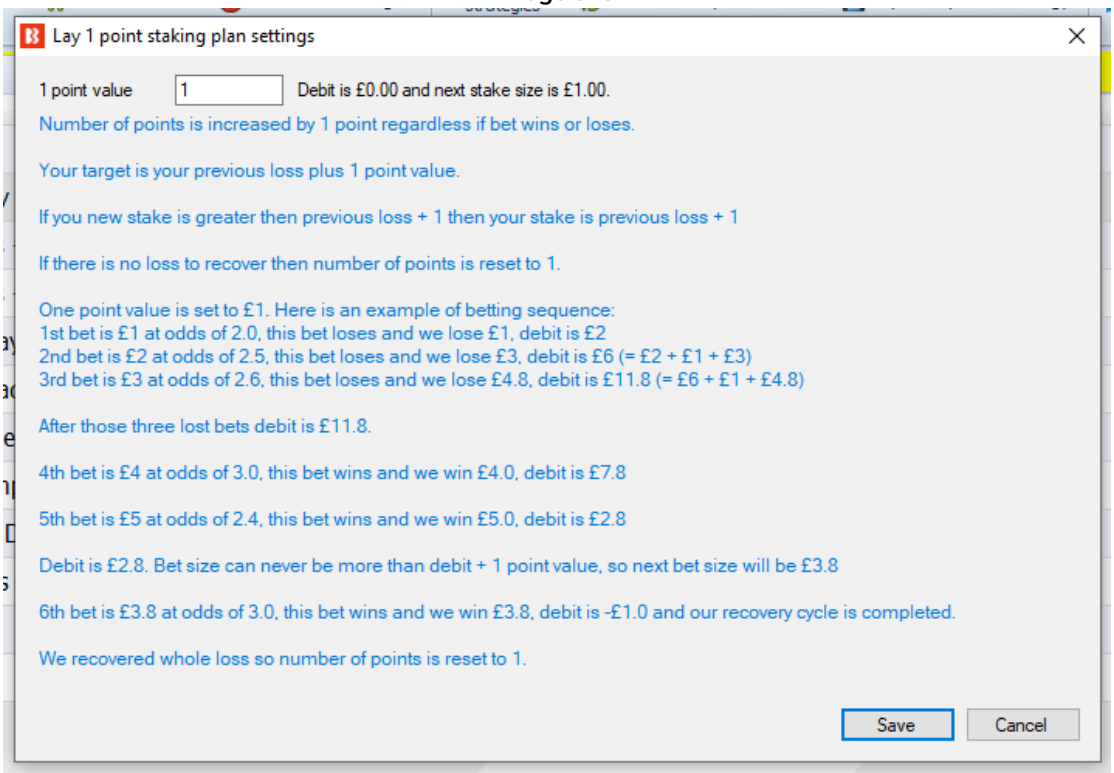
The stake will return to an initial 1 point value once the whole loss is recovered, but it will go up if you keep losing.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Back 1 Point staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.36 Lay 1 point staking plan

Image 813



This is the lay version of the Back 1 point staking plan and uses the same rules. The stake is increased with each bet and is reduced or returned to 1 point value when losses are recovered.

This staking plan follows a few simple rules to adjust your stake size. Those rules are:
- Add 1 point after each bet
- If the bet size is greater than the debit + 1 point, then the new bet size is debit + 1 point
- If the debit is less than zero, then the new stake is 1 point.

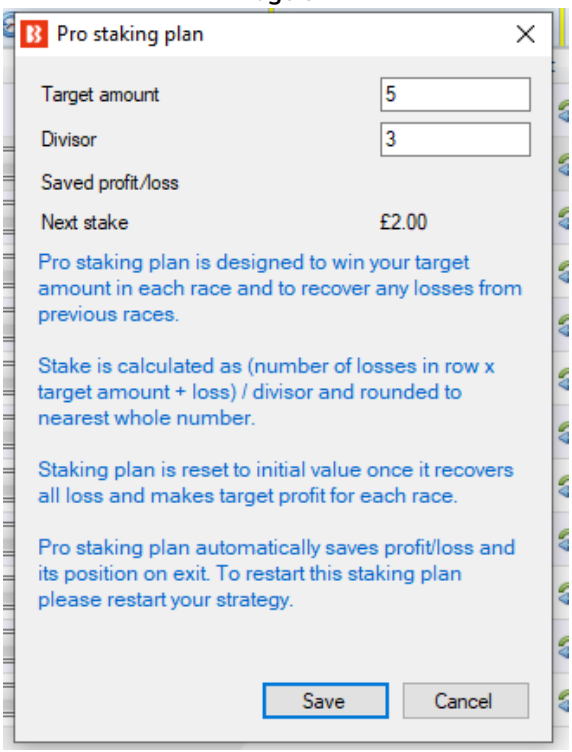
The stake will return to an initial 1 point value once the whole loss is recovered, but it will go up if you keep losing.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Lay 1 Point staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

14.4.37 Pro staking plan

Image 814



The Pro staking plan is designed to win your target amount in each race and to recover losses from previous races.

The formula to calculate stake is the following:

stake = (number of losses in row x target amount + loss) / divisor

The stake is rounded to the nearest whole number. This means that you might not be able to use very small bet sizes with the staking plan.

On exit, profit/loss and staking position are saved automatically and loaded on start up.

Important Note: When using staking plans that depend on the result of the previous bets, it is a good idea to use the **Unsettled markets rule** from Market Conditions to prevent new bets being placed until the previous one has been settled.

Warning: The Pro staking plan is a progressive staking plan. Stakes increase after losses. Whenever using a staking plan for the first time, we strongly recommend ALWAYS running it in simulation mode first to see if the staking plan performs as you expect. **If you are not completely sure of how a staking plan works, try running multiple versions of it at the same time in simulation mode, each with slightly different settings.** Some recovery and progressive staking plans can lead to stakes increasing rapidly in bad runs. Never use such staking plans in Real mode unless you know what will happen after 10 losses in a row or its longest Expected Losing Sequence (ELS). Also, please note that **Simulation Mode is not always accurate.** For example, unmatched bets and liquidity cannot always be realistically simulated. Also, Simulation mode works using delayed Betfair Data. You can read more about how realistic Simulation mode is here. So **even after using simulation mode, use small stakes and increase stakes slowly.**

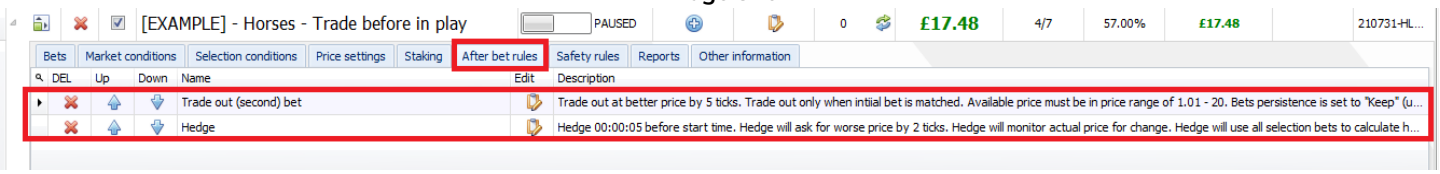
14.5 After bet rules

After bet rules are used to monitor and manage bets placed by the strategies. Usually when trading we have need to place more than one bet per selection, and in such cases after one bet is placed another bet later gets placed for sure profit or to minimize loss. After bet rules are designed to make sure that placed bets complete their goal before new bets can be placed on same selection. The after bet rules give instructions to the bot for actions to be taken after initial bets are placed. If you want to set up second bets to trade out, hedge rules or other actions, then after bet rules are necessary.

Image 815

Type	Name	Initial	Status	Add rule	Description
	Cancel all unmatched bets when X bets get matched				Cancels all initial unmatched bets by this strategy when X bets are matched.
	Cancel bet if unmatched				Cancels unmatched initial bet when settings are satisfied.
	First in the queue				Updates unmatched initial bet to worse price so that bet offers best price on market for that selection.
	Hedge or close position		✓		Hedges places bet so that you get equal profit/loss regardless of outcome.
	Place bets when number of matched/unmatched bets on ma...				Allow strategy to proceed with placing new bets (if it is designed to do that) only when number of matched/unmatched bets by this strategy is in range.
	Trade out (second) bet		✓		Places unmatched trade out bet for initial bet placed by this strategy so that you get sure profit if both bets get matched.

Image 816



In the example strategies, the Horses – Trade before in play showed how After bet rules can be used to place a second trade out bet after the initial bet was placed and then also place an optional hedge bet to exit the trade at a certain point if needed.

After bet rules are always connected with one placed bet and activated after that bet is placed. This one placed bet is called the **INITIAL BET**.

The cycle is as following:

1. The strategy places one bet, this is the **INITIAL BET**.

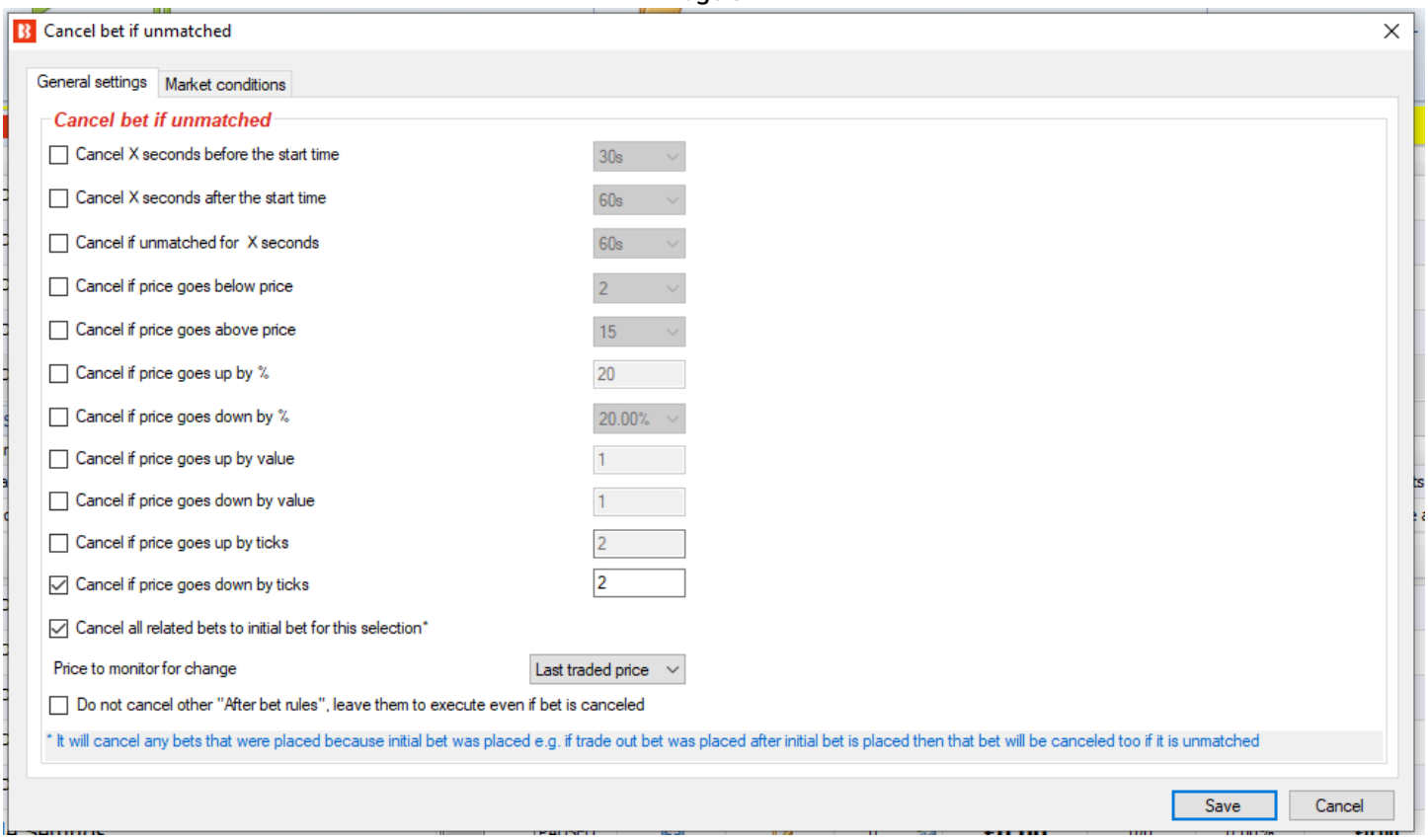
2. After bet rules get activated for this **INITIAL BET**.

3. Once after bet rules have executed, then the cycle is completed and the strategy can **place a new bet.** That will be **a new INITIAL BET** for which **new after bet rules** will be activated.

14.5.1 Cancel bet if unmatched

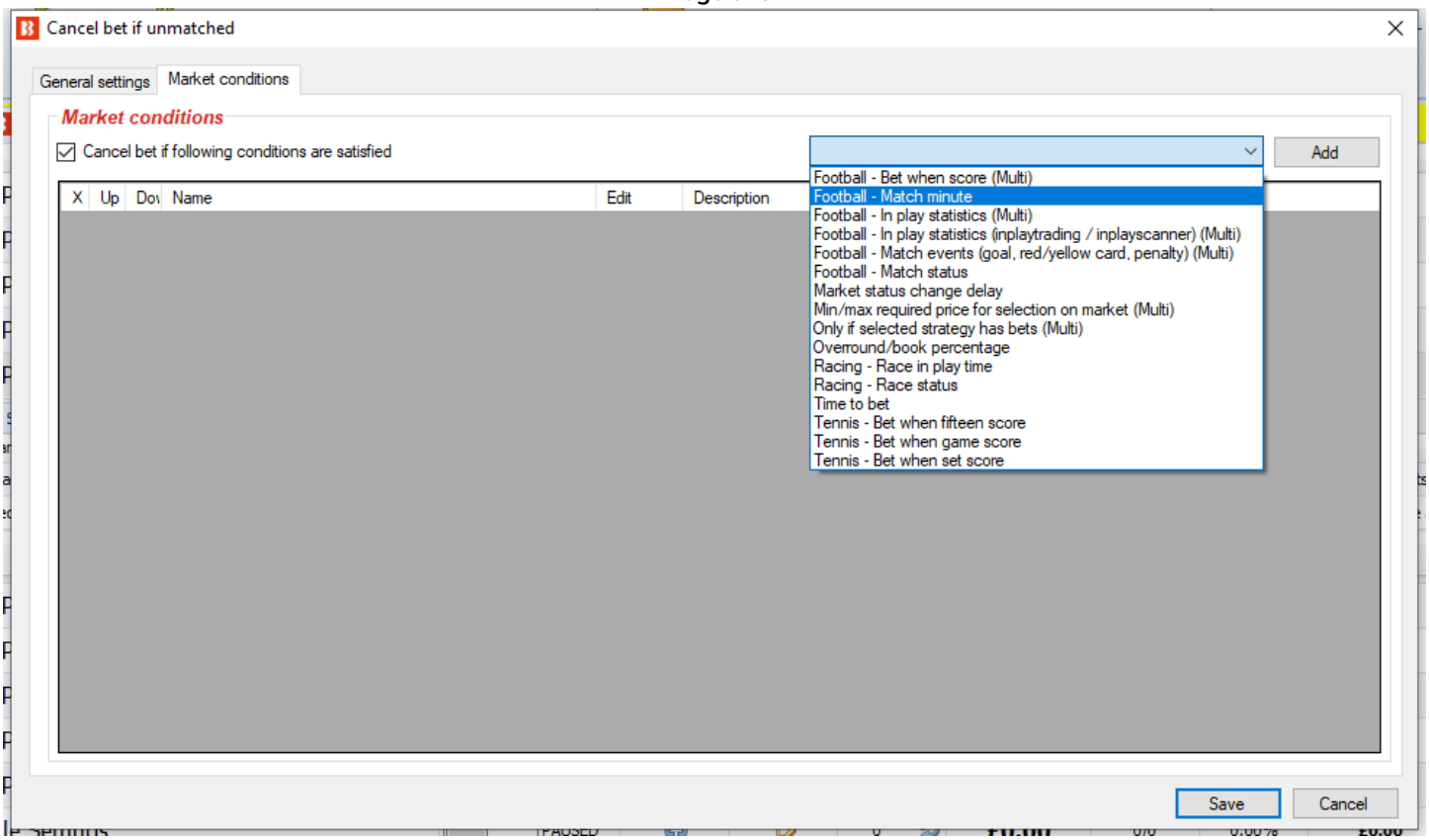
This is a very useful rule that helps you automate the actions that you might usually take if betting manually and trying to get bets matched.

Image 817



The **Cancel bet if unmatched** is a common rule that is used to cancel an unmatched bet if it is still unmatched after X seconds, until the price changes or until the market goes in play. This condition is usually used when asking for a better price than the one on the market. Once the unmatched bet, in this case that is the Initial Bet, is cancelled then the strategy will consider that bet/trading cycle completed and a new bet can be placed on the same selection by same strategy.

Image 818



It is also possible to add Market Conditions to the cancel unmatched bets rule. In this case you can set it up so that it would cancel unmatched bets if the score changes in football, the market status changes in horse racing or the game score changes in tennis, and so on.

14.5.2 Hedge or close position

The **Hedge condition** is used to place a bet that will give us **equal profit or loss regardless if our selection wins or loses**. There is also an option to switch from a hedge function to a **Close** function that can be used to get **profit or loss on one outcome and zero profit/loss on another**.

The 3 key areas of conditions that control <u>triggering the hedge function</u> are
The "**Conditions**" section on the right hand side of the Hedge rule General settings tab.
The "**Sport specific settings**" tab.
The "**Market Conditions for hedge**" tab.
These can be set with the "**Settings logical operator**" OR/AND function so that the hedge is triggered if just **one** of the conditions is met (OR) or only if **all** the conditions are met (AND).

The hedge rule in the Bf Bot Manager is one of the most useful tools for automated strategies. It is this rule that controls what the strategy will do after it has placed its initial bet

Image 819 Hedge rule – General Settings

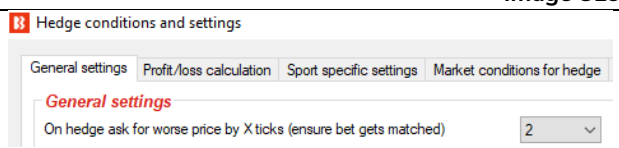
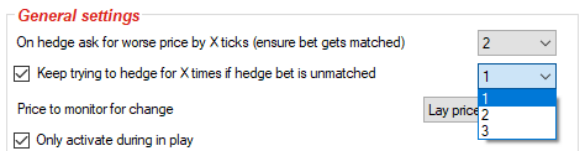
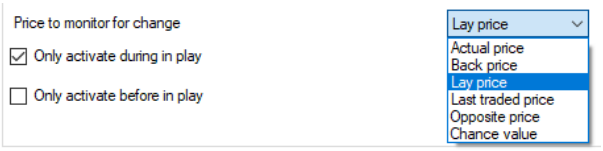
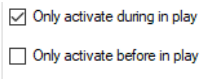
	On hedge **ask for worse price** is to help ensure bets get matched.
	**Keep trying to hedge for X times if hedge bet is unmatched** can be set to instruct the strategy to cancel and replace the bet up to 3 times at the current available price (with worsened price if selected).
	**Price to monitor for change** is the price that is compared with the initial bet price. The hedge function is used to hedge a position on a selection where the initial bet is placed. The Initial bet price is compared with the available price that we set here. Those two prices are compared by using the selected conditions in the "Conditions" section and if one of the selected conditions is true then the hedge function is triggered.
	**Only activate during in-play** and **Only activate before in-play** allow the timing of the hedge function to be limited. If neither of these two boxes are checked, the hedge rule will be active at all times.

Image 820 Hedge rule – Settings logical operator

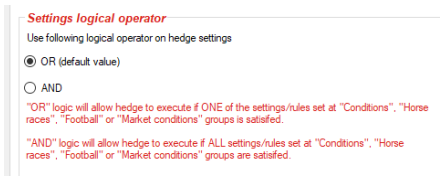
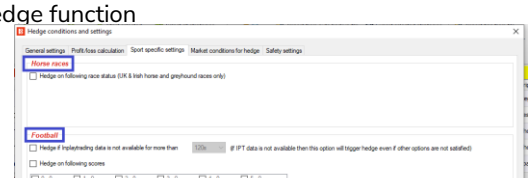
	The **logical operator** lets us set AND/OR for the hedge conditions. In this way we can create a number of triggers that only require one of them to activate the hedge (OR), or we can create a number of connected conditions that require all the conditions to be met for the hedge to be activated (AND). There are 4 areas of conditions that are linked to this, conditions, sport specific conditions (Horse races and Football) and market conditions for hedge.

Image 821 – 4 areas of conditions that trigger the hedge function



Strategy Rules
After bet rules

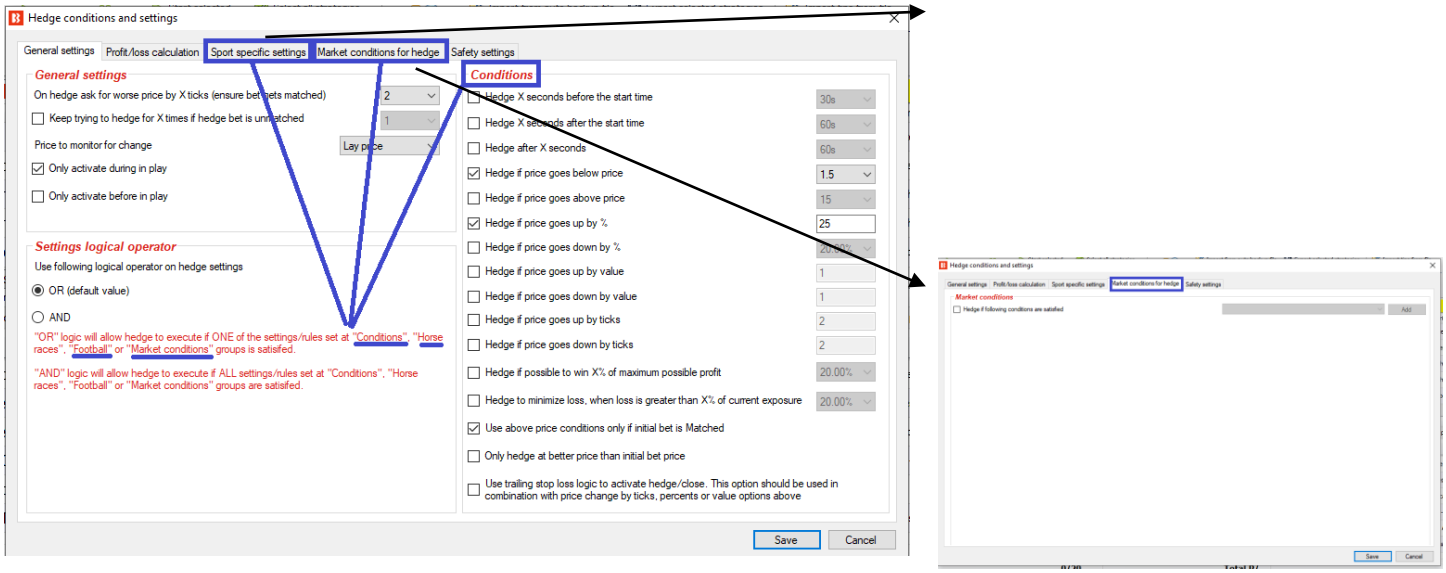
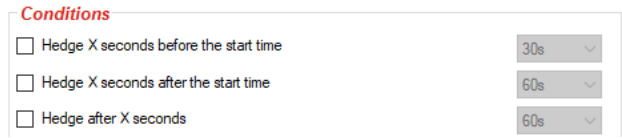
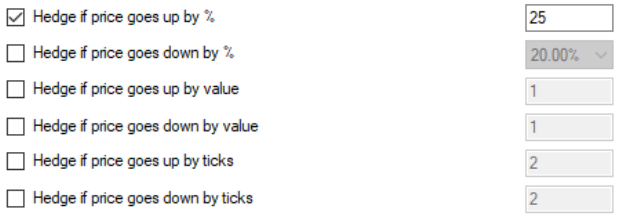
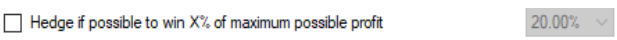
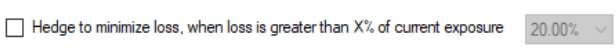


Image 822 Hedge rule – Conditions

	These 3 boxes allow you to **set precise times to hedge**. If the logic setting is set to OR, then the bot will hedge at that time regardless of other conditions. If the logic setting is set to AND, then it will try to hedge at that time if the other conditions are also met. **Hedge after X seconds** means it will hedge a certain amount of time after the initial bet has been made.
	These 2 options can set the hedge trigger for **if the odds price going above or below a certain number.** For this Lay the Draw example strategy, the hedge will be triggered if the odds go below 1.5. This is generally when the match is in the late stages and it is still a draw.
	These 6 options can set the hedge trigger to activate on **price changes up or down.** The price change can be measured in **percentage, value** or **by ticks**. In this Lay the Draw example, the hedge will trigger if the price (the odds) go up by 25%. This usually happens when a goal is scored.
	This option **hedges if a percentage of the potential profit can be achieved**. For example, if the initial bet of £10 at odds of 5.00 can win £40, then if this was set to 25%, and we can trade out to win £10 regardless of the outcome, then the hedge would be triggered.
	This option hedges **if a percentage of potential loss is reached.** If our liability is £100, but we

	want to trade out before all is lost, then this option can be used. For Lay the Draw traders, it would be a way to base the loss making trade out on the liability and not on specific odds drops.
☑ Use above price conditions only if initial bet is Matched	This function is to make sure that it **hedges only if the initial bet was matched**.
☐ Only hedge at better price than initial bet price	This option **prevents hedging out at a worse price**.
☐ Use trailing stop loss logic to activate hedge/close. This option should be used in combination with price change by ticks, percents or value options above ☐ Use trailing stop loss logic to activate hedge/close. This option should be used in combination with price change by ticks, percents or value options above	The trailing stop loss option will activate **the hedge if the price changes by a set percentage, ticks or value based on the in-play monitored prices, not the initial bet price.** This rule will monitor price change and it will not hedge if the price is moving in your favour, instead it will record minimum and maximum prices, and then, if the price starts moving against you, it will use those minimum and maximum recorded price values to calculate price change. For example, if you have Back bet £10 at odds of 5.0 and you set to execute hedge when price goes up by an odds value of 0.5 (to limit losses), but the price goes down to 4.0 and then it goes down again to 3.25. After that price moves up to 3.9. At this point, the price changed by +0.65 (3.9 – 3.25) and the hedge will execute as the price change is more than 0.5. The trailing stop loss function will not wait for the price to go up to 5.5 (5.0 + 0.5) to execute. It will execute at a lower price and save some of the profit.

Image 823 Hedge rule – Sport Specific Settings

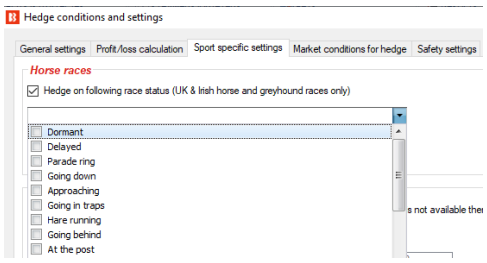
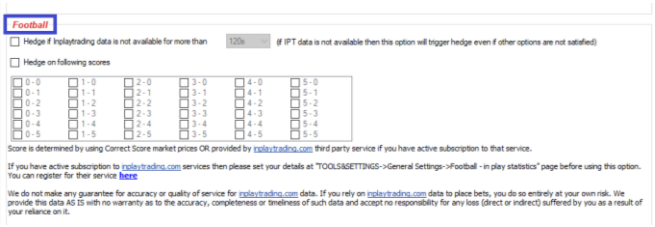
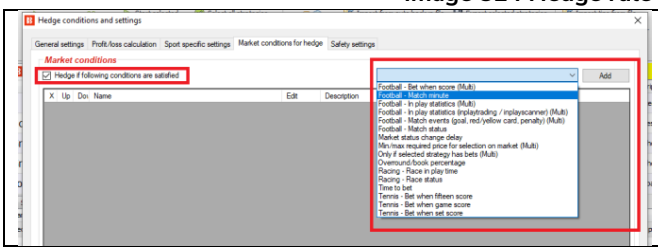
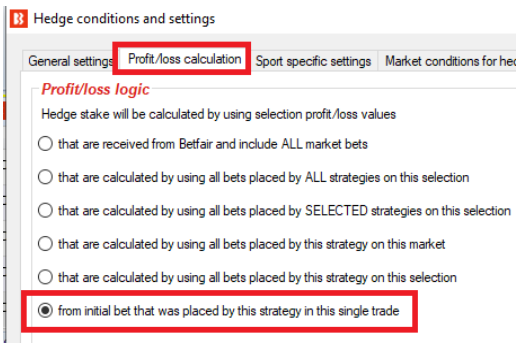
	The Horse races specific sports settings allow the **hedge to be triggered based on the race status** (but this only applies to UK & Irish horse and greyhound races only).
	The Football specific sports settings allow the hedge function to be triggered: if **live data is not available for a specific period of time** or if there are **specified scorelines**.

Image 824 Hedge rule – Market Conditions for Hedge

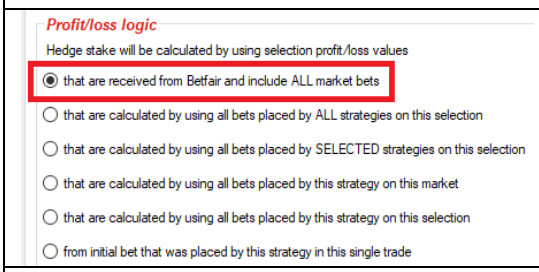


This function allows a variety of **Market Conditions rules** to be used for the hedge settings. This is very useful when trying to create very specific hedge rules connected to in-play events, scores, data and so on.

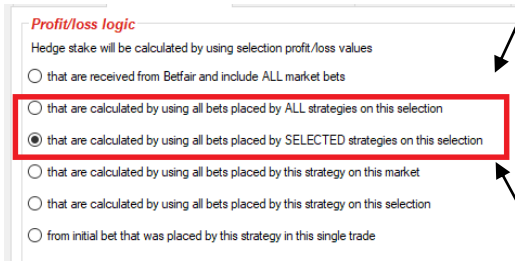
Image 825 Hedge rule – Market Conditions for Hedge



The **Profit/loss calculation** tab is important for making sure what the hedge bet is based on is clearly specified. **By default** the setting is **"Hedge stake will be calculated by using selection profit/loss values from initial bet that was placed by the strategy in this single trade."** This means the hedge is based on the first bet placed by this strategy. It is possible to use more advanced settings **where the hedge will be based on all this market's bets, all this selection's bets, selected strategies bets on this selection, all of this strategy's bets on this market, or all of this strategy's bets on this selection.** (See below for more details.)

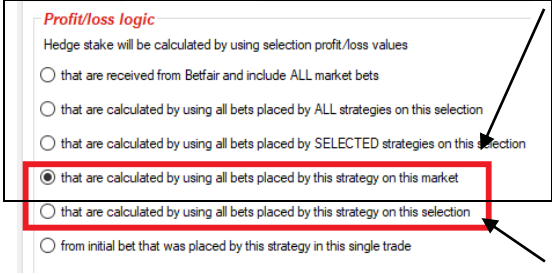


Use the Betfair "if wins" and "if loses" values that **include ALL bets on that market.** This is the most reliable way, but it includes all bets, not just bets placed by this strategy. You could get the wrong hedge amounts if you run multiple strategies separately and you want them to work individually.

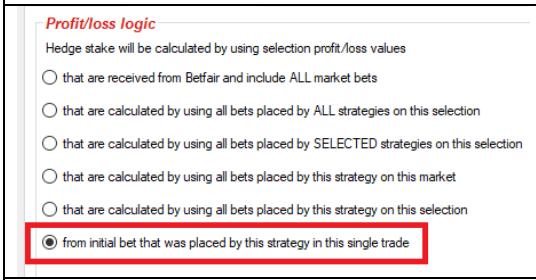
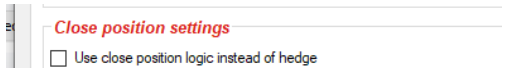


Use "if wins" and "if loses" values that **include ALL placed bets by ALL strategies on that market for that ONE SELECTION.** This means that if we have two strategies A and B, and in strategy A this hedge condition gets triggered, then strategy A will cancel Unmatched bets of strategies A and B, and use Matched bets from both strategies to calculate "if wins" and "if loses" values in order to place hedge bet.

Use "if wins" and "if loses" values that include **all placed bets by SELECTED strategies on that market for that ONE SELECTION**. This allows you to select the strategies whose bets should be included in the profit/loss calculation when calculating the stake for a hedge bet.



Use "if wins" and "if loses" values that include **ALL placed bets by THIS strategy on ALL selections in this MARKET**. This is a common option when running more than one strategy. It uses only bets from the strategy in which the condition is triggered to calculate the stake for a hedge bet.

	Use “if wins” and “if loses” values that are calculated by using **ALL placed bets by this strategy ONLY on this ONE SELECTION** for which the initial bet is placed.
	Use **only the initial bet stake** to get “if wins” and “if loses” values. This option means it will only use the stake from the initial bet by this strategy on this selection and ignore other bets. (This is the default setting unless manually changed.)
	The **close position** option **changes the hedge trade** (trade out with equal profit on all outcomes) **to a close trade** (trade out for profit on this selection and zero profit on other outcomes).

The Close position functionality works in the same way as Hedge functionality. The only difference is in the way the stake is calculated.

Lay bets close initial back bets.
Back bets close initial lay bets.

If you select to close a position by placing a Back bet, then the bet size will be calculated so that you do not lose any money or that you win money if that Close selection wins. This means that this functionality will place a bet so that you do not lose anything if the selection wins, but if selection loses you could lose money. When that Close bet is matched and combined with the initial bet, it means you can make profit if the selection wins and break even if the selection loses, but only if the close trade bet was matched with settings that require a price that was better than the initial bet price. This is important to understand.

If you select to close a position by placing a lay bet, then the bet size will be calculated so that you do not lose any money or that you win money if the selection loses. If the selection wins then you could lose money.

For example, if you have £10 Lay bet at price of 3.2 and you chose to close position when price goes above 4.0, then if you close position at price 5.0 by placing Back bet then you will win £18 if selection wins and you will get £0 if selection loses.

For close bets:

If you close a position when your selection is at better odds than the initial bet, it will give you profit on the selection win and break even on the selection loss.
If you close a position when your selection is at worse odds than the initial bet, it will give you some profit or break even on the selection win and some loss on the selection loss.

The same is true for hedge bets:

If you hedge a position when your selection is at better odds than the initial bet, it will give you equal profit whether the selection wins or loses.
If you hedge a position when your selection is at worse odds than the initial bet, it will give you equal loss whether the selection wins or loses.

Use the "**Only hedge at better price than initial bet price**" option in the hedge general settings tab if you want your hedge or close function only to activate in those cases.

Image 826

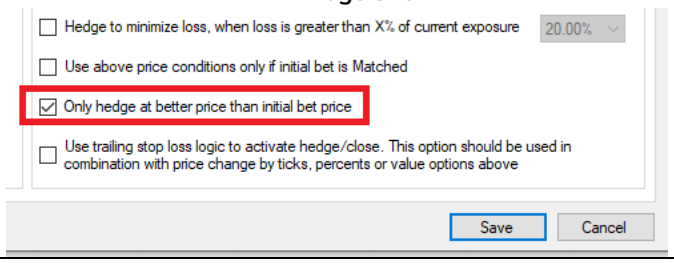
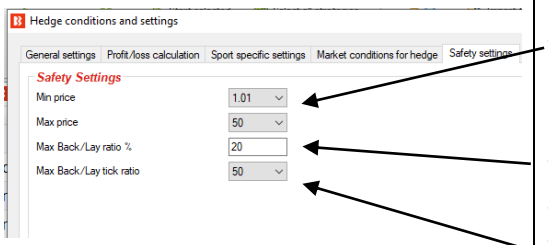


Image 827 Hedge rule – Safety Settings for Hedge



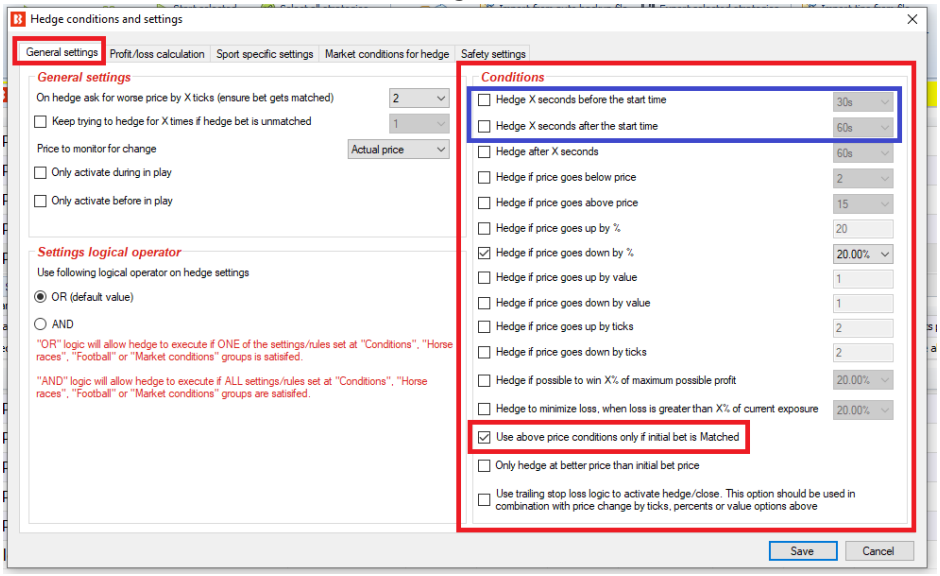
The **Safety Settings** tab is there for extra control over what kind of hedge bets can be made.

The **Min price** and **Max Price** limit the odds at which hedge bets can be made. When bets are being placed in-play, it can be important to be specific about what odds are acceptable.

The **Max Back/Lay ratio %** is to make sure the odds are close together in terms of percentages.

The **Max Back/Lay tick ratio** is to make sure the odds are close together in terms of ticks.

Image 828



At the bottom of the conditions section there is a condition "**Use above price conditions only if initial bet is Matched**" to specify that the hedge should not be attempted if the first bet is unmatched.

Note: The first two conditions in this section "Hedge X seconds before the start time" and "Hedge X seconds after the start time" are triggered before or after start time regardless if the checkbox "Use above price conditions only if initial bet is Matched" is ticked or not. Other conditions work in combination with this "Use above price conditions only if initial bet is Matched" checkbox and if the checkbox is unticked then the conditions will trigger even when the initial bet is unmatched, but if this checkbox is ticked then the conditions will only activate the hedge function if the initial bet is matched

or partially matched.

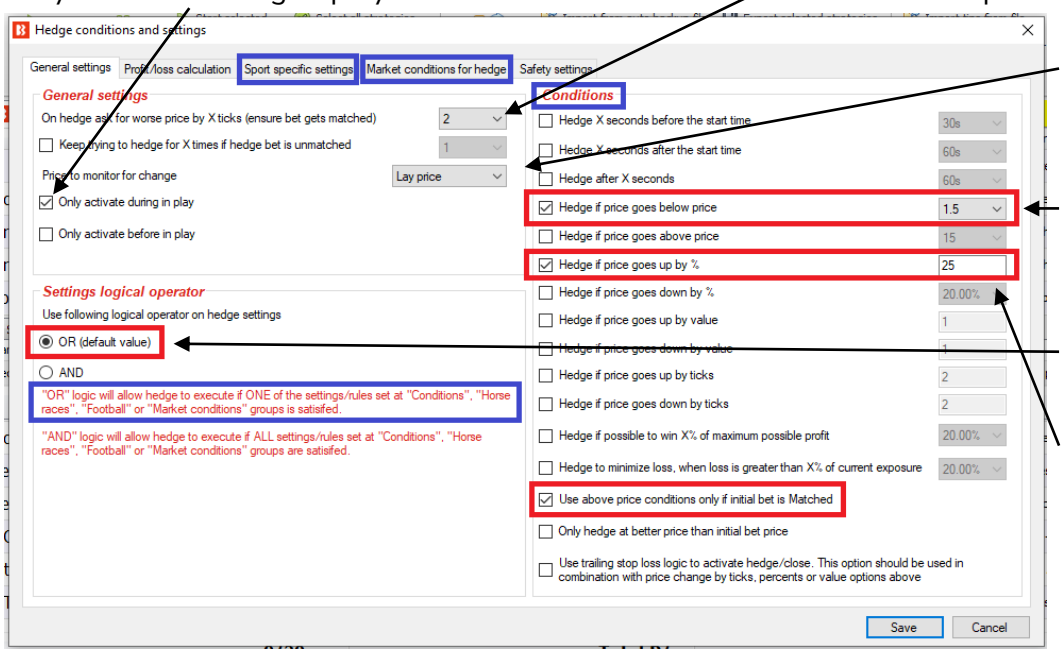
The option "**Only hedge at better price than initial bet price**" ensures that the hedge activates only when we can hedge at a better price than our initial bet price. This should ensure that we get profit if we are only hedging the initial bet.

The hedge rule was used in two of the example strategies:
Football - Lay The Draw
Horses – Trade before in play

In the Football – Lay the Draw example strategy, we want the bot to only trade out during in-play, to bet at a price worse by 2 ticks to help get matched, to follow the lay price, to trade out at a loss if the draw price goes down to 1.5 or to trade out for profit if the draw price goes up by 25% or more.

Image 829 Hedge rule

In the football example strategy, we want the bot to:
Only trade out during in-play.
To bet at 2 ticks worse price to help get matched.



To follow the lay price.

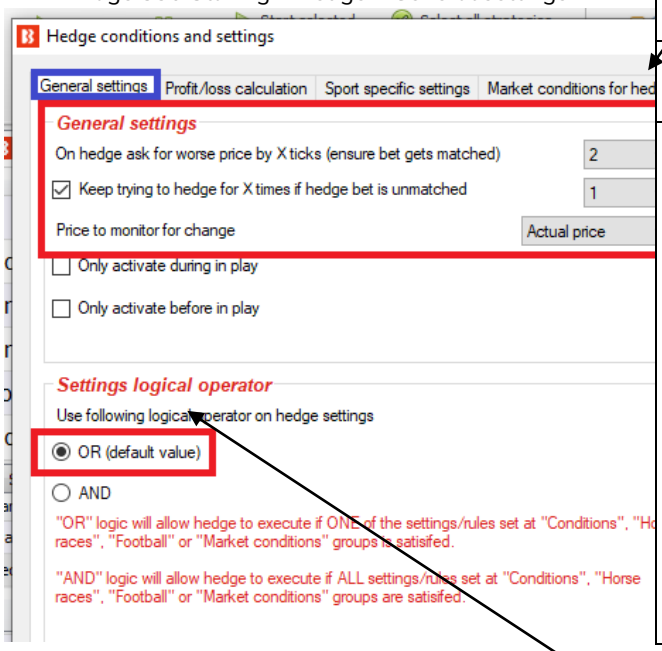
to trade out at a loss if the draw price goes down to 1.5

or

to trade out for profit if the draw price goes up by 25% or more. (Most likely triggered by a goal being scored.)

In the example strategy Horses – Trade before in play, we need to set a hedge bet to hedge positions 5 seconds before the event starts. The hedge rule has 5 active settings in the General settings and 1 active setting in the Profit/loss calculation.

Image 830 Staking – Hedge – General settings



This strategy is set to ask for a worse price by 2 ticks. This is to try and make sure the bets have a good chance of getting matched.

If the first hedge attempt is not successful, the bot will try again one time.

The strategy will use the Actual price when monitoring price change. The actual price means the relevant price for the bet the hedge will place. If the hedge is going to place a lay bet, it will monitor lay bets, if the hedge is going to place a back bet, it will monitor back prices. In this example strategy, in order to balance out multiple bets on multiple selections, such as back bets that did not have their second trade out lay bets matched or back bets that did have their second trade out lay bets matched or even partially matched, then back or lay bets may be placed by the hedge rule, in which case it needs to look at the Actual price for each bet type.

This hedge rule only has 1 trigger rule set, so the OR or AND rule for the logical operator would work fine. The hedge condition is set to hedge 5 seconds before the start time. So it will hedge regardless of anything.

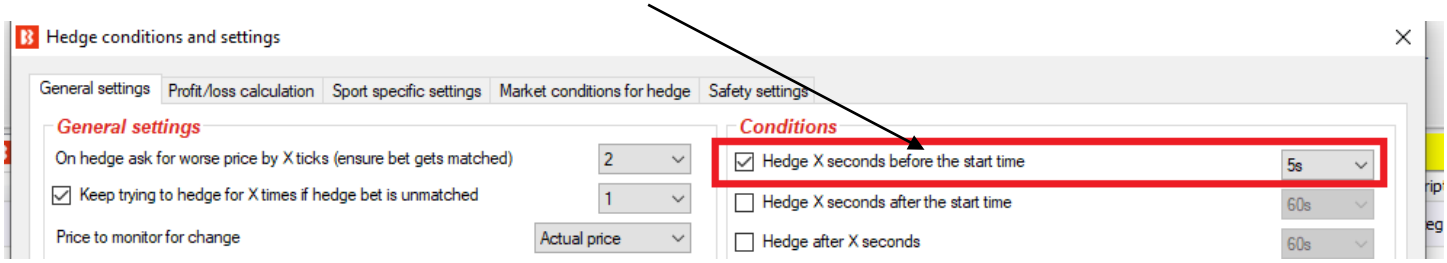
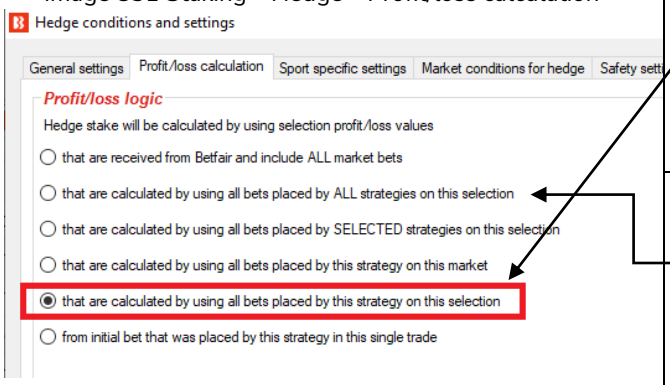


Image 831 Staking – Hedge – Profit/loss calculation



The Profit/loss calculation is changed from the default setting so the hedge will be calculated using all bets placed by this strategy on this selection. This is so the hedge will include the second trade out bet for each selection in each selection's hedge calculations.

Note that if there are bets on multiple selections in the market, the overall market profit will not be equal regardless of the event result. To do that would require the option above being selected, using all bets placed by this strategy on this market.*

*The Using all bets placed by this strategy on this market option does not guarantee that equal P/L will be achieved in all cases. It just tells the bot to place bets to get equal P/L. If the other hedge conditions are met and the hedge is triggered for each of the selections, then hedge bets will be placed to get equal P/L regardless of the outcome. But if any of those hedge bets are not matched, then the final potential P/L will be different for each selection. Also, if the hedge is triggered for some selections, but not others, then the final P/L will not be equal.

For the example strategy "Horses – Trade before in-play", the hedge rule is triggered by time. (5 seconds before the race starts.) So if we selected the **Using all bets placed by this strategy on this market** option, then hedge bets will be placed to get equal P/L regardless of the outcome, and there is a good chance that an equal P/L can be achieved.

For example, consider a race where initial bets were placed on Runners 1, 2 and 3.

Selection	**Initial Bet and Second Trade Out Bet Status**	**Pre-hedge P/L**
Runner 1	Back bet matched, Second Trade out matched	+£5/+£5
Runner 2	Back bet matched, Second Trade out unmatched	+£20/-£10
Runner 3	Back bet matched, Second Trade out partially matched	+£15/-£7

With the current hedge setting for this example strategy, the hedge stake will be calculated by using the selection profit/loss values "**using all bets placed by this strategy on this selection**" This will result in each selection gets different post-hedge P/L (if the hedge bet is matched).

Selection	**Initial Bet and Second Trade Out Bet Status**	**Pre-hedge P/L**	**Post-hedge P/L**
Runner 1	Back bet matched, Second Trade out matched	+£5/+£5	+£5/+£5
Runner 2	Back bet matched, Second Trade out unmatched	+£20/-£10	+£2/+£2
Runner 3	Back bet matched, Second Trade out partially matched	+£15/-£7	-£1/-£1

However,
If we choose the hedge setting "**using all bets placed by this strategy on this market**", then each selection aims to get the same post-hedge P/L (if the hedge bet is matched).

Selection	Initial Bet and Second Trade Out Bet Status	Pre-hedge P/L	Post-hedge P/L
Runner 1	Back bet matched, Second Trade out matched	+£5/+£5	+£1/+£1
Runner 2	Back bet matched, Second Trade out unmatched	+£20/-£10	+£1/+£1
Runner 3	Back bet matched, Second Trade out partially matched	+£15/-£7	+£1/+£1

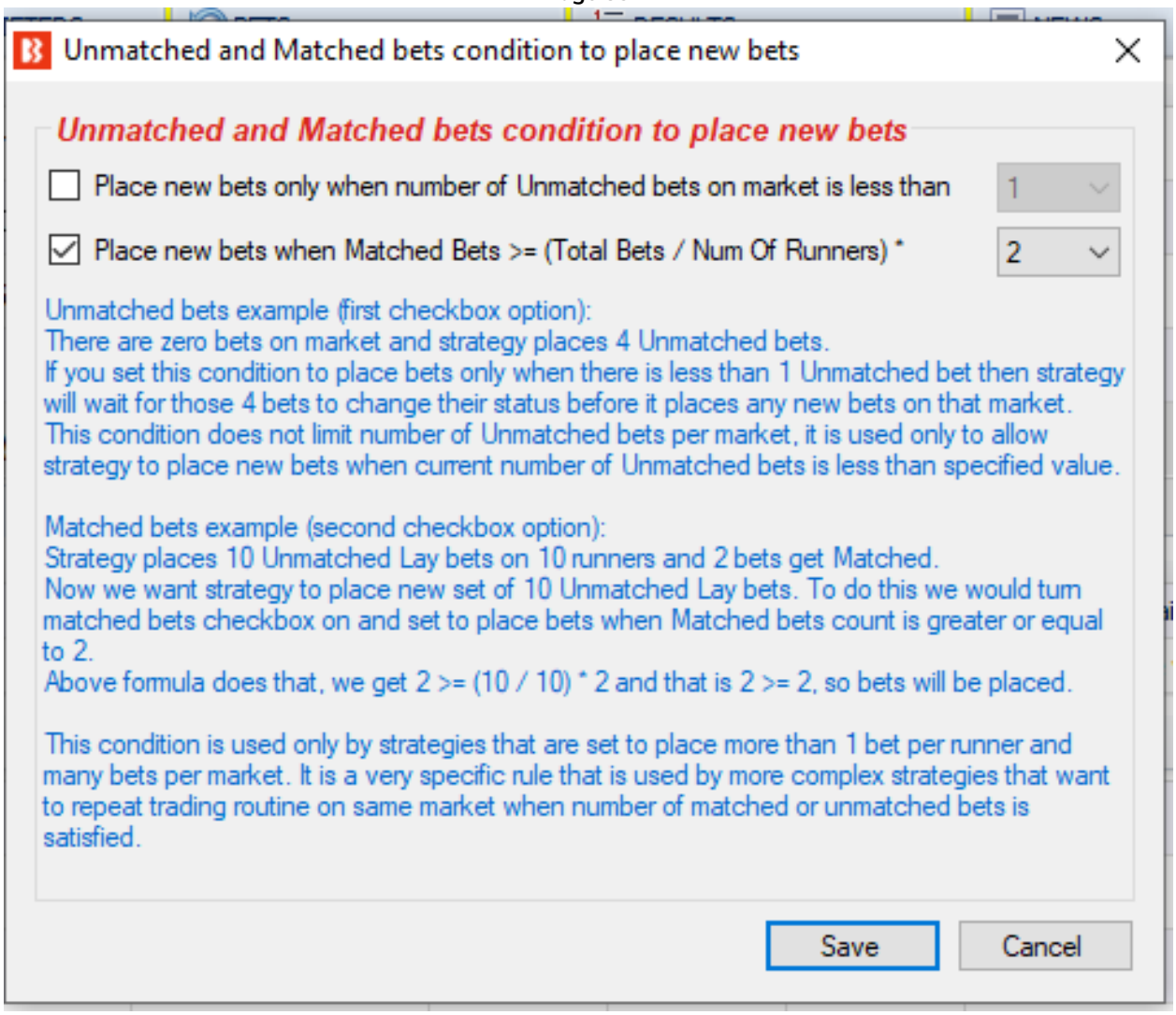
The hedge out bets are not placed at the same time, but executed separately for each initial bet and second trade bet placed by that strategy. If we have three bets on Runners 1, 2 and 3, then hedge rule would place three separate hedge bets. The first hedge bet would use only matched initial and matched second trade out bets P/L, the second hedge bet would use initial bets, second trade out bets and the first hedge bet P/L, while the third hedge bet would use initial bets, second trade out bets and the first and second hedge bets to calculate market profit loss.

For this example horse strategy, all hedge bets will be triggered since it is a time based trigger 5 seconds before the event starts.

But if the hedge trigger is based on other variables, such as price change, there is a possibility that not all 3 hedge bets would be triggered. For example, if the hedge rule was triggered by the selection odds increasing by 5%, and we have 3 selections in the market with bets on, then there is a higher chance of unequal P/L after the hedge. This is because if 1 of the selections goes on to win the race and its odds never go up 5%, then its hedge will never be triggered. But the other 2 selections would have been. When creating strategies using this function, it is highly recommended to run them in simulation mode and check carefully that the hedge is executing as you intend.

14.5.3 Place bets when number of Matched/Unmatched bets on market is in range

Image 832

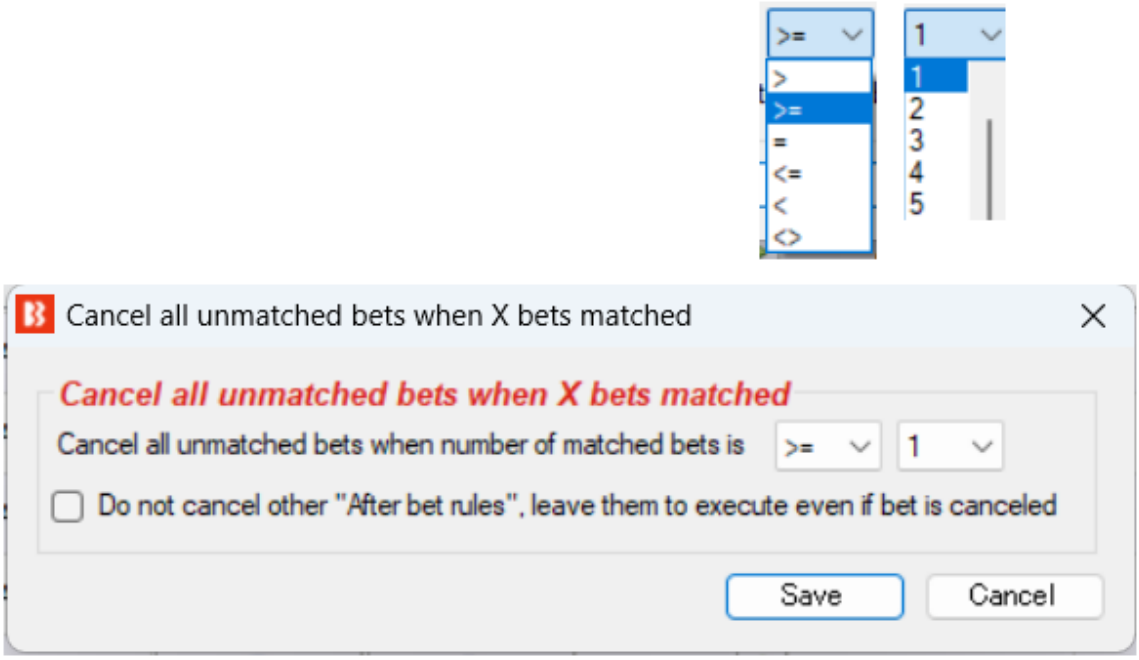


For some specific strategies, it is necessary to prevent the strategy from placing bets until a certain number of bets are matched or placed.

Example, if we place 5 Lay bets that are Unmatched and we want to place new Lay bets as soon as 2 out of those 5 bets get Matched then we can use this condition to make the bot wait for bets to be Matched before placing a new round of bets.

14.5.4 Cancel all unmatched bets when X bets get matched

Image 833

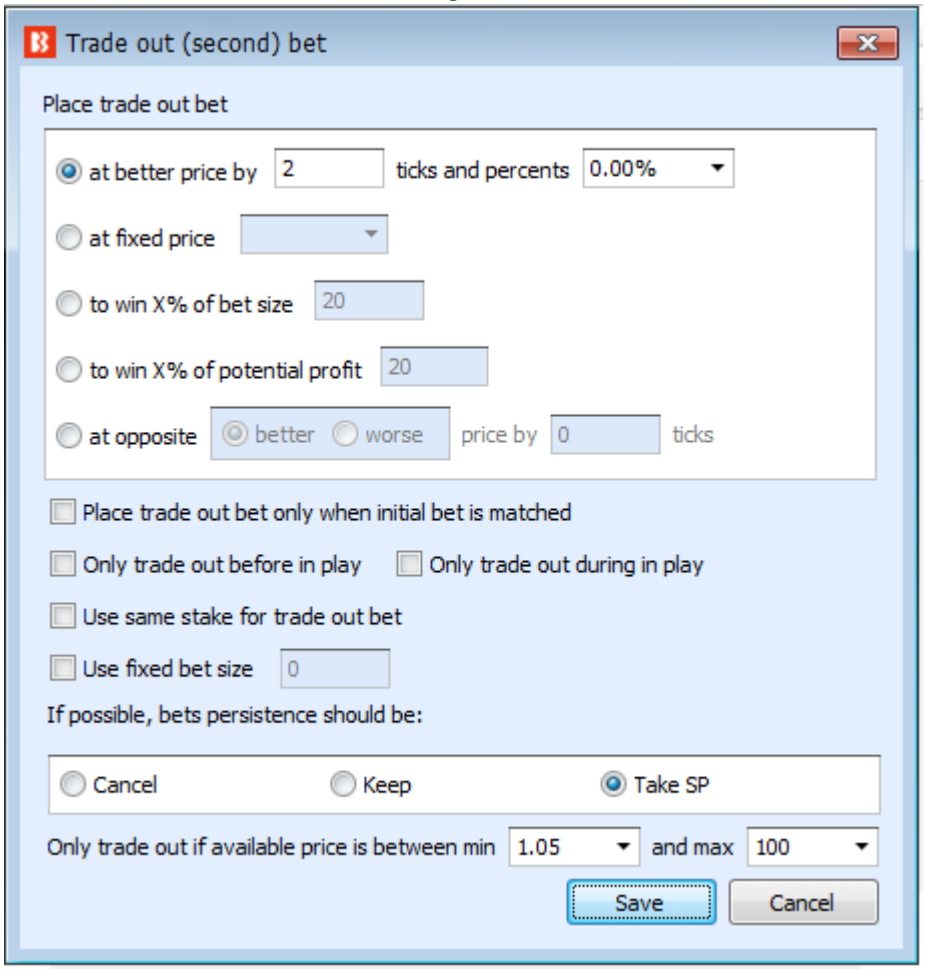


This condition is useful when placing more than one unmatched bet at same time. For example, if you are placing unmatched bets on all runners at price 1.10 then, when the first bet gets matched, you want the strategy to cancel the other bets. In that case, you would set this to cancel bets when the number of matched bets is greater or equal to 1. Other logical rules can be used, too.

Once this condition is triggered then it will cancel the other conditions in the “After bet rules” tab. If you want to keep the after bet rules active, then tick the checkbox “Do not cancel other “After bet rules” leave them to execute even if bet is cancelled.”.

14.5.5 Trade out (second) bet

Image 834



A **Trade out (second) bet** is usually placed after the first (initial) bet is placed with such a stake so that you win profit regardless of whether the selection wins or not. **Unlike the hedge bet trade out, this bet is placed unmatched and at a better price than the first (initial) bet.** A better price can be calculated as **X ticks/percent better price** or **a better price that will make you profit of X% from the initial bet size**.
If you want to use only the ticks option then set the percent to zero and vice versa.

It is possible to **trade out at a fixed price.** This can be useful, for example, if you want to trade out in-play when the odds hit a certain level such as 1.01 and the outcome is all but decided, however, instead of waiting for the odds to reach that level and then adding your bet to the queue, you can tick the "Only trade out in play" checkbox, and then the bot will place the trade out bet when the market goes in-play and the unmatched bet will sit there nearer the front of the queue.

It is also possible to **place a bet at the opposite price** (better or worse) (Back price for Lay bet, Lay price for Back bet) improved by X ticks. The price must be never equal to or worse than initial bet price. Placing the second bet at a worse price than the opposite price will result in the bet being front of the queue. Placing the second bet at a better price than the opposite price will result in the bet being the 2nd

best opposite lay price than currently available.

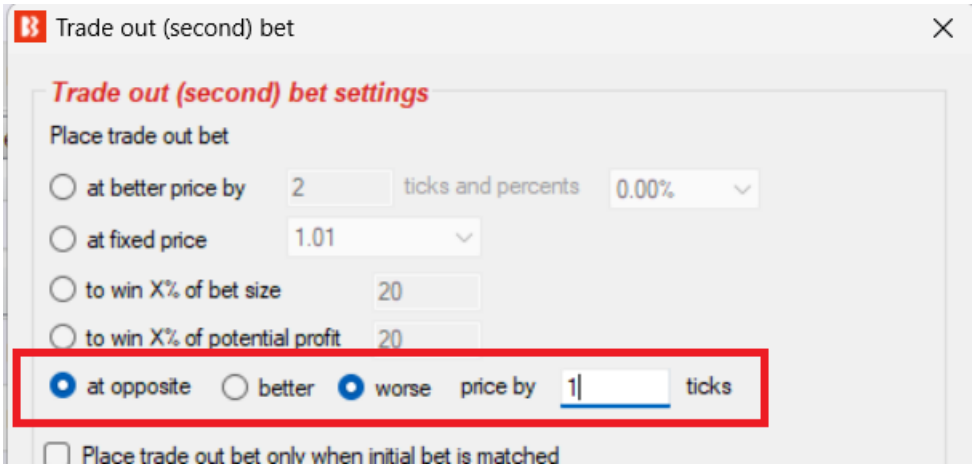
For example, in the image below, if the bot is set to place an initial back bet at the “opposite price”, it will place a back bet at a price of 1.95. Then, if it is set to place a second trade out bet at the “opposite price”, it will place a lay bet at odds of 1,91.

Image 835

3 selections	102.2%		Back all	Lay all		99.1%
San Antonio FC	1.89 £78	1.9 £126	1.91 £63	1.95 £25	1.97 £61	1.98 £54
Colorado Springs FC	4.5 £72	4.6 £59	4.7 £50	4.9 £38	5.1 £39	5.2 £37
The Draw	3.4 £56	3.45 £89	3.5 £66	3.65 £16	3.7 £115	3.75 £55

If we change the settings to “**Place a trade out bet at opposite worse price by 1 tick”** than it would place a second trade out bet at odds of 1.92. (The price is worse because we are laying at higher odds.) If we change the settings to “**Place a trade out bet at opposite better price by 1 tick**” than it would place a second trade out bet at odds of 1.90. (The price is better because we are laying at lower odds.)

Image 836



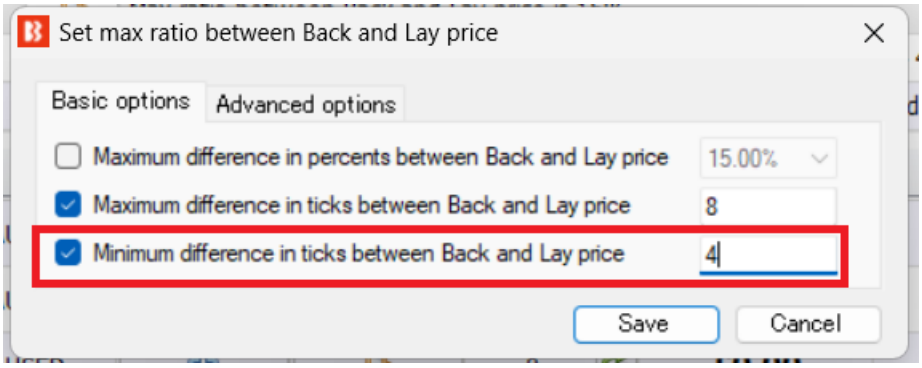
Be careful with this rule. In the image below, the odds are close together with no gap. If the settings are “Place initial bet at opposite price worse by 1 tick” and “Place a trade out bet at opposite worse price by 1 tick” than it would place an initial back bet at 1.39, which is the opposite price of 1.40 minus 1 tick. **If the initial back bet was placed at 1,39, then it would not be able to place this second trade out bet since it is a worse price than the initial bet and would lead to a loss.** The second trade out bet would, in theory, be a lay bet at 1.40, which is the opposite price plus 1 tick. The trade out (second) bet rule cannot place bets at equal or worse odds than the initial bet. In this case below, it would not be able to place a second trade out bet until the odds decreased and it could place a bet 1 tick worse than an opposite price that is also at a better price than the initial bet. In the example below, it would only be able to place the second trade out bet if the opposite price (back price for the lay bet) decreased to 1.37, and then it could place a trade out lay bet at odds of 1.38, which would be lower than the example initial back bet of 1.39. This would result in a profit if both bets are fully matched.

Image 837

3 selections	100.4%		Back all	Lay all		98.9%
Fenerbahce	1.37 £2702	1.38 £224	1.39 £1982	1.4 £1477	1.41 £545	1.42 £371
Sivasspor	9 £13	9.2 £58	9.4 £11	9.8 £25	10 £288	10.5 £92
The Draw	5.4 £109	5.5 £81	5.6 £1406	5.8 £62	5.9 £95	6 £102

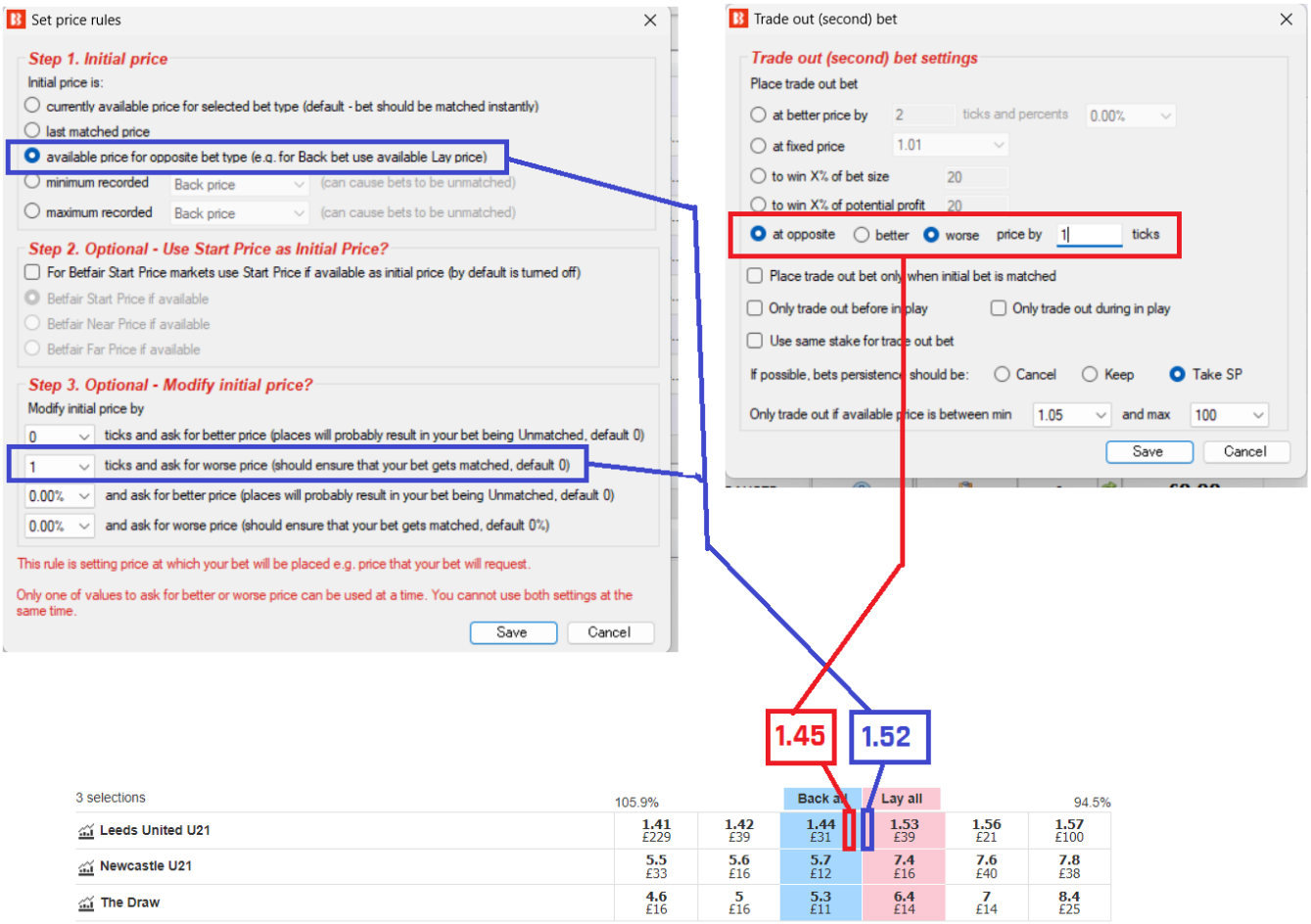
When using this "Place a trade out bet at opposite price" option, it may be useful to also add a Selection **Condition "Set max ratio between Back and Lay Price"** to set a **"Minimum difference in ticks between Back and Lay Price."** By doing this, we can avoid the problem that might occur in the previous example.

Image 838



By using a maximum and minimum difference rule to find selections with a gap between their prices, together with the price settings to ask for a worse price for the initial and trade out (second) bet, it can be possible to place an initial bet, followed by a second trade out bet that are front of the queue on both the back and lay sides.

Image 839



By default, it will place a trade out bet immediately after the first (initial) bet is placed (matched or unmatched) or you can tick the checkbox "**Place trade out bet only when initial bet is matched**" to make the bot wait for the initial bet to be matched before placing a trade out bet.

You may also tick option "**Use same stake for trade out bet**" to use same the stake as initial bet, otherwise the stake will be calculated so that you win an equal amount of money whether the selections wins or loses.

You can also tick the option **"Use fixed bet size"** and specify the currency amount that you want the second bet sake placed at.

Bets persistence can be set for the trade out bet e.g. If the bet is unmatched, you may want to set persistence to Keep so that the bet stays alive when the market goes in play or use persistence Take SP so that the bet gets matched at the Betfair Start Price. When using the bet persistence "Take SP", please be aware that the bet will be matched at the calculated Betfair Start Price when the market goes in play and this price can be significantly different from the price that was requested by your bet.

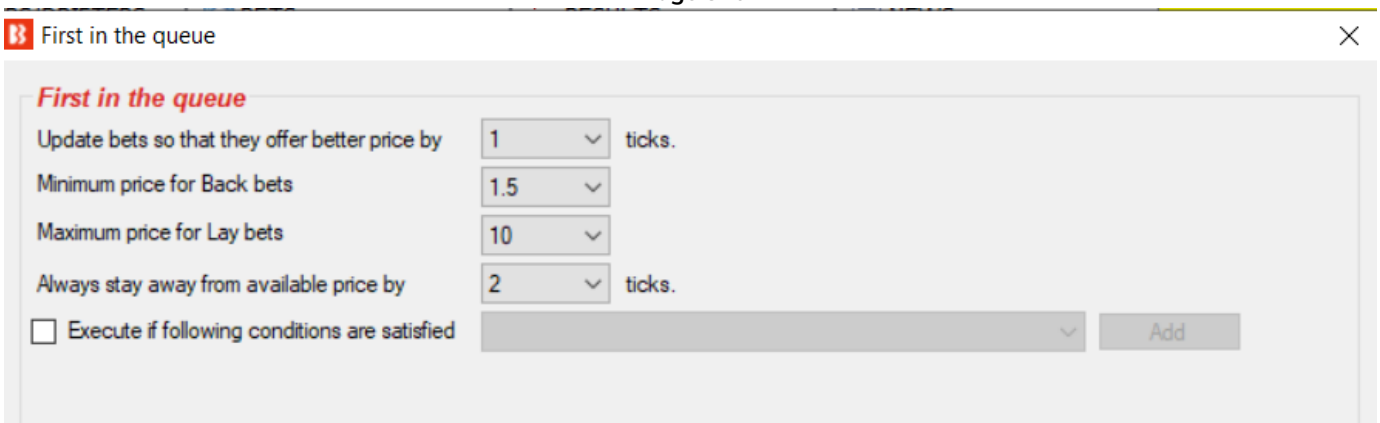
For the trade out to be placed, **the price of the selection must be within the specified min/max price**

range. This ensures that in cases when the prices change fast (e.g. during in running), the bot does not place trade out bets if the runner price is outside your price range (e.g. price went up to 500 because your horse is losing the race), in which case you do not want a trade out bet to be placed as it is very likely to lose you money.

You can also set this condition to **only place bets during in play** or **only before in play.**

14.5.6 First in the queue

Image 840



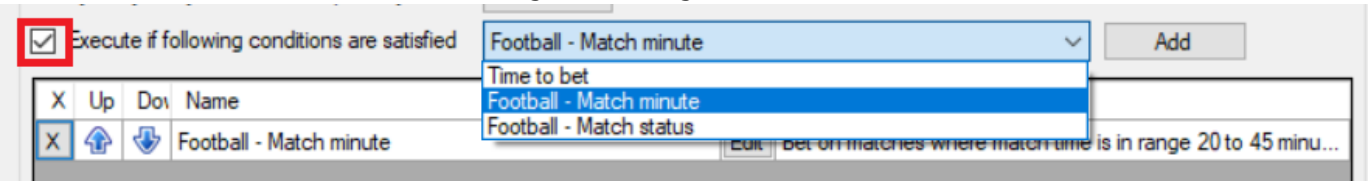
The **First in the queue** rule will update your unmatched bets so that they always offer the best available price. **Your bet price will be updated whenever someone else offers a better price than your price.** The price will not be updated if a new price is outside set min/max price.
Each update results in a new bet, as that is how Betfair works. This means that your strategy might get many bets (cancelled/unmatched) and this can have an effect on staking plans. Because of this, it is advised not to use staking plans in combination with rule.

You can **set the number of ticks to offer a better price than the one on the market** e.g. If the Lay price is 2.0 and you set to offer a better price by 3 ticks, it would result in a Lay price of 1.97 by the Betfair odds ladder.

You can also use the "**Always stay away from available price by**" rule set the minimum distance in **ticks from the opposite available price** e.g. For a Back price 1.8 and Lay price 2.0, if we set the minimum distance in ticks to 5 then your Lay bet can only be updated from price 2.0 down to 1.85, it will not go lower than 1.85 as that would result in less than 5 ticks from the available Back price.

The **Minimum Back price** and **maximum Lay price** are used to prevent updating your bet to bad prices e.g. Backing at a very low price like 1.10 and Laying at high price like 100 or more.

Image 841 Adding Time Conditions



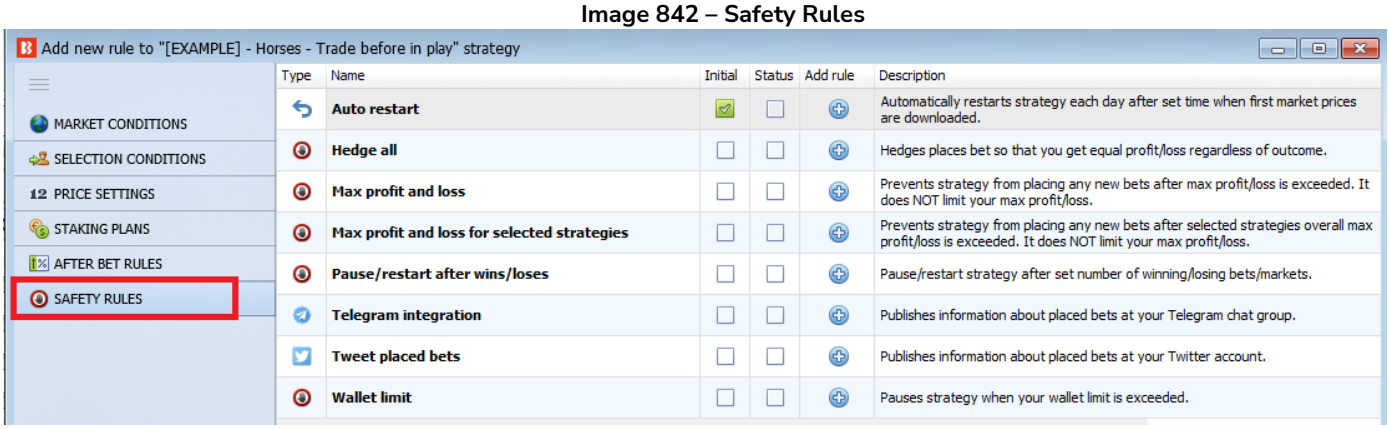
Adding time conditions will only enable this rule when the specified times are valid. For example, in the image above it will only allow the first in the queue rule from the 20m to 45m mark of the game.

Warning: This "First in the queue" rule should not be used with other after bet rules, hedge rules, staking plans, loss recovery or any other rule that calculates its stake by using previous bets. This rule is designed to cancel unmatched bets and to place new bets at a worse price. This rule should be used only for making offers on markets and trading.

14.6 Safety rules

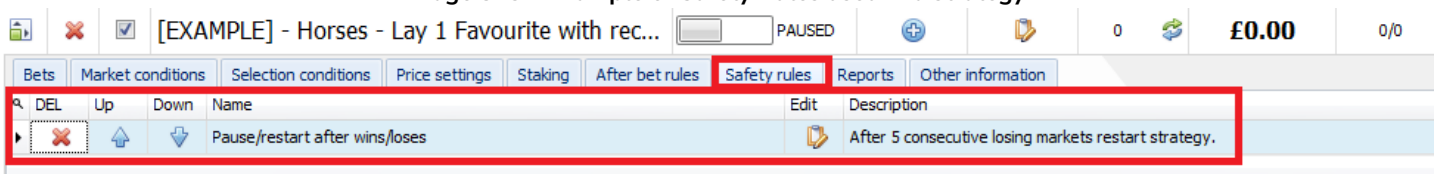
Safety rules are checked each time when a strategy is about to try to place bets. If none of the safety rules are triggered, then the strategy will attempt to place bets. Safety rules are used to protect our profits by preventing the strategy from betting when it reaches our target profit or max loss. Safety rules also include some informative functions that connect to Twitter or Telegram to notify you when a strategy places a bet.

Image 842 – Safety Rules



The example strategy Horses – Lay 1 Favourite with recovery shows a safety rule in use.

Image 843 – Example of Safety Rules used in a strategy



14.6.1 Max profit/loss

The **Max profit/loss** condition checks the strategy total profit and loss **by value** or **percentage of betting bank**. Once it reaches the max profit or loss specified by this condition it will force the strategy to stop placing bets. This condition will only stop the strategy for which it is added, it will not stop other strategies from placing new bets. For that you would need the Max profit and loss for selected strategies rule.

Warning: This rule will not limit bet sizes or limit your profit/loss to set values. **It will only stop the strategy from placing new bets** when the max profit/loss is exceeded.

If strategy is set to place high stakes or multiple bets then it can easily create a much higher profit or loss than the safety setting. For example, if the max loss is set to £50 but a strategy is set to place 20 bets at the same time with stake sizes of £100, then that would mean that those 20 bets could create a loss of £2,000, which is much higher of max loss of £50. Once those lost bets of £2,000 are settled, the strategy profit/loss will be updated to -£2,000 and ONLY THEN does the "£50 max loss" setting prevent NEW bets being placed. So when using the safety setting, keep in mind the stake size, number of bets that could be placed simultaneously and thus the possible loss that could occur before this safety rule could come into effect.

Image 844 – Max profit/loss settings

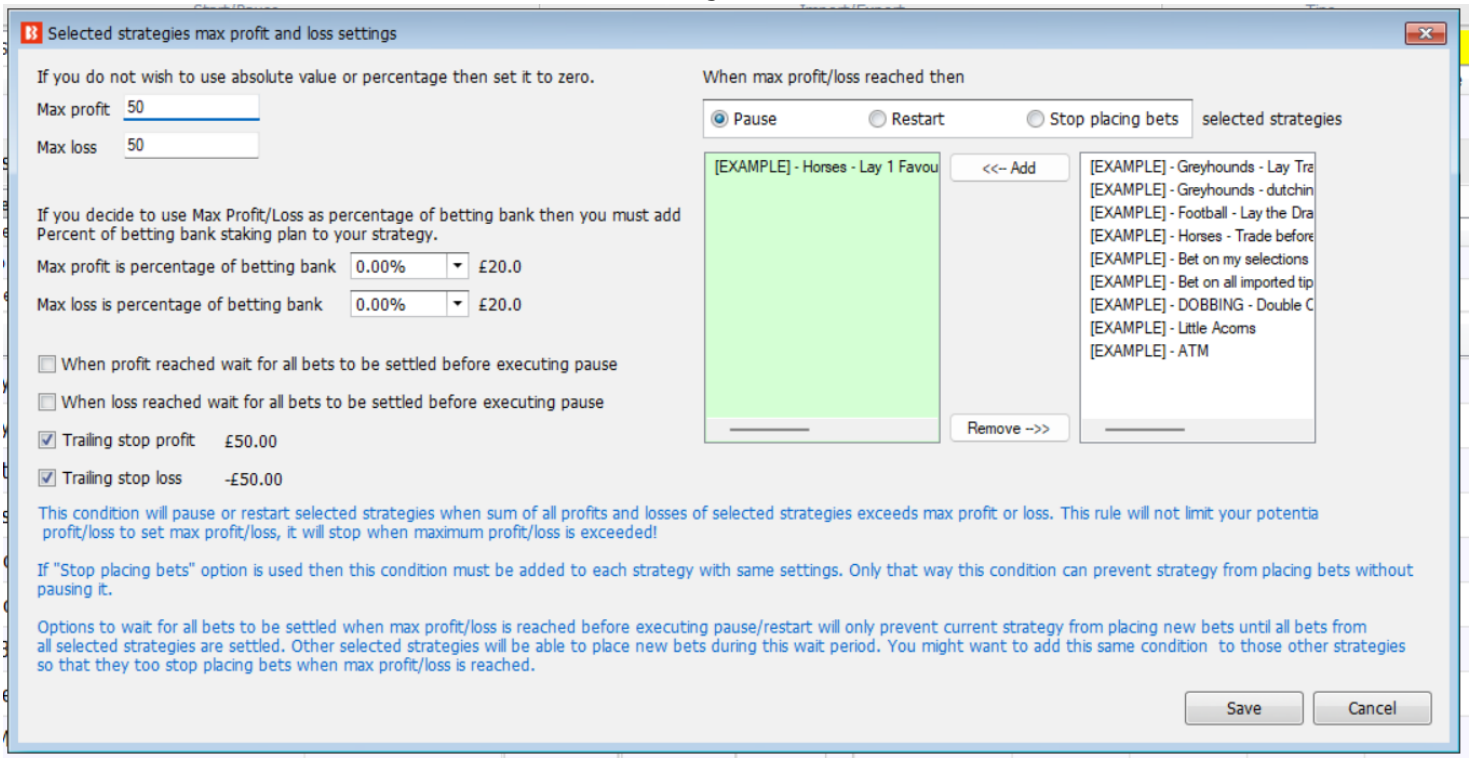
The **trailing stop loss/profit** will adjust your max profit/loss as your strategy profit/loss changes.
If you make a profit, then the "**Trailing stop loss**" figure will be adjusted upwards. So if your stop loss is -£50 and you win £10, then the stop loss is increased to -£40, so if you make a loss of £50 from that position of £10 profit, then it will pause the strategy.

If you make a loss, then then the "**Trailing stop profit"** will be adjusted downwards.
So if your stop profit is £100 and you lose £20, then the stop profit is reduced to £80, so if you make a profit of £100 from that position of £-20 loss, then it will pause the strategy.

14.6.2 Max profit and loss for selected strategies

When two or more strategies work together or have connected logic then it is useful to stop them all when their overall profit or loss limit is reached.

Image 845



Max profit/loss can be set as percentage of betting bank. To use this functionality you must also add a "Staking->Percent of betting bank" staking plan to your strategy.

This condition **calculates total profit and loss from the selected strategies**. When it is reached, it pauses, restarts or stops placing bets with those selected strategies.

One difference between pausing a strategy and using the "**Stop placing bets**" option is that the stop placing bets option leaves the strategy running and checking if the conditions preventing it betting change or not. For example, if another strategy that has not been paused makes profit, taking the selected strategies P/L inside the maximum that allows this strategy to start placing bets again, then this rule is useful. **If you are using the "Stop placing bets" option then you will need to add this condition to each strategy to which you want it to apply**.

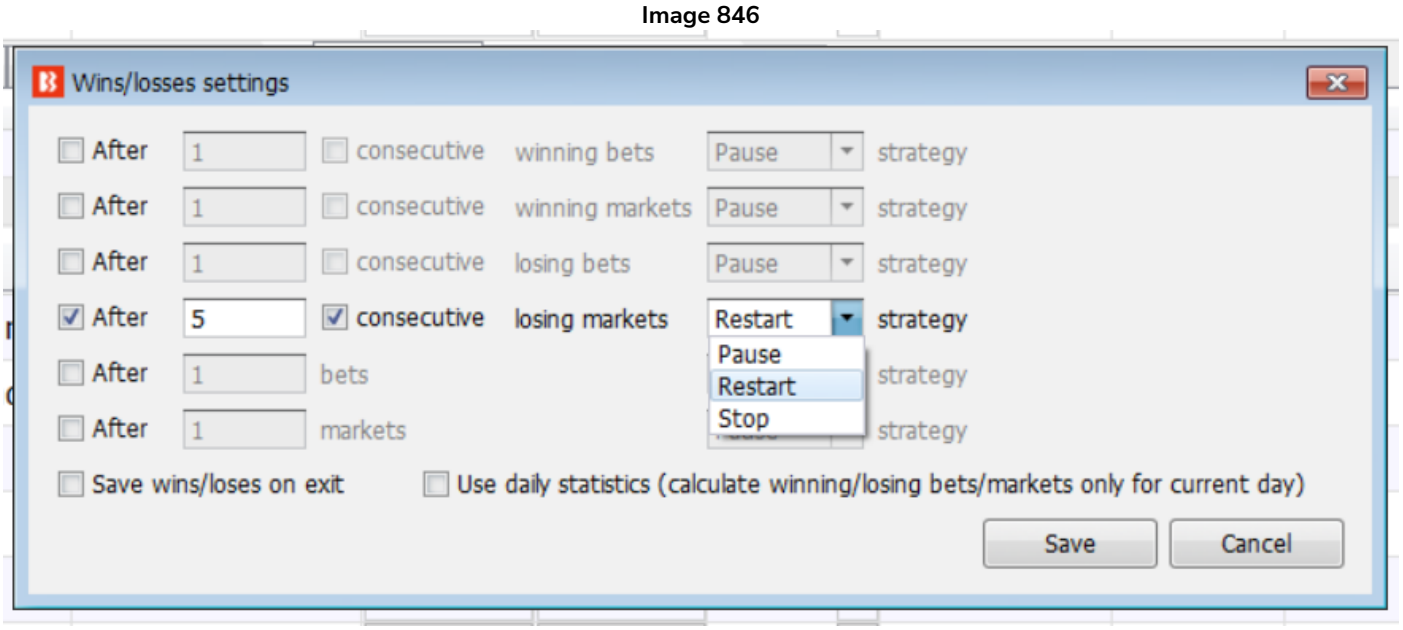
The trailing stop loss/profit will adjust your max profit/loss as your selected strategies profit/loss changes.
If you make a profit, then the "**Trailing stop loss**" figure will be adjusted upwards. So if your stop loss is -£50 and you win £10, then the stop loss is increased to -£40, so if you make a loss of £50 from that position of £10 profit, then it will pause, restart or stop placing bets with this strategy.
If you make a loss, then then the "**Trailing stop profit**" will be adjusted downwards.
So if your stop profit is £100 and you lose £20, then the stop profit is reduced to £80, so if you make a profit of £100 from that position of £-20 loss, then it will pause, restart or stop placing bets with this strategy.

Warning: This rule will not limit bet sizes or limit your profit/loss to set values. **It will only stop the strategy from placing new bets** when the selected strategies max profit/loss is exceeded.

If a strategy is set to place high stakes or multiple bets then it can easily create a much higher profit or loss than the safety setting. For example, if the max loss is set to £50 but a strategy is set to place 20 bets at the same time with stake sizes of £100, then that would mean that those 20 bets could create a loss of £2,000, which is much higher of max loss of £50. Once those lost bets of £2,000 are settled, the selected strategies profit/loss will be updated to -£2,000 and ONLY THEN does the "£50 max loss" setting prevent NEW bets being placed. So when using the safety setting, keep in mind the stake size, number of bets that could be placed simultaneously and thus the possible loss that could occur before this safety rule could come into effect. This gets more complicated to forecast as more strategies' P/L are connected together.

14.6.3 Pause/restart after wins/loses

Image 846



The **Pause/restart after wins/losses rule** allows the strategy to be set to pause, restart or stop when it reaches a total or consecutive number of winning bets, winning markets, losing bets, losing markets, bets or markets. These statistics can be counted for this bot session, or saved on exit, or only counted as daily figures.

Most strategies need to be paused or restarted when number of (consecutive) wins or loses is reached. This can be easily set by using this condition.

When a strategy is **paused,** then all placed bets are left in place for the user to see the betting results of the strategy at later time.

When a strategy is **restarted**, then it will remove all placed bets by the strategy and start the strategy again. It is almost the same as a restart of the whole software except that other strategies and markets in the main markets data grid view are not affected. The "All time P/L" column on the right will not be reset, allowing the user to see cumulative results after restarts.

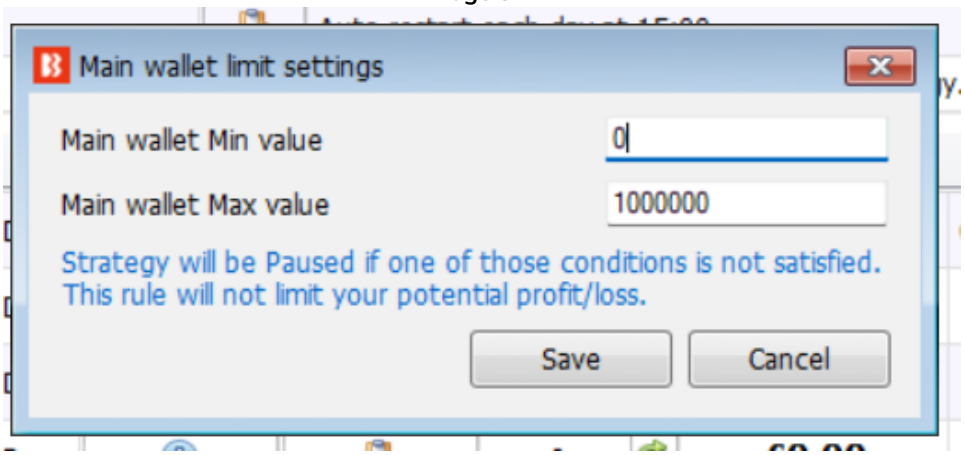
When a strategy is **stopped**, it will prevent strategy from placing any further bets, but it will not pause strategy. This allows you to use auto restart condition at a set time that will clear strategy bets and allow the strategy to continue betting. For example, to stop placing bets after 10 wins for the day but auto restart the next morning at 8AM.

It is recommended to use the number of unsettled markets condition and to set it to 1 when using the "**consecutive**" option to pause/restart strategy. It will ensure that the condition works properly.

You can also tick the option to **save wins/loses on exit**, so that those get loaded when you start the strategy next time. To reset saved values you will need to restart your strategy.

14.6.4 Wallet limit

Image 847



This rule will **pause** the strategy if your actual Betfair balance goes below or above the set level.

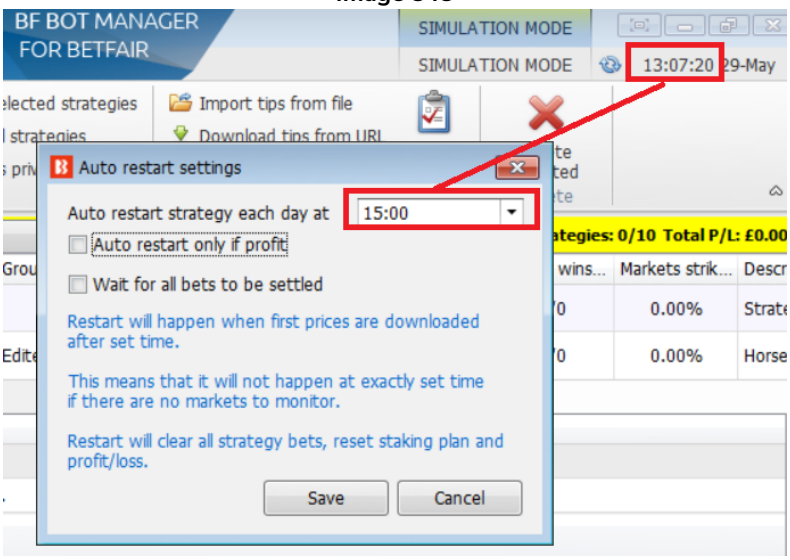
Current account balance **includes exposure** and available funds. So if you have a balance of £200 and make £150 in bets, the minimum value of £100 would not be triggered unless those bets lose resulting in a settled bet balance of under £100.

This is useful if you have strategies that will not run effectively if the balance goes below a certain level, or if you want to prioritize some strategies to keep running and stop others with this rule when the Betfair balance goes below a certain level.

Note: Strategies that are paused will not restart by themselves even if the Betfair balance increases over the minimum value again, it will need a manual start.

14.6.5 Auto restart

Image 848



This is used to **restart strategy each day at same time**. **Restarting strategy clears all placed bets, resets staking plans, loss recovery etc.** It is same as if you stopped the software and started it again. The time is the one shown on your Bf Bot Manager software and should correspond to your PC system time.

Please note that the restart might not happen at the exact specified time, but actually the first time market prices are downloaded after the specified restart time. This is because all strategy rules are executed when market prices are downloaded, so safety rules will only be triggered the first time market prices are downloaded after the specified restart time. If there are no markets to monitor, then the restart will happen when the first prices are downloaded after that set time. For example, if the software is only loading greyhound events, and the auto restart is set at 00:01, but during the night there are no greyhound events, then the restart might happen in the morning when the first prices are downloaded for greyhound races at around 10:00AM. Safety rules always execute first when checking market prices, so there is no need to worry that the strategy might place any bet after 00:01 before the restart.

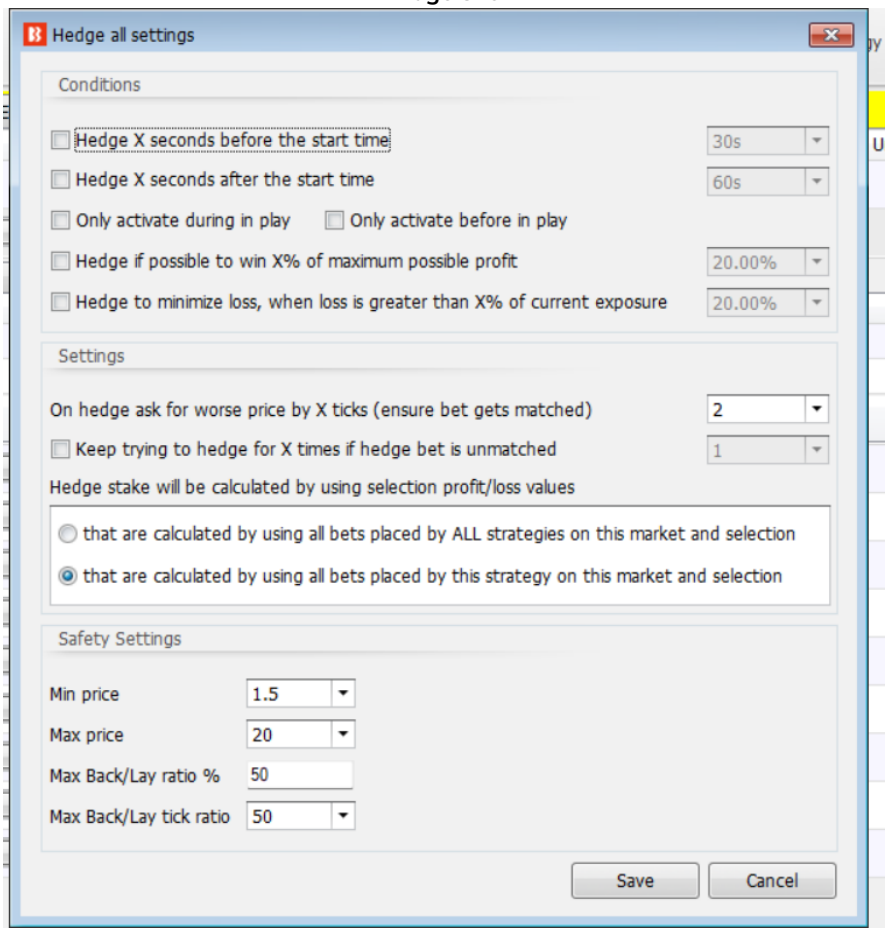
The **Auto restart if profit** checkbox will only allow the restart to occur if the strategy is in profit. This can be useful if you are using a strategy that recovers losses and you do not want the strategy to restart in the middle of a losing run.

Select "**Wait for all bets to be settled**" if you want the software to restart only after all open bets have been settled. If this option is ticked, while waiting for all bets to be settled, this rule will also prevent any new bet

placement until all bets are settled. This prevents the strategy from placing new bets that would continue to prevent the restart because of new unsettled bets.

14.6.6 Hedge All

Image 849



This hedge function has the same logic as the standard Hedge rule in the After bet rules tab, but **the conditions required for it to execute are very different.**

The idea behind this rule is to create a strategy that will have only the "Hedge All" rule and no other rule. Then this hedge rule will execute and hedge your position for all the runners that have any bets placed by the software and any strategy at the set time. That way you are allowing multiple strategies to bet on all selections, place multiple bets and set them to stop betting e.g. 30 seconds before start time. And if you set this function to hedge the position 10 seconds before the start time then you will be sure that **all your positions will be hedged** before a race/match starts.

The hedge all will execute only once, so it is important that you set other strategies to stop placing bets before this hedge function executes. If any other bet is placed after the hedge is executed, then that other bet will not be hedged.

Hedge if possible to win X% of profit will execute when you can get X% of the maximum profit regardless of if the selection wins or loses. For example, if you have a £10 Back bet at odds of 6.0 then the maximum profit is £50. If you set to hedge when it is possible to take 30% of that profit, then the hedge will execute

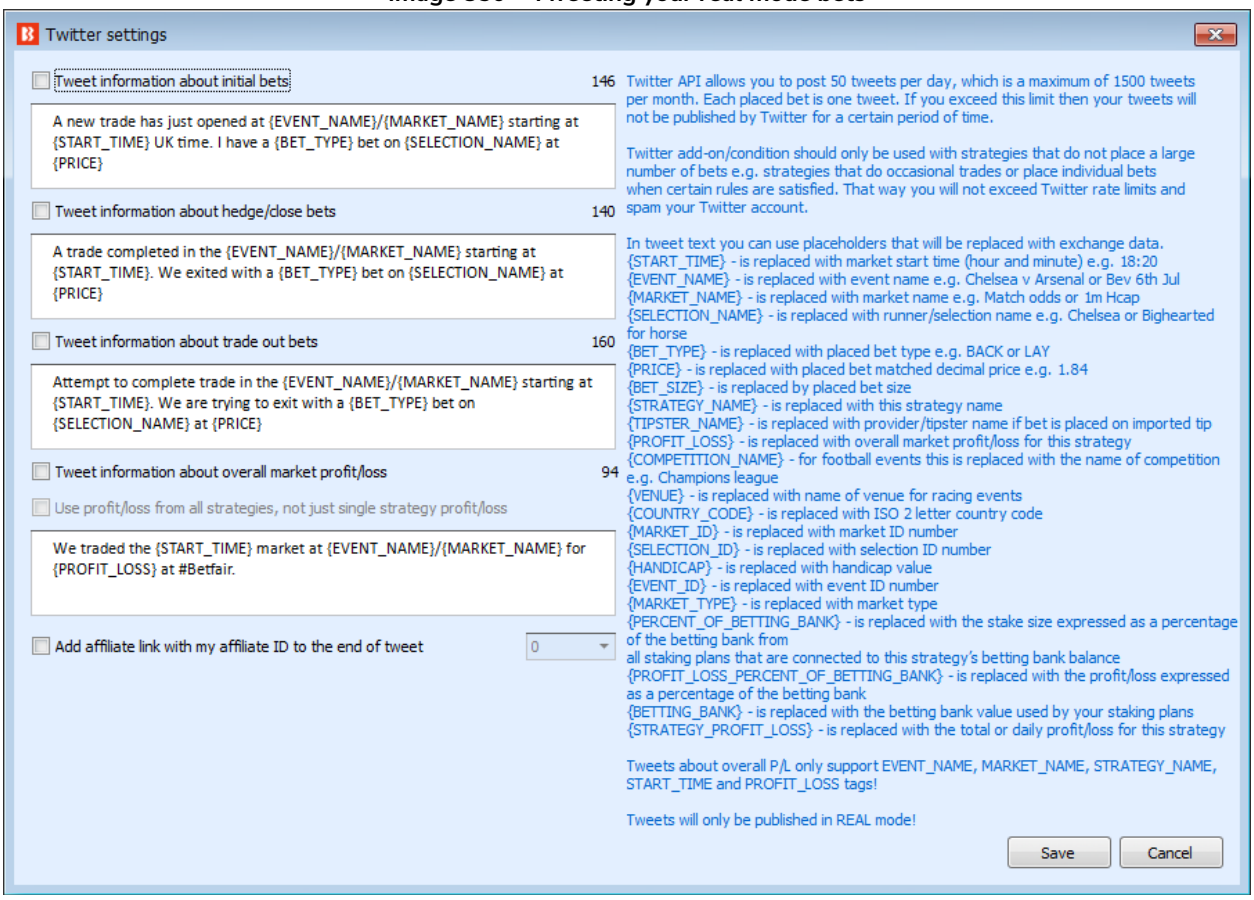
when it is possible to get £15 regardless of if selection the wins or loses.

The same logic is used for **hedge to minimize loss**. In the above example your maximum loss is £10, so if you set to hedge when the loss is more than 30% regardless of if the selection wins or loses, then the hedge would execute so that you get a £3 loss regardless of the winner.

Please note, that in both cases odds can change a lot within a second e.g. when a goal is scored or when trading on horses during in play etc. and in such cases the hedge will also execute but you might get larger profit or loss.

14.6.7 Tweet placed bets

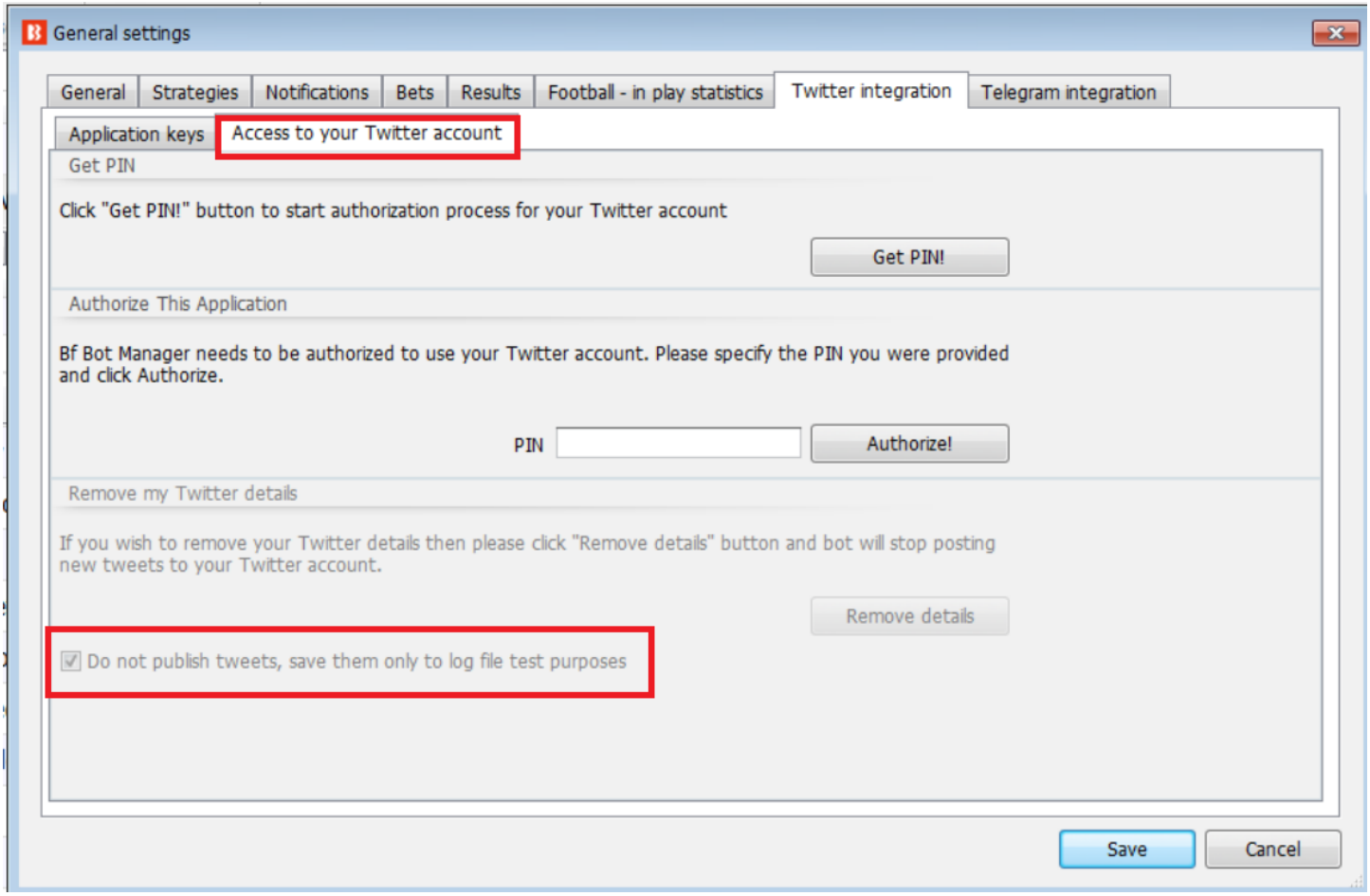
Image 850 – Tweeting your real mode bets



If you connect your Twitter account to the software in the **"Tools&Settings->General settings->Twitter integration" form** then you can add this rule to your strategy and set it to publish information about placed bets by your strategy in your Twitter account.

Before you start using this rule, it is strongly recommended that you turn on the option that will write all tweets to a log file instead of publishing them at your Twitter account. That way you can check your tweets and ensure that you properly formatted the text before it is published in your Twitter account. The option to write tweets to a log file is available at "**Tools&Settings->General settings->Twitter integration->Access to your Twitter account**" form.

Image 851 – Tweeting your real mode bets



Only bets by a strategy to which this rule is added are published. If you wish to publish bets from more than one strategy, then you will need to add this rule to each strategy and configure it.

Twitter has a limit of 2,400 tweets per day, so make sure your strategies do not place too many bets or you could get blocked by Twitter for some time. Also, publishing many tweets will not be useful for you or your followers, so try to configure this rule to publish tweets only for important bets/strategies.

Also, please note that **it is not possible to use mention "@" tags in tweets that are published by the bot**. This is forbidden by Twitter.

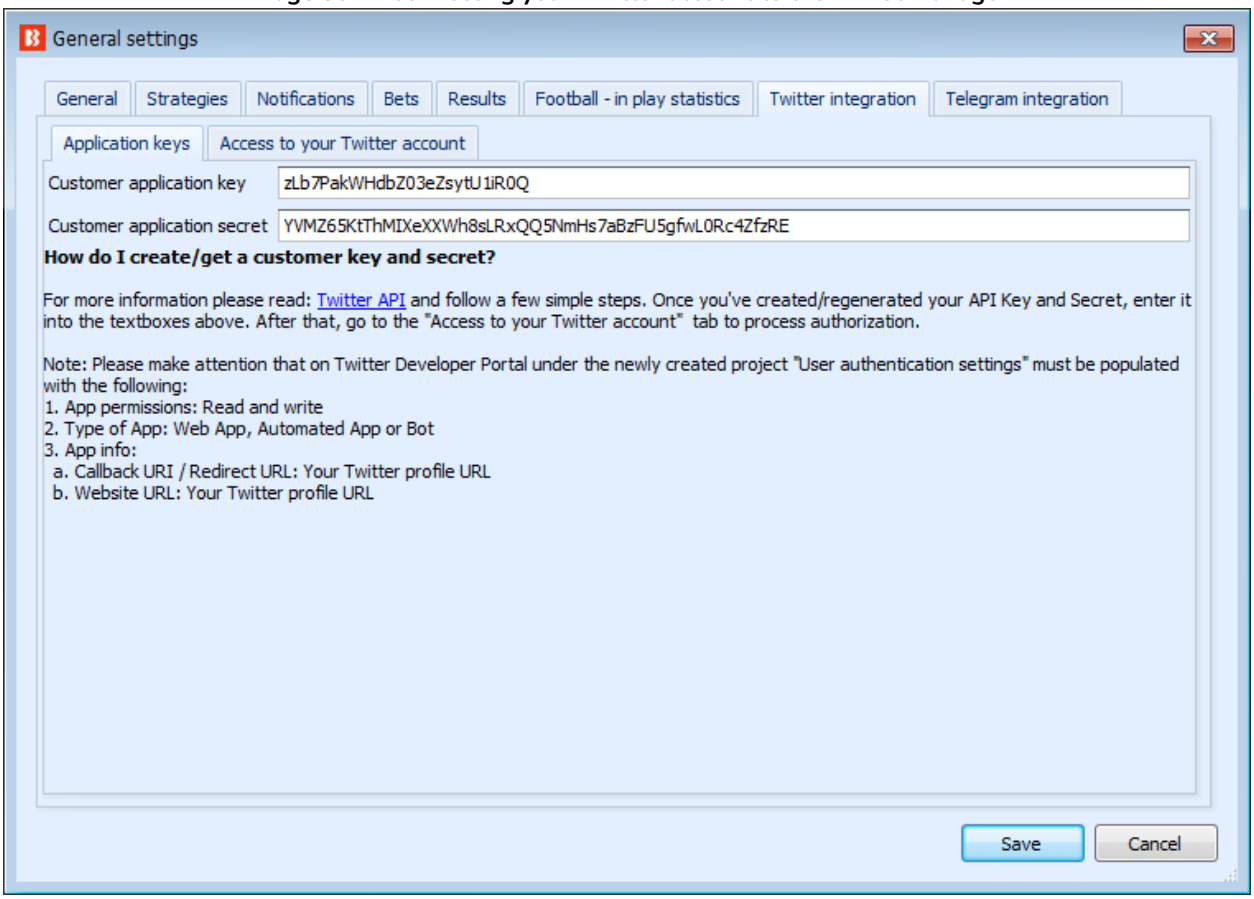
In your text you can use following tags that will be automatically replaced with real data

- {START_TIME} - is replaced with market start time (hour and minute) e.g. 18:20
- {EVENT_NAME} - is replaced with event name e.g. Chelsea v Arsenal or Bev 6th Jul
- {MARKET_NAME} - is replaced with market name e.g. Match odds or 1m Hcap
- {SELECTION_NAME} - is replaced with runner/selection name e.g. Chelsea or Bighearted for horse
- {BET_TYPE} - is replaced with placed bet type e.g. BACK or LAY
- {PRICE} - is replaced with placed bet matched decimal price e.g. 1.84
- {BET_SIZE} - is replaced by placed bet size

- {STRATEGY_NAME} - is replaced with this strategy name
- {TIPSTER_NAME} - is replaced with provider/tipster name if bet is placed on imported tip
- {PROFIT_LOSS} - is replaced with overall market profit/loss for this strategy
- {COMPETITION_NAME} – is replaced with competition name
- {VENUE} – is replaced with venue name
- {COUNTRY_CODE} – ISO 2 letter country code
- {MARKET_ID} – replaced by market ID number
- {SELECTION_ID} – is replaced with selection ID number
- {HANDICAP} – is replaced with handicap value
- {EVENT_ID} – is replaced with event ID number
- {MARKET_TYPE} – is replaced with market type

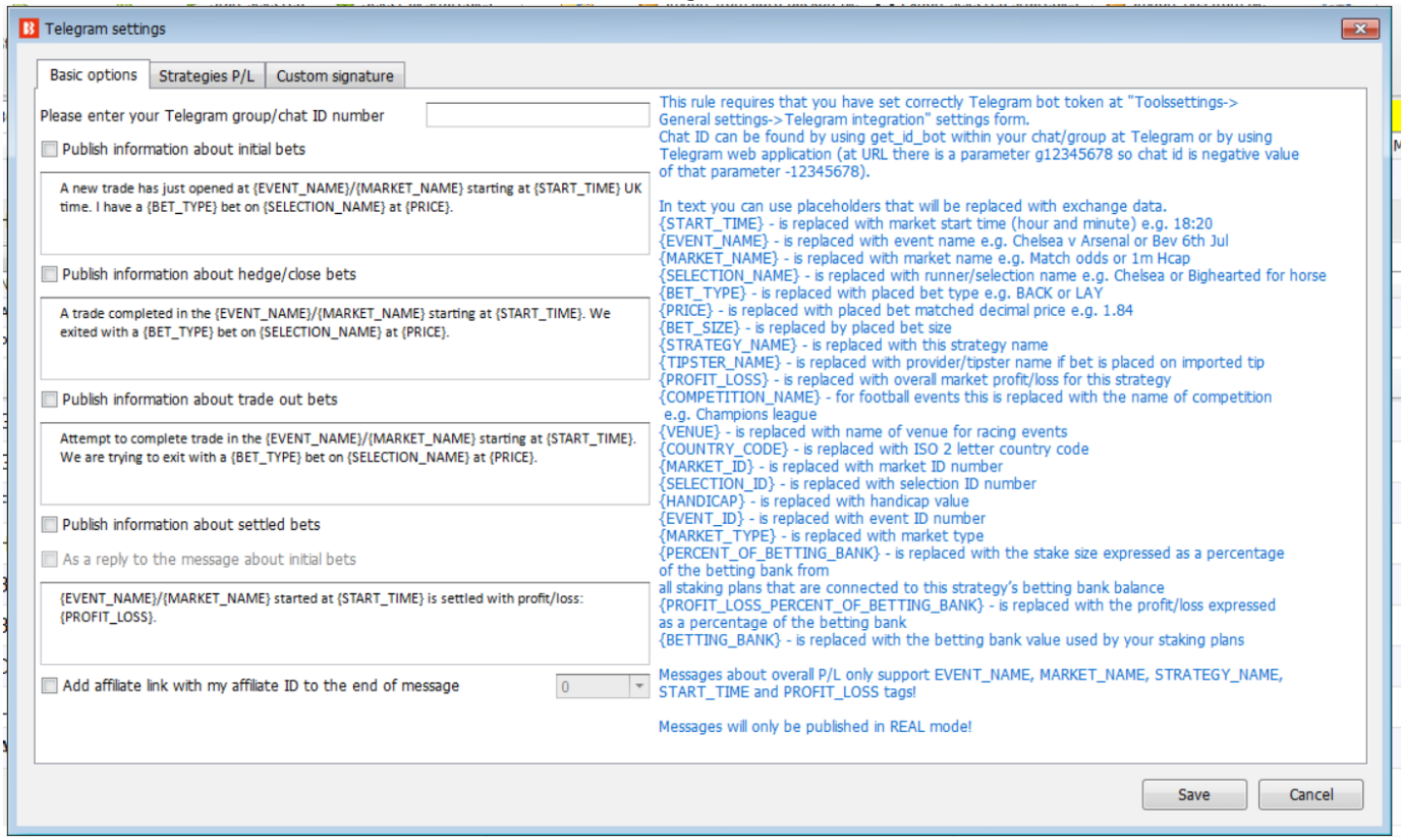
Tweets about overall P/L only support EVENT_NAME, MARKET_NAME, STRATEGY_NAME, START_TIME and PROFIT_LOSS tags.
The rule includes templates of possible tweets ready to be used.
Tweets are only published in real mode; it is not possible to publish tweets from simulation Mode.

Image 852 – Connecting your Twitter account to the Bf Bot Manager



14.6.8 Telegram integration

Image 853



The Telegram integration rule allows you to publish information about your bets to a selected **chat group** in the Telegram messenger. It is less public than Twitter. (Telegram will work only with chat groups. It will not work with Telegram channels.)
First you need to create a bot by using the setup wizard BotFather at Telegram. This is explained on the Telegram help pages:

https://core.telegram.org/bots

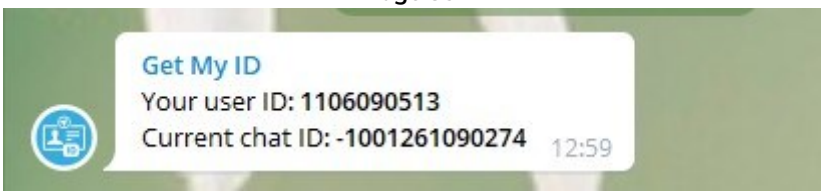
There you will get a bot authorization token that you need to enter in the **"Tools&Settings->General settings->Telegram integration"** page.

After that, go to your Telegram chat group and add the bot that you created to that group.

Then in the strategy for which you wish to publish bets information to that chat group, add the **"Safety rules->Telegram integration"** rule and enter the chat ID of the group to which you added your bot.

To obtain a chat ID, you can add "getmyid_bot" bot to that group and it will send you message with the ID of that chat. Here is an example:

Image 854



Now your strategy is ready to publish messages about your bets to that chat group.

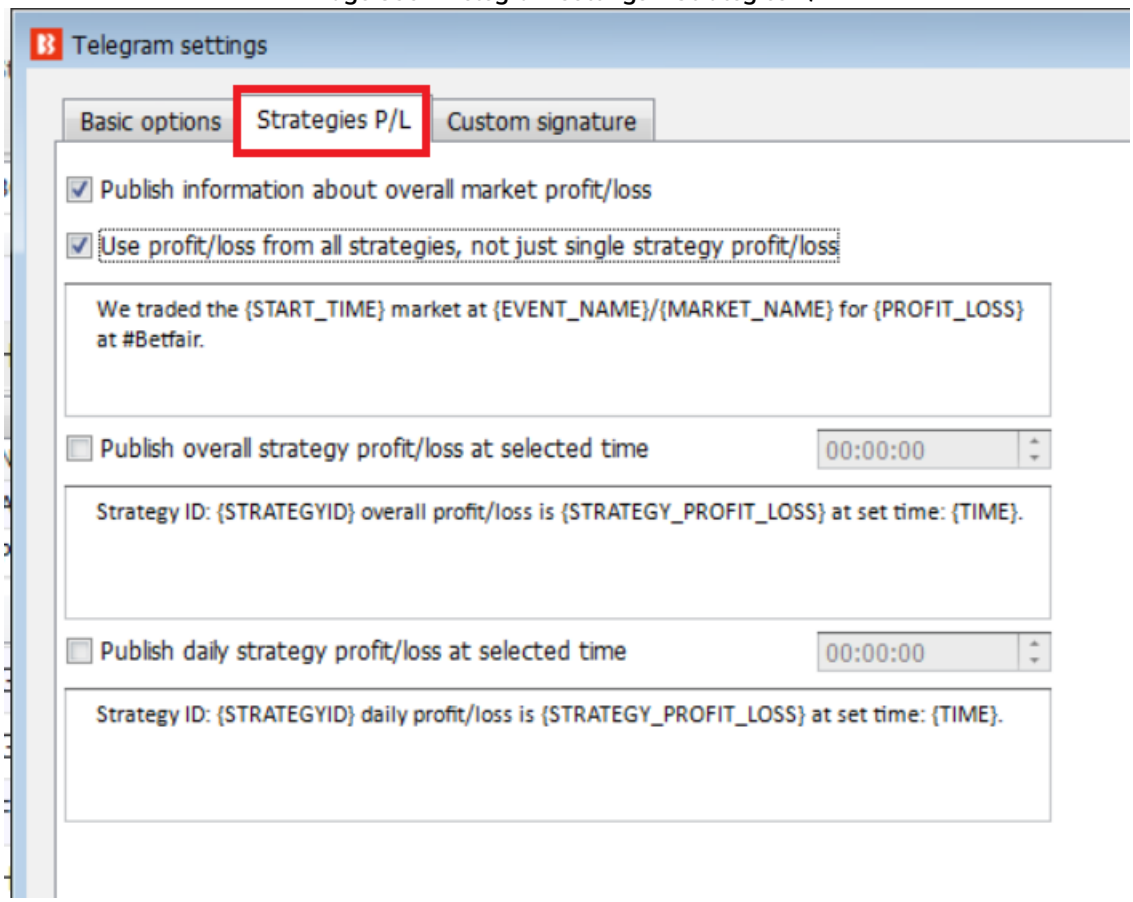
In your text you can use following tags that will be automatically replaced with real data

- {START_TIME} - is replaced with market start time (hour and minute) e.g. 18:20
- {EVENT_NAME} - is replaced with event name e.g. Chelsea v Arsenal or Bev 6th Jul
- {MARKET_NAME} - is replaced with market name e.g. Match odds or 1m Hcap
- {SELECTION_NAME} - is replaced with runner/selection name e.g. Chelsea or Bighearted for horse
- {BET_TYPE} - is replaced with placed bet type e.g. BACK or LAY
- {PRICE} - is replaced with placed bet matched decimal price e.g. 1.84
- {BET_SIZE} - is replaced by placed bet size
- {STRATEGY_NAME} - is replaced with this strategy name
- {TIPSTER_NAME} - is replaced with provider/tipster name if bet is placed on imported tip
- {PROFIT_LOSS} - is replaced with overall market profit/loss for this strategy
- {COMPETITION_NAME} – is replaced with competition name
- {VENUE} – is replaced with venue name
- {COUNTRY_CODE} – ISO 2 letter country code
- {MARKET_ID} – replaced by market ID number
- {SELECTION_ID} – is replaced with selection ID number
- {HANDICAP} – is replaced with handicap value
- {EVENT_ID} – is replaced with event ID number
- {MARKET_TYPE} – is replaced with market type
- {PERCENT_OF_BETTING_BANK} - is replaced with the stake size expressed as a percentage of the betting bank from all staking plans that are connected to this strategy's betting bank balance
- {PROFIT_LOSS_PERCENT_OF_BETTING_BANK} - is replaced with the profit/loss expressed as a percentage of the betting bank
- {BETTING_BANK} - is replaced with the betting bank value used by your staking plans

Messages about overall P/L only support EVENT_NAME, MARKET_NAME, STRATEGY_NAME, START_TIME and PROFIT_LOSS tags!
Messages about overall P/L only support EVENT_NAME, MARKET_NAME, STRATEGY_NAME, START_TIME and PROFIT_LOSS tags!

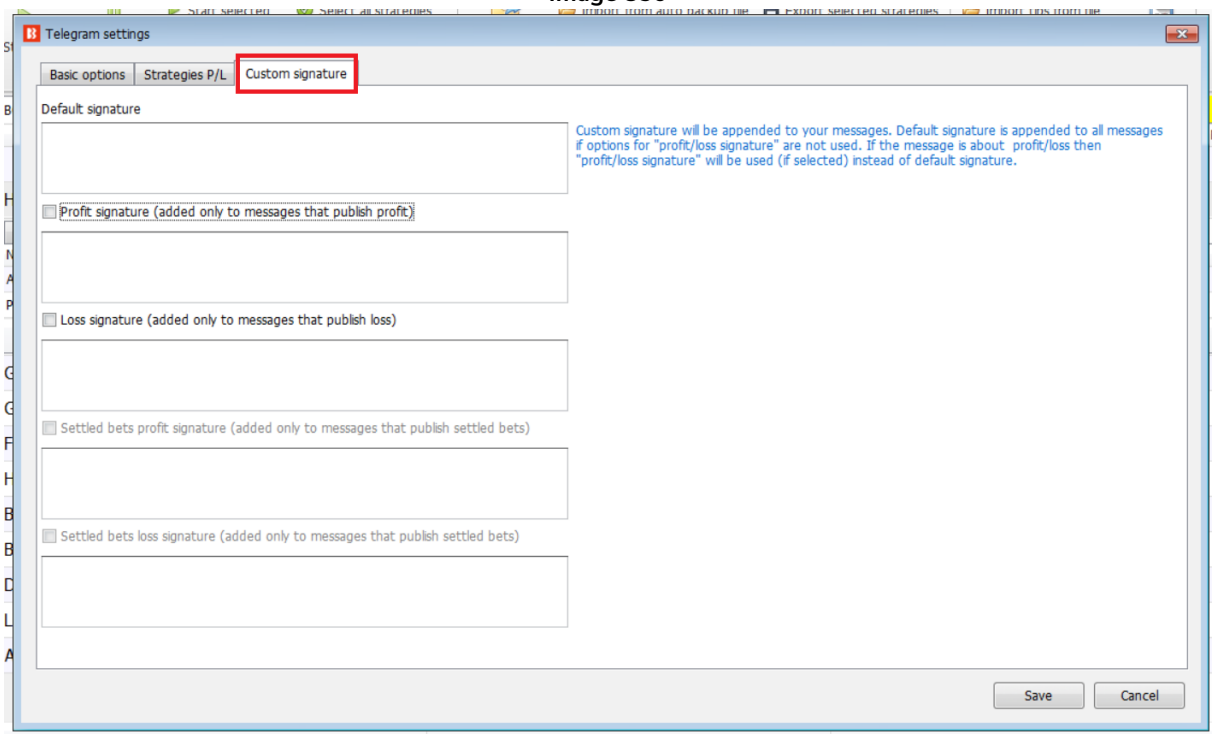
Messages are only published in real mode; it is not possible to publish messages from simulation mode!

Image 855 – Telegram settings – Strategies P/L



You can publish messages about profit and loss. Templates are included in the form.

Image 856



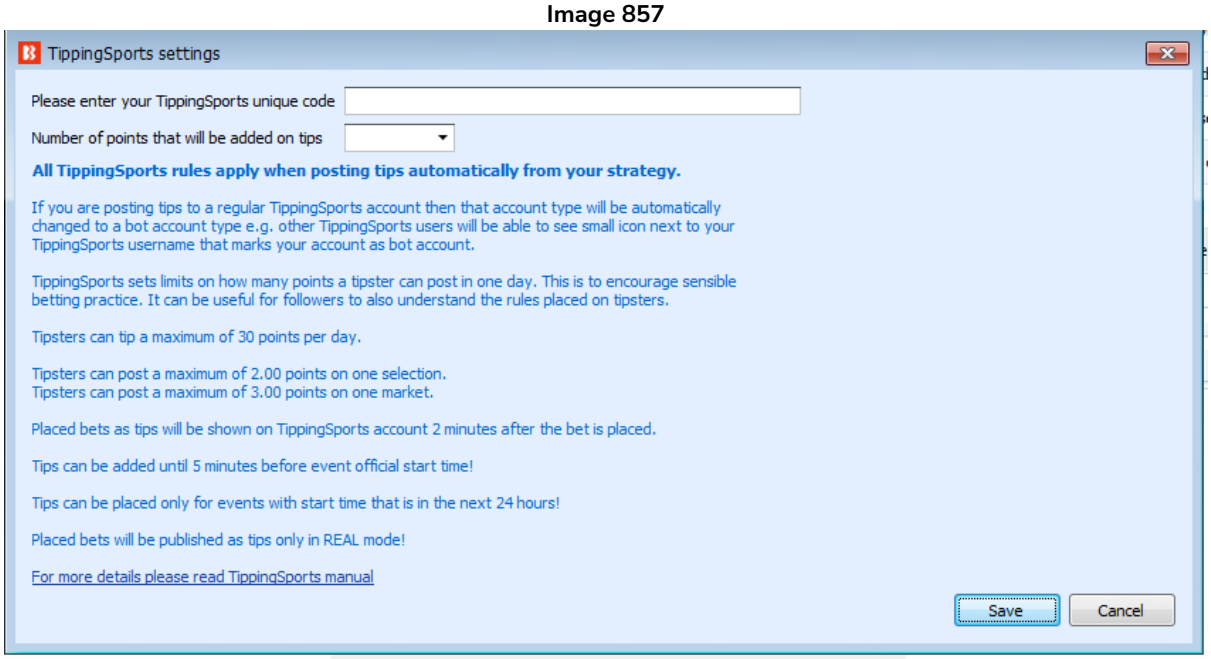
You can also add standard custom signatures and also customized signatures in the case of profit and loss

messages.

14.6.9 TippingSports - publish placed bets as tips (BF Bot Manager only)

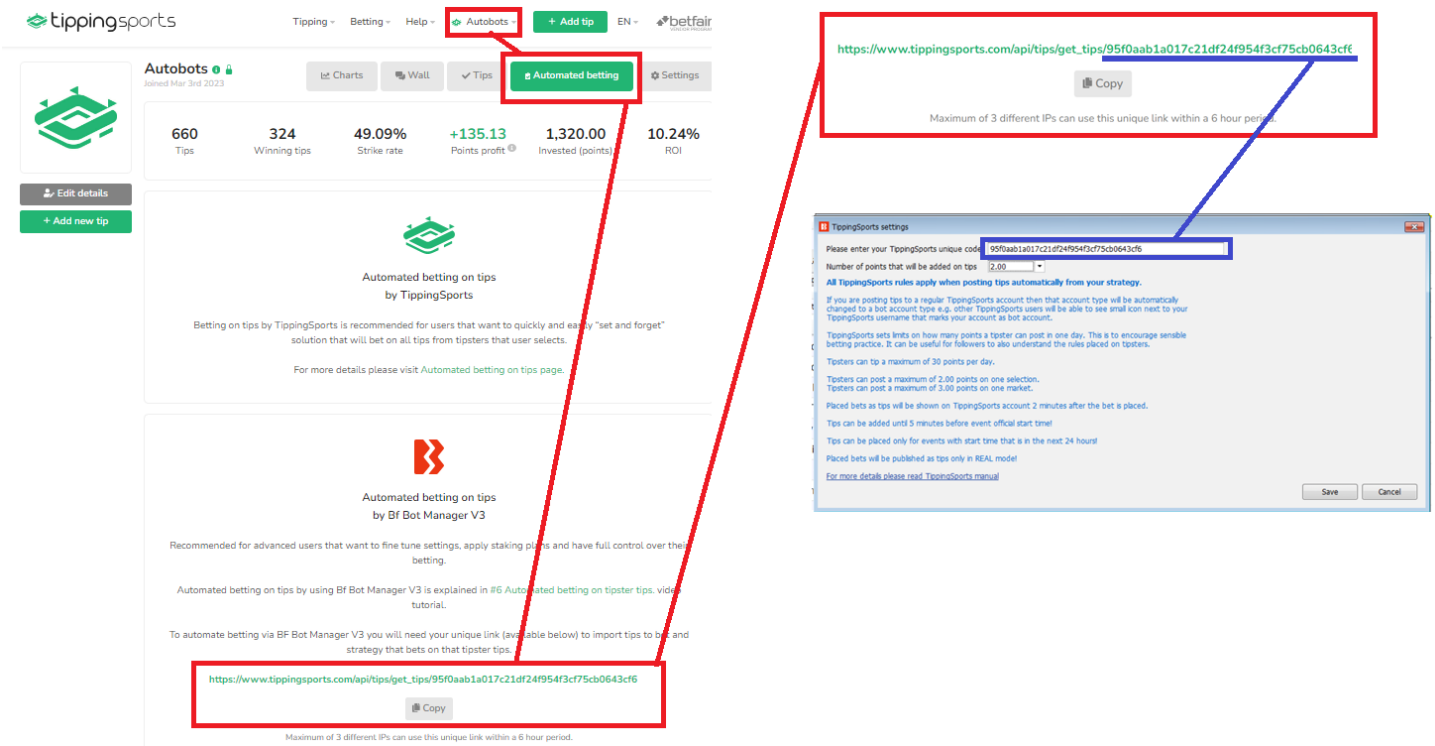
This rule allows the strategy to upload placed bets as tips on the TippingSports website. This only works for events and markets supported by the TippingSports website.

Image 857



To enable tips to be sent to your TippingSports account, please enter your TippingSports account's **unique code** into the form. The unique code is the **end part of the URL** that is used to import tips from your TippingSports account. It can be found in the Automated Betting tab of your profile page.

Image 858



Tips can be added with point levels of 0.25 up to 2.00 in 0.25 increments.
A maximum of 2.00 points can be placed on one selection and a maximum of 3.00 points on one market.
Please note that only **30 points** worth of tips can be added each day.
Tips can only be added from bets placed in **real mode.**
Tips can only be placed for events starting within the next 24 hours.

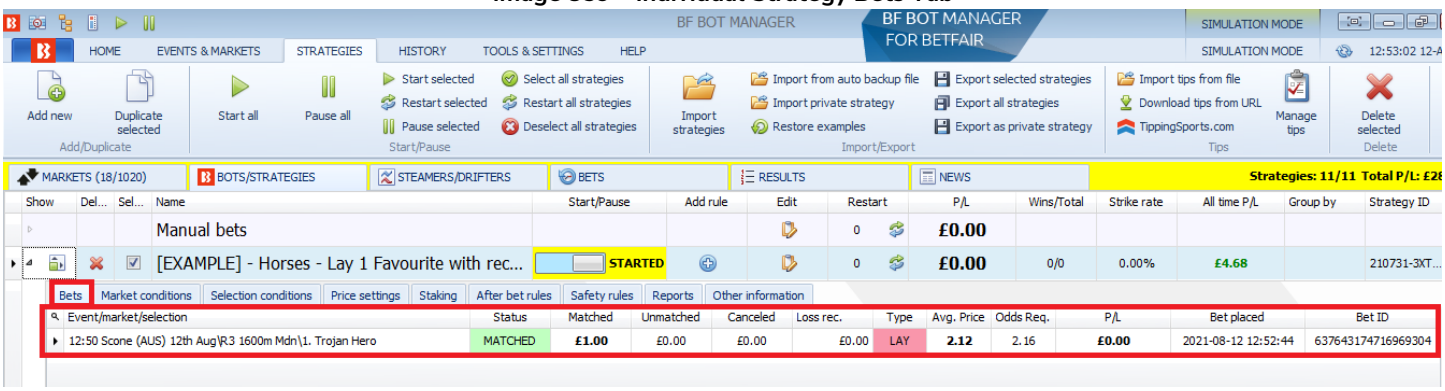
Tips can only be added up to 5 minutes before the event start. There is a grace period of 2 minutes after each tip is added where it can be cancelled manually on the TippingSports site. After that 2-minute grace period expires, the tip is confirmed and added to your list of tips. This means **there will be a gap of 2-3 minutes between when your bot places a bet and when it appears on your TippingSports account.**

If you are sharing tips for others to follow, we recommend that you add tips well in advance so that there is plenty of time for the tip to be sent to TippingSports, accepted (2 minutes grace period before tips are confirmed), and then time for those tips to be sent to users, and then for their bots to place their bets.

You can read more about using the TippingSports site and features in its manual.
https://www.tippingsports.com/documents/TippingSports-manual.pdf

14.7 Bets

Image 859 – Individual Strategy Bets Tab



The **Strategy Bets tab** is similar to the bets in the Market Selections Grid View, except that in this case it is listing all placed bets by the selected strategy instead of all placed bets by the software in this session. This allows us to see only the bets placed by this selected strategy and easily determine if it is working properly or not.

Bets can be viewed in 3 areas.
BETS screen – which shows all bets placed by the software in this session and in previous sessions. It is useful for checking all bets that have been placed by any strategy. (If you switch off the software, these bets **will** still be viewable when you start the software again,)
Market Selections Grid View – which shows all bets placed by all strategies on each individual market in this software session. It is useful for checking what bets have been placed on one specific market by any strategy. (If you switch off the software, these bets **will not** be viewable when you start the software again,)
Strategy Bets tab – which shows all bets placed by this strategy in this software session. It is useful for checking what bets have been placed by one specific strategy. (If you switch off the software, these bets **will not** be viewable when you start the software again,)

14.8 Strategy Reports Tab - Fail/success of conditions/rules

This reports tab is very useful for **troubleshooting** problems.

IMPORTANT: **If the reports screen is scrolling too quickly to read the line of information that you want, then you can pause the strategy for a moment,** this will also pause the strategy from checking more rules against new prices and gives you a chance to view the current reports. You can then start the strategy again. You can also right-click a column header and **use the "Show auto filter row" function to view only reports for the market you are interested in** by entering all or part of the name of the market in the auto-filter field at the top of the market column in the reports tab.

Whenever a strategy tries to place bets, it checks all conditions. If the bets are not placed, then it means that one of the conditions prevented the strategy from placing bets. The condition that prevented the strategy from placing bets is reported in this tab.

Sometimes if conditions are not set properly, it is possible that the bet type, price or stake, are not set for any selection. In such cases you should check your conditions and ensure that you have added the rules or conditions that will set a bet type, price and stake for selections that satisfy your strategy conditions.

When a strategy places bets, then this will also be reported in this tab and such lines will be highlighted with a green background.

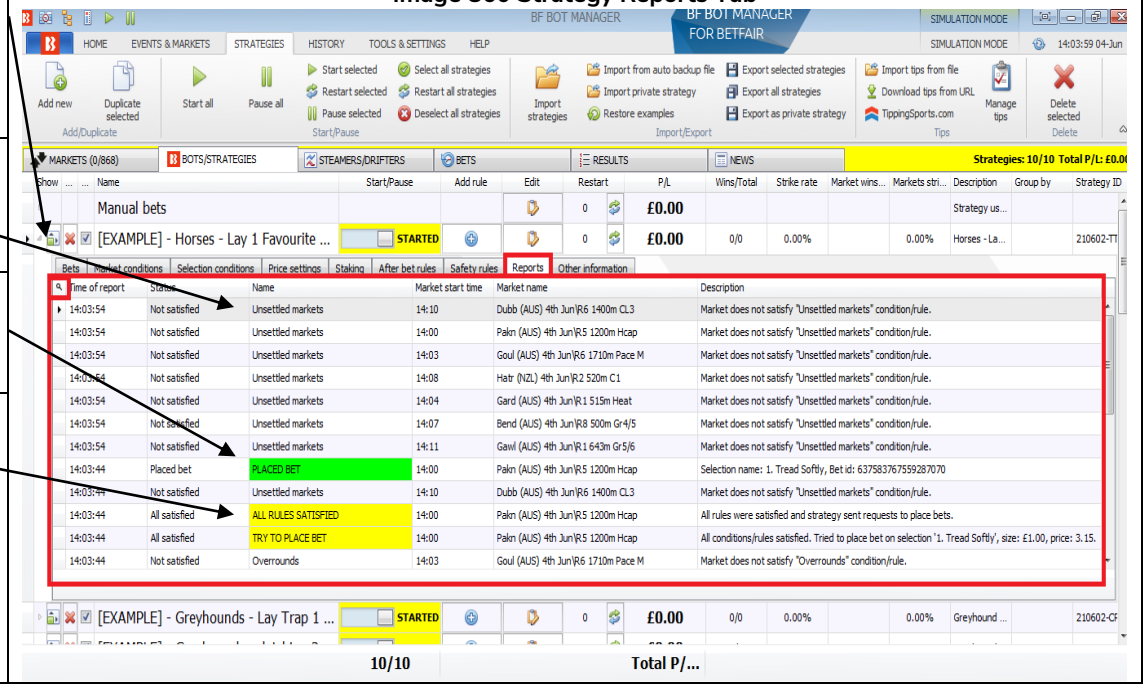
This magnifying glass button will **enlarge the Reports screen** of this strategy to full screen.

This message shows the reasons why a bet is not being placed.

This shows a bet confirmed as being placed.

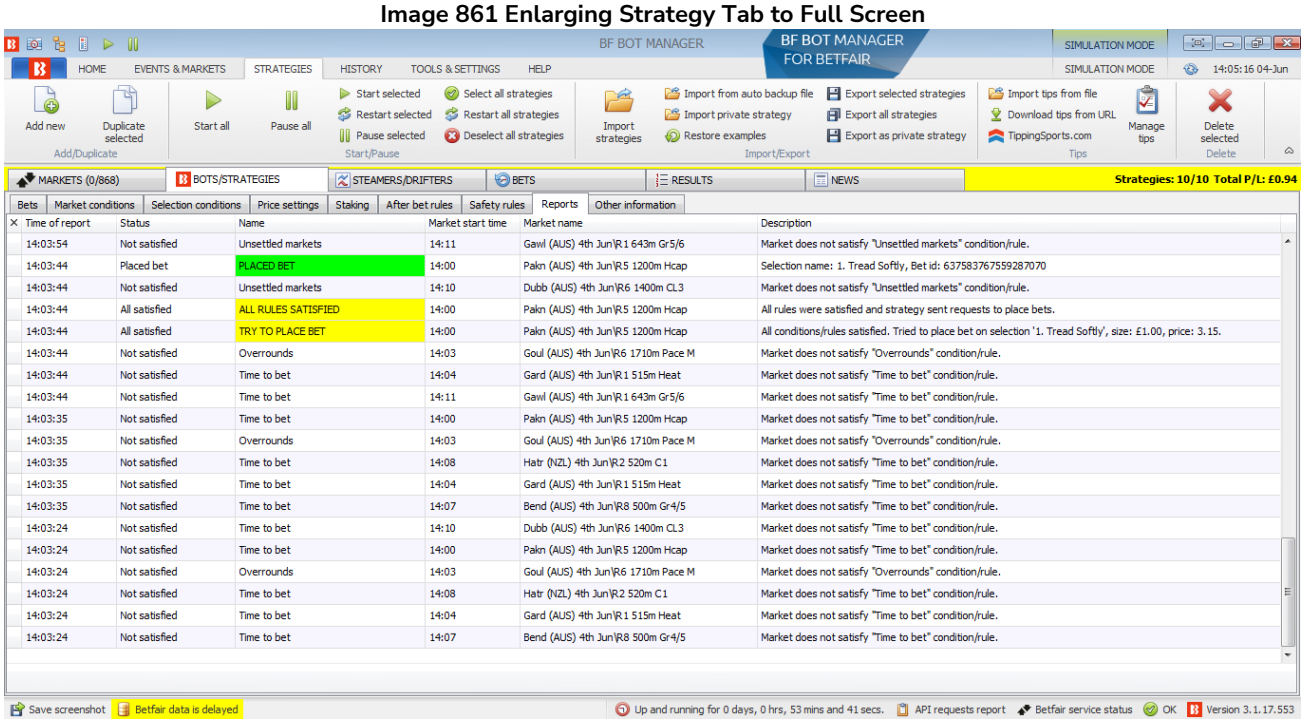
This shows the conditions for a strategy being met and the bot trying to place a bet.

Image 860 Strategy Reports Tab



You can click on the **magnifying glass mark at the top left of each strategy tab to enlarge it to full screen.** You can then click on the black cross at the top left to return it to its normal size.

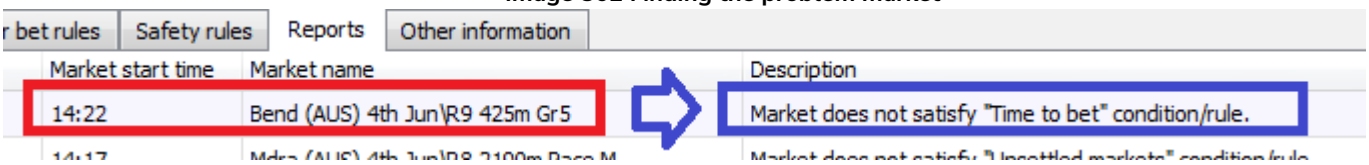
Image 861 Enlarging Strategy Tab to Full Screen



When you are watching a Betfair market that you know your strategy should be betting on, but is not, it is

good to watch for that market name in the reports tab and see why the strategy is not betting on that market. You can also right click a column header to add the **"auto-filter row"** and enter the market name you want to focus on, then it will only show you reports from that market.

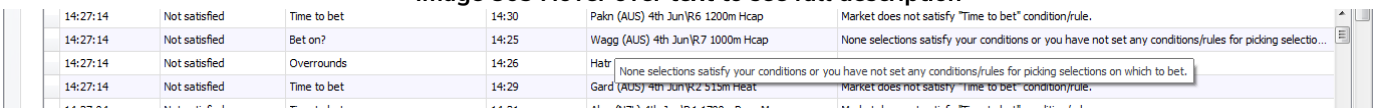
Image 862 Finding the problem market



For example, if we wanted the strategy to bet on the "Bend (AUS) 4th Jun/R9 425m Gr 5" race, but it does not. We can see that the strategy is skipping it because the "Time to bet" rule is stopping it. You can then check the strategy rules for what the current "Time to bet" is set at, and change it if needed.

If you cannot see the entire report description, you can hover the mouse over the report and a text bubble will pop-up with the full description.

Image 863 Hover over text to see full description



Common report form descriptions and what you can do about them.

Specific Reports: Most reports specify which rule is preventing betting.

Report Name	Report Description	Possible Solutions
Time to bet	Market does not satisfy "Time to bet" condition/rule.	Change the time to bet to match your intended time. Also check if your monitoring settings allow prices to be downloaded at the time to bet.
Overrounds	Market does not satisfy "Overrounds" condition/rule.	This usually means the odds are not valid. But, if you view the market manually and decide the strategy should be betting on those markets, then you can try loosening the value range for the Overrounds rule. This is sometimes necessary for in-play markets that change rapidly.
Back and lay price ratio	Market does not satisfy "Back and lay price ratio" condition/rule.	Similar to the Overround rule, this usually means the odds are not valid. But, if you view the market manually and decide the strategy should be betting on those markets, then you can try loosening the value range for the Back and lay price ratio rule. This is sometimes necessary for in-play markets that change rapidly.
Unsettled markets	Market does not satisfy "Unsettled markets" condition/rule.	If this rule is set to "1" then it means the strategy already has 1 unsettled bet. This is preventing any new bets being placed. If this is not intended, adjust or remove this rule. This rule, however, is usually necessary for strategies that use staking plans which base stakes on the previous bet result.
Min/Max Selection Price	Market does not satisfy "Min/Mix Selection Price"	If you check the Betfair market manually and see that the selection you intend to bet on is within the intended price range, check the price rules to see if it the strategy is checking the correct selection

	condition/rule.	price. Sometimes we might be intending to check the price for the 2nd favorite, but the Price rules settings were set to check the price for the runner by position 2. Also check if it is checking the correct back or lay prices as intended. Note that there is both a Market Condition and a Selection condition for price rules.
Bet on imported tips/selections	Market does not satisfy "Bet on imported tips/selections" condition/rule.	If your bot is supposed to bet on this match because of an imported tip, check the tipster/provider name has been entered correctly in the tipster/provider name field in the Bet on imported tips/selections rule. Check the Manage tips form to see if the tip has been accepted by the software. It will have an Event ID, Market ID and Selection ID number if it has been successfully linked with a Betfair market. If a tip has not been successfully imported then it may also appear in red writing. In this case, check that the event details (start time, team names, etc.) are correct. Check if the tip has already been bet on by another strategy if you are running multiple strategies that bet on imported tips. It will have a green background and a Bet ID if it has already been bet on. Only one bet can be placed per imported tip. Also if the imported tip does not contain a market ID number auto loading of markets for those tips will need to be set up.

Non-Specific Reports: Most reports are easy to understand, but some are not specific.

Report Name	Report Description	Possible Solutions
Bet on?	None selections satisfy your conditions or you have not set any condition/rules for picking selections on which to bet	This could be caused by a number of reasons. 1. You have not set a bet type. 2. The conditions do not find any selections in that market
Staking	Stake not set for any selection.	This could be caused by a number of reasons. 1. You have not set the stake 2. You have not set a bet type. 3. The conditions do not find any selections in that market.*

*Note: If bet type is not set for any selection or there is no selection that satisfies all the strategy rules then sometimes the Reports tab might report that the last checked rule is not satisfied. In most cases that is the "Staking" tab last rule at the bottom. In this case, after checking staking rules, also check strategy "Selection conditions" to ensure that bet type is satisfied and that there is at least one selection that satisfies all the rules.

15 Hardware - System Requirements

The Bf Bot Manager V3 software will work on almost all newer computers, that is, computers produced since 2014. So generally you should be fine, but if you are running a large number of strategies, placing many bets at the same time or using some of the extra features provided by a third party, then you should consider using a VPS or a dedicated server to run the bot.

Minimum configuration to run V3 version	Recommended configuration to run V3 version
Intel i3, i5 or i7 CPU 2GB of RAM 1280px screen resolution width 20Mbps cable internet connection or faster 200MB of HD space to install the bot and use it	Intel i5 or i7 CPU, the faster the better 4GB of RAM 1920px screen resolution width 50Mbps cable internet connection 400MB of HD space to install and run the bot. If possible use a SSD, as your computer will work faster and it will not slow down the bot in case you use it for something else and not just to run the bot

If you plan on running 50 or more strategies with a single bot, then you should consider splitting those strategies and running another bot instance on a second computer. That will make the bot faster and more reliable.

16 Glossary of Terms

This section will explain technical terms. It will also define the terminology of more general terms found in this manual.

16.1 Account balance

Account balance refers to the total amount in your Betfair account.

16.2 API – Application Programming Interface

The Betfair API is an interface that allows official Betfair vendor 3rd party software to interact directly with the Betfair servers.

16.3 Available price / current price

The available price means the current price that can be bet on now. The current available price is always the 1st best back odds or the 1st best lay odds depending on which bet type you are placing.

16.4 Back bet

A Back bet is when we make a bet on a selection to win. (This is in contrast to a Lay bet where we are betting a selection will not win.)

16.5 Betfair Start Price (BSP)

The Betfair Starting Price is determined by balancing bets from customers who want to back and lay at the Starting Price and matching into the Betfair exchange markets to balance out any residual demand. It is basically the price at the event start.

16.6 Betting bank

The betting bank refers to an individual bot's betting bank in its staking plan if it has one. Note that the betting bank is not your Betfair account balance.

16.7 Bf Bot Manager

The Bf Bot Manager is the name of the software that allows you to run multiple bots.

16.8 Bot

A bot is a programming script that place bets according to your betting strategy rules and conditions. The Bf Bot Manager allows you to create and manage multiple bots which are called "strategies".

16.9 Close

A close bet will try to place bets that will result with zero profit or loss if the selection loses and some profit or loss if the selection wins. If before Closing, Hedging would result in equal profit whatever the outcome, Closing would result in only making profit if the selection wins and zero profit if the outcome loses. If before Closing, Hedging would result in equal loss whatever the outcome, Closing would result in only making a loss if the selection wins and zero loss (zero profit) if the outcome loses.

If you close a position when your selection is at better odds than the initial bet, it will give you profit on the selection win and break even on the selection loss.

If you close a position when your selection is at worse odds than the initial bet, it will give you some profit or break even on the selection win and some loss on the selection loss.

16.10 Condition / Rule

The conditions and rules in a strategy tell it how to operate. A rule is something that is always active, such as a bet type rule or price rule. A condition is something that allows or prevents an action IF the set condition is met, for example the market filter condition allows betting IF it is on a market of the set type. The two terms are often used interchangeably and it is not necessary to differentiate between them as it does not affect the operation of the software.

16.11 CSV - Comma Separated Values

A CSV list is a list of values separated by commas. A CSV file is a text file where values are separated by commas. If these files are opened in spreadsheet software, the values can be displayed in separate columns as their commas delimit them. It is important to note that CSV files and regular Excel files are different. CSV files do not store any formatting information, whereas Excel files do. See the "Bet on imported selections" section for more information on problematic issues with Excel and CSV files editing.

16.12 Drifter

A drifter is a selection whose price is getting higher. Its price is drifting out.

16.13 Dutching

Dutching with Back bets is when you place a set of bets on multiple selections so that if just one of them wins, then you win your target. Dutching with Lay bets is when you place bets on multiple selections and if all of them lose, then you win your target. With Lay Dutching if a few of the selections lose, then the target may be partially achieved. If all selections win, then the entire liability is lost.

16.14 Example strategy

The example strategies that come pre-installed in the software are just examples to demonstrate how the software can be used. They are not profitable. They do not have the best settings. They are not money making bots. They should only be used in simulation mode to learn how the software works, how the rules are used together and help you understand how to automate your own strategies.

16.15 Exposure

Exposure is how much money you are risking on a bet.
A £10 back bet at odds of 3.00 risks £10 to win £20. The exposure is £10.
A £10 lay bet at odds of 3.00 risks £20 to win £10. The exposure is £20.
Total current exposure of unsettled bets is usually shown in brackets next to your Betfair balance.
If you have multiple bets unsettled, then the exposure is the amount that is actually at risk.

16.16 Far price

The Far price is calculated using SP bets that have been requested. It is easier to understand when contrasted with the Near Price. **The Near Price** is calculated using all of the available money on the Betfair site at SP as well as matching money on the same selection in the Exchange. For example, excluding money requested at a fixed price on the Exchange, if there are £1000 worth of backers' stakes on a selection at SP

and £6000 worth of layers' liabilities, Betfair could match them at 7.0 (6/1). If, however, there were £6000 worth of backers' stakes on the selection and £1000 worth of layers' liabilities, Betfair could match them at 1.17 (1/6). These are calculations of **the Far Price**. As the market suspends to be turned in-play, the Betfair system determines which unmatched Exchange bets could be included in the reconciliation to determine a fairer price. For example if there were £1000 of SP backers' stakes and £6000 of SP layers' liabilities, but there were also £1000 of unmatched back bets on the Exchange available to lay at a price of 5.0 then it would be unfair to match SP layers at an SP of 7.0 while backers willing to take 5.0 remained unmatched. Therefore some of those bets (£500) would be included in the reconciliation, allowing Betfair to satisfy more customer orders. With £1500 of backers' stakes and £6000 of layers' liabilities we would determine an SP of 5.0. The price calculated by including unmatched Exchange bets is the **Near Price**.

16.17 Favourite

The favourite is the selection in a market with the lowest odds. It has the highest probable chance to win according to market feeling. In the strategy Edit form it is possible to change how the favourite is decided..

16.18 Hedge

The Hedge bet is a bet placed, after an initial bet had been placed, that will give equal profit or loss regardless if the selection wins or loses.

If you hedge a position when your selection is at better odds than the initial bet, it will give you equal profit whether the selection wins or loses.

If you hedge a position when your selection is at worse odds than the initial bet, it will give you equal loss whether the selection wins or loses.

16.19 Initial bet

An initial bet is the first bet a strategy places on a market.

16.20 Ladder trading

Ladder trading is a way of looking at the market in a similar way to financial market traders. All of the available back and lay amounts can be seen moving up and down from the current price in a layout that looks like a ladder.

16.21 Last traded/matched price (LPM)

The last traded price is the same as the last matched price. It means the last price that a bet was matched at. If the back odds are 2.40 and the lay odds are 2.44 and the LPM is 2.44 then you know that the last bet matched was at the current 1st best lay offer price. If the LPM is 3.40, then you know that no new bets have been placed since the odds moved downward from 3,40. In this way the LPM is useful to know where the last actual betting action took place.

16.22 Lay bet

A Lay bet is when we make a bet on a selection NOT to win. (This is in contrast to a Back bet where we are betting a selection will win.)

16.23 Liability

The word liability is used in 2 ways in betting which can be confusing.
Meaning 1. Liability is the amount of money you could lose in a bet.
Meaning 2. Stake and Liability are the 2 sides of an exchange bet. The Backer risks a stake. The Layer risks a liability.
In a Back bet, the stake(2) is the liability(1).
In a Lay bet, the liability(2) is the liability(1).
The difference between exposure and liability is that a liability is attached to a specific bet. Exposure is the overall amount of money at risk on a market or multiple markets. So we can say your exposure is the sum of your liabilities(1).

16.24 MarketID

The MarketID is a number allotted to an event market by Betfair. It is not set by the Bf Bot Manager software.

16.25 Monitoring

Monitoring refers to if a market is having its prices (odds) downloaded from Betfair or not. A monitored market will have its prices downloaded according to the refresh rate in the monitoring settings.. If a market is not being monitored, it will not get any prices and no strategies can place bets on them.

16.26 My Selections "My S."

"My selections", or "My S." for short, are selections that have been manually chosen by the user in the market selections grid view. These can then be used by strategies to bet on or to be exported as sets of selections.

16.27 Near price

The Near Price is calculated using all of the available money on the Betfair site at SP as well as matching money on the same selection in the Exchange. To understand this properly, you first need to understand the calculation of the **Far Price**,

16.28 NOR - Number of Runners

NOR means number of runners. It means how many selections there are in a market.

16.29 Odds / Prices

The terms odds and prices are used interchangeably to mean the same thing. They both refer to the prices offered on Betfair to bet on

16.30 Overround / Book percentage

The easiest way to think of the overround number is as a measure of how developed a market is as a whole. It is a sum of either the back or lay odds after being converted to their percentage probability. Read more about Overrounds in the example strategy section.

16.31 P/L - Profit / Loss

P/L means profit and loss. The P/L of a strategy is the total of profits and losses.

16.32 Persistence

Persistence refers to if you want to keep a bet active or not in certain situations. The bets persistence rule lets

you place a bet that will be cancelled at in-play if unmatched, kept at in-play if unmatched or will take the Betfair Start Price (SP) if available on that market.

16.33 Points

Points is a way that bettors refer to how much of their betting bank they would risk on a bet. Imagine that 1 point means 1% of your betting bank. So a 2 point bet would be a 2% bet.

16.34 Provider

Provider refers to a tips providing service. If you get free tips or paid tips from a tip service, we can refer to this as a provider.

16.35 ROI - Return on Investment

ROI is another word for "yield" or "edge". It is a measure of how much profit is gained per unit bet. For example, if we place 100 bets of £10 at various odds and our balance goes up to 150. Then we made an average of £0.50 profit on each bet. £0.50 is 5% of £10, our average stake, so we can call it 5% ROI. If we bet £100 on 100 bets and won £50, then the average profit of each bet is still £0.50 but this time our average stake is £100 so the ROI is much lower at 0.5% since £0.50 is 0.5% of £100. In this way we can see that the 5% ROI betting strategy is a much better risk/reward balance after 100 bets since it risked much less to win the same amount.

16.36 Runner

Runner means a selection in a market that can be bet on.
A runner in a horse race WIN market is a horse.
A runner is a greyhound race WIN market is a dog.
A runner in a football MATCH OODS market is a match result. (Always 3 runners – home, away, draw)
A runner in a football CORRECT SCORE market is a score line.

16.37 Second bet (Trade out bet)

This is a second bet is placed after an initial bet. It is usually placed to trade out of the market and make a profit regardless of the result. A second bet is always connected to an initial bet.

16.38 Selection

Selection means the same thing as runner (above).

16.39 SelectionID

The SelectionID is a number allotted to an runner by Betfair. It is not set by the Bf Bot Manager software.

16.40 Stake

The stake is the amount of money bet on a selection in a back bet. It is best understood in contrast with a liability.

16.41 Strategy

A strategy is a set of rules that are followed to attempt to make profit in a betting system. A bot is a programming script that place bets according to your betting strategy rules and conditions. The Bf Bot Manager allows you to create and manage multiple bots which are called "strategies".

16.42 StrategyID

The Strategy ID is a number allotted to a bot strategy by the Bf Bot Manager software to make it easier to organize strategies. It is nothing to do with Betfair. The strategy ID does not change even if the text name of the strategy changes. A strategy ID will only change if it is duplicated, then it is given a new strategy ID to differentiate it from the old one. It is possible to have multiple strategies with the same text name because they all have different and unique strategy IDs. For more information on organizing strategies see the strategy name section.

16.43 Steamer

A steamer is a selection whose price is getting lower. It is becoming more likely to win according to market feeling. Its odds are "steaming" in.

16.44 Strike rate

The strike rate is the number of times it has won divided by the number of bets it has placed displayed as a percentage. A strategy that won 5 out of 10 bets has a strike rate of 50%.

16.45 Tipster

Tipster refers to a person who provides tips. If you get free tips or paid tips from a tip service, we can refer to this as a provider.

16.46 Trade out

Trade out means to place bets in order to exit a market to protect profits or reduce losses.

16.47 VPN – Virtual Private Network

A VPN encrypts your data and routes your internet access through another server so that your home IP address and the details of what websites you view are not known to others as all the data is encrypted by the VPN provider. A VPN has no physical form. It is not running in another location and thus cannot run the Bf Bot Manager remotely. A VPS is needed for this.

16.48 VPS – Virtual Private Server

A VPS is a physical part of a computer that you connect to over the internet. If you rent a VPS, you are renting a part of a computer from a host. If the hosting server PC has an 8 core CPU, and you rent a 2 core package, then you get exclusive access to 2 of those cores. No other user can use them. So you are not sharing any computing resources with other users. It is like having 2 PCs, just that your second PC is physically in a different place. When you close your connection to the VPS, it will continue to run 24/7. Read more about VPS options here.

17 Resources

Open Betfair account and get bonus
http://ads.betfair.com/redirect.aspx?pid=18688&bid=8298

FAQ page at Bf Bot Manager web site
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/en/help/knowledge_base

Buy license keys
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/en/pricing

Private and public member's forum for discussing strategies
https://www.bfbotmanager.com/phpbb3/